

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY  
CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

---

CLASS

12925

CALL No

495.1

Tho

D.G.A. 79.

~~AM~~  
~~11451~~



PUBLICATIONS OF THE PHILOLOGICAL  
SOCIETY

XIV

# NAM

AN ANCIENT LANGUAGE OF THE  
SINO-TIBETAN BORDERLAND

*Text, with Introduction, Vocabulary  
and linguistic studies*

by

F. W. THOMAS

12925

(With 10 Facsimile Plates  
and a Sketch Map)

Price 35s. net

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY NEW DELHI

Acc. No. 772  
Date 25-1-1949

Call No. 495.930/Tho.

*Published for*

THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY

*with the aid of a subvention from*

THE COUNCIL OF THE BRITISH ACADEMY

by GEOFFREY CUMBERLEGE

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

LONDON

1948

495.1  
Tho

Ref 495.4  
Tho

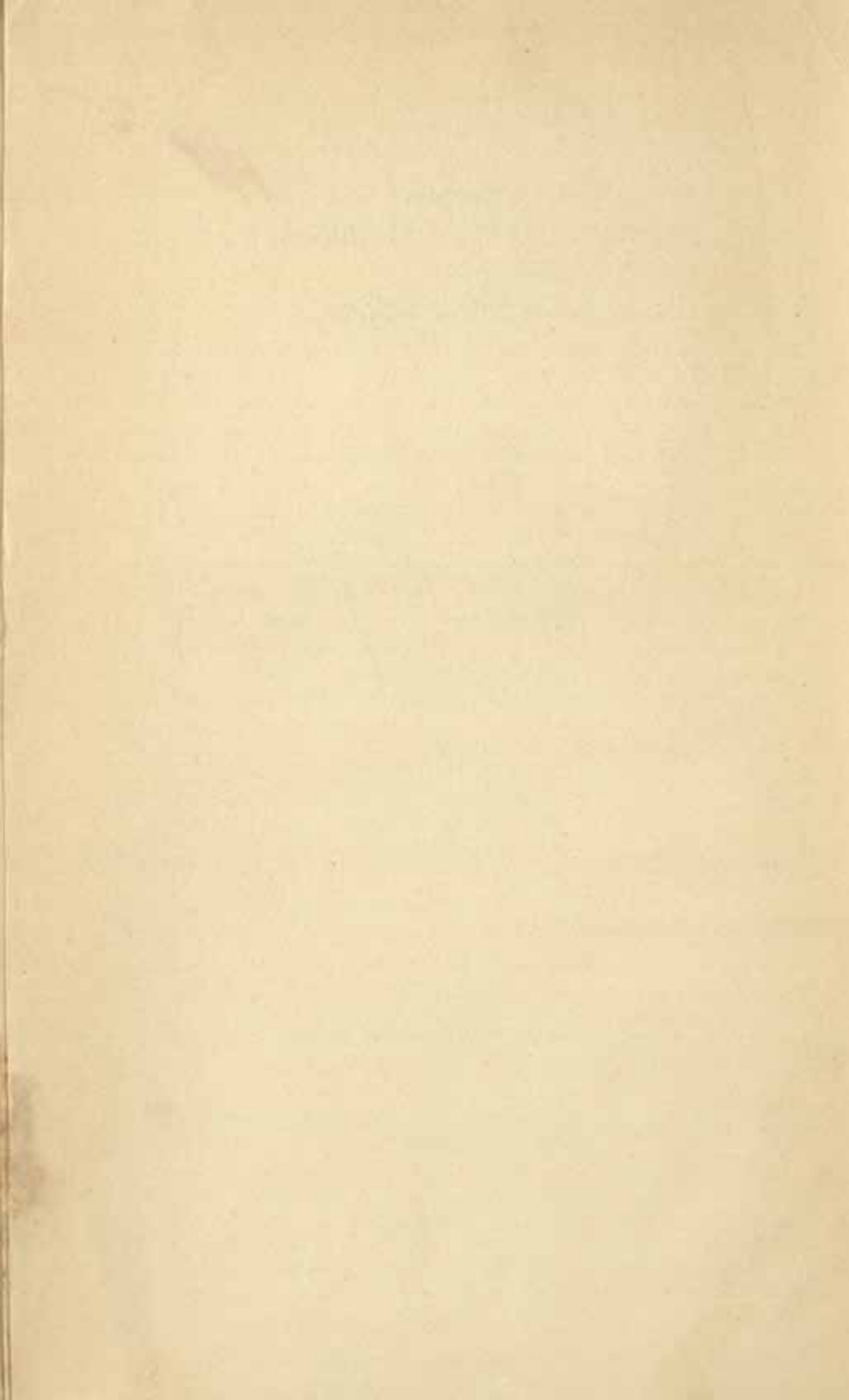




CENTRAL LIBRARY  
Acc. No. 12925  
Date 31-12-62  
Call No.

*To the memory of*  
BRIAN HOUGHTON HODGSON  
*founder of*  
*Himalayan and Tibetan linguistics*

495.1 / Tho.



## PREFACE

THE existence of a Nam state came to light, in 1925, through mention of a king Hu-mar, whose daughter became consort of a Khotan ruler: see *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, vol. i, p. 130 and n. 5. In the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* for 1928 (pp. 630-4) note was taken of a Nam, or Nam-pa, kingdom and language and a Nam-tig people, as cited in certain early Tibetan manuscripts which had been brought by Sir Aurel Stein from the now famous walled-up library in Ch'ien-fo-tung (a monastery settlement near Tun-huang/Shu-chou in western Kan-su) and which evidently contained folk-lore of the Koko-nor region of north-eastern 'Tibet'. On the basis of certain names quoted along with Tibetan equivalents it was concluded that the folk-tales were versions of Nam originals; and the language was identified with that of the text here edited, of which a specimen had been published. The matter was carried somewhat further, with discussion and attempts at elucidation of the language, in an article contributed to the *JRAS.* for 1939 (pp. 193-216).

A connexion of the Nam kingdom with the Nan (Nam)-shan range of mountains, which separate the Koko-nor region from the Chinese province of Kan-su, was naturally conjectured from the first; and confirmation may be sought in the name of a Sinified 'Nan-Liang' dynasty which at the end of the fourth century A.D. and during the early part of the fifth ruled the country from Hsi-ning to Lan-chou. The family name of the dynasty was T'u-fa, and its members are stated to have been of north-Asian, Sien-pi, extraction, akin to the Koko-nor T'u-yü-hun, with whose state it coexisted in a relation which is not perspicuous. On the Chinese side 'Nan-Liang' was evidently taken to mean 'Southern (Nan) Liang', as contrasting with the perhaps somewhat later Hou-Liang, 'Later Liang', Pei-Liang, 'Northern Liang', and Hsi-Liang, 'Western Liang', ruling over different parts of Kan-su. Thus the Nam-pa people may have been the people of the Nan-Liang state, and this may have owed its name to the Nan-shan mountains. But the Chinese nomenclature of outside cities and districts has frequently been found to be a deceptive covering of prior native designations: and it is conceivable that the Nan-shan itself was originally not 'Southern mountain', which

is not obviously appropriate, but 'Nam mountain' in a native sense. This is suggested by the familiarity of the word *gnam*, 'sky', and *gnam-pa* (in our present text *hnam-hldah*), 'sky-people', as denoting the inhabitants of *Gnam*, the higher Bon-po heaven. Thus the Nan-shan may have been at first the 'heaven mountains', and the Nan-Liang, properly the 'Nan(-shan)-Liang', may have set the fashion for the Chinese designations, Pei-Liang, Hsi-Liang, &c. One of the Tibetan manuscripts, which mentions a 'Nam-po' or 'Gnam-po' species of turquoise, also makes *gnam* 'sky' play a part in the mythical origin of the stone.

Identification of the language of the text as 'Nam' was based upon a limited number of name-forms, and objection may be raised as follows: Granted that in the text the expression *Mehi-klu-hcah* may, on the lines suggested *infra* (p. 255), carry a covert allusion to the Nam people as related to an eponymous Mye-kru, celebrated in the folk-lore manuscripts, does it not seem that these *Mehi-klu-hcah* are mentioned slightly or even with hostility? Should not the text represent an external point of view, namely, that of the *Hldyañ* associated with them, who could well be the *Hjañ*, i.e. the Tang-hsiang people, known from Tibetan history? In that case the language of the text might deserve to be named rather *Hldyañ*, or *Hjañ*, than Nam. To this it may be replied that the name *Hjañ*, whether identical or not with *Liang* in *Nam-Liang*, &c., was probably dynastic, and that the country itself was known as *Skyi*. In fact, the folk-lore texts themselves give as *Skyi*, or *Skyi-mthin*, 'Skyi-plateau', the name of the 'far country' to which the daughter of Mye-kru escaped to become a bride in the local Gyim-po family, i.e. a racial ancestress. In all the tales it seems that the main theme is really the *Skyi* country legend and that the Nam occurrences are incidental, imported as accounts of that ancestry. Nevertheless, only a Nam original is mentioned, and it is therefore to be concluded that the Tibetan versions had only Nam originals, whether the legends were current only in a 'Nam' area, or whether between a 'Nam' and a 'Skyi', or *Hjañ*, language there was no real difference. Substantially, in fact, the latter was, no doubt, the case. The *Skyi* kingdom was separated from the Nan-shan districts only by the *Rmachu* (Hoang-ho), which in early times did not constitute a barrier: the whole confused mass of the Ch'iang tribes of the region was swayed, as appears, by the 'Shao-t'ang' leaders to the north of it; and the subsequent detachment of a *Skyi*, or Tang-hsiang, state



may have been merely a reaction from the domination of the intrusive T'u-yü-hun people in the vicinity of the Koko-nor.

For the study of the oldest-known Tibetan the Nam language, as we may accordingly continue to designate it, should, being approximately contemporary, furnish a not superfluous control. In relation to Ch'iang or other Tibeto-Burman dialects of the Sino-Tibetan borderlands, none of them recorded until centuries later or until modern times, it may serve to measure development. The contents also of the few texts, Nam and Tibetan, should help in divining the obscure mentality, traditions, and social conditions of the peoples. While the Nam text is not here accompanied by a continuous translation, the pieces of folk-lore in the Tibetan manuscripts, of which an edition with translation has been prepared, may be forthwith utilizable.

Increased familiarity with the text, which was ready in 1941 for the press, has strengthened the impression of artifices of style, such as are noted on p. 157: it has also given occasion for amplification, and, it is hoped, improvement, of the Vocabulary.

The latter, in common with the chapter on Etymology, to which it largely refers, has necessarily a tentative character; but it may perhaps be found to contain, along with, no doubt, numerous over-speculative or erroneous items, a proportion of additional confirmations and also material for the correction of its own errors. A reader attracted to the study of the language and its problems may prefer, however, to make an independent approach by first looking through the Text as printed, unless he should choose rather the facsimile Plates.

For the sketch-map, designed for reference in connexion with the present work, a historically and ethnographically instructive original could, but for technical difficulties, have been found in one included in M. Grenard's valuable Atlas, published (1898) in *Mission Scientifique dans la Haute Asie, par J.-L. Dutreuil de Rhins*. The Oxford University Press has graciously allowed the two compiled for Sir Charles Bell's *The Religion of Tibet* to be used as a basis. The fine geographical maps published by the Royal Geographical Society and the Trigonometrical Survey Department of the Government of India are replete with here irrelevant names of native or foreign origin. Readers may appreciate a reference to Dr. Tafel's map, accompanying his *Meine Tibetreise*, to the Chinese sketches for the Rgyal-roñ statelets (see the cited publications of E. Colborne Baber and Dr. Haenisch), and to the Chinese



map of Kan-see published with an elaborate Index, by Dr. Filchner (*infra*, p. 25 and n. 4).

Certain inconstancies in the spelling of names, due to retention of general usage or of the use of quoted works, or to variation in the Tibetan writing itself, will, it is hoped, be excused as innocuous.

Grateful acknowledgement is due to the authorities of the India Office for continuous loan of the manuscript and permission of the publication, and to the now retired Librarian, Dr. H. N. Randle, and his assistants for constant help. For a liberal subvention towards the expense of printing, the Philological Society desires to record its cordial thanks to the Council of the British Academy. The skilled and rapid work of the Oxford University Press from the time when a commencement became possible has lightened the task of correcting the typographically rather complex proofs.

*September 1947*

F. W. THOMAS

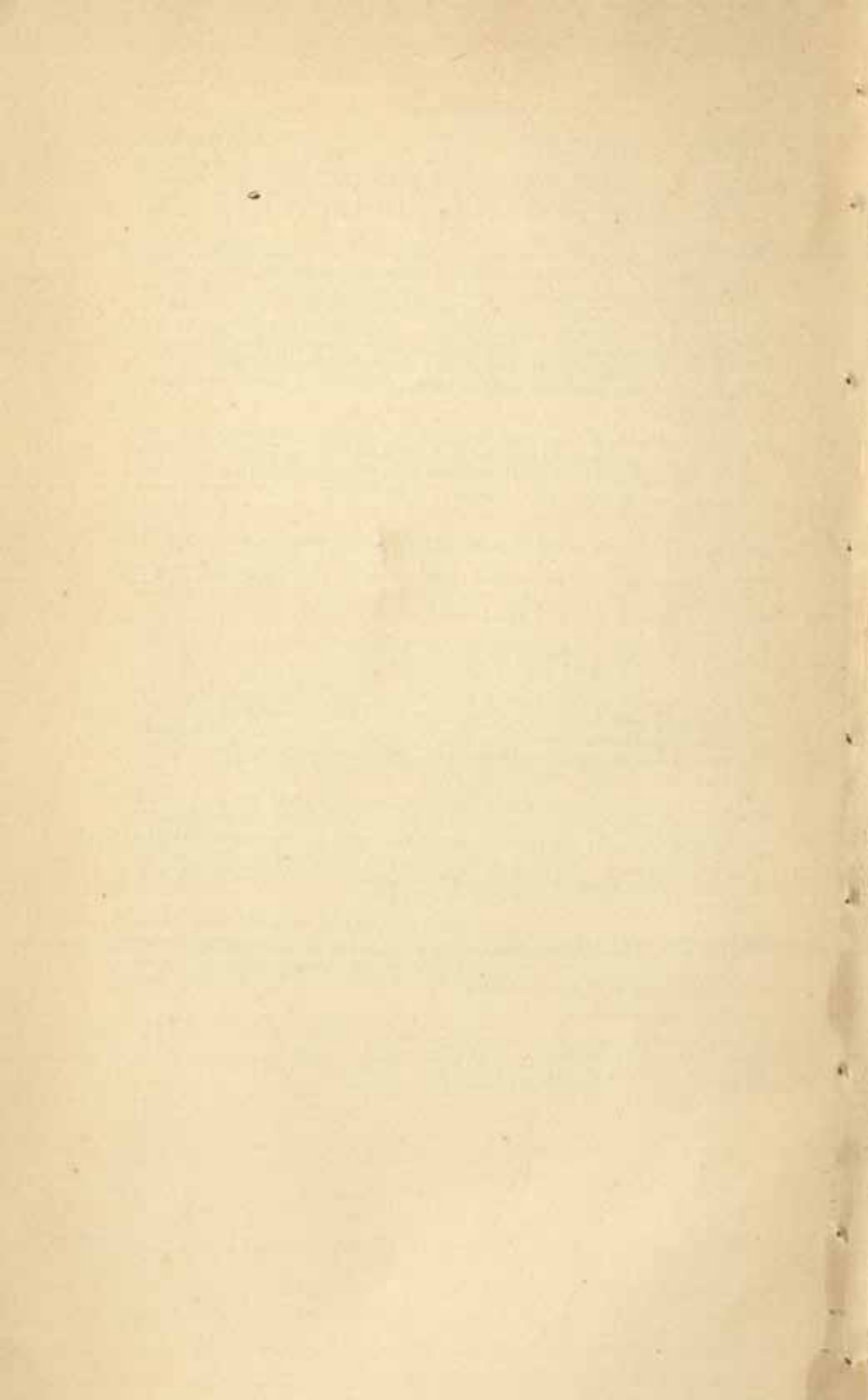
# CONTENTS

PREFACE . . . . .	pages v-viii
INTRODUCTION A, GENERAL . . . . .	1-110
Geographical considerations . . . . .	1-13
Political and ethnographical divisions of Tibet . . . . .	13-25
Historical situation in north-eastern Tibet during the seventh to eighth century A.D. . . . .	25-36
The Western Ch'iang (Hsi-ch'iang) . . . . .	36-52
The early Ch'iang, the Te and the Tik . . . . .	52-8
The Nam-Tig . . . . .	58-61
The Nam, or Nam-Tig, language, the Hsi-fan and the Ch'iang . . . . .	61-110
<i>(Nam, Ch'iang, Hsi-hsia, 61-4; 'Hsi-fan' and 'Man-tzā', 64-9; Hsi-fan languages: a Tibetan group, 69-79; Hsi-fan languages proper and Ch'iang: spellings, place-names, Tibetan admixtures, 79-87; Hsi-fan languages: criteria and list, 88-94; Hsi-fan languages: use of Prefixes, 94-9; Hsi-fan languages, phonological derivation from early Ch'iang, 99-103; early Hsi-fan phonology: comparison with Hsi-hsia, 103-9; Nam: some phonological particulars 109-10.)</i>	
INTRODUCTION B, A LITERARY WORK IN THE NAM LANGUAGE . . . . .	111-373
I. The manuscript and script . . . . .	111-15
II. Orthography . . . . .	116-25
III. The text . . . . .	126-62
IV. The language: grammar . . . . .	163-211
<i>(A, Word-forms, 163-70; B, Morphology of the sentence, 170-81; C, Parts of speech, 181-205; Appendix: Table showing phonetic restrictions upon the application of Prefixes in Tibetan, Tibetan manuscripts from Central Asia, Nam, Hsi-hsia and Žaň-žuň, 206-11.)</i>	
V. The language: etymology . . . . .	212-373
<i>(I, Antithesis and context, §§ 1-36, 215-323; II, Some phonological particulars: ldy, &amp;c., 324-33; z, 334-6; w, initial and post-consonantal, 336-47; r-Prefix; r-final, 347-54; l-Prefix; l-final, 354; s-initial; s-final, 354-60; nasals, initial and final, 360-2; other root-consonants, initial and final, 362-7; vowels, medial and final, 367-9.)</i>	
TEXT . . . . .	375-98

VOCABULARY	.	.	.	.	.	399-451
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES	.	.	.	.	.	452-69
PLATES I-X	.	.	.	.	.	} at end
SKETCH-MAP	.	.	.	.	.	

## ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS

- Pp. vi, 27, 31, 333: In identifying the Hjañ with the Tang-hsiang it was suggested (*JRAS.* 1928, p. 85) that the name, so far as it is applied to the Mo-so, was brought by that people from the north. In its occurrences in the *Tibetan Chronicle* and the associated texts M. Jacques Bacot (*Documents de Touen-houang . . . , 1940-1946*) refers it to the Mo-so. Reserving some here irrelevant comments upon this matter, we should first note that the form Hldyañ (Chinese *Liang*), which alone is here requisite, was certainly applied to the T'ang-chang dynasty.
- P. 8 n. 2: The Chinese account rendered by Dr. Haenisch (*op. cit.*, p. 23) gives as boundaries of Khams, E. the Ya-lung river, W. the mountain 'Noubou-grangra', N. the northern boundary of the Hbri-chu (upper Yang-tse-chiang), S. the mountain 'Gakra-gangri'. The 'capital' was Batang (Hbah-thah).
- P. 28 and n. 4: Fussû-ch'êng is given in Professor Herrmann's *Atlas*, map 32.
- P. 31, Wei-chou: For a better-known Wei-chou, in the region of the Rgyal-roñ and Mao-chou, see Rockhill in *JRAS.* 1891, p. 193 n., *Tafel, op. cit.* ii, p. 223, Haenisch, *op. cit.*, p. 69.
- Pp. 59-60 n., Duñs: A place Stag-tshal in Duñs is mentioned in the *Tibetan Chronicle* (M. Bacot's edition, pp. 33, 44-6).
- P. 74: Add to the list of languages the Kioutse (d'Orléans, nos. 27, 29) or Kiu-tzû, occasionally cited *infra* (see p. 459). Belonging, like the Mélam and Loutse/Lu-tzû, to the Me-kong valley (see map), it seems to have been extensively Tibetanized, but retains some clear Hsi-fan features. The Kiu may be the Hjus of *Geografia Tibeta*, p. 42.
- Pp. 89 n. 2, 90, *Dge-ši-tsha*: The name of the small state (located in the map) is recorded in Tibetan writing (see Haenisch, *op. cit.*, p. 98 n. 4) as *Dge-bés-rtas*. In the numerals cited *infra* (p. 90) 'awda, given by Haenisch as = 20, should, no doubt, be '14', '4' being 'da (Hôr-pa hla): '20' would resemble Hôr-pa *naskā*, since '30', *ku-sk'a*, and '40', *wa-sk'a*, correspond to Hôr-pa *sūskā*, *lěskā*.
- P. 154, Bo-lo-tse: The language of this people, the Polotseu of d'Ollone (p. 34), is warranted as Hsi-fan by a short list of numerals and other words reported by W. C. Haines Watson in the *Journal of the China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vol. xxxvi (1905), p. 101 ('Journey to Sungp'an').
- P. 333: For the sorcerer's cock, or fowl, see also *Tafel, op. cit.*, II, p. 236.
- P. 430: In the Vocabulary insert *hphyah*, l. 298, and read *hpus-hphyah* in p. 428.





## I. INTRODUCTION

## A. GENERAL

## GEOGRAPHICAL CONSIDERATIONS

THE great country which on the maps is labelled 'Tibet' extends, from Rudok in the west to Ta-chien-lu = Dar-chen-do in the east, over about 22 degrees of longitude, and, from the Himālaya in the south to the Kuen-lun and Altyn-Tāgh in the north, over about 11 degrees of latitude. Owing to the inverse curvature of the great mountain ranges on the north and south it presents a rather oval contour. Somewhat more visually it may be compared to a left hand placed flat with palm downwards upon a board pointing eastwards with a slight declivity in that direction. The wrist will then be the region where Kuen-lun, Karakoram, and western Himālaya approach each other in the Ladak countries; and the back of the hand, with, say, half the length of the fingers, may represent the great 'north plain', *Byan-thaṅ*, which has its greatest general altitude in the north-west, where the *Byan-chen-mo* (Changchenmo) attains to about 17,000 feet; the whole western border is at a great height, so that it, and especially the Kailāsa-Mānasa-sarovar area, is by the Tibetans designated *Stod-phyogs*, 'Upper Region', and the descents to the Low Country (*Mar-yul*) of Ladak are over passes reaching 19,000 feet.

The fingers will have to be more than four in number; they will have to be lengthened, to develop a curvature in a south-easterly direction, and to have branching ends. The curvature will be most pronounced in the prolongation of the little finger and forefinger, and least in the case of the longer middle finger. Hence there will seem to be, as it were, two groups: the prolongation of the little finger will, as the Nan-shan of the Chinese border, seem to wish to approach the prolongation of the middle finger, the great Bayan-kara<sup>1</sup> range of mountains, and to allow the river which the Tibetans call *Rma-chu*, 'Peacock River',<sup>2</sup> only a rather contracted exit into

<sup>1</sup> Mongol *bayan*, 'rich', + *kara*, 'black' (Prejevalsky, ii, p. 181; Tafel, ii, p. 257 n., with a plea for the retention of the name).

<sup>2</sup> The name, in Hsi-hsia *ma-śuo* (Laufer, No. 109), must have been obtained by the Tibetans from the Tang-hsiang people, concerning whom see *infra* (p. 28). The peacock bird (Tib. *rma-bya*), traditional ancestress of the Tang-hsiang (*infra*, pp. 28-9, 135), who bore the designation *Rma* as a national and regional surname (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i,



China, where it becomes the Hoang-ho; while the continuations of the forefinger will take a decidedly southern direction, until, in a braid of high ranges, they collide with the most easterly prolongations of the thumb, namely the Himālaya.<sup>1</sup> Between the two groups, and receiving great tributaries from the southern flanks of the Bayankara, lies the course of that river which of all those descending from the Tibetan plateau into China has its sources farthest to the west, namely the Hbri-chu (Di-chu, Dre-chu, i.e. 'Yak-cow River') of the Tibetans,<sup>2</sup> or, as it approaches China, the Chin-sha-chiang ('Gold-sand River') or, in China, the Yang-tse-chiang. The forefinger, which bounds the course of the upper Hbri-chu on the south, is a great area of snow mountains wherein is distinguished on the north the Tang-la, of which the western continuation is not definitely known, but which to the travellers coming from the north presents the most imposing spectacle that they have encountered.<sup>3</sup> More to the south, and extending eastwards between the Tengri-Nor (Nam-tsho) lake and Lha-sa, is the Gñan-chen-Thañ-la,<sup>4</sup> the Nyin-chen-Tangla of

p. 279, n. 6, ii, p. 20), is commemorated also in the name of the great Amne-Machin (*Rma-chen*) range of mountains, round which the river flows.

The Chinese notion, reported by Rockhill (*Diary*, p. 113 n.), that *rma* means 'yellow' is an imagination based upon the Chinese *Huang-ho*, 'Yellow River'. According to Huc and Gabet (i, p. 274) the water of the river begins to be yellow only after its entry into China; but Dr. Tafel (ii, p. 290, with an erroneous etymology) finds it 'yellow-gray' as high up as its knee.

It is, of course, conceivable that *rma* originally meant 'river' and that the connexion with 'peacock' is due to folk-etymology; but evidence is wanting, unless Loutse *rè-mé* should prove to be such.

<sup>1</sup> For a general view of the ranges and their curvatures see M. Grenard's discussion in Dutreuil de Rhins, *La Haute Asie*, iii, pp. 156 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> The other spellings, *Brius* (Marco Polo), *Polei-tchou* (Huc and Gabet, ii, p. 119, evidently heard from a Chinaman), *Di-chu* (Prejevalsky, ii, pp. 221, 306), *Drieh'u* (Rockhill, p. 196, n. 2), *Bri-chu*, all represent the Tibetan word *hbri*, 'yak-cow', with its ancient (*bri*) or modern (*dri*, *di*) pronunciation: the *N'jeh* which Gill heard at Ba-thañ (*The River of Golden Sand*, ed. Baber, 1883, p. 44) is merely the modern E.-Tibetan pronunciation of *hbri*: see p. 76. On the Mongol name, *Muru* (or *Murus*)-ussu, see Prejevalsky, Rockhill (whose objections in regard to *hbri* are unavailing), locc. cit., and Tafel, ii, p. 28 n.

<sup>3</sup> See Huc and Gabet, ii, pp. 126-8; Rockhill, *Diary*, p. 215 ('certainly the most imposing chain of mountains I have seen in Asia'). The name, which Rockhill gives (p. 214) as = Tib. *grāis* ('cold', 'icy'), is given in the *Dictionary* of Ś. C. Das as *Dan-la* and by the Panchen whose itinerary is mentioned *infra* as *Ldan-la*, in which *ldan* is ambiguous and *la* = 'mountain pass' or, metonymously, 'high mountain'.

<sup>4</sup> *Gñan-chen-Thañ-lha* (the spelling of the *Geografia Tibeta*, p. 2) means

maps, perhaps belonging in some way to the 'Trans-Himālaya'. The gap between forefinger and thumb will be the valley of the Brahmaputra.

Crossing the Byañ-thañ in an approximately west-to-east direction are numerous mountain ranges, which owing to the great general elevation of the plateau do not tower excessively;<sup>1</sup> the Littledales, whose journey from Cer-cen and the Tokuz-Dawān was in a north-south direction and traversed the Byañ-thañ farther to the west than the corresponding lines followed by other explorers, except Dutreuil de Rhins, found it always possible to discover a gap or a manageable pass. The broad depressions between the ranges are occupied not by rivers, but by chains of lakes, which, having no outlet, are saline; in the whole of the Byañ-thañ, as far east as the main routes from Lha-sa to the north and north-west, the chief obstacle to travel is the scarcity of drinkable water. As the general level declines eastwards without a corresponding reduction in the heights of the great mountain ranges,<sup>2</sup> the deepening depressions become the valleys of rivers, which in some cases, after descending from their parent glaciers, have over immense distances a quite moderate fall. The most familiar example of this is, of course, the Brahmaputra; but both the Hbri-chu and the Rma-chu traverse vast stretches of *thañ* country in this manner; and on a smaller scale some of the rivers embraced by the Hbri-chu and its southern barrier, the Tang-la—for instance the Dza-chu, or upper Me-kong—may exhibit the same feature; and certainly in the Koko-nor region the T'ao-river has a long *thañ* course from west to east between mountain ranges before making at Min-chou a right-angle bend which ultimately brings it through a deep trough to the Rma-chu, somewhat west of Lan-chou. The great Na(g)-chu, or Ya-lung river, which with its tributaries issues from the southern slopes of the Bayankara range and ultimately

'Great Ovis Hodgsoni Steppe-god' (*lha* perhaps an error for *la*, 'pass'). That *gñan* means Ovis Ammoni is stated by Hodgson himself (*Miscellaneous Essays*, ii, p. 173), who translates 'Pass of (to and from) the plains of the Great Nyen or Ovis Ammon', with the (preferable) alternative 'Great Ammon pass of the plains'. According to the *Dictionary*, however, and to Sandberg (*Tibet and the Tibetans*, p. 297) *gñan*, *rñan*, is Ovis Hodgsoni (not Ammoni): Prejevalsky gives (ii, p. 137) the word, in its 'Tangut' form, *rkhiang*, as denoting the Argal.

<sup>1</sup> 'The further west the lower the mountains' (Tafel, ii, p. 33).

<sup>2</sup> 'The valleys descend from W. to E. quicker than the mountain heights' (Dutreuil de Rhins, ii, p. 180).



joins the Hbri-chu, now Chin-sha-chiang, on its left bank, has perhaps a more precipitous upper course.

There comes a point when the river either bends round the end of one of its mountain barriers or breaks through it,<sup>1</sup> or is confined by the approach of two ranges, and so enters a gorge from which it emerges with much diminished altitude. This characteristic, manifested in the west by the Indus, which after a long course through Ladak and Baltistan at a height of 10,500–8,000 feet accomplishes in the 60 miles of its gorge ending in Kohistan a fall of about 4,000 feet, and similarly by the Brahmaputra just prior to its emergence in Assam, may in the case of the Hbri-chu and Rma-chu be indicated by figures. The former, which, where crossed by the main route over the Tang-la northwards, has an elevation of 13,000 feet,<sup>2</sup> reaches the district of Jyekundo after a winding course through about 4 degrees of longitude and 1½ of latitude with a height of about 12,000 feet; thence through gorge country it traverses about 2 degrees of longitude and 3 of latitude to the vicinity of Ba-t'ang on the great route from Lha-sa to Pe-king, losing 4,000 feet of height.<sup>3</sup> The Rma-chu, after its short uppermost course, passes through the two lakes, Charing-nor and Oring-nor,<sup>4</sup> at an elevation of about 14,000 feet; with many windings at the foot of the great Amne Rma-chen<sup>5</sup> range of

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Tafel, ii, p. 169 (the Hbri-chu).

<sup>2</sup> Rockhill, p. 380; Filchner, *Om Mani Padme Hum*, p. 168, 4,670 metres. Dr. Tafel's crossing, some distance north of Jyekundo, was at 3,650 metres (ii, p. 134).

<sup>3</sup> Ba-t'ang (Ba-thaŋ) is about 8,200 ft. above sea-level (Rockhill, *Diary*, p. 393).

<sup>4</sup> As the correct spelling of these names Rockhill gives (p. 173, n. 1) *Ts'aring* and *Noring* with Tibetan etymology accordingly. Grenard has (iii, p. 206) *Kya-ring* and *Ngo-ring*. Tafel follows (ii, p. 15, n. 2) Rockhill, stating, however, that the names are Mongol, and adding, however, a reference to a text which gives Tibetan etymologies partly identical with those of Rockhill but with spellings *Ts'o-schdyara* and *Ts'o-ngora*: he further cites Ś. C. Das's spelling of the name *Ts'aring* as *Skya-reñs*. Ś. C. Das in his *Dictionary* states that *Skya-reñ* is the name of a lake which is the source of the Yang-tse-chiang. No doubt the really correct spelling is that of the *Geografia Tibeta* (p. 2), viz. *Skya-reñs* and *Sho-rañs* (*reñs*?).

Grenard denies that the river actually passes through the two lakes, which he says are saline, and separates it by a range of hills. Possibly this question is not settled by Dr. Filchner's narrative (*Das Rätsel des Mtschū*, pp. 95 sqq.) or by the modern maps.

<sup>5</sup> In the name *Amne, Amyé, Anyei* (no doubt = Tib. 'a-ne) signifies, according to Projevalsky (ii, p. 76), Rockhill (p. 94, *Diary*, p. 130) and the Vicomte d'Ollone (*In Forbidden China*, p. 256), 'ancestor'; and the two

mountains, in the course of which it passes through about 5 degrees of longitude and about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  degrees of latitude, it reaches its knee in a wide *than* at about 11,200 feet;<sup>1</sup> then, curving round the Amne Rma-chen, it enters its gorge and in a sort of semicircle through less than 3 degrees of latitude reaches Kuei-tê, south-east of the Koko-nor (lat. c.  $101-50^{\circ}$ ), where it is flowing at 7,500 feet; thence, with regular fall through about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  degrees of longitude, it enters China proper at Lan-chou with a height of 5,400 feet.<sup>2</sup>

The above particulars may enable us to appreciate the Tibetan conception of their country as consisting of *than*, i.e. high plateaux, or plains, and wide valleys of similar aspect, *ron*, gorges or defiles among mountains, with, of course, the *sgan*, the mountain ridges themselves.<sup>3</sup> Eastern and northern 'Tibet', Mdo-Khams, is described as the country of the three *Sgans*.<sup>4</sup> The passes over the mountains are *la*. But we may make mention of some further useful expressions.

Where there are mountain slopes and higher parts of valleys unsuitable for settlements, but allowing of nomadic pasturage, those districts are known as *hbrog*, and the nomads, tent-dwellers, are *hbrog-pa* (Dokpa).<sup>5</sup> In many of the *rons* of eastern Tibet there are upper, barren, parts of the valleys, where the life is thus quite different from that of not very distant settlements. The word *yog*, a variant of *hog*, 'below', seems to have in general a rather wider sense than *ron*, denoting a valley without implying

first-named travellers give lists of the thirteen or fourteen so surnamed mountains of north-eastern Tibet. A later writer, Dr. W. Filchner, adds (*Das Rätsel des Matschû*, p. 167 n.) that primarily the term denotes certain 'mountain spirits'. In connecting *Machen* with the name of the river *Rma-chu* the Vicomte d'Ollone is indubitably right; but, as pointed out *supra* (p. 1, n. 2), *Rma-chen* means 'Great Peacock', and the *Geografia Tibeta* gives the name of the range as *Rma-chen-abom-ra*, 'Great Peacock vast region', Prejevalsky's *Amnimanchenponra*, which Rockhill (loc. cit.) found 'horrible'. The *Dictionary* of S. C. Das clinches the matter by interpreting the expression as: 'name of the great genius of the *gshi-bdag* (ground-lord) class, the lord of the peacocks, who resides in the snowy mountain of Spom-ra of the province of Amdo.'

<sup>1</sup> For a view see Tafel, ii, Plate LXVI.

<sup>2</sup> Concerning the figures for Kuei-tê and Lan-chou see Rockhill, p. 376, *Diary*, p. 387.

<sup>3</sup> On *than*, *ron*, *sgan*, *hbrog*, see Sandberg, *Tibet and the Tibetans*, pp. 13-20.

<sup>4</sup> *Geografia Tibeta*, p. 41, adding three subsidiary ones. An old Bon-po work (MS.) enumerates four.

<sup>5</sup> See Rockhill (*Druk-pa*), pp. 189-90, *Diary*, p. 243, and, more generally, Sandberg, pp. 15-17.



the features of a 'gorge' or 'defile'. *Mdo* is the lower part of a valley where it opens out, and in its application to Amdo or Mdo-smad, denoting the Koko-nor region generally, the term seems to mean no more than 'low country'. *Sods* are flat districts,<sup>1</sup> where the high mountains end: we hear of the 'Eighteen *Sods*' of Mdo-Khams.

It is curious to note that the great difference in fertility between the northern and southern flanks of mountains in Tibet (see the remarks in Fütterer, *Durch Asien*, i, p. 430, and Tafel, *Meine Tibetreise*, ii, p. 170) is represented by the Tibetans as a difference between 'bright' (*gdags*) and 'shadowed' (*sribs*) mountains and is commemorated in the names of two of the early legendary kings, *Gdags-* and *Sribs-khri*.

Naturally Tibet has *roñ* districts in more than one direction, not indeed on the north, where the passages into Chinese Turkestan and the Lob-nor region, over the Kuen-lun and Altyn-tāgh, are for the most part arid and those few rivers which rise beyond the first ranges have a course over barren *than*s and descend through treeless defiles into deserts of stony soil or sand. On the south, of course, there are many *roñ*s, and Sikkim derives its Tibetan name from being of that nature. But the *roñ* country *par excellence* is in the east, where the many great rivers, taking approximately parallel courses from north to south, are separated by high, relatively narrow, *sga*ñs. As readers of Fathers Huc and Gabet's famous work will realize, and as appears at least equally from the published itineraries, Chinese and Nepalese,<sup>2</sup> of the grand route from Lha-sa to Pe-king, which, after a slightly northerly detour to Chamdo on the Dza-chu, follows approximately the 30th parallel of latitude, the journey via Ba-thañ<sup>3</sup> and Li-thañ to Ta-chien-lu is one of perpetual ascents to passes and descents from the same.

<sup>1</sup> *Gliñ-khams*.

<sup>2</sup> A Chinese itinerary was translated into Russian by Father Hyacinth Bichurin, whose work was rendered into French, with notes, by Klaproth (*Description du Tibet*, Paris, 1831, Chêng-tu to Lhasa, pp. 171-237): Rockhill's translation, accompanied by other itineraries, appeared in the *JRAS.* 1891, pp. 27-69. The Nepalese itinerary was presented to B. H. Hodgson in 1843 and by him published in *Selections from the Records of Bengal*, No. IV, and again in *Miscellaneous Essays*, 1880, ii, pp. 167-90. Historically the most interesting itinerary, requiring, however, further elucidation, is that translated from the T'ang *Annals* by Bushell (*JRAS.* 1880, pp. 538-41)—from Hsi-ning to Lha-sa and Tashilhunpo (?): it evidently belongs to the 8th century A.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Geografia Tibeta*, pp. 44-5, Hbah[-thañ].

Somewhat farther north, but south of the Tang-la, the routes followed by Rockhill in 1891, Captain Bower,<sup>1</sup> and M. Bonvalot and Prince Henri d'Orléans<sup>2</sup> tell the same tale; and the prior route of Rockhill (1889), which in a south-easterly direction from Jyekundo followed for awhile the line of the Hbri-chu, diverged to the Dza-chu and again to places on the upper Na(g)-chu or Ya-lung, and then headed direct to Ta-chien-lu, reckons its passes at the rate of at least one per day. A partly equivalent route was taken by Dr. Tafel in 1914.

It was observed by M. Grenard<sup>3</sup> that, despite the general fall of the country towards the east, the mountain altitudes in eastern and north-eastern 'Tibet' are not appreciably less imposing than those of the west. Putting aside the fancy reported by Dr. Filchner,<sup>4</sup> that in the Amne Rma-chen there are peaks comparable in height to Mt. Everest, we may note that the latest Government of India map of Tibet puts one part of that range on the 24,000-ft. level; the Nan-shan rises to 20,000 feet; and in the valley of the Chin-ch'uan river, which has a more or less north-to-south course rather to the east of Ta-chien-lu, Dr. Tafel records<sup>5</sup> ranges to the east attaining to 5,000 metres, in two instances over 6,000, whereas the Tibetan side was content with somewhat over 4,000. It is clear that travelling in eastern Tibet is a much more toilsome matter than farther west; but, on the other hand, as has been recorded by both Rockhill and Dr. Tafel, the *roñs* are often well wooded,<sup>6</sup> and even rather thickly populated,<sup>7</sup> with permanent towns and villages at the crossing-places, sometimes having houses of several stories and towers<sup>8</sup> climbing the steep declivities; whereas in the west the passes come at longer intervals and are more gradual. Prejevalsky, for instance, speaks (ii, p. 221, cf. p. 181) rather slightly of his traversing the Bayankara at

<sup>1</sup> *Diary of a Journey across Tibet*, Calcutta and London, 1893-4.

<sup>2</sup> *Across Tibet*, 2 vols., London, 1891.

<sup>3</sup> *Op. cit.*, iii, pp. 180-1; also by Dr. Tafel, ii, pp. 196, 277.

<sup>4</sup> *Om Mani Padme Hum*, p. 70. <sup>5</sup> ii, pp. 196, 200, 248, 277.

<sup>6</sup> Rockhill, Index s.v. 'Forests'; Tafel, ii, pp. 172, 188-9, 196, &c. Similarly Gill and others.

<sup>7</sup> Rockhill, pp. 196, 239, 242, *Diary*, pp. 262, 297, 328; Tafel, ii, pp. 185, 241.

<sup>8</sup> Gill, *The River of Golden Sand*, ii, p. 136; Rockhill, *Diary*, pp. 315, 323, 353, 365-6; Tafel, ii, pp. 175, 239, 243. The towers, a characteristic and perhaps ancient feature of the Hsi-fan countries, may be seen illustrated in Johnston, *From Peking to Mandalay*, p. 170; Fergusson, *Adventure, &c., on the Tibetan Steppes*, (facing) pp. 74, 194; d'Ollone, p. 208; Tafel, ii, Plates L, LV, LVII; Stötzner, *Ina unerforschte Tibet*, pp. 160, 181.



Odontala; and the chief difficulties are the fierce winds on the swampy *thans* and the impossibility of obtaining supplies of any kind, except in a few places where the crossing of an unfordable river, or some other special circumstance, has given birth to a permanent settlement.

All travellers from the north, however, from Fathers Huc and Gabet onwards, speak with respect of the Tang-la. And this is important; for it is certain that this is the northern boundary, both ethnical and political, of Tibet proper.<sup>1</sup> In the centre and east of Tibet the highest general level seems to be that of the country immediately to the south of the Tang-la. To the Tibetans their country is the high country, culminating in the *Stod-phyogs*, the region of Mt. Ti-se (Kailāsa) and Lake Mānasa-sarovar. The area north-east of the Tang-la is regarded as a lowland, and either the whole of it, or at any rate the Koko-nor area, was in old times designated *Mdo-smad*, 'Low Mdo'; at present the terms used are *Amdo* and *Mdo-Khams*. The latter two names are somewhat loosely used. The term *Khams*, which, as we have seen, includes the valley of the Hbri-chu as far west as the Tang-La pass, is sometimes applied to the districts of eastern and even north-eastern Tibet in general; but it may be doubted whether the Tibetans ever think of the Koko-nor region or the Go-lok country to its south as *Khams*. It may be most convenient to restrict the term *Khams* to the country south of the Bayankara range, and to attribute the entire area to the north thereof, including the whole of the Rma-chu valley and the Koko-nor region, to Amdo (i.e. Mdo).<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Huc and Gabet, ii, pp. 126-8; Rockhill, *Diary*, pp. 158, 214, 219 n.: see also *infra*, p. 13.

<sup>2</sup> The expression 'Mdo-Khams' is used in the *Geografia Tibeta*, pp. 3, 41, and is given in Ś. C. Das's *Dictionary*, s.v. *Mdo*. *Khams* does not seem to include any territory north of the Bayankara; and in the Koko-nor region the traders thence (Kham-pas, Rockhill, pp. 111, 188) are regarded as outsiders. Its westward extension is indicated by the Pan-chen's itinerary (*infra*, p. 13). Dr. Tafel defines (ii, p. 29 n.) *Khams* as the country between Lha-sa and the districts under Saü-ch'uan-Chinese rule; but, unless for Lha-sa we substitute 'Tibet proper', that definition would be too comprehensive. Rockhill (pp. 61, 188) defines *Khams* as eastern Tibet. On the country and people see Sandberg, *Tibet and the Tibetans*, pp. 154-8.

According to the Pan-chen's itinerary Amdo is a rather limited area, centring upon Tankar and Kum-bum; and this is partly in agreement with Rockhill, who states (p. 73) that 'the section of country within the Kan-su border inhabited by Tibetans is known to them as Amdo, hence the name they give to themselves, Amdo-wa. . . . To the west of the Amdo-wa, living

Amdo, as so defined, being the main sphere of the present investigation, may be here briefly particularized.

The Bayankara range in the extreme east, where it reaches the north-western corner of the Chinese province of Ssü-ch'uan, is separated on its north by *thañ* country from the snowy Min-shan; from the Min-shan issues the Min river, which, flowing southwards by Sung-p'an and the capital, Chêng-tu, of Ssü-ch'uan, ultimately reaches the Yang-tse-chiang. Along the northern front of the Min-shan flows, in a west-east direction, the upper T'ao river; and farther north, bounded on the west by the Rma-chu gorge (*Rma-roñ*) and on the north by the subsequent west-to-east course of the same river, in the Koko-nor region, is mainly *thañ* country, having an elevation of from 12,000 to 13,000 feet, but crossed by some mountain ranges rising to 14,500 feet; through this country one or two rivers flow west into the Rma-roñ, and a larger number descend northwards.<sup>1</sup> From this *thañ* country there is easy access, by way of the *thañ* districts about the knee of the Rma-chu, to the whole upper valley of that river; but also, at one point, at least, in the Rma-roñ,<sup>2</sup> there is a crossing, whence a mountain route effects a much shorter approach to one or two points in that upper valley.

From the knee westwards the northern watershed of the Rma-chu is the Amne Rma-chen range of mountains, having a more or less north-west to south-east direction. At its western end it is separated by one or two parallel, but less considerable, ranges, Wahong-shan, Amne Bayan, &c., from the low country to the south and south-west of the Koko-nor; and these same ranges by their north-western projection, approaching the mountains of the south Koko-nor range, narrow the watershed between the Koko-nor region proper and the low-lying (9,000-10,000 ft.) districts (Baron, Jun, Taichinar, Hajjar, Gass, &c.) of the great salt-morass of the Tsaidam. These districts, lining the Tsaidam on the south, are backed by a succession of ranges, Burkhan Buddha range, Marco Polo range, Bokalik range, Chimen-tāgh, which separate them from the Tibetan plateau, Byañ-thañ, and ultimately effect

in the steppe or the mountains round the Koko-nor, are the Panak'a or Panak'a sum, "the three Pana tribes", who, save in their more complete independence, differ in nothing from their neighbours.'

<sup>1</sup> On this country and the altitudes it will be sufficient to refer generally to Futterer, *Durch Asien*, i. pp. 329-441; d'Ollone, *In Forbidden China* (= *Les derniers Barbares*), pp. 225-81; Tafel, ii. pp. 275-321.

<sup>2</sup> See Filchner, *Das Rätsel des Matschü*, pp. 260-1, and route-map.



a junction with the high barren Altyn-tāgh, the southern barrier of Chinese Turkestan and the Lob-nor region.

Concerning the Altyn-tāgh, which bounds the Tsaidam on the north and north-west, we need note only that in the angle where it adjoins the Nan-shan is the most northerly part of the Tsaidam, the Sirtin district, whence an ancient route from the Tsaidam and Koko-nor areas crosses the mountains, descending by the valley of the Tang-ho to Nan-hu and Sha-chou (Tun-huang), in Chinese western Kan-su.

As a glance at the map will show, the great Nan-shan, extending with various subordinate partitions in a more or less south-easterly direction to Lan-chou on the Rma-chu (now Hoang-ho), has rivers flowing in long troughs in opposite directions, and at their highest points overlapping. The Su-lo-ho, flowing north-west, reaches western Kan-su, and, becoming the Bulungir, ends in the desert. The Pei-ta-ho and the Kan-chou river, taking at first opposite directions, descend eastwards to Su-chou and Kan-chou respectively, and after their union end, as the Etsin-gol, in the Gobi desert. Farther south the Charin-gol (P'ing-fan river) has a rather long valley, which reaches the Rma-chu not far west of Lan-chou. But historically the most important of the rivers is on the Tibetan side of the Nan-shan; this is the Ta-t'ung-ho, which in its highest reaches almost touches the sources of the Su-lo-ho, and which in a very long trough, dividing the Nan-shan from the North Koko-nor range of mountains, joins the Hoang-ho one or two days' journey west of Lan-chou; at no great distance from its mouth it has received, on its right bank, the Hsi-ning-ho, which has passed by the ancient town of Hsi-ning, to the east of the Koko-nor.

The Koko-nor itself, at an elevation of about 10,500 feet, has on its east the valley of the Hsi-ning river and other valleys with a north-west to south-east direction; it is embraced by the North and South Koko-nor ranges, which, however, leave on the shores of the lake, especially to its west, some rather extensive pasturage, famous in both ancient and modern times;<sup>1</sup> the combined prolongation of the two ranges constitutes the north-eastern boundary of the Tsaidam, and extends, more or less, to the above-mentioned Sirtin district.

<sup>1</sup> On this pasturage see Huc and Gabet, ii, p. 99; Prejevalsky, ii, pp. 144, 227; Tafel, ii, p. 81. A fuller description of the southern shore is to be seen in Futterer, *op. cit.* i, pp. 279 sqq.

## TOPOGRAPHY

For the purposes of this study (ethnographic, linguistic, and historical) not much needs to be premised in the way of topography; indeed most of the modern names on the maps are, as regards ancient times, uninformative or misleading. Mention has been made of Lha-sa, important as the capital of the great Tibetan *Btsan-pos*, no less than of their priestly successors; places on the grand route to Pe-king, namely the ancient Chamdo (*Chab-mdo*), on the upper Me-kong, then Ba-t'ang, near which the Hbri-chu is crossed, Li-t'ang, Ta-chien-lu, where is the Sino-Tibetan frontier, to which we may add Ya-chou, somewhat farther to the east, Kanzé<sup>1</sup> on the Ya-lung river, or Na(g)-chu, perhaps the old capital of the 'Women's Kingdom'; Jyekundo not far from the beginning of the Hbri-chu gorge, a place not known to be ancient, but important as a junction of routes; farther west the Tang-la pass, leading to the crossing of the Hbri-chu and the great routes to the north. On the upper T'ao river are two places, Shin-se and T'ao-chou, which figure in the Sino-Tibetan wars;<sup>2</sup> and on the lower south-north course of the same river are some places, Min-chou<sup>3</sup> and Ti-tao-chou<sup>4</sup> and others, attested in far earlier times;<sup>5</sup> on the Ta-hsia river, which reaches the Hoang-ho some distance west of the T'ao, is Ho-chou,<sup>6</sup> originally Ga-cu,<sup>7</sup> an early centre of Buddhism, now of Islam. East of the Koko-nor lake is Hsi-ning,<sup>8</sup> in Tibetan Zi-lin, a very ancient tribal centre and now the head-quarters of the Chinese local administration, subordinate to the Governor of the province of Hsin-chiang, the 'New Dominion', which includes the Koko-nor region, Kan-su, and Turkestan. Two short marches west of Hsi-ning is the Sino-Tibetan frontier town, Tankar,<sup>9</sup> Tonkhor, Donkyr, Dungkor,

<sup>1</sup> According to Rockhill, p. 242, = Tibetan *Dkañ-mdzes*.

<sup>2</sup> In the manuscript *Chronicle*, Zin-cu and Tehu-cu: for views of the modern places so named see Futterer, i, pp. 404-14 (Shin-se), 433 (T'ao-chou); Tafel, ii, Plates LXVII, LXIX (T'ao-chou).

<sup>3</sup> Views in Futterer, i, Plate XXXIV, and p. 442.

<sup>4</sup> Description in Tafel, i, p. 159.

<sup>5</sup> See *infra*, p. 41, and *reft*.

<sup>6</sup> Part view in Tafel, i, Plate XXXVI.

<sup>7</sup> *JRAS.* 1927, p. 552 (for *Ga-lu* read *Ga-cu*), *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 87.

<sup>8</sup> Views in Tafel, i, Plates XLV, XLVI, L. Rockhill gives (p. 49) other, European, forms of the name, *Sin-ju* (Marco-Polo), *Scilin*, *Scilingh*, *Silin*, &c. (Orazio de la Penna). Cf. Prejevalsky (Yule), ii, pp. 300-1.

<sup>9</sup> Various forms of the name in Ritter, *Geographie*, iv, p. 217; Riechthofen, i, p. 260; Rockhill, p. 109. Views in Futterer, i, pp. 259-69, ii, p. 61; Tafel, i, Plate XXXVIII.



Tang-keou-eul; and at about 20 miles south-west of Hsi-ning (Rockhill, p. 41) is Kum-bum, originally Hgo-boms,<sup>1</sup> where is the famous group of Buddhist monasteries.<sup>2</sup> Also near to Kum-bum was Tsoñ-ka, Great and Little, known many centuries before<sup>3</sup> it became, in A.D. 1355-7, the birthplace of the famous Buddhist reformer, Tsoñ-kha-pa. When the history of the struggles between the Ch'iang, and later the Tibetans, and the Chinese becomes topographically clear, several other localities in this Koko-nor region will acquire definiteness. Specially to be noticed on the map<sup>4</sup> is the subsidiary Great Wall, branching off south of Liang-chou in Kan-su, winding over the Nan-shan, crossing the Ta-t'ung-ho, and embracing Hsi-ning; after passing between Hsi-ning and Tankar<sup>5</sup> it crosses the Hoang-ho and then curves round as far as the vicinity of Ho-chou.

In China proper two places, Sung-p'an, originally Sung-chou,<sup>6</sup> on the Min river, and Mao-chou, in the north-west corner of Ssü-ch'uan, the old region of Shuh, have required mention. In Kan-su, east of Lan-chou and the line of the lower T'ao river, is the province of Lung-hsi, defined by the Lung mountains, which west of P'ing-liang stretch directly northwards towards Ning-hsia on the Hoang-ho; the Lung-hsi province, where are the head-waters of the Wei river, was the scene of most of the struggles between the Ch'iang and the Chinese during the centuries immediately preceding and following the beginning of the Christian era. From Lan-chou northwards, at the foot of the Nan-shan and passing successively through the ancient garrison towns of Liang-chou (Lem-cu, Wu-wei), Kan-chou (Chang-yih), Su-chou (Chiu-ch'uan),

<sup>1</sup> See *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 87.

<sup>2</sup> Views in Rockhill, p. 57, *Diary*, p. 26; Tafel, i, Plates XLVI-XLIX; Filchner, *Kumbum* (1933), *passim*; Tsibikov, *Buddist Palomnik u sviatun Tibeta*, pp. 23, 30, 36.

<sup>3</sup> *JRAS.* 1927, p. 552: mentioned also in the Tibetan manuscript *Chronicle* and in the 8th century inscriptions of Lha-sa.

<sup>4</sup> *Highlands of Tibet and Surrounding Regions*, Dehra Dun (1937?).

<sup>5</sup> Here noted by Huc and Gabet, i, p. 293; Rockhill, *Diary*, p. 94; in the Ta-t'ung-ho valley by Prejevalsky, ii, p. 73; in the Hsi-ning valley by Rockhill, p. 97. The inner line which passes by P'ing-fan and crosses the Hoang-ho near Hsin-ch'eng (about 30 miles west of Lan-chou) has been noted by Rockhill, p. 42, *Diary*, p. 60; and a portion may be seen in a photograph by Futterer, ii, p. 39. In A.D. 822 the Chinese envoy Yüan-ting saw to the north-west of the Lung-ch'uan valley, where the Huang river joins the Hoang-ho, 'the ancient fortifications of Koshu Han, of which there was still much remaining' (Bushell, *JRAS.* 1880, p. 519).

<sup>6</sup> Bushell, *JRAS.* 1880, p. 534 (63): view in d'Ollone, p. 212; Tafel, ii, Plate LXI.

and Tun-huang-Sha-chou, ran the Great Wall, defending against the desert tribes the highway to the Lob-nor region and Central Asia.

The really important topographical features of eastern and north-eastern Tibet are what on the map are designated 'main caravan routes'; some of them are probably ancient, and with the aid of the reports of modern explorers and geographers they may be understood.

#### POLITICAL AND ETHNOGRAPHICAL DIVISIONS OF TIBET

In this study we are primarily interested only in the north-eastern and eastern regions of Great Tibet. But, as the facts are not usually recognized, it is necessary to premise some general observations concerning the country as a whole.

That the northern boundary of Tibet proper is the Tang-la is recognized by all travellers from the north;<sup>1</sup> and the fact assumes for them a great practical importance, since it is only after passing the Tang-la that they meet with that determined official opposition which diverts them, either eastwards or westwards, from any further approach to Lha-sa. But we have more intimate evidence in the form of a diary<sup>2</sup> of a journey by the Pan-chen Blo-bzañ Dpal-ldan Ye-sés, of Tashilhunpo,<sup>3</sup> who in A.D. 1779 travelled from Lha-sa to Pe-king via the Koko-nor region, Kan-su, and Inner Mongolia. As far as Nag-chu-kha,<sup>4</sup> the first settlement south of the Tang-la, he is in Tibet proper, *Bod*: from that point until he reaches the borders of the Koko-nor region he is in *Khams*; then comes Upper Mongolia, *Stod-Sog*, so designated by reason of the Mongol tribes, 'Banners',<sup>5</sup> occupying parts of the country east, west, and south-west of the Koko-nor, also the Tsaidam; when he comes to Tankar and Kum-bum he is in Amdo; and at Hsi-ning, the head-quarters of the Chinese administration of north-eastern Tibet, he is in China, *Rgya*.

A glance at the map will show that far the greater area of 'Tibet' is north of the Tang-la. Lha-sa, the capital of Tibet

<sup>1</sup> See *supra*, p. 8.

<sup>2</sup> *JASB.* li (1882), pp. 43-52.

<sup>3</sup> Tib. *Bkra-sis-lhun-po*, 'Blessedness (or Auspiciousness) in mass'.

<sup>4</sup> Huc and Gabet's 'Na-Ptchu', 'the first Thibetian station' (ii, p. 131). Cf. Rockhill, *Diary*, pp. 233 sqq.; Filchner, *Om Mani Padme Hum*, pp. 198 sqq.

<sup>5</sup> Concerning these see the accounts cited *infra*, p. 23 and n. 1.



proper, is still more decidedly southern, since the distance separating it from the Tang-la is about twice as great as its distance from the Himālaya passes. Before the foundation of Lha-sa, in the first half of the seventh century A.D., the capital was by many days' journey still farther south, being at Yar-luñ, a place almost on the border of Bhutan. In order to estimate the extent of the kingdom inherited by Sroñ-btsan Sgam-po, the first really historical *Btsan-po*, note may be taken of the following facts: The Kailāsa region, the above-mentioned *Stod-phyogs*, was not included, because it was the territory of another kingdom, *Žaṅ-žun*, which was acquired in the time of Sroñ-btsan Sgam-po himself,<sup>1</sup> and had an entirely non-Tibetan, though Tibeto-Burman, speech.<sup>2</sup> As for the 'Low Country' of Ladak and Baltistan, its conquest and Tibetanization probably do not date before the end of the seventh century A.D., and its earlier history is problematical. The Brahmaputra valley, on the other hand, must be reckoned among the ancestral territories; for it was from Nepal, which is approached by that route, that the king obtained the first of his two famous consorts, and it was through Nepal that the combined Chinese and Tibetan armies invaded northern India after the death of the great emperor Harṣa in A.D. 646-7.<sup>3</sup>

Presumably the region of mountains and lakes north of the Brahmaputra, the district of Dok (Hbrog)-thol and, farther north, the district which for some unknown reason is called the Hor (Turk) Province, were also part of Sroñ-btsan Sgam-po's kingdom. The inhabitants are Tibetans, and their speech is rather normal Tibetan. But how far north into the actual Byañ-thaṅ Tibetan authority and Tibetan race extended among the very sparse nomad population is a matter in regard to which we have no light. North of the Tang-la must certainly have been the people mentioned by the Chinese T'ang *Annals* under the name *Yang-t'ung*,<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Tibetan manuscript *Chronicle* attributes the event to a year corresponding to circa A.D. 644. For a reference to the same occurrence see *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 54. The dynastic name of the *Žaṅ-žun* kings was Lig.

<sup>2</sup> See *JRAS.* 1933, pp. 405-10.

<sup>3</sup> Of this event an account, translated from Chinese, was given by Pauthier in the *Asiatic Journal* for 1836 (July and August), reproduced by Prinsep in *JASB.* vi (1837), pp. 69 sqq., and subsequently in the *Indian Antiquary*, ix, p. 20: with much additional information the matter was treated by Lévi in the *Journal Asiatique*, ix. xv (1900), pp. 279 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> See Bushell, p. 527 (9).

which seems to be only a representation of *Byan-than*. According to the Chinese<sup>1</sup> this people occupied the plateau south of Khotan, being divided into Lesser and Greater. The latter are said to have had a country extending over 1,000 *li*<sup>2</sup> from east to west, with the Tibetans on their east. They first communicated with the Chinese in A.D. 641, and in the *Annals* some account of their climate, their numbers (from 80,000 to 90,000 fighting men), and manners is given. What proves that they extended as far east as the Tang-la is that it was with their aid that Sron-btsan Sgam-po made his first expedition to the north to attack the T'u-yü-hun of the Koko-nor region; but they cannot have reached much farther east, since we have, as will appear *infra*, to find room for the Pai-lan. It is extremely unlikely that the Yang-t'ung were in a strict sense Tibetans; but possibly they were Ch'iang. The name *Byan-than*, even if used by the people themselves, is quite indecisive, since both its elements, *byan*, 'north', and *than*, 'plain', were current among the Ch'iang peoples.

The eastern boundary of Tibet proper is, likewise, somewhat indefinite. South of the Brahmaputra perhaps the most easterly district which is definitely Tibetan is Dwags-po, where the language, the 'Tákpá' of Hodgson,<sup>3</sup> is a clearly Tibetan dialect. Farther east and south-east the Tibetans recognize, in the south-eastern corner of their country, only semi-human cannibal beings, Blo-bkra<sup>4</sup> and others, to whom they were wont to send criminals to be eaten.

As far south as Ba-t'ang, on the 30th parallel of latitude, it seems probable that the valley of the Hbri-chu was the frontier of Sron-btsan Sgam-po's original kingdom. For, although the upper part of the next great river to the east, the Na(g)-chu or Ya-lung, is lined with states, Derge, Zog-chen, Hor-khog, &c.,<sup>5</sup> having at

<sup>1</sup> Bushell, p. 527 (9) and p. 520 (73).

<sup>2</sup> The *li* varies between  $\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a mile, depending partly upon the time required by the route.

<sup>3</sup> *JASB.* xxii (1853), pp. 142-51: the *Linguistic Survey of India*, i. ii, spells Tákpa.

<sup>4</sup> The Lo-tawa (<sup>o</sup>karpo and <sup>o</sup>nakpo) of maps.

<sup>5</sup> In the *Geografia Tibeta*, p. 47, the names of the states are given as *Sde-dge*, *Rdzogs-chen*, and *Hor-khog*, the last-named consisting of the five states *Khan-gsar*, *Ma-zi*, *Brag-mgo*, *Be-ri*, *Tre-o*. The places were visited by Rockhill (pp. 227-66) and Mrs. Rijnhart, *With the Tibetans in Tent and Field*, pp. 371 sqq., and later by Dr. Tafel (ii, pp. 168-96). Rockhill gives the names as *Derge*, *Zochen*, *Horchyok*; the 'five Horba clans', *Horsé-k'a-nga* (pp. 44 n., 242), being given as *Kangsar*, *Mazur*, *Bérin*, *Chuwu*, and



present Tibetan population and speech, there is reason for believing that in the seventh century A.D. that was not the case. In regard to the lower valley of the same river, the *Na(g)-roñ* or Chan-tui, Rockhill remarks (*The Land of the Lamas*, p. 345) that:

'The tribes inhabiting along the lower course of the Nya-ch'u are called Mān-nya-k'a or "inhabitants of the lower Nya-ch'u" and are the Meniak of Hodgson, the Menia of Baber.'<sup>1</sup>

We must take some exception to the philology of Rockhill's statement; for a Mi-ñag man is mentioned in Tibetan company in an eighth-century document from Chinese Turkestan, and the name is otherwise also known in the old literature (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, p. 263, n. 1) and also in old Bon-po manuscripts.<sup>2</sup> Thus the real name of the river is *Ñag*,<sup>3</sup> and the modern *Na* is only an example of the dropping of final consonants, which is characteristic of all the Tibetan and Tibeto-Burman dialects of the Chinese frontier.

The Mi-ñag language, as represented by Hodgson's lists,<sup>4</sup> has many Tibetan affinities and apparently not a few borrowings; but it has also definite features which associate it with another group. For applying to the people the term *Ch'iang* we have no authority, and, considering their rather southern habitat, it might seem venturesome to do so; they had, however, neighbours who certainly belonged to that ethnic group.

This is the place for reference to the tribes occupying the vicinity of a river still farther to the east, the Chin-ch'uan, the 'Gold River', which, flowing from north to south, becomes the Yü-t'ung and crosses the 30th parallel somewhat to the east of

*Chango*. Concerning the name-forms see *infra*, pp. 81-5. The chief town of Khañ-gsar is Kanzé (*Dkañ-mdzes*, Rockhill, p. 242 n. 1). For an older notice see Baber (p. 95).

The word *Hor* has nothing to do with *Hor*, 'Turk', and according to Baber (p. 95 n.) it is differently pronounced. Very possibly the original single kingdom (Rockhill, p. 253 n.) is the *Hor-mañ* of an old Tibetan manuscript. Concerning the pleasing physiognomy of the people and the state of education among them see Rockhill, pp. 243, 245-6, and cf. Hodgson, pp. 138-9.

<sup>1</sup> Royal Geographical Society *Supplementary Papers*, i, p. 95. Baber here points out that the Menia country extends some distance east of the Yalung river.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. the 'Ldoñ Me-ñag' of Francke's *Antiquities of Indian Tibet*, ii, pp. 65-6.

<sup>3</sup> This is, in fact, the spelling of the *Geografia Tibeta*, pp. 45-6, and it is still heard, being used by Amundsen in his travel narrative (*Geographical Journal*, 1900, i, p. 621).

<sup>4</sup> *JASB.* xxii (1853), pp. 143 sqq.

Ta-chien-lu; afterwards, as the T'ung-ho, it falls into the Min near Kia-ting. The country has a Tibetan name, *Rgyal-mo-roñ*, 'Queen's (King's?)<sup>1</sup> gorge', and it is the 'Gyáruñ' of Hodgson's vocabulary and the country of von Rosthorn's vocabularies (*ZDMG.* li (1897), pp. 524-33, with a sketch-map). Rockhill gives (op. cit., pp. 346-53) a Chinese administration list of the 'Thirty-three Yü-t'ung Hsi-fan tribes'. But more apposite are his lists of the 'Eighteen Kingdoms of Eastern Tibet', for which he had the authority of an official and of a Lama in Ta-chien-lu. In 1886 Baber had given (*R. Geographical Society, Supplementary Papers*, i, pp. 81-2) a list of the 'twelve Sifan tribes', which his sketch-map, even apart from the names, shows to be those of the *Rgyal-roñ*. Parts of the country were traversed during the period 1903-7 by Mr. W. N. Fergusson, and again, in company with Lieutenant Brooke and Mr. Meares, in 1908 (see Fergusson, *Adventure, &c.*); but the fullest account of the country is given by Dr. Tafel in his *Meine Tibetreise*, vol. ii, pp. 212 sqq.

Concerning the names of these states we may refer to the discussion *infra*, pp. 81-5. It is remarked by Rockhill (p. 344) that one of the states, So-mo, is situated near Sung-p'an t'ing and is at present (1891) ruled by a woman; the So-mo district was visited by Lieutenant Brooke and his party (Fergusson, pp. 144 sqq., 173), and Dr. Tafel also had in 1914 an interview with the So-mo ruling lady. This peculiarity, which had previously been noted by Gill (*The River of Golden Sand*, p. 123) and which, we are told in the *Later Han Annals*,<sup>2</sup> was not alien to Ch'iang ideas, has a

<sup>1</sup> The spelling *Rgyal-mo-roñ* is given by the *Geografia Tibeta* (pp. 41, 46) and it is, perhaps, correct, since the *l* would have been lost both in the Lha-sa pronunciation and in the local speech; but the suffix *mo* does not necessarily in such a compound denote femininity.

Dr. Tafel's *rDyarong* (ii, p. 229) follows a pronunciation, but the rendering (p. 223) 'extensive or Chinese valley' would not be inevitable.

The *Gyáruñ* of the *Linguistic Survey* volume (i. ii) and Dr. Laufer's *Jyaruñ*, Dr. Wolfenden *Jyá-rüñ*, ignore the fact that the term is Tibetan.

It is, however, possible that the *Rgyal(-roñ)* of the *Geografia Tibeta* is itself an etymologizing perversion of a non-Tibetan tribal name *Gyar*, now pronounced *Jyar*: this is suggested by the numerous place-names, *Giyarlung*, *Giyartang*, *Giyardo*, *Giyarsa*, *Giyarmu*, recorded in the Manchu report translated by Dr. Haenisch in Sir Swen Hedin's *Southern Tibet*, ix, pp. 67 sqq. In that case it may go back to the old tribal name *Byar*, concerning which see *infra*, p. 34. At present it seems reasonable to keep the spelling of the *Geografia*.

<sup>2</sup> Wylie, *Revue de l'Extrême-Orient*, ii, p. 476. Dr. Tafel mentions (ii, p. 291) even a Go-lok tribal queen.



considerable interest, because undoubtedly So-mo and, perhaps, all the states of the Rgyal-roñ, were in earlier times part of the 'Women's Kingdom', famous in the Sui and T'ang *Annals* and in Chinese popular knowledge as *Nü-kuo*.<sup>1</sup> For a summary of the Chinese information, including an account of the dimensions and situation of the territory, of the political history of the state and the manners of the people, a reference may be made to Dr. Bushell's note in *JRAS.* 1880 (pp. 531-2) and to Rockhill, *op. cit.*, pp. 339-41. The people were known to the Tibetans, who, however, are not informative, as *Sum-pa*,<sup>2</sup> and individual *Sum-pas* are mentioned; elsewhere we have given text and translation of a collection of sayings, 'Sum-pa Mother's sayings', in Tibetan from an eighth-to-ninth-century manuscript.

The 'Women's Kingdom' was of considerable extent. There were over 40,000 families, 10,000 warriors. The eastern frontier stretched in an approximately north-south direction from Mao-chou (in the Sung-p'an region) to Ya-chou, somewhat east of Ta-chien-lu.<sup>3</sup> From east to west was 9 days' journey, from north to south 20 days. The state included over 80 'cities', large and small. The people were scattered in mountain valleys.

Upon this information we may incline to the belief that the kingdom extended westward as far as the upper Ña(g)-chu, and that its capital, in 'the Kang-yen valley, a narrow, precipitous gorge, around which flows the Jô<sup>4</sup> river in a southerly direction', was in fact Kanzé on the Ña(g)-chu, which Rockhill visited (*op. cit.*, pp. 239 sqq.)<sup>5</sup> This kingdom must have been the northern neighbour of the Mi-ñag.

It seems possible that this original westward extension of the 'Women's Kingdom' may explain a peculiarity of Rockhill's two lists in comparison with the other versions. Rockhill speaks of the 'Eighteen tribes of the Nya-rong'; and in fact a number of the names in his versions are names of Hor-pa principalities of the

<sup>1</sup> This fact was 'suspected' by Mr. Edgar, *The Marches of the Mantze*, p. 64.

<sup>2</sup> Probably as *Ldoñ-Sum-pa* (in a Bon-po manuscript work), = the *Gtoñ-gsum-pa* of Francke, *Antiquities of Indian Tibet*, ii, pp. 65-6. According to the Chinese *Su-pi* (= *Sum-pa*) was the queen's family name.

<sup>3</sup> It is interesting to read (Edgar, *op. cit.*, p. 61) that 'politically and ecclesiastically' the boundary between Chinese dominion and semi-independent Tibet is here practically, though not theoretically, still along the same line.

<sup>4</sup> Bushell, *Je*.

<sup>5</sup> See also Tafel, ii, pp. 177 sqq., and view in Plate XXXVIII.



upper Ya-lung river, or Ña(g)-chu. But most of the names in his lists belong, as do those of the other lists, to the districts of the Chin-ch'uan river, i.e. the Rgyal-roñ; and Rockhill himself recognizes this, locating some of them on the Chin-ch'uan river and noting that So-mo is near to Sung-p'an. It seems possible that some reminiscence of the original ethnical situation may have been in the minds of Rockhill's informants.

The people of the 'Women's Kingdom' are definitely recognized by the Chinese *Annals* as Ch'iang;<sup>1</sup> and from the Tibetan side this is confirmed by the *Geografia Tibeta*, which, after giving (p. 46) the names of the 'Eighteen States', remarks that 'all these peoples, such as Mi-ñag, Rgyal-mo-roñ (these also in *Padma-thaṅ-yig*, tr. Tous-saint, pp. 298 sqq.) peoples and Mi-li, are not proper Tibetans'.<sup>2</sup>

Nevertheless they can hardly be regarded as typical Ch'iang; occupying permanent settlements in roñ districts, partly well wooded and thickly populated,<sup>3</sup> they represent a stage more developed than that of the true nomad Ch'iang of the high thaṅs. And this was the case in early times, as we see from the Chinese descriptions, with the mention of the '80 cities', and as appears from the tone of the '*Sum-pa Mother's sayings*'.

The Rgyal-roñ language is represented by the Gyārūṅ vocabulary of Hodgson and by those of von Rosthorn, who distinguishes several dialects,<sup>4</sup> and Wolfenden. Dr. Tafel, who also notes various dialects of 'Kin-tschuan' speech, including one, that of 'Krets-chiu', which is markedly distinct (ii, pp. 248 n. 1, 263), informs us that, whereas the native language is never written (ii, p. 230),<sup>5</sup> Tibetan proper is not ordinarily understood in the country, except by persons who have been in connexion with the local monasteries, Buddhist or Bon-po. He gives (pp. 230-40) some interesting items of the vocabulary and also communicates (pp. 232-3) six lines of a song, which he says is 'half in Tibetan, half in Kin-tschuan language'. To this matter it will be necessary to recur, since the mixture is a topic of great importance in regard to the 'Hsi-fan' languages generally, and the actual proportion of half-to-half requires revision in the light of the translation which Dr. Tafel

<sup>1</sup> Bushell, pp. 473, 532; Rockhill, p. 340.

<sup>2</sup> The people of Dmar-khams (SW. of Ba-t'ang) also are described (p. 44) as 'savage and coarse and in language resembling the Mi-ñag'.

<sup>3</sup> See Edgar, *The Marches of the Mantze*, pp. 7, 48, 64; Tafel, ii, p. 241. So generally in E. Tibet, Rockhill, p. 196; Gill, pp. 198-9, 227-8, &c.; Tafel, ii, pp. 172, 196-7, &c.

<sup>4</sup> See *infra*, pp. 71, 89.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Fergusson, *op. cit.*, pp. 126, 255.

communicates. The Rgyal-roñ language has, as was remarked by Hodgson in 1853, and by von Rosthorn's editor, Professor Conrady, in 1897, a special feature, namely possession of syllabic, classificatory, prefixes, which is less prominent in other 'Hsi-fan' languages.<sup>1</sup>

In the northern part of the Rgyal-roñ Dr. Tafel takes note (ii, pp. 254, 256, 282) of the Chinese Musalman tea-traders,<sup>2</sup> who from that quarter penetrate far into the 'Go-lok' country; and he was aware of nomads, obviously Go-lok, bringing skins, wool, and other wares in the reverse direction. Since the upper valleys on the south of the Bayankara range and to the north of the states on the upper Ya-lung river and to the north and north-west of the Rgyal-roñ are considered to be Go-lok country,<sup>3</sup> those individuals may have come from that quarter. But the main habitat of these marauding tribes is north of the Bayankara, in the long valley of the upper Rma-chu, from the two lakes, Charing-nor and Oring-nor,<sup>4</sup> as far as its knee and still farther east; also the country east of the gorge of the Rma-chu, as far as the south-north stretch of the T'ao river; and again a mountainous area north of the actual Koko-nor and another area to its south.<sup>5</sup>

The meaning of the term *Go-lok*<sup>6</sup> is not definitely known; by Futterer, Filchner, and Tafel it is spelled Ngolok;<sup>7</sup> if it was so heard by them, it may be, in fact, the Tibetan expression *no-log*, 'recalcitrant', 'rebel'.<sup>8</sup> It is likely that this term is not a racial or national one, but is applied to the tribes simply with reference to their marauding and thievish practices, which have made them the terror of all travellers, both foreign and native, in north-eastern Tibet. Though nominally Buddhist and having Buddhist monasteries, including the great establishment of Bla-bran (Lhabrang),<sup>9</sup> in their country, they wear their religion lightly, and pilgrim travellers, whether in small or in great companies, have reason to

<sup>1</sup> See *infra*, p. 96.

<sup>2</sup> The Sharbas of Rockhill, pp. 54, 112.

<sup>3</sup> Rockhill, pp. 188-9, 228, 232; Tafel, ii, pp. 170 and n. 3, 247, 253, 258, 291.

<sup>4</sup> On these names see p. 4 n. 4.

<sup>5</sup> See the map.

<sup>6</sup> Hue and Gabet's *Koko* (ii, p. 100).

<sup>7</sup> The *Geografia Tibeta* seems to spell *Mgo-log* (p. 48). Elsewhere (p. 45) it uses the expression *rkun-jag*, 'thieves-robbers', the latter syllable being the '*Chakpa* or *Jagpa*' of Hodgson, p. 123.

<sup>8</sup> Tafel, ii, p. 291 n. 2.

<sup>9</sup> Views in d'Ollone, pp. 282, 284, 286; Tafel, ii, Plates LXVI, LXXI; Tsibikov, p. 41; Kozlov-Filchner, *Mongolei, Amdo und die tote Stadt Charachoto*, pp. 197-213.



beware of them. The name accepted by them, in common with all Tibetans of the Koko-nor region is *Panak'a*, usually with the addition of *sum*, 'three', with reference to the triple division stated above.<sup>1</sup> Rockhill (*Diary*, p. 112) interprets the name *Pa-nag* as meaning the 'eight' (*pa* = Chinese *pa[r]*, 'eight') 'Nag tribes'; but the explanation of Dr. Tafel,<sup>2</sup> who restricts the term *Go-lok* to the tribes of the upper Rma-chu, is far preferable; he states (i, p. 177 n.) that all Koko-nor (nomad) Tibetans are called *Banag*, probably by reason of their 'black tents'; and in fact the black tents (*sbra-nag*) of the Tibetans were proverbial even in the eighth century A.D. (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, p. 273.) The Koko-nor Panag are described as 'Tangutans' in Prejevalsky's *Mongolia* (trans., vol. ii, pp. 109-22) and also by Dr. Filchner in his *Kumbum* (1933, pp. 383, 390, 476 sqq.); for those east of the Rma-chu gorge we have good lights in *Durch Asien*, by Dr. Futterer, who traversed the country from Kuei-tê to, and along, the T'ao river, and also the more lively narrative of the Vicomte d'Ollone (trans., *In Forbidden China*, pp. 240 sqq.); and an intimate picture of the Panag or Go-lok of the upper Rma-chu is to be seen in Dr. Filchner's book of travel and adventure, *Das Rätsel des Matschû* (pp. 105 sqq.).

Geographically, as is apparent from the above sketch, there is no breach in their continuity, since, as we have seen, there is between the two southern divisions of them easy communication by way of the Rma-chu knee, and since south of the Koko-nor the Rma-chu is not in modern times, and was not in ancient times, a barrier.

It is not worth while to cite the names of particular settlements and tribes recorded by modern travellers or entered on the maps.<sup>3</sup> The localities are not likely to be ancient; and the tribal divisions may have been continuously fluid, as they are stated to have been in early centuries. Possibly the Me-tsang tribe, placed on the map some distance to the south of the Rma-chu knee, may be the Mi-sang mentioned by the Chinese T'ang *Annals* as among the Ch'iang tribes on the southern border of the Tang-hsiang kingdom; and the Sam-sa tribe, near the knee of the Rma-chu, may be the Sam-tsia of ancient times (*infra*, p. 41).

<sup>1</sup> Rockhill, p. 73, *Diary*, pp. 112-13, with a list of tribes, pp. 113-14.

<sup>2</sup> i, pp. 177-8 n., and ii, pp. 291-2 with a list of the tribes on the upper Rma-chu.

<sup>3</sup> See Filchner, *Das Rätsel des Matschû* and sketch-map; Tafel, ii, pp. 291-2; also the narratives of Futterer and d'Ollone.

These Panak'a Go-lok tribes seem to be the genuine descendants of the Ch'iang. In sociology, manners, and dress they appear to differ little from their predecessors, whom the Chinese Sui and T'ang *Annals*<sup>1</sup> describe as in morals and customs the worst of savages; they were all fighting men and much given to robbing and plundering. They did not (in most places) till the soil. They got barley from neighbouring countries; from it they made a fermented drink. At present they include in their diet the tsamba (*rtsam-pa*, parched barley meal) of the Tibetans; and tea, brought by the Chinese Sharba Musalmans from Sung-p'an and Ta-chien-lu, is to them as indispensable as it is to all Tibetans. In their armature they have progressed to guns and rifles;<sup>2</sup> but the long spears depicted in the illustrations of all modern books of travel<sup>3</sup> are perhaps similar to those mentioned in the *Later Han Annals* (*infra*, p. 39). The statement that against cold and privations they were hardened like beasts is well illustrated by the Vicomte d'Ollone's lively narrative concerning his Go-lok escort (p. 261):

'At early dawn there was a sudden lull in the storm. . . . We looked round for our Tibetans, meaning to order them to load the pack train, but there were no Tibetans to be seen. Had they deserted? But no, their yaks were there, and even their enormous lances, thrust vertically into the soil. Where were they?

'At the foot of the lances we saw the snow moving, and on looking closely we noticed swellings in the dense white carpet. These swellings represented the Tibetans, who were sleeping the sleep of the just. They had no need of tents; unloosing their girdles, which had kilted their sheepskins up to their knees, they allowed the former to fall over their feet, turned their collars up over their ears, turned down the woolly borders of their caps, and with their naked bodies thus protected they reclined peacefully in the snow, leaving it to cover them with a warm counterpane. Rather too warm, if anything! When at our summons they awoke, their first care was to throw back their cloaks and bathe their bodies in the freezing wind.'

Naturally the conditions would be modified in the districts bordering on China and along the Rma-chu and other rivers where there were fixed settlements and some cultivation of 'the five cereals'.

<sup>1</sup> Rockhill, pp. 337-8.

<sup>2</sup> Dr. Filchner mentions (*Om Mani Padme Hum*, p. 145) their 'modern weapons'.

<sup>3</sup> Filchner, *Das Rätsel*, &c., pp. 200, 364; d'Ollone, pp. 232, 250, 268, 274.



The Panak'a occupy, as has been stated, extensive areas of Hbrog country, both on the north and on the south-west of the Koko-nor. Their western neighbours are the Mongols, whose settlements and encampments are found both on the north of the actual Tsaidam swamp, as far as the Sirtin district in the extreme north, and also to the south of it along the route to Charklik in Chinese Turkestan. Also on routes diverging westwards from Bokalik, where are ancient gold workings, and the Hajjar district, to the Tokuz-dawān and Cer-cen in Chinese Turkestan, the very sparse population is Mongol; moreover, immediately to the west, and also to the east, of the Koko-nor itself are Mongol settlements, and even as far down the Hoang-ho valley as the mouth of the Ta-t'ung-ho river there is an old Mongol population.<sup>1</sup>

Ordinary Tibetan speech and mixed race are represented by the monasteries, on the one hand, and by towns, such as Tankar, and permanent villages to the south and south-west of the Koko-nor,<sup>2</sup> on the other; also, of course, by travelling and trading Tibetans, especially from Khams.<sup>3</sup> Hsi-ning, which has a Chinese administration and partly Chinese or semi-Chinese population, and also Lushar and Kum-bum, through the attraction of the famous monastery, are very cosmopolitan.<sup>4</sup> Hsi-ning, with its telegraph and its British missionary station, is not infrequently visited by European, including Russian, travellers and trade agents, also individual traders from Chinese Turkestan and even India; and there are, further, the official and trade connexions with Lan-chou, the provincial capital, and so with China in general. Then there are the compulsory ceremonial visits of Mongol and other chiefs from the Tsaidam and elsewhere, and visits in connexion with particular questions and disputes.<sup>5</sup> The Chinese Amban's travelling agents<sup>6</sup> are also arriving from distant places with their reports. From the surrounding areas there are Mongol and Tibetan traders, bringing

<sup>1</sup> On these Mongols and their tribes ('Banners') and history see Hue and Gabet, ii, pp. 99-102; Prejevalsky, ii, pp. 148-52, 168-9; Rockhill, pp. 135-67, 171-2, 176, 180; *Diary*, pp. 156-60; Tafel, i, pp. 187-93, ii, pp. 68-70.

<sup>2</sup> Rockhill was convinced (p. 72) of the mixed descent of these T'u-fan, whose speech also contained 'a large proportion of Chinese, Turkish, and Mongol words and expressions'.

<sup>3</sup> Rockhill, pp. 111, 129. On the Kham-pas in general see Sandberg, *op. cit.*, pp. 154-8; Tafel, ii, pp. 143, sqq., and *supra*, p. 8 and n. 2.

<sup>4</sup> See, for instance, Rockhill, pp. 40, 110-12, and Tafel, ii, p. 83.

<sup>5</sup> See Rockhill, p. 54; Tafel, ii, p. 69.

<sup>6</sup> On these *t'ung-shih* see Rockhill, pp. 52-3.



salt, skins, musk, Lha-sa incense-sticks, &c., while tea and some other Chinese articles come to Tankar and Hsi-ning through the Go-lok country, brought by Sharba Musalmans from Sung-p'an in Ssü-ch'uan.

The Turkî-speaking Musalman Salars,<sup>1</sup> numerous in Hsi-ning, but congregated chiefly in the district of Ho-chou and farther west, at Hsun-hwa, on the Rma-chu, are said to have come from Turfan or Hami in Chinese Turkestan, during the fifteenth to sixteenth century, while a greater historical interest belongs to a tribe Tung-hou, reported in an eighteenth-century Chinese work and claiming descent from the Sha-t'o Turk tribe, which was transported by the Tibetans to Kan-chou after the conquest of Pei-t'ing in A.D. 790.<sup>2</sup>

Concerning the Chinese side of the Nan-shan and the line of the lower T'ao river it does not seem possible to venture upon any positive statement. In regard to the people of Kan-su Fathers Huc and Gabet, whose route was from Ning-hsia in a south-west direction to P'ing-fan, remark (English translation, i, p. 281) that:

'a very slight observation of the inhabitants of Kan-su will satisfy one that they are not of purely Chinese origin. The Tartaro-Thibetian element is manifestly predominant amongst them, and it displays itself with special emphasis in the character, manners and language of the country people.'

and they proceed to give particulars. These observations of the two Fathers, whose natural acuteness was reinforced by familiarity with Chinese and Mongol language and life, would be confirmed by the Chinese themselves, aware that, despite ages of Sinification, the population of Kan-su retains peculiarities of speech and habits. But the history of the province has been so complicated by invasions, immigrations, deportations, dynasties, and foreign dominations that the available information is a chaos. The actual topographical nomenclature, which might have been a help, is hidden beneath a network of Chinese official designations. In regard to the pre-Chinese period (down to 121 B.C.) one or two facts do emerge, but ethnographically and linguistically they are not sufficiently definite.

It is, however, undeniable that down to modern times the

<sup>1</sup> On the Salars see *Geografia Tibeta*, p. 51; Prejevalsky, ii, p. 149; Rockhill, pp. 39-40, 323, *Diary*, pp. 62, 66, 76-83; Grenard, ii, pp. 455, 457; Tafel, i, pp. 161-5.

<sup>2</sup> Rockhill, pp. 44-5, 325; Bushell, p. 533 (57).

eastern flanks of the Nan-shan and the line of the T'ao river retained many tribes or fragments of Ch'iang peoples, either settled as agriculturists, in Chinese territory or otherwise, or reckoned as independent. In *The Land of the Lamas* (pp. 323-6) Rockhill gives from an eighteenth-century Chinese text<sup>1</sup> a list of 'Foreign Tribes of Kan-su', which includes many names of Hsi-ch'iang and Hsi-fan groups, some belonging to the districts of Su-chou, Kan-chou, and Liang-chou, others to Ho-chou and the line of the lower T'ao river, as well as tribes of the Hsi-ning and Koko-nor region. But the groups are too small and numerous, and the data concerning their history too few and dubious, to allow of any wide inference as to a continuous Ch'iang occupation of the districts where they are found; one or two are stated to have immigrated from the Koko-nor region, and some of them, not said to be of Hsi-ch'iang descent, may be merely Tibetan. Also it is not stated to what extent they were in speech still non-Chinese.

#### HISTORICAL SITUATION IN NORTH-EASTERN TIBET DURING THE SEVENTH TO EIGHTH CENTURY A.D.

In order to arrive at the conditions existing in Amdo during the seventh and eighth centuries A.D. it is necessary to peel off, so to speak, a number of accretions belonging to later times. First the existing Chinese administrations from Hsi-ning, whose travelling agents (*t'ung-shih*) were met by Rockhill even as far as the upper reaches of the Hbri-chu,<sup>2</sup> where they were almost in contact with the authority of the Governor-General of Ssü-ch'uan. This administration is attended by a vast amount of the precise gazetteer information favoured by the Chinese. Rockhill himself made use of a gazetteer work<sup>3</sup> relating to the Koko-nor region; and in Dr. Filchner's map of the Chinese province Kan-su<sup>4</sup> we find the whole area, including much of the Panak'a country, studded with names, largely, so far as that country, at least, is concerned, otherwise unknown, and all systematically transcribed from a Chinese map giving the administrative divisions. This Chinese rule is an inheritance from the Mongol dynasty, the Mongols under Cingiz Khan having, by the overthrow (A.D. 1226) of the Tangut empire (NE. Tibet and most of the Chinese province of Kan-su), brought all north-eastern Tibet under Mongol suzerainty. To this

<sup>1</sup> *Huang-ch'ing-chih-kung-t'u*, Book V.

<sup>2</sup> Pp. 162, 165.

<sup>3</sup> *Diary*, p. 96 (*Hsi-ning Fu hsin chih*).

<sup>4</sup> *Wissenschaftliche Ergebnisse der Expedition Filchner*, iii, Berlin, 1910.



conquest and the subsequent long domination of the successors of Gengiz Khan and Kublai Khan, followed by the invasion of Gusri Khan in A.D. 1636, must be attributed the fact that the map of the whole area is full of Mongol names; all the *nor*'s (*Koko-nor*, 'Blue Lake', *Dabasun-nor*, 'Salt Lake', *Tosun-nor*, 'Butter Lake', *Charing-nor*, *Oring-nor*, &c.), all the *ula*'s ('mountains'), most of the *gols* ('rivers, river-valleys'), some particular names, such as *Bayankara*, *Murus-ussu* (the Hbri-chu), the *Barön* and *Jün*, 'Right and Left', districts in the Tsaidam, *Odontala* ('Star-plain', = Tibetan *Skar-ma-than*) by the uppermost Rma-chu, &c., are due either to this domination or to the long ecclesiastical connexion between Mongolia, Kum-bum, and Lha-sa. The Pan-chen Dpal-ldan Ye-sés, as we have seen (p. 13), regards the whole of Amdo west of the Koko-nor as *Stod-Sog*, 'Upper Mongolia'. All such names and also the Mongol 'Banners' and settlements in the Tsaidam and the Koko-nor districts, and among the Panak'as and elsewhere farther south, have to be erased from the picture.

The pre-Mongol Tangut kingdom, of which the Chinese *Annals* give a very substantial account,<sup>1</sup> was under a Ch'iang (Tang-hsiang) dynasty, and its language, the Hsi-hsia, was presumably a Ch'iang dialect; from A.D. 1035 to 1226 it cut off the Tibetans from all interference in Amdo and Kan-su. The Tibetan domination in Amdo may be said to have begun about A.D. 635, when the Btsan-po, Sroñ-btsan Sgam-po, having in his application for a Chinese princess as a consort received a rebuff, which he attributed to the T'u-yü-hun dynasty of the Koko-nor,

'thereupon, together with the Yangtung, led the united armies to attack the T'ukuhun. The T'ukuhun were unable to withstand him, and fled to the banks of the Ch'inghai [Koko-nor] to escape the edge of the sword. . . . He next led on his troops, attacked and defeated the Tanghsiang, the Pailan, and other Ch'iang tribes, and at the head of an army of over 200,000 men, encamped on the western border of Sungchou (Sung-p'an), whence he sent envoys to the emperor.'<sup>2</sup>

After a temporary success at Sung-chou he sustained a defeat and retired.

This occurrence opened the long struggle between the Tibetans and the Chinese Empire, which empire was by all the peoples mentioned, as well as by the Tanguts in later times, acknowledged

<sup>1</sup> See Bichurin, *Istoria Tibeta i Khukhunora*, ii, pp. 1-164.

<sup>2</sup> Bushell, p. 444.



as suzerain. In Amdo during the remainder of the seventh century and the first part of the eighth the conflicts took place usually in the country between the Koko-nor and the Rma-chu;<sup>1</sup> and the peace of A.D. 730<sup>2</sup> between Chinese, Tibetans, Hjan (Tang-hsiang), and Drug (Turks of Central Asia), was commemorated on the part of the Tibetans by a great Buddhist foundation, established near the frontier then fixed in the Byar-mo-thañ district, west of the Koko-nor.<sup>3</sup> We may, therefore, understand that the Chinese were still maintaining their ancient administrative area within the above- (p. 12) mentioned branch of the Great Wall. Later the Tibetans advanced farther and farther into China, until in A.D. 763 they actually entered the capital, Hsi-ngan-fu, or Ch'ang-an, in Shen-hsi, far down the Wei river; during this second period most of the operations took place in the Tang-hsiang country and along the line of the T'ao river, and the treaty of A.D. 783 fixed the boundary on the border of Shen-hsi, far within Chinese territory.

The subsequent history of the Tibetan dominion in Amdo and the east does not greatly, except in regard to language and the Buddhist religion, concern us here. To the matter of language we shall return.

As regards Buddhism, the foundation in the Byar-mo-thañ may have been its first introduction into Amdo, at least as far as Tibetan Buddhism is concerned, but it seems possible that in Ho-chou there may have been an earlier establishment from the Chinese side. During the period of Tibetan rule there must have been a continuous increase in the number of Buddhist monasteries, which now are everywhere to be found. The Tangut kingdom was, from the eleventh century onwards, professedly Buddhist, and in its language, the Hsi-hsia, are many volumes and fragments of texts, recovered by Russian and British excavations<sup>4</sup> at Khara-khoto on the Etsingol river in the Gobi desert; also some inscriptions and coin legends, published at an earlier date. In the Tangut home country (Tang-hsiang) there is, in addition to the great establishment of Lhabrang (*Bla-brañ*), a monastery in the territory of the Co-ne tribe, celebrated for its somewhat independent edition

<sup>1</sup> This appears both from the *T'ang Annals*, as rendered by Bushell, and from the Tibetan manuscript *Chronicle*.

<sup>2</sup> Bushell, p. 466.

<sup>3</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 104-9.

<sup>4</sup> See Kozlov-Filehner, *Mongolei, Amdo und die tote Stadt Chara-choto* (Berlin, 1925), and Sir A. Stein, *Innermost Asia*, i, pp. 429 sqq.

of the Lamaist canon.<sup>1</sup> Nevertheless, along all the Sino-Tibetan frontier from the 'Women's Kingdom' northwards the Bon-po religion maintains itself in despite of orthodox disapproval;<sup>2</sup> and in pre-Tibetan times this, in some early forms, was the religion of all Ch'iang peoples.

The T'u-yü-hun kingdom, which preceded the Tibetans and of which also the Chinese *Annals* furnish an extensive dynastic account,<sup>3</sup> was an extraneous element, perhaps only a ruling race, in Amdo. The people were of what the Chinese name 'Sien-pi' stock, originated in north-eastern Asia and in language more akin to the Mongols than to the Turks. From A.D. 313, when they first invaded the Koko-nor region, until their final defeat and expulsion by the Tibetans in 663 they dominated that area during 350 years, having as their capital a place called Fussü ch'êng,<sup>4</sup> 15 li west of the Koko-nor, and as their southern boundary the Rma-chu; during the latter part of the period their rule extended, under Chinese suzerainty, which they frequently resisted, to parts of Chinese Turkestan (the Shan-shan kingdom from about A.D. 445) and Kan-su (Sha-chou, Liang-chou). For our purpose their significance lies in the fact that the separate existence of the Tang-hsiang kingdom, south of the Rma-chu, was perhaps a reaction from their occupation of the Hsi-ning-Koko-nor district, which had previously been the centre of influence for all the tribes.

The Tang-hsiang kingdom,<sup>5</sup> which, as we have seen, had the Rma-chu and the T'u-yü-hun on its north, is stated in the Sui *Annals* to have bordered to the east on Lin- and T'ao-chou, which would mean the line of the lower T'ao river. The T'ang *Annals*, which mention that since the period A.D. 535-581 the Tang-hsiang people had greatly spread and now bordered to the east on Sung-chou (Sung-p'an) and to the south on the Ch'un-sang, Mi-sang, and other Ch'iang tribes, may indicate an extension in a south-easterly

<sup>1</sup> *Geografia Tibeta*, p. 50. On Co-ne see Tafel, ii, pp. 296, 305 (Dschoni); a view of the village (Pschoni, Cho-nieh, on the T'ao river) in Futterer, op. cit. i, pp. 435-6, with description.

<sup>2</sup> For notices see Rockhill, pp. 217-18, 275, *Diary* (Index); Tafel, ii, pp. 82, 185, 199, 229, 236, 240, 246; d'Ollone, p. 212; Futterer, i, p. 279; Edgar, p. 63; Fergusson, pp. 104, 200, 242, 249-50.

<sup>3</sup> Bichurin, op. cit., i, pp. 74-99; cf. Bushell, pp. 527-8 (11); Rockhill, pp. 335-6.

<sup>4</sup> Bushell, loc. cit.

<sup>5</sup> Bichurin, op. cit., i, pp. 237-58. See also Bushell, p. 528 (12); Rockhill, pp. 337-8.



direction, and may explain the statement concerning the 'Women's Kingdom' that it had the Tang-hsiang and Mao-chou on the east,<sup>1</sup> whereas in fact the Tang-hsiang were mainly on its north. The statement that 'they live in secluded, rugged valleys, many of them three thousand *li* from any other tribe' would be hardly explicable, did we not assume that by that time they had spread to the uppermost Rma-chu valley; for their original western frontier must have been the Rma-chu gorge, since we have to find room for the Pailan. But perhaps all is made clear by the statement of the Sui *Annals*, that 'they comprise the T'ang-chang, Pai-lang, etc.' They had, in fact, absorbed their western neighbours, the Pailan, and might to the west constitute a barrier against the 'Yeh-Hu', of whom, however, nothing is known. From A.D. 629 'they gradually became subject' (to China), and their tribes were divided into *chou* and *hsien*, ruled by their own chiefs and subject to a governor-general, resident at Sung-chou. It was, as we have seen, not long after this that 'they were annexed by the T'ufan', i.e. by Sron-btsan Sgam-po and his successors, and the country afterwards became one of the main theatres of the Sino-Tibetan wars. It is from about A.D. 757 that the T'ang *Annals* begin to trace the fortunes of the leading, perhaps most eastern, clan, the To-pa, which through the weakening of the Tibetans from about the middle of the ninth century became powerful and ultimately founded the Tangut empire.

Some particulars of the Chinese description of the Tang-hsiang people have been extracted above (p. 22) for application to their Go-lok descendants. But ethnographically it may be of interest to add one or two further items, which may be for the most part applicable to all the free Ch'iang peoples of the period.<sup>2</sup>

'A tribe is divided into little clans. A large one comprises a myriad horsemen, a small one several thousand. . . .<sup>3</sup> They have no houses, but with the hair of their yak and the wool of their sheep they weave stuff out of which they make tents,<sup>4</sup> whose location they change accordingly to the season of the year. . . . Their hair is matted, their faces filthy, and their feet bare. They live on roots and game. Men

<sup>1</sup> Bushell, p. 531 (42); Rockhill, p. 340.

<sup>2</sup> Rockhill, p. 338.

<sup>3</sup> In the Sui *Annals* these numbers are stated, more moderately, as 5,000 and 1,000 respectively.

<sup>4</sup> 'The most common, indeed the only industry of the Tangutans is preparing yak (or more rarely sheep's) wool for cloth, out of which all their clothes are made' (Prejevalsky, ii, p. 118; cf. Rockhill, who adds, p. 81, yak-hair cloth for tents and tanning of skins).



and women wear long skin gowns, or of coarse woollen stuff with a nappy surface. They have no written characters, but record the years by means of little reeds. Once every three years they assemble together and worship heaven by sacrificing oxen and sheep. A son may marry his deceased father's or uncle's wives (or wife); a younger brother his deceased brother's wife, but he may not marry a person of the same cognomen as himself. When an old person dies, the children and grandchildren do not weep, but, if a young person dies, they say it is a great wrong and they lament over him.<sup>1</sup>

It must be admitted that some points in the description recur in the Chinese accounts (Bushell, pp. 442, 527-8; Rockhill, pp. 335-8) of the T'u-yü-hun and the Tibetans and even in the early accounts of ancient peoples, Hsiung-nu, Sien-pi, &c. (Parker in *The China Review*, xx, pp. 1-2, 73-4), so that they may have been commonplaces in the Annalists' conceptions of frontier barbarians. Disregard for age is attributed in these works to all the above-named peoples. For a less external view, permitting an insight into the Bon-po religion of this people, and also a glimpse of a more primitive stratum of belief and practice, as well as of their more general mentality, we must turn to the sole literary product known to have emanated from them, a text contained in an eighth-to-ninth century manuscript, in Tibetan language. Naturally it represents the comparatively civilized class of chieftains and priests, and in fact it belongs not to the Tang-hsiang definitely, but to the somewhat earlier period of the T'ang-chang, who had occupied the same country and were in the main, no doubt, the same people under another name.

Of these T'ang-chang the Chinese furnish<sup>2</sup> a brief description and also a dynastic name, *Lyang*, and list, covering a period from about A.D. 400 to 550, after which the state was suppressed by the Chinese and became the district T'ang-chou; not long afterwards, as we have seen, the state reappeared, in an expanded form, as Tang-hsiang,<sup>3</sup> with a dynastic name, in Tibetan *Hjan*, which may be identical with that of its predecessor. The interest of this

<sup>1</sup> On disregard for the old and on early retirement of kings see Bushell, p. 442; Rockhill, pp. 81, 143; Tafel, ii, p. 229 and n.; Fergusson, p. 319; Mrs. Rijnhart, p. 221.

<sup>2</sup> Bichurin, op. cit., i, pp. 109-12.

<sup>3</sup> The persistence of the syllable *than* in the names connected with this Skyi country, of which persistence another instance may be seen *infra* (p. 135), is due, no doubt, to the fact that the country predominantly consisted of high *than*: see *supra*, pp. 3, 9.

dynasty, apart from its definite dating and the literary connexions mentioned above, is that it was perhaps the first separate organization of Ch'iang tribes south of the Rma-chu. Like its successor, it had rather frequent connexions with the T'u-yü-hun.

The Pailan,<sup>1</sup> who by the Chinese are located to the south-west of the T'u-yü-hun and to the west of the Tang-hsiang, must have occupied the mountainous country to the west of the Rma-chu gorge, which country is in the Pan-chen Dpal-ldan Ye-sés' diary styled 'Upper Mongolia'. Except that their western neighbours were the To-mi, or Tang-mi<sup>2</sup>—unknown, unless they were the Yang-t'ung—and that they were called by the Tibetans 'Ting-ling', that they were divided into Black and White, that in customs they resembled the Tang-hsiang, the Chinese inform us only that in A.D. 561 their prince sent gifts to the Chinese court, and that in A.D. 624 they submitted to China and their country was made Wei-chou and K'ung-chou.<sup>3</sup> The submission, probably in any case a mere formality, was of very brief duration, since before A.D. 650 the people were conquered by the Tibetans and thenceforward acted as the vanguard of the Tibetan invading armies. The interest of the Pailan resides in their name, which will be considered *infra*.

In order to discuss the Ch'iang of the actual Hsi-ning-Koko-nor area it is necessary to ascend through several centuries to the period preceding the irruption of the T'u-yü-hun people in A.D. 313. And, since until that time the Hsi-Ch'iang, 'Western Ch'iang', peoples of Amdo and the adjacent districts of China, may be regarded, if not as a whole, at least as a single mass, the account may go back as far as the really historical beginnings, about the end of the second century B.C. It will, however, be instructive to commence by taking note of the conditions indicated by the foundation of the above-mentioned Buddhist monastery in the territory immediately west of the Koko-nor itself.

The foundation, which was, as already mentioned, designed to commemorate a compact of permanent peace (A.D. 730) between the Chinese, the Tibetans, the Drug (the Turks of Central Asia), and the Hjañ (the Tang-hsiang)—the T'u-yü-hun, expelled in A.D. 663, passing unmentioned—was described as the monastery of the 'De-ga G-yu-tshal' ('De Turquoise Forest'), the suffix *ga*

<sup>1</sup> Bushell, p. 528 (3); Bichurin, i, pp. 113, 232.

<sup>2</sup> Bushell, p. 541 (10).

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., pp. 528 (13), 541 (10).



(in *De-ga*) being used in Amdo to form adjectives of locality.<sup>1</sup> The monastery was compared to 'a flower blooming in the auspicious Dbyar-mo-than' ('Dbyar Steppe'); and here again we have the evidence of parallel expressions proving that *Dbyar* is a tribal name.<sup>2</sup> On the particular occasion messages of prayer and congratulation upon the 'face-warming' of the foundation were received from

- (a) the authorities of the realm of Mdo-gams;
- (b) the Councillors of Bde;
- (c) two great cities, Mkhar-tsan and Kva-cu, of Western Kan-su;
- (d) the commandant of the 'Thousand-district' of Phyug-tsams;
- (e) the Estate, or Territory, of Hbrom-khoñ;

and the Bde councillors use the phrase '*Hgreñ* people', which from other evidences we know to have denoted not merely 'upright man' as opposed to prone beast, but also a particular people, whose country was accordingly named *Hgreñ-ro*.<sup>3</sup> That this name *Hgreñ* is the native word represented by the Chinese *k'iang*, *ch'iang* (originally *kreñ*), is a suggestion which we owe to Professor Pelliot.<sup>4</sup>

It is possible that the text, which is fragmentary, opened with a message from the Tibetan *Btsan-po* himself. But in other respects the hierarchy of authorities is patent. First we have the (Tibetan) councillors of Mdo-gams, which is either Amdo or a whole, Mdo-smad, consisting of Amdo and Khams. Under Mdo-gams come the councillors of Bde, a division of the same, and known by several mentions both of the councillors and also of a place Bde-gams,<sup>5</sup> no doubt their administrative centre. We then digress to two great cities of western Kan-su, which at the time were under Tibetan authority, exercised, as from other references also appears, through the Bde Council. Returning to Amdo, we come to the Tibetan official in command of the 'Thousand-district' Phyug-tsams, the term 'Thousand-district' which denotes probably an area of about 1,000 households, being well

<sup>1</sup> *Gnam-ka-Loñ-sum*, 'Loñ-sum in heaven', *sa-ga-Gdiñ-drug*, 'Gdiñ-drug on earth'.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Rgya-mo-than*, 'Chinese plain', *Mon-mo-than*, 'Mon plain'.

<sup>3</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 61-2, 87, 108-9, &c.

<sup>4</sup> *JRAS*. 1928, p. 98.

<sup>5</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, Bde, ii, pp. 10, 20; Councillors of, ii, pp. 20, 25, 99, 124, 319; Bde-gams, ii, pp. 22, 57-8, 78-9, 108, 338.



evidenced in Chinese Turkestan, both contemporary and prior.<sup>1</sup> Nor does it seem doubtful that Phyug-tsams is the same as the capital of the T'u-yü-hun, Fussü ch'êng, 15 li west of the Koko-nor, which had walls but was not lived in.<sup>2</sup> It was, in fact, a 'great mart' and not different from the 'great mart' (*khrom-chen-po*) of the Dbyar-mo-thañ, mentioned in another document;<sup>3</sup> the Chinese syllable represented by *Fu* was in early times sounded *bhyuk*. There cannot have been two 'great marts' in the *thañ* country adjoining the Koko-nor on the west.

The Dbyar-mo-thañ is rather famous; it is mentioned in one of the ancient inscriptions in Lha-sa, the Potala pillar inscription of c. A.D. 764, relating to the Sino-Tibetan wars.<sup>4</sup> The G-yer-mo-thañ ('a place in Kham'), Yar-mo-thañ and G-yar-mo-thañ ('a district in the province of lower Amdo and Khams') of Ś. C. Das's *Tibetan Dictionary* are evidently the same place,<sup>5</sup> which perhaps acquired literary notoriety through the treaty and the foundation of the monastery in question. The place is still known in Tibet by its old name, being mentioned, as G-yar-mo-thañ, in the *Geografia Tibeta* of Mintshul Huthuktu (p. 55), where it is duly located on

<sup>1</sup> The expression in its Tibetan form (*ston-sde*) was current in Tibet and Chinese Turkestan during the 8th century A.D. (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, pp. 283-4; ii, pp. 315-16). But an equivalent was also used by the Chinese in W. Kan-su (L. Giles, *B.S.O.S.* vi, pp. 831-2, vii, p. 850); and the T'u-yü-hun had officials over 'Thousands' (Bichurin, i, p. 97). An administrative division into 'Thousands' (*kun, gun*) is still found among the Salars in Amdo (Rockhill, *Diary*, pp. 62, 66, 76-7, 80-1; Tafel, i, p. 162). Perhaps the 'Thousand-district' was a district of approximately 1,000 families. Cf. the ancient Sanskrit term *sahasra-pati*? An official hierarchy of heads of 10, 100, and 1,000 families is, however, known to have existed among the ancient Hsiung-nu (see Parker in *China Review*, xx, p. 9) and even at present it exists in the Pamir, where the titles are, in Turki, *On-bāshī*, *yūz-bāshī*, and *min-bāshī* (*Orientalisches Archiv*, ii, p. 29).

<sup>2</sup> Rockhill, p. 336. On such uninhabited 'market-towns' see Forsyth, *Mission to Yarkund*, p. 32, and, in Ssü-ch'uan, Baber, op. cit., p. 10. Cf. Bichurin, p. 97.

<sup>3</sup> See *Inventaire des MSS. tibétains de Touen-houang* par Mlle Lalou, i, No. 16.

<sup>4</sup> *JRAS.* 1910, pp. 1259, 1278 (l. 33).

<sup>5</sup> The alternation *by/gy* (*g-y*), although perhaps a case of a more general alternation *b/g*, seen, for instance in *gams/bams* (pp. 241-2 *infra*), is to be discriminated from the modern Tibetan amalgamation of *by* and *gy* in *j*. It is ancient and probably dialectical or regional: an instance given in the *Dictionary* is *g-yi = dbyi*, 'lynx'. Quite parallel to *Dbyar/G-yar* is the ancient Amdo tribal name *Byim-po*, which in the Tibetan manuscript *Chronicle* has two occurrences, in the first of which it is a correction of *Gyim-po*: the Tibetan manuscripts mentioned *infra* (pp. 130 sqq.) have *Gyim-po*. See *infra*, pp. 134-5.

the shore of the Mtsho Khri-sor Rgyal-mo, the Koko-nor, in the vicinity of the Mongol settlements. In one of the Tibetan manuscripts there is mention of a 'meadow G-ye-mo', which, by reason of the circumstances, must be the same place; and in the same connexion another of the manuscripts mentions a meadow *Phug-dir(tir)*, which is perhaps related to *Phyug-tsams*.

Finally, the 'Turquoise Wood' (*G-yu-tshal*) also has an historical name. For the Byar-mo-thaṅ is, no doubt, the greater of the two 'Great and Little Yu (turquoise, jade) Valleys',<sup>1</sup> often mentioned by the *Later Han Annals*<sup>2</sup> as west of the Ching-hai, the 'Blue Lake', and head-quarters of the leading Ch'iang tribes. To the Ch'iang people the great lake was not the 'Blue Lake' (*Mtsho-sñon-po*, *Ch'ing-hai*, *Koko-nor*) of the Tibetans, Chinese and Mongols, but the 'Turquoise Lake' (*G-yu-mtsho*).<sup>3</sup>

The 'thaṅ of the Byar people' (*Byar-mo-thaṅ*) may help us to explain the name Pailan. On the south-eastern frontier of the 'Women's Kingdom', near to Ya-chou, was another Pailang tribe,<sup>4</sup> whose name is spelled with the same Chinese characters, the first of the two being the word for 'white', now sounded *pai* and *po*. But a Chinese scholar, Wang Ching-ju,<sup>5</sup> in editing and discussing three little songs in that people's speech, which, being included in the *Later Han Annals*,<sup>6</sup> are the oldest known composition in Tibeto-Burman, adopts the transliteration *Bair-lang*; and, although a philological justification of this is not visible in Professor Karlgren's *Analytical Dictionary* or other familiar authorities, the double pronunciation in ordinary Chinese and the double form of the word (*h(p)aku*, *biaku*) in Japanese, suggest that in the history of the word there may have been confusion of synonyms. If the form *Bair* is justifiable, it would tend to justify also the reading of the same sign in the Koko-nor region as *Byar*, which better suits the Japanese *biaku*. But perhaps that is not necessary; for in the same region we have evidence of *-ar* becoming

<sup>1</sup> The two are perhaps recognizable in Rockhill's account of his first journey, pp. 125-7 ('the valleys of the Buhagol and Dulangol').

<sup>2</sup> See Wylie, *op. cit.*, pp. 445-51.

<sup>3</sup> One of the Tibetan manuscripts has *G-yu-mtsho-sñon-mo*, 'Blue Turquoise Lake'.

<sup>4</sup> Bushell, p. 531 (42).

<sup>5</sup> *Shishiah Studies* by Wang Jinqu (Academia Sinica Monographs, Series A, Nos. 8, 11, 13), i, pp. 17-30.

<sup>6</sup> Wylie, who translated the songs (*op. cit.*, pp. 239-41), spells the name as *Pih-lang*.



-e,<sup>1</sup> and the Byar-mo-thaṅ may have been locally a Bye-mo-thaṅ = the G-ye-mo mentioned *supra* (p. 34).

By recognizing the *Byar* as the Pailan we escape the embarrassment caused by the fact that the latter, despite their services in the Tibetan campaigns, seem never to be mentioned in the manuscript *Chronicle*, which is largely a history of those campaigns. *Byar*, on the other hand, is several times mentioned in contexts relating to the Pailan region; and one place, *Byar-lîns-tshal*, 'Byar-lîns Wood', definitely assigned to its vicinity,<sup>2</sup> may contain in its first two syllables an equivalent of the whole name.

It would not be at all in conflict with the facts with which we shall deal, if the Byar-mo-thaṅ should have been originally Pailan country. Perhaps we can also explain the name *Ting-ling*, which the Chinese so inexplicably give as the Tibetan designation of the Pailan. It is a well-established fact that in Central Asia the sign transliterated *Ting* might have had ordinarily the pronunciation *Te* or *De*, and the *Byar-lîns* may have been *De-lîṅ* by virtue of appertaining to the above-mentioned *De* or *Bde*.

The Tibetan records furnish also some slight further indication of the extent of the *De* or *Bde* district, which, being the centre of an authority covering, as does the present Chinese administration at Hsi-ning, places in Western Kan-su (Mkhar-tsan and Kva-cu), must have been spacious. As has been mentioned, the Tibetan Council of Bde-gams supervised also the administration of those parts of Western Kan-su which at the time were subject to Tibet. This appears not from a single reference, but from several,<sup>3</sup> and it applies not only to the above-mentioned Mkhar-tsan and Kva-cu, but to other localities also. But the centre of administration, Bde-gams, which perhaps means 'Bde posting-station', and likewise 'Bde-sum Wood', though both are mentioned as having been places of 'assemblies', i.e., no doubt, the summer and winter conferences and musters of the Tibetan civil and military powers, have names topographically uninformative. More significant, no doubt, is a reference to 'Lyon-jeṅ in Bde' in a document emanating from a T'u-yü-hun queen of Tibetan birth.<sup>4</sup> From the context it is certain that the place was in T'u-yü-hun territory, and it seems highly probable that it was identical with Liung-ch'êng, which the

<sup>1</sup> Concerning -ar/-e and concerning the equivalence of *g-yar* and *byar* see *infra*, p. 367, also pp. 243, 290.

<sup>2</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 48.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 20, 25, 57-8, 78, 108, 319, 339.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 10.



maps record under that name, or as Lang-chen, &c., on the Ta-t'ung-ho. It is eminently reasonable that the part of Amdo from which authority was exercised over Western Kan-su should have included the region of Hsi-ning and the Ta-t'ung river, whence Kan-su was reached by ancient routes.<sup>1</sup>

When we have removed the historical accretions in the form of the modern Chinese administrations, the Mongols, the Tangut kingdom, the Tibetan rule and influence, and the T'u-yü-hun occupation, we come to the prior period of the Hsi-ch'iang, the 'Western Ch'iang'.

#### THE WESTERN CH'IANG (HSI-CH'IANG)

THE most authentic account of the Western Ch'iang is that given in Book CXVII of the *Later Han Annals* (*Hou Han Shu*); after a series of notices of Ch'iang tribes of early periods the text makes mention of the first, eponymous, leader of the western Ch'iang, whom it places in the period 475-432 B.C., and then of his descendants and of tribal divisions; after which it embarks upon a history, from about 100 B.C., of the conflicts between the Ch'iang and the Chinese, continued to nearly the end of the second century A.D. Thereafter the Ch'iang are reckoned as subject to China, and for the period A.D. 170-312 we have only a few notices in the *T'ang Annals*. In A.D. 313 the Koko-nor Ch'iang were conquered, as we have seen, by the T'u-yü-hun. About the same time, more or less, and later there arose in Chinese territory,<sup>2</sup> and also in Amdo, one or two separate Ch'iang states and dynasties,

<sup>1</sup> See Rockhill, p. 41, n. 3, pp. 48-9. Fathers Huc and Gabet followed the route by the valley of the Charing-gol and P'ing-fan (i, p. 285), while Prejevalsky (ii, pp. 59 sqq.) and Futterer (i, pp. 244 sqq.) crossed that valley and then the valley of the Ta-t'ung-ho, making direct for the Koko-nor and Hsi-ning. Lieutenant Brooke crossed the mountains from Kan-chou direct to Hsi-ning (Fergusson, p. 51). The northern route to Ša-cu in W. Kan-su, descending via the valley of the Tang-ho, must have been that whereby in ancient times (Wylie, p. 433; De Groot, ii, pp. 197, 202-3) the Ch'iang communicated, through the 'Little Yüeh-chih', with the Hsiung-nu of the north: in modern times it has been followed not only by Mongol pilgrims, but also by explorers, Pandit A-K (see Hennessey, *Report on the Explorations in Great Tibet and Mongolia*, 1884, pp. 50-4), Messrs. Carey and Dalgleish (R. Geographical Society, *Supplementary Papers*, iii, pp. 46-8, *Proceedings*, 1887, pp. 731-52), the Littledales and Sir Sven Hedin.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Franko, *Geschichte des Chinesischen Reiches*, ii, p. 63 and Index.

of which the Pailan, T'ang-chang, and Tang-hsiang have been mentioned above.

The Book CXVII of the *Later Han Annals* was translated by Wylie in 1882 (*Revue de l'Extrême-Orient*, vol. i, pp. 423-78), with notes containing valuable identifications of places and dates. In 1926, as pp. 182-200 of *Die Westlande Chinas in der vorchristlichen Zeit* (Part II of *Chinesische Urkunden zur Geschichte Asiens*), appeared a translation by De Groot of the portion down to the Christian era, followed by extracts from the biographies of two Chinese generals, both contained in the *Former Han Annals*. De Groot, who, here as elsewhere, disapproves of his predecessor's translation, has a systematic transcription of Chinese characters, stated to be based upon scholarly tradition, whereas Wylie used a transcription then normal in connexion with Mandarin Chinese; it is unlikely that either transcription would be regarded by Sinologists as adequately historical. The period is too early for certainty in regard to Chinese pronunciation (or pronunciations). Moreover, in cases of foreign names there are the complications arising from transmission, intentional modification, and other causes; certainty is obtained only when we have the names in some alphabetic writing. It seems proper to cite Wylie's translation,<sup>1</sup> wherever it is in substantial agreement with that of his successor, and in quotations from the latter to reproduce the form presented by him.

According to the *Later Han Annals*, the original home of the Ch'iang was on the Tz'u-chih (De Groot Su-ki) river<sup>2</sup> and reached to the source of the (Hoang-)ho; it had an extension of 1,000 *li*, and stretched southwards as far as Shuh (the western part of Ssü-ch'uan) and the Han river. From another text De Groot quotes<sup>3</sup> the statement that:

'Where the (Huang-)ho river bends and then flows north-east, it cuts through the land of Sik-ki (Hsih-chih). This is accordingly "the bending of the Ho". . . . Then the Ho takes an eastward direction. From the bend it flows through the south of the province Si-hai, "the lake in the west" (Koko-nor) . . . and further east it flows on the north of the district of Ho-kuan,<sup>4</sup> belonging to Lung-si.'

<sup>1</sup> With transcription modernized according to Giles's *Dictionary*.

<sup>2</sup> Wylie, pp. 424-5 (who, however, speaks of 'the Tsze-che mountain'); De Groot, ii, p. 184.

<sup>3</sup> Op. cit., p. 185, from the *Shui-ching-tsü-shih*, c. 2, foll. 11 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> Ho-kuan was on the site of the [later] district of Chin-ch'ing, south of Lan-chou (Wylie, p. 425, n. 2).



From this citation it is, observes De Groot, 'clear as daylight' (*sonnenklar*) where on the map we must look for the land Tz'u-chih, which his text explicitly identifies with Hsih-chih. Accordingly in Professor Herrmann's *Historical and Commercial Atlas of China* (p. 10) we find the country so located. Of De Groot's further suggestion that the Hoang-ho, in the part of its course wherewith the texts are concerned, was itself named Tz'u-chih we are unable to add any confirmation. De Groot himself admits that subsequently (p. 194) there is mention of 'the three rivers (Huang-ho, Hong and Su-ki)'; and in the *Annals* there are other references to a river 'Su-ki' (e.g. De Groot, p. 195, 'left the Su-ki and the bending of the Huang-ho', and cf. the translation of Wylie, who spells *Tsze-che*, pp. 443, 447, 449, 473) which do not accord with the suggestion. Su-ki might be a tributary of the Hoang-ho, no other perhaps than the She-chu of the latest map, the 'meandering' Sche-tsche of Dr. Fütterer (*Durch Asien*, i, p. 350 and index), which flows into the Hoang-ho gorge somewhat north of the knee.

It may also perhaps be doubted whether there is really ancient authority for applying the name 'Tsi-shi (Chi-shih) shan' to the Amne Rma-chen range of mountains, as is sometimes done by the Chinese.<sup>1</sup> But what is of importance for us here is the obvious identity of the Hsih-chih country with the land of the T'ang-chang and Tang-hsiang and the fact that in the T'ang *Annals* this identity is affirmed.<sup>2</sup> The importance of the observation lies in the fact that it enables us to identify with the Tang-hsiang country the district Skyi,<sup>3</sup> frequently mentioned in the Tibetan *Chronicle* as sphere of military struggles with the Chinese during the seventh and eighth centuries; thus we acquire the names of many places in the Tang-hsiang country and at the same time learn from this instance that on the Ch'iang-Tibetan side of the mountains the nomenclature may have been more durable than was usual in China, where reshuffling and renaming seem to have been an administrative passion.

Although the ethnographical characteristics ascribed in the *Later Han Annals* compose much the same picture as the Sui and T'ang *Annals* have given (*supra*, pp. 22, 29-30) in regard to the

<sup>1</sup> Franko, *Geschichte des Chinesischen Reiches*, i, p. 6; ii, p. 371; iii, pp. 3, 255.

<sup>2</sup> Rockhill, p. 338; Bichurin, i, p. 238.

<sup>3</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 48.



Go-lok and the Tang-hsiang, yet, since we have now reached the fountain head and are contemplating the Ch'iang people in general, it is not superfluous to reproduce it here:<sup>1</sup>

'Fixed settlements there are not, for they have to accommodate and direct themselves according to the districts where there is water, so that plants grow. The five cereals are indeed but little produced in the land, and consequently they make cattle rearing and herdmen's life their business.

'As for their manners and usages, the family system does not rest upon firm bases; sometimes the personal name of the father, sometimes the family name of the mother serves as name of the family. Relations who are more than twelve generations distant from one another can marry. If the father dies, the son marries his later mothers (i.e. the women married by his father after his mother); if an elder brother dies, then the younger ones marry their sisters-in-law (left behind by him). Consequently there are in the state no widows, and the families and groups multiply rapidly.

'Princes and ministers are not there set up; Magistracies also there are not. But the most energetic separate from their families and become leaders, while the weaker constitute the people, dependants and underlings; they plunder and overpower each other mutually, and their power depends upon crude strength. For murder and manslaughter recompense is paid, but other restrictions and prohibitions there are not.

'The weapons are, in the mountains and valleys, the long ones (lances, etc.), but on the plains the short (bows). The inhabitants cannot hold out for a long time, but seek to succeed by sudden incursions. Death in fighting counts as luck, death through sickness ill-luck.

'Against cold and privation they are hardened like beasts; even their women in childbirth do not shelter themselves from wind and snow.<sup>2</sup>

'Their character is firm and hard, brave and wild, and this in consequence of the element metal, corresponding to the west.'

The first organization of the Ch'iang<sup>3</sup> is ascribed to a certain Wu-i-Yüan-chien (De Groot, *Bu-ik-wan-kiēm*), a fugitive from China,<sup>4</sup> who after some adventures settled between the three

<sup>1</sup> De Groot, ii, pp. 185-6; cf. Wylie, pp. 425-6.

<sup>2</sup> An instance of this in Tafel, ii, p. 109, who states that on religious grounds the women avoid passing the period in the tent, where the cooking is done.

<sup>3</sup> The following account is derived from Wylie, pp. 432 sqq., with references to De Groot, ii, pp. 194 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> This trait seems to be normal in the Chinese accounts of the origins of foreign states.

rivers (Hoang-ho, Su-ki = Tz'u-chih, and Hong = Huang). He was welcomed by the Ch'iang tribes and made their chief. He introduced among them agriculture and cattle-rearing, they having previously been only hunters. The chieftaincy remained with his descendants.

The expression *wu-i*, *bu-ik*, is said to mean, in the Ch'iang language, 'serf', that having been Yüan-chien's original status. If so, it may correspond to Tibetan *g-yog*, for which a variant *b-yog* would have analogies.<sup>1</sup> If so, it is the earliest attested common noun in the language. The Hong = Huang river, which is stated<sup>2</sup> to have been a tributary of the Hoang-ho, is evidently, in view of the subsequent history, the Ta-t'ung-ho,<sup>3</sup> including perhaps also its affluent, the Hsi-ning river.

In the time of Yüan-chien's great-grandson Jên (De Groot, Dsim) an uncle of the latter, by name Chiung (De Groot, Gong), being alarmed by the power of the Chinese, left, along with his family and dependants, 'the Tz'u-chih and the bending of the Hoang-ho' and fled westwards several thousand *li*, beyond all communication with the other Ch'iang. Afterwards the descendants of these, or of the Ch'iang generally, were divided into several tribes, which departed whither they would. One of these stocks was the 'Yak'<sup>4</sup> tribe, being the Yüeh-sui Ch'iang, another the White Horse<sup>5</sup> stock, the Ch'iang of Kuang-han, a third the 'Mixed (or Three) Wolves'<sup>6</sup> Ch'iang, of Wu-tu. These particulars are evidently meant to mark off certain branches of the Ch'iang people, which had a separate history and a remote situation;<sup>7</sup> these branches will be mentioned again *infra*.

Jên and his younger brother Wu remained in the Hong = Huang country, having respectively nine and seventeen sons, from whom descended as many tribes or clans. This was the beginning of the growth and prosperity of the Ch'iang.

Yen (De Groot, Giën), a son of Jên, c. 360-337 B.C., was extremely bold and heroic, and his descendants among the Ch'iang were called the Yen tribe. In the thirteenth generation

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *supra*, p. 35, and *infra*, pp. 243, 290.

<sup>2</sup> Wylie, p. 433 n. 2.

<sup>3</sup> This is patent in the statement of the T'ang *Annals* reproduced by Bushell, *op. cit.*, p. 519: see *infra*, p. 47 n. 3.

<sup>4</sup> *Li-niu* (De Groot, *Li-gu*): Yüeh-sui is stated (De Groot, *ii*, p. 21) to belong to the region of Ning-yüan in S. Ssü-ch'uan.

<sup>5</sup> *Pih-ma* (De Groot, *Pe'-ma*).

<sup>6</sup> *Ts'an-lang* (De Groot, *Sam-long*).

<sup>7</sup> See Herrmann, *Atlas*, pp. 22-3.



from Yüan-chien, during the period 48-32 B.C., came Shao-tang (De Groot, Sio-tong), who was in like manner bold and courageous, and his descendants bore accordingly the tribal (or clan) name Shao-tang.

We are not at present able to state the Ch'iang forms of the names Li-niu = Li-gu, Pai-ma = Pe'-ma, *Ts'an-lang* = *Sam-long*, which are professedly Chinese, or to ascertain whether the latter are really translations, or only perversions, of the originals. And the same applies to two other tribes, Fêng-yang = Hong-jong and Lao-chieh = Lo-tsu, mentioned in connexion with events of the year 63 B.C.<sup>1</sup> But a Seen-tsze = Shan-chieh, Samtsia, or Siēm-tsu, tribe, defeated in the period 48-32 B.C., may have a name identical with that of the Samsa, who occupy the south-eastern corner<sup>2</sup> of the Go-lok country, and *Lo-tsu* suggests a river name, which conceivably might be the Lo-tschu, a tributary of the Ta-hsia.<sup>3</sup> Shao-tang = Sio-tong, which continually recurs in the struggles of the first to second centuries A.D., looks very like *Žo-thañ*, a place-name<sup>4</sup> in the Koko-nor region, mentioned in the *Tibetan Chronicle*. The Yen = Giën tribe can now be more definitely located.

In the period 155-141 B.C.<sup>5</sup> one Yen chief requested to be entrusted with the defence of the fortified western frontier of Lung-hsi; accordingly he was transferred with his people to the districts (Ti[k]-tao, Ngan(An)-ku, Lin-t'ao, Te(Ti)-tao, Ch'iang-tao), all which places were on the line of the lower T'ao river.<sup>6</sup>

In 111 B.C.<sup>7</sup> we first hear of the Hsien-ling (Siën-liën) Ch'iang, whose name is, doubtless, preserved in that of Hsi-lin, or Hsi-ning,<sup>8</sup> and who thenceforward play the leading role among the Ch'iang. Alarmed by the Chinese advance in Kan-su, which interposed a wedge between them and the Hsiung-nu, whom they had previously acknowledged as suzerains, they made an incursion

<sup>1</sup> Wylie, p. 435; De Groot, ii, p. 197.

<sup>2</sup> South of the Min-shan: see d'Ollone, pp. 226, 253; Tafel, ii, pp. 298-9 n.

<sup>3</sup> Fütterer, i, pp. 391, 398 (*Lö-tsche*): Tafel seems to identify his *Lö-tschü* (ii, pp. 299, 301) with the T'ao-ho.

<sup>4</sup> Identified by Chavannes, *Documents sur les Tou-kiue occidentaux* (p. 260 n. 1) with a T'u-yü-hun town, Sho-tun, taken by the Turks in 556 A.D.

<sup>5</sup> Wylie, p. 435; De Groot, ii, p. 197.

<sup>6</sup> See Wylie and De Groot, *ibid.*, and De Groot, i, pp. 21, 41.

<sup>7</sup> Wylie, p. 435; De Groot, ii, p. 197.

<sup>8</sup> Tibetan *Zi-liñ*. The *Siën* river (De Groot, ii, p. 207) may be the Ta-t'ung-ho, if not the Hsi-ning river (*Hsi-ho*), its tributary, perhaps not yet distinguished therefrom.



into Chinese territory. After their defeat the Chinese instituted the office of 'Ch'iang-guarding Deputy-Protector' for the general surveillance of the Ch'iang, who thereupon abandoned the region of the Huang = Hong-river (Ta-t'ung-ho) and settled on both sides of the 'Western Sea' (*Hsi-hai*, the Koko-nor) and the Salt Lake (*Dabasun-nor*). The Chinese thereupon built boundary fortifications along the hills, perhaps on the line of the above-mentioned branch of the Great Wall,<sup>1</sup> thereby marking off an administration area, which they perhaps maintained down to the period of the Tibetan wars, when it had the official name Shan-chou.<sup>2</sup>

During the period 73-48 B.C.<sup>3</sup> the Ch'iang recrossed the (Upper) Huang = Hong river and occupied lands to the east of it; and this perhaps accounts for the fact that at the time of the great revolt in 63 B.C. Yen = Giën people of that area play, together with another people named *Han*, a part in the strategy of the Chinese generals. On that occasion,<sup>4</sup> while the Chinese were proposing to advance up the Hoang-ho from the Lan-chou region, the Governor of Chiu-ch'uan (Su-chou) professed to apprehend Han raids in his own district and proposed to make an expedition over the mountains into Han and Yen territory; this he was ultimately (61 B.C.) authorized to do, his troops being supplied in part by the Governor of Tun-huang and the local (native) chief of Chiu-ch'uan. From this it is evident that the Han territory was farther north than that of the Yen; and confirmation is apparent in the fact that the Han were expected to make an inroad upon Tun-huang<sup>5</sup> as well as Chiu-ch'uan, and in the further fact that the Han people was the last to be reached by the army from the Lan-chou region.

The Han are styled a Ch'iang people.<sup>6</sup> We have no further information concerning them;<sup>7</sup> but it may be conjectured that they were the original occupants of the Ta-t'ung-ho valley, and that their name was originally the same as that of the river, namely *Hon*, the two names having come to the Chinese at different dates and in different ways. For in Tibetan times there was a

<sup>1</sup> *Supra*, p. 12 n. 5, *infra*, p. 47 n. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Bushell, p. 528 (17), p. 540 (1), gives Hsiningfu as the equivalent.

<sup>3</sup> Wylie, p. 436; De Groot, ii, p. 199.

<sup>4</sup> De Groot, ii, pp. 199, 202-16.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 209, 212.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 212.

<sup>7</sup> They were perhaps different from the Han tribe of Wylie, p. 469, whose territory was elsewhere.

place named *Hon-can-do*, in 'Skyi', the name of which should mean 'Hon-city-land' and should contain a tribal name *Hon* which certainly existed.<sup>1</sup> This place, whence authority was exercised over *Ša-cu* = *Tun-huang*, must have been in Bde and was possibly the Bde-gams mentioned *supra*. Since *can* is found representing the Chinese *ch'êng*, 'city', 'fortress', this place may be identical with *Hung-ch'êng*, which the maps still record on the lower *Ta-t'ung-ho*.<sup>2</sup>

From the above consideration and from the circumstance that the Han tribe, which later also is mentioned in connexion with Ch'iang raids in the years A.D. 141-2,<sup>3</sup> is pointedly distinguished from the Yen = Giên, it seems likely that, though Ch'iang, it did not belong to the Yen = Giên division, the descendants of Yen = Giên. In that division the leaders were the Hsien-ling = Siên-liên, who occupied the vicinity of the Koko-nor and in the second half of the first century B.C. became Shao-tang<sup>4</sup> of the Great and Little Yü Valleys. Under that designation they are frequently mentioned in the *Later Han Annals*<sup>5</sup> as the leaders in most of the conflicts with the Chinese during the first two centuries A.D. The usual theatre of the Ch'iang incursions was the Lung-hsi province and the vassal state of Chin-ch'ing;<sup>6</sup> and since the Seen-ling tribe is mentioned as having made raids as far as Lin-t'ao,<sup>7</sup> which was in the vicinity of Min-chou, at the bend of the T'ao river, it is clear that during this period the Hoang-ho did not constitute a barrier between the tribes to its north and those to its south.

In the succeeding periods other tribes, apparently belonging to Amdo, are occasionally named, and it is possible that, as time advanced, new units acquired some prominence; but other information concerning them is lacking, and the names in the Chinese transcription are insignificant. But in the northern and western, Tsaidam, part of the country there was a Ch'iang people unconnected with those with which we have been concerned and known

<sup>1</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 48, 301.

<sup>2</sup> See Filchner's map, h 8 (*Hung-ku-tschöng*, in which *ku* = 'ancient').

<sup>3</sup> Wylie, p. 469.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 436-7; De Groot, ii, p. 199 (*Sio-tong*).

<sup>5</sup> Wylie, pp. 440, 450, 462, 467, and under the names of the successive chiefs *passim*.

<sup>6</sup> Represented by the present district and city of Chin, south of Lan-chou. *Ibid.*, pp. 433 n. 2, 436 n. 1 (*Kin-ching*), De Groot, i, p. 41 (*Kin-tš'ing*).

<sup>7</sup> Wylie, p. 439.



to the Chinese from early times. This people, mentioned in the *Former Han Annals* by a name variously transcribed as *Jo-kiang* (Wylie), *Ōi-kiang* (F. W. K. Müller),<sup>1</sup> and *Dža-k'iong* (De Groot),<sup>2</sup> disappears in later times almost completely; a contingent of it served under the Chinese in the campaign of 63-62 B.C. On the basis of precise statements in the *Annals* it is universally recognized that the Jo-Ch'iang occupied the Tsaidam region and also the southern slopes of the Altyn-tāgh and Kuen-lun mountains as far west as the longitude of Khotan.<sup>3</sup> But also north of the mountains they were the people first met to the west outside the Yang frontier gate, in the region of Tun-huang; hence it is probable that the oasis of Nan-hu, about 80 miles west of Tun-huang, was in their territory and that by the valley of the Tang-ho, which debouches in the vicinity of Nan-hu, they communicated with the Sirtin district in the extreme north of the Tsaidam area. Farther west, at Charklik, also, in the Shan-shan kingdom, they were found across the main route to Khotan. Thus both the route from the Koko-nor to Tun-huang and that to Lob-nor passed through Jo-Ch'iang land; and, as the Koko-nor route was the easiest means of reaching Lop-nor from the Chinese capital, Ch'ang-an, it is likely that many travellers took that way. Moreover, there was local connexion with the Lob-nor state of Shan-shan, whence the Jo-Ch'iang obtained cereals.<sup>4</sup> In their territory also, in the Gass district, are the Bokalik mountains, with the gold mines of Boka,<sup>5</sup> which from Cer-cen in Chinese Turkestan, by the route over the Tokuz-dawān and the 'Valley of the Winds'—a route explored in modern times by Prejevalsky, Carey, Hedin, and others—are still visited by Turkestan people. At the end of the seventh century A.D. the Tibetans established a post, Tshal-byi, somewhere between Gass and Charklik, whence they controlled the Lob-nor district; and thither in about A.D. 746 came refugee Buddhist monks after a desperate journey over the mountains (Tokuz-

<sup>1</sup> Berlin Academy *Sitzungsberichte*, 1918, pp. 570 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> ii, p. 52.

<sup>3</sup> This is proved by references in the *Former Han Annals*, giving accounts of the states along the southern route in Chinese Turkestan (translated by Wylie, *Journal of the Anthropological Institute*, x (1881), pp. 20-73, and after him by De Groot, ii, pp. 52-69). Cf. maps collected by Professor Herrmann in Hedin, *Southern Tibet*, vol. vii, map X. See also Müller, loc. cit.

<sup>4</sup> Wylie, op. cit., 1881, p. 23; De Groot, ii, p. 53.

<sup>5</sup> Visited in the 13th century by William Bouchier, of Paris (Sandberg, *The Exploration of Tibet*, p. 21).



dawān) from Khotan.<sup>1</sup> A Chinese authority informs us that T'u-yü-hun people were constantly reaching the Shan-shan kingdom by that route.<sup>2</sup>

The Jo-Ch'iang, however, are never mentioned, and, if they continued to exist, it must have been under another name. It seems possible to point to that name. We owe to Professor Pelliot<sup>3</sup> the proof that the T'u-yü-hun people are stated in Chinese writings to be called also *A-ch'ai*,<sup>4</sup> and the observation that the name is identical with that of the *Ha-za*, mentioned in the *Tibetan Chronicle* and other documents belonging to the seventh and eighth centuries A.D., one of them being the above mentioned narrative by a T'u-yü-hun queen. It is, however, not at all likely that in addition to the name *T'u-yü-hun* and the variant form *Tho-gon*, independently attested in the Tun-huang region,<sup>5</sup> the same people should have been known also as *Ha-za*; and, furthermore, the *Ha-za* are not infrequently mentioned at dates later than A.D. 663, when the T'u-yü-hun were expelled from Amdo.<sup>6</sup> Moreover, one of the T'u-yü-hun kings, in the early part of the fifth century (417-) A.D. (Bichurin, i, p. 78) was named *A-ch'ai*<sup>7</sup>—long after the word was, according to Professor Pelliot, first known as a tribal name—and it is quite unlikely that he should have received the name of his own people, though the reverse process is familiar and exemplified in the case of T'u-yü-hun itself. Professor Pelliot holds that the name belonged originally to some mixed tribes in the north of Kan-su, which became included in the T'u-yü-hun dominion. It seems, however, much more appropriate to substitute for 'mixed tribes in the north of Kan-su' the name of Jo-Ch'iang, *Ni-kiang*, *Dza-k'iong*. Possibly the majority of the subjects of the T'u-yü-hun chiefs, whose power extended through Jo-Ch'iang territory to Sha-chou on the one hand and the Lob-nor state on the other, and who had entered the Koko-nor region only as an invading tribe, were of Jo-Ch'iang race, and in the Sha-chou

<sup>1</sup> See *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 119-25. The name *Tshal-byi* ('Little Wood') was probably pre-Tibetan.

<sup>2</sup> See L. Giles, *B.S.O.S.*, vi, p. 830.

<sup>3</sup> *Journal Asiatique*, 1912, ii, p. 522; 1914, ii, p. 144; *T'oung-pao*, 1920-1, pp. 323-5.

<sup>4</sup> 阿柴. <sup>5</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 367.

<sup>6</sup> *Op. cit.*, i, p. 192, ii (Index).

<sup>7</sup> 阿豺 (or 豺). Professor Haloun has kindly furnished this spelling, as well as exact translations of the various ancient Chinese statements concerning the origin of the dynasty and the dynastic lists.

region, as well as in the Lob-nor kingdom, there were in the seventh to eighth centuries A.D., *Ha-za* people,<sup>1</sup> just as at the time of the beginning of the Christian era there were Jo-Ch'iang people. There is no reason to suppose that the latter ceased to exist; if not as *Ha-za* people, under what alias did they survive?

The question is accordingly not exclusively one of identity in name. But on that ground also, if De Groot's transcription *dža* (= *ja*) is correct—and he quotes the authority of Jěn Ši-ku (Yen Shih-ku, A.D. 579–645), the commentator on the *Former Han Annals*—it would correspond to the second syllable of *Ha-za*, as also to that of *A-ch'ai* in its original pronunciation. As regards the omission of the first syllable *Ha*, we may refer to Professor Pelliot's remark concerning frequent Chinese transcriptions in which an initial *a* is suppressed.<sup>2</sup>

If this explanation is correct, i.e. if the *Ha-za* were primarily a Tsaidam people, being identical with the Jo-Ch'iang, this may help to account for the name of the Tsaidam district Hajjar and also for the fact that on a route from Charklik to the Tsaidam there is, on the Turkestan side of the mountains, a place named Hashak(lik), which name recurs farther in the mountains south of Khotan. For we know that there were scattered bodies of Jo-Ch'iang people, who would be *Ha-za*, along the southern border of Chinese Turkestan.<sup>3</sup>

Thus in regard to the history of the Ch'iang people in general the Jo-Ch'iang would have some importance. And this is emphasized by the fact that they become known to the Chinese at an early date and through not the same intermediaries as did the Koko-nor Ch'iang. They may have been neighbours of Chinese Turkestan from very early times.

With one exception, that of the oft discussed 'Little Yüeh-chih'<sup>4</sup> of the northern parts of the Nan-shan, a small remnant of a Kan-su people which made a forced migration westwards about 170 B.C., we have now mentioned all the ancient populations of Amdo and Tsaidam and found them all to have been Ch'iang. After the expedition of 63–62 B.C., and the above-mentioned Shan-chieh =

<sup>1</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 17–18, 25–9, 35, 343.

<sup>2</sup> *T'oung-pao*, 1920–1, pp. 324–5.

<sup>3</sup> See Müller, loc. cit. (p. 44).

<sup>4</sup> Particulars of these, translated from the *Later Han Annals*, are given by Wylie, pp. 474–5. On their probable identity with the Hu frequently mentioned in conjunction with the Ch'iang (both 'of Huang-chung') see p. 47 n. 3.



Sam-tsia raid during the period 48-33 B.C.,<sup>1</sup> there were several decades of peace with the Chinese, and the Chinese prestige in the region may have reached its zenith in the first decade A.D., during the time of the usurper Emperor Wang Mang, who

'caused his wishes to be made known in translation to the Ch'iang and commanded them to pay tribute jointly; thereby for the first time the country on the Western Lake (Koko-nor) was opened and changed into a frontier province, wherein were established five districts. Since then on the lakes of the borderland also the signal fire of a watch-house had the next in sight.'<sup>2</sup>

The Chinese had previously established the above (pp. 12, 42) mentioned fortified frontier, crossing the Nan-shan south of Liang-chou and embracing the Hsi-ning district in a curve which almost reached Ho-chou; and this they afterwards maintained;<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Wylie, pp. 436-7; De Groot, ii, p. 199.

<sup>2</sup> De Groot, ii, p. 200; Wylie, p. 437.

<sup>3</sup> Concerning the beginnings of these fortifications in 111 B.C. see Wylie, pp. 435-6; De Groot, ii, p. 197. The district within the fortifications was designated Huang-chung (Wylie, pp. 434-6 and *passim*), which the Chinese identify with Hsi-ning. It is the district of the Huang (De Groot, ii, pp. 194, &c., *Hong*) river, which is certainly the Ta-t'ung-ho, the name being retained in T'ang times (Bushell, p. 519) and still persisting (Rockhill, p. 42 n.): it may include the tributary Hsi-ning-ho, which, however, may be the *Siên* river of De Groot, ii, p. 207.

That the fortifications and Huang-chung (which De Groot, ii, p. 194, &c., fails to recognize) did during the first two centuries A.D. include the Hsi-ning district is proved by the frequent references in the *Later Han Annals* (Wylie, pp. 444, 446-50, 457-8, 466-8, 470-2) to the 'Keang and Hoo' (Ch'iang and Hu) of Huang-chung; for these resided within the frontier, and were sometimes led against the Ch'iang outside, e.g. in A.D. 96 (p. 447), when:

'She Ch'ung raised the Keang and Hoo of Huang-chung and marched beyond the fortresses to attack Me-t'ang in the Great and Little Yü Valleys.'

Similarly in A.D. 101 (p. 449), 135 (p. 466), 139 (p. 467). That the 'Ch'iang and Hu of Huang-chung' were the immediate neighbours of the 'Ch'iang of the Great and Little Yü Valleys' is evident both from the geographical situation and from the references to 'the roads by which the Ch'iang and Hu hold intercourse [with the Shao-tang tribes] at the barrier' (p. 400) and to the Shao-tang tribes 'enticing the Ch'iang and Hu' (p. 467): when the Ch'iang and Hu rebelled, as they sometimes did (e.g. in A.D. 86, p. 444), they began by going 'beyond the fortifications'—so also others and at other times (pp. 442, 448-9, 452, 462, 470).

The term Hu must have been used by the Annalist in its familiar signification of a Chinese-Turkestan people. It must denote the 'Little Yüeh-chih', since during the first two centuries A.D. no other Central-Asian people was resident in the Ta-t'ung-ho area or anywhere else in Amdo. In fact, the *Annals* speak (Wylie, p. 474) of 'the Getae [Yüeh-chih] barbarians of



also there was in Kan-su, to the south of the present Lan-chou, the vassal state of Chin-ch'ing (De Groot, Kin-t's'ing), founded in 60 B.C. and peopled with deported Ch'iang who had submitted; it was made the residence of a 'Protector of the Ch'iang'.<sup>1</sup>

About the end of Wang Mang's reign 'the barbarians on all sides advanced into the empire'; and down to about A.D. 170 the Ch'iang border was the scene of almost incessant forays and punitive expeditions. It is unnecessary to retail the disjointed particulars of these occurrences; but an understanding of the Ch'iang problem may be facilitated by the following general observations:

1. A continuous leadership on the part of the Shao-tang people of the 'Great and Little Yü Valleys'<sup>2</sup> is attested by the *Later Han Annals*, which largely follow the fortunes of a succession of chiefs belonging to that tribe.<sup>3</sup>

2. During the first half of the period the usual scene of the Ch'iang incursions was the Lung-hsi province and especially the state of Chin-ch'ing,<sup>4</sup> against which, as peopled by their tamed kinsfolk, the free Ch'iang may have maintained a special spite. Later some more northerly parts of Kan-su, such as Liang-chou, Kan-chou, and Su-chou, come more into play, and we may conceive that, as the south became more settled, the trouble moved northwards. In A.D. 87 intrusion from the west, i.e. over the Nan-shan, was apprehended in Kan-chou and Su-chou (p. 444). In A.D. 111 (p. 456) the Ch'iang were attacked in the Shan-tan mountains (near Kan-chou); in 120 and 121 (pp. 462-3) there were struggles in the Kan-chou region; in 141 (p. 469) a raid on Liang-chou, in which various tribes took part; in 162 (p. 472) Liang-chou, Kan-chou, and Su-chou were attacked; in 167 (p. 472) Liang-chou. We can understand therefore why the Han tribe of the Upper Ta-t'ung-ho, who seem also to have had settlements on the Kan-su side of the Nan-shan, and also the 'Ch'iang and Hu (i.e. Little Yüeh-chih) of Huang-chung', i.e. the lower Ta-t'ung-ho valley, frequently come in for mention,<sup>5</sup> as do also, on the Chinese side, the governors of the three garrison cities and

Huang-chung' and proceed to give an account of them, which, with much other information is fully expounded by Professor Haloun in *ZDMG.*, 1937, *Zur Üe-tsi-Frage*, esp. pp. 275 sqq.

<sup>1</sup> De Groot, ii, p. 216.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 437, 440, 450-1, &c.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 438-40, 445-6, 454, 467-8, 472.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 447, 449, 450, 457, 466-9, 471.

<sup>5</sup> Wylie, pp. 445-51.

the 'Too-leaou general'.<sup>1</sup> Nevertheless the T'ao river frontier continues to be prominent, and it seems likely that the main line of approach to Liang-chou was via the lower Hoang-ho valley and those of the P'ing-fan river or Charing-gol.

3. It is not to be understood that the districts under direct Chinese rule had during this period a Chinese population. It not infrequently happened that a tribe, or portion of a tribe, came in and submitted, becoming a 'patriotic adherent tribe',<sup>2</sup> in which case it was sometimes deported elsewhere, even as far into the interior as 'the three Metropolitan Provinces'. The instances of the vassal state Chin-ch'ing and of the Yen = Giën tribesmen settled along the lower T'ao river are only typical. These tamed Ch'iang might then be employed in resisting or attacking the free tribes, and especially would this be the case with the 'Ch'iang and Hu of Huang-chung', i.e. of the frontier district enclosed by the branch of the Great Wall. But, on the other hand, the tribes settled within the empire were apt to revolt, in which case they sometimes migrated 'outside the fortifications'.<sup>3</sup>

4. Another factor complicating the ethnographical situation is the deportations effected by the Chinese in their early conquests. Thus, when the districts of Wu-wei (Liang-chou) and Chiu-ch'uan (Su-chou) were founded, the previous Hun-sha population had been partly destroyed and partly removed, and people were transferred there to fill the gap;<sup>4</sup> so also in districts south of the Hoang-ho: and in 108 B.C. Chiu-ch'uan received further accessions of the Te of Wu-tu.<sup>5</sup> So again, when the Ch'iang abandoned

<sup>1</sup> In A.D. 76 'the former Too-leaou General was again appointed Keang-assisting Deputy-Governor, and dwelt in Gan-e' (p. 442). This associates the 'Too-leaou General' with Liang-chou, since in A.D. 33 (p. 438) 'for the hordes in Leang-chou a Keang-guarding Deputy-Protector was appointed'. In A.D. 116 (p. 460), 122 (p. 463), 136 (p. 466), there are further mentions of the 'Too-leaou General'. The 'Too-leaou General' and garrison were first established in 86 B.C. and seem to have been made permanent about twenty years later (see Parker in *The China Review*, xxi, p. 262, n. 89).

Since the General appears to be the head of the Chinese military forces connected with Liang-chou and the southern parts of Kan-su, it seems that *Too-leaou* must be equivalent to the *To-lehu* of the 'To-lehu Three Tigers' (military officers) who during Tibetan times (*JRAS.* 1927, p. 550) commanded the region of Liang-chou. *Too-leaou* = *To-lehu* is therefore a place in the Liang-chou region and may accordingly be the Tolan, north-west of Liang-chou, on the grand route.

<sup>2</sup> Instances in Wylie, pp. 443, 446, 449, 451, 463-4, 469, 470-1, 473-4.

<sup>3</sup> e.g. *ibid.*, pp. 442, 444, 452, 462, 468, 470, 471-2.

<sup>4</sup> De Groot, i, pp. 126, 146; ii, p. 49.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, ii, p. 198.



'Huang-chung', leaving the land west of the Hoang-ho 'empty', people were gradually removed there to occupy it.<sup>1</sup>

5. In the free areas also the Chinese punitive expeditions with their thousands of decapitations and captures of hundreds of thousands of cattle, though they do not raise the same ethnographical problems, wrought great devastation, concerning which it is worth while to quote from the summary wherewith the author of the *Later Han Annals* concludes this chapter of his work:<sup>2</sup>

'When the tribes were somewhat weakened, the imperial forces attacked them, and, they being still more weakened by the numbers of dead and wounded, the imperial troops followed up the pursuit. . . . The settlements were cut off from the mountains a hundred thousand feet high.<sup>3</sup> And skinless bones were strewn on the tops of the loftiest precipices, beyond expression or calculation. There were no more than one or two in a hundred of the Jung<sup>4</sup> able to skulk away among the grass and stones, and so evade the lances and arrows of the troops.'

Sometimes a chief with the remnant of a tribe retired to remote regions; thus in A.D. 93:<sup>5</sup>

'Kuan Fan then sent troops beyond the fortresses,<sup>6</sup> who attacked Me-t'ang (the Shaou-tang leader) in the Great and Little Yü Valleys, where they caught the chief, and took more than eight hundred captives, and collected several tens of thousands of bushels of wheat. After this the imperialists, meeting together from all sides, remained at the Great River (Hoang-ho), where they built a city, constructed large vessels, and erected a bridge over the river,<sup>7</sup> wishing to carry over the troops to attack Me-t'ang. Me-t'ang then conducted his settlement to a distance along the windings of the Tz'u-chih river.'<sup>8</sup>

In A.D. 100:<sup>9</sup>

'Me-t'ang was reduced to a condition of weakness, the men of his tribe not amounting to a thousand in number. He made a distant journey to the head of the Tz'u-chih river, where he raised the Keang and took up his residence.'

<sup>1</sup> Wylie, p. 436; De Groot, ii, p. 198. Later instances in Wylie, pp. 244, 439, 441, 448-9, 455, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., pp. 477-8.

<sup>3</sup> The 'height' of mountains being the length of an ascent.

<sup>4</sup> Sc. barbarians.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., pp. 446-7.

<sup>6</sup> Sc. beyond the branch of the Great Wall.

<sup>7</sup> Mentioned again p. 448. Is this the Hung-chi Bridge, north-west of Ho-chou (Bushell, pp. 519 and 534 (72))?

<sup>8</sup> On the Tz'u-chih river see *supra*, pp. 37-8.

<sup>9</sup> Wylie, p. 449.



Appropos of an occurrence in the year A.D. 194, the *Annals* observe that<sup>1</sup>

'The descendants of Yüan-chien (the legendary first king) were divided into a hundred and fifty tribes. Nine of these lived about the head of the Tz'u-chih river and westward and to the north of Shuh and Han (Ssü-ch'uan). The number of persons is not stated by former historians. Only the Ts'an-lang of Wu-tu had several thousand able-bodied troops. Fifty-two of the tribes dwindled away in numbers, till they were unable to maintain their integrity. They were divided and dispersed, attaching their settlements to other bodies. Some were utterly destroyed, leaving no posterity. Some were led away into distant lands.'<sup>2</sup>

Despite all this the author admits that the Ch'iang, who, he says<sup>3</sup>,

'showed much heart in their national customs and in their martial bearing they were active and turbulent'

could not be rooted out; he ascribes this to the exhaustion of the troops and refers to the financial burdens of the empire. It seems likely that much of the Ch'iang country was inaccessible to large bodies of troops, and that, as in the case of the Go-lok, a permanent control was impossible. The losses of the tribes, who were free from the checks upon growth of population at present operant in Tibet, namely, polyandry<sup>4</sup> and Buddhist monachism, were quickly repaired. The Amdo states, Ch'iang and T'u-yü-hun, continued to be a trouble to the Chinese empire, and they passed on the struggle as an heritage to their Tibetan successors.

The unflattering picture which the Chinese give of the usages and morals of the Ch'iang has already been mentioned. But possibly no society of human beings is without 'literature' of some kind. In the case of one tribe on the Ssü-ch'uan frontier we hear of music and dances, and of poetry, whereof specimens, 'Songs of the Distant Barbarians', were sent to the Chinese court; in conversation

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., p. 473.

<sup>2</sup> The passage continues with a reference to the Chung tribe as the most powerful and to the respective numbers.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., p. 477.

<sup>4</sup> According to Rockhill (pp. 80, 190) neither the Go-lok nor the nomads generally are polygamous. Baber states (p. 97) that 'polyandry prevails in the uplands': so too Edgar, *The Marches of the Mantze*, p. 67. Both Edgar and Tafel (ii, p. 282) deny polyandry in the Rgyal-roñ, while Rockhill restricts it in Tibet to agricultural districts (p. 211).

they were fond of comparisons.<sup>1</sup> Probably, therefore, they had the interminable stories and antithetic verses and songs noted by the Abbé Huc, Rockhill, and Tafel among the Go-lok and other rude peoples of Tibet.<sup>2</sup> The statement<sup>3</sup> that 'their kings and marquises had some knowledge of literature' would, however, refer to a smattering of Chinese. In the fourth and fifth centuries A.D., when in Kan-su and Central China there were some dynasties of 'Tibetan', i.e. Ch'iang, origin, these were, no doubt, completely Chinese in culture, and the princes had in some cases received a thorough indoctrination into the spirit and principles of Confucianism.<sup>4</sup>

#### THE EARLY CH'IANG, THE TE AND THE TIK

MENTION has been made of Ch'iang tribes, the 'Yak' tribe, the 'White Horse' tribe, and the 'Three (or mixed) Wolves' tribe, which, though descended from the first king and his great-grandson Jên = Dsim, or the latter's brother Chiung = Gong, could not be described as Amdo Ch'iang. They had a separate existence and history, of which the *Later Han Annals* supply some particulars. The 'Yak' tribe of Yüeh-sui (*Li-niu*, De Groot *Li-gu*),<sup>5</sup> inhabited the region south of Ya-chou, in Ssü-ch'uan, and the 'White Horse' tribe of Kuang-han<sup>6</sup> likewise belonged to Ssü-ch'uan, being in the region of Ch'êng-tu, the present capital of the province. These two are sometimes mentioned in connexion with risings in the

<sup>1</sup> Wylie, pp. 238-9, 246. For a mention of 'the hymns of the Ti-peoples' see Franke, *Geschichte des Chinesischen Reiches*, ii, p. 158. See also *infra*, p. 61.

<sup>2</sup> Huc and Gabet, ii, p. 82; Rockhill, *Diary*, pp. 168-9; Tafel, ii, pp. 158-60 (Ge-sar legend).

<sup>3</sup> Wylie, p. 242.

<sup>4</sup> On these Sinified or Confucianized barbarians see Franke, *op. cit.* ii, pp. 63, 89 (Fu kien), 94, &c. Professor Franke's use of the term 'Tibetans' (pp. 60, 61, 63, 89, 183) or 'Tangut or Tibetan' (pp. 94, &c.) should not mislead. None of the persons or dynasties can have been Tibetan or Tangut in any ordinary acceptation: they will have been Ch'iang. Before the 7th century A.D. perhaps no single 'Tibetan' had ever visited China; and the 'Tangut' people did not exist, except as Ch'iang, before the 9th century at the earliest.

The ruling classes among the T'u-yü-hun, who also are described by the Chinese (Bushell, pp. 527-8 (11); Rockhill, pp. 335-7; Bichurin, i, pp. 97-8) as uncivilized, had likewise, according to the T'ang *Annals*, an adequate knowledge of (Chinese) literature.

<sup>5</sup> Wylie, pp. 434, 473; De Groot, ii, p. 195.

<sup>6</sup> Wylie, pp. 225-6, 243-4, 434, 466 (rebellion in A.D. 136), 471 and 474 (raid on Kuang-han), 473 (submission in A.D. 37); De Groot, ii, p. 195.



districts to which they belonged. The Ts'an-lang of Wu-tu,<sup>1</sup> occupying an isolated district in the southernmost part of Kan-su, south of the Wei river and the Pe-lung mountains which form its southern boundary, have this distinction, that in the *T'ang Annals*<sup>2</sup> there is an account of a Te state, which under a *Lyang* dynasty existed from about A.D. 296 to about A.D. 506, when it became the district Tung-i-chou. These Te became known to the Chinese in 111 B.C., and from 108 B.C. various rebellions on their part are mentioned. The several tribes of barbarians mentioned as 'outside' the Shuh (Ssü-ch'uan) region,<sup>3</sup> belonged perhaps to the area of what became later the 'Women's Kingdom'.

The Wu-tu state is not alone in receiving the appellation Te. The same term is applied in the *Later Han Annals*<sup>4</sup> to the 'White Horse' Ch'iang of Kuang-han and also to the 'Yen-mang' and 'Tso-tu' of north-western Ssü-ch'uan, the former of these two belonging to the region of Mao on the Min river and the latter being to the south-west of that tribe. All these were of Te race.<sup>5</sup>

'In these mountains (sc. the mountains adjacent to north-western Ssü-ch'uan) there were six tribes of Eastern Barbarians, seven tribes of Keang and nine tribes of Te. Each tribe had its territorial settlement.'<sup>6</sup>

The two names, *Te*<sup>7</sup> and *Ch'iang*, in conjunction or in alternation, carry us back to times far anterior to those which we have been considering and even to that of the first, legendary, Ch'iang ruler, Wu-i-Yüan-chien. In connexion with a repression of the Ch'iang during the period 1324-1265 B.C. the *Later Han Annals*<sup>8</sup> quote from the *Shih-ching* the statement that

'Since then none of the Te and Ch'iang has dared not to come here with tribute, and none has had the courage not to appear before the king.'

The Ch'iang are mentioned again in connexion with the period 1122-1116 B.C., after which neither they nor the Te seem in early

<sup>1</sup> Wylie, pp. 434, 439 (rebellion in A.D. 36 and in A.D. 56), 453 (assembly in Pih-te, A.D. 108), 473 (several thousand able-bodied troops), 474 (submission of those outside the Kuang-han barrier, A.D. 108); De Groot, ii, p. 198 (risings, in 108 and 80 B.C., of the Te of Wu-tu), 201 (rising, in 86-73 B.C., of the Te of Wu-tu).

<sup>2</sup> Bichurin, i, pp. 99-109.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., pp. 226, 243-4.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid., p. 242.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., p. 426; De Groot, ii, p. 187.

<sup>6</sup> e.g. Wylie, pp. 225, 474.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid., pp. 225-6.

<sup>8</sup> 氏.



times to recur. They may, however, lurk under the more general designation of 'Jung of the West' (1150-1123 B.C., 1001-947 B.C.) and sometimes perhaps simply of 'Jung'.<sup>1</sup>

More frequently we hear of the Ti[k]<sup>2</sup> (De Groot *Tik*, Terrien de Lacouperie *Tek*). At the close of the early Hsia period (2205-1766 B.C.) one sovereign is said to have fled to the 'Jung and Tik',<sup>3</sup> and the same conjunction recurs in 1154-1123 B.C., 1001-947 B.C., 878-827 B.C., 770-720 B.C., 635-627 B.C.<sup>4</sup>

The Tik are also frequently mentioned by themselves. But it seems that we must leave out of account the 'Red Tik' and 'White Tik', who belonged respectively to the west of Shan-hsi and farther south in Ho-nan and Kiang-su.<sup>5</sup> For their position was the result of a deportation, since we are informed that:

'King Wên of Tsin (circa 635 B.C.) conquered the Džong and Tik and settled them on the [Chinese side of the] western (Huang-)ho between the Huan [Hun] and the Lo' [rivers].'<sup>6</sup>

The earliest situation of the Tik seems to have been in the region of the Ching and the Ch'i and Chū rivers, tributaries reaching the Wei river in the region north of the present Hsi-ngan-fu.<sup>7</sup> Afterwards they advanced far to the east, at times even as far south as the Wei river. To the west of their original settlements were the Lung mountains, which in later times formed the eastern boundary of the Lung-hsi province. In connexion with a date 659-620 B.C.<sup>8</sup> we are told that:

'Accordingly at that time there were to the west of the Lung mountains the Hun Džong of Miên-tšu<sup>9</sup> and the Džong of Tik and of Huan.'

The Lung-hsi district was constituted in the period after 272 B.C.,<sup>10</sup> down to which time the region west of the Lung mountains was apparently independent Tik country. A notice belonging to the period 770-720 B.C. states<sup>11</sup> that 'At the sources of the Wei were

<sup>1</sup> For the above particulars see Wylie, pp. 426-7; De Groot, ii, pp. 187-8.

<sup>2</sup> 狄.

<sup>3</sup> De Groot, i, p. 4.

<sup>4</sup> Wylie, pp. 427-30; De Groot, i, pp. 4 sqq., ii, pp. 187-92.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., i, pp. 19-32.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid., p. 19. Further notices of the wars with these 'Red' and 'White' Tik, i, pp. 25-32.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid., pp. 4-5, the Ch'i being a tributary of the Chū.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid., p. 21.

<sup>9</sup> Region of the present Min-chou.

<sup>10</sup> Wylie, p. 432; De Groot, i, p. 34, ii, p. 193.

<sup>11</sup> Wylie, p. 429; De Groot, ii, p. 190.

Jung of Tik and Huan, of Kwei and Ki'; and so also at a later period, c. 400 B.C.<sup>1</sup> The Tik seem to have extended as far west as the lower T'ao river; for their name is still preserved in that of the district Ti(k)-tao, shown on the maps as bordering on that river; along with Te(Ti)-tao and Ch'iang-tao, as well as Lin-t'ao, it is mentioned<sup>2</sup> in connexion with the period 155-141 B.C., when a submitted Yen = Giën tribe was deported to those districts 'to defend the fortified (Western) frontier of Lung-hsi'. The direct Chinese administration of the frontier was not established until A.D. 124.<sup>3</sup>

In this way we find assembled on the line of the lower T'ao river the three designations *Ch'iang*, *Te*, and *Tik*; and from about 150 B.C. the districts coupled with their names are held for the Chinese by a subdivision of Yen = Giën. Concerning the names *Jung* and *Tik* De Groot states (i, p. 5) that the Chinese characters representing them

'appear both perhaps to belong to the oldest that the Chinese language possesses. The Džong (Jung) of the West are mentioned in the *Yü-kung*, a book of the *Shu-king*, in regard to which it is held that it originated in the time of Yü, the founder of the Hsia dynasty, who is supposed to have lived in the XXIII century B.C. . . . The "Tik of the North" meet us in a book of the *Shu-king* which carries us back to the time of T'ang, and so to the XVIIIth Century B.C.'

De Groot speaks of *Tik* as, like *Jung*, a general name for the foreign peoples of the west and north; that, however, does not seem to accord either with the references cited above or with the numerous others collected in pp. 4-31 of his volume i. The statements concerning the original and later seats of the Tik, the coupling of their name with that of the Jung, the distinction of 'White' and 'Red', applied to some divisions of them, and finally the expression 'Jung of Tik', i.e. 'those Jung who were Tik', show that the name involved a racial discrimination. It seems likely that the 'White' and 'Red' Tik were finally subdued in the sixth century B.C.;<sup>4</sup> and with the formation of the Lung-hsi district, after 272 B.C. (*supra*, p. 54), the remaining Tik also passed under Chinese control. But they were still a discriminable element of the

<sup>1</sup> Wylie, p. 433; De Groot, ii, p. 195.

<sup>2</sup> Wylie, p. 435; De Groot, ii, p. 197; *supra*, p. 41.

<sup>3</sup> Wylie, p. 464, 'In the autumn of 124 the region of Lung-si first extended to Teih-taou.'

<sup>4</sup> De Groot, i, pp. 30-1.



population of the Ch'iang frontier; for at the time of the expedition against the Ch'iang in 63- B.C. the celebrated Chinese general in command was apprehensive of the derision of the I (= Jung) and Tik (De Groot, ii, p. 218):

'Consequently everywhere among the I and Tik prevails a spirit of depreciation of our officials in the borderlands, and now the Ch'iang give them the example of revolt.'

Concerning the Te De Groot writes as follows (ii, p. 183):

'Irrespective of the name *Dzong*, *Tik*, and *Hu*, whereby . . . the barbarians of the north and west are designated in general, these Tibetans are in the ancient Chinese records throughout named *Te* and *K'iong*.

'It cannot be decided whether these *Te* and *K'iong* are to be understood as two actually different peoples. From the sources to be treated below it appears only that the abodes of the *Te* lay more to the south, those of the *K'iong* in the Kuku-nor region proper, and even this is not saying much, since both peoples led a nomadic or half-nomadic existence.'

The latter part of this statement is not quite borne out by the notices in the *Later Han Annals*. The Wu-tu country was the country of the 'Three (or mixed) Wolves' Ch'iang; yet in 108 B.C. and 80 B.C. we hear of risings of the Te of Wu-tu,<sup>1</sup> and the dynasty of the period A.D. 296-506 is called a Te dynasty (*supra*, pp. 52-3). The 'White Horse' tribe of Kuang-han was, as we have seen, a branch of the Ch'iang; yet along with the Tso-tu and Yen-mang of the Ssü-ch'uan north-western border it is said to belong to the Te race;<sup>2</sup> and in the mountains adjacent to Yen-mang there were 'six tribes of Eastern Barbarians, seven tribes of Keang, and nine tribes of Te'.<sup>3</sup> On the line of the lower T'ao river are Tik-tao, Te-tao, and Ch'iang-tao. Moreover, it is likely that the Hong Te mentioned in the report on the campaign of 63- B.C.<sup>4</sup> are the Te of the Hong river, the Ta-t'ung-ho, being none other than the Han and Giën, who figure in that occurrence. And the Te mentioned, along with the (Little) Yüeh-chih and the Ch'iang, as the western limit of the Right-hand Hsiung-nu king<sup>5</sup> cannot have belonged to

<sup>1</sup> De Groot, ii, p. 198.

<sup>2</sup> Wylie, p. 226.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 242.

<sup>4</sup> De Groot, ii, p. 215: the Chinese characters rendered as *Hong* (i.e. *Huang*) are not identical in the two cases, but homophonic: see Karlgren, Nos. 104, 106.

<sup>5</sup> De Groot, i, p. 58. Further particulars of Te peoples, largely settled in Kan-su, are supplied by the *Wei-liao* (trans-Chavannes, *T'oung-pao*, 1905, pp. 521-5) mentioning resemblances to, and mixture with, the Ch'iang.



the south. Furthermore, the above-mentioned T'u-yü-hun king A-ch'ai is stated<sup>1</sup> to have annexed tribes of the Te and Ch'iang, who therefore cannot have been remote from the Koko-nor country.

As a solution of the problem we may venture upon the following suggestions:

(a) The original name of these Tibeto-Burman tribes at a very early date, when along the valley of the Wei and in the region of Shuh and Han (in the modern Ssü-ch'uan) they extended far into China, was *Tik* or *Tek*.

(b) A later, perhaps a dialectical, form of the same word<sup>2</sup> was *Te*, which perhaps belonged to the Amdo country and the south.

(c) In regard to the Ch'iang we should take seriously the Chinese statement that they originated in Si-ki (Hsih-chih) or Skyi, the country east of the gorge of the Rma-chu; and we may suppose that they were an aggressive people who spread eastwards into districts originally occupied by their kinsmen, the Te, and became intermingled with them. They were, therefore, an active subdivision of the Te.

Now on the Tibetan side we have found the Hgreñ and their country Hgreñ-ro, and these may be the Ch'iang and the Ch'iang country. We have also found a country De or Bde, probably including the valley of the Ta-t'ung-ho. Perhaps we may discover in the tribal designation Gyim/Byim (p. 35 n. 5, *supra*) an equivalent for the name of the early Ch'iang leader Jên/Dsim (p. 40), as we have, in fact, for Sik-ki, *Hsih-chih*. Persistence of the names on the Tibetan side accords with other evidence, and it is in itself credible, since the names belonged to the peoples themselves. Have we any trace of *Tik*?

We have seen that Hgreñ = *Ch'iang* properly means 'man' as opposed to other animals, and the use of the word 'man' in a national or racial sense is a phenomenon very widely instanced among uncivilized peoples. What then of *Tik*? It would be a fair conjecture that that name also originally meant 'man'. Hence it is a matter of interest that the earliest known specimen of a Te, or Ch'iang, dialect, or indeed of a Tibeto-Burman sentence, namely

<sup>1</sup> *Pei-shih*, 96, 10 a-b, for which reference I am indebted to the kindness of Professor Haloun.

<sup>2</sup> It may be left to conjecture whether the change *Tik* > *Te* took place among a part of the people themselves or among Chinese who had occasion to mention them.

the above (p. 51) mentioned 'Songs of the Distant Barbarians', the Tso-tu Te of the Ssü-ch'uan border, has a word *t'iek* (see Karlgren's *Dictionary*, no. 909) in the sense of 't(ribes)man'.<sup>1</sup>

#### THE NAM-TIG

THIS is not the place for an inquiry into the early ethnical conditions in Kan-su and western Kan-su, concerning which, however, we may remark that, while it is very unlikely *a priori* that the plains and the sand-deserts of Kan-su should have been occupied by Ch'iang tribes, people of high plateaux and great river gorges, it is both *a priori* and *a posteriori* improbable that the actual flanks of the Nan-shan on the Chinese side should have had any but a Ch'iang population. For, if there had been, in addition to the Little Yüeh-chih, of whom we do hear, any non-Ch'iang population in the Nan-shan,<sup>2</sup> it is hardly possible that in the long course of events involving raids upon Su-chou, Kan-chou, and Liang-chou, and, as we have seen, a great Chinese expedition over the Nan-shan, it should never have been mentioned. Moreover, the evidently Ch'iang district Cog (Tsog, Tshog)-ro, the 'Cog (Tsog) country', which clearly belonged to the T'u-yü-hun territory and which in a list of Tibetan army districts is associated with the Koko-nor area (Phyug-tshams) and with the districts of the Rma (Hoang-ho) and Ka(Ska)-ba (Liang-chou),<sup>3</sup> is probably the country of the Džok river, which De Groot identifies (i, p. 122; ii, p. 203) with the river of Kan-chou or that of Su-chou, flowing down from 'the Ch'iang rocks'. It is further likely that *Lok-tik*,<sup>4</sup> which in the Chinese campaign of 121 B.C. is associated with the Little Yüeh-chih and the Ch'i-lien mountains (south-east of Tun-huang), and which the Chinese identify (De Groot, i, p. 124) with a part of the Kan-chou district, is the country of the Lok tribe, which was originally connected with the Tun-huang region and part of which penetrated in 638 B.C. far into China.<sup>5</sup> This being the case, it

<sup>1</sup> See Wang Jinqru, *Shishiah Studies* (Academia Sinica Monographs, Series A, Nos. 8, 11, 13), i, pp. 17 sqq., esp. p. 29.

<sup>2</sup> It may be noticed that the 'Little Yüeh-chih', when they first fled to the mountains, 'took refuge with the K'iang' (Franke, *Ostasiatische Zeitschrift*, vi, p. 85).

<sup>3</sup> Re the above particulars see *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, p. 279 and n. 5; ii, pp. 10-12.

<sup>4</sup> 魚樂得.

<sup>5</sup> Wylie, p. 430; De Groot, i, p. 19, ii, p. 191.



becomes probable that the name *Lok-tik* means the 'Tik of the Lok tribe' and contains the ethnical name *Tik*.<sup>1</sup>

As has been shown previously (*JRAS.* 1928, p. 633; 1939, p. 216), the speakers of the Nam language, which was the language of the Nam, or Nam-pa ('Nam people') kingdom, were called *Nam-tig*. A Nam state, with a king, is independently evidenced in Central Asia,<sup>2</sup> and it is natural to associate it with the Nan-shan. That the language was Tibeto-Burman and that the horizon of the people had for centre the districts of Koko-nor and Amdo is certain from the particulars which have been published and which will be re-examined *infra*. Since we know that the ethnical name *Tik* existed on the line of the lower T'ao river and in the form *Ti* is still there preserved, and since it now appears that in the far north of the Nan-shan the same was contained in the tribal designation *Lok-tik*, it is not at all venturesome to suppose that on the Tibetan side of the Nan-shan, in the actual Koko-nor region, the same was contained in the name *Nam-tig*, which accordingly might be written *Nam-Tig*. But, in fact, the same syllable in tribal or local names exists there even in modern times. In the *Geografia Tibeta* of Min-tshul Huthuktu (p. 51) we read:

'Hence (i.e. from some places in the Koko-nor region and north of the Rma-chu (Hoang-ho)) to the east are found the races Tan-tig and Yañ-tig [the latter mentioned also in *Hor-chos-byun*, trans. Huth, p. 227], where are Šel-gyi-yañ-rdzoñ (fort or castle) and some other places and also a few monasteries.'

and in the next paragraph we learn that to the north-west of Tan-tig and Yañ-tig is the great mountain Tsoñ-la, avoiding which one arrives at the celebrated place Tsoñ-kha and so proceeds to Kum-bum. The mountain may be the Lha-mo-shan or Lha-mo-ri of Rockhill (*The Land of the Lamas*, p. 94) or some part of the range which on the latest Indian Survey map is named *Amaserigu*. Also, the well-known place Kuei-tê on the Hoang-ho to the south of the Koko-nor has in Chinese spelling a second syllable anciently sounded *tək*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Chinese signs for *Lok* and *Tik* (Karlgren, Nos. 568, 573, 980) are not the same in the two cases: but their values approximate. Variations in the writing of foreign names, communicated through different channels and of unascertained meaning, seem to have been usual in China; and even the racial name *Tik*, which must have been well known, is often written (De Groot, i, p. 5) with a different homophone.

<sup>2</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, p. 130, n. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Karlgren, No. 981. The spelling *Kuei-tê* (Prejevalsky *Quedae*, Futterer *Kuei-tô*; Tafel *Kue-de* (map *te*); Kozlov, *Gui-Dui* (with views, pp. 165,



It need not be stated that Tsoñ-kha, birthplace of the fourteenth-century Buddhist reformer Tsoñ-kha-pa, has not a modern name: indeed it may be said that by the suffix *ka*<sup>1</sup> (later *kha*) it both affirms its regional character and suggests that the name *Tsoñ* was originally tribal. But a far higher antiquity, more or less contemporary with our Nam manuscript, is proved in respect of Tsoñ-ka and Dan(Tan)-tig jointly by an eighth or ninth century manuscript, containing a Buddhist pilgrim's letters of introduction; it states (*JRAS.* 1927, p. 552) that the pilgrim, after visiting a monastery in Ga-cu (Ho-chou), had arrived at the mountain Dan-tig-šan (= Chinese *shan*, 'mountain') and thence at a Tsoñ-ka monastery. It is not likely that an *independent* Nam kingdom existed during the T'u-yü-hun domination (A.D. 313-63); and the few pieces of its folk-literature and legend which we have now acquired are in Tibetan script, and all but one in Tibetan language. But evidently there is no difficulty in the supposition that its people preserved the old racial designation *Tik*, which has survived down to the present or recent past.

The only doubt may be whether the syllable was used rather in its original sense of 'man', equivalent to the Tibetan *mi* (in north-eastern Tibet *mi*, *rmi*, or *smi*); in regard to that we have no evidence.

Of the first syllable of *Nam-Tig* the most probable etymology is to regard it as representing the Chinese *nam*, 'south', in *Nan-shan*, 'southern mountain', an ancient name, used in the nomenclature of persons in Chinese Turkestan during the third to fourth century A.D.<sup>2</sup> Probably the compound *Nam-Tig* itself is also there attested, in the Prakrit form *Namtiḡa*.<sup>3</sup> The only other Chinese alternative is *nam*, 'male', 'son'. In the Tibeto-Burman languages of the region we could cite only *gnam*, *nam*, 'sky' (Tibetan also *nam*, 'night'). Both these seem less appropriate.

175)) is adopted from Rockhill. The Chinese characters may be verified in Dr. Filchner's *Wissenschaftliche Ergebnisse*, iii, Name-list, p. 21, where the form *Kui-tō* is printed. *Kuei-tē* is an old name, the place (concerning which see Rockhill, *Diary*, pp. 89 sqq.; Futterer, i, p. 318-19; Tafel, i, pp. 263 sqq.) having been the capital of a small Ch'iang state, 'Dunczi', with a dynasty Tsi, which in A.D. 418 appeared with gifts at the Chinese (Wei) court (Bichurin, i, p. 113). At *Kuei-tē* the river is crossed by routes to Labrang and Lha-sa.

<sup>1</sup> See *supra*, pp. 31-2 and n. 1.

<sup>2</sup> See *Festgabe Hermann Jacobi*, ed. W. Kirfel (1926), p. 67.

<sup>3</sup> *Kharoṣṭhī Inscriptions*, edited by Boyer, Rapson, and Senart (Index): see *JRAS.* 1939, p. 216, n. 2.

The above considerations seem to authorize the conclusion that the Nam state, of which one ruler took to wife a Khotan princess<sup>1</sup> and concerning which our only other information is derived from manuscripts written in Śa-cu = Tun-huang, of Chinese Kan-su, was situated in the Nan-shan region and presumably on the Tibetan side of it. As will appear, its folk-lore envisaged the Koko-nor region and the Skyi = Tang-hsiang kingdom on its south, separated therefrom by the Rma-chu.

#### THE NAM, OR NAM-TIG, LANGUAGE, THE HSI-FAN AND THE CH'ANG

##### *Nam, Ch'iang, Hsi-hsia*

It may now, perhaps, be taken for granted that the Nam language, the language of the Nam-Tig people, which from a few examples of nomenclature we know to have been genetically akin to Tibetan, was a Ch'iang dialect. Unfortunately the only certified specimens of Ch'iang speech are the short 'Songs of Western Barbarians' (Pai-lan, Bair-lang) which have been mentioned *supra* (pp. 34, 51). The character and transmission of the songs are also not very satisfactory. The monosyllabic words in the four-syllable lines of the songs are in Chinese sentence-order; and, as the Tibeto-Burman order is different, and the sentiment is likewise unnatural, it is evident that the songs were conceived in Chinese and given to the Barbarians as what they might like to say, with substitution only of their own, as far as possible equivalent, words.

The pronunciation of the words, transmitted in Chinese characters, is exposed to all the uncertainties regarding Chinese pronunciation, or pronunciations, in the first century A.D.; and the etymological connexions with Hsi-hsia (12th-13th century) and Tibetan words are accordingly, in the great majority of cases, highly dubious. For these reasons the three little texts are in only very slight measure illuminating.

The Hsi-hsia language, employed in the Tangut kingdom, which was founded by the To-pa tribe of the Tang-hsiang, was presumably Ch'iang. Two circumstances render it practically useless for the study of early stages of Ch'iang speech. One of these circumstances is the transmission of most of the known words through Chinese characters, an obstacle which, however, by reason of date and of advanced precision on the part of the Chinese

<sup>1</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, p. 130, n. 5.



linguists is less than in the case of the 'Songs of the Barbarians'. In the very complicated and difficult Hsi-hsia writings there are indeed many Buddhist texts, wherein the meanings of large numbers of signs have been determined by comparison with versions of the same texts in other languages; and in a moderate number of cases the like result is obtained from interlinear translations in Chinese. Interlinear transcriptions in Tibetan writing supply sound-values of about 330 signs, whereof in about three-quarters of the number of cases the meaning also is known from Chinese translations;<sup>1</sup> and sound-values of many signs are known from their use in transliteration of Sanskrit religious formulae (*dhāraṇīs*). But the study of the script has not yet (pending a publication of Sir G. L. M. Clauson's researches) progressed to a stage where characters not so known can be read, i.e. understood in respect of sound or sense. Accordingly the available vocabulary consists of:

- (a) signs whose meaning is known;
- (b) signs whose sound is approximately known from Chinese or Tibetan transcription or from use in formulae;
- (c) a moderate number of signs whereof both pronunciation and meaning are known.

This material, despite its deficiencies, might nevertheless be of great use but for a second circumstance, inherent in the language itself, which, if judged from a Tibetan point of view, is at a stage of very advanced phonetic degeneration. Scarcely any of its monosyllabic words are represented as commencing with conjunct consonants (there are some cases with *y* or *v* or *w* as the second member) and few as ending in a consonant. Hence from a Tibetan standpoint it would be said that:

- (a) all initial consonant groups have been simplified;
- (b) all final consonants and consonant groups, except *ṇ* (also representing *g* and *m*), and, in a smaller number of instances, *n*, *m*, and *r*, have been discarded.

Nor is this merely a hypothetical judgement; for there are some groups, e.g. *tenuis*+*r*, *media*+*r*, which are attested throughout

<sup>1</sup> See N. Nevsky, *A Brief Manual of the Si-Hia Characters with Tibetan Transcriptions* (Research Review of the Osaka Asiatic Society, No. 4, 1926), and, as regards the *dhāraṇīs*, the above (p. 58, n. 1) mentioned *Shishiah Studies* of Wang Jinqru. A plate with Chinese translations was given by Morisse in *Mémoires présentées par divers savants de l'Académie des Inscriptions* xx, i, xi (1904), p. 362, and a plate with Tibetan transcription is printed as Plate CXXXIV in Sir A. Stein's *Innermost Asia*.



the Tibeto-Burman sphere, and hence must have been primary in Hsi-hsia also. The effect of the degeneration of consonants, together with the serious degeneration of vowels and the consequent multiplication of homophones, is to render conjectural almost every restoration of earlier forms of the words. Thus at the present stage of our knowledge the Hsi-hsia vocables are for etymological purposes rather awaiting light from extraneous sources than able to contribute. To the matter of the consonantal Prefixes which the Tibetan transcriptions attribute to Hsi-hsia words we shall recur *infra* (p. 108).

The late Dr. Laufer, whose remarkable article in *T'oung-pao*<sup>1</sup> greatly stimulated the modern study of Hsi-hsia and who by a mass of comparisons adduced from all known dialects of Tibeto-Burman convincingly demonstrated the etymological connexions (but not the historical developments, since most of the dialects have become known only in modern times) of so many Hsi-hsia words, expressed the opinion that the language was not 'fundamentally Tibetan', but was 'an independent and peculiar idiom in the great family of Tibeto-Burman languages, fundamentally evincing decided affinities with the Lo-lo and Mo-so group'. In view of the geographical and historical considerations which we have been following out both the negative and the positive parts of this statement would have *a priori* probability. A perusal of the available literature concerning Lo-lo and Mo-so, and of the grammars and vocabularies which it includes, will make it clear that the two groups are at approximately the same stage of phonetic degeneration as the Hsi-hsia itself; and there may be a common cause, namely an influence emanating from Chinese, which from very early times has been traversing similar developments. But can it be proved that the Hsi-hsia, the Lo-lo, and the Mo-so have behind them stages of development comparable to that of the earliest known Tibetan and do not derive rather from a still earlier stage of Tibeto-Burman, lacking the more complex formations of the Tibetan? It seems likely that this problem will be solved *ambulando* and that the consideration of the groups *tenuis*+*r*, &c., and of the final consonants will contribute to the solution.<sup>2</sup> In the meanwhile what we have called the 'phonetic

<sup>1</sup> Vol. xvii (1916), pp. 1-126, *The Si-hia Language*, based upon a Chinese manual published, with interpretation, by Prof. A. Ivanov in the *Bulletin de l'Académie des Sciences de St.-Petersbourg*, 1909, pp. 1221-33. For a bibliography of Hsi-hsia studies see Laufer, pp. 4 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> As concerns the characteristic consonantal Prefixes of the Tibetan,

degeneration' of Lo-lo and Mo-so, like that of Hsi-hsia, greatly restricts the assistance which these can render in ascertaining the meanings of unknown words. It is chiefly in combining to establish a common vocabulary that they may be of use; thus, for instance, we may get a regional word *mo* or *mon*, meaning 'sun' or 'sky', which the Tibetan would never have supplied.

The next group of languages which may be closely related to the Nam are those of the peoples known to the Chinese as Hsi-fan, 'Western Fan', or Fan-min, 'Fan people', including T'u-fan, 'Agricultural Fan', and Fan-tzū and Man-tzū, who are mostly nomads. The term in general use among scholars is *Hsi-fan*.

*'Hsi-fan' and 'Man-tzū'*

For any further linguistic, or indeed ethnographical, use of the term *Hsi-fan* it is, however, necessary to obtain a more definite idea of its denotation. The matter has been carefully discussed by Sir Henry Yule, who quoted from Hodgson's essays<sup>1</sup> a passage mainly as follows:

'From Khokhonūr to Yünnán, the conterminous frontier of China and Tibet is successively and continuously occupied (going from north to south) by the Sókpa above spoken of; by the Amdóans, who for the most part now speak Tibetan; by the Thóchú; by the Gyárúng, and by the Mányak. . . . The people of Sókyeul,<sup>2</sup> of Amdo, of Thóchú, of Gyárúng, and of Mányak . . . bear among the Chinese the common designation of Sifán or Western aliens; and the Tibetans frequently denominate them Gyárúngbo from the superior importance of the special tribe of Gyárúng, which reckons eighteen chiefs or banners. . . . The word Gyá, in the language of Tibet, is equivalent to that of Fan (*alienus, barbaros*) in the language of China; and as *rúng* means, in the former tongue, proper or special, Gyárúng signifies alien *par excellence*. . . . Others affirm that Gyárúng means wild, rude, primitive Gyás . . . and that the typical Gyás (Gyámi) are the Chinese, though the latter be usually designated specially black Gyás (Gyá-nak).'

Philologically Hodgson's statement, based upon Nepalese and Tibetan information, can no longer hold good. *Rgya-nag*, 'Black plain', is the common and ancient Tibetan designation of China;

Dr. Laufer allows (p. 103) to Hsi-hsia only four examples; but two would have been enough! On this matter see *infra*, p. 108.

<sup>1</sup> 1874, ii, pp. 66-7: see Yule's 'Geographical Introduction' to *The River of Golden Sand*, by Captain W. Gill, condensed by E. C. Baber (1883), pp. 125 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> = *Sog-yul*, 'Mongol country'.



and a Chinaman may be mentioned as *Rgya* simply or as *Rgya-mi*, 'Rgya-man', which is the name of Hodgson's *Gyāmi* language. With this *Rgya* the term *Gyārūng*, which in Tibetan is *Rgyal*(or *Rgyal-mo*)-*roñ*, 'King's or Queen's Gorge', has nothing to do; and it is, moreover, inconceivable that the Tibetans ever applied the term *Rgyal-roñ-po*, 'people of the Rgyal-roñ', to the Mongols, Amdoans, &c.; furthermore, it is hardly the fact that the Chinese ever include the Mongols of Tibet under the designation *Hsi-fan*.<sup>1</sup> That *Thōchū* is really the name of the T'ao river and the town T'ao-chou situated on it Hodgson could not know; his unfortunate misconception that his 'Hórpa' dialect had something to do with Turkish (*Hor*) people precluded his assigning in the above passage a place to the Hor-pa states.

But in remarking that the Chinese applied their term *Hsi-fan* to the Amdoans, 'Thōchū', 'Gyārūng', and 'Mányak', peoples Hodgson was, no doubt, well informed. For Baber also, as Yule remarks (p. 126, n. 6), refers to the people of Tzū-ta-ti, on the lower T'ung river, perhaps included in the old Mi-nag (Mányak) country, as Sifan; and Baber also states<sup>2</sup> that

'Sifan, convertible with *Man-tzū*, is a loose Chinese expression of no ethnological value, meaning nothing more than western barbarians; but in a more restricted sense it is used to designate a people (or peoples) which inhabits the valley of the Yalung and the upper T'ung [sc. the Chin-ch'uan or Gold River] from about the twenty-seventh parallel to the borders of Koko-nor. This people is subdivided into eighteen tribes [which he proceeds to name].'

This definition includes Hodgson's *Thóchú*, *Gyārūng*, *Mányak*, and also the Hor-pa states (mentioned among the 'eighteen tribes'). Rockhill states (p. 72, n. 1) that on the Kan-su border the Chinese apply to the non-agricultural natives the terms *Sheng Fan*, 'wild barbarians', *Hsi-Fan*, 'western barbarians', more commonly *Fan-tzū*, '(sons of) barbarians', or, in the case of the wildest tribes, *Hei Fan-tzū*, 'black (sc. independent) barbarians': he further notes (p. 241) that the Ssü-ch'uan people call all eastern Tibetans *Man-tzū* or *Man-chia*. The Vicomte d'Ollone says<sup>3</sup> that 'Under this very vague appellation [*Si-Fan*] the Chinese confound all the populations which we call Tibetan'. Similarly, the late

<sup>1</sup> Rockhill, p. 72, n. 2.

<sup>2</sup> R. Geographical Society's *Supplementary Papers*, vol. i, p. 81.

<sup>3</sup> In *Forbidden China* (English translation of *Les Derniers Barbares*), p. 180.



Professor Sir Reginald Johnston mentions (*From Peking to Mandalay*, pp. 268 sqq.) that 'by the Chinese many of the western tribes are more or less indiscriminately known as Man-tzū, Manchīa, Hsi-Fan and T'u Fan': he proceeds, however, to point out that the terms *Fan* and *Man*, which to the modern Chinese are ordinary words, meaning 'barbarians' or 'savages', were originally native, non-Chinese, designations of the peoples. In fact, the Man tribes and the 'Southern Man' (Nan-Man) are often mentioned in old Chinese literature, and sometimes identified with a southern people or peoples, called *Miao-tzū*.

But, of course, 'the Chinese' is itself a very vague expression, and we have indications of more precise Chinese conceptions of the import of the terms *Man-tzū* and *Hsi-fan*. Yule, following Richthofen, observes (p. 125) that:

'The *Man-Tzū* are regarded by the Chinese as the descendants of the ancient occupants of the province of Ssū-ch'uan, and Mr. Wylie has drawn attention<sup>1</sup> to the numerous cave dwellings which are ascribed to them in the valley of the Min river. The name is applied to the tribes which occupy the high mountains on the west of the province up to about 32° lat. North of that parallel, beginning a little south of Sung-Pan-Ting, the extreme point of Captain Gill's excursion in this direction, are the Si-Fan ("western aliens"), who extend into the Koko-Nur basin. . . .'

'Both terms, Man-Tzū and Si-Fan, seem, however, to be used somewhat loosely or ambiguously.

'Thus, Man-Tzū is applied to some tribes which are not Tibetan, while it is also applied to people, like those on the Ta-Chien-Lu road, who are distinctly Tibetan.

'Thus, also, Si-Fan appears to be sometimes applied to the whole body of tribes, of different languages, who occupy the alpine country between Koko-Nur and the Lolo mountain country, and sometimes distinctively to a Tibetan-speaking race who form a large part of the occupants of that country on the north-east of Tibet, and in the Koko-Nur basin, the *Tangutans* of Colonel Prejevalsky. And in this sense it is used in Captain Gill's book.'

It is indeed remarkable that Gill, whose information was local (Ssū-ch'uan), does so clearly distinguish (op. cit., pp. 127, 133) between his Si-Fan, related doubtless to the 'nomades des hauts plateaux' (Sung-p'an region) of d'Ollone's vocabularies, and his Man-Tzū (pp. 111-12, 119, 122), whom he found near Li-fan-fu

<sup>1</sup> *Proceedings of the R. Geographical Society*, xiv, pp. 168 sqq. Cf. Baber, pp. 131 sqq.; Rockhill, *Diary*, p. 73; Johnston, p. 46, 50.

(half-way between Ch'êng-t'u and Sung-p'an), and 'Outer Mantzû', farther west, of whom he tells us (pp. 111-12) that there is a high tower in each village, usually square, one octagonal, and that the possession of one was said to be a privilege enjoyed by the headman,<sup>1</sup> though he afterwards saw three or four in one village. The country to the west of Sung-p'an and Li-fan-fu is the Rgyal-roñ-Gyārūng territory, and it may be considered the centre of distribution of the towers. Perhaps we shall be able to prove definitely a connexion between the towers and a Man people. In general, it is clear that Gill in his use of the term Man-Tzû had in view mainly peoples of the Rgyal-roñ-Ssü-ch'uan border: and the same appears to be actual Chinese usage in the Rgyal-roñ itself (Tafel, ii, pp. 241, 247; cf. Gill, op. cit., p. 119, and Fergusson, *infra*, p. 68).

For further illustration of local employment of the term *Mantzû* we may cite the works of missionaries, *The Marches of the Mantze*, by J. H. Edgar, and *Adventure, Sport and Travel on the Tibetan Steppes*, by W. H. Fergusson. The former, whose scope comprises all the country as far west as Ba-t'ang (p. 7), states that 'The people inhabiting the marches (i.e. the Mantze) are of Tibetan descent and without exception speak the language of this people'<sup>2</sup> (p. 8): yet he recognizes the separate existence of the 'Chia Rung' (Rgyal-roñ) states. Mr. Fergusson holds (pp. 247 sqq.) that the Mantze, by which term he means primarily the Rgyal-roñ peoples, are 'different from the rest of the people of the west of China'; and he conceives for them an immigration from 'Gari, a place just north of Siklim, near Camba Dsung' (sc. Kam-ba-rdzoñ?). Elsewhere (*Geographical Journal*, 1908, pp. 594-7) he remarks concerning the Rgyal-roñ peoples that:

<sup>1</sup> The towers are not dwelling-houses, but places for refuge and storage: the chief's abode is a castle (see Fergusson, p. 248, and views pp. 166, 194).

<sup>2</sup> This perhaps was not intended to be taken quite literally. As has been already seen (*supra*, p. 19), the population from Ba-t'ang westwards is not by the Tibetans regarded as racially Tibetan, and this judgement is extended to the people of Dmar-khams, SW. of Ba-thañ and on the other side of the Hbri-chu. Ba-thañ is named after a Hbah tribe (Rockhill, p. 218, n. 1), which may even have been a division of the Mi-nag, since the 'Mu-nia' people of Davies, *Yün-nan* (Table of Tibeto-Burman Languages, p. 4), are by the Yün-nan Tibetans designated *Ba*. Sir R. Johnston (p. 268) thought that the people of the country west of the T'ung river could be styled Tibetan only in a non-ethnical sense.

As regards speech Rockhill remarks (*Diary*, p. 355) that the Tibetan pronunciation of Ba-thañ was nearly incomprehensible, whereas that of Li-thañ was nearer to the Lha-san.



'They are not Tibetan, nor do they wish to be called such. Their features are different, and so is their language. They have mixed much with the Tibetans and have adopted many of their manners and customs, as well as their written language, which has been brought in by the lamas. In the spoken language many words have been borrowed from the same source, but the majority have no connection with Tibetan.'

We have seen already (p. 19) that on the Tibetan side also the Rgyal-roñ peoples are regarded as distinct.

From the above it is apparent that in Ssü-ch'uan the Man-tzū, peoples on the west, are not confused with the Hsi-fan occupying the high steppe country more to the north. Indeed Mr. Fergusson says (p. 249) that:

'There is no other Chinese term [than Man-tzū] to distinguish them (the Rgyal-roñ people) from the Sifan, employed in reference to the ordinary Tibetan of Central and Northern Tibet.'

Historically it would seem that in applying the term Hsi-fan not to neighbours on the west, but only to nomad tribes from Sung-p'an northwards the Ssü-ch'uanese preserve an old tradition. For *Hsi-fan* is not a modern expression. As can be seen from Professor Franke's *Geschichte des Chinesischen Reiches*, iii, pp. 22-4, it dates back to the time of the Sung *Annals* and the *Biography* of Hsüan-tsang (7th century A.D.), at which period it denoted peoples of the Kan-su border: later also it specially applied to the region including Hsi-ning, Ho-chou, T'ao-chou, and Min-chou, in fact the old Ch'iang territory. In the texts it seems to have gone out of fashion owing to the prominence of the Tibetans, from the seventh century, in that area and to the new term *T'u-fan* employed in regard to them. It seems allowable to conjecture that it originated as a substitute for *Hsi-ch'iang*, when the Ch'iang ceased to appear as a definite mass in the borderlands: it could embrace also the remnants of intermingled *Te* and *Tig* peoples. It would be a curious fact if, as Professor Franke states, the term were now used (in literature) only of the people of the Rgyal-roñ: and it seems more likely that it is, as von Rosthorn, cited by Franke, limits it, confined 'to certain tribes in the administrative area of Sung-p'an', i.e. to the Si-Fan of Gill, who would really be Go-lok. The modern wide use of the term by the Chinese to denote the Tibetans in general is mentioned by Professor Franke.

Practically a distinction between Hsi-fan and Tibetan holds

good. Major Davies in his *Yün-nan* (pp. 384, 387) affirms its validity. The Tibetans, he says,

'call themselves *Pé*, or, as the sound might be better transliterated, *Pö* [sc. *Bod*] . . . In western China, however, the Tibetans are more usually known by other names. In *Ssü-ch'uan* they call them *Man-tzū*, or, more politely, *Man-chia*, names which are also applied to the Lo-los of that province. In *Yün-nan* the most common name for a Tibetan is *Ku-tzung*.'<sup>1</sup>

*Hsi-fan* is, he says, applied by the Chinese 'to certain tribes which inhabit the borderland between China and Tibet and may be accepted as a useful designation for those tribes'. Like Mr. Fergusson, he notes even a physical difference from Tibetans, though admitting that, if not indistinguishable from Tibetans, 'many of the *Hsi-fan* are at all events completely Tibetan in religion and customs'.

As is evident from the narratives of travellers,<sup>2</sup> the differences of race and sociology are acutely realized by the border peoples. Even the Chinese, with their superior outlook, do not, it seems, apply to peoples of distinct characteristics, Lo-los, Mo-sos, &c., the term *Hsi-fan*; and, if they do sometimes speak of Lo-los as *Man-tzū*, it is conceivable that the Lo-los are in fact of Man origin; a partly Man origin of the *Rgyal-roñ* tribes, also, as we see, called *Man-tzū*, is not improbable, since we have definite early notice of a Man people in the vicinity of *Ya-chou* and the 'Women's Kingdom'.<sup>3</sup>

#### '*Hsi-fan*' languages: a Tibetan group

The following is a list of vocabularies, with particulars concerning languages and spellings:

BABER, E. COLBORNE, *A Journey of Exploration in Western Ssü-ch'uan* (R. Geographical Society's Supplementary Papers, vol. i (1881), pp. 1-152).

Languages: pp. 73-8 *Si-fan* (properly *Menia*) of *Tzū-ta-ti* (on the T'ung river, far S. of *Ta-chien-lu*: map, p. 93), along with *Lo-lo* dialects. Spelling English.

BACOT, JACQUES, *Les Mo-so. Ethnographie der Mo-so, leur religion, leur langue et leur écriture. Avec les documents historiques et géographiques relatifs à Li-kiang par Ed. Chavannes* (Leiden, 1913).

Language: *Mo-so* (full vocabulary of spoken language, pp. 29-55, and of written signs—mostly with transcription, pp. 62-117, Grammar, pp. 56-61). Spelling French, ordinary and with aspirates as *kh*, *th*, &c.

<sup>1</sup> On the origin of this term see Rockhill, p. 220, n. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Johnston, *op. cit.*, pp. 274, 277, 279.

<sup>3</sup> Bushell's 'Lontu Man', *JRAS.* 1880, p. 531 (42).



- DAVIES, H. R., *Yün-nan, the Link between India and the Yangtze* (Cambridge, 1909), pp. 235-44 (4 Tables)=Vocabularies of Tibeto-Burman languages of Yün-nan and Western Ssü-ch'uan.  
 Languages cited: *Ku-tsung* (Yün-nan Tibetan), *Lu-tzû*, *P'rû-mi*, *Mu-nia*, *Li-so* (or 'su). Spelling English, but with 'Continental' vowels and aspirates as *k'*, *t'*, &c.
- DESGODINS, L'ABBÉ, C. H., 'Mots principaux des langues de certaines tribus qui habitent les bords du Lan-tsan-kiang, du Loutse kiang et Irrawaddy' (*Bulletin de la Société de Géographie*, Sér. VI, tome v (1873), pp. 144-7).  
 Languages: *Mosso*, *Lissou*, *Min-kia*, *Loutse*, Chinese, Tibetan, *Kham di Mou oua* (Khamti). Spelling French, with aspirates as *kh*, *th*, &c.  
 —, *Le Thibet d'après la correspondance des missionnaires* (2nd ed., Paris, 1885).  
 Language: *Mélam*, pp. 371-7, some words, &c., adduced (in part erroneously) as not derived from Tibetan. Spelling French.
- GILL, CAPT. W., *The River of Golden Sand*, condensed edition by E. Colborne Baber, with Geographical Introduction by Sir Henry Yule (London, 1883).  
 Languages (only numerals 1-12, 20): *Si-fan*, A (from neighbourhood of Li-fan-fu) and B (from neighbourhood of Sung-p'an), *Outer Man-Tzû* (W. of Li-fan-fu). Spelling English.  
 —, quoted in Terrien de Lacouperie, *The Languages of China before the Chinese* (see *infra*). Some additional numerals and other words from the same languages.
- HODGSON, B. H., 'Sifan and Hórsók Vocabularies with another special exposition in the wide range of Mongolidan affinities . . .' (*Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, xxii (1853), pp. 121-51: reprinted in Hodgson's *Essays on the Languages . . . of Nepal and Tibet*, London, 1874, pp. 64 sqq.)  
 Languages: *Thóchú*, *Sókpa* (really Mongol), *Gyámi* (Chinese), *Gyáring*, *Hórpa*, *Tákpa*, *Mányak*. Spelling precise according to system expounded, *ibid.*, pp. 150-1.
- JOHNSTON, SIR R., *From Peking to Mandalay* (London, 1908).  
 Languages (pp. 392-7): *Pa-U-rong*, *Muli(Njong)*, also dialects of *Lo-lo* and *Mo-so*, also *Li-so*. Spelling English, but with 'Continental' vowels and aspirates as *k'*, *t'*, &c.
- LAUFER, BERTHOLD, *The Si-hia Language, a Study in Indo-Chinese Philology* (T'oung-pao, II. xvii (1916), pp. 1-126).  
 Language: *Si-hia* (with etymological, &c., discussions covering the whole range of Tibeto-Burman, Thai, &c.: some words of *Ge-ki-ts'a*). Spelling according to system of Lepsius.
- LIÉTARD, A., 'Notes sur les dialectes Lo-lo' (*Bulletin de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient*, ix (1909), pp. 549-58), with the Tse-kou Sifan (= Ollone 36) of Père Monbeig.  
 Language: *Lo-lo*. Spelling systematic, with aspirates as *k'*, *t'*, &c.
- MONBEIG, PÈRE. See LIÉTARD.
- NEVSKY, N., *A Brief Manual of the Si-hia Characters with Tibetan Transcriptions* (Research Review of the Osaka Asiatic Society, Osaka, 1926).  
 Language: *Si-hia* (Tibetan transcriptions, also romanized, with Chinese renderings and citations of etymological correlates in Chinese, Tibeto-Burman, &c.). Spelling systematic.
- OLLONE, VICOMTE D', *Langues des peuples non-Chinois de la Chine* (Mission d'Ollone, vol. vi, Paris, 1912).

Languages (in addition to numerous dialects of *Lo-lo*, *Mo-so*, &c.): Eight 'Sifan' dialects, viz. Nos. 35 *Nameji*, 36 *Sifan* (really Tse-kou Tibetan), 37 *Peu*, 38 *Duampou*, 39 *Pé*, 40 *Pé*, 41 *Dzorgai*, 42 *Kortsè*: with No. 38 are given some words of the *Peu* of *Seutati*, and with No. 40 some words reported as used by the nomads of the contiguous high plateaux; on pp. 222-4 supplements to Nos. 38, 40-2, including a few phrases. Spelling French (ordinary and with possible inconsistencies between different dialects, due to difference of recorders, see pp. 4-5).

ORLÉANS, PRINCE HENRI D', *From Tonkin to India* (English trans., London, 1898).

Languages (in addition to numerous dialects of S. China and the Sino-Tibetan borderlands in the SW.): Nos. 19 *Lissou*, 22 *Pe Lissou*, 24 *Loutse* (also Nos. 3, 7, 12, 15 *Lolo*, 23 *Mosso*). Spelling French.

PREJEVSKY, N., *Mongolia, the Tangut Country* . . . (trans. by E. Delmar Morgan, 2 vols., London, 1876).

Language: *Tangut* (pp. 136-8, 112-13, and notes by the translator, pp. 302-3). Spelling in transliteration from Russian original.

ROCKHILL, W. W., *The Land of the Lamas* (London, 1891).

Languages: *Amdowa* and *Panak'a* Tibetan (pp. 362-7); Tibetan syllabary with pronunciation of Lhasa, Bat'ang, and the Tsarong (pp. 368-70). Spelling according to normal transcription of Tibetan (and Chinese).

ROSTHORN, A. VON., 'Vokabularfragmente Ost-Tibetischer Dialekte' (*Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, li (1897), pp. 524-31, with comment by A. Conrady, pp. 531-3).

Languages: *Rgya-roñ* dialects, viz. *Wassū* (pp. 526-9), *Pati* (p. 530), *Pawang* (p. 530), *Hanniu* (pp. 530-1). Spelling according to system of Lepsius.

TAFEL, ALBERT, *Meine Tibetreise* (2 vols. Stuttgart, 1914).

Language: *Rgyal-roñ* dialects (occasional citations of words and phrases, in considerable total number). Spelling German.

TERKIEN DE LACOUPERIE, 'The languages of China before the Chinese' (*Transactions of the Philological Society*, London, 1887, pp. 394-538; pp. 468-71, 538, discussion of Hodgson's *Gyáráng*; pp. 479-87, *Lakas* or *Lolos*, *Liso* (or *su*), *Mo-so*, *Lu-tze*, *Melam*; pp. 487-93 *Si-fan* and *Tibetan*).

Languages: Captain Gill's short lists of additional words (numerals, &c.) from *Sung-p'an Si-fan*, *Li-fan-fu Si-fan*, and *Outer Man-Tzū*.

WANG JINQU, *Shishia Studies* (Academia Sinica Monographs, Series A, Nos. 8, 11, 13, *Pei-p'ing*, 1931- ).

i, pp. 17-53: three *Bairlang* songs (from the Later Han Annals).

ii, pp. 275-88: *Shishia*, *Ch'iang* and *Minia* (also Baber's *Menia*) in the Ssü-ch'uan province.

ii, pp. 1-272, iii, pp. 1-396: Romanized *Shishia* words intercolumniated in *Shishia* version of the Buddhist *Suvarṇaprabhāsa-sūtra*. Spelling for literary Tibetan and Chinese normal, for dialect words in Chinese transcription historico-phonetical, in other cases systematic or according to sources.

WOLFENDEN, S. N., *Notes on the Jyáráng Dialect of Eastern Tibet* (T'oung-pao, II. xxxii (1936), pp. 167-204).

Language: *Jyá-rui* (Prefixes, Grammar, Sentences, comparisons with Tibetan). Spelling according to system of Lepsius.



References may be facilitated by a list of the names in alphabetic order, as follows:

- Amdo* Tibetan (Rockhill).  
*Bairlang* (Wang Jinru), Ch'iang of Ssü-ch'uan border.  
*Bat'ang* Tibetan (Rockhill).  
*Duampou* (Ollone 38).  
*Dzorgai* Sifan (Ollone 41).  
*Ge-shi-ts'a* (Laufer) of Rgyal-roñ.  
*Gyami* Chinese (Hodgson).  
*Gydrang* (Hodgson) of Rgyal-roñ.  
*Hanniu* (Rosthorn) of Rgyal-roñ.  
*Hörpa* (Hodgson).  
*Jyā-ruñ* (Wolfenden) of Rgyal-roñ.  
*Korté* Sifan (Ollone 42).  
*Ku-tsung* Tibetan (Davies).  
*Li-so* (or 'su) (Davies) = Lissou.  
*Lissou* (Orléans), also in Desgodins: = Li-su: also *Pe Lissou*.  
*Li'tang* Tibetan (Rockhill).  
*Lo-lo* (Baber, Johnston, Liétard, Ollone, Orléans)—rarely cited.  
*Loutse* (Orléans), also in Desgodins: = Lu-tzū.  
*Lu-tzū* (Davies) = Loutse.  
*Mányak* (Hodgson) of Mi-ñag.  
*Mantze, Outer* (Gill) = Man-tzū; akin to Thóchú.  
*Mílām* (Desgodins) of Tsa-roñ valley, on Upper Salween R.  
*Menia* of Tzū-ta-ti (Baber) = Mi-ñag.  
*Minia* (Wang Jinru) = Mi-ñag.  
*Mo-so* (Bacot), also in Johnston—rarely cited.  
*Mosso* (Orléans), also Desgodins: = Mo-so.  
*Muli(Njong)* (Johnston) = Hjañ of Mi-li (2° S. of Li-t'ang); akin to Mányak.  
*Mu-nia* (Davies) = Mi-ñag.  
*Nameji* Sifan (Ollone 35), near junction of Ya-lung and Yangtze.  
*Outer Mantze* (Gill).  
*Panak'a* (Rockhill), Go-lok of Amdo.  
*Pati* (Rosthorn) of Rgyal-roñ.  
*Pa-U-rong* (Johnston), Bowrong, Bawrang on lower Ya-lung (Sag) river: akin to Mányak.  
*Pawang* (Rosthorn) of Rgyal-roñ.  
*Pé* (Ollone 39) = Bod (Tibetan), Mao-chou region.  
*Pé* (Ollone 40) = Bod (Tibetan), Sung-p'an region.  
*Pe Lissou* (Orléans).  
*Peu* (Ollone 36), Bod of Tse-kou.  
*Peu* (Ollone 37) = Bod of Ta-chien-lu region.  
*Peu* of Seutati (Ollone 38) = Bod of Tzū-ta-ti.  
*Prü-mi* (Davies), of Mi-li.  
*Rgya-roñ* dialects (Rosthorn), of Rgyal-roñ.  
*Rgyal-roñ* dialects (Tafel).  
*Seutati*, *Peu* of (see Ollone 38) = Tzū-ta-ti.  
*Shishia* (Wang Jinru) = Hsi-hsia.  
*Sifan* of Tzū-ta-ti (Baber) = Menia.  
*Sifan* (Ollone 36 Tse-kou Sifan) = Monbeig.  
*Sifan A & B* (Gill), also Terrien de Lacouperie: Tibetan.  
*Si-hia* (Laufer) = Hsi-hsia.

*Si-hia* (Nevsky) = Hsi-hsia.

*Sōkpa* Mongol (Hodgson).

*Tākpa* (Hodgson) = Dwags-po Tibetan.

*Tangut* Tibetan (Prejevalsky).

*Thōchū* (Hodgson), of T'ao-chou.

*Tsarong* Tibetan (Rockhill), of Upper Salween R.

*Tse-kou* Tibetan (Ollone 36).

*Wassū* (Rosthorn) of Rgyal-roñ.

The spelling of these names and of the words cited from the several languages is adapted as explained *infra* (pp. 79-81).

Perhaps, however, some further light can be obtained from linguistic considerations. Is there a Hsi-fan group of languages? Hodgson, in his article 'Sifán and Hórsók Vocabularies',<sup>1</sup> clearly recognized that his Sōkpa and Gyāmi, and perhaps also his Tākpa, were not Hsi-fan. Ignoring his misapprehension in regard to Hōrpa, we have accordingly four Hsi-fan languages, namely Thōchū (T'ao-chou), Hōrpa, Gyārūng (Rgyal-roñ), and Mānyak (Mi-ñag), belonging to Hsi-fan country. Since they are all obviously connected with Tibetan, are they dialects of that language? The same question, of course, arises in regard to Baber's 'Sifan (properly Menia) of Tzū-ta-ti',<sup>2</sup> evidently related to Mānyak, and similarly to Major Davies's (*loc. cit.*) 'Mu-nia [*sc.* Menia] Hsi-fan' of the Mi-li country. We have, also, the 'Pa-U-Rong (Bawrang, Bourong) Hsi-fan' of Sir Reginald Johnston (*op. cit.*, pp. 392-7). The vocabularies of the Rgyal-roñ compiled by von Rosthorn<sup>3</sup> must be associated with 'Gyārūng'; likewise the 'Jyâ-run' of the late Dr. Wolfenden's article,<sup>4</sup> containing an orally communicated tale, with discussion and vocabulary. In the *Vicomte d'Ollone's Langues des Peuples non-Chinois de la Chine* we find vocabularies of as many as eight languages (Nos. 35-42) grouped as 'Sifan'. It is, however, explained (p. 20) that of these dialects one, No. 36, is nothing but Tibetan, as spoken in its district (Tse-kou-Tzū-ku in NW. Yün-nan), while No. 37 ('Peu' of Ta-chien-lu) does not seriously differ, and No. 40 ('Pe' of Sung-p'an district), despite its geographical remoteness, bears considerable resemblance to those two. This raises a question as to the 'Pe' (*sc.* Bod) of No. 39, and further as to the Tse-kou Tibetan of Prince Henri d'Orléans's *From Tonkin to India* (pp. 443-5) No. 25 (but this is = d'Ollone's No. 36) and the Ku-tsung Tibetan (Chung-tien in north Yün-nan) of

<sup>1</sup> *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1853, pp. 121-51 (see pp. 122-3).

<sup>2</sup> *Op. cit.*, pp. 72-8.

<sup>3</sup> *ZDMG*, li (1897), pp. 524 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> *T'oung-pao*, xxxii (1936), pp. 167-204.



Major Davies. In their phonetical aspect the dialects recorded as Tibetan are not obviously less unlike ordinary Tibetan than the others or, indeed, than the distinctly non-Tibetan, though Tibeto-Burman, languages, Mo-so, Lo-lo, &c., of the same regions: for instance, the Tibetan word for 'rice', *hbras* (Lha-sa *dre*), is not more easily recognizable in Sung-p'an *djéé*, Ta-chien-lu *djei*, Tse-kou *djré*, *dre*, than in Menia *tch'e*, Mu-nia *chi*, Pa-U-Rong *bre*, Muli *tch'e*, or than in Mo-so *khia*, *chié*, *tcha*, *tchoua*, Lo-lo *ch'ô-so*, *chi-se*, *tche*, *tchêu*, *ndja*, &c., Loutse *ambou*, Kioutse *amtché*, *amsiet*, Lissou *dja-pou*, *tche-pou*, &c., all derived from the same original: in regard to numerals, &c., the case is similar.

Practically, no doubt, the compilers of the vocabularies had good reason for applying to the persons interrogated the designations 'Tibetan', 'Hsi-fan', &c.: and in the actual language they would perceive indications not apparent in the mere list of words. But the philologist must find his own grounds for deciding whether a dialect is or is not Tibetan. The most obvious ground, appreciated, no doubt, by the compilers, is the *general* correspondence, despite any phonetical differences, of the vocabularies as a whole and of groups of words in them. The conclusiveness of this consideration can conveniently be verified in the case of the 'Yün-nan Tibetan or Ku-tsung' by reference to Major Davies's tables, where the select Yün-nan words are shown in a column side by side with their equivalents in 'written Tibetan' and in 'standard spoken Tibetan'. The etymological identity of the corresponding terms is in most cases patent; and even where the terms are different an etymological equivalent of the Ku-tsung word can often be found, as a synonym, in the Tibetan dictionaries. In regard to other dialects we have to make our own identifications; but, this done, we can state with confidence *a posteriori* that—

- (a) in Prejevalsky's 'Tangut' vocabulary (*Mongolia*, ii, pp. 136-8), in which the translator, E. Delmar Morgan, identified (p. 303) a number of Tibetan words, nearly every word, in fact, is Tibetan;
- (b) concerning the Tse-kou Tibetan (No. 25 of Prince Henri d'Orléans = No. 36 of the Vicomte d'Ollone = Monbeig, *BÉF&E-O.*, ix, pp. 550-6), the Ta-chien-lu Tibetan (d'Ollone, No. 37) and the Sung-p'an Tibetan (d'Ollone, No. 40) a corresponding affirmation, in agreement with d'Ollone's own statement, can be made.

This is not the place for exhibiting the evidence in detail; but it shows that practically the whole vocabulary in these cases can be identified in the Tibetan dictionaries. Moreover, there are some specially Tibetan pronunciations, compound words, and occasional instances of purely Tibetan formatives. Matters of grammar and syntax scarcely appear in the vocabularies; but probably in this respect also there are few appreciable differences—thus ‘Tangut’ *yut* (Sung-p’an *yu*), ‘is’, *rit*, ‘yes’, *mit*, ‘no’, are Tibetan *yod*, ‘is’, *red*, ‘is so’, *med*, ‘is not so’, while, on the other hand, a *ta*, ‘is’, perhaps widely traceable in the vocabularies, must be sought in eastern Tibetan (Jyadé, *ap. Rockhill, Diary*, p. 270; cf. *infra*, p. 187).

Rockhill, however, goes much further, when he declares<sup>1</sup> that

‘The “Sung-p’an Si-fan”, given in Lacouperie’s “Languages of China before the Chinese”, p. 97, is very good Tibetan very badly transcribed. The same may be said of nine-tenths of the words in the so-called Meniak vocabularies of Lacouperie, Hodgson and Baber and of Francis Garnier’s Mosso phrase, *Voy. d’Expl. en Indo-Chine*, I, p. 520, where *Khe tché ma seu* is only *Kā-cha ma she*,<sup>2</sup> a common Tibetan expression for “I don’t understand”’

and (p. 361)

‘However this may be, the Mānyak’a from the Chan-tui,<sup>3</sup> like the people of Bat’ang, Ta-chien-lu, Kanzé, and Jyékundo, speak Tibetan; and the educated ones among them endeavour to pronounce as much like the Lh’asa people as they possibly can.’

This statement, which practically abolishes the Hsi-fan languages, ignores, as we shall see, important differences both of vocabulary and of phonology and morphology. Moreover, references to ‘bad transcription’ and imitation by the educated of Lha-sa pronunciation overlook an important fact. The words in the vocabularies are not transcribed, the dialects being never written, but recorded by the travellers, missionaries, and others from oral communication. They testify to phonetical developments on a large scale, which serve to establish the dialects as a group, not hitherto recognized, and represent a stage in Tibetan phonetics and processes which have operated extensively over the adjacent non-Tibetan languages. Rockhill himself, in his *Peculiarities of the Amdoan Pronunciation* (pp. 362–7), has given instances to which some of them apply, and in his *Tibetan Syllabary with pronunciation*

<sup>1</sup> *Land of the Lamas*, p. 54, n. 1.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. *skad-cha-ma-she*.

<sup>3</sup> = *Sag-roñ*.



of *Lh'asa*, *Bat'ang*, and the *Tsarong* some of the developments can be seen stated as generalities.

The most important of these developments may be specified as follows:

1. The consonantal Prefixes of old Tibetan, namely

*g, d, b, m, h, r, l, s*

which in *Lha-sa* pronunciation have disappeared, though in some cases leaving effects, survive, excepting *d*, in the eastern Tibetan dialect of *Khams*, partly in modified forms. The 'Tangut' and *Amdoan* dialect, possibly derived from *Khams*, retains in general

*g* (in the forms *k, kh* (a spirant?)), *b* (as *p*), *m* (sometimes), *r*, while *h*- is usually represented, as in *Khams*, by a nasal, and *d, l*, and *s* by the much favoured *r*.

In the other dialects here considered there is very general agreement with *Lha-sa*; but *h*- sometimes survives, in the form of a nasal. Such survival of *h*- as a nasal is a notable phenomenon, since it is exemplified also in 'Hsi-fan' languages, and, moreover, beyond, in the sphere of *Mo-so*, *Lo-lo*, &c.

2. The *Lha-sa* and central Tibetan, also *Khams*, pronunciation of

*kr-, khr-, gr-*  
*pr-, phr-, br-* } as *tr-(t-), thr-(th-), dr-(d-)*

is not found in any of the dialects: instead of the dental they present a palatal (very possibly an earlier stage of the dental), which also appears in place of original dentals preceded by *r*, so that we find

*kr-, khr-, gr-*  
*tr-, thr-, dr-, sr-* } as *cr-, chr-, jr-, sr-*  
*pr-, phr-, br-*

and in some dialects the *r* has then disappeared. These changes also were widespread in the non-Tibetan border languages. They perhaps indicate that originally the *r* itself was palatal.

3. In the combinations

*ky-, khy-, gy-*, where normally the Tibetan does not palatalize,<sup>1</sup> and

*py-, phy-, by-*, where ordinary Tibetan pronounces *c-, ch-, j-* the dialects changed the guttural or labial to a palatal, giving *cy-*,

<sup>1</sup> But for *Lha-sa* Rockhill's *Syllabary*, contrary to other authorities, affirms a palatalization. Rockhill is following E. Tibetan.

*chy-*, *gy-*, and the *y* was usually vocalized, so that the outcome was *ci-*, *chi-*, *ji-*, which might then undergo further changes, the palatal becoming guttural or dental. In Amdo there are also instances of *rgy-* > *ry-*.

4. After original palatal consonants and before the following vowel there was insertion of *y*, vocalized to *i*; and the consonant, having thus extruded its palatal element, often became guttural or dental. This change, like No. 3, is in accordance with Rockhill's syllabary for Ba-t'ang and the Tsa-rong. It must have been relatively late in some quarters, since it sometimes affects palatals originated under No. 2.

5. The combination *my-*, in ordinary Tibetan pronounced *ny-* (sometimes *ñ-* or even *ṇy-*), appears in the dialects as *mny-*, *mni-*, *ni-*, sometimes eventuating in *n-*. This change, likewise a palatalization, since the stages will have been

*my-*, *mñy-*, *mny-*, *mni-*

may be partly fortuitous; for *my-* occurs rarely, except in the ancient alternative pronunciation of *m*, before *i* and *e*, as *my-*, e.g. in *myig* = *mig*, 'eye', *mye* = *me*, 'fire'. Examples are found sporadically, more in 'Hsi-fan' and the border languages than in 'Tibetan'; but 'Tangut' has *mni*, 'man', and *nik*, 'eye'.

6. Of the final consonants of the old Tibetan, viz.

*g*, *gs*, *ñ*, *ñs*, *d*, *n*, *b*, *bs*, *m*, *ms*, *h*, *r*, *l*, *s*

the Lha-sa pronunciation suppresses *d*, *l*, *s* (the last-named after vowels and after consonants), modifying the preceding vowel in the case of *d*, *l*, and *s*, and also of *n*, which survives. Intact are *-ñ*, *-b* (except for change to *-p*), *-m* (the most permanent of the finals), *-r*, while *-h* can to a certain extent be observed, and *g* is partly lost (though locally surviving), partly retained as a 'checked' consonant or as *-k* in certain combinations. A distinction between suppressed *-g* and suppressed *-gs* is observed. According to all indications the vowel modifications here mentioned preceded the loss of the consonant: they perhaps synchronized in origin with the change of final *g*, *d*, *b*, to *k*, *t*, *p*, which prevailed over the whole area.

'Tangut' retains all the finals, except *-s* after vowels and consonants (but it has even a trace of *-gs*, as *-rk*) and *l*, the *mediae* *g*, *d*, *b* becoming *tenuis*. There is some evidence of vowel modification before *-g* (*u* > *o*), *-ñ* (*a* > *e*, *a* > *i*, *a* > *u*, *i* > *a*, *o* > *u*), *-d* (*a* > *e*, *e* > *i*, *o* > *u*), *-n* (*e* > *i*), *-r* (*u* > *i*, *u* > *a*).



In the other dialects the weakness shown in the Lha-sa pronunciation is equalled in all points (one casual occurrence of *-l* appears), and in certain respects it is carried much farther. Particulars may be noted as follows:

- (a) *-g* is nearly always lost even in the cases where in Lha-sa Tibetan it is maintained; *-b* likewise is practically always missing (see pp. 84 (*Draya*), 107).
- (b) *-ñ* is mostly, *-n* frequently, and *-m* nearly always (as *-m*, *-ñ*, or *-n*) retained. Before *-ñ* the vowels *a* and *u* become *o*; before *-n*, *a*, *u*, and *o* are modified; before *-m*, *a* is usually, but not always, retained, while *u* becomes *o*.
- (c) *-r* is sometimes lost, in which case a preceding *a* is sometimes retained, but sometimes appears as *e* or *ō*, which are also normal when the *-r* is retained. Before *-l* (lost) there is usually modification of the vowel.

7. As regards vowels it may be said that final *a*, *e*, and *o* are fairly well maintained, while *i* and *u* tend to become *e* and *o* or, especially when following a palatal or *r*, *ō*; *wa* in place of final *o* seems characteristic of Yün-nan dialects. Of internal vowels the most noticeable changes, in addition to those cited under No. 6, are those resulting from the combinations *ia*, *ii*, &c., due to the developments described under Nos. 3, 4, 5.

Of the so stated processes, whereby we can, it may be said, explain the phonetical aspect of the bulk of the words contained in the vocabularies, the most sweeping in their effects have been the palatalizations. It cannot be mere coincidence that similar processes are widely traceable also in the non-Tibetan border languages. Of the dialects in question the oldest and least transformed is the 'Tangut'-Amdoan, clearly related to its nearest neighbour, the speech of Khams: the others are more on the level of the central Tibetan. In virtue of the palatalizations all together constitute a group.

The group cannot be designated 'Eastern Tibetan'; for that title is already appropriated to the dialect of Khams, and elsewhere also in eastern Tibet proper there may be local varieties which might reasonably share it. From Amdo to Yün-nan the members of the group are all geographically situated in territory not originally Tibetan: as has been stated, and as all indications confirm, Tibet proper did not originally, and for the most part does not now, extend north or east of the Hbri-chu, and even Tse-kou, which is between the latter and the upper Me-kong, was

not originally Tibetan. Hence the dialects may reasonably be regarded as due to expansions and settlements, which as concerns Sung-p'an and Yün-nan Tibetan must obviously be the case. Accordingly they may be designated 'Colonial Tibetan'; and, since in the west the dialects of the Ladak regions are likewise, no doubt, colonial, they may be distinguished as 'Eastern Colonial Tibetan'.

*Hsi-fan languages proper and Ch'iang: spellings, place-names,  
Tibetan admixtures*

In considering the remaining dialects we meet with two difficulties in addition to the paucity of the material contained in the vocabularies. The first difficulty is in making sure that the words recorded are actually current in the dialects. Inquiries concerning the local languages had usually to be made through intermediaries, who would ordinarily be either Tibetans or Chinese, of the locality or from outside. The Tibetan and Chinese languages being everywhere, to a greater or lesser extent, in use, and Tibetan being for the most part the language of education, writing, and literature, an interrogation might elicit not a native, but a Tibetan or Chinese term, especially if belonging to the currency of travel or some other sub-species of lingua franca or if no native equivalent existed. Fortunately most of the vocabularies were compiled by competent investigators with clear linguistic purpose; in some cases, indeed, they were supplied by missionaries familiar with the dialects. The minor embarrassment due to the fact that different systems of spelling have been used—Hodgson, for instance, having his own (carefully explained, pp. 150–1) method, Baber, Sir Reginald Johnston, and Major Davies following a usage in transcription of Chinese, von Rosthorn and Dr. Wolfenden employing the Standard Alphabet of Lepsius, the Vicomte d'Ollone's vocabularies having popular (and, as he states (pp. 4–5), not everywhere uniform) French spelling, M. Monbeig having an exact but partly independent method—may be treated on the following lines:

(a) All the spellings may for comparative purposes be accommodated to a common standard, which cannot, however, be that of a 'phonetic alphabet', the material, as supplied, not having an accuracy of that order.

(b) The dialects being all akin to Tibetan and any native writing of them being in Tibetan script, the words may be spelled with



consonants as if transliterated from Tibetan, i.e. with the letters and values employed in the usual transliteration of Tibetan words: by this means the attainable degree of exactness may be secured.

Thus aspiration may be represented by *h* (*kh*, *ph*, &c., not *k'*, *p'*,<sup>1</sup> &c.); English *ch* and *tch* (with French *tch*, German *tsch*, &c.) by *c*; English *j* (with French *dj*, German *dsch*, &c.) by *j*; English *dj* is usually retained; English *sh* (with French *ch*, German *sch*, &c.) by *ś* (except in any case where there may be ground for distinction of *ś* from *sh*); French *gu* and *j* by *g* and *ž*; and so forth. The guttural and palatal nasals (*ñ*, *ṇ*, the latter also in place of French *gn*<sup>2</sup>) and the remaining signs will cause no difficulty: between bilabial and labio-dental values of *v* and *w* distinction is impracticable.

(c) As regards vowels, the normal Tibetan values (with *a* as in Sanskrit) may be supplemented by *ā*, *ū*, *ō*, and by combinations *ia*, *ie*, &c., where these occur: thus French *eu* becomes *ō*, and Baber's *Menia* *u* becomes *a*.

(d) Long vowels where recorded may be represented as *ā*, &c. (also for Hodgson's *ā*, &c.), and hyphens inserted in disyllables, &c.

(e) With a view to compendiousness of citation the variant forms of the names of languages are retained with the spellings presented by the authors of the several vocabularies, except that *ā*, &c., are substituted, as in (d), for original *ā*, *ā*, &c., which in some cases are of not quite certain signification. Thus, whereas in the present work *T'ao-chou*, *Hor-pa*, *Rgyal-roñ*, *Mi-ñag*, *Mi-li*, &c., are adopted as correct forms of the names of the respective countries, &c., Hodgson's *Thöchū*, *Hörpa*, *Gyārūng*, *Mānyak*, &c., are used in citing words from his vocabularies, as an implicit reference to his article: similarly *Rgya-roñ* refers to the *Rgyal-roñ* vocabularies of von Rosthorn, and *Jyā-run* to the article of Dr. Wolfenden (both relating to dialects different, at least in part, from Hodgson's *Gyārūng*); also *Menia* indicates the *Mi-ñag* vocabulary of Baber, and *Mu-nia* that of Major Davies;

<sup>1</sup> This does not apply to Chinese words.

<sup>2</sup> Hodgson's initial *gn*, which is not explained, is retained, because in one case at least (*chü-nyō*, 'fish') he uses *ng* for the initial, no less than for the final *ñ*. Nevertheless it seems likely that *ñ* is intended. Hodgson's *ny*-, *sy*-, and *zy*- are replaced by *ñ*-, *ś*-, *ž*-, in accordance with his explanations. His italic *h*, indicating an abrupt tone, is neglected. In *Thöchū* and *Hörpa* words *h*, *kh*, *gh* are stated to have 'a harsh Arabic' (sc. spirantic) utterance; they are retained unaltered: in Prejevalsky's 'Tangut' the initial *kh* before consonants may have been similar.

*Muli(Njong)* and *Pa-U-Rong*, so spelled, refer to Sir Reginald Johnston's vocabularies, and *Prü-mi* to that of Major Davies; *Loutse* indicates the vocabulary of Desgodins, *Loutse 24* and *26* those of Prince Henri d'Orléans, *Lu-tzù* that of Major Davies, *Mélam* a short list published by Desgodins, all four relating to dialects of the Tsa-roñ. The vocabularies published by the Vicomte d'Ollone are conveniently cited by the numbers, 35 &c., assigned by him to them severally, whereof one, No. 36, *Tse-kou*, the Tzū-ku of Major Davies, is identical with that published for its author, M. Monbeig, in a stricter orthography, and also relates to the same dialect as does the No. 25 of Prince Henri d'Orléans.

A special case of the above stated difficulty is the spelling of place-names, of which all writers, and not only travellers, even when they know and actually mention the local forms, are apt to use a form extraneously or generally or otherwise current. The confusion wrought in Tibetan cartography by this cause has been noted by Rockhill (pp. 94-5, n.) and others. Its linguistic importance in the present connexion may be exemplified by the matter, in itself apposite, of Hodgson's 'eighteen chiefs or banners of Gyārūng', enumerated and discussed by Baber (pp. 93-6) as 'the eighteen Sifan tribes' and by Rockhill (pp. 344-6) as 'The Eighteen Tribes of the Nya-rong'. Baber's list was obtained in the Ta-chien-lu region: and with the aid of a Chinese map he located nearly all the tribes in his sketch-map. Rockhill's two, partly divergent, lists were supplied, one by the Secretary of the Cha-la (Cag-la, Ta-chien-lu state) chieftain, the other by a Lama resident during some years in Ta-chien-lu: both were, no doubt, in Tibetan script, which Rockhill has transliterated according to his system, adding in the former case the Lha-sa pronunciation and in the latter the items of Baber's list, which largely agrees with that of the Lama. To Rockhill we owe, further (pp. 347 sqq.), a Chinese administrative list of the 'Thirty-three Yü-t'ung Hsi-fan tribes', with geographical distribution, &c., including the eighteen: this, however, may here be disregarded.

The three lists do not exactly represent the 'eighteen chiefs or banners of the Gyārūng' (Rgyal-roñ): they diverge by omissions, compensated by inclusion of the Hor-pa states and some others. To Rockhill, who, however, correctly locates many of the states in the country of the Chin-ch'uan ('Gold River', Rgyal-roñ), the lists were given as applying to the Nya(Nag)-roñ, i.e. the Ya-lung river country. This error is not shared by the two missionary



writers, Messrs. Edgar and Fergusson, who cite, with Chinese spellings for the most part, many of the 'Chia Rung' (Rgyal-roñ) states, nor by von Rosthorn, who cites, likewise with Chinese spellings, many of the names. But it is shared by the military report and gazetteer work, in Manchu language, translated and annotated by Dr. Haenisch in volume ix (pp. 69 sqq.) of Sir Swen Hedin's *Southern Tibet*, where again a list and map are given. In Dr. Tafel's *Meine Tibetreise* (esp. ii, p. 224, nn. 1, 3) many of the states are named, partly with note, or use, of local pronunciations: a few also in Dr. Stötzner's *Ins unerforschte Tibet*.

But far more authentic and linguistically instructive is a list given by the author of the *Geografia Tibeta* (p. 46), whose people had during many centuries had intimate knowledge of the country and had constantly, no doubt, had occasion to write the names. The spellings are likely to have been traditional, and they may antedate all other available mentions of the names. Transliterating the latter in the author's order, together with the names of the Hor-pa and other states as recorded by him, and adding in parallel columns the corresponding items in (1) Rockhill's three versions, (2) Baber's list, (3) Dr. Tafel's narrative, we obtain a table as given on p. 83.

We need not consider the material discrepancies, due perhaps to lapse or absorption of some of the states;<sup>1</sup> but much linguistic instruction may be derived from the lists. That of the *Geografia Tibeta* preserves, no doubt, except perhaps in *Pa-sti* and the first vowel of Nos. 1 (*Lcog-* for *Lcag-*) and 6 (*Lceg-* for *Lcog-*), the correct spellings of the names. Rockhill's representation of the Lha-sa pronunciation diverges from orthodoxy in the second syllable of *Tro-jyab*, where general authority would demand *-kyap*: Rockhill has perhaps lapsed into 'that form of this official language spoken in eastern Tibet' (p. 263). The Lama is similarly influenced in regard to *-jyab* and to *Jya-* in his *Jya-kha*: also his vocalism (*Tru-* for *Tro-*, *-tse*, *-je*, for *-tsi*, *-zi*; *Me-* for *Smi-*; *Koñ-ser* for *Khañ-gsar*); *Leu-rgo* for *Lo-dgu*, and the *r*-Prefix (for *d*) in the last-named, are characteristic of E. Colonial Tibetan; the *e* of *-ten* and *Tsen-* is common to the latter and Lha-sa. Baber's spelling, based on oral communication, has further features of the E. Colonial, namely, (1) palatalization of consonant before *r* in *Chro-*, *Cra-*, *Djum-*, *Cran-go-*, *Dje-go*, (2) insertion of *i* after a palatal in *Djiu*,

<sup>1</sup> The *Geografia* remarks that 'but at present there are not more than thirteen'.

<i>Geografia Tibeta</i>	<i>Rockhill I</i>	<i>Lha-sa pronunciation</i>	<i>Rockhill II</i>	<i>Baber</i>	<i>Dr. Tofel</i>
<b>I. The Eighteen States of the Royal-rok</b>					
1. Leang-la	Leang-la (2)	Cag-la	Jā-la (15)	Djia-la (1)	Jag-la
2. Lba-si	..	..	..	..	Wa-se
3. Khro-skyab	Khro-skyab (3)	Tro-lyab	Tru-lyab (9)	Chro-siop (10)	Co-aliab (Kreut ?)
4. So-mo	Po(So)-mo (13)	Po(So)-mo	Sa-ma (6)	So-muñ (7)	So-mo
5. Brdzun-bgag	Nin-bgag (15)	Nin-ga	Zun-ga (8)	Zur-ga (9)	Zun-kak or Ruñ-kañ
6. Leog-rtse	Leog-rtse (14)	Cog-tai	Co-tse (7)	Dju-tse(tzū) or Ciu-tzū (8)	Cok-tai
7. Dam-ba	..	..	Tam-ba (5)	Tam-ba (6)	Dam-ba
8. Ho-gzi	Hgo-zi (12)	Go-zi	Wo-je (3)	Wo-je or Go-je (4)	Wok-je (or * se)
9. Mdo-li	..	..	..	..	..
10. Pa-eti	Brag-stin (17)	Dra-tiñ	Tra-ti (11)	Cra-tin (13)	Bra-sdi (Ba-di, Ba-ti)
11. Ba-bam	Lo-dgu & Ba-bam (18)	Lo-gu & Ba-bam	Pa-ti Pa-wan (10) } Leur-go (13) Gi-sé-taba (12)	Pa-wan or Pa-un (12)	Ba-wan
12. Dgo-si-tsha	..	..	..	Ge-sie (11)	Rge-si-tsa
13. Ha (Hwa ?)-hwa	..	..	..	..	..
14. Len-tsa	..	..	..	..	..
15. Rab-brtan	..	..	Ra-ten } (4) Tsen-la } (5)	Rap-ten } (5) Tsen-la } (5)	Rar-dan Tsan-la
16. Btsan-la	..	..	Jya-kha (2)	Djia-kha (3)	..
17. Rgyal-kha	..	..	Drun-ba (1)	Djum-ba (2)	Muping
18. Hgron-bu	(Nan-chen-ba) Sbrin-pa (1)	Driñ-pa	..	..	..
<b>II. The Five Hor-pa States (Hor-sde-kha-lha or Hor-khog)</b>					
1. Khan-gsar	Khan-gsar (7)	Kan-sar	Kon-ser (17)	Khun-sar (15)	Kun-sar (or * ser)
2. Ma-zi	Ma-zur (8)	Ma-zur	Ma-zer (18)	Ma-zu or Ma-ze (14)	Ma-zar
3. Brag-mgo	Brag-mon (9) (capital Cango)	Dra-mon	..	Cran-go (17)	Can-gu
4. Be-ri	Hbo-rim (10)	Be-rim	..	Pe-re (16)	Be-ri, Be-rin
5. Tro-o	Gri-htu (11) (capital Cuwo)	Dri-tu	..	Dje-gu (or go)	Cu-wo
<b>III.</b>					
Hbab	Hbab (4)	Ba(Ba-thañ)	..	..	Ba-thañ
Li-thañ	Li-thañ (5)	Li-thañ	..	..	Li-thañ
Sde-dge	Sder-gi (6)	Der-go	Me-li (14)	De-go or Der-go	Der-gi
Mi-li	Smi-li (16)	Mi-li	Jye-dam (16)	Me-li Djie-dam	..



*Ge-sie*, (3) vocalization of post-consonantal *y* in *-šiop*, *Djia-*, *Djie-*. But Dr. Tafel, where he is not (in *Ba-di*, *Ba-ti*) recording a non-local form, affords clear evidence of (1) local survival of initial group *kh-* (*Kreciu*), *br-* (*Bra-sdi*), (2) final guttural (*Jag-*, *-kak*, *Cok-*, *Wok-*), *m* (*Dam-*, *-wan*), *n* (*Žuñ-*, *-dan*, *Tsan-*), (3) non-insertion of *i* after palatal (*Jag-*, *Cok-*, *Rge-ši-*), (4) palatalization of guttural before *y* (*Kretschiu*), (5) loss of *-ñ* (*Bra-sdi*). Thus we have in the lists first-hand evidence of phonetical divergence between Lha-sa Tibetan, E. Colonial Tibetan, and local Hsi-fan. The survival of *-b* (Lha-sa *-p*) in E. Colonial *-jyab* (*-šiop*) can be observed also at Tse-kou (*tson-diob*, 'thunder', *tsa-diob*, 'root', *jre-tob*, 'sow rice' (*hdab*)); but it was not everywhere so, as we see from the official title, *ku-tsha* (= *sku-tshab*, Rockhill, p. 220, n. 1), in Der-ge and the Hor-pa country: the place Draya is *Brag-gyab*.

In No. 18, the *Muping* of Rockhill, Tafel, and others may be connected with the *Sbrin-pa* of Rockhill's first list: in the latter the phrase *Nañ-chen-pa* is possibly a pure error, being a Tibetan attempt to render the Chinese name (Ming-cheng) of the Tachien-lu state (No. 1): or was it intended as a claim to suzerainty<sup>1</sup> over Muping (No. 18)? Rockhill I, *Nin-hgag*, seems to be an error, being, according to von Rosthorn, the chief place in the Pati state.

From the mainly Chinese spellings used or noted by von Rosthorn (R) and Messrs. Edgar (E) and Fergusson (F) and from the Manchu spellings in Dr. Haenisch's work (H) but little can be gleaned. But, since these last go back at least to the times of the wars of A.D. 1746-75, they may be recorded in a note with initials as here indicated and with insertion of two spellings given by Captain Gill.<sup>2</sup> The final *b* of *Khro-skyab* (No. 3) is preserved in the Chinese *Chossüchiapu* and Manchu *Cosgiyab*; the final *g/ñ* of

<sup>1</sup> Tib. *gnañ* (or *nañ*?) *-chen*?

<sup>2</sup> 1. Chala (F), Ming-jeng (H) (Chinese *Ming-cheng-sä* of Rockhill, *Ming-tscheng* of Dr. Tafel); 2. Wassu (REF), Wassi (H); 3. Chossüchiapu (R), Chos Chia (E), Chosschia (F), Cosgiyab (H); 4. Somo (REFH), Su-mu (Gill); 5. Sungkang (R), Rtsung Kang (E), Rungkang (F), Sunggak and Zunggak (H), Ru-kan or Ju-kan (Gill); 6. Chok'ochi (R), Choga Chi (E), Drukagi (F), Jokzai (H); 7. Tangpa (R), Damba (EFH); 8. Wojih (R), Okäi (H, with note of *Hog-gzi* in a Tibetan inscription and of modern pronunciation *Wok-shih* and *Wo-zi*); 9. —; 10. Pati (R), Badi (E), Bati (F), Burakdi (H); 11. Pawang (R), Bawang (EFH); 12. Keshetsa (R), Gaishechia (F), Gebäza (H), Dr. Stötzner *Gosssetscha*; 13-15. —; 16. Zanla (H); 17. Giyalung (H); 18. Mup'ing (R), Muping (FH).

Dr. Haenisch's No. 1 *Cucui* is perhaps the town Su-ching (north of No. 10): he groups together under one head Nos. 4-6 and includes (as *Kungsa* and *Mañu*) two of the Hor-pa states and, further, the *Yäko* nomads.

*Brdzun-hgag* in all; the initial *Br-* of *Brag-stiñ* in Manchu *Burakdi* (= Dr. Tafel's *Brasdi*). Mr. Fergusson's variant, *Drukagi*, of *Lcoj-rtse*, conceals, perhaps, some old local name: see his map.

The inclusion in the lists supplied to Rockhill and Baber of the Hor-pa states and some others may be due to the fact that the number '18' was traditional, while in course of time some of the original constituents had lapsed or been absorbed, so that even the original designation 'the 18 states of the Rgyal-roñ' had ceased to be understood and had been altered into the form reported by Rockhill, inconsistent and inappropriate though it is. This could not have occurred but for a feeling that all the states mentioned belonged somehow together, which is intelligible if all had been included in the old non-Tibetan 'Women's Kingdom'. The inclusion of *Der-ge* (*Sde-dge*), north of the Hor-pa states, has followed suit, perhaps with equally good reason. For the further inclusion of *Smi-li* (*Mi-li*) in Rockhill's two lists and of *Jye-dam* (*Chung-tien*, Baber *Tcia-tam*), to the south of *Mi-li*, in that of the Lama, not the same reason could be alleged, since that state appertained perhaps to the old *Mi-ñag* country; but some excuse may be seen in the fact, recognized by the *Geografia Tibeta*, p. 46, and also linguistically apparent, that the *Mi-li* people, like the *Mi-ñag*, were 'not real Tibetans'. The name-forms are significant in the same way as those of the Rgyal-roñ: *E*. Colonial consonants in *Crango*, *Cangu* (*Lha-sa Dra-*)<sup>1</sup> and *Dje-go* (*Lha-sa Dri-*), vocalization of *y* in *Djie-dam*, and altered vowels, *-añ > -oñ*, *-uñ*, in *Koñ-ser*, *Khuñ-sar*, *-i > -e* in *Ma-ze*, *Pe-re*, *Me-li*. The *g* in *Dje-go* = *Tre-o* is reminiscent of the Kham pronunciation of *sprehu*, &c., as *stre-gho* &c. Of *Brag-mgo* we have in Hodgson's *Tāngo*, whence came the Hor-pa man whose dialect he has recorded, and in the *Dango* of the traveller Pandit A-K (*Report*, §§ 157-8) two further variants, representing a *Lha-sa* or central Tibetan, not local native, pronunciation.

But we have still to take account of the second difficulty, which consists in the presence of loan-words from Tibetan in the several dialects. It may be illustrated by the six lines of a song quoted by Dr. Tafel (ii, pp. 232-3). The song, which Dr. Tafel says is half in High Tibetan, half in Chin-ch'uan (Rgyal-roñ) language, is given, with (approximate) translation as follows:

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Stötzner gives (p. 268) *Kianggu*, and for *Ma-zi*/*Ma-zur* '*Matse* (*Mazzar*)', with loss of *-r*, as noted *supra*, p. 78.



rdyalsa (= rgyalsa) powrang Leui re  
 bdyardyal tschung dyen newsa ba  
 sgo di sgo tsa ne gui re  
 naschdien sdang mu nesgo dsche (= kri)  
 tschü sgor gari tschin tsen re  
 dschra sgor gari yalwa go.

'Firm stands the castle in L(e)u. Tigers from the darkest woods lie as watch-dogs behind the great and behind the little gate,<sup>1</sup> and all round, all round wind the mountain streams. As defence screen rise all round the steepest crags.'

Here, Dr. Tafel informs us, *yalwa* is Tibetan *yolwa*, 'curtain', 'screen', and *di* = Tib. *chen*, 'great', *tsa* = 'small', *dschra* = Tib. *brag*, 'precipice'. But, writing the lines as if transliterated from Tibetan,

rgyal-sa-pho-brañ-Leñuñi-re  
 sgo-di-sgo-tsa-na(?)khyi-re  
 nags-rgyañ(?)stag-mo-ni-sgo(skyoñ ?)-byed  
 chu-sgor-ga-ri-rgyal-mtshan<sup>2</sup>-re  
 brag-sgor-ga-ri-yal-ba-go

we see that *rgyal-sa*, 'royal residence', *pho-brañ*, 'palace', *sgo*, 'gate', *re*, 'is', *nags*, 'forest', *rgyañ*, 'extensive', *stag-mo*, 'tigress', *sgo-byed* (or *skyoñ*-), 'make a door (or guard)', *chu*, 'water', 'river', *sgor*, 'at the gate', *ri*, 'mountain', *rgyal-mtshan*, 'banner', are likewise Tibetan. The lack of a translation prevents an interpretation of line 2. It is indeed evident that *di*, 'great', *tsa*, 'small', *gui*, 'dog', are related to Gyārūng *ka-hti* (Rgya-roñ *ko-ktie*) 'great', Gyārūng *ka-hehai* (Rgya-roñ *ko-kcie*), 'small', Gyārūng *khi* (Rgya-roñ *khi*), 'dog'; but these are only pronunciations of the corresponding Tibetan words, *chen* (*gcen*), *chuñ* (*cuñ*, *gcuñ*), and *khyi*, which in similar forms can be found in neighbouring languages; they may indeed be genuine native derivatives of the original words; but *tchra* for *brag*, which is certainly not such, but is an Eastern Colonial pronunciation, casts upon these also a suspicion of Tibetan origin, more especially as they lack (perhaps excusably in poetry) the syllabic prefixes characteristic of the Rgya-roñ. Possibly the only really local form in the song is *ga-ri*, 'mountain' (Tib. *ri*), which has the Prefix: and even the *ri* may be merely Tibetan, since for 'mountain' we have a really native word, Gyārūng *ta-vet*, Rgya-roñ *ta-wa*.

<sup>1</sup> Not an imaginary trait: for an actual parallel see Fergusson, p. 194.

<sup>2</sup> Lha-sa pronunciation *gyen-tshen*.

These facts, according with the above quoted statement of Mr. Fergusson and partly with that of Rockhill,<sup>1</sup> suggest that in the Rgyal-roñ vocabularies there may be a large percentage of Tibetan loan-words, of different periods, accumulated during the many centuries of intimacy. The numeral system has been penetrated, and in one dialect (von Rosthorn's Hanniu), which behaves, as Conrady has remarked,<sup>2</sup> like a Tibetan dialect, even the specially Tibetan *bdun* has been adopted (as *dae*? = Yün-nan *dai*). Thus the Rgyal-roñ dialects may in some points have, as Dr. Wolfenden suggested, a spurious appearance of antiquity.<sup>3</sup> instances have been noted by Dr. Wolfenden where a Tibetan consonantal Prefix has through the insertion of a vowel acquired the semblance of a syllabic Prefix: a rather certain instance is Jyā-ruñ *ki-tiak*, '1', which is Tibetan *gcig*, with insertion of *i* after *g* and *tiak* < *ciak* < *ciig*, with E. Colonial Tibetan insertion of *i* after the palatal *c* in accordance with No. 4 *supra* (p. 77).

In Hodgson's vocabularies there is, as Rockhill states, not a little that may have been taken, early or late, from Tibetan; and in dealing with the phonetical and etymological history of the dialects we risk treating, as it were, Latin derivatives in English as basis for etymological comparison of the two languages. It is, for instance, not unlikely that—

Thöchū *khak*, Gyārūng *kūc-cēk*, Mānyak *da-kha*, = Tib. *khag*, 'bitter';

Thöchū *rkwi*, Hōrpa *ka-msyūr*, Gyārūng *kū-mchūr*, Jyā-ruñ *ke-mśūr*, 'handsome' = Tib. *khyur*, 'entire';

Hōrpa *sgū-sgo*, Gyārūng *kūc-cūr*, Mānyak *da-cū* = Tib. *skyur*, 'sour';

Thöchū *jam* = Tib. *hjam*, 'sweet';

Gyārūng *ka-mnar*, 'sweet' = Tib. *mnar*.

were originally obtained by borrowing.<sup>4</sup> This large matter must, however, be reserved for treatment on an adequate scale.

<sup>1</sup> For further references to comprehension or use of Tibetan speech in outside areas see Baber, p. 82; Johnston, pp. 222, 267-8; Tafel, ii, p. 230.

<sup>2</sup> P. 531, following von Rosthorn's article.

<sup>3</sup> *JRAS*, 1928, pp. 897-8, *Outlines of Tibeto-Burman Linguistic Morphology*, p. 141.

<sup>4</sup> Borrowings from Chinese have been noted in the Rgyal-roñ dialects by von Rosthorn and Wolfenden, and it seems that we may perhaps add the Gyārūng words *chidi*, 'this', *hadi*, 'that', *chidu*, 'here', *hadu*, 'there', with Thöchū *cho*, 'here', *hāto*, 'there'; possibly also some interrogatives with *ha-* in Mānyak and Menia.



*Hsi-fan languages: criteria and list*

But it will not take long to discover in the dialects features which, being nowhere traceable in Tibetan, afford proof of independence and, in so far as they are common, serve to establish a group. The most obvious of these are—

- (a) In the numerical system: the use of forms which may be generalized as *a*, *snis/snis*, *ka/ga*, for the numerals '1', '7', '10', where Tibetan has everywhere *gcig*, *bdun*, and *bcu*, or their descendants. For '1' a form *ta/ti* also is widespread. For '10' and '100' it is usual to say 'one 10', 'one 100': this idiom, unknown in Tibetan, is possibly of Chinese origin.
- (b) Among pronouns: for 'thou', 'you', forms with a dental nasal, *na*, &c., are employed, while Tibetan has *khyod*, *khyed*, and derivatives therefrom; for 'he', 'that' we find *tha*, but in Tibetan *kho*, *khoñ*, *khoñ-ta*, *de*; there is also evidence for an interrogative *tha* (in Mānyak also a *tha*, 'not') and for a *pa*, 'this'.
- (c) As regards syllabic Prefixes: some of these, as in living use in the Rgyal-roñ, but also observable in the other three dialects, were noted and discussed by Hodgson; subsequently, with wide references to similarities and analogies in other branches of Tibeto-Burman speech, the matter has been treated by Conrady,<sup>1</sup> Wolfenden (*Outlines . . .*, *passim*), and others.
- (d) In the general vocabulary: there are notable words, *prom*, 'white', *mo*, *mon*, 'sky', 'sun', *na*, 'good', not found in Tibetan; less essential are the words for 'iron', generalizable as *sorm* or *somr* (Mongol *temur*, Turkish *timir*), though absent from Tibetan, which has a *lcags* unevidenced in the four dialects. Attention would bring to light other non-Tibetan terms (e.g. *tsha*, 'goat', for Tib. *ra*) and preferences among terms which in Tibetan are synonyms.

On applying to all the dialects not already dismissed as Eastern Colonial Tibetan the criteria represented by the above particulars we obtain a result which may be exhibited in a table, the dialects being (in geographical arrangement, mainly from north to south):

- (a) *Amdo and Go-lok dialects*: Thōchū (Hodgson), Dzorgai and Kortsè (d'Ollone, Nos. 41, 42), with d'Ollone No. 39 (region

<sup>1</sup> *Eine indo-chinesische Causativ-Denominativ-Bildung*, pp. 35 sqq.

of Sung-p'an) and the 'Outer Man-Tzū' of Gill (numerals and a few other words recorded by Terrien de Lacouperie, *Languages of China before the Chinese*, §§ 176-7).<sup>1</sup>

- (b) *Hórpa* (Hodgson).
- (c) *Rgyal-roñ dialects*: Gyārūng (Hodgson), Rgya-roñ (von Rosthorn, 4 dialects, Wassū with Mup'ing and Wojih, Pati (a few words), Pawang (3 words), Hanniu (a few words)), Jyā-ruñ (Wolfenden), Dge-ši-tsha.<sup>2</sup>
- (d) *Mi-ñag country*: Mānyak (Hodgson), Menia (Baber), Mu-nia (Davies), with d'Ollone, No. 38 (region of *Ya-chou*).
- (e) Pa-U-Rong Hsi-fan (Johnston).
- (f) *Mi-li State*: Muli(Njong) (Johnston), Prü-mi (Davies).
- (g) *Tsa-roñ* (upper Salween river north of latitude 28°): Mélam

<sup>1</sup> Gill's 'Li-fan Man-Tzū' (§ 174) has E. Colonial Tibetan numerals: the 10 other words show some non-Tibetan admixture.

<sup>2</sup> By this term is indicated the dialect of the numerals recorded, along with a few other words, by Dr. Haenisch, op. cit., p. 71, where the dialect is not named. The designation may be justified on the ground that the dialect is evidently the one so named by Dr. Laufer, op. cit., p. 26, whose materials for 'Jyāruñ' and 'Gešits'a' were based, as he mentions (p. 10), upon his own 'collectanea made in the field'. Except a few words cited on pp. 14-15, 28-9, 36-7, of the article here referred to, those materials were perhaps never published; but evidently the dialect belongs to the Dge-ši-tsha state, whose name Laufer applied to it.

It is not obvious why Dr. Laufer affirms (p. 26) that Hodgson's 'Hórpa' is the Gešits'a, 'a peculiar Tibetan dialect spoken in the territory stretching from Dawo to Kanze in the north-western part of Sze-ch'uan'. The region so defined is, in fact, the Hor-pa country (see *supra*, p. 15 and n. 5); and the man minutely examined and described by Hodgson (pp. 138-9) was 'a Hórpa of Tāngo, west of Gyārūng towards Amdo'; Tāngo is the Hor-pa state Dango/Chango/Tehrango = Brag-mgo mentioned *supra* (pp. 83, 85). The place was visited and described by Pandit A-K (see *Report on the Explorations of Great Tibet and Mongolia* . . . by J. B. N. Hennessey, Dehra Dun, 1884, p. 62 *Dāngo*), Rockhill (pp. 260), and Tafel (ii, pp. 190 sqq., *Tschanggu*): it is mentioned by Stötzner (p. 268, *Kianggu*), who visited Dawo, as had been done previously, from Dge-ši-tsha, by Fergusson (pp. 205 sqq.); it is between Dawo and Kanze.

Dge-ši-tsha (capital Dam-tung, see view in Fergusson, p. 194), the most westerly of the Rgyal-roñ states, is separated from Dawo and Chango by a high mountain range (see maps in von Rosthorn, p. 525, Fergusson, Tafel, ii, p. 224, with note 3, and Stötzner). Its dialect may therefore approximate to that of the Hor-pa states, and this seems to be the fact: Dr. Laufer had, no doubt, reason for thinking that Hodgson's 'Hórpa' vocabulary holds good for it; but it does not follow that it does not hold good primarily for the far more extensive and important Hor-pa country; in fact, we may rather regard the Dge-ši-tsha as a dialect of Hor-pa.



(Tibetan)	'1' (gcig)	'7' (bdun)	'10' (bcu)	'11' (bcu-gcig)	'20' (ñi-śu)	'100' (brgya)
<i>Amdo and Go-lok</i>						
Thöchü	a(-ri)	sta(-rē)	ha-dū(-rē)	a-tō	gni-na-so	a-kāi
41 (Dzorgai)	a	śtie	a-diō	a-ti	ni-u-so	a-kšō
42 (Koršē)	eū	śtū	a-dūi		ni-u-so	e-cōh
39	ā(-gu)	śkiō	a-dūō	khā-tyi	ner (or ne)-sā	
'Outer Man-Tzā'	rā	śne(-r-gu)	khā(dr-gu)		na-akā	rhyā
<i>Hōr-pa</i>		zue	agā			
<i>Rgyal-roñ</i>		kū-ānśa	ai	śa (for śta)-tie	kin-nia-si	paryā
Gyāring	ka-ti	ko-ānśa	śtyie or śetie		ko-ne-śtie	pria
Rgya-roñ	t-rki		śi	cek-ci	nie-śe	
(Wassō)	ko-tie	ko-āne	peō	śefo-tik	ke-ne-ścia	pōryā
Rgya-roñ (Pati)	ci	daeō	zra	ōwrē	āwda	ō-zō
Rgya-roñ (Hannu)	kitiak	ke-āne	śeī(śefo, °ā)			
Jyā-ruñ	zi	znō		thsa-ta	nā-ōū(-bi)	tē-jō
Dgo-śi-taha	tā(-bi)	śkwi(-bi)	ōś(<ti)-ci(-bi)		na-tsa	ta-jia
<i>Mi-ñag</i>	ta	śan	chi(<ti)-chi			hin
Mānyak		śō	ho	śi-ti(-pi)	gne(ñe ?)-śō	dio
Menia	dji	grin(ñin ?)(-pi)	śō(ś'ō ?)(-pi)		ñā-ka	ta-ra
Mu-nia	tē(-pi)	dun	ka(-den)	ka-ti	na-ha	śi
38	ta					
<i>Pa-U-Rong</i>		hnō, hnyi	ka(-to)			
<i>Mi-śi</i>	ti	hni	a(-ten)			
Muli(Njong)	di					
<i>Prā-mi</i>						
<i>Tsa-roñ</i>						
Mélan	kig	śeñi	ti-tsel	ti-tsel-kig	a-ñi-tsel	ki-śia
Loutse 24	ti	śeñi	ti-e-tsel		a-ñi-tsel	chia
26	kie	śeñid	tsel			
Lu-tzū						
<i>Yān-nan</i>	ti(-ku)	śe(-ku)	ho-u(-ku)	ho-tiē(-ku)	ñi-hō(-ku)	tiē-hō
35						

(Tibetan)	'Thou' (khyod)	'He', 'That' (kha, khaon-ta)	'White' (dkar)	'Sky' (gnam-mkhab)	'Sun' (ñi-ma)	'Wind' (rlun)
<i>Amdo and Go-lak</i>						
Thöchü	[kwä, kwé]	[kwäh-thä-ca]	phyokh con-sa con	mah-to mo mo-ta	mün mön mön me-si, mo-sa	mozyü ('air') muhso muhodze mo-o
39 'Outer Man-Txü'	nī	[vjā, vija]	phrū-phrū	[koh]	[gna]	
<i>Hör-pa</i>	[sän-ré]	[gnä-pos, wa-tü]	ka-prom ko-pröm	tū-mön te-mü	[ki-ni] [ke-ni]	[ta-li]
<i>Rgyal-roñ</i>	no	[tenchie]				
Gyärung						
Rgya-roñ (Wassü)						
Rgya-roñ (Pati)						
Rgya-roñ (Hannu)						
Jyā-ruñ						
Dgo-si-taha						
<i>Mi-ñag</i>					[ktsi]	
Mānyak	nō	thi	[dal-lū]	mah	[ñi-ma]	mērda
Menia	na	tha	[da-lu]		[ñi-ma]	mar
Mu-nia	ña		phri	na-khañ-mo	[he-mi]	mu
38			sam-ba	moñkele	min-tsa	muh'i
<i>Pa-U-Rong</i>			phu-li-li	[ñi-ru-ru]	[ru-ra]	[ri-ru]
<i>Mi-ki</i>			tr'on-mō	me-ñi	[ñi]	mo-ho
Muli(Njong)						
Prü-mi						
<i>Tsa-roñ</i>						
Mélan	na				[nam-loñ]	[nam-boñ]
Loutse 24	na	[avg]	hoñ	[nam]	[nam-loñ]	
26	na	[konéio]	hoñ	mu	ma-u	
" 26					[nam]	
Lu-tzū					[ñi-mi]	moessé
<i>Yün-nan</i>			pu-lu-zu	na-ka-mü		
35						



(Desgodins,<sup>1</sup> a few words), Loutse (Desgodins),<sup>2</sup> Loutse 24 and 26 (d'Orléans), Lu-tzū (Davies)—the Loutse = Lu-tzū people of the Tsa-roñ.

- (h) *Yün-nan* (d'Ollone, No. 35). This dialect, belonging to the region of the confluence of the Ya-lung river with the Yang-tse, is the southernmost (c. lat. 27°) of the dialects reported as 'Si-Fan'. The paucity of the available vocabulary does not prevent a recognition of some features as non-Tibetan.

### Notes

1. *Suffixes*: The *-rē* appended in Thöchū to the numerals 1-10 may be = Tib. *re, res*, 'one by one', 'time', 'times'. The *-r* of 'Outer Man-Tzū' is, no doubt, as Yule has observed (p. 128), the same word. The additional *-gu* in 'Outer Man-Tzū', identified by Yule with the *-kū* of Hodgson's Gyāmi and subsequently by Terrien de Lacouperie (§ 177) with the very common Chinese classificatory *kō*, similarly used with numerals, is proved to be Chinese by its very wide occurrence, being found also in Mo-so and as far south as No. 35 (Yün-nan). The *-pi* of No. 38 definitely associates the dialect with Mānyak (Mi-ñag), whereto geographically, being of the region of Ya-chou, it is adjacent.

The *-dū* of Thöchū *ha-dū*, '10' = Go-lok *a-diō, a-dūi, a-dūō*, which will also be identical with the *-den, -te, -ten* of Pa-U-Rong *ka-den, Mi-li ka-te, a-ten*, is perhaps a word having the same signification as the *tham-pa*, which Tibetan dialects in general append to '10', and sometimes to the higher decads and '100'.

2. 'Seven': The Thöchū and Go-lok forms with *st-, śt-, and śk-* (but 'Outer Man-Tzū' *śn-*), and likewise the Mānyak *skwi* (erroneously questioned by Baber, p. 102) may be derived from a *stn-/skn-*, resulting from the original *sn-/śn-*, or possibly *snw-/śnw-*, which accounts for the innumerable *sn-, s-n-* (but Kanauri *stis*), *hn-, n-, sr-, s-r-*, forms found all over the Tibeto-Burman field. The *scñi*, &c., of the Tsa-roñ will be another derivate.

3. 'One 10', 'One 100': This locution, exemplified in the table by the forms with *a-, &c., ta-, &c.*, and represented also by Hodgson's Gyāmi *i-shoa, i-pē*, can be found, further, in Lo-lo, Kiutse and Lissou-Li-so.

4. 'Ten': It is difficult to account for Gyārūng *sih, si*, Rgya-roñ (Pati) *śi*, except upon the supposition that they are borrowings of Chinese *shih*, earlier *śib*, found in many other languages. Rgya-roñ *śtyie, Jyā-ruñ śel, ścio*, are, of course, = Tib. *bcu > ścu > ściu* (insertion of *i* after palatal) > *śtiu*, perhaps actually a loan-word, with Prefix acclimatized as in other cases. Hanniu *pcō*, like all the other Hanniu numerals, is clearly borrowed from Tibetan.

5. *Hōrpa* and *Dge-śi-tsha*: A connexion between these would perhaps be more apparent if we had the Hōrpa form of '11'. Evidently, however, the *Dge-śi-tsha* form *ōwēl* (10-1) may contain an etymological equivalent of Hōrpa *rā, '1'*. The latter is used by Tibetans in dating, *ston-śla-ra-ba*, 'the first autumn month', &c.; but it seems to occur also in Kan-su Chinese of

<sup>1</sup> *Le Thibet d'après la correspondance des missionnaires*, pp. 372-7.

<sup>2</sup> *Bulletin de la Société de Géographie de Paris*, v (1873), pp. 144 sqq.

the eighth to ninth century and may be related to Chinese *ir*, '1' (modern *i*), of the same provenance. The Dge-śi-tsha *ō-zē*, 'one 100', with *ze < jie < jia < (br)gya* (cf. Mānyak *tē-jē*, Menia *ta-jia*), suggests that Hōrpa *rhyā* is, as suggested *infra*, borrowed from Amdo Tibetan.

Neglecting for the present matters of phonology and referring for some particulars to the notes appended to the table, we observe that

(a) Forms of *a*, '1', are confined (except for Dge-śi-tsha *ō* in *ō-zē*) to the Amdo-Go-lok area, where they are also used to constitute the expression 'one 100'. Forms of *ta/ti*, '1', occur in the number '11', and to the south they entirely replace *a*, and occupy the whole field, except for some borrowing of Tibetan *gcig* in the Rgyal-roñ (*rki*, *ci*, *kitiak*) and in the Tsa-roñ, where it is, doubtless, derived from the Tse-kou dialect of E. Colonial Tibetan: in Loutse 24 this *kig* is used to form the expression 'one 100' (*ki-śia*), which in the Mi-ñag region and farther south is formed with *ta/ti*.

(b) For '7' forms derived from *snis/snis* are almost universal, invasion by Tibetan *bdun* being observable only in Pa-U-Rong and in the very much Tibetanized Hanniu dialect of the Rgyal-roñ.

(c) Forms of *ga/ka*, '10', predominate in the north (Amdo and Hor-pa country) and also in the far south (Pa-U-Rong and Mi-li): in the Hor-pa country and the south they are used also to form the decads, '20', &c.: the *-so*, *-sā* employed in Amdo to form the decads can hardly be the *-śu* of Tibetan *ñi-śu* (< *ñis-cu*) and very possibly is Chinese (see the Gyāmi numerals in Hodgson's vocabulary). With the exception stated the whole region from the Hor-pa country southwards uses for '10', '11', &c., and the decads etymological cognates of Tibetan *bcu*.

(d) As regards the pronouns: *na*, 'thou', is almost universal, and its prevalence might be still more impressive, if forms for 'thou' were more frequent in the vocabularies. *Tha*, 'that', can be seen in Thōchū *thā*, 'that', *thā-ko*, *thāk-lar*, 'they', *thāk-ci*, *tha-kūk*, 'his', 'their', *thūzga*, *thaksi*, 'there' (Gyārūng has *t* in *tis-dūi*, 'then', Hōrpa *ta* in *tab-deu*, 'then'); Mānyak *thi*, 'he', *thiē*, 'his', *thūsū*, &c., 'thus', *thilē*, 'then', *thūngā pu*, 'there', &c.; Menia *tha*, 'he', *thi*, 'his', *thou*, 'they'; *tha* 'what?', in Thōchū *thi-sni*, 'when?', Gyārūng *this-dūi*, 'when?', *this-ti* (Rgya-roñ *this-tie*), 'how much?', *thū*, 'what?'; *pa*, 'this', in Thōchū *patino*, Gyārūng *pūz-dūi*, 'now', Thōchū *pa-śi*, Go-lok 41 *pōs*, Hōrpa *pa-sni*, Gyārūng *pi-śni*, Jyā-ruñ *pe-śne*, Muli(Njong) *pu-ne* (?) 'to-day'.



(e) Derivatives of *prom*, 'white', *mo*, *mon*, 'sky', 'sun', are found over the whole area; and of *mog*, 'wind', over most of it: with *mo*, *mon*, the ancient words *gnam*, 'sky', and (*g*)*nī-ma*, 'sun', are naturally concurrent. As regards *na/ña*, 'good', *tsha*, 'goat', *somr/sorm*, 'iron', and, further, *ya*, 'sheep', we may cite—

*na/ña*, 'good': Thöchü *nā-i*, Hōrpa *gāyē*, *gnor*, Gyārūng *ka-snē*.<sup>1</sup>  
*tsha*, 'goat': Thöchü *tsāh*, Go-lok 39 *sai*, Hōrpa *chē*, Gyārūng *kūs-so*, Rgya-roñ (Pati) *ko-su*, Jyā-ruñ *a-ke-sū*, Mānyak *tsāh*, Menia *chi*, Mi-li (Prü-mi) *che-da*, Lu-tzü *a-kie*.

*sormo*, 'iron': Thöchü *sormo*, Go-lok 41 *siēmo*, Hōrpa *cū*, Gyārūng *som*, Rgya-roñ *sōm*, Mānyak *si*, Menia *še*, Mu-nia *šu*, 38 *son*, Muli(Njong) *še*, Prü-mi *šen*, Loutse 24 *siām*.

*ya*, 'sheep': Rgya-roñ (Pati) *ko-yo* (Wassü *ke-yo*, 'goat'), Jyā-ruñ *a-ke-yū*, Menia *yo* (Mu-nia *yü*, 'goat'), Loutse 24 *a-yau*, 26 *yang*, Yün-nan 35 *yo*, Hsi-hsia *ye* (Laufer, no. 68).

*Hsi-fan languages: use of Prefixes*

The matter of the Prefixes may be here merely adumbrated. The old consonantal Prefixes, which have survived only lexically, without discernible function, may be exemplified by a few occurrences of *r*:-

*r* = Tib. *r*:-

Tib. *rgyug*, 'run': Gyārūng *da-na-rgyūk* (Hōrpa *ta-mgyo*, Mānyak *ta-ci-mo-yū*).

„ *brgyad*, '8': Thöchü *kh-rā(-rē)*, Hōrpa *rhié*, Gyārūng *oryēt*, Rgya-roñ *waria(t)*, *worio(t)* (cf. the case of *brgya*, '100', *supra*, p. 90).

„ *rna*, 'ear': Gyārūng *tī-rnē*, Rgya-roñ *t-rna*.

„ *rmañ*, 'dream', &c.: Rgya-roñ *ko-rman*, 'sleep' (Menia *kho-me*).

„ *rtswa*, 'grass': Mu-nia *rju* (Menia *ndza*).

*r* absent in Tibetan:

Tib. *gor-ma*, 'stone': Hōrpa *rgā-mē*.

„ *khyur*, 'complete', &c.: Thöchü *rkwi*, 'handsome'.

„ *ñan*, *mñan*, *sñan*, 'listen': Gyārūng *ka-rnyou*.

„ *bya*, 'bird', 'fowl': Menia *rga*, Mu-nia *rja*, 'chicken' (*rja-gu*, 'egg'), Mi-li (Prü-mi) *ju*, 'chicken' (*ra-gu*, 'egg'), 35 *hro-pu*, 'cock' *hro-ma*, 'hen' (*hro-kō*, 'egg').

„ *mī*, 'man': Gyārūng *tī-rmī*, Rgya-roñ *t-rmī*, Hsi-hsia *rme*.

<sup>1</sup> Add Tākpa (*lihū*)-*nī* ((*lihū*)-*ma-nī*, 'bad').

Tib. *miñ*, 'name'; Thöchü *rmāḥ*, Gyārūng *ti-rmiñ*, Rgya-roñ *k-rmien* (Hörpa *smen*).

Similarly we find instances of *g-* (Thöchü *kśi(-ri)*, '3' = *gsum*, &c.), *b-* (Hörpa *na-pśē*, 'tell' = *bsad*, &c.), *m-* (Hörpa *ka-mthū*, 'great' = *mtho*, 'high', &c.), *ḥ-* (as nasal, Rgya-roñ *ci-mbō* = *ḥbar*, 'blaze', &c.), and *s-* (Rgya-roñ *te-ñi*, 'heart' = *sñiñ*, &c.), both where present in Tibetan and where Tibetan has a different, or no, Prefix.

It appears that all the old Prefixes, except *d* (which indeed is given in Loutse 24 *dgu*, 26 *daguen*, Lu-tzū *degu*, '9', probably a loan of Tib. *dgu*—Thöchü has *rgū(-rē)*), exist in the dialects, partly as in Tibetan, partly with exchanges among the Prefixes, partly where absent from Tibetan. There is nothing surprising in this, alternation of Prefixes by interchange and by presence and absence being familiar within the limits of Tibetan itself. Some of the cases of Prefix absent from Tibetan and some local preferences may prove interesting. The general conclusion that the ancient Prefixes were a common heritage of the whole group stands fast.

The syllabic Prefixes in the dialects reveal by two circumstances the fact that they belong to a later stratum: (*a*) they are never found following, but always preceding the old Prefixes, where these are preserved, and (*b*) they are in particular conjunctions omissible, as can be observed in the case of Jyā-ruñ, where Dr. Wolfenden has furnished a continuous narrative which exemplifies the fact. In function also they differ from the old Prefixes, serving to mark grammatic classes of words, such as nouns, adjectives, verbs, numerals. The different languages are not uniform in their choice of Prefixes or in their employment of them severally.

The available materials enable us to detect the following (vowel normalized as *a*):

*a-*, *ka-*, *ta-*, *da-*, *na-*, *wa-*, *ya-*, and, in the Rgyal-roñ, *sa-* and (Hanniu) *ci-*, *yi-*,

and we may note occurrences in the languages severally.

Thöchü:

1. *a-* in Verbs (*a-dz*, 'eat', *ā-thī*, 'drink' = Tib. *za*, *ḥthun*, &c.).
2. *ta-* in Verbs (*ta-sēḥ*, 'kill' = Tib. *bsad*, &c.).
3. *da-* in Verbs (*da-gac*, 'strike' = Menia *na-ka*, &c.).

Go-lok (41, 42, 39):

1. *a-* in 41 *a-cl*, 42 *e-si*, 'month' (Rgya-roñ *ti-e-tsla*, Tib. *zla-ba*).



2. *ka-* 'Outer Man-Tzū' *kō-ā-dre*, 'hot', *kō-a-sti*, 'cold'<sup>1</sup> (Thōchū *styū*, Jyā-run *kā-mi-štē-a*), *kā-zye*, 'eat' (Tib. *za*, Li-Fan Man-Tzū *gna-dze*).
3. *da-* in 42 *da-kō*, 'go' (41 *kō-še*, Tib. *hgro*).

## Hōr-pa:

1. *ka-* in Adjectives (*ka-chi*, 'long' = Gyārūng *ka-sri*, Tib. (s)riñ).
2. *ta-* in Verbs (*ta-šē*, 'kill' = Thōchū *ta-sēh*, &c.).
3. *na-* in Verbs (*na-pšē*, 'tell', &c.).
4. *wa-* in Verbs (*wa-thi*, 'drink', *wa-nzūn*, 'sit' = Thōchū *ā-thi*, *ā-jon*, &c.).

## Rgyal-roñ (Gyārūng, Rgya-roñ, Jyā-run):

1. *a-* in Nouns (Rgya-roñ *ti-e-tsla*, 'month' = Go-lok *a-cl*, *e-si*, *a-sia*, 'flesh' = Tib. *śa*, &c.).
2. *ka-* in Nouns (Gyārūng *ki-ni*, 'sun' = Tib. *ñi-ma*, &c.), Adjectives (Gyārūng *ka-nak*, 'black' = Tib. *nag*, &c.), Verbs (Gyārūng *ka-rnyou*, 'hear', &c.), and Numerals (Gyārūng *ka-ti*, '1', *ka-nēs*, '2', &c.).  
*ga-* in Rgya-roñ *ga-pa*, *go-mū*, 'father', 'mother' (Gyārūng *ta-pē*, *tō-mō*), may be different.
3. *ta-* in Nouns (Gyārūng *tā-rū*, 'horn', *ti-khe*, 'mouth' = Tib. *ru*, *kha*, &c.), Adjectives (Rgya-roñ *te-sa-lo*, 'hot' = Tib. *tsha*, &c.), Verbs (Gyārūng *ta-zō*, 'eat' = Tib. *za*, &c.).
4. *da-* in Verbs (Gyārūng *da-na-rgyūk*, 'run' = Tib. *rgyug*, &c.).
5. *na-* in Verbs (Gyārūng *nā-sē*, 'kill' = Thōchū *ta-sēh*, Hōrpa *ta-šē*, &c.).
6. *ya-* in Gyārūng *ya-cin* (Rgya-roñ *na-chen*), *ye-yen*, 'go', 'walk'.
7. *sa-* (Causative) in Verbs (Rgya-roñ *ta-sa-zo*, 'feed', Jyā-run *sa-pkiab*, 'cover up', &c.).
8. (Hanniu dialect) *ni-* (<*na*-?), *ci-*, *yi-*, *me-*, *mō-* in Verbs (Rgya-roñ *ni-ndu*, 'bring', *ci-nthen*, *yi-nthen*, 'drink' = Tib. *hthuñ*, *me-ndū*, 'sit down', *mō-dru*, 'take off (clothes)', &c.).

## Mi-ñag (Mānyak, Menia, Mu-nia, 38):

1. *a-* (Mu-nia only) in Adjectives (*a-ñi*, 'few' = Tib. *ñuñ*, *a-bi*, 'thin' = Menia *ya-bu*, &c.).

<sup>1</sup> We have here ventured to invert the meanings as given by Terrien de Lacouperie, § 176.

2. *ka-* in Verbs (Menia *kho-me*, 'sleep', Rgya-roñ *ko-rman*, *kho-cuo*, 'kill', *kho-tha-cuo*, 'do not kill').
3. *ta-* in Verbs (Mānyak *ta-khi*, 'give', &c.).
4. *da-* in Adjectives (Mānyak *dā-nā*, Menia *da-na*, 'black', *da-llū*, Menia *da-lu*, 'white', Mu-nia *da-sō*, Menia *ya-sē*, Tib. (*s)riñ*, 'long', &c.) and Verbs (Mānyak *da-nwā*, 'weep' = Tib. *ñu*, *da-ci*, 'lift' = Thöchū *ta-ci*, &c.).
5. *na-* in Verbs (Mānyak *nai-jeu*, 'sit' = Thöchū *ā-jon*, *gna-jeu*, 'eat' = Tib. *za*, Menia *na-ka*, 'beat', *na-tha-ka*, 'do not beat' = Thöchū *da-gac*, &c.).
6. *ya-* (Menia only) in Adjectives (*ya-nche*, 'fast', *ya-nche-ta*, 'clever' = Tib. *skyen*, *mkhyen*, *ya-sē*, 'long', &c.).
7. *wa-* in Mānyak *wa-khi*, *ta-khi*, 'give'.

## Pa-U-Rong:

*da-* in *du-ka*, 'mouth' (Tib. *kha*, Gyārūng *tī-khe*, &c.).

## Mi-li(Muli(Njong), Prū-mi):

1. *a-* in Prū-mi *a-lu-lu*, 'small' (cf. Mu-nia *a-tzō-tzō* = Tib. *chuñ*, 'small', Lo-lo *i-tzō*, *a-tio*, &c.).
2. *na-* in Muli(Njong) *ne-se*, 'kill' (Gyārūng *nā-sē*, Mānyak *na-sya*, &c.).

## Tsa-roñ (Mé-lam, Loutse, Lu-tzū):

1. *a-* in Nouns (Loutse *a-sa*, 'earth', *a-na*, 'ear', &c. = Tib. *sa*, *rna*, &c.), and Numerals (Loutse *a-ñi*, '2', *a-som*, '3' *a-bli*, '4', &c.).
2. *ka-* in Mélam *ka-thin*, 'large'?
3. *ta-* in Nouns (Mélam *té-kru*, 'horn' = Hörpa *k-rūm-bo*, Tib. *ru*, Loutse 24 *t-me*, 26 *t-mé*, 'fire' = Gyārūng *tī-mi*, Tib. *me*, &c.) and Adjectives (Mélam *te-ke*, 'difficult' = Tib. *kha*, *te-ni*, 'little' = Mu-nia *a-ñi*, Tib. *ñuñ*).
4. *da-* in Loutse 24, 26 *de-gui*, 'dog' = Tib. *khyi*.

In some of the above instances the word following the syllabic Prefix is probably a loan from Tibetan. Also, insertion of a vowel after one of the old consonantal Prefixes, whereby the semblance of a syllabic Prefix is created, is exemplified in—

Gyārūng *śē-pri* 'ape' (Tib. *sprehu*), *ko-rok*, 'ant' (Tib. *grog*), Rgya-roñ *waria(t)*, *worie(t)* (Tib. *brgyad*, Khams *vrgyad*), Gyārūng *paryē*, '100' (Tib. *brgya*), Mélam *sela*, 'moon', Loutse 24 *señi*, 26 *señi*, Lu-tzū *señid*, '7' (*snis*), Loutse 26



*daguen*, '9' (Tib. *dgu*), *sena*, 'nose' (Tib. *sna*), *sola*, 'month' (26 *sela*, Tib. *sla*, *zla*), Lu-tzū *sela*, 'moon', *a-beli*, '4' (*bli*).

It seems likely that some of the coincidences of Rgyal-roñ syllabic Prefixes with old consonantal Prefixes in Hsi-hsia (in Tibetan script), as noted by Dr. Wolfenden (*JRAS.* 1931, pp. 47-52), e.g. Hsi-hsia *gñi*, 'sun' (Tib. *ñi*, *gñi*) = Gyārūng *ki-ni*, &c., may really be of this nature. The question would then arise whether on the Rgyal-roñ side the cause was an intellectual misunderstanding or a phonetic difficulty.<sup>1</sup> It must, however, be admitted that some of the Rgyal-roñ Prefixes, e.g. *ka-*, *ta-*, are of such extensive use as to render coincidences of the above kind inevitable.

The particulars elicited are by no means casual: on the contrary, some of them have an enormous extension in Tibeto-Burman generally. This is true, for instance, of the pronoun *na*, 'thou', and the numeral *snis*, '7', concerning which it may be sufficient to refer to the *Linguistic Survey of India*, vol. I. ii, 'Comparative Vocabularies'. For *a*, '1', and *ga/ka*, '10', we must look to the regions where China, Tibet, and Burma meet. The *a* seems to be found in Sing-pho (*ai*) and in the 'North Assam group' (Aka); but perhaps the most interesting recurrence is in the Min-kia of the Ta-li-fu region in Yün-nan, where the numerals are almost entirely Tibeto-Burman. For '1' we there find *a*, but also *i*, the latter probably Chinese; but for '100', '1,000' ('one 100', 'one 1,000') the forms are *a-pöl*, *a-khin*, in which the second syllables are Chinese (*pa(r)* and *ch'ien*), while the *a* may be a survival from Tibeto-Burman antiquity.

The expressions 'one 10', 'one 100', seem nowhere to occur in Tibetan; but they may be discoverable in the Himālayan dialects, Thulung (Wolfenden, *JRAS.* 1935, p. 641), Simbu, Yākhā, Rāi.

It may be noticed that even in the Rgyal-roñ we have both on its eastern extremity ('Outer Man-Tzū' *ā(r-gu)*, '1', *kha(dr-gu)*, i.e. *kha(r-gu)*, '10', *khā-tyi*, '11', &c.) and on the western (Dge-śi-tsha *o-wre*, '11', *ō-mnē*, '12', *ō-su*, '13', &c., *ō-zē*, 'one 100'), evidence for *a*, '1', and *ga/ka* (Thōchū *ha*), '10': and this suggests that the forms cognate to Tib. *bcu*, '10', or Chinese *shih*, which dominate the remaining area, are intrusive.

As regards *mon*, 'sky', we may cite Mo-so *mun*, *men*, *mō*, *mu*,

<sup>1</sup> Conversely, the instances of an extra prefix *d* in Rgyal-roñ words (*drmi*, 'man', *drna*, 'ear', &c.) cited by Laufer in *T'oung-pao*, xv (1914), p. 107 n., are nothing but the well-known syllabic prefix *ta/te*, &c., with the vowel lost (Rgya-roñ *trmi*, *trna*, &c.).

&c., Lo-lo *m'o*, *mu*, *mū*, Kiutse *ga-mōn*, *mu-lang*; then Ka-chin *la-mu* and in Burma *mow*, *mow-kong*, *mu-tang*, *mog*, *mo*, &c.; while the rarer meaning, 'sun', is seen in Lo-lo *mū-ñi*, &c., Li-su *mū-tsa*. In the case of *prom*, 'white', we have the *r* surviving (partly as *l*) in written Burmese *phru*, 'white', and, with the meaning 'silver', Sing-pho *kūm-phroñ*, Ka-chin *kum-proñ*, Nung *kum-prā*, Lo-lo *phru*, Aka Lo-lo and Lahu *plu*, Pyen *plū*; the *r* is lost in Mo-so *phèn*, *phè*, *pha*, *pe*, Lo-lo *a-phyu*, *piu*, &c., Li-su *phu*, *phu-ca-ma*, Lahu *phu*, Petsen *pin*, Loutse 24, 26 *hong*, Min-kia *pō*, *pe*, 'white', and Lo-lo *piu*, Li-su *phu*, 'silver'. There is loss of *r* with palatalization (*prom* > *crom* > *ciom* > *tiom*, *kiom*, in Lo-lo *chon*, *a-tiu*, *a-thu*, *a-kiéu*, *tchuoh*, *tlo*, &c.). Here again the partial survival of *-m* (as *-ñ* or *-n*) in languages which otherwise have lost their final consonants is noticeable.

The syllabic Prefixes also, especially *a-* in adjectives, are found to some extent in the Lo-lo and other border languages; and possibly they would be more evident in the living speech than in the vocabularies, whence they may be absent as 'omissible': and, of course, in some remoter Tibeto-Burman groups, e.g. the Miri-Daflā-Mishmi group, north of Assam, and in the Nāgā groups they are plentiful or abound.<sup>1</sup> But nowhere in the Sino-Tibetan frontier languages could we hope to trace such a constellation as has been elicited above.

#### *Hsi-fan languages: phonological derivation from early Ch'iang*

It is perhaps, therefore, not venturesome to assume a concurrence in the conclusion that the languages under consideration constitute a distinct group. They extend northward continuously from just about latitude 28° to Amdo and the Koko-nor region, which is, as we have seen, the geographical area of the Hsi-fan languages proper. Therefore the group may reasonably be designated 'the Hsi-fan group'. But we know from definite Chinese information that the whole area, as far south at least as the Rgyal-roñ, the 'Women's Country', was occupied by Ch'iang peoples, while concerning the Mi-ñag region, more to the south, we have no statement. The continuity of the linguistic evidence justifies us in contemplating the group as essentially a 'Ch'iang group'.

<sup>1</sup> The *ka-* prefix used in Mishmi with the first four or six numerals and to a less extent in Nāgā dialects is reminiscent of the Rgyal-roñ.

<sup>2</sup> No. 35 is isolated farther south, circa lat. 27°.



In this conclusion we are confirmed by the evidence furnished by the Hsi-hsia, even in the present limits of the knowledge obtained of it. For that the Hsi-hsia, language of a Ch'iang dynasty and people, must have been largely or mainly Ch'iang could hardly be doubted; and in Hsi-hsia are found some of the above discussed marks of our Hsi-fan group, namely *a*, '1' (Nevsky, No. 78, also *li*, *kli*, *gli*, Nos. 1, 239, and *gteh*, 'alone', '7', No. 300); *sa*, *gśah*, '7' (No. 56); *kha*, *dghah*, *dgaḥ*, '10' (No. 145); *tha*, 'he', 'it' (Nos. 71, 225); *mo*, 'sky', 'sun' (No. 7, Laufer, No. 34); *dnaḥ*, 'good' (Nevsky, No. 199); *ye*, 'sheep' (Laufer, No. 68); to which we may add *ldiḥ*, *lda*, *zlaḥ*, *lha* (Nevsky, No. 93, from *bldyi* = Tib. *bži*), '4' = Hōrpa *hla*, Tākpa *pli*, Loutse *a-bli*, &c., and *rme* (Tib. *mi*, *myi*, Nevsky, No. 39), 'man', with *r*-Prefix, as in Gyārūṅ *tī-rmi*, Rgya-roṅ *t-rmi*.

It has been remarked that in some particulars, notably the preservation of *ga/ka*, '10', and its employment in the formation of the decads, there is agreement between the northern and southern dialects, interrupted by the Rgyal-roṅ area, which is also the area of widest and still living activity of the syllabic Prefixes. In case it should eventually appear that from the ancient Ch'iang the syllabic Prefixes were absent, it may turn out that the Ch'iang population of the Rgyal-roṅ was superimposed upon another race which has contributed to the dialects the syllabic Prefixes. For such a substrate population we could conjecture no other name than *Man*, which is still applied by the Chinese to the Rgyal-roṅ people, supposed to represent the original native race of Ssü-ch'uan. In this connexion the apparently actual tradition of the Man-tzū people, that they were originally immigrants,<sup>1</sup> may deserve consideration.

According to the etymologies propounded above the Hsi-fan languages show in many cases an advanced stage of phonetical degeneration, natural in view of their modern date. But a mass of the changes of consonants can be brought under the rubrics specified in connexion with the E. Colonial Tibetan, namely, (1) palatalization before *r*, and *y*, and (2) loss of finals.

As from *brag*, 'rock', we get in E. Colonial Tibetan *jra(g)* > *cra(g)* (Lhasa *tra(g)* > *ca(g)*) (Central Tibetan *ṭa(g)*), so from *p(h)rom* we get in the Hsi-fan languages—

(a) non-palatalized forms: (1) with retention of the *r*, Rgyal-roṅ

<sup>1</sup> Fergusson, *op. cit.*, pp. 247 sqq.

*prom*, Hōrpa *phrū*, Mu-nia *phri*, (2) with  $r > y$  Thōchū *phyo(kh)*, (3) with loss of  $r$ , Pa-U-Rong *phu-li-li*;

- (b) palatalized forms: (1) with retention of the  $r$ , Muli(Njong) *tr'on* < *cron*, (2) with loss of  $r$ , Go-lok *con*, (3) with  $c > ś$ , 38 *son*, *śam*, (4) with  $ś > h$  (probably not  $ph > h$ ), Tsa-roñ *hong*.

From this palatalization the dentals  $t$ ,  $d$ , &c., are not free either in E. Colonial Tibetan or in Hsi-fan, as we can see from E. Colonial (36 *cru*, 37 *cu*, 40 *cuk*) and Hsi-fan (Hōrpa *chō*, Menia *chu*, Rgya-roñ *ko-co*, Mi-li (Prū-mi) *chro*, Mu-nia *kho*, Lu-tzū *kru*, &c.) forms of *drug*, '6'.

This palatalization has not spared the group *sr-*, as we can see in the case of *sriñ*, 'long' = Tib. *riñ* (but *sriñ*, 'extend'): (a) non-palatalization in Gyārūng *ka-sri*, 'long', 'tall'; (b) palatalization in Hōrpa *ka-ci* (< *cri* < *śri* < *sri*), 'long', *ce-ci* (*sriñ-sriñ*), 'far', Mānyak *śā-śā*, Menia *ya-śe*, Mu-nia *da-śō* [Mo-so *śō*, Lo-lo *śō*, *a-śō*], 'long'. The instance illustrates also, in the Mānyak, &c., forms, the modifications of vowels, especially  $i$ , which in both groups of languages are apt to occur after  $r$ , e.g. in d'Ollone 36 *crō*, 37 *cō*, 38 *tsē*, 40 *ce*, 41 *tūeś*, Mélam *śiru*, *kiō*, < *śru* = Tib. *gri*, 'knife'.

As regards consonant before  $y$ , we have seen in the case of *brgya*, '100'—

- (a) non-palatalization in Hōrpa *rhyā*, Rgyal-roñ *paryē*, *pria*, with elision, frequent in Amdo Tibetan, of  $g$  in the group *rgy*—cf. Hōrpa *rhiēē*, Rgyal-roñ *oryēt*, *waria(t)*, &c. = Tib. *brgyad*, '8';
- (b) palatalization in Thōchū and Go-lok *a-kśi*, *a-kśō*, &c., Rgya-roñ (Hanniu) *źdie*, Mānyak *tē-jē*, Menia *ta-jia*, Tsa-roñ *ki-śia*, *chia*, &c.;
- (c) probably *rjia* > *ra* in Pa-U-Rong *ta-ra*, and (*r*)*śia* > *he* in 35 *hé* (cf. 35 *hé*, 38 *hié pi* = *brgyad*, '8');
- (d) in the degenerate Mu-nia and Yün-nan 35 a change  $ś > h$ , yielding *hé*, *hin*, '100'; cf. *ho-u*, *ho*, '10', *hen*, *hé*, '8'.

Here also we have in E. Colonial the palatalized forms 40 *cia*, '100', 37 *dié*, 40 *dtié*, '8'. With labials, *by-*, &c., the palatalization is in Tibetan, of course, normal—*bya*, 'bird', > *ja*, *ca*, in E. Colonial > *jia* > *cia* > *śia*.

The palatalizing process need not have been everywhere the same. In E. Colonial Tibetan the development, which is regular, is certainly as in *pr-* > *cr-* > *c-*, because the intermediate stage, *cr-*,



is normal in some dialects, the cause having been, no doubt, a palatal quality of the *r*. But in Hsi-fan the change might have been earlier and might, as suggested by Thöchü *phyo(kh)* < *phrom*, have been as *pr-* > *py-*, so that the *r*-palatalization would be a case of the *y*-palatalization, and, where it did not take place, the surviving form would be *pr-*, or *py-*, or *p-* (with loss of *y*, as in western Ladaki *bi* < *byi*). But this cannot have been, at any rate everywhere, the case in Hsi-fan, because we have exemplified palatalization with survival of the *r*, and the same is seen in the neighbouring border languages, e.g. in Mo-so *jré*, 'mule' = Tib. *drehu*.

What, however, is clear is that, once the stage *p* < *pr* is reached, there is no longer a basis for palatalization of a group *pr-*, since the *pr-* no longer exists: hence, if a palatalization has subsequently occurred, it must have operated upon loan-words containing that group.

The case of *my-* > *mi-*, or *my-* > *mny-*, *ny-* > *mni-*, *ni-*, may be exemplified by forms of Tib. *mig*, *myig*, 'eye', which illustrate also the fate of final *g*. In this word the *-g* is still pronounced both in Lha-sa Tibetan (*mik*) and in E. Colonial (*mig*), though normally *-g* is lost, in the former except in certain collocations, *lak-pa*, &c.: the survival may be due to the *i* vowel, since we find also Lha-sa *šik* (*gzig*), 'panther', and E. Colonial (Tse-kou) *kig* (*gcig*), '1'. In 'Tangut', which retains the *-g*, as *-k*, *nik*, 'eye', is not exceptional: in Mo-so, Lo-lo, &c., the *-g* is lost. From *myig* > *miig* > *miag* we get Gyārūng *tai-myēk*, Muli(Njong) *mia* (Lā-su *mia-sō*), Menia *mie*, Mu-nia *mie-lu*, Pa-U-Rong, *byu* [Mo-so *miō*, *mō*, Lo-lo *myet-sao*, &c.]; from *mnyig* Rgya-roñ (Hanniu) *mnyi*, Mānyak *mni* [40 *ñihī*, Lo-lo *ni-ssa*]; from *mniag* Rgya-roñ *te-mniak*, *te-mniok*, &c., 38 *nia*, Mi-li (Prü-mi) *nie*, Loutse *nie* [Yün-nan (Ku-tsung) *nie*, Mo-so *nya-lü*, Lo-lo *nie-sō*, &c.]. Similarly from *mi*, *myi*, 'man', we get *n*-forms, Thöchü *nāh*, Go-lok *néé*, no, 40 *ñō*, *nié*, Pa-U-Rong *nyi* ['Tangut' *mni*, Yün-nan (Ku-tsung) *na*]. It is noticeable that the *mn-*, *n-*, forms of these words are not found in E. Colonial Tibetan dialects, except where exposed to Hsi-fan influence.

These examples may serve to show what variety of phonetical form has in the Hsi-fan dialects, no less than in E. Colonial Tibetan and the neighbouring border languages, resulted from operation or non-operation of the palatalizing process and from vowel complication due to vocalization of *y*. Any further consideration of this matter, more especially as regards irregularities and loan-

words, must perhaps be left to the study of the languages severally: is, for instance, Hōrpa *hyō*, 'house', directly descended from the original *khyim*, or has it passed through the palatal stage of the adjacent Rgya-roñ *chiem*, *chom*? Hōrpa, a dialect exposed more than any other to influence from E. Colonial Tibetan, has palatalization in *chēh*, 'road' = Thōchū *grih*, Gyārūng *tri*, and in *chō*, '6', < *drug*; and, on the other hand, the palatalization of *ky-*, *khy-* is universal in E. Colonial Tibetan (Amdo *dcyil* = *dkyil*, &c.), as also in the Rgyal-roñ (*Chyon* = *Khyun*, &c.); so that the answer is provisionally uncertain. What is here requisite is to attain, if possible, a conception of the phonological situation in the Hsi-fan language at as early a period as can be inferred from the common features of the modern dialects.

*Early Hsi-fan phonology: comparison with Hsi-hsia*

Here we may propound some deductions as follows:

1. In early Hsi-fan the palatalization of consonants followed by *r* had not taken place.

As regards *pr-* this follows from the forms of *prom*, 'white', as set out *supra*. Confirmatory examples of other groups are:

Tib. *gru* (Lha-sa *tru*, 40 *juo*), 'boat': Hōrpa *grā*, Gyārūng *brū*, Mānyak *gū*.

Tib. *grog-ma* (Lha-sa *tro-ma*, Tse-kou *cru-ma*), 'ant': Thōchū *tū-khrā*, Hōrpa *skhrō*, Gyārūng *ko-rok* [Mo-so *cō*, *ca-i*, Lo-lo *bo-yo*, *bu-ma*, &c.].

Tib. *drug* (Lha-sa *truk*, E. Colonial *cru*, *cu*, *cuk*), '6': Thōchū *khata(-re)*, Go-lok *tōh*, *tūiü*, 'Outer Man-Tzū' *štu(r-gu)*, Gyārūng *kū-tōk*, Rgya-roñ (Hanniu) *ktrü*, Mānyak *trū(-bi)*, Pa-U-Rong *tru*, Muli(Njong) *thru*.

-palatalization in Hōrpa *chō*, Rgya-roñ *ko-co*, Menia *chu*, Mu-nia *kho*, Mi-li (Prü-mi) *chro*, Loutse 24 *kron*, 26 *ke-u*, Lu-tzū *kru* [Mo-so *khia*, *ca*, &c., Lo-lo *khu*, &c.].

Tib. *brag* (Lha-sa *tra*, E. Colonial *cra*, *ca*), 'rock': Rgya-roñ *pra(k)* (also in the place-name *Bra-sdi*, *Burakdi*), Loutse *a-pra*, perhaps Thōchū *s-pyāh* (cf. *phyokh* = *prom*).

-palatalization in the Hōrpa (E. Colonial Tibetan?) place-name *Crango* < *Brag-mgo*.

Tib. *hbrug*, 'dragon', *sbrul*, 'snake' (Lha-sa *druk*, *dru*, E. Colonial *ju*, *jrō*, &c.): Thōchū *brigi*, 41, 42 *būyō*, 39 *buś*, Hōrpa *phri*, Gyārūng *kha-bri*, Jyā-ruñ *kha-uri*, Mānyak *brū*, Menia *bar*, 'snake' [Mo-so *zō*].



2. The palatalization of consonants before *y*, in Lha-sa of labials only, in E. Colonial of gutturals also, is a matter of some difficulty. Apparent examples of non-palatalization are:

Tib. *bya* (Lha-sa *ca*, E. Colonial *śia*, *śiü*, *śū*, *žü*, &c.), 'bird', 'fowl': Thöchü *ma-ruō* (?), Gyārūng *pyē-pyē*, Rgya-roñ *pai* (-*ku*, 'cock', -*mu*, 'hen'—Dr. Tafel *begu*).

-palatalization in Hörpa *gyō* (?), Mānyak *hā* (?), Menia *rga*,<sup>1</sup> Mu-nia *rja* (*rja-gu*, 'egg'), Muli(Njong) *ro* (<*rjo*, cf. 35 *hro-pu*, 'cock', *hro-ma*, 'hen'), Mi-li (Prü-mi) *ju* ('chicken', *ra-gu*, 'egg').

The *r*- prefix in this word, \**rbya*, is interesting.

Tib. *byi-ba* (Lha-sa *ci-wa*, E. Colonial *śiua*, *tsüi*, *śio*, *jeh*), 'rat': Rgya-roñ *pui*, Jyā-ruñ *pē-yi* [Mo-so *fu*, Lo-lo *vēh*, *hè*, &c.].

Tib. *khyim* [Lha-sa and E. Colonial use *khañ*], 'house': Thöchü *kih*, 42 *ki*, Loutse *kiim*, 24 *kime*.

-palatalization in Go-lok 41 *tié*, Hörpa *hyō* (?), Dge-śi-tsha *yo*, Gyārūng *chēm*, Rgya-roñ *ciem*, Jyā-ruñ *chom*, Muli (Njong) *jih*, Loutse 26 *jim*. [Mo-so *ji*, *jié*, *ghi*, &c., Lo-lo *he*, *hen*, *hié*, *ké*, &c.].

To quote cognates of *khyi*, 'dog', is hardly decisive, there being in regard to that word much evidence of a *w* (*khui* or *khwyi*): the same is possible in regard to *bya*, 'bird', Himālayan (Thulung) *pwa*, &c.—see *Linguistic Survey of India*, 1. ii, 'Comparative Vocabularies'. The non-palatalized forms of *khyim* also might come from \**khim*.

Considering the widespread palatalization instanced in the cases of *brgyad*, '8', and *brgya*, '100', and its universality in E. Colonial Tibetan and in the Rgyal-roñ ('*Jyā-ruñ*', &c.), we are inclined to attribute it to early Hsi-fan in general, in the case of gutturals, at any rate, if not of labials.

3. Insertion of *i* after original palatals, unknown in Lha-sa Tibetan, but general in E. Colonial, often with change of the palatal to guttural or dental, had not taken place in early Hsi-fan.

Tib. *bcu* (Lha-sa *cu*, E. Colonial *kiu*, *kiō*, *co*), '10': Jyā-ruñ *sci* (?), Mānyak *cē-ci(-bi)* ('one 10'), Menia *chi-chi*, Mu-nia *ho* (<*so* ?), Loutse 24 *ti-tse* (1), 26 *ti-etse* (1) ('one 10'), Lu-tzū *tsel*, Yün-nan 35 *ho-u(-ku)* (?)

-insertion of *i* in Rgya-roñ *śtyie*, Jyā-ruñ *sciō*, *sciā* [Mo-so *tse*, *tsō*, &c., Lo-lo *tse*, *tsō*, *cié*, *ci*, &c.].

<sup>1</sup> Menia *rg-* is *r* with guttural trill (Baber, p. 78).

It is, however, to be remarked that forms of *bcu* perhaps did not exist in early Hsi-fan, which had *ga/ka*: Gyārūng *sih*, Rgya-roñ (Patī) *śi*, may be Chinese.

Tib. *chu* (Lha-sa *chu*, E. Colonial *kiu*, *khie*, *chūo*, *csiu*, &c.), 'water': Go-lok 41 *cuo*, 42 *cu*, Gyārūng *ti-chi*, Rgya-roñ *te-chi*, Jyā-ruñ *tē-chi*, Menia *jo*, *jui* (?), Mu-nia *ndzō* (?), Pa-U-Rong *dji*, Muli(Njong) *jō* (? < *jiu*).

-insertion of *i* in 38 *céo*, Mi-li (Prü-mi) *cyō*.

Tib. *bśad* (Lha-sa *še*, E. Colonial *pset*, *šie*, &c.), 'expound', 'tell': Hōrpa *na-psē*, Gyārūng *ta-cē(n)*, Mu-nia *mo-ša* (?)

-insertion of *i* in Jyā-ruñ *uśiat* (also *uśat*), 38 *śié* [Mo-so *sō*, *śa-do*, Lo-lo *do-śi*, *śuo*, *do-chō*, &c.].

Tib. *śiñ* (Lha-sa *śiñ*, E. Colonial *śañ*, *śi*, *śin*, *śiñ*, *śim*, &c.) 'tree', 'wood': Go-lok 39 *se*, Gyārūng *śi*, Rgya-roñ *śē* ('wood'), Mānyak *sā-poḥ* (= 36 *śim-pon*, 37 *sin-po*), 38 *saim-bu*, *sen*, Menia *śi*, Mi-li (Prü-mi) *śe*, Loutse *śiñ*.

-insertion of *i* in Rgya-roñ *śie* ('tree'), Menia *sie* ('wood'), Pa-U-Rong and Muli(Njong) *hsieh*. [Mo-so *sē*, *sō*, &c., Lo-lo *śi*, *sō*, &c.].

Tib. *śog*, *śog-bu* (Lha-sa *śu-gu*, E. Colonial *sio*, *śu-gu*, &c.), 'paper': Rgya-roñ *śou*, 38 *śo-u*, Menia *śo*.

The instances are in favour of posteriority of the insertion, which has sometimes (e.g. in 'Tangut' *dziām-ba*, 'cheek', < *hjiām-ba* < *hgram-pa*) affected even secondary palatals. In the Rgyal-roñ it is perhaps even modern, since it is absent in the names of the 'Eighteen States', and it extends sometimes to non-palatals (Rgya-roñ *zie*, 'gold', < *ser*, Jyā-ruñ *zia*, 'eat', < *za*) no less than palatals (*a-śia*, 'flesh', < *śa*, *chia*, 'wine', < *chan*). In 'Tangut' it appears before *u* (*liuk*, 'sheep', < *lug*, *rgiu*, '9', < *dgu*). In general, however, it is old enough to have become disguised in composite vowels, such as *ō*, *eo*, *ūo*, *uo*, much complicating the vowel systems.

4. A casual change *ñ > w* was suggested by Laufer (p. 105) for Hsi-hsia. In Hsi-fan some occurrences of this, originally perhaps only before *o* or *u*, may be seen. Examples:

Tib. *lha*, '5': Thōchū *wā(-rē)*, Go-lok 41 *uē*, 42 *rhoō*, 39 *uō*, 'Outer Man-Tzū' *wa(r-gu)*, Hōrpa *gwē*: Dge-śi-tsha *mña*, Gyārūng *ku-ñgnō*, Rgya-roñ *kō-mū* (< *mwo* < *ñwo* < *ño*), (Hanniu) *ño*, Jyā-ruñ *ko-mñō*, 38 *ñan(-pi)*, Pa-U-Rong *ña*, Muli(Njong) *ño*, (Prü-mi) *ñwa*. [Mo-so *ua*, Lo-lo *ñwa*, &c.].



Tib. *dñul* (Lha-sa *ñū*, E. Colonial *ñöl*, *nu*, *ñou*, &c.), 'silver':  
 41 *uon*, 42 *mivu* (*mvu*), 39 *u*, Menia *mwe*: Mu-nia *nu*, 38 *on*,  
 Muli(Njong) *ñou*, (Prü-mi) *ñi*, Loutse 24 *ñon*, 26 *nui*, Lu-tzü  
*nul*, 35 *nnu*. [Mo-so *ñu*, *ñö*.]

5. Similarly casual, involving perhaps a change  $\tilde{n} > j$ , which occurs in eighth-to-ninth-century Tibetan manuscripts from Kan-su, are forms = Tib. *ña*, 'fish':

Tib. *ña* (Lha-sa *ña*, E. Colonial *ña*, *ñain*), 'fish': Thöchü *izāh*,  
 Go-lok 41 *že*, 42 *gze*, 39 *že*, Hörpa, *hyā*, Gyārüng *chü-nyo*,  
 Mānyak *yū*, Mu-nia *zō*, 38 *ceñi*, Mi-li (Prü-mi) *cō*.

Cf. Hsi-hsia *žu* (Laufer, No. 5).

6. In regard to final consonants it is necessary to exclude an *-n* which in Thöchü, Hörpa, and the Rgyal-roñ is found in verbs (Thöchü *ā-jon*, Hörpa *wa-nzün*, 'sit', Gyārüng *da-cin*, *ya-cin* = Hörpa *ta-sin*, *wa-sin*, 'go', &c.): this is probably a formative. Thöchü has also other final consonants (*nūkh*, 'ear', *phyokh*, 'white', *āspic*, 'hunger', &c.), due to absorbed formatives or to compounds.

Of *-s* after consonants, otherwise wholly lost, the Go-lok has curious survivals in 41 *zierk*, 42 *zierk*, 'tongue' = Tib. *ljags*, and 41 *itierk* (< *icierk* < *iciags* < *cags* < *šags*) = Tib. *šaṅs*, 'nose', where *-gs* < *-ṅs* has ancient parallels in Kan-su Tibetan. The Go-lok forms may be borrowed from Amdo Tibetan, where we find 'Tangut' *khtsirk-ta* = Tib. *grigs*. After vowels *-s* is lost, except in the Rgyal-roñ, where *-nēs*, '2', and *-šnēs*, '7', are clearly native words.

Of original *-l* there is no trace, and loss is evidenced in:

Tib. *yul* (Lha-sa *yü*), 'village', 'country': Thöchü *wē-khā*,  
 Gyārüng *wō-khyū*, Mānyak *hū*.

Tib. *bśul*, 'path': Go-lok 41 *jueu* (= *züö* ?), 42 *guéu*, (*gé-u* ?) and in the above-cited forms of *dñul*, 'silver', and *sbrul*, 'snake'.

Loss of *-r*, not infrequent in E. Colonial Tibetan and attested in the Hör-pa-Rgyal-roñ country by forms of place-names (*Kungsa*, *Kanzé*, &c. *supra* pp. 83, 85 n.), is seen in Go-lok 41 *saé*, 42 *sō*, Menia *ša* = Tib. *šar*, '(sun)-rise', and in 39 *se-u*, Rgya-roñ *zie* = Tib. *gser*, 'gold' [Lo-lo *ši*, *sō*, &c.], and probably in forms of *dmar*, 'red', and *mar*, 'below'. Several dialects preserve it in Tibetan loan-words, and the Rgyal-roñ perhaps in some others.

Of the nasals *-m* has everywhere, in *prom*, 'white', *khyim*, 'house', and in *sam*, *som*, '3', retained traces. Of *-ñ* and *-n*, the

former very, but not absolutely, persistent in E. Colonial Tibetan, there is no Hsi-fan survival, except in words with initial, or quasi-initial, *m* (Thōchū *min*, Gyārūng *ka-smān*, 'ripe', Hōrpa *smen*, Rgya-roñ *ti-rmin*, *k-rmien*, Mānyak *min*, 'name', and forms of *mon*, 'sky'). Loss of *-ñ* has been exemplified in the case of *śin*, 'tree'.

The three occlusives, *-g*, *-d*, *-b*, where preserved in Lha-sa or Amdo Tibetan, are all become *tenuis*, *-k*, *-t*, *-p*: in Khams and Tse-kou they remain voiced. In Lha-sa we have *la*, but *lak-pa*, 'hand', and so forth, while E. Colonial Tibetan has in general *la-pa* in place of *lak-pa* ('Tangut' *lokhwa*). It is conceivable that the alternation *-g/-k*, &c., was originally due to *Sandhi* and that in some dialects, e.g. Lha-sa, *-k* was preserved, but *-g* lost.

In Hsi-fan widespread loss of *-g*, *-d*, *-b*, is attested by:

Tib. *phag* (Lha-sa *phak-pa*, E. Colonial *pa*, *pha*), 'hog': Thōchū *pi*, Go-lok 41 *pa*, 42 *pa*, 39 *pe*, Hōrpa *vāh*, Rgya-roñ *pa*, *phā*, *pa(k)*, Mānyak *wāh*, Mu-nia *ra*, 38 *pa*, Loutse 24, 26 *ua* [Mo-so *bu*, Lo-lo *vi*, &c.].

Tib. *bsad*, *gsod* (Lha-sa *se*, E. Colonial *sé*, &c.), 'kill': Thōchū *ta-sēh*, Hōrpa *ta-sē*, Gyārūng *nā-sē* (Jyā-run *sia(t)*), Mānyak *na-sya*, Muli(Njong) *ne-se* [Mo-so *su*, Lo-lo *si*, *sié*, &c., Burmese *sat*].

Tib. *chibs*, 'horse': Go-lok 41, 42, 39 (*h*)*iü*, Rgya-roñ (Hanniu) *chie*.

Also in many forms of *nag*, 'black', and those of *brgyad*, '8', *bsad*, 'tell', cited *supra*. Outside the Rgyal-roñ the only traces of original *-g*, *-d*, *-b*, are seen in Thōchū *nyik*, 'black', *nyag-wō*, 'crow', and the Go-lok *nierk*, &c., quoted *supra*: these may, like Loutse 24 *śiot*, 26 *śiet*, Lu-tzū *cied*, '8', be due to special causes, such as borrowing. In the Rgyal-roñ there is a number of apparently unborrowed final *tenuis* (*ta-yak*, 'hand' = Tib. *phyag*, *ta-vet*, 'mountain', &c.), pronounced for the most part with 'checked', or even imperceptible, utterance.

To the early Hsi-fan in general, therefore, we may attribute loss of (a) *-l*, *-s*, *-g*, *-d*, *-b* (that of *-r* may be later), (b) of *-ñ* and *-n*, except after initial or quasi-initial *m*; but in the Rgyal-roñ *-s* after vowels, and *-r*, *-g*, *-d*, *-b*, have been partly maintained.

7. Concerning vowels, which are likely to have undergone various local modifications, such as have been noted by Laufer (pp. 99-103, including several instances of *-a > -i*, *u > o*), or such



as are found in old Tibetan manuscripts from Kan-su (e.g. some cases of *-ag*, *-ab*, > *-eg*, *-eb*, and of *e/i*, *-u/-o*, alternations), or such as are frequent in E. Colonial Tibetan (e.g. *-oñ*, *-on*, < *-añ*, *-uñ*, *-er* < *-ar*, *-e* < *-i*), it is difficult to make general statements. But in certain respects the early Hsi-fan was probably free from infections which have greatly complicated the vocalism of later periods: it seems to have lacked

- (a) the general Tibetan *Umlaut* of *a*, *u*, *o* before *-d*, *-n*, *-l*, *-s*;
- (b) the complexes *ia*, *ie*, *ii*, *io*, *iu*, due to vocalization of post-consonantal *y* and to insertion of *i* after palatals, with the consequent developments.

In this way the vowel-system may have been appreciably nearer to that of written Tibetan. As individual particulars which have ancient analogues, we may mention (1) *Thöchū rmāñ*, 'name', < *rmañ* < *rmiñ* (cf. 'Tangut' *šan* for *šin*, 'wood', and confusion of *sñan* and *sñiñ* in the ancient manuscripts), and *Gyārūng sman*, 'ripe', < *smin*; (2) *Rgya-roñ smou*, 'medicine', *ka-rnyou*, 'hear', < *sman*, (*s*)*ñan*; (3) *Thöchū pi*, 'hog', *Mānyak phciñ*, 'tooth', < *phag*, *swa(so)*, *Thöchū kśi(-ri)*, *Mānyak si(-bi)*, 'Outer Man-Tzū' *kśi(r-gu)*, *Menia si*, *Pa-U-Rong zi* < *gsam*, elsewhere only *som*, *sam*, &c., (cf. Hsi-hsia *rni*, &c., < *rna*, 'nose', &c. (Laufer, p. 99), and *ni*, *niñ*, *ñe* (Nevsky, No. 217), 'equal' < *mñam*).

In the numeral system there have been many mutual accommodations (Systemzwang) of vowels.

The phonetical inconsistencies in the individual Hsi-fan languages contrast with the appreciable regularity of E. Colonial Tibetan, e.g. in 'Tangut' and Tse-kou, where most of the vocabulary is consistently derivable from the literary Tibetan. This may reasonably be ascribed to penetration by Tibetan of different periods and localities. The general outcome of the above considerations represents a stage of Ch'iang somewhat anterior, if we may judge, to the Hsi-hsia. In the latter Dr. Laufer allows as Prefixes only the *g-/k-*, *r-*, *m-*, in *g-ñum*, *k-ñum*, 'sky', *k-ñu*, '5', *rni*, 'ear', *m-lu*, 'worm', 'snake' = Tib. *gnam* (or *dguñ*), *lña*, *rna*, *sbrul*: Nevsky has in Tibetan transcriptions many more, of which *rme*, 'man', seems to be a certain example. Of initial groups *kr-*, &c., Laufer has no examples, and Nevsky records only four obscure words, *treñ* (No. 270), 'heaven', *htri* (No. 201), 'change', *bldra* (No. 315), *dbri* (?), also *hbhiñ* (No. 247), 'light': if in Hsi-hsia such an *r* had become *y*, as we might be led by the

instances, *gye* (No. 251), 'mountain' (<*gri* = Tib. *ri*), and *hgye* (No. 243), 'path' (cf. Thōchū *grih*, Gyārūng *tri*, Hōrpa *cēh*) to think, then *treh*, 'heaven', may be nothing more than Chinese *t'ien*. Of palatalization before *r*, with loss of the *r*, there is a certain instance in *chi* (Nevsky, No. 101) <*drug*, '6' (cf. *li*, 'wind', *ri*, 'bone' = Tib. *rluñ*, *rus*).<sup>1</sup> Development of *i* after palatals is not apparent. The final consonants *-ñ*, *-n*, *-m*, *-r* are exemplified by Laufer, *-ñ* and *-r* also by Nevsky (Nos. 155, 187, 268; 55, 231, 279, 281, 333), though *-ñ* is lost in *li*, 'wind' = Gyārūng *ta-li*, Tib. *rluñ*. Thus not only *-l* and *-s*, but also *-g*, *-d*, *-b* had completely disappeared. It is true that Laufer does not admit loss of finals in Hsi-hsia and holds that, where lacking, they had never been present. But how is this to be reconciled with the variation *-i/-a* in Hsi-hsia equivalents of Tibetan *a* according as the latter occurs in an open or a closed syllable (ibid.)? How can we question the originality of the *-g* in Tibetan *drug*, '6' (Hsi-hsia *chi*), *lag*, 'hand' (Hsi-hsia *la*), *phag*, 'hog' (Hsi-hsia *wo*), *nag*, 'black', *mig*, 'eye' (Hsi-hsia *mei*), when, not to mention other Tibeto-Burman evidence, a language so remote as Burmese has *khyok*, *lak*, *wak*, *nak*, *myak*? or of *-d* in *bryad*, '8', *bsad*, *gsod*, 'kill', represented in Burmese by *rhac* and *sat*? And how can we doubt losses of final consonants in Mo-so, Lo-lo, &c., languages known only in modern stages, when parallel losses, resulting very frequently in markedly similar forms, are historically demonstrated in the case of Tibetan, of E. Colonial Tibetan, and of Hsi-fan dialects?

*Nam: some particular phonological particulars*

The Nam language, older than the Hsi-hsia by about three to four centuries, is likely to have been exempt from some changes undergone by all the known Hsi-fan dialects. The hitherto certified specimens exemplify:

- (a) consonantal Prefixes, *d* (*dgu*), *r* (*rma*, *rbeg*), *l* (*lcogs*, *ldehu*, *ldoñ*);
- (b) initial consonants, *ñ* (*ñal*), *ts* (*tseñ*), *tsh* (*tshun*), *y* (*yab*), *ś* and *ž* (*śi* = *žin*), *z* and *ž* (*zu* = *žu*), *th* (*thiñ*, *thol*);
- (c) initial groups, *sk* (*skeg*), consonant + *y* (*pyi*, *bya*, *mye*), consonant + *r* (*kru*, *prom*);

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps also in *chi*, 'gall' (Laufer, No. 56) = Tib. *mkhris*.



- (d) final consonants, *g* (*cog*, *rbeg*), *ṅ* (*lloṅ*, *thiṅ*), *n* (*tshun*, *zin*), *b* (*yab*), *m* (*prom*), *l* (*nal*, *thol*), and group *gs* (*lcogs*);
- (e) final vowel *a* (*bya*, *rma*), *i* (*li*), *e* (*mye*), *u* (*zu*), *o* (*go*, *cho*), or quasi-diphthong (*tehi*, *ldehu*, *byehu*), and dialectical alternation *a/e* (*rbag*, *rbeg*);
- (f) derivative *byehu* from *bya*;
- (g) formative *te*, *lde*, with *tehi*, *ldehi*, in which *-hi* seems to constitute an attribute.

We may also mention some contemporary non-Tibetan proper names of places (*Bra-ma-thaṅ*, *Dra*, *Gro-pur*, *Zar-phur*, *So-ma-ra*, *Skyi-mthiṅ*, *Bum-liṅ*, *Byar-liṅs*), persons (*Myi-rma-bu* *Ldam-śad*, *Mun-zag-tsa*, *Rgyan-ñar*), superhuman beings (*Srad-po*, *Theg-leg*, *Pya-maṅs*, *Dre-da*), and animals (*Spur-bu*, *Thaṅ-prom*, *Skog-theg-to*), which are phonologically similar and which, being all connected with the Skyi, i.e. Tang-hsiang, country, are likely to exemplify the Ch'iang speech of their period (seventh to ninth century, A.D.).

## B. A LITERARY WORK IN THE NAM LANGUAGE

HAVING now, it is hoped, ascertained the general situation and character of the Nam language and some of its general features, we may approach the consideration of a text which seems to be in that language. The proof that it is in fact a Nam text has been outlined elsewhere,<sup>1</sup> and it will be repeated with additional particulars *infra* (pp. 130 sqq.). The extraneous aids for the interpretation appear to be decidedly inadequate. The most promising of them is the Tibetan, of which the seventh-century pronunciation is known from its script, authoritatively and carefully designed, with the help of Indian teaching, to fit the language. To the kindred Nam language that script, which in the eighth century was in familiar use among officials and private persons in Tibet, is likely to have been applied with tolerable exactness; for we know that contemporaneously it was used with fair success to represent even Chinese, not to mention Central-Asian languages having alphabetic writing. The initial geographical remoteness of Tibet proper had given place to close political, administrative, and military connexions; and Buddhism in a Tibetan form commenced early in the eighth century to spread to Amdo. Hence the Tibetan scribes must have had constant practice in the writing of native personal names, which, however, they usually translated, and of topographical names, and of some common terms. There are also some few contemporary manuscript fragments in Tibetan, which, reproducing native folklore or religious compositions, may serve for orientation in regard to the interests, psychology, notions, and circumstances of the population.

In order to consider the problem somewhat systematically, it seems advisable to take up the several topics as they present themselves and accordingly to discuss in succession I. the manuscript and script, II. the orthography, III. the text, IV. the grammatical system, V. the etymology.

<sup>1</sup> *JRAS.* 1928, pp. 630-4; 1939, pp. 194-6.



## I. THE MANUSCRIPT AND SCRIPT

The manuscript, of which particulars are given in the annexed note,<sup>1</sup> was among the collection procured by Sir Aurel Stein in 1907 from the walled-up monastery library in Ch'ien-fo-tung (near to Śa-cu = Tun-huang), in western Kan-su. It is in the form of a roll of the yellow Chinese paper (of the somewhat thicker kind) there in use during its period, which the Chinese writing on its *verso* enables us to identify with the eighth to ninth century A.D. The roll, which is fragmentary at beginning and end, is composed of sections pasted together. Its existence as a roll prior to the Tibetan writing on the *verso* is proved, not only by the ductus of the script at the joinings, but also by the continuity of the Chinese text *recto*. That text is the *Sad-dharma-puṇḍarika*, 'Lotus of the Good Law', of which a portion corresponding to pp. 30-3 of the Tai-sho edition, about one-fifteenth of the whole (pp. 62), survives. If the roll, in its original completeness, contained the whole of the *Sad-dharma-puṇḍarika* on one face, its length must therefore have been about 216 feet, the surviving part being of c. 16 feet 7 inches: such an extent is perhaps unparalleled.<sup>2</sup> We are not in any case at liberty to attribute to the Nam text dimensions of that order; for the Chinese text may have been continued on a part of the *verso*, leaving at the end a blank space, found sufficient for the Nam text; or the roll may have been fragmentary prior to its second use or may have been cut down for that use; or the Nam text may have occupied only a part of the blank space: for all which alternatives parallels could be adduced. Hence it is not possible to estimate what proportion of the whole Nam composition has been preserved: probably, however, the loss at the beginning is not very great and that at the end perhaps less.

The 398 lines of Nam writing extend for the most part across the whole width of the roll. In one case there is a short line (l. 61): and there is one instance (opposite ll. 353-6) of omission repaired in the right-hand margin by writing in the lengthwise direction of

<sup>1</sup> India Office Library MS., Stein Collection A, received in 1926: paper roll, width 10 in., length 16 ft. 7 in., composed of sections pasted together longitudinally; rather thick, yellowish paper; edges worn; fragmentary at beginning and end; discolorations in places affected by damp.

<sup>2</sup> A 'gigantic roll' described by Dr. Hoernle in *JRAS.* 1911, pp. 471-3, is of about 70 feet.

the roll. The average number of syllables *per* line is 13 or 14. At the beginning, which is irregularly torn, the manuscript is much abraded, so that ll. 1-4 of the script are almost entirely illegible; while ll. 5-18 are in their left-hand half not much less obscure, and to a diminishing extent ll. 19-65 are similarly affected. The last six lines again, ll. 393-8, are obscure and also fragmentary. Both edges are somewhat worn and in places torn; and there are discolorations through moisture.

### THE SCRIPT

The script is Tibetan, of a squarish kind, with some few peculiarities characteristic of the early period:<sup>1</sup> the hand is rather coarse, the letters fairly large and wide-spaced. The words, nearly always monosyllables, are separated by short vertical lines, |, in place of the more usual (but by no means universal) points. At the ends of clauses the vertical line tends to be somewhat lengthened; and where a sentence (or verse) ends it is double, ||. More emphatic punctuations |||, || : ||, || :: || mark, as in other specimens of Tibetan script, the terminations of paragraphs, chapters, and topics.<sup>2</sup>

There are somewhat numerous corrections by the original scribe, some obviously immediate, as when a first attempt is either crossed out or enclosed in a circle, after which the intended text proceeds, and others probably so, where a correction or addition is made below the line, in which case the exact point of intended insertion is not always evident. There are also many corrections by a reviser, frequently in the form of inking over, and there sometimes results a blur, intentional or otherwise. It is perhaps noticeable that the corrections include cases of omission or insertion of initial and final (after *a*) *h*, and final *ñ*, and of confusion of *ñ* and *g* as finals;<sup>3</sup> also of final *h* and *r*, *u* and *o*, initial *rg* (*rgy*, *rk*) and *rñ*.

With exception of *ṡ*,<sup>4</sup> all the single consonant signs of the

<sup>1</sup> The sign for *h* has at its right top a small curve with rightward facing concavity; *w* is formed of this *h* superposed to a *b*; superscript *i* has frequently the 'inverted' (rightward turned) form; the left limb of *kh* is short.

<sup>2</sup> For particulars see *infra*, p. 126.

<sup>3</sup> Final *h* added ll. 8, 75, 137, 173, 228, 234, 258, 290, 302, 327, 367, 384; crossed out l. 363. Initial *h* added ll. 70, 81, 178; crossed out, 106, 143, 174. Final *ñ* added, ll. 326, 378. Final *g* added, l. 147; changed to *ñ*, l. 361. Final *h* and *r*, ll. 17, 163, 246, 302. Initial *rg* (*rgy*, *rk*) and *rñ*, ll. 237, 239, 301, 343, 358. Final *u* and *o*, ll. 141, 302, 360, 381.



Tibetan alphabet proper occur in the text: accordingly we have:

ཀ *k*, ཁ *kh*, ག *g*, ན *ñ*,  
 ཅ *c*, ཆ *ch*, ཇ *j*, ཉ *ñ*,  
 ཉ *t*, ཊ *th*, ཋ *d*, ཌ *n*,  
 ཌྷ *p*, ཎ *ph*, ཏ *b*, ཐ *m*,  
 ད *ts*, དྷ *tsh*, ན *dz*,  
 པ *w*, ཕ *z*, བ *z*, ཇ *h*,  
 ཉ *y*, ཊ *r*, ཋ *l*,  
 ཌ *s*, ཌྷ *s*, ཎ *h*

The absence of ཐ, derived from Brāhmī *a*, which in Central-Asian and Further-Indian alphabets, in India too at certain periods, was employed also as a basis for initial vowels and diphthongs in general, is not made good by any other means: accordingly words with initial vowels, in Tibetan itself not very common, appear to have been in Nam non-existent. The subscript *h*, used in Tibetan either as a compendious way of writing postscript *h* or to indicate vowel length (perhaps via the former alternative, *ā*, &c., being *ah*, &c.), has in Nam probably only the former use and only with *a*. The post-consonantal vowels, including the 'reversed' *i*, are as in Tibetan. For final *m*, the *anusvāra*, *ṃ*, is sometimes used.

The special forms employed in Tibetan to represent Sanskrit sounds, viz. the cerebral consonants, the aspirated mediae, and some others, do not occur in the Nam text: the absence of the subscript *h* as a mark of aspiration is noticeable, because in Tibetan transcriptions of Hsi-hsia words such an *h* is frequent.

The proportionate frequency of occurrence of the several initial consonants constitutes in one or two points a marked divergence from the Tibetan. In Nam *w*- (with *hw*-) is common, while in Tibetan it is rare: *z* and *z* are so rare that it is questionable whether in the Nam language itself, unmixed with Tibetan, they existed at all: the instances are noted *infra* (pp. 167-8). Absent, further, from the Nam text are:

- (a) the Tibetan conjunct signs for *sg*, *lñ*, *sñ*, *cw*, *lc*, *lj*, *ñw*, *sd*, *sn*, *lb*, *mr*, *tshw*, *zw*, *zw*, *zl*, *lw*, *sw*, *hr*, *lh*, of which about one-half are in Tibetan itself quite rare;

- (b) some Tibetan combinations of two written signs, viz. *b+k*, *b+rk*, *b+g*, *b+rgy*, *b+sg*, *b+sgy*, *b+c*, *b+ñ*, *b+t*, *b+rt*, *b+lt*, *b+st*, *b+d*, *b+ts*, *b+rts*, *dk*, *dñ*, *dp*, *db*, *mkh*, *mch*, *mj*, *mñ*, *md*, *mn*, *mtsh*, *mdz*. *Mñ* occurs only once, viz. in *mñar* (l. 261). These are all, it will be seen, cases of the Prefixes *b*, *d*, *m*.

These deficiencies, due mainly, no doubt, to lack of the corresponding conjunctions and combinations in the spoken language, are balanced by additional:

- (a) conjuncts, *skh*,<sup>1</sup> *ty*, *dy*, *thy*, *rž*, *rs*, *rs*, *sc*,  
 (b) combinations, *gk*, *gch*,<sup>1</sup> *grt*, *gst*, *gld*, *gph*, *bph*, *gb(gbl)*, *gm*, *dd*  
 (one occurrence, l. 95), *sś*, *g-r*, *g-w*,

Moreover, initial *h* seems to occur before nearly all single consonants, conjuncts and combinations;<sup>2</sup> and the great majority of words have usually this prefix, whose occurrence, however, is so capricious as to defy discrimination.

<sup>1</sup> This occurs in old Tibetan manuscripts and documents, where also *kh* and other aspirates are frequently used after Prefixes.

<sup>2</sup> See *infra*, pp. 118-20.



## II. ORTHOGRAPHY

EVERY language which has appeared in writing has in some degree an orthography, i.e. a normal written form; for a scribe who has once seen a word in a written form will not himself write the word without a consciousness of that visual appearance. On the other hand, no language has an orthography complete for all individual words that may appear in writing; because there must always occur expressions new absolutely or new as such to the scribe, for the writing of which the scribe depends upon a general rule or the general phonological values of his signs: thus a writer of English can extemporize a Preterite in *-ed* from any verb without having actually seen that Preterite and can write down according to his direct consciousness of the aural value of his signs, say, a foreign name which he has never seen, but only heard, and which may never have been written—an occurrence frequent with travellers in unilliterate regions.

Some Central-Asian languages, e.g. the native language of the Shan-shan country and possibly the original native language of Khotan, may never, except as regards some proper names or casual terms, &c., have been written at all, written communications, if any, being exclusively in another medium. In other cases—and according to our information the T'u-yü-hun kingdom of the Koko-nor may be an example, the Chinese script having been in use—such writing as there is is in a foreign script.

It is unlikely that the Nam language during some eight centuries of close contact with China, and, for the most part, of Chinese domination, should never have been written at all; and, as we have seen, there were some instances of Chinese persons taking interest in languages of Ch'iang tribes, while, of course, there had been from early times an official department of interpreters.<sup>1</sup> But the writing of Nam can hardly have been more than casual and in the makeshift Chinese script; for 'literature' the people had perhaps only songs and recitations, and 'barbarians' taking to culture would find it in Chinese. The Tibetan alphabet cannot have been applied to the Nam language before the second half of the seventh century A.D.

The scribe who wrote the Nam text was no novice: he had an expert, flowing, and probably a rapid, hand. Though his facility

<sup>1</sup> See Terrien de Lacouperie, *Languages of China before the Chinese*, p. 17, and *supra*, pp. 51-2.

may have been in writing Tibetan, it is practically certain that the Nam language was not being written in Tibetan characters for the first time. For an orthography is proved by the existence of the Berlin fragment in the same script and language with the same spellings, and also by a number of corrections in the manuscript which can have no object other than that of giving a normal written form.

From some of the corrections it is, further, apparent that the manuscript reflects a written original, the errors being of a visual nature.<sup>1</sup> But there are many errors which were probably aural:<sup>2</sup> in many cases a character is written and then crossed out, the correct form following at once: sometimes the incorrect character is only partly formed; these are immediate rectifications, and their large number, which can be paralleled in the case of a Tibetan text from the same source, demands an explanation. There are several instances of underline additions, apparently immediate, of the second element of a reduplication;<sup>3</sup> and there are also errors, probably aural, of other kinds.<sup>4</sup> It is credible that the copy was made from dictation and thus included both misreadings, momentary and otherwise, by the dictator, and mishearings, also momentary and otherwise, by the scribe.<sup>5</sup> In any case the copy was certainly read at a later date by a reviser, or at any rate by some person, who has by over-writing corrected or made clear many mistaken or obscure characters or parts of characters.

Assuming therefore an orthographic intention in the writing, we must proceed to investigate the amount and kinds of irregularities which it exhibits: since all writings show some margin of irregularity, and in certain old Tibetan manuscripts (*infra*, pp. 130 sqq.) the margin is rather wide. In the Nam text the

<sup>1</sup> This applies certainly to the instances (*supra*, p. 113, n. 3) of confusion of *rg-(rgy-)* with *rñ-*.

<sup>2</sup> This may frequently be the case with omissions due to anticipation of subsequent words.

<sup>3</sup> Ll. 14, 16, 28, 29, 92.

<sup>4</sup> Notably the confusions of *-u* and *-o* (*supra*, p. 113, n. 3).

<sup>5</sup> In regard to Sogdian manuscripts, also from Ch'ien-fo-tung, which have a likewise capricious spelling, a similar suggestion was made by the late Dr. F. Rosenberg (*Bulletin de l'Académie des Sciences de l'U.R.S.S.*, vii Série, Classe des Sciences Sociales, 1931, p. 629). The case is the same with the Chinese manuscripts in Tibetan script: see *JRAS.* 1929, pp. 39-40. The normal Tibetan literary manuscripts and the more or less contemporary lithic inscriptions of Lha-sa are much more correct and, except for archaisms, manifest few abnormalities.



predominant variations, immediately recognizable as such, are as follows:

1. Presence or absence of initial *h*:- The great majority of the syllables in the manuscript have this prefix, which is found not only before single or conjunct consonants, clearly belonging to the root, but also before other Prefixes. This omnipresent phenomenon is so abundantly exhibited by the columns of the Vocabulary that it may be sufficient here to cite only a few cases selected among words having initial *k* in the root:

kehu-prom, 176, &c. = hkehu-prom, 177, &c.

kya-wa-ne, 162 = hkya-wa-ñe, 215, hkya-hwa-ñe, 339

kyu-ldoñ, 161 = hkyu-hldoñ, 339

kruhu-hpro, 321 = hkru-hbro, 221, &c., hkruhu-hbro, 294, &c.

rkabs, 272 = hrkabs, 271

skyim-hse, 69, &c. = hskyim-se, 18.

Since the prefixed *h*- thus occurs, without dependence upon a preceding sound, both before initials of roots (here *k*-, *ky*-, *kr*-) and before apparently Prefixed *r* and *s*, it may be asked whether there are any situations from which it is excluded. To this inquiry we may reply that:

(a) *h*- is not found prefixed to *sñ*, *sp*, *sb*, *sm* (*sñ*, *sg*, *sn* do not occur), though it is to *st*, *sl*, *sr*, *sts*. It therefore seems likely that a labial tenuis or nasal after *s*- was inimical to its presence.

(b) *h*-, though occurring freely before *g*, *gw*, *gy*, *gr*, *gl*, *rg*, *rgy*, does not occur before *gk*, *gc*, *gñ*, *gt*, *gd*, *gn*, *gph*, *gb*, *gm*, *gts*, *gdz*, *g-y*, *g-r*, *gś*, *gs*, i.e. in cases where the *g* itself is obviously a Prefix. Since, however, it is found before *rgy*- in cases where this may be derived from *g-y* (not *gy*) with the Prefix *r*, it seems that it was not the Prefixing of *g* as a fact, but the consciousness of its Prefixal character, that precluded the addition of the *h*-.

This leads to the further observation that:

(c) *h*- is found alternating with *g*:-<sup>1</sup> This alternation, which in cases such as:

hrah-hyos-hlam, 25, v. g-rah-g-yo-rbo, 27, hrah-g-yos-ge-hsar, 26

g-rah-hyos-ge-hsar, 26, v. g-yo-hpud-hto, 28

stor-hdor-hyoho, 119, v. stor-hdor-g-yoho, 142

<sup>1</sup> For a list of words with *g*- Prefix, including cases of alternation with *h*- see pp. 163-4.

hśid-hrihi, 62 = śid-g-ri, 34.

<sup>2</sup> See *supra*, p. 76; cf. *N'jeh* = *Hbri(-chu)* and *Njong* = *Hjan* (pp. 2 n. 2, 72).



(e) *h-* does not occur, or at least hardly ever, if ever, occurs,<sup>1</sup> before certain very common words, viz. *dze*, probably a preposition or particle meaning 'on', 'at', &c., *ge*, a particle, the sentence-ending particles *hi*, *na*, *ra*, and the sentence-ending, or correlative, particle *ni*; and this consistent non-occurrence is a clear indication of purpose in the use of the *h-*.

(f) The *h-* has in some cases been inserted or crossed out after being in the first instance omitted or written.<sup>2</sup>

## 2. Alternation of tenuis and aspirate:

### *k-kh*

*hkañ-hrdza*, 296, v. *hkhah-hrdza*, 296.  
*hkañ-hdro*, 106, v. *hkhahb-hdro*, 106.  
*hko-rño*, 53, &c., v. *hkhoh-rño*, 189, 267 (rño).  
*hkog(gsom°)*, 23, v. *hkhog(gsom°)*, 21.  
*krañ(hlidañ°)*, 124, &c., v. *hkhrañ(hlidañ°)*, 127.  
*kru-hrgyañ*, 388, v. *hkhru-rgyañ*, 187.  
*hkrh-hyog*, 289, 324, v. *khru-hyog*, 321, 322 (*hkhruhu*).

### *c-ch*

*ca(hcañ)-yañ*, 235, &c., v. *hcañ-yañ*, 242.  
*cañ-sme*, 262, v. *chañ-rdzum*, 263.  
*ci(hdag°)*, 259, 261, v. *chi(hdag°)*, 260, 261.  
*hce-hmu*, 200 v. *hche-hmu*, 204.  
*geeg(hso-hnah°)*, 234 v. *gcheg(hso-hnah°)*, 111.

### *t-th*

*ta(stor°)*, 145, v. *tha(stor°)*, 149.  
*htañ-hrdzo*, 218, v. *thañ(hthañ)-rdzo*, 130, 132, 220.  
*htar-phyañ*, 374, v. *thar(hthar)-phyañ*, 348, 69 (*pyañ*).  
*tor(htor)-hbroñ*, 216, &c., v. *thor(hthor)-hbroñ*, 220.  
 — (*g-ri°*), 34, v. *hthor(hrihi°)*, 62.  
*htor(gse-hlad°)*, 240, v. *thor(rñe-lad°)*, 235.  
*htye(sta-hldyañ°)*, 8, v. *hthye(stah-hldyañ°)*, 20.

### *p-ph*

*hpañ(hrihi°)*, 290, v. *hphañ(hrihi°)*, 302.  
*hpu-hkam*, 83, v. *phu-hkam*, 130.  
*pu-glo*, 116, 135 (*hlo*), v. *hphu-hklo*, 40.  
*hpu-hbos(hpos)*, 140, 266, v. *hphu-hbos*, 167.  
*hpuhi(rgyeb°)*, 282, v. *hphuhi(rgyeb°)*, 190.  
*hpeg(swah°)*, 360, v. *hphyegs(swa°)*, 176.  
*hpom*, 347, v. *hphom*, 147.

<sup>1</sup> The only exceptions are *hge*, 5, 8, 332.

<sup>2</sup> See *supra*, p. 113, n. 3.

por(htsah°), 291, v. phor(htsa°), 295.  
 hpor(hnu-glañ°), 175, v. phor(nu-glañ°), 359.  
 pyañ(thar°), 69, v. phyañ(hthar°), 348, 374 (htar).  
 pyar-ma-swañ, 341, v. hphyar-ma-hswañ, 341.  
 pyi-hse, 88, v. phyi-hse, 89, 98.  
 — -ske, 143, v. phyi-ske, 79.  
 hpyid, 339, 344, v. hphyid, 340.  
 pyer(ldañ°), 65, v. phyer(hldañ°), 254.  
 prom/hprom, 65, 128, &c., v. phrom, hphrom, 171, 172.  
*ts-tsh*  
 tsa/htsa, (hthañ-le°), 131, 220, v. tshah(hthañ-le°), 219.  
 tsur(hnah°), 391, v. htshur(hnah-hdih°), 391.  
 htshog-hldañ, 95, v. tshog-hldañ, 95.  
 — -hram, 35, &c., v. htshog-hram, 90.  
 htshors(hldag-nag°), 134, v. htshors(hldag-nag°), 130.  
 — (hbroñ°), 219, v. tshor(hbroñ°), 220.

### 3. Alternation of tenuis and media:

*k-g*  
 kehu(hkehu)-prom, 176, 361, &c., v. gehu-prom, 362.  
 hko-htoñ, 212, v. hgo-gtoñ, 210.  
 hkor-kla, 205, v. hgor-kla, 143.  
 hkyud(rdzo°), 220, v. hgyud(hrdzo°), 16.  
 hkri(hsai), 81, v. hgri(hsai°), 38.  
 hkroms, 387, v. hgroms, 64.  
 hklo(hphu°), 40, v. glo(pu°), 116.

*c-j*

Apparently no occurrence.

*t-d*

hta(hkhoh°), 328, v. hda(hkko°), 329.  
 htor(gstor°), 143, v. hdor(stor°), 118, 142, &c.  
 htre(rgyed°), 248, v. hdre(rgyed°), 87, &c.  
 hltañ(rgyed-ma°), 93, v. hldañ(rgyed-ma°), 90, &c.

*p-b*

hpañ-hko-htar, 371, v. hbañ-hko-htar, 373, 386, 390.  
 hpu/hpuhu(htor°), 29, 64, &c., v. hbu(htor°), 33.  
 hpos(hpu°), 141, v. hbos(hphu°, hpu°, hpuhu°), 41, 266,  
 293, &c.  
 hpro(kruhu°), 321, v. hbro(hkruhu°, hkru°), 221, &c.  
*ts-dz*  
 htsah(hdzo°, htso°), 30, 62, 73, v. hdza(hdzo°), 262.



htsehi/htseh (hdzo°), 364, v. hdzehi(hdzo°), 338, 339.

htso-htsehi, 342, v. hdzo-hdzehi, 288.

— -htsah, 62, 73, 115, v. hdzo-htsah, 29.

4. Alternation of aspirate and media :

*kh-g*

? khrom, 388, v. hgrom, 136, 223 (2).

*ph-b*

htor-hphu-hgru-dze, 62, v. htor-hbu-hgru-dze, 33.

*tsh-dz*

No instance.

5. Alternations between the two groups

c	ch	j
ts	tsh	dz

(to be expected in all old Tibetan writings) is seen in—

*c-ts*: hcog-hram, 87 = htsog-hram, 35, &c.

*ch-tsh*: hsi-hgri-hchim, 38 = hsi-hkri-htshim, 81; chis (gdim°), 94 = tshis (dim°), 95, 88 (*htshis*)

*j-dz*: hno-hdzam, 264 = hnoho-hjam 273.

jon(moñ°), 78, 118 (hjon), &c. = hdzon(moñ°), 64, &c.

rje-hbro-re, 138 = rdze-hbro-re, 138.

hjo(hkehu-prom°) = hdzo(hko-hu-prom°), 361-2.

6. Alternation of *j*, *dz*, and *z*:

gdzu-hbyi, 305, &c. = gzu-hbyi, 307.

hju(hrañ-hche°), 115 = hzu(rañ-hche°), 117.

7. In a number of cases an *r*-Prefix seems to be capriciously present or absent (excluding cases where the *r* may be functional):

hgam(hthan°), 131, 221 = hrgam(hthan°), 133.

hgyeb-hkru-hbro, 221 = hrgyeb-hkru-hbro, 321, 323.

hbo-kyer, 144 = rbo(kyer°), 136.

hbo-bon 238, &c. } = hbom-rbo 111, &c.

hpo-rbom 317

hsañ-hlad, 225, &c. = hrsañ-hlad, 226, &c.

hdzon-hyo-hsid, 356 = hrdzon-hyo-hsi, 194.

The clear cases are, however, relatively few and sporadic. The *r*-prefix may be in general either a fixed one or functional.

8. Alternations involving *w*:

dwañ(hkehu-hkah°), 364 = rwañ(kehu-hkah°), 178.

hbu-rbye-hce-rgyañ, 50 = hbu-rwye-hce-rgyañ, 15.

hwah-hrsañ-hlamhi, 224, 228 = hgwah°, 229.

## 9. Miscellaneous alternations:

hstsah-hyer, 250 = hscah-hyer(g-yer), 166, 296.

hnag(hldag<sup>2</sup>), 112, &c. = nag(hldag<sup>2</sup>), 129, &c. = gnag(hldag<sup>2</sup>), 129.

na-hgoñ, 358 = gnah-goñ(hgoñ), 179, 367.

hrgyo-hséeg-gségra, 330 = rbyo-gséeg-gsé[g]r[a], 330.

hrtah-swah-hpeg, 360 = hrtah-swa-hphyeys, 176.

10. Final consonants: The only at once recognizable case is that of presence and absence of *h* after vowels. It may be said that practically every word ending in *a* occurs in equal or greater frequency with *-ah*. The fact that this addition of *h* does not take place after any vowel but *a* (the exceptions, *hdiḥ*, 43, *hsoḥ*, 75, *hkhoh*, 328, *hseḥ*, 364, *gdeḥ*, 395, being all questionable) suggests that the practice has some relation to the Tibetan, likewise merely orthographical, use of the *h* in words like *mdah*, &c., to preclude the reading *mad*, &c.: but see *infra*, under 12. The irregularity in the use of this expedient extends to the Tibetan itself in old writings, where it creates difficulties. In both languages the *h* is sometimes retained (or used) before a suffix or final consonant, resulting in Tibetan forms such as *hdaḥs*, and Nam forms such as *brahr*, *hñahd*. Apart from the question of a functional *-r* there seems to be a scriptural confusion of *-h* and *-r*, visually quite easy, in ll. 17, 163, 302.

A few writings, *g-yaha*, 266, *hphahha*, 275, are provisionally mysterious: but see *infra*.

11. Non-functional vowel variation seems to be in the text very rare, except in one case, namely, the frequent variation between—

i, u, e, o

and

ihi, uhu, ehe, oho

Of this alternation full particulars have been given in the *JRAS.* 1939, pp. 201 sqq., where it is shown that the longer forms are monosyllabic and that they represent a feature of pronunciation which in the Koko-nor region has been observed in modern times. It might be regarded as corresponding to one or other of the 'tones' of Chinese or Indo-Chinese languages; but it certainly is not employed as a means of discriminating homonyms.

In regard to this pronunciation and writing two somewhat curious observations present themselves—

In the first place, the pronunciation indicated has a singular



resemblance to the Indian pandits' pronunciation of the final *-ah*, *-ih*, *-uh*, &c., in Sanskrit.

Secondly, there does not seem to be any reason why the *a*-vowel should have been exempt: that is not the case with the modern Koko-nor pronunciation of Tibetan, as is proved by some of Prejevalsky's instances, e.g. *saa(zyuu)* = Tib. *sa(-gzi)*, 'earth', *sha-a*, 'meat', = Tib. *śa*, *rta-a*, 'horse' = Tib. *rta*. The question therefore arises whether all the Nam words in *-ah* should not rather be transliterated with *-aha*; and an affirmative answer is suggested by the above-noted *g-yaha* and *hphahha*, which may be explained simply as writings of *h* in place of *h*.

This reasoning would not apply to Tibetan words with *-ah* because in the parallel Tibetan *-ih*, *-uh*, *-eh*, *-oh* there is no indication of a reduplicated *i*, *u*, *e*, *o*, except in the *byoŋo* and *soŋo* of two Amdo manuscripts.

Apparent variation between *-e* and *-ehi* and *-e* and *-ehu* in:

hrah-we-rtah, 114, 191 = hrah-wehi-rta, 139, 380 (hwehi-hrtah).

rwer-hmo-hchah-byin, 97 = rwehi-re-hmo-cha-byi, 98.

hke-hkah, 152, 158 = hkehu-hkah, 364.

hke-prom, 176, 360, &c. = hkehu-prom, 177, 178, 360, &c.

hbe-hbah, 235 = hbehi-hbah, 110, 234.

and likewise some possible cases of *-u/-o* can be considered only after etymological investigation (*infra*, pp. 367-9).

It is evident that these numerous variations, which have been cited as patently orthographical and not significant, must add considerably to our embarrassment in confronting a language entirely unknown and moreover monosyllabic. A syllable *ca*, for instance, might present itself in variants such as *cah*, *hca*, *hcah*, *cha*, *chah*, *hchah*, *ja*, *jah*, *hjah*, *tsa*, *tsah*, *htsa*, *htsah*; and the possibilities must further be multiplied by the number of meanings which the syllable may have had in the language, no doubt rich, like all Tibeto-Burman dialects, in homophones. Much must be set down to the account of the scribes, persons used, no doubt, to writing Tibetan and in that language somewhat indifferent to certain distinctions, such as presence or absence of Prefix *h* and final *h*, tenuis and aspirate (frequently alternating in their verbs), the use of certain other Prefixes, final *s* after *g* and *b*, final *d* (the

*drag*) after *n*, *r*, *l*, and so forth. Hence we are not surprised to find that in certain contemporary Tibetan manuscripts (pp. 130 sqq.) from the same region parallel inconsistencies in comparable number can be observed.

There are, however, some qualifications which deserve mention. In the first place, the inconsistencies and laxities are, despite their number, not sufficient to preclude our speaking of a normal spelling, or orthography. This is evident from the circumstance that the reviser of the text has made frequent corrections of the spelling, paying attention to even such matters as initial and final *h* (*supra*, p. 113 n. 3): he, therefore, considered that in the particular passage such and such a form was the right one, unless indeed he was merely equating the copy with an original. Secondly, some words of enormous frequency, *ge*, *re*, *dze*, one or other of them occurring in nearly every line, never perhaps receive either the Prefixed *h* (as noted *supra*, pp. 120) or the suffixed *h* or any other modification. The words are *ge*, a particle; *re*, the verb 'to be', unemphatic; *dze*, a preposition, of Chinese origin; possibly some other words, e.g. *na*, when meaning 'in'. These two circumstances prove that the initial or final *h* was not inserted without a purpose, upon a mere caprice: a like conclusion follows from the cases where *g*- and *h*- alternate without difference of function. The *h*- was not nothing; and, since it was not functional, it must have been phonetic; that being so, its irregularity can be explained by a proximate oral source of the text (*supra*, p. 117 n.), when the first scribe will have sometimes heard and sometimes failed to hear the acoustic equivalent of the sign, which indeed may not have been always enunciated in actual speech. This inference is reinforced by the vocalic variation, *i*, *u*, *e*, *o/ihi*, *uhy*, *eh*, *oh*, which shows a similar inconstancy and which is known to have been oral. The initial *h*, perhaps a guttural nasalization, had a nasal value in the oldest known Tibetan, e.g. in *Be-rka-hdra* = *Bargandara*<sup>1</sup> and *Ga-hjag* = *Kanjak*, and only with this value (e.g. in *Kanjur* = *Bkah-hgyur*, *rdzum-chul* = *rdzu-hphrul*) is it now sounded in central and north-eastern Tibet: cf. pp. 76, 119 *supra*.

<sup>1</sup> See ZDMG. xcii, pp. 609-10.



### III. THE TEXT

IN advance of any substantial knowledge of the language something may be affirmed concerning the text, both on internal and on external grounds.

In the first place, the punctuation, as described above and shown to be not casual, indicates sections of the text larger than a sentence. These occur as follows:

- 1, line 62 beginning with ~ || : | : this, occurring after a short line and a blank of a line's width, may be paralleled from Tibetan writings, where it is often only a scribe's beginning upon the *recto* of a new folio. It may indicate only a resumption of work after a break: the previous sentence ends quite normally with ||.
- 2, line 80, | : | : the two dots seem to be a reviser's insertion, and this circumstance somewhat emphasizes the break.
- 3, lines 110, 116, ||| : perhaps casual, = ||, but in any case not very emphatic.
- 4, lines 164, 172, 186, 365, 377, ||| : as in line 116.
- 5, line 215, || ||.
- 6, line 222, | : |.
- 7, line 249, || :: || : evidently a major division.
- 8, line 253, || : || : end of an epilogue or prelude?
- 9, line 325, || ||.
- 10, lines 344, 352, 358, || ||.
- 11, line 385, | : |.

All these punctuation marks are familiar in Tibetan manuscripts.

The punctuation with ||, less emphatic, reveals the important fact that a large part of the text is in verse. This may be exemplified by a passage occupying ll. 89-93:

gdim | phyi | hse | ge | [90] | htshog | bram | hñad ||  
 rgyed | ma | hldañ | ge | htsog | hram | hśaḥ ||  
 rta | htsog | hram | [91] ge | htaḥ | rwe | htaḥ ||  
 rta | sko | prom | re | hrtah | hldañ | hkrañ ||  
 htsog | rpu | še | chañ | [92] pyi | hse | hthoñ ||  
 hkor | htaḥ | hkhen | yañ | sñañ | gyañ | gyañ |  
 hjah | htaḥ | hkhen | yañ | [93] swa | tseg | tseg ||

Here the double line evidently divides verses of seven syllables each, and even its absence in the last line but one is perhaps due to the fact that the second *gyañ* is an underline insertion.

A metre of seven syllables is common in Chinese writings, and the Rgyal-roñ poem discussed above is in the same. The Hsi-hsia has it both in a sacred text, the translation of the *Suvarṇa-prabhāsa sūtra* (see the edition by Wang Jinru in his *Shishiah Studies*, iii, e.g. pp. 110, 112, 152), and also elsewhere (see Nevsky, op. cit., p. xviii). In old Tibetan we find it used in the Buddhist *Vimalaprabhā-pariprechā* (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, p. 190), as well as in crude verses concluding a letter (*Two Medieval Documents from Tun-huang*, by F. W. Thomas and Sten Konow, pp. 124, 128). As regards later Tibetan, we may refer to Francke, *Ladakhi Songs*, i, pp. 35 (xiii), 62 (xxvi) and *Frühlings- und Wintermythus der Kesarage*, i, p. 1, ii, pp. 17, 28, &c., and the *Tibetan Chronicle* (*Rgyal-rabs-gsal-baḥi-me-loñ*) in *Antiquities of Indian Tibet*, ii, pp. 22, 29. In the *So-sor-thar-pa* (*Prātimokṣa-sūtra*) edited by Satīścandra Vidyābhūṣaṇa (Calcutta, 1915) many such verses can be conveniently examined; perhaps even more accessible is Laufer's edition of the Tibetan *Citra-lakṣaṇa* (Leipzig, 1913), where the text is in the same metre. In the present instance (as also in Tibetan) the metre evidently has a *caesura* after the fourth syllable:<sup>1</sup> the fact that in the first three verses the fourth syllable is the same (*ge*), and similarly in the last two, is a sufficient proof of this; but it is also shown by another outstanding feature of the text, namely the parallelism of expression seen throughout the passage and culminating in the last two lines and the reduplicated words (no doubt verbs) with which they end.

A verse of seven syllables with a *caesura* after the fourth would be a catalectic form of a verse of eight syllables, derived from one of four syllables, such as is common in Chinese. Hence it would not be surprising to meet with verses of eight syllables, and also verses of eleven or twelve, as common in Tibetan: and such seem in fact to occur; examples:

8 syllables:

ḥtaḥ | ḥsūd | ḥdon | rgyag | dze | ḥtor | ḥdo | ḥchuñ |  
ḥta | śūd | meḥi | dze | ḥrtaḥ | ḥjam | ge | ḥmeḥi || 185-6.

11 syllables:

ḥbo | ḥroñ | ḥrog | re | ḥlah | ḥkyan | ḥras | re | ḥśes | gśi |  
ḥdzuhī |  
rgyeb | ḥchi | ḥro | re | gdag | yañ | la | por | ḥśes | ḥśi |  
ḥdzuhī || 344-5.

<sup>1</sup> There are a few intentional exceptions, e.g. in ll. 65, 67, where the fifth syllable is the *tsa* of p. 188 *infra*.



h̥bom | rbo | phaṅ | dze | h̥ldaṅ | h̥kraṅ | h̥nar | re | h̥bom | rbo |  
h̥ldaḥ ||.

h̥maḥ | h̥ldaṅ | h̥yaḥ | dze | rgyed | h̥ldag | h̥nag | ge | h̥ldaṅ |  
kraṅ | hrweḥi || 111-13.

12 syllables:

h̥dzam | h̥broṅ | h̥roṅ | re | h̥paṅ | h̥ko | h̥tar | dze | h̥lde | ge |  
htaḥ | h̥ldon ||.

h̥krug | kyaṅ | h̥ldom | re | hr̥ne | h̥no | h̥dzar | dze | h̥ldeḥe |  
ge | h̥taḥ | h̥ldon || 371-2.

It will be seen that metrically these verses are composed of 4+4, 4+4+3, and 4+4+4 syllables respectively. The verse of 9 syllables, likewise common in Tibetan, is seen in:

g-yog | h̥saṅ | ma | hpul | dze | h̥mar | h̥bab | ge | hr̥loḥo ||  
h̥bu | rwyē | h̥ce | rgyaṅ | dze | h̥ldyo | h̥tor | ge | h̥nus || 15-16.

h̥seḥe | h̥ldu | h̥ru | re | dze | h̥phag | h̥baḥ | ge | h̥yor |  
h̥cha | h̥grah | nu | nar | dze | h̥khab | h̥gro | ge | h̥kaḥi || 238-9.

In these, and in its other occurrences (e.g. 347-9), its *caesura* is evidently after the 5th syllable, which is perhaps noticeable, because the Tibetan verse of 9 syllables usually has its break after the 4th.

These metrical facts are of great importance, not only as shedding light upon the character of the text, but also for the understanding of the language. They determine the metrical values of syllables and make more definite the discrimination of the limits of the phrases, generally found to consist of two syllables, whose recurrence, as well as the recurrence of whole verses or halves of verses, is a prominent feature of the text; and they point the antitheses between pairs or groups of words or expressions, thus furnishing a clue to the meanings. Moreover, the gravitation of certain words to the *caesura* position is an invaluable guide to structure and syntax.

Naturally the recurrent words and phrases are themselves suggestive of the subject-matter. The frequency of the word *rta*, in that form or as *rtaḥ*, *hr̥ta*, *hr̥taḥ*, which prompted the original conjecture (*JRAS.* 1926, p. 505 n.) of a treatise on horses, is still a likely indication of a connexion with horses; for not only in normal Tibetan, but also in the dialects of the north-east, the word *rta* has that meaning and not *prima facie* any other. But this matter, and more especially when we consider other expressions, such as *h̥so-h̥na*, *h̥tsog-h̥ram*, *h̥ldaṅ-h̥khr̥aṅ*, recurrent in various

spellings, can be discussed profitably only under the head of etymology.

There are two breaks in the text which may be immediately instructive. The first of them occurs in line 180, where we find included a sentence of actual Tibetan:

de-nas-rabs-bgyis-gsañ-hldi-ḥlab

of which the meaning seems to be:

'therefrom, or thereafter, race (races, descent, generations) was (were) made: this is said (as) secret'.

In this stage-direction, so to speak, a Tibetan editor, who for the word 'this' is betrayed into using the Nam form *hldi* in place of the correct *hdi*, indicates that the text had been communicated orally and that a part of it was in some way esoteric. The second is the very marked break noted as occurring in line 249. In accordance with usage we should be prepared to find at the end of a section a colophon; it may therefore be that the last word *ḥkon* (*nī*),<sup>1</sup> which occurs only in that place, may be simply the Chinese word *chüan*, 'fasciculus', 'chapter', which in the form *kvon* has been found so used (*JRAS.* 1927, p. 293; 1929, p. 61) in colophons of Chinese manuscripts, in Tibetan script, from Chinese Turkestan. Admixture of Chinese terms was to be anticipated in manuscripts written in Tun-huang. What then was the topic finished at line 249?

Among external indications we must cite first the fact that the manuscript was written, no doubt in Śa-cu, where it was preserved, upon the *verso* of a Chinese Buddhist text. This took place, probably, during the period of Tibetan predominance in Śa-cu, which period may be stated roughly as *circa* A.D. 730-850. It must have been monastic work, since only in a religious establishment would the Chinese manuscript have been available for use, and only in such a milieu would there have been the requisite literary interest; we know, moreover, that in the monasteries there was an extensive business of copying.<sup>2</sup> It is presumable therefore that the text had in some way a religious interest. That interest was certainly not Buddhist; for it would be impossible to find in any language a Buddhist text of like extent showing no discernible traces of Buddhist or Indian terminology—in fact the presence of Buddhist expressions in writings, from Śa-cu and elsewhere in

<sup>1</sup> The *nī* is a Particle (see *infra*, p. 177).

<sup>2</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 80.



Central Asia, representing unknown languages, has been the chief key to the understanding of those languages; in the present text an oft-repeated perusal has not brought to light a single item of Buddhism.

From the same library we have in Tibetan script a few non-Tibetan writings, namely:

- (a) a small number of Chinese Buddhist texts and one or two documents in the same language;
- (b) some parts of a medical work in a language which has been recognized as that of a district of the western part of Tibet, usually associated with the Himālayan district Gu-ge, but perhaps embracing the whole Kailāsa region.

In normal Tibetan there are:

- (1) masses of manuscripts containing Buddhist texts or works connected with Buddhism;
- (2) a Tibetan *Chronicle*;
- (3) a few pieces relating to medicine or divination;
- (4) a few pieces relating to business of government or monasteries;
- (5) miscellaneous notices, letters, legal agreements, model letter-forms, and signatures.

But there are also some pieces marked in various degrees by linguistic features and style distinguishing them from everything hitherto familiar as Tibetan; they are connected with eastern and north-eastern Tibet, and their language and sentiment show no trace of Buddhism. They are popular literature, and two of them are folk-lore.

In these two, one of which is only a short fragment, there are references to the language of a Nam or Nam-pa kingdom, and in one of them the Nam people are called Nam-Tig. Two of the stories are introduced by, or contain, statements concerning their leading persons, to the effect that their names in the Nam-kingdom language are such and such, in Tibetan such and such. Since the narratives are in Tibetan, it is evident that the stories are derived from Nam originals, oral or otherwise; thus the stories are in substance literature of the Nam-Tig people, and the names given in Nam-pa form are evidence in regard to a Nam language. This evidence can most conveniently be considered here.

In the story of a man, or quasi-man—the story being a fable—

who with some of his family was devoured by a demon, the man's name is given as:

In the language of the Nam-pa kingdom:

*Ltoñ-tehi Mye-kru*

(with variants *te* for *tehi*, *me* for *mye* and *ku*, *kro* and *bkru* (?) for *kru*);

In the language of Tibet:

*Gloñ-myig-loñ, Bya-Gloñ-gi-Igo(mgo)-dañ-rje,*

and the meaning (most names from Tibet and Central Asia had meanings) is 'Blind Eye-blind', 'Blind Birds' Head and Chief'. The word for 'blind' is found in Tibetan in the forms *mdoñs*, *ldoñ*, *loñ*, all going back, no doubt, to *ldoñ*; and *gloñ*, for *gldoñ*, has merely an additional, or a different, Prefix. The form of the expression 'Blind, Eye-blind' is characteristic of north-eastern Tibet, whence we have numerous parallels, such as *yul-myi-yul*, 'country, man-country', *yul-Rgya-yul*, 'country, China-country'; and another will meet us below. Accordingly it appears that we have three Nam words, two of them, namely *ltoñ* and *kru* (or *kro*), meaning 'blind', and the third meaning 'eye': the suffix *te* in *ltoñ-te* has a variant form *tehi*. *Ltoñ* is evidently related to the Tibetan *ldoñ*; *mye* or *me* = Tibetan *myig*, *mig*, is the most common form of the word for 'eye' in the Tibeto-Burman languages of the Tibeto-Chinese frontier and of China and Indo-China (Hsi-hsia mei: cf. Laufer, *T'oung-pao*, vol. xviii (1916), p. 50). *Kru* or *kro* is perhaps only a dialectical form corresponding to the Tibetan *gloñ*, since loss of final nasals is one of the linguistic features of the region.

In the same story a daughter of *Ltoñ-te Mye-kru* has her name, originally *Tseñ-gi-Rbag-zin*, changed into:

In the language of the Nam-pa kingdom: *Bya-rma-byahi Rma-li, Byeñu-rma-byeñu-gi Thiñ-tshun* (of which two forms only the second recurs);

In the language of Tibet: *Khab-yo-byahi-Hdab-bkra.*

The change of name takes place on the occasion of the girl's escape from a fiend, which she effects by clinging to a bird. The bird is certainly a peacock, in which form the girl appears later in the story; in the version contained in the shorter manuscript she escapes by actually changing into a peacock and also reappears in that form. The expression *Bya-rma-byahi* means 'bird, peacock-bird'; it is parallel to the *yul-myi-yul*, &c., noted above, and the



suffixal *hi* corresponds to the *hi* of *tehi*. The alternative form *byeḥu-rma-byeḥu-gi* is the same expression, modified only by substitution of the so-called 'Diminutive' form in *-eḥu*, for *-a*, and the Genitive-Adjective suffix *gi* for the equivalent *hi*. It can be shown that such diminutives and the actual form *byeḥu* were favoured in north-eastern Tibet. *Thiñ* is probably equivalent to Tibetan *mthiñ*, which in the form *thiñ* is found in a text from north-eastern Tibet, and which appears in several bird-names, *mthiñ-ga*, 'a bird of deep blue colour', *mthiñ-ril*, 'a wild duck', *mthiñ-hril*, 'a certain bird': note also *mthiñ-khra*, 'a kind of silk-scarf with white spots on a blue ground', containing the word *khra*, which also occurs in the name. It is possible that *tshun* means 'feather', since one of the Hsi-fan languages has *tson* in that sense;<sup>1</sup> but not much weight can be attached to this, since in a modern dialect we should expect a more degenerate form: perhaps Tibetan *tshon*, 'colour', may call for consideration. It does not seem possible to say anything concerning *rma-li*. In the Tibetan name *hdab-bkra* means 'mottled wing', and *khab-yo-bya* in the context where it occurs ought to mean 'household (*khab*)-managing (*yo*)-bird'. Thus the interpretation of this name fails to yield any sufficiently precise information in regard to the meanings of individual words.

In the same story figures the 'mountain-ridge donkey' (*ri-khahi-boñ-bu*), to whose neck the Nam-Tig people attach a 'yak-heart' bell and whom they set to guard sheep. His name is:

In the Nam-pa language: *cho-pyi-cog-zu*;

In the language of Tibet: *spañ-ḥgi-boñ-bu-stag-cuñ*.

The Tibetan name means 'Ass of the meadow, "Little Tiger"'. Here we have very good reason for understanding *cog-zu* as meaning 'Ass of the meadow'; for in the divergent version of the story contained in the smaller manuscript the same, or another, ass is named *zu-tsog-zu*, a name evidently of the form previously described and meaning 'Ass, meadow-ass'. It follows that *cho-pyi* means 'Little Tiger'. *Cho* might be related to the *khoh* of the Thöchü dialect, Gyāmi *khu*, Gyārūng *kong*, Chinese *hu* (Hodgson, *JASB.* xxii (1853), p. 144) and to the *cho* of certain Miao-tsen dialects, recorded by the Vicomte d'Ollone (op. cit., p. 64) as meaning 'tiger' and 'panther'; and there are various forms in Tibeto-Burman dialects<sup>2</sup> (see Hunter, *The Non-Aryan Languages*

<sup>1</sup> d'Ollone, p. 70 (No. 38): in Hsi-hsia *rtai*, *rtaiñ*, *rtaiñ* are given (Nevsky, No. 132) as meaning 'colour'.

<sup>2</sup> But some of these seem to point to an original initial *kl*.

of *India and High Asia*, p. 160). In one of the two Tibetan manuscripts occurs a word *cha*, denoting some kind of forest animal, and this might mean the tiger, since the verb *hchaḥ* has the sense of 'maul', 'mangle', and *cho* might be related to it as *smo* to *rma*, *zo* to *za*, *lto* to *lta*. For the moment there is little advantage in such conjectures, but it will appear *infra* (p. 252) that both the word for 'ass' and the expression 'little tiger' are represented in the text.

With the story of 'Blind, Eye-blind' the two manuscripts connect an account of the family of a person named:

In the language of the Nam-pa kingdom: *Yab-ñal-ldeḥi*  
(elsewhere *lde*)-*thol-phrom*;

In the language of the Tibetan kingdom: *Yab-sten-rgan-gyi-ñer-ba*,

and the one text states that he was in the country *Skyi-mthiñ*, while the other discusses the manner of his burial. The Tibetan means 'Having care (*ñer-ba*) of his exalted (*sten*) old (*rgan*) father'; from which we can see that the person was not an ordinary human being, but was connected with one of the upper (*sten*) worlds of the Bon cosmology: in fact, he himself goes at death 'to heaven' (*dguñ-du*). The Nam word *ñal*, if connected with Tibetan *ñal*, 'fatigue', could very well mean 'old'; and the suffix *lde* or *ldeḥi* is similar to the *te* or *teḥi* already familiar to us. From the circumstances as detailed in the story we can see that the matter taken in charge was the burial of a father; hence we cannot be mistaken in assigning to *thol* the meaning 'bury', which meaning is not recorded in Tibetan dictionaries, but recurs several times in old Tibetan documents from Central Asia,<sup>1</sup> possibly borrowed from people of the Koko-nor region, since the Tibetans themselves did not normally bury.<sup>2</sup> Accordingly *phrom* will have the sense of *ñer*, 'take charge of', 'attend to' (*infra*, p. 137).

Of the other names mentioned in these stories we are not furnished with translations. But it may not be superfluous to point out that in type they correspond generally to those discussed above. Omitting the seven Gyim (Gyim-po, 'Gyim-man'),<sup>3</sup> brothers we have:

(a) Wife of Ltoñ-te Mye-kru: *Bzagste Ñar-hbyam*.

<sup>1</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 389: 83, 390: 84 (*btol*), 389: 82 (*gthol*).

<sup>2</sup> See, however, *infra*, p. 148.

<sup>3</sup> On *Gyim* as a tribe-name see *supra*, pp. 33, n. 5, 57.



## (b) Daughters of the same:

Version A: *Tseñ-hgi-Rba[g]-ga*, *Tseñ-hgi-Rbag-žin*, *Tseñ-hgi-Rba[g]-ga*.

Version B:<sup>1</sup> *Rbeg-ga-rbeg-ši* (= *Tseñ-hgi-Rbag-žin*) only mentioned in the fragment.

## (c) Wives of Yab-ñal-de-thol-phrom:

*Ldehu-zañi-hbrin-te Sman-skyol*

*Skeg-zañi-hbrin-te Yar-mo-btsun*

in which the *te* is once omitted.

Here we usually find the proper personal name preceded by a surname, which in two cases is a clan-name 'Ldehu-woman-middle-[sister]', 'Skeg-woman-middle-[sister]', in two, *Bzagste* and *Tseñ-hgi*, is obscure, and in *Rbeg-ga-rbeg* has the form already exemplified in *Glon-myi-g-loñ* (*Ltoñ-te-Mye-kru*), *Žu-tsog-žu*, *yul-myi-yul*, &c. To this last group belongs also, in one of the two versions, the name of

- (d) The fiend: *Go-ya-go-phu* (in the other version he is *Dgu-leogs*), 'the Go, the Ya-Go, the elder' (if *phu* here, as usual, means 'elder': *ya* may be 'sheep (ewe)', cf. pp. 94, 343).

The persons in these stories are, as has been mentioned, not ordinary human beings. This applies in a high degree to the girl *Rbeg-ga-rbeg-ši*, or *Tseñ-hgi-Rba[g]-žin*, who is transmuted into a peacock and flies away from G-yer-mo-thañ to the *Skyi-mthin* country, where she becomes the wife of *Gyim-po Ñag-cig* ['Number one'], the junior, but wise, son of Yab-ñal-de Thol-phrom. Her character as a peacock suggests a bird-nature in the original status of herself and her family, and discloses a possibility that her father, 'Blind Eye-blind', 'Blind Birds' Head and Chief', may have commenced his existence in fable as an owl. This possibility is confirmed by the name of the fiend in the form *Go-ya-go*, since *go* may well be = Tibetan *go-bo* (Mo-so *hio* ?), 'vulture'; but she may have been a sheep, since the fiend's first object in approaching the flock of sheep will have been, of course, the lambs. In any case the alternative version, in which the fiend is 'the black fiend *Dgu-leogs* from the fiend country *Dgu-sul* in Khar-tsan', two places belonging to the Śa-cu region,<sup>2</sup> shows that the original fable had assumed a less definite significance.

<sup>1</sup> Evidently with dialectical difference.

<sup>2</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 366-8 (*śul*), 28, 32, 34-5, &c.

An aetiological character in the story emerges when we consider that it is to the Skyi country that Tseñ-hgi-Rba[g]-zin escapes, and in that country she becomes the peacock bride of Yab-ñal-lde-Thol-phrom's son, Gyim-po Ñag-cig. The story begins (in the larger manuscript):

Yul-myi-yul-Skyi-mthiñ-na | ~ | Skyi-[yul-sten-yul-Thañ-brga]-rgyal Bod-kyi-skad-du-na

'In a country, man-country, Skyi-mthiñ: Skyi [country, high-country, Thañ-hundred].<sup>1</sup> In the language of Tibet. . .'

The scribe, obsessed by the idea of the Skyi country, was going on to say 'In the language of Skyi'; but he recollected immediately, crossed out the words 'country, high-country, Thañ-hundred' and proceeded 'In the language of Tibet', accidentally leaving in the (second) 'Skyi'. Connexion of the Skyi country with the peacock is evident when we remember that Skyi is the country of the upper Hoang-ho, the *Rma-chu*, 'Peacock-river', and that *Rma*, 'Peacock', is a surname of persons from that region,<sup>2</sup> and that the river in its great upper course winds round the towering Amne Ma-chin range of mountains, i.e. the Ane Rma-chen, 'Aunt (or Grandmother, Grandfather, Ancestress, Ancestor) Great-Peacock' range. In another story belonging to the larger manuscript one of the characters journeys to the 'country, man-country, Skyi-mthiñ, a far country', where he meets with 'man, peacock-son (*myi-rma-bu*), Ldam-śad'; and in a different manuscript we have a long account of a certain *Myi-rma-bu-Mchiñ-rgyal*, 'Man, peacock-son, Mchiñ-king'. It is therefore certain that the peacock was the legendary ancestor, or rather ancestress, of the Skyi people and its chiefs; and the story of Father Ñal-lde-Thol-phrom and his Gyim-po sons is the racial legend of the Skyi folk. Should we resist the temptation to identify this Gyim with Jên (Wylie, pp. 433-4; De Groot, ii, pp. 195-6, Dsim), the great-grandson of the legendary first king of the Ch'iang? See *supra*, pp. 40, 57.

We should not fail to observe that in the story three different areas are envisaged. The first is the narrator's own point of view,

<sup>1</sup> 'Plain-hundred', if *brga* is = *brgya*, 'hundred': many parallels show that it must be a number; but it might be *ga*, 'ten', which is likely to have been the regional word = Hórpa *sga*, Muli *ka-te*, Pa-U-Rong *ka-den*, Hsi-hsia *dgañ*, *dghañ*, and which probably occurs as *ga* in the longer manuscript; on the word *Thañ* in the name see *supra*, p. 30, n. 3.

<sup>2</sup> As explained in *JRAS.* 1927, p. 40, and *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, p. 279, n. 6. Cf. *supra*, p. 1, n. 2.



where, no doubt, since he does not suggest any other location, is the home of Ltoñ-te Mye-kru and his family. The second is the place of the girl's first hiding (and perhaps, therefore, not remote from her own original country), namely, the G-yer-mo-thañ, which we have already (pp. 33-4) found reason to identify with the 'Great and Little Turquoise (Yü) Valleys', west of the Koko-nor. The third is the country of Yab-ñal-de-Thol-phrom, the Skyi country, which the girl reaches in her flight after traversing nine passes and crossing nine fords. Thus we have three regions: the narrator's, i.e. the Nam, region; a proximate region, the G-yer-mo-thañ; and a remoter region, Skyi, which had its own language or dialect. The legend of the Skyi country, at any rate as retailed in the Nam country, recognized an ancestry from the first of these.

Have we now sufficient grounds for identifying with the Nam language that speech which is represented by our manuscript? The most obvious formal correspondence is in connexion with the suffix which appears in the forms *te* and *tehi* (*Ltoñ-te* and *tehi*, *hbrin-te*), *ste* (*Bzagste*), *lde* and *ldehi* (*Ñal-lde* and *ldehi*), and which obviously is identical with the Tibetan Gerund suffix *te*, *ste*, *de*. In Tibetan, however, the suffix is not found employed as it is in these names, i.e. as a mere appendage to an attribute; and it certainly could not be followed, as here, by a Genitive or Adjective suffix *hi*—that this is the value of the *hi* is proved by the alternative use of *hgi* in *Tsen-hgi Rba-ga*, &c. Alternation of *-e* and *-ehi* without apparent difference of sense has been exemplified above (p. 124) in forms of the manuscript language, and it seems possible that we should find in the *hi* the Adjectival suffix *i* which Dr. Laufer attributed (*T'oung-pao*, xxii (1916), p. 106) to the Hsi-hsia language; and such a suffix might have also other uses. But in any case the language of the manuscript has many examples of a suffix *te* or *hte* attached to words which are unmistakable verbs (*hdre*, *htre*, *hphom*) and adjectives (*htor*, *hram*, *hnam*), on which matter see *infra* (pp. 188-90); the form *ste* also occurs.

It must be confessed that a *te*, *de*, *ste*, *lde* as a Gerund, though not in the above use, *may*, since it existed in two independent dialects, Tibetan and Nam, have been general in old Tibeto-Burman, and so may have extended to the language of the manuscript, even if not identifiable with Nam. This difficulty does not apply to the auxiliary verb *phrom* in *thol-phrom*, which in Tibetan might have been *thol-byed* or *thol-mdzad*, the two verbs *byed*, 'do', and *mdzad*, 'make', 'do', being from old times so

employed with verbs, either to form Causatives or as mere stylistic equivalents of the simple verbs. In the Tibetan documents another verb *hkhums* (Preterite *khums*, and *bkum*; Future *bgums*) is frequently used in the expression *gñer-hkhums*, 'to carry out a task', *gñer* being a verb with the meaning 'employ' or 'have in charge'. This verb *hkhums*, which is not found in the Tibetan dictionaries, is perhaps identical in root with *hgum*, 'die', *bkum*, 'kill', and may have meant 'execute' in both senses; but a more likely connexion is with *hkhums*, *skum*, 'contract' (limbs, &c.), whence the dictionary of Ś. C. Das gives 'to practise', 'to impress on the mind' ('concentrate'), and *thos-pa-hkhum*, 'comprehend what has been heard'. *Phrom* will then be a verb of the same character, possibly connected with *phrom*, *khrom*, 'a mart', often used by the Tibetans in Central Asia. The word, as *prom*, *hprom*, *hproms*, *bprom*, *phrom*, *hphrom*, is of frequent occurrence in the language of the manuscript, and is nowhere else recorded;<sup>1</sup> and this fact may perhaps be considered decisive of the whole matter.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Also the text has an auxiliary verb *hkom*, *gkom*, e.g. in *yob-hkom*, l. 166, 'having accomplished a shaking', which is clearly identical with the Tibetan *hkhums*; concerning *prom* and *hkom* see *infra*, pp. 199-200.

<sup>2</sup> Is it an accident that has combined the three syllables *Nam-ldoñ-prom* in the name of a place where in the year A.D. 702 the Tibetan government held their winter assembly of *Mdo-smad* (Tibetan MS. *Chronicle*)? The name might mean 'Ldoñ-prom in Nam', or 'Nam-ldoñ mart' (with *prom* = *phrom*, 'mart'). But in any case the Nam country is probably indicated, and *prom*, even if = *phrom*, points to the north, since it is only in Central Asia that this form of *khrom*, 'mart', is known.

It seems highly probable that the collocation *Nam-ldoñ* is not, in fact, casual, and that the blindness (*ldoñ*) of Mye-kru owes its origin to a never-absent feature of Central-Asian folk-lore, namely, popular etymology. For the *Ldoñ* are famous in Tibetan literature as one of the six early tribes descended from the monkey patriarch of the Tibetan race, and also as having supplied generations of ministers to the Tibetan state (see Ś. C. Das's *Dictionary*, s.v.). The *Ldoñ Sum-pa*, i.e. the *Ldoñ* of the *Sum-pa* division, have already (p. 18, n. 2) come to our knowledge; and in connexion with them the Tibetan history there cited makes mention also of the *Ldoñ Mi-ñag*, as another of the four tribes of 'inner dwarfs'. It looks as if the peoples of the Women's Kingdom and of the *Mi-ñag* country were regarded as subdivisions of a *Ldoñ* race. If that is so, we must include also the Nam people; for the same manuscript which speaks of the *Ldoñ Sum-pa* refers in the same connexion to the *Nam-pa Ldoñ*, the 'Ldoñ of the Nam-pa division', and these seem to be also the *Nam-chen Ldoñ* of the history (p. 65). Accordingly it appears that to the early Tibetans the Ch'iang tribes in general were *Ldoñ*. This being so, it is probable that the 'blindness' of the Nam patriarch Mye-kru, and perhaps his owl character and his whole story, embody merely a popular attempt to account for the racial or ethnic name *Ldoñ*, *Gtoñ*.



But it seems also that the actual name *Mye-kru*, in the form *Mehi-klu*, and the word *klu*, with the meaning 'blind', occur in the manuscript.

*Mehi-klu-hcha*, certainly denoting some kind of living creatures, occurs in :

hldyañ-hpu-hbri-re-mehi-klu-hcha-ge-stor-htaḥ-ḥtoni || l. 150,  
which must mean (approximately) :

'the Mehi-klu-hcha, male and female ( ? ), were scattered (or fled)';

and the same verse, with *hcaḥ* for *hcha* and *yañ-stor-ḥdor-ḥyon* for *ge-stor-htaḥ-ḥtoni* recurs in l. 161. In l. 218 we have :

hldyañ-hpu-hbri-re-ḥmehi-klu-hcaḥ-dze-ḥtor-ḥkho-ge-  
ḥkhohi,

and the phrase *hldyañ . . . hcaḥ* is found again in l. 343. It is possible that *hcaḥ* or *hcha* is a pluralizing suffix which occurs in other connexions; but more probably it means 'harmful creatures', see *supra*, pp. 132-3, *cha*, *hcaḥ*, *hchaḥ*, &c., and *infra*, p. 253. *Mehi*, according to what has been set out above, is a good equivalent for *mye*, *me*, 'eye'; along with *klu* it is found in ll. 24-5 :

hgru-ḥsram-ḥtam-ge-ḥśes-beg-staḥ  
klu-ḥrto-ḥtsa-ge-ḥśes-ḥbeg-mehi  
klu-rto-ḥtsaḥ-ge-ḥrah-ḥyos-ḥlam.

*Ḥśes-ḥbeg* occurs elsewhere and seems to be a divinity, and *ḥrah-ḥyos* likewise recurs, meaning probably 'place moved', while *ḥlam* is certainly = Tibetan *lam*, 'road', 'path'. The parallelism of *staḥ*, *mehi*, and *ḥlam*, along with the other antitheses, proves that the meaning of the second and third lines is :

'They being blind [rocks], *Ḥśes-beg* was their eye :  
They being blind [rocks], the place (itself) moving was their path.'

These coincidences inevitably suggest the possibility of a connexion between our Nam text (since we can now confidently refer to it as such) and the two Tibetan manuscripts, a connexion extending to the subject-matter; and this idea is encouraged by a rather striking parallelism.

The Tibetan interpolation at l. 180 of the Nam manuscript means, as we have seen,

'therefrom, or thereafter, race (races, descent, generations)  
was (were) made : this is said (as) secret'.

In the longer Tibetan manuscript the first part ends:

'Now in kinds, nine (= all) kinds (*rigs*, 'races'), it is to be: in divisions, nine divisions, is to be division';

and then, after some verses particularizing the changes, we have a colophon:

'Chapter telling of the beginning (*cho*). The rest is to be spoken. Here a small extract is written.'

Thus both texts profess an oral source, and at a certain point both announce an oral continuation and state as its subject a matter of race or divided races (*rabs*, *rigs*).

The next, and longest, section in the Tibetan manuscript narrates the tragic story of the separation (*dbye*) of the horse and kiang (the wild ass) and the conflict with the yak, whose hostility is still a notorious theme. The horse is generally, of course, *rta*, the usual word not only in normal Tibetan but also in the frontier dialects of the east and north-east. The yak is *g-yag* (*byag*) or *hbroñ*, the yak-bull, whose malice is proverbial; in the text we are concerned with 'Father Hbroñ-g-yag Skar-ba' (his individual name). The Nam text likewise is evidently concerned with the horse (*rta*, *rtañ*, *hrtā*, *hrtāñ*) and the yak (*hbroñ*), whose designations are of constant recurrence; and it would be easy to show that the main topic is the strife between the two and the quelling of the yak. Since this proof depends upon the interpretation of Nam words, it would be premature to dwell here upon the matter; it may suffice to cite two lines (185-6) of the text which are fairly clear:

ḥtañ | ḥśud | ḥdon | rgyag | dze | ḥtor | ḥdo | ḥchuñ |  
ḥta | śud | mehi | dze | ḥrtāñ | ḥjam | ge | ḥmehi ||

The meaning must be (roughly):

'In comparison with (*dze*) that fierce-purposed [yak] the horse is in bigness small:

'In comparison with that fierce-eyed [yak] the horse has a mild eye'

(the little fierce eye of the yak-bull being a familiar matter).<sup>1</sup>

Another expression, of like frequency, in the Nam text is *rgyed* or *rgyed-ma*. If we disregard the initial *r*, or regard it as a Causative Prefix, we are at once conducted to the Tibetan verb *hgye*, 'be

<sup>1</sup> On the blackness, fierceness, and 'fiery eyes' of the yak see Huc and Gabet, ii, p. 120, and cf. Rockhill, *Diary*, pp. 193, 199, Tafel, i, p. 337, and Prejevalsky, ii, pp. 187-8, 194.



divided', 'to issue, proceed, spread, or branch from',<sup>1</sup> and to its causative form *hgyed*, 'scatter, disperse, set going', with Preterite *bgyes*, Future *bkye*. In connexion with Tibetan forms beginning with *gy*, *gr*, *gl* there is always reason to anticipate alternatives with *by*, *br* or *dr*, *bl*, of which alternation we have here, in fact, an instance; for the more common form in Tibetan is *hbye*, 'open, separate, resolve into', with Causative *hbyed* (Preterite *phye*, *phyed*, *phyes*, Future *dbye*), 'open, disunite, set at variance, divide', *rigs-kyi-sgo-nas-dbye-na*, 'if classified according to the different species (*rigs*)'. This form *hbyed* is, in fact, the one used (*dbye*, Future or Prospective) in the Tibetan manuscript to denote the 'separation' of species. In the Nam we should, on the analogy of its *glo*, 'mind' (ordinary Tibetan *blo*, but in Central-Asian documents *glo*), expect the *g* form. Incontestably therefore we recognize in the Nam word *rgyed* the meaning 'divide', 'separate'; and in regard to *rgyed-ma* we scarcely need to cite the Tibetan *hgyed-ma*, which the authors of Ś. C. Das's *Tibetan Dictionary* have somewhere found denoting 'a goddess, one that brings on division, dissension, or disunion'.

We are now in a position to resume consideration of the 'colophon' occurring, as suggested *supra* (p. 129) in ll. 248-9 of the text. The last sentence there reads:

hldi-rgyed-hrar-rgyed-htre-hte-ge-gse-hso-hkoni (= hkon-ni).

Here *hldi* = Tibetan *hdi*, 'this'; *hrar* is Locative of *hraḥ* = Tibetan *ra*, 'place', 'enclosure'; *htre*, which elsewhere in connexion with *rgyed* is *hdre*, is a form of the Tibetan verb *hdren*, 'draw', 'bring on', 'invite' (*blo-hdren*, 'draw on the mind', 'persuade', 'induce'). The form *hdre* with this meaning occurs in our texts from eastern and north-eastern Tibet; and the ordinary Tibetan *hdre*, 'demon, or evil spirit', is perhaps the same word in the sense of a 'drawer'; *hte* is the Participial-Adjectival suffix with which we are already familiar. *Gse* (also *hse*), since it occurs with the suffix *htaḥ*, is probably a verb; and since we have

gse-htaḥ-hdam, 248,

hse-htaḥ-hdam, 326,

'gse-ta was bound or condemned',

<sup>1</sup> Ś. C. Das's *Dictionary*: *de-dag-las-gyes-so*, 'they have proceeded from those (their ancestors)'. So also in the *Rgyal-rabs* (ed. Francke, *Antiquities of Indian Tibet*, ii, p. 21, l. 2) *bzi-po-de-las-mi-rigs-phal-cher-gyes-so*, 'from those four the races of men in general branched out'.

and *gse-lad* (and *hlad*), 240, 242, 244,  
 'requital of *gse*'.

it means 'injuring', 'harming', 'injury', 'harm', and corresponds to Tibetan *gtse/htshe*, 'cause mischief or danger to, damage, injure, persecute'. For *hkon* the meaning 'chapter' has been conjectured. The meaning of the passage therefore is:

'In this Place of Division injury [by] those inducing Division,  
*so*-Chapter.'

What is *hso*? The two other occurrences of the word throw no light upon its meaning. It is clearly not = Tibetan *so*, 'dice', *so*, 'blast, blight, mildew', *so(-gam)*, 'tax, toll', *so(-re)*, 'defect, flaw, notch, gap', *gso/bso*, 'pour', *zo*, 'curds', *zo*, a certain weight, *zo*, 'spot, speck', *bso*, 'victuals', *so*, 'attachment', 'desire', *so* 'tooth', *so, bso*, 'watchman', 'guard', 'spy', *so-ga/sos-ka*, 'summer', *so/gso/bso*, 'feed', 'nourish', 'cure'; and we have so far no reason for thinking of *bso*, 'pour', 'vomit', 'copulate'. Remembering that in the Tibetan manuscript the opening chapter is

cho-smos-paḥi-leḥu

'chapter telling of the beginning',

we might be tempted to equate *so* with *cho* in the sense of 'beginning'; but, since the Nam text contains the word *chos* in that sense, that way seems provisionally to be closed, and we must leave the problem unresolved. Nothing supports the idea that *so* might be a number.

In the Tibetan manuscript the (fragmentary) beginning is concerned with the period preceding the Age of Separation, division, dissension. It was a Golden Age, with blessedness concentrated on the top, and evil or curse shut outside. The change came with the action of the stars and planets, which commenced to 'eat uphill' (or with difficulty, against the grain) and drink anxiously'. If the Nam text was on similar lines, we might perhaps in its opening part, despite its fragmentary condition, find some traces of a world cataclysm. From ll. 24-5 we have already taken note of the verse which says:

'They being blind, the place (itself) moving was their path.'

The phrase *hrah-hyos*, 'place moved', recurs as *hrah-g-yos* and

<sup>1</sup> *G-yen-du*, possibly a technical expression, because we are told that in October the yaks, having previously 'fed their way up the mountain', 'of their own accord commence feeding downwards' (*Travels of a Pioneer of Commerce*, by T. T. Cooper, p. 394).



*g-rah-hyos* in l. 26, while in l. 27 we find *g-rah-g-yo*, and in l. 28 *g-yo-hpud-hto*. In *g-yo* we have evidently to do with the Tibetan verb *g-yo*, Preterite *g-yos*, 'move', 'waver', of which *yo-ba*, 'crooked', 'perverted', 'deceitful', may be a prefixless form; and other variations may be traced. But that in north-eastern Tibet the phrase was used with reference to earthquake or cataclysm<sup>1</sup> is certain from another Tibetan manuscript, which tells of a girl queen of the Myan country, who was keeping down the local fiend, so that:

'When in the high-country was quaking (*g-yos*), in the Myan high-country of Black Woods there was no quaking (*g-yos*).'

That a cataclysm is the subject of the opening part of the Nam text may shed light upon the verse (ll. 9, 19)

sta-re-hmo-ge-sta-hri-hldyan

if that means something like

'Where were the clouds (or heavens, *hmog* or *hmo*), there the mountains rose (or flew or ?)',

which may suggest an original Tibeto-Burman source for the early Sanskrit legend that the mountains (Himālaya) at first had wings. It is a singular coincidence that the earth-movement was due to the swelling-up, as we shall see, of the above-mentioned (p. 138) divinity, Hses-hbeg, in name resembling the serpent Śeṣa of Indian mythology, who 'by moving his coils lays the mountains in ruins'.<sup>2</sup> The end of the cataclysm is stated in the verse

hsah-yob-hkom-re-hrañ-hrah-htsuḥ ||, 166,

which patently means

'The earth, having done quaking, returned to its own place.'

The character of the Nam text now begins, it may be hoped, to be discernible behind its machine-gun rapid-fire of strange monosyllables. It is the literature, folk-lore, and sacred legend of the Nam-Tig people. Like the narration in Tibetan language, to which it had a general, but apparently no close, correspondence, it began with a description of a primitive age of blessedness and harmony in the fields of heaven; and then, after describing the cosmic disaster which terminated that period, expounded the

<sup>1</sup> On frequency of earthquakes in borderlands of east Tibet see Tafel, ii, pp. 195, 197; Johnston, p. 132; Gill, p. 218; Fergusson, p. 206.

<sup>2</sup> See the Sanskrit *Harṣa-carita*, trans. Cowell and Thomas, p. 132.

unfortunate history of the divisions and strifes of species. If it was similar to the Tibetan texts which we have, it may have continued into human origins and have given the eponymous or aetiological legends of its own people and of others within their purview; in that case the legend of the Nam-Tig country would have been that of Mye-klu, while that of the Skyi country was, as we have seen, that of Yab-nal-lde-Thol-prom. Two other manuscripts from the same region use the doctrine of the Blessed Age and the successive periods of degeneration as a preface to disquisitions of a historical, and even a politico-religious, character. These may be affected by some indirect influence from the side of Buddhism. The Nam text, too, may contain some references to actualities. But, if it resembled the Tibetan account, which has one certain reference to Bon divinities, its notions will have been of the vaguer, more poetical and fanciful, kind, which may still be traced in certain Bon-po writings.

It ought not to be thought strange that from among tribes which the Chinese, even in T'ang times, could describe as the lowest savages, we should have literature of this nature. Narratives of a primitive Period of Bliss, or commencing with the gods or heaven and progressing into actual history or legend, are, in fact, the most widespread of all forms of early literature. After the most familiar examples, the Book of Genesis and the works of Hesiod, we may refer to the Sanskrit *Purāṇas*, which reflect some very ancient models. In the Tibeto-Burman sphere and among neighbouring peoples such narratives seem to have been a common type. For the Mo-so we may refer to the facsimile text printed, with translation, in Prince Henri d'Orléans' *From Tonkin to India* (pp. 448 sqq.) and to M. Jacques Bacot's work (*Les Mo-so*), pp. 18-20; for Lo-lo stories to M. Paul Vial (*Les Lolos*), pp. 6-12, H. Cordier in *T'oung-pas*, 1907, pp. 666-7, and M. A. Liétard's *Au Yun-nan, Les Lo-lo-p'o*, pp. 140-2. Concerning the 'independent Miao-tze' the Vicomte d'Ollone writes (trans., *In Forbidden China*, pp. 156-7):

'One of the most curious customs of these people is that of profiting by all solemn occasions . . . to relate the traditions referring to the earliest ages of the world, the Creation, the Deluge and so forth. It is an interminable story, to which the crowd listens without fatigue; they will interrupt it in order to eat or sleep, and once more it is resumed, often to last for several days. . . . Their recitals vary from village to village. The most singular point about these traditions is the almost perfect identity, in spite of certain items of purely



local colour, of their account of the Deluge with that of the Bible.'

As regards Burma, we have there 'the Lahu Narrative of Creation' (*Journal of the Burma Research Society*, i, p. 65) and the statement of the Rev. D. Gilmore (*ibid.* ii, p. 32) concerning the Karens:

'the prevalence among them, when they first came in contact with Christian missionaries, of a number of traditional legends more or less resembling the narratives found in the early part of the book of Genesis.'

In Tibet the *Royal Chronicle* (*Me-loñ*), which remarks that

'Well known is the lineage of the gods according to Bon-po ideas',<sup>1</sup> has preserved in its early pages some little of this, though with Buddhist admixture.

Whether the Nam narrative was of the same interminable character<sup>2</sup> as those of the Miao-tze and the Finnish *Kalevala* is not apparent. It has two distinctive features, or rather three.

The first of these features is the prominence of the idea of division, or dissension, and the deploring of the resulting evils; also the praise of combination or friendship. This idea seems to have been prominent in the minds of the eastern and north-eastern Tibetans;<sup>3</sup> for in another of the Tibetan texts one of the evils of the bad age is that

'father and son came to be in dissension (*p(h)uñ-phyé*): elder brother and younger brother came to be divided (*p(h)ye*)',

and this fact is not indifferent to us here; for the word *phuñ-phyé*, which is not given in the Tibetan dictionaries, obviously means 'heap, mass, aggregate (*phuñ*) divided (*phyé*)', the second member being the verb which we have found used of the division of species and harmony; and this assures us that the Nam expression

*puñ-te-gsar-ñar* (204)

really does mean

'from being united (*phuñ*) new (Tib. *gsar*) strength (*ñar*)',

and that in

*hkrug-hrdzo-hgyud-dze* (18)

'upon the quarrelsome *hrdzo* (sc. yak) race'

<sup>1</sup> Prof. A. H. Francke's translation (*Antiquities of Indian Tibet*, ii), p. 76.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. the remarks of Hue and Gabet (ii, p. 82) on 'interminable series of tales and legends' among the 'Si-fan nomads'.

<sup>3</sup> Likewise among the T'u-yü-hun it was illustrated by the story of King A-eh'ai's sons and the arrows (*Bichurin*, i, p. 79).

and in

hkrug-kyañ-hldom-re-hrñe-hño-hdzar (371-2)

'strife being bound down, foe and friend were united'

*hkrug* really is = Tibetan *hkhrug*, 'commotion, quarrel, fight, row'. The material basis of this sentiment is likewise apposite for us, and we have already (p. 39) quoted a Chinese description of the constant and violent contentions within the Ch'iang tribes. The long history of the struggles related in the *Annals* shows with what success the dividing Chinese diplomacy played upon this weakness;<sup>1</sup> and we see here that the tribes, however incapable of counteracting, were conscious of it.

The second feature, which also will be a valuable aid in interpretation, is the large admixture of moral or practical reflection apparent in the text. Proverbial wisdom is, no doubt, current among all human groups; and from eastern Tibet we have a text containing 'Sum-pa Mother-sayings'. The Sum-pa sayings are not those of a savage, or even barbarous, folk; and from the Koko-nor peoples, after so many centuries of contact with, and, in a varying measure, absorption into, Chinese civilization, a common-sense tone is not surprising. In the Nam text ll. 120-3 contain six antithetical verses concerning *htsog-hram*, which certainly means 'friendly association', and ll. 124-7 six similar verses concerning *hldañ-hkrañ*, which is 'uprightness'. It is not convenient to attempt at this point a translation of these, or analogous, passages—in the Tibetan manuscripts there are similarly reflective sentiments and even, in the more systematic accounts of the world periods, rather sober historico-ethical reflections. As specimens of the earlier, more naïve, wisdom we may cite the two verses in ll. 60-1:

hkhu-tsa-śid-dze-hpha-hñur-hñur

gphañ-tsa-glom-dze-hkhu-hñur-hñur

'When the uncle's family (i.e. the mother's side) is high, the father groans:

When the father's family is extravagant (or conceited), the uncle (the mother's people) groans',

and the three verses in ll. 158-60:

chos-ta-ñan-re-hde-ta-rgyen-hlab-ta-hwen ||

hnañ-hchos-hre-ge-hldañ-myi-śeg |

spye-chos-hre-ge-gtsañ-myi-hrgan |

śi-hchos-re-ge-hpu-myi-hldin ||

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Johnston, p. 287.



'Beginnings being bad, prospering is uphill, speech vain.

Born (begun) in spring, the stick does not break (or burn);

Born in summer, the grain does not mature;

Born in winter, the bird does not fly.<sup>1</sup>

The third feature is the interest in animals, natural in folk-literature. The horse and the yak are the most prominent, the former being, of course, the mainstay of the lives of the galloping, fighting, marauding tribes, which still, as travellers' narratives attest, give their thievish attention primarily to horses. In a wild state the horse is said to exist still in the Kum desert, south-east of Lob-nor. His recourse to man occasioned his separation from his brother, the wild ass (*rkyan*, *kiang*), who is seen only afar, on the high *thans*. The wild yak, hunted with lasso and spear,<sup>2</sup> is noted for his malignancy. His tame fellow, with the *dzo* (*mdzo*), the cross with the cow, and also other crossings, is the characteristic animal of Tibet. The traveller from the cosmopolitan Chinese direct administration area of Hsi-ning, where the camel is in use, finds himself, on passing the Tibetan frontier, at Tankar, in a yak-country; and it is possible that ethnical considerations enter into the folk-lore concerning this creature. The Nam-Tig people, though from early times they must have been familiar with the camel, which exists wild in the Altyn-tāgh range, probably were, in their agricultural occupation of the fertile uplands of the Nanshan, most concerned with the ass,<sup>3</sup> who in the story appears, as we see (p. 132), bell-bearing as safeguarding the sheep. Perhaps the ass-country and the yak-country may have had some natural difference of sentiment. The sheep and the goat are common to all the districts. The camel, which is not mentioned in the Tibetan (fragmentary) version, is perhaps identifiable in the Nam text. The tiger and the bear (*dom*, *gre*) may be discovered in both.

Water, the matter of almost the greatest importance in north-eastern Tibet and in Tibet generally, is in the Tibetan manuscripts mentioned prominently in connexion with irrigation channels (*yan-ba* = *yur-ba*) and the fouling (*sbog*) of them, principally by

<sup>1</sup> These two passages were presented, with etymologies, as provisional specimens in the article on the Nam language in *JRAS.* 1939 (see pp. 215-16), and so may, without assuming the conclusions to be reached *infra*, be adduced here. In the discussion of Grammar and Etymology many other such pointed or proverbial sayings will come to light.

<sup>2</sup> So in the Tibetan manuscript. On slings or lassos in Tibet see Rockhill, p. 120, *Diary*, p. 264; Bonvalot, ii, p. 5; Filchner, *Om Mani Padme Hum*, p. 156.

<sup>3</sup> As regards Kan-su see d'Ollone, p. 292.

wild animals; we also read of clean descents (*stegs*) to fords. And this helps in the interpretation of some phrases in the Nam text. The recurrent Tibetan expression is

yañ-ba-rab-tu-sbog (and *sbogs*)

'the runnels were utterly fouled (or flooded)',

*sbog(s)* being in normal Tibetan the Imperative of *sbag*, 'pollute'; here it is a Preterite, and the root has the *o*-form. *Sbag* is properly, no doubt, a Transitive or Causative form of *hbag*, which is to 'defile oneself', 'be polluted'. In the Nam text we have (l. 256) the verse

rgam-hgañ-hkañ-hyañ-hrag-ma-hbog ||

in which *hbag* may correspond to Tibetan *rags*, 'dam, mole, dyke'. *Rgam* may well be Tibetan *sgam*, 'deep', unless it should be *skam*, 'dry'; this cannot be decided by other passages, because *rgam*, like so many other words, is a homonym. If *hkañ* = Tibetan *gañ*, 'full', which in itself is not improbable and which suits

h̄tor-sñiñ-hkañ-ge, 168

'great-heart-full',

we get the rendering (cf. l. 283, *hrag* . . . *hbog*)

'though the deep places were full, the dykes were not fouled'.

'Hot' and 'cold' are naturally prominent in the thoughts of an Amdo people. In the texts there are references to 'the fire of action', 'the fire of speech', 'the fire of going', and perhaps some other metaphorical 'fires'; and 'cold' seems to occur with the sense of 'dispirited', 'unenterprising', 'apprehensive' (see p. 301); 'hot become cold' may refer to defeat or death, and it is said that

'Invested with the great cold (sc. death), the evil are good', and

'Invested with the great cold, evil and good are friends'.

The god or gods (*tha* = Tib. *lha*), of whom there is a mention (l. 241), seem to be distinct from the divine being *H̄ses-hbeg*, who presided over the world-cataclysm, being the wings, eyes, and path of the flying mountains, &c., who again may belong to a stratum different from that of the 'Hnam-people', the upper sky (*gnam*) folk of the old Bon mythology.<sup>1</sup> Fiends (*rñe*) are located (l. 385) in dark subterranean hollows.

The social attitude of the text is distinctly aristocratic. The

<sup>1</sup> The evident suggestion (ll. 332, 344) that *H̄ses* in this name = *ses*, 'wise', may be folk-etymology. Could this divinity be connected with the *Se-bag* of *Tibetan Literary Texts*, &c., i, p. 296, n. 3, or with the *Beg-tse*, patron of horses, mentioned *ibid.*?



*lde*, or influential people, are supposed to exercise supervision, and there were council, or tribal, meetings (*hgru-ma*). The yak, or 'black-back', whose rise was connected with the ruin of the 'High Town' and the ascendancy of the 'Low Town', seems to represent an antagonism of the commons (the *mgo-nag*, 'black-heads' of Tibetan and Chinese) to the chiefs or ruling classes; at times they are termed filth (*kru* = Tib. *kru-ra*, 'low people'), and they are approved only when duly submissive. The *hkyan*, who are mentioned sometimes in connexion with the 'house-poor' (*na-hpoñ*) or 'house-bondsmen' (*na-hldom*) and sometimes as 'runaways', may be praedial serfs. Women seem to be snubbed, which is not surprising, because, though free and influential among the nomads, as well as among other populations of Tibet,<sup>1</sup> where there have been, or are, 'women's kingdoms', they are nevertheless not highly esteemed by the men. The expression 'a chief who is an inferior person, subject to a woman's words' (l. 84) may illustrate both aspects of the case.

The interest in tombs and 'father's tombs' (*rman*, *hphah-rman*), ll. 197-207 and elsewhere, may seem paradoxical in the case of a Ch'iang people, who might have been expected to follow one of the known Tibetan practices, such as exposure of the dead upon a mountain, which is usual in Amdo. But, as a matter of fact, the Tibetans, the Yang-t'ung and the Ch'iang of the Women's Kingdom practised burial, and the Tibetans worshipped ancestors at the tomb: the Tang-hsiang burned their dead.<sup>2</sup> This, however, may have been only in the case of chiefs and leading persons<sup>3</sup> and may have resulted from contact with China or Chinese Turkestan. The prominence of the topic in the Nam text is an example of the fundamental accord of its subject-matter with that of 'the Tibetan manuscripts', one of which is largely concerned with a dispute regarding entombment of a father. In Tibet the topic has maintained its interest down to modern times, as is evidenced by the amusing apologue recorded in Huc and Gabet's book (ii, pp. 83-4).

<sup>1</sup> This is remarked by all travellers: see Rockhill, pp. 213, 230; Tafel, ii, pp. 125-6; Edgar, p. 66; Fergusson, pp. 256, 326 (Lo-lo women). The Vicomte d'Ollone compares (p. 236) the Go-lok women to the indomitable women of the Cimbri or the Teutons.

<sup>2</sup> Authority for these statements in Bushell, pp. 443, 527(9), 531(42), and Rockhill, p. 339.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Rockhill, pp. 286-7, and, as regards Mongol usage, Huc and Gabet, i, pp. 77-80, and Prejevalsky, i, p. 82.

There are references to houses, in a town or village, with side-projecting roofs, which furnish a shelter for sheep, and in the case of a large one, with a ladder (perhaps the usual notched plank) for ascent; also to the supporting side-posts of the Tibetan tent. The chief economic interest was perhaps the milk-herds, with the sheep, goats, &c., coming next; but certainly there is reference to tillage and harvests. The Tibetan dog, usually an aggressive sentinel, is mentioned. The travelling animals, the sheep which, when their 'fire of going' is exhausted, 'bend down their heads',<sup>1</sup> the yaks, which, when their 'stomach-fire (?)' gives out, ask to be 'hobbled' (?), or which, in the lower valleys, 'have their heads released', point to caravan journeys and help to prove that the *hdro-ño*, 'travel-buy-[people]', are the *hdon-po*, 'travelling traders', who figure in 'the Tibetan manuscripts' and other old texts, as well as in all modern narratives concerning the Hsi-fan countries and Tibet. We also may detect a reference to the well-attested practice of collecting medicinal herbs and drugs in the mountains. The making of yak-hair cloth for tents and 'a coarse kind of wollen stuff' for 'summer gowns and bags', beside which 'the Koko-nor Tibetans manufacture nothing' (Rockhill, p. 81), are not apparent in the text; but tanning of skins (for sheepskin gowns, &c.), wherein the same Tibetans are expert (*ibid.*), is certainly the subject of a direct reference and also of a metaphor;<sup>2</sup> likewise the leather bellows, indispensable accompaniment of the Tibetan yak-dung (*argol*) fire.

The Ch'iang man certainly wore a top-knot (*thor*, also mentioned metaphorically), possibly resembling the 'horn' of the independent Lo-los, who share with the Ch'iang and the Go-lok so many features, including the long spears mentioned *supra* (pp. 22, 39). The Lo-los, however, claim to have entered their present territory, west and south of the lower T'ung river, as immigrants from the east.

Does the text ever allow its attention to stray outside its own geographical horizon, so as to touch upon matters connected with the adjacent great world of China or with Chinese Turkestan? Certainly we have three trisyllabic expressions which are, no doubt, in some degree proper names, and which denote living beings, since of each of them it is said that they *stor-hdor-hyon*,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 286, and cf. Cooper, *Travels of a Pioneer of Commerce*, pp. 238, 241.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 251.



which must mean 'were (or will be) made to scatter'. These are: (1) *kya-wa-ne*, elsewhere *hkyā-wa-ñe* and *hkyā-hwa-ñe* (ll. 162, 215, 339); (2) *hḍrab-hwa-hrañ* (ll. 162, 173); (3) the above-mentioned *meḥi-klu-hcañ* (ll. 150, 161, 218, 343). Considering that the *meḥi-klu-hcañ* have a fabular origin, it seems prudent to reserve a further consideration of any of the three.<sup>1</sup>

But in the expression *moñ-rdzoñ* (*rjon*) we have a reference of considerable importance. The phrase clearly means 'Moñ-fort', and the reference is to the 'castles of the Mons'.<sup>2</sup> There can be no doubt that this is the sense of the phrase, which occurs in five places; and we have further confirmation in the expression *rtsig-moñ*, once *śes-hṛtsig-moñ*, occurring three times in ll. 379-81. *Rtsig-moñ* means 'Moñ carpenter', *rtsig*, from *rtsig*, 'build', having this sense not only in ordinary Tibetan, but also in Hsi-hsia<sup>3</sup> (*rgi*, *rtsi*).

From Rockhill's *Land of the Lamas*, p. 194, we learn that the Tibetans

'appear to be unable to build but the roughest kind of houses and only those where there is little woodwork. Ssū-ch'uanese carpenters and brick-makers do nearly all the building in eastern Tibet, and also fell the timber necessary for the work. I met large numbers of them on the road to Kanzé, travelling to remote localities, to build temples and bridges, to make plows and pack-saddles and do other kinds of labor in their respective trades.'

On p. 81 he states that 'all their ironware is made by itinerant Chinese smiths who visit their encampments', and in his *Journal*, p. 342, Rockhill states that Chinese carpenters 'travel all over Tibet'.<sup>4</sup>

We do not, however, need to prove that 'Mon'<sup>5</sup> people may have been, as early as the eighth to ninth century A.D., within the purview of the Koko-nor tribes. For a contemporary Tibetan text, recounting the different species of barley, mentions various kinds as Chinese and various kinds as Mon; and in particularizing the species of cotton it speaks of China cotton as grown in 'China-plain' (*Rgya-mo-thañ*) and Mon cotton as grown in 'Mon-plain'

<sup>1</sup> See *infra*, pp. 253 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> We naturally think of the towers and forts mentioned *supra*, p. 71, n. 8.

<sup>3</sup> See Nevsky, No. 77.

<sup>4</sup> According to Dr. Tafel, ii, p. 155, carpenters and smiths in Tibet are Ssū-ch'uanese, never Tibetans. . . . In the Rgyal-roñ the builders and carpenters belong to a particular tribe (p. 248 n.).

<sup>5</sup> On -n/-ñ see *infra*, p. 362.

(*Mon-mo-thaṅ*); and it has frequent references to buildings (*rtsig*), forts, &c., which upon the indication of the Nam text we may also set down to the Mons.

This is a matter which has very wide and ancient ethnographical connexions. According to the authors of Ś. C. Das's *Tibetan Dictionary*, *Mon*, corresponding to Sanskrit *Kirāta*, is a

'general name for the different tribes living in the cis-Himalayan regions and who from remote antiquity have lived by hunting',

and *Mon-yul*, 'Mon-country', is 'the sub-Himalayan regions extending from Kashmir to Assam'. But also *Mon-Pa-gro*, which should be *Mon-Spa-gro*, is

'the town and province of Pa-ro, the seat of government of West Bhutan',

and *Mon-rta-dwang*,<sup>1</sup> *Mon Rta-dbaṅ*, is 'a small principality on the eastern border of Bhutan, inhabited by a barbarous semi-Tibetan race engaged in trading operations between Tibet and Assam'. Rockhill states (*JRAS.* 1891, pp. 128-9, n. 3) that the Lissus, Mishmis, Lepchas, &c., of Nepal and Sikkim, &c., are known to the Tibetans as *Mon*.

This is not by any means the full range of the name. The late Professor A. H. Francke, in the narrative of his journey in the western Himālaya (*Antiquities of Indian Tibet*, vol. i) from the Sutlej valley to Ladak, found many ruins of villages, shrines, and cemeteries universally attributed to the Mons, whom he regards (p. 54) as the pre-Tibetan inhabitants of the country. In his *A History of Western Tibet* Chapter II is devoted to the Mons, of whom in every western Tibetan village are found one or more families; the people 'are mostly musicians or carpenters, and are treated with little respect by the rest of the population. . . . Zangskar, I was told by the inhabitants, was once entirely in the hands of the Mons. The ruins of the old castles are still called "Mon-castles"' (*Mon-mkhar*) (pp. 19-20). Similarly in *Antiquities*, ii, p. 100, 'Mons, joiners and carpenters by profession, also of low caste, though not quite so low as the *Bhe-da*'.

From Professor Francke's Mons of Ladak and Dardistan the Mons adjacent to the Koko-nor region are separated by a thousand miles of geographical distance, not very seriously reduced, as regards difficulty of communication, by the thin line of cis-Himālaya Mons extending as far east as Assam; and there is

<sup>1</sup> The *Geografia Tibeta* has (p. 37) *Mon-rta-lwaṅ*.



also, as concerns our present information, a time-interval of a thousand years. The latter interval is about halved by the Tibetan *Royal Chronicle*, which in its earlier portions preserves some items of old (Bon-po) tradition; it speaks (Francke, *Antiquities*, ii, p. 66) of four kinds of primitive 'frontier dwarfs', i.e. peoples outside the frontier of the author's country; these are the Chinese *Rgya* of Gam-šan ('the Gam mountains'), the Turks (*Hor*) of the Gyim-šan ('the Altai mountains'?), the Mons of Ha-le, and the Spu-rgyal Tibetans. The corresponding four tribes of 'interior dwarfs', which also are named, belong to Tibet; they comprise the Žaṅ-zuṅ people, of the Kailāsa region; the Gtoṅ-gsum-pa or Toṅ-gsum-pa, perhaps = the Sum-pa mentioned above; the Ldoṅ Me-ñag (also considered above); and the Se-Ḥa-ža. It is apparent that the primitive Mons are here, like the Mons of our text, not a part of the interior population, but an outside people, like the Chinese and the Turks.

The only people with a name resembling *Mon* who could have been within the purview of the Koko-nor tribes are those known to early Chinese history as the northern, or the western, *Man*. The former are mentioned in the *Shih-chi* (De Groot, op. cit. i, p. 2) as a people among whom dwelt the *Jung* and other tribes; and De Groot is of opinion that the two names are general designations of the northern peoples. The '*Man* of the west' and the *I* of the north are stated to have been in 110 B.C. still not entirely under Chinese authority.<sup>1</sup> These western *Man* are elsewhere also associated with the *I*. Chang-Ch'ien, the celebrated emissary to the west, enjoyed, c. 140 B.C., the favour of the *Man* and the *I* (De Groot, op. cit. ii, p. 11); the people of the *Man* and the *I* were greedy for the riches and products of China (ibid. ii, p. 26); in connexion with the campaign against the Ch'iang in c. 62 B.C., it was said that prognostics threatened the *Man* and *I* with severe defeats (ibid. ii, p. 210). In the eighth century B.C. there were at the source of the Yung river, in middle Honan, and farther west, *Jung* of the *Man* races (ibid. ii, p. 191, Wylie, p. 429). About 500 B.C. the *Man* were completely subdued (ibid. ii, p. 192).

The *Man* of the Yung river were, no doubt, too far east to be within the contemplation of the Ch'iang tribes. But it is, at any rate, transparent that the term *Man* was used in an ethnographical, and not merely a political, sense; and it seems possible that some of those 'further west' may have been well known. In that case

<sup>1</sup> De Groot, i, p. 147.

we may venture the inquiry whether the *Ha-le-Mon* of the Tibetan *Chronicle* may have been 'Mon of the Alashan' and adjacent (Ning-hsia) region. It is likely that they may have been assimilated by the Chinese earlier than the Ch'iang of the western frontier, and had acquired handicrafts, which, like the modern Ssü-ch'uanese carpenters, &c., they practised also among the barbarians of the Tibetan mountains.

Possible relations of these Mons to the Man-peoples of southern China are matter for Sinologists; and the Mons of the cis-Himālaya, the western Himālayan countries, and Ladak are similarly outside our present scope. We can, however, see clearly that the Mon country to which, at the close of the eighth century A.D., the victorious Tibetans transported the people of Pei-t'ing, the people of Ge-sar (*JRAS*, 1931, p. 828; *Tibetan Texts and Documents*, i, pp. 273-4), is far more likely to have been some district in the part of China then under their control than remote regions in the west; and, in fact, the Ge-sar story is specially popular in eastern Tibet.<sup>1</sup> The event decidedly recalls the history (p. 24) of the Sha-t'o Turks transported by the Tibetans to Kan-chou after the conquest of Pei-t'ing in A.D. 790. But certainly there were other Man peoples within their immediate horizon: the south-eastern boundary of the Ch'iang of the Women's Kingdom approached Ya-chou, being separated from that place 'by the Lonü Man and the Pailang tribe' (Bushell, p. 531 (42)); and to the south of Ya-chou was the kingdom of the Nan-chao Man, including the town of Ning-yüan-fu in southernmost Ssü-ch'uan and Tali-fu in Yün-nan; which kingdom in the first half of the eighth century A.D. conquered the adjoining Man tribes and, becoming conterminous with the Tibetans, fought against and afterwards submitted to them (*ibid.*, p. 531 (41)).

There may have been other Man tribes farther north and actually within the Rgyal-roñ. For the 'Kretschiu', whose domain lies between the state of So-mo and Sung-p'an, are said (Tafel, ii, p. 248 n.) to have a dialect of the Rgyal-roñ language unintelligible to the rest of the population and to differ in clothing and other matters from their neighbours, with whom they are constantly at strife. 'Their country is a poor mountain region, greatly overpopulated in proportion to its productivity. Every year the inhabitants resort to the surrounding districts as manual workers,

<sup>1</sup> See Rockhill, *Diary*, pp. 130, 165; Baber, *op. cit.*, pp. 88-9; Tafel, ii, pp. 110, 158-9, 169, 246.



especially as masons and carpenters.' To their north are the Bo-lo-tse, by the Tibetans called 'Kredyan', who again differ, and of whom Dr. Tafel gives a description, holding that linguistically they appertain to the wild peoples of the Chinese border, and the Tibetan speech family.

The Ya-chou region is part of the area where are seen the towers, described and illustrated by many travellers, which we have already (p. 150) connected with the phrase 'Moñ-fort'. The towers are by tradition associated (like the excavated caves in the same regions) with the Man-tzū people, and that they are an ancient feature of the country cannot be doubted, since the *Later Han Annals* inform us (Wylie, pp. 241-2) that the barbarian inhabitants built houses of stone, the tallest being over 100 feet high.

A linguistic interest attaches to the possibility of a Man = Mon influence upon the people of the Rgyal-roñ. From a Tibeto-Burman Mon language the Rgyal-roñ and other Hsi-fan dialects may have derived the accretion of syllabic Prefixes which differentiates those dialects (see *supra*, pp. 95-7), but especially those of the Rgyal-roñ, and the source of which is mysterious. In applying the term *Mon* to the Mishmis and other tribes situated north of Assam the Tibetans are not likely to be mistaken; and the Man of the Sino-Tibetan border in southern Ssü-ch'uan and northern Yün-nan can hardly, if akin to those tribes, have failed to possess syllabic Prefixes in their language. One of the Rgyal-roñ Prefixes, namely *ka*, prefixed to adjectives, is so, in fact, employed in Abor-Miri, Daflā, and Mishmi, as well as in Kachin and other groups of Tibeto-Burman (*Linguistic Survey of India*, III. i, pp. 589, 619). A borrowing of the Prefixes would evade the paradox of a special preservation of them in the Rgyal-roñ ages after others, regarded as analogous and not more ancient, had been reduced in the same dialects to vestigial consonants.

In the Nam text the 'Moñ-fort' appears not merely by way of casual reference, but as a central feature. The passages

- 'Heat being great, the Moñ-fort was lost' (78, 139)
- 'The horse yielding place, the Moñ-fort was lost' (139)
- 'The horse *hgam* being made, the Moñ-fort was lost' (118)
- 'Low Town becoming high, the Moñ-fort lost . . .' (128)
- 'Low Town becoming high, the black-back flourished' (135)

give joint prominence to the successive stages of one event, namely, world-cataclysm and city-conflagration, flight of the chief-

tain to a settlement in the steppes and rise of the plebs of the Low Town. The antithesis of 'High Town' (*mtho-mkhar*) and 'Low Town' (*dmañ-mkhar*) appears in 'the Tibetan manuscripts', where we read also of building the 'upper town' (*rlan-mkhar*) aloft, aloft', the upper mansion (*rla-khyim*) and courtyard (*phyugs-ra*), and the upper path zig-zag (*rla-lam-sgya-sgyo*), i.e. the winding ascent to the castle; and the situation persists in modern Tibet, where the monasteries, and, of course, the forts (*rdzon*), commonly occupy elevations towering over the residential town. The heaven paradise (*gnam*) was conceived on the same lines, having the 'castle eminent' (*rdzan-stod*) at its summit and pastoral districts, with the stars for cattle, in the vales. The fabulistic beings, horse, yak, &c., of the Nam text formed a similarly constituted state. In one of the Tibetan manuscripts the horse's descent from the upper (*gnam*), through the lower (*dguñ*), heaven, the horse-yak tragedy, and the entry of the horse into the service of man are the chief theme. In both cases a secondary purpose of the tales, as parables, is partly explicit.

We may be interested to inquire how the Nam text and kindred Tibetan material came to be transmitted, in both cases, as we have seen, orally, to the Tibetan religious world in Śa-cu. It might not be an incredible supposition that in a place which during four or five centuries had been a literary centre, of whose many-sided activity we have now so abundant manuscript remains, there should have been an 'enlightened interest' in the folk-lore of the Nam-Tig people. But another extensive manuscript, already mentioned, which has a predominantly religious (Bon-po) character, may indicate that among the numerous shrines in Śa-cu there were some with Bon-po rather than Buddhist interests;<sup>1</sup> and it may be remembered that Taoist literature is largely represented in the mass of the Chinese manuscripts. Hence it may be that the sacred lore of the Nam-Tig, which is at any rate faintly Bon-po, had a religious value in the minds of some community in Śa-cu.

As to the communicating medium we may detect an indication in the Nam text itself. After the Tibetan interpolation in l. 180 the text continues:

rbyo-po-nañ-gsañ-hśeg-ḥlab-dze-rbyo-hpro-hro-grtehe-hta-stel-re-ḥlab-ta-gboḥu-ste-ge-ḥthogs-re-ḥlab-ge-plaṇna.

<sup>1</sup> The divinity *Hśes-ḥbeg* (*supra*, pp. 138, 142) may have been a Bon, if not pre-Bon, conception.



Here the first words may mean

'the *rybo*-man speaking of coming on the morrow (*nañ*, or "within") secretly (*gsaṅ*, or is *nañ-gsaṅ* simply = Tibetan *sañ-nañ*, "morrow morning" ?)';

and the next phrase,

*rybo-hpro-hro-grteḥ-hṭa-stel-re*,

will mean

'consenting to (*stel-re*) the fixing (*grteḥ-hṭa*) of a place (*hro*) for continuing (*hṭ(h)ro*)',

since (1) *stel* may be = Tib. *ster* 'grant', e.g. in *nañ-du-hgro-ster*, 'consent to come inside'; (2) *grteḥ-hṭa*, with verb Suffix *ta*, is perhaps connected with Hsi-hsia *hrde*, *gdeh*, 'fix', 'establish', 'institute',<sup>1</sup> and will accordingly mean 'fixing', 'determining'; (3) *hpro* = Tibetan *hphro*, meaning 'going forward', 'continuing',<sup>2</sup> e.g. *hphro-blaṅs*, 'resumption of an unfinished work', *hphro-machad-pa*, 'continuation not interrupted'. The remainder is:

'talk (*hlab-ta*) gushing (*gboḥu-ste* = Tib. *hbo-ste*, cf. pp. 230-2, 313) being stopped (*hthogs-re* = Tib. *thogs-te*, cf. p. 301), talk *plaṅ* ("course", "substance" ?) (*as follows* ?)'.<sup>3</sup>

That a *rybo* or *rybo-po* is a person cannot be doubted; for we find the verse (ll. 102-3)

*rybo-sṅaṅ-ge-sṅaṅ-na-rgoṅ-ru-ge-hru*,

which must mean

'if the heart (or affection)<sup>4</sup> of a *rybo* is a heart, then the horn (= end) of an egg is a horn',

the 'horns' of an egg (Tib. *sgoṅ-ru*) being its 'ends'; and an egg in eastern Tibet is commonly compared to a head, as we may learn from the riddle reported by Dr. Tafel (*Meine Tibetreise*, ii, p. 337): 'Even at birth it has a white head. What is that?' (an egg). Elsewhere also (ll. 82, 102) the *rybo* receives the same compliment. What *rybo* may mean etymologically we are not yet in a position to suggest, the possibilities being too numerous and complex, and the other occurrences of the word furnishing no definite indications; but see p. 333. Substantially a '*rybo*-man' may conceivably have been a *Bon-po*, a 'Bon-man', in which case his functioning in the matter would need no further explanation.

<sup>1</sup> Nevsky, No. 25.

<sup>2</sup> In ll. 245-6 it is antithetical to *hlad*, 'retaliate'.

<sup>3</sup> On *sṅaṅ* = *sṅiṅ* or *sṅan* see *infra*, p. 367.

The concluding phrase, *hlab-ge-plaṅna*, if it means, as suggested *infra* (pp. 241-2), 'as to the street (*sc.* the general course, in contrast to the previous "gushing") of his talk', may be helpful as explaining the apparent disconnectedness of the sections in the latter part of the text, selections, perhaps, giving only the salient passages in the speaker's eloquence.

Stylistically the text is less naïve than might have been expected. Antithesis of word and phrase and parallelism of sentence, so characteristic of Tibetan folk-literature (*supra*, pp. 51-2), are frequently evident even upon mere inspection of the lines of verse as printed *infra*; see the passage quoted on p. 213. Towards the end of the manuscript occurs a series of more elaborate parallels, as in the two sentences:

śes-rtsig-moñ-ge-ḥtsaḥ-ḥraḥi-	ḥdza-ḥldaḥi-ḥne-ge-tsaḥ-rgye-
ḥweḥi-ḥrtaḥ-ge	ḥrdza-na
ḥrtsig-moñ-ḥkuñ-na	ḥdzaḥ-ḥldaḥ-ḥkuñ-na
rtsig-moñ-ḥsad-na	ḥdza-ldaḥ-ḥsad-na
tsig-moñ-we-ge-ḥtsaḥ-ḥpu-	ḥdzaḥ-ḥldaḥ-ḥweḥi-ge-ḥtsaḥ-
ḥloḥo	rgye-ḥlo

Intentional rhyme may be seen, e.g. in

ḥstor-moñ-ḥdzoñ-re-ḥtsa-ḥdzo-ḥkrom  
 gsu-prom-ḥno[-]r[e]-ḥtsaḥ-ḥpu-ḥdrom || (ll. 64-5)

and inversion of antithetic predicates (*ḥrgom* and *ḥrgam*) in

ḥrgom-ḥkhru[-]r[e]-ḥto-na-ḥpeḥi-ḥrgam-re-ḥto (l. 169)

Finally there are instances (see *infra*, pp. 269, 285, 304) of play upon words, e.g. on *ḥdro*, 'go', and *ḥdro*, 'heat', in

ḥphu-ḥphu-mu[-]r[e]-ḥdzu-ḥdro-ḥkus (l. 352)

'his blowings [boastings] being chill, the ass desired to go (heat)',

which pun recurs in ll. 170-1.

So far we have been guided partly by comparison with adequately comprehensible texts in a known language, the Tibetan, and partly by etymological considerations in connexion with Tibetan words. In this procedure, which may perhaps seem to have yielded some plausible results, it is presumed that the Nam language was at a stage comparable to that of the earliest Tibetan popular speech, especially as found in texts from the east and north-east. This presumption has been to some extent justified *supra* (pp. 109-110). But it does not follow that quite normally the similarly spelled words in the two languages can be provisionally



equated. As was so emphatically stated by B. H. Hodgson in his pioneer researches into Tibeto-Burman<sup>1</sup> and other languages, and as appears prominently in the late Dr. Laufer's very learned and ingenious study of Hsi-hsia words, there is generally a core of root-form and root-meaning connecting the parallel expressions in the several languages; but this nucleus may be so disguised by the play of Prefixes and Suffixes, and, according to Dr. Laufer, by composition of synonyms into a single monosyllable and by other processes, as to be discoverable only by procedures of analysis which, applied to languages known only in modern forms, may be hazardous. The Nam words are at least contemporaneous with the Tibetan; nevertheless a too great resemblance between a Nam monosyllable and a Tibetan one may be even suggestive of non-connexion, more especially since in the very extensive vocabulary of Tibetan we are always in danger of overlooking unfamiliar homonyms and variant spellings; and deception is all the more likely because equivalents for Nam words may perhaps tend to occur among the obscurer, because provincial or obsolete, entries of the lexicon.<sup>2</sup> It is therefore advisable to make citations, where possible, from the vocabulary of old texts or modern languages belonging to the region in question.

In some instances a suspicion, such as has been mentioned in *JRAS.* 1939, p. 212, in regard to the word *rdzogs* = Tibetan *rdzogs*, 'fulfilled', disappears upon reflection. The word seems to be a fairly complex form and accordingly open to such suspicion; but the *r*-Prefix is even more characteristic of the north-eastern dialects and of the Nam than of ordinary Tibetan; and the final *s* will be shown to be independently justified in both. Nevertheless the occurrence in the text of Tibetan words, either imported into the language or due to the scribe or editor, remains a possibility; but not on the same scale as in modern times, when, largely owing to Buddhist establishments and communications, the Tibetan language is nearly everywhere understood.<sup>3</sup>

The help obtainable from the Tibetan texts to which reference has been made consists mainly in the light which they throw upon the environment and the interests of the people from whom the

<sup>1</sup> *Op. cit.*, pp. 132-6, 150-1.

<sup>2</sup> There may also be in Tibetan many words originally borrowed from Ch'iang, either orally or through old Tibetan texts originated in the local monasteries.

<sup>3</sup> See *supra*, p. 87, n. 1.

Nam composition emanated. We see that there was oral literature of the Purāṇic kind which has been mentioned, framed on the notion of an age of bliss and harmony of species, followed by a world-cataclysm leading to division and strife. There were fables relating probably to the origins of tribes, and in some cases continuations into actual historical matters. The enmities among animals, of which the most prominent, that between horse and yak, is a main subject in the Nam text and in one of the Tibetan texts, may also have partly an inter-tribal or inter-regional bearing. The predominance of the animal world is, in another way, a hindrance, since it restricts the information which might have been available concerning the livelihood and manners of human beings; probably also it greatly restricts the vocabulary.

In regard also to the form of the composition, mainly verse, and the style and turns of expression and some particular ideas, the Tibetan texts are somewhat helpful. They prepare us for interweaving of prose and verse and for the rhetorical devices of parallelism and antithesis, also for great curtness of statement; even in the Tibetan texts there may be a gap between the understanding of the words of a sentence and the apprehension of its meaning, the syntactical apparatus being inadequate. In respect of vocabulary the *prima facie* assistance of the Tibetan is meagre, and it is only here and there that we can pick out a more or less similar Tibetan word whose meaning fits a context; and, as in Tibetan itself, the frequency of homophones prevents any confident expectation that, when we next meet the word, it will have the same meaning. The inadequacy of other means of ascertaining the significations of the shifty monosyllables has been discussed *supra*; and we seem to be dependent in the main upon context, acquired familiarity, and lucky intuitions, confirmable *a posteriori*, until a wide breach in the obscurity of the text shall have prepared us for a more rapid advance.

So far as the matter has at present proceeded it may be helpful to risk a tentative abstract of the content of the text, as follows:

#### ABSTRACT OF TEXT

*(Provisional and partly conjectural)*

##### I. LINES 1-247 (end of a Chapter, *hkon*).

1. *Lines 1-166*: (beginning fragmentary). The cosmic cataclysm and its effects.



Lines 1-16: Effects in the physical world, mountains up-lifted, &c.; controlled by *Hśes-hbeg*, ll. 7-8; opposition of *mor* and *hyañ* (evil and good), ll. 9-10.

Lines 16-19: Some effects among living creatures.

Lines 19-29: Continuation of 1-16.

Lines 29-49: Account of *hgru-hldañ-hmah*; disunion among the horse's friends, ll. 35-6; reflections upon evils and their consequences.

Lines 49-61: Disadvantages of greatness.

Lines 62-71: *Hgru-hldañ-hmah*: discontent after the loss of the *Moñ*-castle; rejected helpers become opponents, and wish to retire to their own abodes; different creatures have their several appropriate dwelling-places.

Lines 71-80: Waning fortune brings feebleness, has moon-light in place of sunlight, and the fallen are replaced. The horse, when the *hgru-ma* is lost, takes to flight.

Lines 80-100: The horse's family not displeased to be rid of a superior. The horse's friends are disaffected; disunion arises and works against friendship; forgetfulness of harm from outside encourages cleavage within. The horse's friends forget the horse's merits.

Friendship is a thing that comes and goes. Disunion gradually works its way in, causing downfall of prosperity and finally of the feminine side.

Lines 100-164: Speech of the camel in the horse's family concerning the evils of disunion (101-3), the advantage of taking counsel (104-6), the necessity of protecting the horse's feminine household, like sheep from wolves (106-11), the importance of uprightness and the danger of delay and the reasons for urgency, the ruin of the family to follow the already accomplished loss of the *Moñ*-castle (111-19).

Verses concerning friendship (120-4), uprightness (124-7). The rise of the black-back (yak) and the necessity of assembling friends to suppress him (127-36). The occasion calls for action on the part of the males; when those in flight join together, the aggressors flee (137-40). Other reflections concerning flight (140-4). What happens in the case of flight in battle (144-9) and of stopping flight (149-52). Individual initiative; enmity and friendship dissolved by death; triumph and victorious return home

(152-8). Bad beginnings lead to failure (158-60). The classes of creatures which will be put to flight (160-4).

Lines 164-80: With the horse as watchman the Big Man is master of the land, which is protected against thieves; &c. Boundaries of the land ordained. The land returns after the earthquake to its proper position. The horse's fugitive friends return.

Possession and deprival of the faculty of speech in the case of some classes of creatures.

Line 180: In Tibetan: 'From then [kinds and] descents [of species] came: this is stated as secret.'

Lines 181-2: Statement concerning the speaker (*rybo-po*)'s narrative.

*Lines 182-end: Selections from an oral recitation.*

Lines 182-4: Brief account of restoration of order.

Lines 184-222: Consideration of the danger from the yak; the danger on the side of the females, ll. 188-90; proposed abandonment of the city for another home, ll. 190-7; concerning burial and ancestral tombs, ll. 197-211; proposal to depart to the *hgam* in the *than* and, uniting together, to organize a chase of the yak, ll. 211-22.

Lines 222-49: Passionate appeal for an expedition of vengeance against the yak and the *hcha*.

End of Chapter.

II. LINES 249-53: Brief statement concerning the defeat of the yak and general satisfaction.

Lines 253-85: Long description of the happy circumstances of restored peace.

Lines 285-301: The social order, the wise, good, &c., in authority, the evil fled, the nobles in authority, the commons subservient, ll. 285-9; the Big Man and his subjects on the watch-mountain.

Lines 301-13: Classes of creatures, good and bad, on the mountain.

Lines 313-25: Reflections concerning relation of classes, supervision, and contact with inferiors.

Lines 325-44: General reflections upon what has taken place and concerning *rgyo* (329-36).

Lines 344-52: Proverbial sayings concerning government.

Lines 352-7: Summary concerning happy conditions restored.



Lines 358-68: Concerning profit (? *kehu*-prom) and friendship.

Lines 368-97: Future prosperity and agreement of friends and enemies: mention of braves and their deeds (377-8), the dead (enemies ?) (378), the 'wise Moñ carpenters' (379-81), females (381-2), makers of friendship (382-3), the 'good lieges' (383-4), the fiends in their dark cavities beneath the mountains sunk down again (384-5). Distinction of highland and lowland (385-7).

Final reflections (387-98).

(*Fragmentary termination*)

NOTE. The Berlin fragment, from Turfan, published by the late Professor A. H. Francke (Berlin Academy *Sitzungsberichte*, 1927, pp. 124 sqq.), facsimile with a for the most part acceptable transliteration, was attributed to an 'unknown language' and from the occurrence of some terms explicable from Tibetan regarded as of medical tenour. In the JRAS. of 1928 (pp. 633-4) it was pointed out that the language is in fact the 'Nam' of the present text: and subsequently (1939, pp. 196-8) the proof was reinforced, and Professor Francke's etymologies, though favourably viewed, were found to be, by reason of some other expressions, inconclusive as to the character of the whole. Those other expressions seemed to point to an account of the decline of the Good Age, and it appears possible that the diseases identified by Francke are mentioned as operant in that decline: the MS. will then have contained a variant, no doubt widely different, 'rhapsody' on the theme of our text. This, however, though possibly provable, lacks present confirmation.

#### IV. THE LANGUAGE: GRAMMAR

IN the investigation of the language it seems appropriate, since observations in detail may be illusory, to commence with its general morphological features. The script and punctuation enable us to ascertain both the forms of the words and the structure of the sentences, with which two matters we may accordingly begin.

##### A. WORD-FORMS

The words of the Nam language are, if we disregard one or two classes of apparent exceptions, all monosyllabic. They all begin with a consonant or a group of consonants. In the groups there are some consonants which by their alternating presence and absence are proved to be Prefixes analogous to those of the Tibetan language, the basic identity of a word with and without a Prefix being established by similarity of occurrence. The Prefixes so disclosed are *h*, *g*, *d*, *b*, *r*, *l*, *s*, and perhaps *m*, these being also the regular Prefixes known in Tibetan. Examples:

1. *h*-, which has been discussed *supra*, pp. 118-20, both in general and with regard to alternation with *g*-, need not be further exemplified, since, as occurring very widely and capriciously, it cannot be credited with a function.

2. *g*-, as alternating with *h*-, has been exemplified (p. 118-19) in *gñi*, *gdim*, *gldag*, *gnag*, *gpha*, *gmog*, *g-yo*, *g-rah*, *g-ri*. We may here add:

gkom, 222 (swa° °re) = hkom, 175 (swa° °re)

gcig, 356 (ste-he-hdzu-ge) = cig, 194 (ste-gdzu-ge)

gcihi, 346 = hei/heihi, 205, 301, 348, 350

gcog, 69

gcheg, 111, 234 (gceg) = hceg, 250

gñi, 80

gñim, 12

gtañ, 186 = htañ, 96

gtoñ, 211 (hgo°) = htoñ, 212 (hko)

gstor, 143 (°htor), 152 (°ta) = stor, 118, &c. (°hdor), 145, &c.  
(°ta)

grtehe, 181 = hrtehu, 265 (?)

gdañ, 191 = hdañ, 108

gdag, 200, 204, 206 = hdag, 259, 260, 261

gdes, 260



- gdod, 186  
 gnah, 179, &c. (°goñ, °hgoñ) = na, 358 (°hgon, °hgon)  
 gbohu, 181 = hbo, 263  
 gblañ, 265  
 gtsañ, 165 (hsah°) = httsañ, 378 (hsah°)  
 gtsu, 214 = httsu, 193, 304, httsuh, 166, 303 = htshu, 75,  
 76, 215, tshu, 206  
 gtsob, 351, 352  
 g-wah/hgwah, 224, 229 (°hrsñ) = hwa, 228 (°hrsñ) =  
 hwah, 224 (°hrsñ)  
 { g-we, 197, &c. = hwe, 85, &c., we, 114, &c.  
 { g-wehi, 199, 263 = hwehi, 22, &c., 139, &c.  
 { g-wehe, 201, &c. = hwehe, 348  
 { g-wer, 164, 301 = hwer, 19  
 gzu, 307, &c. (°hbyi) = gdzu, 305, &c. (°hbyi)  
 gzu, 353 (°hdro) = hdzu, 183, 352 (°hdro)  
 gzo, 165 = hdzoh, 362  
 g-yah, 287 (°hthañ) = hyah, 285, &c. (°hthañ)  
 g-yañ, 31 (°ra) = hyañ, 66, 226 (°hrah)  
 g-yehi, 271, g-yeh, 166 = hgyehi, 209 (?)  
 g-yer, 167 (hscah°), 330 (hsah°) = yer, 141 (hsah°) = hyer,  
 267 (hsah°), 297 (hscah°)  
 g-yog, 15, 51, 200, 320  
 g-yog, 156 = hyog, 289, 324, &c.  
 g-rub, 261 = hrub, 108, 349  
 g-roñ, 71  
 glab, 180 = hlab, 180, &c.  
 glo, 116 (pu°) = hlo, 135 (pu°)  
 gsañ, 30, 263, &c. = hsañ, 81, 199, 255, &c.  
 gśi, 44, 244 (śes°, hśes°) = hśi, 44, 245 (śes°, hśes°)  
 gśim, 268  
 gśe, 49 (°hdzro-hñah) = hśehe, 369 (°rdzor-hñah)  
 gśeg, 381 (°gśer) = hśeg, 330 (°gśegra)  
 gśog, 7, 20 = hśog, 8, 20  
 gsah, 276, 333 = hsah, 165, 166, &c.  
 gsañ, 228 (°hrah) = hsañ, 226 (°hrah)  
 gsar, 204 = hsar, 255  
 gsas, 262 = hsas, 59, 116, &c.  
 gsu/gsus, 64, 99 (°slo) = hsus, 93 (°slo)  
 gse, 327 (°hko-hgyan) = hsehi, 325 (°hko-hgyan) = hsehe,  
 327 (°hkho-ho-hgyan)

gsen, 349

gso, 151, 193, 194

gsohu, 358 = hso, 201

gsom, 23, 178, 206, &c.

gsom, 10, 117, &c. (?)

There are also forms with *gw-* (*hgweg*), *gy-* (*hgyud*, *hgyeb*, *gyim*, &c.), *gr-* (*gras*, *hgru*, *gre*, *hgro*, &c.), *gl-* (*gla*, *hglu*, *glehu*, *glog*, &c.), in which the *g* is not a Prefix.

### 3. *d-*:

dgu, 75, 77, 225, &c. = dguhu, 236, 244

dgu, 127 = hgu, 126

ddyim, 95 (°pyi) = gdim, 88, &c. (°pyi, °phyi) = dim, 95 = hdim, 88.

4. *b-*: For a list of *b*-forms in the Verb system see p. 194: and concerning the remaining three, *bžir*, *bžer*, *bžod* see *infra*.

5. *m-*: *mñar*, 261 (*myag* 39 &c. may not contain *m*-Prefix).

6. *r-*: List and discussion pp. 347-52.

7. *l-*: *lgyoħo*, 11, *lpyoħo*, 22. The numerous words with *ld-*, *ldy-*, may not contain *l*-Prefix: see pp. 317 sqq., 353-4.

8. *s-*: See pp. 354 sqq., list and discussion.

In the manipulation of the Prefixes and in the resultant word-forms there is a general resemblance to Tibetan. But a further examination elicits certain differences.

In the first place, *d-* and *m-* are so scantily represented that they can scarcely be said to exist in the Nam language. The former occurs in only three words, namely the somewhat frequent *dgu*, 'hot', usually antithetical to *mu*, 'cold', another *dgu/hgu* probably = '9' (Tib. *dgu*), and *ddyim*, a casual variant of *dim/gdim/hdim*. *M-* is apparent only in *mñar* (a single instance) and possibly in *myag*, 'spoiled', 'corrupted', the former being perhaps Locative of a *mñah* = Tib. *mñah*, 'power', &c., and the latter, also Tibetan, having an *m-* which need not be a Prefix. Since *dgu*, 'hot', also is found in 'the Tibetan manuscripts' and *ddyim* may be a scribal error, the four actual words may be merely Tibetan writings.

*G* frequently alternating with *h-*, reminds us of regular alternations, e.g. *gcad/hcad* in the Tibetan verb-system, where irregularities have ensued. In Nam the fluctuations extend to cases like *gpha/hpha* (Tib. *pha*), 'father', where there can be no question of functional difference, actual or original. Hence it must be that



*g-* and *h-* were phonetically indistinguishable when Prefixed to initial consonants, which implies that the *g-* had become a mere nasalization. Trace of an original difference may perhaps be seen in *hdzoho/gzo*, 'eat', because a change *dz > z* may have taken place, as in Tibetan, after *g-* (and *b-*), but not after *h-* (or *l-*); but in the case of *gdzu/gzu/hdzu/hzu/hju*, 'ass', even this trace is lost. There are also outside the verb-system instances of *g-* alternating with absence of Prefix, e.g. *gnag/nag*, 'black', *gnah/na*, 'place', *g-rah/ra*, 'place'; but, since *h-* occurs with these words also, the case is not different from that of the alternation *g-/h-*.

In these circumstances the question of a functional *g-* in the verb-system becomes difficult: it may be considered *infra* (pp. 196-7).

*B-*, except in the tense-system (*infra*, p. 194), occurs only in the three words, *bžir*, 'true', 'wise' (?), *bžer*, 'fort' (?), *bžod*, 'bear' (verb), of which the first and third are ἀπαξ εἰρημένα, the second and third Tibetan: *bžir* is possibly = Hsi-hsia *gžir*, 'wise' (Nevsky, No. 281). In view of the rarity of *ž* and *z* in Nam it seems likely that all three are loan-words.

*R-*, *l-*, *s-*, are discussed *infra*, pp. 347 sqq.

*L-*, except in the combinations *ld-*, *ldy-* (pp. 317 sqq., 324 sqq.), where it is probably not a Prefix, has few examples, which seem, however, to be genuine. *R-* and *s-* are common, and instances are found both where the Tibetan has an equivalent, or at least some Prefix, and where it has not: and this raises a question as to a surviving functional value of the *r-* and *s-* in the two languages, where they seem to have become for the most part merely lexical. Cases like *rgu/hgu*, 'steal' (Tib. *rku*, *lku*), *rgyen* = Tib. *g-yen*, 'uphill', *smyi/myi*, 'man' (Tib. *mi*, *myi*) do not seem explicable through the verb-system, but have parallels in the Hsi-fan dialects, e.g. in the case of a *rbya*, 'bird' (*supra*, p. 94). They may be due to particular analogies or to an incipient feeling of classification, observed, for instance, by Dr. Laufer (*Toung-pao*, xv (1914), pp. 108-9) in connexion with *m-* and with the *l-* of some Tibetan names for parts of the body. Of the syllabic Prefixes of Hsi-fan (*supra*, pp. 95-7) there is in Nam no trace.

The phonetical restrictions in the application of the Prefixes may best be shown in a table affording a comparison with Tibetan, Žaṅ-žun, and Hsi-hsia (in Tibetan transcription): see Appendix to this chapter, pp. 206-11 sqq.

Disregarding Prefixes, which probably were felt as distinct, even

when not clearly used as functional, the initial consonants and consonant groups in the Nam language are as follows:

I	II
<i>Without following consonant</i>	<i>With following consonant</i>
k	kw, ky, kr, kl
kh	khw, khy, khr
g	gw, gy, gr, gl, gly
ñ	ñy (?)
c, ch, j, ñ	
t	tw, ty, tr
th	thw, thy, thr
d	dw, dy, dr
n	
p	pw, py, pr, pl
ph	phy, phr, phl
b	by, br, bl
m	my (before a, i, and e)
ts	tsw
tsh	
dz	dzw
w	
ž (3 words only)	
z (a few words) confused with dz (?)	
h	
y	
r	rw, rl
l	lt, ld, ldy, (g)ly
ś	
s	sw, sr, sl, sk, sky, skh, sc, sñ, st, sp, spy, sby, sm, smy, sts, sś (partly with s-Prefix ?)
h (?)	

The cases with a single consonant call for little comment. It has been remarked (p. 114) that the rarity of ž and z suggests that the sounds did not properly belong to the language. The only words with ž are

bžir, bžer, ržan

of which bžir is possibly Hsi-hsia and bžer, 'fort' ('mart'?, 'magazine'?), is common in old Tibetan names, while ržan may (but



see p. 352) be a casual variant of *rśaṅ*, *hrśaṅ*. In the Berlin manuscript we find also *že* (ll. 2, 3), perhaps a similar variant of *je*, which occurs (l. 10) in the same connexion. Nam *z* occurs in

*hzaḥ*, *hzu*, and *gzu* (with variants *hju*, *gdzu*, and *hdzu*), *gzo*, *bzod*, (*g*)*bzaṅ* (?)

Since none of these, except *gzu* (2) and *hzu* (2), has more than a single occurrence, and since *gzo*, *bzod*, and *bzaṅ* all exist as Tibetan words, it is likely *a priori* that, if not scribal errors, all the words are borrowed.<sup>1</sup> *H* initial occurs, except as a Prefix, only in the particle *hi*.

The combinations of *w*, *y*, *r*, *l* with preceding *tenuis* (*k*, &c.), aspirate (*kh*, &c.), and *media* (*g*, &c.) are common to Tibetan, Nam, *Žaṅ-žuṅ*, and in part to old Burmese, and must be regarded as a feature of all early Tibeto-Burman speech (see *supra*, pp. 62-3). The Nam differs notably from Tibetan in presenting *y* after dental sounds, *t*, *th*, *d*, *l* (*gl*), being supported, as regards *thy* by Hsi-hsia, and as regards *dy* by *Žaṅ-žuṅ*. The combinations *pw* and *dzw* are peculiar to Nam:<sup>2</sup> *pl* and *phl* it shares with *Žaṅ-žuṅ*, the first of the two also with Central-Asian Tibetan (*plan*) and some Hsi-fan dialects (rare).

In Tibetan the writing *g-y* serves to distinguish cases where the *g* is a Prefix from those, written *gy*, where the *g* belongs to the root; and the distinction is usually confirmed by the other evidence. The Nam follows the same procedure in connexion with *w* and *r* also, writing *g-w* and *g-r* where the *g* is a Prefix (*infra*, pp. 336-7). The usage has not been extended, as it might have been, to *l*;<sup>3</sup> and so we find *glab* written where *g-lab* would certainly have been correct. It is therefore possible both in Nam and in Tibetan that some apparent roots commencing with *gl* may contain an originally Prefixed *g*; and this is certainly the case with Nam *glan*, Tibetan *glan*, connected with the root *lan*, *len*. Analogously the *b* in *br*, *bl*, *by*, and possibly even a *d* in *dr*, *dy*, may in some cases once have been a Prefix; and this again is exemplified in Tibetan *blan*, *blan̄s*. Similarly, in words commencing with *sk*, *st*, *sp*, *sb*, *sm*, *sts*, the *s* may once have been Prefixal; and in some words, e.g. *spo* (cf. *hpho*), *stu*, *sdu* (cf. *hdu*, *hthu*), that is certain.

<sup>1</sup> The Berlin fragment has, however, *zor* (ll. 2, 7), which again may be Tibetan. On *hzu*, *gzu*, see *infra*, pp. 251-2 sqq., and on *z* generally pp. 334-6 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> On *w* in Nam see pp. 336 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> In Hsi-hsia (Nevsky, Nos. 239, 246) *g-liḥ* occurs (as a variant of *gli*, *liḥ*, *li*); also *b-liḥ*.

This is a matter which could be discussed only in detail and need be discussed only when and where, if anywhere, it assumes a significance: there are some adverbial words or formatives, Tibetan *ste*, *sto*, Nam *sta*, *ste*, *sto*, in which the *s* cannot have been a Prefix.<sup>1</sup> We have noted *supra* certain combinations not to be found in Nam, whether represented, as in Tibetan, by a compound alphabetic sign, or otherwise.

The final consonants and consonant-groups are as in normal Tibetan, namely:

g, ṅ, d, n, b, m, ḥ, r, l, s  
gs, ṅs, bs, ms (with the addition of rs)

and *h* sometimes (as in Tibetan manuscripts) precedes a final consonant. There is no occurrence of the *drag*, i.e. *d* in the combinations

nd, rd, ld.

In principle all the vowels, viz.

a, i, u, e, o

occur impartially after all consonants, except that (*a*) after the labials *p*, *ph*, *b*, *m*, and after *k*, *kh*, *g*, *ṅ*, we seem always to have *yi*, never *i*, after *m* sometimes (*mye*) *ye* for *e*; (*b*) *cu*, *ṅu*, *wu*, *lu* are, perhaps accidentally (since *chu* and *ju* occur), wanting; (*c*) *zu*, *zo*, *zi*, *ze*, also are wanting, which, in view of the rarity, and probable foreign origin, of the *z* and *z*, seems to have no significance: once or twice *nye* is written in place of *ñe*.

All the vowels occur as finals, in which position they very frequently have a prolonged or drawling pronunciation, indicated by writings of the type *aḥa*, *iḥi*, &c., concerning which see *supra*, pp. 123-4. Once the lengthened pronunciation occurs in the interior of a word, *rgyohon* = *rgyon* (l. 336); and this fact may be not entirely negligible, since a contemporary Tibetan manuscript from the same region has once *byohos* in place of *byos* while another has *so-ho* for *so*; but, on the other hand, the *rgyohon*, for *rgyon*, is in a context which contains what is evidently the same verb in the forms *rgyo* and *rgyoho*.

Apparent diphthongs are classified and discussed in the above-cited article (pp. 201-6), where it is shown that *ehu* and *ohu* are real and somewhat frequent.<sup>2</sup> The case of *aḥi* (*rtahī*, *hpahī*, *pahī*), *uḥi* (*hruḥi* *hphuḥi*, *hpuḥi*, *hmuḥi*), *oḥi* (*hkoḥi*), and perhaps also those of *eḥi* (frequency), require further consideration with regard

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 182-3, 185, 201.

<sup>2</sup> See *infra*, pp. 368-9.



to Syntax (pp. 176-7, 190-1). There is no real example of a diphthong in a word ending in a consonant.

Manifestly the above-noted morphological features place the Nam language upon the general level of the written, i.e. the old, Tibetan, and separate it definitely from the Hsi-hsia and from the modern Tibeto-Burman dialects of the Tibeto-Chinese border.

In the script there are numerous apparent disyllables, ending in *o*, *hi*, *na*, *ni*, *ra*, and occurring for the most part at the end of sentences. The cases belong evidently to the morphology of the sentence, and will be considered under that head. Numerous instances of *-r* appended to forms ending in vowels or *h*, e.g. *h̄rar/h̄rah*, *h̄nor/h̄no*, are likewise evidently syntactical.

## B. MORPHOLOGY OF THE SENTENCE

THAT normally the verb is the last word in the sentence, as in Tibetan, is proved by the fact that most of the words with final *s* are found only at the end of a sentence or—what is usually equivalent—of a line or of both, and some of the residue also are restricted to an equivalent position. A full list will be given in connexion with the verb (*infra*, pp. 197-8), but, in order to carry the conviction with us, we may here note one or two cases where we have also in the text a corresponding *s*-less form :

h̄ldyañ-h̄jo-h̄kromni, 389, v. h̄ldyañ-h̄yu-h̄jo-cig-dze-htor-ge-h̄kroms, 387

h̄rño-htoñu-re-h̄gyaṅ ||, 7, v. sm̄yi-nu-h̄gyaṅs, 241

h̄lab-ma(me)-h̄ñi, 67, v. h̄lab-me-h̄ñis ||, 70

ldyo-stor-h̄thu-re, 140, v. h̄jim-ta-h̄thusni, 156

stor-ta-h̄thogni, 149, v. stor-ta-h̄thogs ||, 145

thor-h̄broñ-tshor-na, 220, v. h̄tor-h̄broñ-htsors, 219, h̄ldag-nag-htshors, 130

śes-h̄śi-breḥe, 44, v. keḥu-prom-h̄bres, 176

h̄koñu-h̄prom, 169, v. h̄tor-htas-h̄proms, 121-2.

These *s*-forms can be nothing else than *s*-Preterites, such as are common in Tibetan.

The words found at the ends of sentences or lines are in general, therefore, presumably verbs. But naturally there may sometimes be non-verbal predicates, e.g. Adjectives or Substantives, with omission, as in Latin and other languages, of the verb

'be'; and, furthermore, since the text is a verse composition, there may be inversions due to poetic style. Thus in

stor-moñ-ḥdzoñ, 139

we already know that *moñ-ḥdzoñ* means 'Moñ-fort (or castle)', and *stor* is a rather commonly occurring verb, certainly equivalent to Tibetan *stor* 'stray', 'be lost', and the sense is

'was lost the Moñ-castle'.

It was to be expected that an auxiliary should follow the verb to which it belongs; and this is to be seen in

ḥño-ḥkhob-ḥprom, 322 'face-cover-do', ḥño-stor-ḥprom ||,  
128, 'friends-scatter-do', stor-rño, 141, 'scatter-can'.

In some of the above examples we see after the verb the syllables *ni*, *na*. These are Particles, the use of which will be considered *infra*.

That the subject should come first is, in view of the shortness of many of the sentences, an obvious consequence; and we have had it exemplified in *gtsaṅ-myi-ḥrgan* (l. 160), 'the corn does not mature', and other sentences. Since we know further that *śid* means 'high', it appears from

ḥśid-ḥriḥi-ḥthor-dze, 62

where *ḥriḥi* must be = Tibetan *ri* 'mountain', that the Adjective may precede the Substantive: from *ḥldi-rgyed-ḥrah*, 'this place of division', it appears both that a Pronoun and that a qualifying word—Noun of Action and so forth—may precede the substantive to which it belongs. But in

wam-ḥśid-dze, 11

since *dze* is a very common particle, we have the *ḥśid* following *wam*, and in the frequent *ḥrah-ḥldi*, 'this place' (at the beginning of verses in ll. 225, &c.) and in the antithetical line (ll. 132-3)

ḥbri-ḥldi-ḥthañ-re-ḥre-ḥldi-ḥyah

the Pronoun evidently follows its Noun. In ll. 57-60 there is a succession of verses beginning

-ḥce-rgye-dze

preceded by a varying monosyllable (a Noun). Since *dze* is familiar, *ḥce-rgye* must be an attribute, and it can hardly be anything but an equivalent of Tibetan *dbye-che*, 'extent-great', 'spacious', which in a contemporary text from north-eastern Tibet we find with a rather similar reiteration applied to certain mountain



regions. Here we see a composite attribute, 'great (*hce*)-extent' constructed on the lines of the Sanskrit *Bahu-vrihis* and following its Substantive. We may accordingly state that Pronouns and Adjectives may, as in Tibetan, Latin, &c., and perhaps with analogous variation of emphasis, either precede or follow their Substantive. That a simple Substantive in an attributive (Genitive) relation could follow the governing word is highly improbable and nowhere apparent. The contrary order is indicated by the above-noted phrase *rgyed-hrah* and many others, such as *g-ri-hruhu* (l. 21), 'mountain-horn' (peak), *hrdzo-hgyud*, 'mdzo-race', *Moñ-rdzoñ*, 'Moñ-castle'. Many other Case relations are similarly expressed merely by prefixing the subordinate term, e.g. *hnañ-hchos* (l. 159), 'spring-born'. An 'Accusative' of the Direct Object is not much required in Tibeto-Burman and other languages, which prefer a Passive form of expression and in which the verb is a sort of noun.<sup>1</sup> But it can be clearly recognized as preceding the verb in:

su-me-hmehi, 114, 'Who kindles a fire?'

hpu-ge-me-hmuhi, 183, 'The sons (?) cool the fire'

and derivatively in numerous compounds, such as:

rgyed-hdre, 87, 'division-inducing', hwm-wehi, 196, 'mansion-making',

and the same or other cases in:

gse-hlad, 240 &c., 'requital of injury'

rñe-hlad, 231, 'requital of wrong'

hkhah-hgro, 233, &c., 'home-going'.

So far we have not elicited anything concerning expressions of circumstance, time, place, condition, and reason, for which some provision must have been made in the structure of the sentence. And this gives prominence to the fact that in the verse of seven syllables the four syllables preceding the *caesura* constitute a separate section of the meaning of the sentence. If we take the following verses:

ši-hchos-re-ge-hpu-myi-ldin ||, 160

'Winter-born, a bird does not fly'

hkhu-tsa-šid-dze-hpha-hñur- hñur ||, 60

'When the uncle-people are high, the father groans'

<sup>1</sup> Thus *hño-khob-prom* (l. 322), *hño-hdañ-prom* (l. 258) may be rendered 'made a face-hiding', 'made a face-rest'.

rgam-hgañ-hkañ-hyañ-hrag-ma-hbog ||, 256

'Though the deep places were filled, the dykes were not fouled'

hjo-me-hdub-re-hla(b)-me-hñis ||, 70

'When the *hjo*-fire sinks, the *hlab*-fire shines out'

thañ-rdzo-hkyud-na-hbroñ-hdru-hjar, 220

'In the *mdzo*-race of the *thañ*-country the yak [is caught in the toils]'

we see that the last three syllables contain a complete proposition, while the first four introduce some circumstance of place or time or condition or specification. What gives importance to this observation is the fact that the monosyllables which occupy the fourth place in these verses, namely *ge*, *dze*, *hyañ*, *re*, *na*, occur with enormous frequency in the text, in that position. In the verses of eight and eleven syllables the case is similar, as is natural, since the former are the original of which the seven-syllable verse is a catalectic form and the latter have merely an additional clause of four syllables: an exception is noted *infra*, p. 188. In twelve-syllable verses we have three clauses of four syllables each: the eleven-syllable verse consists of 4+4+3. The nine-syllable verse has a different rhythm, and the Particles are apt to occur in the fifth place: examples on pp. 127-8.

These facts suffice to demonstrate a general or formal character in the four words and indicate that the groups ending with them are of the nature of subordinate clauses, such as in Tibetan are found ending in *cin*, *te* (*de*, *ste*), *yañ*, *na*, *nas*, *la*, *las*, and constituting Gerund-expressions. This is, doubtless, why, like the Gerund-clauses in the simple sentences of Tibetan, they occupy the first place, preceding the main sentence or at least the verb. The value and etymology of these several Particles, which we see to be in part identical with those of the Tibetan, will be considered *infra*. The clauses, for which we may give the general formula 'A being B', can be used to express not only attendant circumstances or conditions, but also mere note of time and place or other particulars: for example, 'on a dark night' may be expressed by 'the night being dark', and 'vengeance upon the stupid *mdzo*' by 'the *mdzo* being stupid, vengeance'.

Here we must take note of a matter, which, if unobserved, would be a permanent obstacle to the interpretation of the text and the etymology of the language: it is as follows:—There are in the text many verses where in the *caesura* position a syllable is



missing. The cases, to which attention is called in the critical notes, occur as follows:

(a) Cases where the third syllable ends in *r*:

Lines 7, 20 42, 43 (?), 48, 49, 65, 86-7, 99, 128, 130, 132, 143, 153, 163, 164, 166, 169, 171, 173 (2), 174, 183, 184, 186-7 (?), 188-9 (?), 190, 196, 197, 209, 216-17 (?), 219, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 237, 242-3, 243, 245, 246, 248, 254, 257-8, 285, 287, 289, 290, 292-3, 293, 296, 301, 303, 310-11, 312 (2), 315, 315-16, 317, 318, 319, 322, 326, 328, 331, 333-4, 337, 339, 339-40 (2), 341, 352, 353, 354-5, 358, 359, 362 (?), 365 (2), 366 (2), 392 (?).

(b) Other cases:

Lines 12, 14, 153, 193, 311-12, 319 (2).

The group (b) may be explained by a simple citation of one of the cases, ll. 193-4:

hñah-htsu-rpag-re-hñah-mo-hgam ||  
hñah-mo-hrpag-[re]-gso-nad-hgam  
gso-nad-rpag-re-hkah-hgañ-hjor.

No one would question that the parallelism in the three lines demands the insertion of *re* in the second of them. Quite similar are the cases in ll. 12 (insert *ge* or *dze*) and 14 (insert *ge*). The case of ll. 153-4 is slightly different, but has the advantage of illustrating also the group (a). We read:

myi-re-hti-ni-myi-[re]-hśi ||  
myi-rgye-myer(= mye-re)-hchos-hyo-hjo  
hti-rgye-mye-dze-hgye-hkrom-hkrom ||

In the first verse we are perhaps dealing with a different *re* = Tibetan *re*, 'each', 'a single', and the meaning may perhaps be: 'if each man singly stop, each man dies',

so that the bracketed *re* would be an appropriate insertion. In the second verse an alteration of *myer* to *mye-re* gives a required parallelism to the third, and also affords the valuable information that *mye-re* has approximately the same sense as *mye-dze*.<sup>1</sup> Now in group (a) there are three other instances of *myer* in the same situation (ll. 365-6). They must be cured in the same way; and it follows that the word *myer*, since it does not otherwise occur, does not exist. Of a different kind, but like effect, is the evidence when

<sup>1</sup> Similarly, in l. 136 we have *g-yar-re* (written) in antithesis to *g-yah-dze*.

we have the same phrase or verse recurring with the postulated modification, e.g.

rta-ḥgam-ḥphar-[re], 99 = rta-ḥgam-ḥphar-re, 110.

These considerations enable us to dismiss from the vocabulary a number of syllables with final *r*, many or most of which actually occur elsewhere without the *r*.

The number of these (*a*) instances is perhaps less imposing in relation to the whole text than it seems; for a line of the manuscript will generally contain nearly 2 lines of verse. Nevertheless, such a frequency of a particular error demands some explanation. The error cannot be of a visual character, a miswriting by the copyist, more especially as it would not have so often escaped correction by the reviser. It follows, therefore, that from some points of view the difference between e.g. *myer* and *mye-re* was negligible. We have seen that a clause ending in *re* might sometimes be equivalent to a Locative case: hence, if on the analogy of Tibetan we assume a Nam Locative in *-r*, that may in a fair number of instances account for the indifference. But we require a disyllable. Remembering that the Tibetan *-r* Locative has also the forms *ru* (influenced by *-su* ?) and *ra* and is probably nothing other than the ancient word *ra*, *ro*, 'place', it might be thought that the Nam Locative termination was really not *-r* but *-ra*. *Mye-ra* would more easily than *mye-re* be read as *myer*.<sup>1</sup> Something could be urged in favour of this; and no doubt the *-r*-Locative is very old. But we could not assume that a Locative sense would always be appropriate; and we may prefer to connect the (*myer*, &c., written in place of *mye-re* &c.) phenomenon with a proximate or ultimate oral transmission of the text and bring into the question the 'rapid pronunciation', which Prejevalsky (op. cit. ii, p. 112) noticed in the modern Tibetan ('Tangut') of the Koko-nor region. When there came to be a recopying from a manuscript, the dictator, scribe, and reviser might all alike be indifferent to the metre.

It now remains to give particulars of the sentence-ending Particles which sometimes lend an appearance of disyllabism to the last monosyllable in a sentence:

(a) *-o*, which occurs after a consonant in:

ldyōno, 318 (a doubtful reading)

<sup>1</sup> On the cases where, on the contrary, this *ra* after a consonant is actually treated as non-syllabic see *infra*, p. 178.



after a vowel in:

hkruho, 316

and frequently perhaps in forms with *o* such as:

lpyoho, 22, hyoho, 119, htoho, 140, 235, &c.

which last group is, however, dubious, since such forms occur in non-final positions, as equivalents of forms with *o* only, as *hyo* and *hto*.

(b) *hi*, which follows a consonant in:

(1) forms written as one word, viz.

hdzomhi, 134, hnahghi ||, 137, hkanhi ||, 164, hpyedhi, 208,  
modhi, 212, hrdaghi ||, 214, hlamhi, 224, 225, 226, 227,  
228, 229, htronhi, 224, 243, stomhi, 255, hwadhi ||, 301,  
hlobhi, 378, hrlomhi | : |, 385,

(2) forms written as two words, viz.

hthul-hi, 67, hlad-hi, 230, 237.

In both (1) and (2) the *hi* seems to be everywhere extra-metrical, though we may allow a doubt in the case of *stomhi* and *hlobhi*.

After a vowel there are numerous cases of *-ihi*, which may be left out of the question for the reason noted in regard to *-oho*; but parallelism of adjacent verses sometimes indicates the Suffixal character of the *hi*. With *-ehi* also there are numerous instances:

hkehi ||, 15, 41, 202, hrwehi ||, 22, 113, 198, mehi ||, 25, 115,  
311, 312, 313, rnehi, 86, hmehi, 114, 186, hdehi ||, 167,  
g-wehi ||, 199, 263, hrehi ||, 204-5, hgyehi ||, 209, hkhehi ||,  
212, g-yehi ||, 271, hdzehi, 338, 339, htsehi, 342, hpehi,  
386, 387.

Here there is no question of extra-metric value of the *hi*, since all words ending in *-ehi* are monosyllabic. In some cases there may be doubt on the ground that alternate forms *-e* and *-ehi* are found also in non-final positions: of this *mehi* and *hdehi* (each of them, no doubt, a homonym) are examples. But most of the words occur *only* as finals and probably, therefore, contains sentence-ending *hi*.

With *uhi* we have:

hmuhi, 183, hphuhi, 276, hpuhi ||, 282, hdzuhi ||, 345, 346,  
of which *hphuhi* and *hpuhi* occur also as non-finals (monosyllabic), the latter, however, last (with *ge* and *re*) in its clause (ll. 274, 329),

and so virtually final: similarly *hruhi*, 167. Probably all the words contain *u+hi*, and the *hi* will then be extra-metrical.

*ohi* is seen in *hkhad-htohi* (l. 324, extra-metrical *hi*), *hkhohi* || (l. 218, perhaps in a 12-syllable verse and with *o+extra-metrical hi*).<sup>1</sup>

*ahi* occurs only in

*hkaḥi*, 239, *hpahḥi*, 384,

where, if = *hka+hi*, the *hi* is extra-metrical; but *rtahi* (l. 174, but *hrtah*, l. 360), *pahi* (l. 262) and *hpahi* (l. 211) are found as non-final monosyllables.

What is the difference between the *-o*, which we see to have been rare, and the *hi*, unknown in Tibetan, which was common? Since in the passage, ll. 223-30, which is of an emotional character, a cry for vengeance, the *hi* ends every line of verse, it seems probable that, in contrast to the *-o*, which was a Particle of statement, *hi* was a Particle of emphasis or exclamation and suitable, therefore, for oratory and poetry. On non-final *-hi* see *infra*, pp. 191-2.

(c) *ni* is in Tibetan familiar as a Particle marking a discrimination of one topic from another: like the English 'as for', 'as to', it is therefore essentially antithetic, and so may introduce either the first or the last (a supplementary) member of a group of topics, or each one of them. In the old popular Tibetan it was very common, e.g. in

Sñag-na-ni-myi-slebs  
 ḥbros-na-ni-myi-thar  
 rgal-na-ni-myi-thub  
 'Pursuing, cannot overtake;  
 Fleeing, cannot get away;  
 Contending, cannot overcome'

and

kha-ḥod-de-ni-dmar  
 so-ḥo-rin-ni-dgar  
 'As to his mouth-gleam, red;  
 'As to his teeth, wide-apart'.

A similar meaning of the Nam *ni* as final is apparent in the series of sentences in ll. 149-56 ending in

ḥthogni (2), 149, ḥton[n]i, 150, 152, ḥkarni ||, 151, ḥgyaṇni, 153, ḥthusni, 156

<sup>1</sup> *-ohi* non-final in the sentence is monosyllabic in *hkoḥi* (l. 170), like *hkoḥu* in ll. 171, 172, 173, 174, &c.



and internally in l. 153:

myi-re-hti-ni-myi-[re]-hái ||.

The other occurrences, viz.

kyañni, 192, rgyen[n]i, 198, hkon[n]i || °° ||, 249, hbogni, 283 can be seen to have the same character.

Where found at the end of Nam verse, this *ni* is always extra-metrical.

(d) *ra*, although it may be merely the word *ra*, 'place', should be mentioned here, because in ll. 329-31:

h̄tor-h̄puhu-h̄bos-dze-h̄rgyo-h̄s̄eg-ḡs̄egra-ge-rgyo-h̄to-stiñ ||  
rta-h̄saḥ-g-yer-dze-r̄byo-ḡs̄eg-ḡs̄e[g]r[a]-ge-rgyo-h̄to-stiñ

the first of the two eleven-syllable verses presents *ḡs̄egra* as one written word and with the value of a monosyllable; a circumstance which accounts for the writing *ḡs̄er* for *ḡs̄egra* in the second verse.

In l. 270 also:

h̄waḥ-h̄ldañra-h̄tsañra-na-h̄wa-rgya-h̄rko-h̄rkabs

we can, by reckoning *h̄ldañra* and *h̄tsañra* as monosyllables and omitting the second *h̄waḥ* (*h̄wa*), which is absent in the parallel l. 272, arrive at a normal verse of seven syllables, as in the surrounding passage, or, retaining the *h̄wa*, a verse of eight syllables. This leaves us with l. 278:

rta-h̄wa-h̄ldañra-h̄ldaḥ-htag-htos

and l. 302:

h̄mañ-h̄riḥi-h̄phañ-dze-dgaḥ-h̄ldoñra-h̄ñaḥ-na

where, again, *h̄ldoñra* is a monosyllable. On *ra(re)-h̄ñaḥ* see *infra*, p. 239. The facts appear to show that the writing of the *ra* as conjoined with the preceding monosyllable is not accidental, but indicates the pronunciations:

*ḡs̄egr*, *h̄ldañr*, *h̄tsañr*, *h̄ldoñr*

without a final vowel:<sup>1</sup> and this may explain in l. 375 the writing *h̄ror* for what must be *h̄ron-re* or *h̄ronra*. Also, it cannot be an accident that all the cases, except *ḡs̄egr*, involve a final *ñ* and that even as regards *ḡs̄egr* we can point to confusion of final *g* and *ñ* in contemporary Tibetan of north-eastern Tibet, so that *ḡs̄er* in l. 331 may represent not *ḡs̄egr*, but *ḡs̄eñr*.

We can hardly fail to connect this non-syllabic *ra* with the numerous class of contrary cases, discussed above, in which a

<sup>1</sup> In l. 133 *h̄thañra*, final, seems to be treated as a monosyllable.

written monosyllable ending in a possibly Locative *r* has dis-syllabic value.

(e) *na*: As has been mentioned, a syllable *na*, having obviously a syntactical value, occurs frequently in the *caesura* position in the verse. At end of sentences we find a *na* occurring in at least three ways, namely:

(i) *na* joined to the preceding monosyllable in ll. 77, 182 (*plañna* and *ḥdubna*), 183, 221 (*ḥthañna*), 225, 231, 236, 237, 238, 244, 245, 246, 248, 253, 257, 258, 262, 280 (*ḥtona*), 328, 329, 353, 354, 369

(ii) *na* separated from the preceding syllable by interpunctuation in ll. 113, 114, 174 (*ḥto-na* and *ḥpor-na*), 176-7 (*glañ-na*), 177, 220, 221, 241, 243, 252, 294, 296, 302, 304, 308-9 (*ḥpañ-na*) 359. That there is no difference between the cases (a) and (b) is evident from fluctuations such as

ḥto-na, 174, 294, = ḥtona, 280

ḥgyaṇ-na, 296 = ḥgyaṇna, 77

ma-ma-ḥna, 245 = maḥ-maḥna, 238 = ma-maḥna, 245, 246  
= ma-ḥman(a), 247

but also quite as definitely from the fact that in all cases where the evidence of metre is available, and this is the great majority, the *na*, regardless of the difference in the writing, is extra-metrical. In *ma-ma-ḥna*, &c., indeed, the *na* is probably not the Particle, but merely the *-n* of the root *man*; see *infra*, p. 230.

There is, however, also a third class of cases, namely

(iii) *na* marked off from the preceding sentence by the punctuation, including one case where it is also marked off from the following sentence:

... ḥkkeḥe || na || ḥnor ..., 314.

Not to lay too much stress upon this instance, we may refer to l. 178:

|| na-ḥldyaṇ-ḥyaṇ-ḥyo-na-ldyaṇ-ḥkaḥ-rwaṇ.

Here the first *na* spoils the location of the *caesura* (after the second *na*) and brings to the seven-syllable verse an eighth syllable: more than this, it conflicts with two other verses, which commence with the phrase *ḥldyaṇ-ḥyaṇ-ḥyo-na* (l. 179) and *ḥldyaṇ-ḥyaṇ-ḥyo-doṇ* (l. 367) respectively. From this it appears that the *na* properly belongs neither to the preceding nor to the following verse, but serves as a link between them. This is presumably the same



function that it discharges in the interior of a sentence, when, in the *caesura* position, it joins the first three syllables of a seven-syllable verse to the last three. Accordingly the passage (ll. 124-7):

ḥtor-ḥrta-rme-ge-ḥldaṅ-kraṅ-ḥkuṅ ||

na

ḥldaṅ-ḥkraṅ-ḥsad-na-ḥldaṅ-ḥkraṅ-ḥśaḥ

(with four further verses beginning with *ḥldaṅ-(ḥ)kraṅ*) can be properly understood only if the connecting *na* is placed as here.

A fourth employment of *na* is:

(iv) *na* at the end of a paragraph or chapter,

ll. 222 | : |, 253 || ° || (probably also l. 182, *plaṅna* ||).

This usage, marking a conclusion, may well seem to conflict with the idea of connexion, which is the characteristic of the other usage.

When we take into consideration the Tibetan *na*, all difficulty vanishes. This *na*, in addition to its employment as a Locative suffix, is used

- (a) at the end of subordinate clauses expressing circumstances, conditions, &c.;
- (b) connecting sentences, and especially when the former of two is a verse or other piece forming a complete whole;
- (c) at the end of paragraphs, statements, and whole documents, such as letters.

Moreover, this *na* is often, in the contemporary Tibetan manuscripts from north-eastern Tibet, placed at the beginning of the second sentence, separated by punctuation from the first. As an example with a prior verse we may quote:

rta-yul-ḥbrog-yin-kyāṅ-bden

g-yag-yul-byāṅ-yin-kyāṅ-bden |

na | da-de-riṅ-saṅ-lta-na | rta-daṅ-g-yag-gṅis-saṅ-myi-ḥthab-ḥo

'Horse-country is the wilds—'tis true!

Yak-country is the north-plain—'tis true!

whereas this is so (*na*), now, looking to to-day and to-morrow, horse and yak should not strive as foes'.

Here the first *na*, marked off from both sentences and not included in the metre of what precedes, has the same meaning ('attendant circumstance' or 'condition') as the second, which in the prose passage is attached to its (subordinate) clause.

An example of the *na* attached to the following sentence only is:

sku-glud-du-bor | : | na-hbrog-srin . . . ḥtshalde-mchis

'On (*na*) his casting away . . . as his body's scapegoat, the fiend of the waste came accepting it.'

It may be added that these usages are not confined to cases with *na*, but are found also with the other subordinating Particles, *nas*, *ciñ*, *ste*, *pas*, &c. The most convenient method of translation in such cases is to round off the prior sentence as a whole, and then commence a new one with 'So'. On *don* (Tib. *dañ*) see Vocabulary.

The use of the *na* at the end of paragraphs, &c., now becomes intelligible. It implies vaguely that there is something still to come; and, when we find it in Tibetan at the end of a letter, we can understand it as analogous to English letter-endings such as 'Hoping you are well', when no main verb follows, the implied main statement being a general consent to further acquaintance or correspondence.

It is tempting to conceive of this *na*, local and conditional, as a form of the common word *gnah*, 'place', which in the Nam occurs both in this form and also as *na* and *hnaḥ*. But an original pronominal sense, 'that', 'there', might account even better for the Tibetan *na-re*, meaning, no doubt, 'so it is (*re*)' and used, like Sanskrit *iti*, after quotations and also in the sense of 'so say (*or* said)'.

### C. PARTS OF SPEECH

#### I (a). NOUNS, SUFFIXES, REDUPLICATION

NATURALLY there are in the Nam language many Substantives, such as *pha*, 'father', *ṛta*, 'horse', *pu*, 'bird', *ri*, 'mountain', *phag*, 'hog', *lam*, 'road', *sku*, 'body', *ño*, 'face', *mye*, *meḥi*, 'eye', *roñ*, 'gorge', *hla*, 'moon', *me*, 'fire', *smyi*, 'man', *na*, 'spring', *śi*, 'winter', which show no trace of a deverbial origin. And there are others, such as *hbroñ*, 'yak', *gnah*, 'place', *hkhah*, 'house', *hdzoñ*, 'fort', which, although originally they may in fact have been derived from Verbs or Adjectives, are, at any rate, not obviously or certainly so. But the Tibeto-Burman Verb is, as is well known, properly a noun of action, state, or occurrence, i.e. a name of a motion, state, &c., regarded as a thing; so that every verb-root can function as a Substantive. For use as a Substantive it requires no suffix; and, if it has one, e.g. *rgyed-ma*, 'division', the suffix is usually, in a compound, dropped, as in *rgyed-hrah*, 'place of



division'. But naturally there is some demand for Suffixes, in order to convey particular nuances of meaning.

The most general and widespread Tibetan Suffix, *pa*, *ba*, does not seem to be recognizable in Nam, the only possible candidate being the *wa* in *gsom-wa*, *rgoñ-wa*, *hwi-wa*, of which expressions we have still (*infra*, pp. 336 sqq.) to determine the meaning. The Suffix, non-existent in Hsi-fan, is all the more unlikely to be found, inasmuch as its sphere is, at least in part, preoccupied by *ta*. The 'Feminine' form *ma* exists, as we have seen, in *rgyed-ma*, which is also guaranteed by some other forms in the Berlin fragment, *mor-ma*, *yañ-ma*, *bri-ma*, *bra-ma*, *rme-ma*, &c., in which it seems certain that the *ma* is not the negative *ma*: this *ma* seems to give simply the sense of an Action-noun and is never a really 'Feminine' suffix.

The *po* and *mo* of the Tibetan are likewise, apparently, wanting. For, though we find the expressions, *rbyo-po*, 'rbyo-man' (l. 181), and *hñah-mo*, 'home-woman' (l. 193), it seems that they are compounds, in which *po* and *mo* retain their full meaning: cf. what Dr. Laufer wrote<sup>1</sup> concerning the Tibetan *blsan-po* (sometimes *-pho*, 'man').

Whether there was a Suffix *ka*, *ga* remains to be determined. Such a suffix, rare in ordinary Tibetan,<sup>2</sup> was certainly used in the Tibetan of the north-east.<sup>3</sup>

*Ta* is found copiously added to verb-roots and giving rise to nouns of action, such as *glo-ta*, 'intention', 'thought', *skye-ta*, 'life', *chos-ta*, 'beginning', *hlab-ta*, 'speaking', *g-ri-ta*, 'payment'. It is used of agents in l. 336;

klu-htaḥ-rgyohon-re-hśes-ta-hrgyon

'if the blind perform *rgyo*, the knowing ones perform *rgyo*'

where *klu* and *hśes* are rather Adjectives than Verbs; and there are other like cases. We sometimes (ll. 7 *hyed-ge-ta*, 371, 372 *hlde-ge-htaḥ*) find the Particle *ge* inserted between the Suffix and its word.

The *sta* in:

hño-sta, 85, rñe-sta, 86, hbrad-sta, 306, hmañ-sta, 311, hri  
(g-ri, g-rihi)-sta, 311-12, slo-staḥ, 99

<sup>1</sup> *T'oung-pao*, Sér. 2, vol. xv (1914), pp. 93, 102-3.

<sup>2</sup> But cf. *chad-ka*, 'fine' or 'confiscation', in the MS. *Chronicle* (now edited by M. Jacques Bacot, see pp. 25 (89), 57 (ll. 31-2)) *ltoñ-ka* (and *ga*) 'groove', 'notch', 'depression', *dbyar-ka*, *sos-ka*, 'summer', *thañ-ka*, 'plain', *thad-ka*, 'direction', &c. These, however, are substantives, and often they have by-forms with *-kha* and *-ga*, and may be compounds, formed with *kha* as second member.

<sup>3</sup> *Supra*, pp. 32, n. 1, 60.

will be a form of *ta*, to be expected on the analogy of *to/sto*, *te/ste* in Nam and Tibetan: and *hño-sta* and *rñe-sta* seem to denote persons. On the *s-* see *infra* (p. 185, n.) and on *sta* = 'there' (p. 201). On *rwye-htaḥ*, l. 91, and on *hwa-ste-htaḥ*, ll. 71-2, with *ste + ta* see p. 187.

Since the expected *da* is not found in this use, we naturally ask whether among the occurrences of *lda*, *ldaḥ*, *hlda*, *hldaḥ*, there may be any of like character. There are numerous instances of *hlda/hldaḥ/ldaḥ* as a Suffix, viz.:

- hrañ-hldaḥ (hlda)-hnam-ge, 5, 6, 8, 37
- hrah-ldaḥ-ge, 43
- hmañ-hldaḥ, 33
- rkaḥ-lda, 84
- hkaḥ-hldaḥ, 137
- rke-hldaḥ, 155
- hbañ-hldaḥ, 170
- hsaḥ-hldaḥ, 164
- g-yog-hldaḥ, 200
- hso-hldaḥ, 201
- śor-hlda, 203
- gse-hlda, 240
- hrde-hldaḥ, 301
- rpehi-hldaḥ, 286
- rñe(hrñe)-hldaḥ, 303, 310
- hpo-hldaḥ, 358
- hdzaḥ-hldaḥ, 380, 382, 383.

Several of the words preceding the *hldaḥ*, e.g.

*hrañ* (= Tib. *rañ*, 'self'), *hrah* ('place'), *hsaḥ*, 'earth'

are certainly not Verbs, so that in those instances the Suffix must have a value different from that of the *ta* with Verbs and similar to that of *ta* with Adjectives. Some of the other words are provisionally (but see *infra*) not sufficiently determined in meaning to allow a certain decision. But as regards *gse-hlda*, in which *gse* is known as equivalent to Tibetan *gtse* 'to injure', we can take note of the verse

rñe-hlad-rpag-re-gse-hlda-hlad-hlamḥi, 239-40

which is immediately followed by *gse-hlad*, recurring again twice in l. 242. *Gse-hlad* means 'requital of injury', *rñe-hlad* probably 'requital of wrong': and *gse-hlda-hlad*, since it cannot differ much from *gse-hlad*, ought to mean 'requital of injuring or injurers'.



The agential sense ('injurers') will probably be found to fit the case of *gse-ḥlda* and most of the other instances.

*to*, *ḥto*, *ḥtoḥo* occur most commonly as Verb-suffix or Verb at the end of a sentence: we have:

- ḥsi-ḥrog-ḥpaḥ-to, 17
- stor-ḥtoḥo ||, 140
- bprom-ḥto, 168, 171 (ḥphrom), 172 (ḥphrom), 174 (prom), 359 (ḥprom-ḥtoḥo), 360 (to)
- re-ḥto ||, 169, 382
- rmañ-dze-ḥtoḥo, 235
- hnu-ḥto ||, 242
- ḥyah-ḥto, 294, 315 (ḥtoḥo)
- hmañ-ḥto ||, 310
- rgo-ḥtoḥo, 314-15
- ḥrbom-ḥtoḥo ||, 317
- ḥkḥad-ḥtoḥi, 324

(Uncertain on account of confused text, *g-yo-ḥpud-ḥto*, 28).

Not really different are the cases where the sentence is subordinate and therefore followed by a Particle:

- gśaṇ-re-ḥtad-to-dze, 30
- ḥrgom-ḥkḥrur<sup>1</sup>-ḥto-na, 169
- ḥldog-g-yah-to-dze, 317
- dguḥu-mu-ḥto(to)-re, 236, 244: dgu-mu-ḥto[-r[e], 225, 245.

The *re* in the last group of cases is one of the Particles which most commonly occupy the *caesura* position. As we shall see *infra*, it is really a Verb, meaning 'be' (in these cases a Gerund, 'being'), for which reason it may itself admit the *ḥto* formation *re-ḥto*, as in ll. 169, 382, noted above. The cases with *ḥto-re* show, however, that the-*ḥto*-forms are not really finite Verbs, but are predicative Participles or Adjectives with the Verb 'be' omitted.

After the *ḥto*-form may come an 'auxiliary' Verb or expression: the instances are:

- ḥrgu-ḥto-ḥrun (= Tibetan *run*, 'ought', 'must'), 30, 32
- stor-to-ḥrun, 79-80, 138
- ḥdzohu-ḥto-ḥrun, 138
- ḥtshu-to-ḥphan, 215
- rgyo-ḥto-stiṇ, 330, 331, 335, 336 (rgyoḥo)
- ḥko-ḥto-swad, 390

<sup>1</sup> For *ḥkḥru-re*.

and in a subordinate sentence or phrase:

stor-hto-hruhi-ge, 167

The other cases are:

klu-hto-hkyim, 37

hdam-to-hbu-hpor(hphor?), 68

stor-hto-rta-yañ-stor-to-hrun | ° |, 79

hcihi-hto-ge-hnan ||, 350.

Here *klu-hto*, *hdam-to*, *hcihi-hto*, clearly function as Substantives, 'the blind', 'the bound', &c.; and *stor-hto* = *stor-hto-* &c., 'that having fled'.

The *-sto* which we naturally expect is to be seen in

hswar-hldu-sto-dze, 28

hde-hyim-sto-rgyag, 29

hño-sto-ge-rdo-re, 84

hño-sto-ge-hsag-dze, 85

hbe-hbah-hñah-sto, 235

tha-hnu-hrgyañ-sto-smyi-hnu-hto, 242

hkyañ-hldoñ-hgyañ-sto, 292.

In two cases *sto* comes at the end of a sentence, and the phrase is therefore, no doubt, a Verb:

hrgu-hrgehi-sto ||, 58

hchir-htsah-sto, 233;

and in one case:

sto-the-the-re, 336

it comes at the beginning of a sentence and is, doubtless, a quite different word.

It is fairly evident that *sto* is equivalent to *to*<sup>1</sup> and both this and the Adjectival-Participial character of the *to* and *sto* are proved by the occurrence in contemporary Tibetan name-titles from north-eastern Tibet, such as:<sup>2</sup>

Btsan-to-re, 'The powerful'

Snañ-to-re, 'The distinguished'

Tshañ-to-re

Sgra-ya-sto, = Dgra-yas-to, 'Having foes without limit'

— -rgya-sto

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the doublets *te/ste*, *ta/sta*, and Tibetan *te/ste*. From observation of the occurrence, both in Tibetan and in Nam, it appears that *ste* and *sto* derive their *s* from the preceding (Preterite) verb-form: thus *hldu-sto*, *hyim-sto*, *hrgehi-sto* are merely scriptural substitutes for *hldus-to*, *hyims-to*, *hrgehis-to*.

<sup>2</sup> Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents, ii, p. 16.



where, furthermore, we find also the *re*, which we have seen in  
dgu-mu-to-re, &c.

In general therefore we see that the forms in *-to*, *-sto*, can act as predicates and can then be followed by the word *re*, 'be'. This means that they are Adjectives and Participles; and when we find them as subjects, as in:

h̥cihi-hto̯ho-ge-hnan ||, 350

h̥no-sto-ge-rdo-re, 84

they are Adjectives used as subjects: in fact, *h̥no-sto* probably means 'friends' or 'allies', i.e. *h̥nos-to*, 'those on one's side (*nos*)', rather than *h̥no-sto*, 'those who lend countenance (*no*, cf. Tib. *no-tshab*, a 'proxy', and so forth)'.  
The forms *do* and *ldo* may also be expected. The former may be seen in:

ldan-pyer-hgag-re-htsa-h̥yah-h̥do ||, 65

h̥ko-se-hgro-re-htsa-h̥yah-h̥do ||, 67

rta-hso-h̥nah-yañ-gñi-hrdzum-do̯ho ||, 80

ldyañ-glab-h̥do ||, 180

of which the first perhaps means:

'those (*htsa-h̥*) who are prevented (*hgag*) from co-operating (*ldan-pyer*) become rivals or enemies (*h̥yah* = Tib. *ya*)'.

Somewhat different perhaps are:

g̥sañ-s̥ñañ-do-na . . . , 86

htsog-hram-do-na . . .

where we may suspect the meaning of an abstract 'in . . . friendship', 'in comradeship', and:

h̥tor-h̥do-h̥chuñ, 185,

which seems clearly to mean 'in greatness small'. The remaining instance:

h̥chi-h̥do-dyañ, 183, 353,

may conceivably belong to either group. Probably, however, it means 'started to depart' and so belongs to the group *h̥rgu-h̥to-h̥run*, &c.

A corresponding *ldo* we may surely recognize in:

dgu-h̥ldo-h̥tor-dze, 74, 77, 78 (*°ge*), 114 (*°ge*), 139 (*°ldo*, *°ge*),  
309 (*°ge*)

r̥ñe-h̥po-h̥ldo-ge, 177

me̯hi-h̥gab-h̥ldo-ge, 155

- klu-ḥldo-sme-re, 342  
 hñu-ḥldo-ḥldyoho ||, 355  
 śeg-sme-ḥldo, 375  
 ḥbri-slod-ḥldo-dze, 381

in several of which, e.g. *dgu-ḥldo*, 'hotness', *klu-ḥldo*, 'blindness', we seem to find the abstract sense: whereas in others, e.g.

*mehi-ḥgab-ḥldo-ge* = 'having eyes hidden'

the Adjectival-Participial value may appear.

Like *re*, 'be', this Participial or Verbal *ta*, *to*, survives in eastern and north-eastern Tibet down to the present time. Rockhill tells us (*Journey through Mongolia and Tibet*, p. 270) that:

'The language spoken in Jyade (in Eastern Tibet) presents numerous peculiarities I have not met with elsewhere. To note only one—they use the particles *lé* and *ta* . . . to indicate the present tense . . . *Rig-ta*, "I see it"; *Rig-mé-ta*, "I (or you) do not see it."'

And in the Vicomte d'Ollone's *Langues des peuples non-Chinois de la Chine*, p. 224, we see the *ta* at work in a dialect (No. 41, Dzorgai) of the Go-lok peoples of the north:

- Kan iu eu dzeta 'I have a horse'  
 Kan iu nié dzeta 'I have two horses'.

In *rwye-ḥtaḥ*, l. 91, *ḥtaḥ*, 'is', occurs, and in *ḥwa-ste-ḥtaḥ*, ll. 71–2, it is added to the Participial form in *ste*.

A suffix *tša* has been previously (*JRAS.* 1939, pp. 207, 216) seen in *gpha-tša*, 'father-people', *ḥkhu-tša*, 'uncle-people'; and this is doubtless also to be seen in Tibetan *bu-tša*, 'child-people', 'children'. We are naturally inclined to see the same in

*mor-tsaḥ-khrom-re* || *hyañ-tša-ḥcer* ||, 388

since *mor* and *hyañ* are frequently antithetical and the parallelism with *gpha-tša* v. *ḥkhu-tša* is obvious: *hyañ-tša* recurs in l. 63. The same appears in *ḥtrog-ḥtsa*, 'enemies', l. 146, *g-icaḥ(g-yah ?)-ḥtsa*, l. 152, *ḥkhwī-ḥtsa*, l. 259, *ḥpañ-tša*, l. 283. There are two interesting points in connexion with this Suffix. The first is that it may follow compounds:

- klu-ḥrto-ḥtsa-ge, 24–5, 'blind stones' (?)  
 ḥthañ-le-tša, 131, 220, 'the [beings of the] *thañ* fields' (?)  
 mye-ḥraḥ-ḥtsaḥ, 342, 'look-outs' (?)

compounds with *-re*:

- gsu-prom-ḥño[-]r[e]-ḥtsaḥ-ḥpu-ḥdrom ||, 64–5  
 ḥstor-moñ-ḥdzoñ-re-ḥtsa, 64



and even the inserted Particle *ge* :

śes-rtsig-moñ-ge-htshah, 379

tsig-moñ-we-ge-htshah, 381

hḍzah-hḍdah-hwehi-ge-htsah, 383.

This suits well with its being virtually a plural Suffix which can come after compounds and phrases. It is noticeable that the instances with *re* and *ge* all have the *tsa*, *htsah*, &c., as the fifth syllable in the verse, so that metrical convenience may have favoured the phraseology with *re* and *ge*.

We should expect to find such a *tsa* appearing sometimes in the form *ca*. But at present it does not seem possible to identify an instance in the Nam text. The Berlin fragment, which has one or two occurrences of *tsa*, viz. :

jig-mah-tsa-ge, 6

htham-gnam-tsa-ge, 18

not to mention possible examples, such as

me-tsa, 14,

has very likely the expected *ca* in

ljeb-ca-ri-ri, gmu-me-doñ-ca-ri-ri, 10-11.

In Tibetan the *ca* may be recognized in the *cag* (= *ca-ge*?, cf. *yig* = *yi-ge*) used to form the plural of Pronouns, such as *na-cag*, 'we', which use is extended to pronominal words, e.g. in *bdag-cag*, 'ourselves'; while an analogous or related form, *cog*, is still more widely employed, as in *hbro-cog*, 'runaways', *yod-do-cog*, 'all existent things', *mthoñ-no-cog*, 'all seen things'. It is intelligible that the convenient form *ca*, *tsa* may have penetrated into the Indian Prākṛit of the Shan-shan kingdom, as was suggested in *JRAS.* 1939, pp. 207-8; cf. the Latin *etc.* in European languages.

The formative *te/tehi/ste/stehi/ḍe/ḍehi* has already (p. 136) been discussed and equated to the Tibetan Gerund-forming *te/ste/ḍe*. This *te/ḍe* seems to be clearly apparent in the Berlin fragment :

bri-ma-zor-de . . . , 2

bra-ma-gar-de . . . , 2

rme-ma-do-de . . . , 4

śaṇ-ma-de-de . . . , 5

rtoñ-ma-de-de . . . , 5

kyo-ma-do-de . . . , 5

gce-yañ-phañ-de . . . , 6, &c.

and with *te* after *re* :

- klo-riü-sñan-re-te, 11
- klu-ne-sñan-re-te, 13
- mug-tse-khyig-re-te, 17
- htham-tse-re-te, 17

and after other Verbs :

- de-wa-yob-te, 16
- gya-rba-tsag-te, 20.

In the present text we can recognize the idiom quite well, e.g. in

- puñ-te-gsar-nar, 204 ('being massed together, new vigour')
- hphom-te-hdrañ, 147 ('being conquered, led')
- hsas-te-khyañ, 116
- hjo(hdzo ?)-chi-te-re, 385

and with *ste* :

- ldyañ-hkañ-rwañ-ste, 178
- gnañ-goñ-myag-ste, 179-80
- hlab-ta-gboñu-ste-ge, 181-2
- na-htsañ-ste-dze, 33-4
- hldyim-ste-hpuhi-ge, 274.

But, even putting aside

- hwa-ste-htañ, 72
- hwa-ste-hge-dze, 73, 75

where we are not yet sure of *ste* as a suffix, we may apprehend a difference in the employment of *te/ste*, in the two manuscripts. This difference may be best expressed as a tendency in our manuscript for the *te/ste* to appear in the interior of a clause, instead of at the end, and as belonging to the Subject and not to the Predicate: that is to say, it serves to form a Participle-Adjective, instead of a Gerund. This is seen, for instance, in the above

- hphom-te-hdrañ, 147

and in

- hse-hte-hmun, 33
- hldya-hkañ-hte-hñor, 52
- hsod-te-rmag-dze, 147

and it also appears from the fact that the phrases are sometimes followed by *ge*, which always belongs to the Subject, as in

- hldyim-hste-hpuhi-ge, 274
- hrñe-hrdam-hte-he-ge, 322
- hlab-ta-gboñu-ste-ge, 181-2



or by *dze*, which is normally a kind of preposition, e.g. in

na-htsaḥ-ste-dze, 33

hwa-ste-hge-dze, 73, 75.

This is the employment which we have seen in

rgyed-ḥdre-hte-ge, 87, 24, 'the division-inducers',

and similar is the case of

htrog-ḥdre-hte-re, 326, 338, 'there being (*re*, or *re* = 'all'),  
enmity (? deceit ?)-inducers'

so that finally we get the *te* attached to an Adjective:

trog-ḥtor-hte-dze, 266, 'upon great enmity'

and such an Adjective may become the main Predicate, as in

hla (laḥ)-ḥram-hte, 73, 76, 'the moon [is] pleasant'.

The interest of this development in the use of the *te*, *ste* is the fact that it is precisely the idiom which we have already (pp. 131, 136) traced in the personal names *Ltoñ-te-Mye-kru*, *Bzagste-Nar-hbyam*; it emphasizes the connexion between the names and the Nam dialect.

There do not seem to be any more syllabic formatives apparent at first sight, excepting a Diminutive, *hgu*, on which see *infra* (p. 258) and Case-suffixes, which will be mentioned below. But this is clearly the place for considering the variant forms *te* and *teḥi*, *lde* and *ldeḥi*, which have been exhibited by the personal names. The *i* is evidently regarded by the Tibetan translators of the names as corresponding to their own Genitive- and Adjective-forming Suffix *ḥi*; for, where their *ḥi* would not be phonologically correct,<sup>1</sup> they substitute their alternative *gi*, *gyi*: thus:

Byeḥu-rma-byeḥu-gi = bya-rma-byaḥi

Yab-sten-rgan-gyi = Yab-ṅal-ldeḥi

Tseñ-ḥgi-Rba-ga.

This is good evidence for a Genitive-Adjective value in the Nam *ḥi*. Does it help to explain any of the variations between *-e* and *-eḥi*, such as we have exemplified *supra* (p. 124)?:

ḥrah-we-rtah = ḥrah-weḥi-rta

ḥbe-ḥbah = ḥbeḥi-ḥbah.

It might be, for instance, that *ḥrah-we-rtah* meant 'place-make-horse' as a compound, while *ḥrah-weḥi-rta* meant 'place-making horse' with 'place-making' as an Adjective qualifying 'horse'; and similarly *ḥbe-ḥbah* might mean 'sheep-oppression' as a compound, while *ḥbeḥi-ḥbah* meant 'oppression of sheep', with *ḥbeḥi*

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally elsewhere also, as in *byeḥu-gi*.

as a quasi-Genitive. And it would be convenient to discover in the Nam language a Genitive form. There are also cases where we apparently find these Gerund expressions with *-de* having the *hi* appendix when used apparently as Subjects. Thus in

*hstor-hdehi-hpyid* ||, 339, 341 (cf. *Idaŋ-hdehi-hpyid* || ||, 343-4)

unless *hde* is there a different word ('good fortune'), it might be that *hstor-hdehi* means 'fugitives', while *hstor-hde* might mean 'fleeing'. But, if the language had had such a Genitive-Adjective suffix, we should have expected, though this and the analogous Tibetan texts are very terse and sparing in their use of Genitives otherwise indicated than by position, to find at any rate some instance of a Genitive suffix used after a word ending in a consonant; and of that we have not any clear example. Moreover, the cases with *-ahi*, *uhi*, *ohi* directly contradict the idea of a Genitive-Adjective suffix,<sup>1</sup> and the impression received is rather that the *hi* is a Particle of emphasis, identical, in fact, with the sentence-ending *hi*: the reason why we do not find it after consonants may be that in the interior of a sentence it would have added a syllable for which the verse had no place. It may very well have been used optionally in the interior of compounds, either to mark the separation of the parts or to emphasize one part, and for convenience, in cases like the above-mentioned *hstor-hdehi*, to mark off the phrase as a Subject. The objection to this is that the spelling *mehi*, where the probable meaning is 'eye', seems to be rather constant, while *me*, *mye*, prevails where 'fire' is probably meant; but possibly the *hi* may have been used in the language, without phonological origin, to make this very distinction. At the end of a sentence *mehi* can sometimes mean 'is not' (Tib. *med*).

It appears that before this enclitic *hi* a final *a* is usually converted into *e*. *Hdzo-hdzehi*, ll. 338, 339, *htso-htsehi*, l. 342, are clearly identical with each other and with *hdzo-hdza*, l. 262, *htsah*, l. 29, *htseh(i)*, l. 364, *htso-htsah*, ll. 62, 73, 115: and the same change is to be seen in

*hyah-hŋehi-hŋahd*, 115-16 (Tib. *ya-na*, 'anguish', 'fright')

*hwi-hwehi-htsag*, 173, 'rats (or mice) collect'

(cf. *hwi-wa-rmaŋ*, 201, 'rats (or mice) are the tomb')

so that in some occurrences of *spehi* and *hpehi*, e.g. ll. 211, 370, we

<sup>1</sup> *Ldehi-swa-rŋaŋ*, ll. 319, 320, from *lde*, seems exactly parallel to *rtahi-swa-hldir*, l. 174, from *rta*.



may question whether we have to do with *spe*, *hpe*, or with *spa*, *hpa*; see p. 282. The case of *-a/-ehu* (p. 368) seems analogous.

The possibility that *-ehi* is merely a lax representative of *-ehe* is suggested by the *hrgēhi-sto* = *hrges-to* of p. 185, n. 1; it would then be parallel to *-ohu* = *-oho* (*infra*, p. 369). But against this we may note the occurrences of *-ahi*, *-uhi*, *-ohi*, and also of an *-ehu* similarly equivalent to *-e* (p. 368).

The only other morphological feature of Nam monosyllables is one found throughout the whole Tibeto-Burman area, namely reduplication. As concerns verbs a reference to this has, in regard to the Berlin fragment, already been made (*JRAS*, 1939, p. 198). In our text it is frequent, there being even sequences of verses such as

hbo-hkom-ldyañ-dze-hdab-hde-hde ||  
 gñim-hti-hldyañ-[dze]-hgye-hkrom-hkrom, 12-13.

These verb-repetitions are true reduplications, without the vocalic variation which is found in some of the languages, e.g. Tibetan. But the latter type also seems to appear, as in Tibetan, in expressions, such as

gdim-hdzam-hdzim-re, 100  
 hsañ-plim-plam, 120.

These and others, e.g. *hbo-hbon*, *ma-maṇ*, can function indistinguishably as Substantives, Adjectives (frequent in Hsi-fan, Lo-lo, Mo-so, etc.) and Verbs.

#### I (b). DECLENSION

The apparent absence of any plural suffixes, such as the Tibetan *rnam*s, *tsho*, *dag*, has already been noted (*JRAS*, 1939, p. 209): it is hardly likely that the *hdag* in the parallel phrases:

hyog-hprañ-hdag-dze, 254  
 hkhwi-htsa-hyog-hdag-ci  
 hsas-hdrañ-hdag-chi,  
 &c., ll. 259-61

is equivalent to the Tibetan *dag*: the *hdag* must, in fact, be interpreted otherwise. Probably the language was content with the *tsa*, properly more equivalent to '&c.', discussed on pp. 187-8.

The Genitive relation (or the direct relation between things) occurs, no doubt, in all its species (possession, part-whole, physical, psychological, legal, social, &c., connexion), being indicated merely by word-order, the Genitive word preceding. But the phrase is then indistinguishable, as in English, from a compound

word; and whether the connexion between the parts is then Genitival, Dative, Instrumental, Locative, depends simply upon the sense. Thus we have:

- thañ-hrdzo-rgyud, 16, 220, 'thañ-mdzo-race' (2 Genitives)  
 g-ri-hruhu, 21, 'mountain-horn (Peak)' (Genitive of whole)  
 Moñ-hdzoñ, 64, &c., 'Moñ castle' (Genitive of description)  
 hjo-me, 67, &c., 'hjo fire' (Genitive of material)  
 hna-hlam, 68, 'home way' (Goal of motion)  
 mehi-ra, 78, 'eye-place' (= Sentinel post)  
 mye-hrah, 342, 'fire- or eye-place' (Genitive of description)  
 hrgoñ-ru, 82, 'egg's horn' (Genitive of whole)  
 hnañ-hchos, 159, 'spring-born' (Temporal)  
 hsañ-hlad, 225, &c., 'enmity requital' (Genitive of description)  
 smyi-hnu, 241, 'man's strength' (Genitive of possession)  
 hldya-hkañ-hte, 51-2, 'water-full' (Genitive of material)  
 hpah-rmag, 205, 'hero-army' (Genitive of description)  
 rgyed-hrah, 87, &c., 'division-place' (Genitive of description).

Thus the ideas which we associate with the term Genitive have no explicit expression: how the phrase 'This is yours' would have been turned in the Nam language does not at present appear.

Is there a formative expressing Agent or Instrument? On the analogy of the Tibetan we should expect to find from vowel stems an Instrumental or Agential Case-ending *-s*, e.g. *nas*, 'by me', from *na*, 'I'. This is likely to be an old formation. The fact that the corresponding *kyis*, &c., after consonant stems, fails to appear in Nam discourages the expectation of an *s* after vowels; and, as mentioned, *supra* (p. 170), the instances of words ending in a vowel followed by *s* occur almost always at the ends of sentences, and the words are, no doubt, verbs. The few possible examples are discussed *infra* (pp. 359-60) with negative conclusion. We must therefore hold that the Agential-Instrumental construction is evaded in Nam.

A Dative with Postposition *la*, as in Tibetan, is well established in the three successive sentence-endings ll. 69, 70:

- hbehi-la-hgar, 'a camp for the sheep'  
 hpagh-la-gnah 'a place for the hog'  
 hbyig-la-gnah 'a place for the cow'.

The Tibetan Locative Postpositions *ru*, *su*, do not appear. But the *r*-Locative after vowels and the Locative with Postposition *na* are, as has been seen, frequent, the former very frequent; and there is



a third, doubtless of wider employment, namely *dze*. The partial equivalence of the three is shown by their alternations, e.g.

myi-rgye-myer(mye-re or °ra),	153
ḥti-rgye-mye-dze,	154
sku-mag-ḥno-dze	} 58
ḥdaḥ-mag-ḥno-dze	
twaṇ-mag-ḥnor,	48
ḥkyañ-mag-ḥnor,	49
ḥtañ-ḥrdzo-ḥñor,	218-19, 132
ḥthañ-le-tshaḥ-dze,	219
thañ-rdzo-ḥkyud-na,	220
ḥkrug-ḥrdzo-ḥgyud-dze,	16
ḥdza-ma-ḥñe-na-rta-ge-ḥtom-ḥphah	
ḥke-ma-ḥñyeḥ-dze-ḥtor-ge-ḥdzo-ḥtseh	
ḥkeḥu-ḥkaḥ-dwañ-na-ḥldyañ-ḥkaḥ-dwañ	
rgoñ-wa-myer-rbyo-rgyer-ḥldyañ   ,	363-5
ḥldañ-ḥkrañ-ḥsad-na-ḥldañ-ḥkrañ-ḥśaḥ	} 124-5.
ḥldañ-krañ-ḥwe-dze-ḥldañ-slaḥ-ḥkeḥe	

In several of the above cases, however, and in many others, the word preceding the *-r* (= *re*), *na*, and *dze* is not a Substantive, but a Verb, and the sense also demands not local Locatives, but expressions of circumstance or condition, as set forth *supra*, pp. 173 sqq.; and this may be specially the case in regard to *dze*, which, as has been previously suggested (*JRAS.* 1939, p. 209), may be the Chinese word *tsai*, elsewhere also found spelt *dze* and *dzeḥi* (*JRAS.* 1926, p. 526; 1927, p. 306) and used in a local or temporal sense.<sup>1</sup> The fact that *dze* never has the *ḥ*-Prefix favours the supposition that it is a foreign word. A strictly local sense seems to be conveyed by *na* in

me-na-ḥldis, 58, 'bounds (?) in fire'

me-na-ḥsams, 58, 'is tempered (?) in fire'.

## II. THE VERB

Ordinarily the Tibetan Verb varies in three ways:

(1) By alternation of Prefixes and associated modifications of initial consonants, e.g.

sgyur/hgyur, spo/hpho, stu/sdu/hthu/hdu-, sñan/mñan/  
ñan, ḥgebs/hkhebs, bcug/hjug, btsugs/ḥdzugs/gdzugs,  
gdab/btab, gḥag/bḥag, ḥgum/dgum/bkum, bsdus/gtus,

<sup>1</sup> This *dze*, = Chinese *tsai*, seems to recur in Hsi-hsia; see Wang Jinru, op. cit., iii, p. 392, B, column 4.

and some of these alternations are lexical, that is, are stereotyped results of a process no longer active in the language, while others are functional, i.e. freely used with recognized significations. To the former class would belong perhaps the *s* of *spo*, *stu*, &c.; to the latter the variations between *g*-, usually Prospective (with its by-form *d*-), and *b*, usually Aoristic or Preterite. In later Tibetan the functional Prefixes also became lexical or merely graphic: and in early times also many particular, originally functional, forms, such as *glan* (*√len*), *bgyd*, had become lexical.

(2) By addition of a final *-s*, constituting Preterites or Imperatives:

*hthub/hthubs*, *skye/skyes*, *hcha/bcas*, *hbro/bros*.

This formation was probably in early times far more prevalent than in the Classical Tibetan, and a lost *-s* is frequently evidenced by a preference for the Gerund suffix *ste* in place of *te* and the Imperative suffix *sig* in place of *cig*, or by *n*, a remainder of *ns* < *ns*, in place of *n*.

(3) By vowel alternation, both where the original vowel is *e* or *o*:

*hjog/bžag*, *hdren/drañ*, *rtog/brtags*

and where the *o*, from *a* and *e* verbs, is (usually) a special characteristic of the Imperative, as in:

*byed/byos*, *hgebs/khob(s)*, *sñeg/sñog(s)*, *hcha/chos*, *hdren/droñs*.

In the Nam language antithesis of the type *spo/hpho*, *stu/hdu*, the *s*-form being transitive, is manifest in the recurrent expression *stor-hdor*, 'to scatter in flight', where, however, as in the corresponding Tibetan verbs, the actual relation of sense is the reverse. And the verb *spo* also occurs, probably with the meaning of the Tibetan *spo*, 'change'. But that the *s*- had still a living function is not apparent.

On the other hand, there are some indications that the *r*-Prefix could be used to form Factitives or Causatives. Thus it is probable that

*hrkom-hbroñ*, 157, 331, &c.

means 'slain yak' (*√hgum* 'die', *bkum* 'slain'). Again, the word *rpag/hrpag*, antithetic to *sid*, 'high', certainly means 'low' (Tib. *dpag/dpog*, 'measure', especially of depth), 'brought low', as in



hñah-htsu-rpag-re-hñah-mo-hgam, 193

'When the men of the homes (?) are brought low, the women of the homes are the village.'

But we have also:

hñah-hpag-hldir, 326, 328, 'in this low home (?)'

But, although there are also other cases, *hgam/rgam*, *mag/rmag*, *hgyeb/rgyeb*, where the *r*-Prefix is apparent, and though it is exemplified in the common word *rgyed*, 'division' = Tibetan *hgyed*, and in the allied word *rgye*, 'extent' = Tibetan *dbye*, it does not appear that the supposed Factive, or Causative, function can provisionally be demonstrated.<sup>1</sup>

The *b*-Prefix in verbs can be rapidly disposed of. It is quite clearly seen in *bprom* (ll. 168, 180), 'made', 'did', *bphyag* (l. 101), 'saluted', *bśi* (ll. 196, 198), 'dead' (?), *bsog* (l. 183), 'collection'; while *bbyam* (l. 253), which might be similarly interpreted, is perhaps an error for *hbyam*, which recurs twice in the immediate context. The paucity of the examples, and the fact that the three other words with the Prefix *b*, viz. *bžir*, *bžer*, *bzod*, are probably (see *supra*, p. 166) foreign to the Nam language, which perhaps is also the case with *phyag*, suggest that the *b*-Preterite is borrowed from Tibetan.

The *g*-Prefix is more numerously exemplified (*supra*, pp. 163-5). Are there any signs of a Prospective function? This question is rendered more difficult by reason of the phonological, or scribal, fluctuation between *g*- and *h*- which has been discussed *supra* (pp. 163-5). There are, moreover, cases where the *g*- and *h*- forms of verbs are clearly equivalent: this applies to:

gkom-re, 222 = hkom-re, 166, 175

gcheg, 111, 234 (gceg) = hceg, 250

gcihi, 346 = hci, hcihi, 205, 301, 348, 350

gcig, 356 = hcig, 208, cig, 194

g-yog (-rño), 156 = hyog (-rño), 289, 321-2

g-yo/g-yoho, 142, 178-9 = hyo/hyoho, 118-19, 178-9

g-yer(hsah°, hswah°, hscah°), 166-7, 330-1, 346 = yer/hyer (hsah°, hstsah°), 141, 250-1, 267

hgras, 10, gras, 300 = hras, 344<sup>2</sup> (but here the *g* is probably not a Prefix)

<sup>1</sup> See, further, *infra*, p. 352.

<sup>2</sup> *g-we* (*wehi*, *wehe*) perhaps never, and *we/hwe/wehi/hwehi* (*wehe*, *hwehe*) perhaps always, occur as posterior members of compounds.

and in other cases, where the alternation does not occur, a Prospective sense is not apparent. But it will be observed that in contexts which independently express a Prospective sense, e.g. in connexion with auxiliary verbs, such as 'be able', 'tend to', &c., a Prospective and a non-Prospective form would be equally appropriate; and this may account for *g-yog/hyog* with *rño*, 'be able', *gstor/stor-ħdor*, 'put to flight', ll. 142-3, and *gstor/stor-ta-ħtoñ*, l. 152. It is also noticeable that in ll. 25-8, 34, 96, 98, the Preterite *-s*, *hyos*, occurs five times, while the non-Preterite *g-yo* occurs twice,<sup>1</sup> which fact is hardly accidental, though it must be admitted the *g-* is elsewhere sometimes found with Preterite in *-s*.<sup>2</sup> In the above-discussed phrase:

*grtehe-hta-stel*, 181, 'granted a fixing'

the Prospective sense is appropriate; and in the near context appears the most persuasive example, if in the vicinity of several occurrences of *hlab* as Presents or Preterites the phrase:

*ldyañ-glab-ħdo ||*, 180

means 'will speak (or be spoken)'. On *gzo* in l. 165 (see p. 199).

Far less dubious, and in fact free from doubt, are the Preterites in *-s*, formed from both vowel and consonant stems. For the most part, as noted *supra*, p. 170, these at once proclaim their character by occurring at the ends of sentences: such are:

(a) At end of line or sentence:

<i>s-form</i>	<i>Related s-less verb-forms at end of sentence or clause</i>
<i>hkroms</i> , 387	<i>hkrom(ni)</i> , 389
<i>hgyaṅs</i> , 241	<i>hgyaṅ(na)</i> , 77
<i>hgras</i> , 10, ( <i>gras-re</i> , 300)	
<i>hgrus</i> , 293, 297	
<i>hñis</i> , 70	<i>hñi</i> , 67
<i>hthogs</i> , 145	<i>hthog(ni)</i> , 149
<i>hthus(ni)</i> , 156	<i>hthu-re</i> , 140
<i>gdes</i> , 260	
<i>hproms</i> , 122	<i>hprom</i> , <i>passim</i>
<i>htsors</i> , 130 ( <i>htshors</i> ), 134,	<i>tshor-na</i> , 220
219	
<i>hbres</i> , 176	<i>brehe</i> , 44
<i>rdzogs</i> , 157	

<sup>1</sup> In l. 26 the *-s* of *g-yos* is crossed out. In l. 260 *gdes* is a Preterite.

<sup>2</sup> *gous*, l. 99 = *ħeas*, l. 93; *gsas*, l. 262 = *ħeas*, ll. 59, 116, 260, *gdes*, l. 260.



hgroms, 64	hgrom, 136, 223
rgyeb, 139	rgyeb-re, 116
hśas, 102	hśah, 90, 99
ñes, 192 (cf. 153, 158, °re)	
hldis, 58	hldi-ma-hrtah (inversion), 63, 71, 144
hsams, 58	hsam, 174
hnus, 16, 34, 40	
hwas, 308	
hkus, 352	hku-rno, 152
hkes, 36	hkehi, 15, 41, 262
rkabs, 271, 272	

(b) At end of a clause:

<i>s-form</i>	<i>Allied s-less form</i>
hthogs-re, 181, cf. under (a)	
hwars-ge, 203	hwar-hwar, 29
hsaṅs, 144	
ñes-re, 153, 158	
hnus-dze, 34, cf. under (a)	
swa-hphyegs-na, 176	swa-hpeg-na, 360
bras-re, 344 (gras-re, 300)	
rders-hdi-na, 107 <sup>1</sup>	

A special case is:

htag-htos, 278, 279	htag-hto-na, 279, 280
---------------------	-----------------------

where the *s* is appended to the participial form in *hto*.

The function of the *-s* in Tibetan is, as has been stated, Preterite or Aoristic (Perfective);<sup>2</sup> and there does not seem to be difficulty in recognizing the same in Nam.

Is there any trace of vowel alternation corresponding to the Tibetan *hbebs/phab*, *hjog/bzag*, or to *hgebs/khob(s)*, *hcha/chos*, *mdzad/mdzod*, the latter being the specially Imperative *o*, which, however, since many roots with *a* (e.g. *rma/rmo*, *za/zo*, *lta/lto*) have a by-form with *o*, may originally have had a wider signification? It is obvious that the question of a functional *o* is thus, even in Tibetan, in particular instances a difficult one: in Nam there would be the additional difficulty that on the Tibeto-Chinese border *a* was often, at any rate before *m*, rounded into *o*: for

<sup>1</sup> Some further *-s*-forms are noted, pp. 357-60.

<sup>2</sup> Also Imperative.

example, the word *tshams*, 'border', appears in names as *tshoms*, and *bam(s)*, 'mansion'(?), appears as *bom(s)*, e.g. in *Hgo-bom*, the original name of *Kum-bum*; and this might well explain *hphom/hpom*, 'vanquished', in ll. 147, 347. In many occurrences of verb-forms with *o* we have not, or at any rate we cannot identify, related forms with *a* or *e*; and there is no reason to suspect an Imperative. The most probable instances of the Imperative *o* are:

(1) *htroñhi*, ll. 224, 233, 243, which occurs in a speech apparently referring to the future and which may well be Imperative of *hdrañ*, ll. 147, 254: Tibetan has *trañ/drañ* (*hdren*), with Imperative *droñ/droñs*.

(2) *hlobhi*, l. 378, which may well be in an aspiration (note the exclamatory *hi*) and be the Imperative (Tibetan *lobs*) of the *hlab/glab*, of ll. 180-2, &c. If so, the *hron/hthon*, which end the two next-following sentences, may likewise be Imperatives; the same may be the case as regards *hldon* (Imperative of *hldan*, ll. 187-9, 264, 273-4) in ll. 370-2.

(3) *gzo*, l. 165, must mean 'shall eat', Imperative of the *hdzah* of ll. 170, 255: cf. Tibetan *za*, Imp. *zos*: note the Prohibitive *ma*.

The only other question in regard to the Verb is whether the *yon/hyon*, Auxiliary Verb in the recurrent phrase:

stor-hdor-hyon, 160, 161, 162

is a mark of future time, as in Tibetan are *hoñ* and *yoñ*. The reference seems to be to a future. If so, *hyoñ* of:

stor-hdor-hyoñ, 119

is equivalent to *hyono*, which is not unlikely by reason of *hruhi* = *hrunhi* (see *infra*).

Other Tibetan auxiliaries, *yin*, *hgyur*, *hdug*, *mchi*, *htshal* ('should', 'ought', 'is supposed to'), *zin* ('have'), are not apparent in Nam; but *ruñ* ('be proper', 'ought', 'should', 'have to') is clearly recognizable in:

hrgu-hto-hrun, 30, 32

stor-to (hto)-hrun, 80, 138

hdzohu-hto-hrun, 138

and at the end of a clause in:

stor-hto-hruhi-ge, 167

where *hruhi* = *hrunhi* is comparable to *hyoñ* = *hyono* (*supra*).

The frequent *prom*, 'do', 'perform', &c. (possibly = Burmese *pru*, cf. Burm. *phru*, 'white' = *phrom*) has been several times



adduced (e.g. p. 137). As concerns the *hkhum/dgum*, &c., 'execute', 'carry out' (*gñer-hkhums*, 'carry out a task or commission') of *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents* (ii, pp. 42, 79, &c. = *JRAS.*, 1927, pp. 810, 838, &c., and *supra*, pp. 137, 142), it seems possible that the same meaning is conveyed by *hkom* in:

hsaḥ-yob-hkom-re-hrañ-hrah-htsuḥ, 166

'The earth, having done (*hkom*) quaking, came (back) to its own place,'

and the like is to be seen in ll. 136, (*gtse-hkom*), 175 (*swa-hkom*), 222 (*swa-gkom*), 199 (*rgyes-hkom*). In ll. 32 (*hgru-ma-hkom*), 118 (*hrtah-ḡgam-hkom*), the *hkom* is not an auxiliary, but a Substantive Verb with (apparently) the signification 'make'.

The verb *re*, 'is', in dictionary Tibetan usually *red* ('Tangut' *rit*), but occurring also as *re* (*na-re*, 'so it is (said)'), and in Personal names, *Btsan-to-re*, &c.), has been instanced in the Rgyal-roñ song (pp. 85-6) and also as frequently used in the Nam text (see p. 174 sqq.) with the value of a Gerund, 'being': sometimes, e.g. in:

ḡche-hmu-gdag-re-gsañ-hkaḥ-hreḡi, 204

it concludes a sentence as the principal verb. *Mod*, with the sense of 'is really', as in Tibetan, may be seen in:

ḡdyañ-hto-htoñ-ge-ḡgo-gtoñ-mod, 210-11

'those who surrender the *ḡdyañ-hto* really surrender the gate (or place).'

A cognate of Tibetan *yod*, 'exist', does not occur; but its negative, in Tibetan *med*, 'not exist', has been exemplified (pp. 174-5 sqq.) in the form *mye-re*, 'not existing': this also, as *me+ḡi*, may end a sentence, e.g. in:

hmañ-sta-mehi || . . . ḡri-stah-mehi, 311

'the big is not there . . . the mountain is not there.'

Even the ordinary *myi*, Tib. *mi*, *myi*, 'not' can function in the same way, e.g. in:

ḡphu-hklo-ḡsad-dze-ḡnaḥ-me-ḡmyi ||, 40

'if the *ḡphu-hklo* is destroyed, 'home-fire is none (or the place is fireless, *me-ḡmyi*).'

perhaps also in *ḡyi-ḡse-myi*, l. 98.

The *stor-ḡdor* type of Compound Verb appears also in *ḡldañ-ḡhyer*, *ḡhyer-chañ*, *ḡldim-chim*, *rgyer-ḡldyañ*, *ḡbyi-ḡldyiḡi*, &c.

## III. PRONOUNS

Nam words for 'I', 'thou', 'he', and their plurals have not been found. We should expect *na* (not *kho-bo*) = 'I' (Hsi-hsia *no*—Laufer, No. 14), *na* perhaps (certainly not *khyod*) = 'thou'; while for 'he', 'they', the Tibetan *kho*, *khoñ-ta* is not at all likely, though *kan* exists in 'Tangut' and *kwán-thá-cha*, i.e. Tibetan *khoñ-ta*, in Thōchū.<sup>1</sup> Hsi-hsia *tha* (Nevsky, Nos. 71, 225).

'This' is clearly the frequently recurring *hldi*, = Tibetan *hdi*, sometimes (ll. 107, 198) in the latter form or as *hdihi* (ll. 43 (?), 184, 391). We do not find the *tha*, 'he', 'it', of Hsi-hsia, since the *tha* which occurs has probably a different meaning.

'There', Tibetan *da*, would seem to be the *ldaḥ* of *hṛaṇ-hldaḥ-hnam-ge*, 'heavens (or celestials) themselves-there' (i.e. the heavens, or celestials, proper); cf. Tibetan *Hbon-da-rgyal*, 'the Hbon-there king', *Da-red*, 'There-being' (= 'of that ilk').<sup>2</sup> If the verse:

*hldihi-su-hldoñ-dze-hlda-hko-ge-hdzoñ*, 195

means:

'What land he departs to, there is his castle'

then *hlda* may, like the Tibetan *de*, *hdi*, be followed by a Particle *ko*, giving the sense of 'in that very place'.

The form *sta*, in eastern Tibetan *sta-re*, 'that being so' (not *sta-re*, 'axe'), seems to be used correlatively in:

*sta-re-hmo(g)-ge-sta-hri-hldyañ*, 19, cf. 9, 252

'Where were the clouds, there the mountains flew (?)'

but not in:

*hri (g-rihi, g-ri)-staḥ (sta)-meḥi*, 311-13

'the mountain is not there'.

*Su*, to which we have just attributed a Relative sense, might then, like the Tibetan *su*, be also Interrogative in:

*dgu-hldo-htor-ge-su-me-hmeḥi*, 114

'When the heat is great, who kindles a fire?'

perhaps also in:

*su-ge-stor-ta-hthogs ||*, 145

'who stopped the flight?'

<sup>1</sup> Prejevalsky, ii, p. 138; Hodgson, p. 144.

<sup>2</sup> Similarly *Mchiñ-rgyal-hdi*, 'our Mchiñ king', in one of the Tibetan manuscripts.



The *ci*, *chi* of:

hkwi-htsa-hyog-hdag-ci-hrañ-hdom-gdes ||, 259-60  
 'the elders with their staves affirmed their decisions' (?)

and of the following lines may be the Tibetan Relative *ci*, *ji*.

It is possible that *hji*, which seems to occur (*ji*) in the Berlin fragment (ll. 10, 15, 16), may be the same Relative in ll. 78, 211.

One of the words *hrañ*, of frequent occurrence, must be = Tibetan *rañ*, 'self', e.g. in:

hrañ-hrah, 'own place', 21, 166, 167

and in the above-mentioned *hrañ-hldah*.

*Re*, beside being the verb 'be', evidently in *bañ(hbañ)-hre* (*hrehe*) in ll. 249-51, *jo-re*, &c., ll. 251-2, and perhaps in *pra* (*hypra*)-*hre* (*hrehe*), ll. 43, 267, means 'each', 'every' = Tibetan *re* (*res*, 'turn', 'times'), and Hsi-hsia *re*, 'many', 'all'.<sup>1</sup> In l. 132 we have apparently *hre* = Tib. *re*, 'hope'.

#### IV. NUMERALS

With the Tibetan names for the numerals 1-9, viz.:

gcig(cig), gñis(ñis), gsum(sum, so), bži(že), lña(ña), drug,  
 bdun(don), bryad, dgu(go)

it would be simple to compare the Nam words:

gcig(cig), hñis(hñi, ñi), gsom, bžir, na(hña, &c.), trog, rgyed,  
 dgu(gu, hgo)

more especially as we leave out of consideration the Tibetan word for '7', curiously reminiscent of the Indo-European *septm* and not found in Tibeto-Burman languages outside the specially Tibetan sphere. It is, however, quite unlikely that a form corresponding to Tibetan *gcig*, *cig*, almost equally confined to the Tibetan sphere, should have existed in Nam; and superficially the same applies also to *bžir*, which, moreover, is in Nam probably a foreign word. Furthermore, all the other Nam terms have demonstrably other meanings; and that they have also the numerical meanings, which in the abstract is quite possible, would require to be proved. Hence we might provisionally have no Nam words for the numerals 1-9.

In the eastern Tibeto-Burman dialects the most constant of the

<sup>1</sup> Nevsky, No. 88.

numeral forms are those for 2, 3, 5, 6, 9, which we may generalize as:

ñi, som (sam, sum, so), ña, drug (truk), gu

It will be shown *infra* (pp. 234-5, 241) that forms corresponding to the first, second, third, and fifth of these, viz. *sñi*, *hñi*, (*gñi*), *gsom*, *ña* (Hsi-hsia, *bñih*, *ñu*, Nevsky, No. 87) do exist in the Nam text. For '1' we might expect some equivalent of the *a* and *tha* of Hsi-hsia, both rather widespread, in various forms, in Hsi-fan and other Tibeto-Burman languages; but it seems certain that neither of them occurs.

What will have been the form of the word for '4' will be suggested *infra* (pp. 324-6): possibly the borrowed word *bžir*, which occurs in the vicinity of a *gsom*, which may = '3', has that sense.

'Seven' is also in Tibeto-Burman a highly variable form, whereof the numerous modifications have been discussed *supra* (pp. 90, 92-3 sqq.). In Nam we should, on the ground of vicinity to T'aouchou and Mi-ñag, expect some *skwi*, *stwi*, or the like. There is therefore just a possibility that the expression *hkhwi-htsa*, l. 259, if it should, as is probable, mean 'old' (Hsi-hsia *wi/dwi/dwih*, Nevsky, No. 134), may be = 'man of 70 years'.

In the forms *hgu/dgu*, ll. 126-7, we probably have the Nam word for '9' (Tib. *dgu*), used according to a familiar Tibetan idiom in the sense of 'all': see p. 290.

The word for '10' is likely to have been *ga*, which not only is given in Tibetan script (*dgah*, *dghah*) as the Hsi-hsia form (Nevsky, No. 145), but also occurs apparently in a Tibetan expression from the Nam region (*supra*, p. 135, n. 1). It will be = Hōrpa *sgā*, '10', &c. (see pp. 90, 93, &c.).

No expressions for '20', &c., are apparent, and there is no clear reason for attaching the meaning '100' to the hard-worked syllable *rgya*, or to any part of it, such as *ya*, attested by several languages. 'Thousand' should be something like (*s*)*tom*, (*s*)*ton*, which both occur, the first, however, not meaning 'thousand', the second perhaps a loan-word from Tibetan with that sense (see *infra*, pp. 233-4). On *myen* = 10,000 see *infra*, p. 234; on a suffix *-ke*, used with numerals to indicate a group, pp. 241, 272.



## V. PARTICLES

Forthwith apparent as a Particle is *yañ*, *hyañ*, in those cases where it occupies the *caesura* position, e.g. in:

stor-hto-rta-yañ-stor-to-hrun | ° | } 79-80  
 rta-hso-hnañ-yañ-gñi-hrdzum-doho || }  
 hkor-htañ-hkhen-yañ-sñañ-gyañ-gyañ } 92-3  
 hjañ-htañ-hkhen-yañ-swa-tseg-tseg || }  
 sñañ-ne-theñ-yañ-stor-dor-yon ||, 160

So also in:

hldyañ-hpu-hbri-re-meñi-klu-hcañ-yañ-stor-hdor-hyon ||, 161  
 and the two following lines: and frequently elsewhere, e.g. ll. 172, 255-6, 300, 306, 332.

In the first group of examples the concessive sense of the Tibetan *yañ*, 'although', 'even', seems to prevail, while elsewhere the alternative meaning, 'also', of the same may be more apt.

The equivalent form, *kyañ*, of the Tibetan seems attested by the parallelism in ll. 344-5:

hbo-hron-hrog-re-hlah-hkyañ-hras-re-hses-gñi-[hdzuñi ?] ||  
 rgyeb-hchi-hro-re-gdag-yañ-la-por-hses-hñi-hdzuñi ||

and the same may probably be seen elsewhere:

hdzañ-hkhor-hkrug-hkyañ . . . , 18  
 hkhor-kyañ-rweñi-re . . . , 98  
 hkrug-kyañ-hldom-re . . . , 371-2.

The form *gyañ* of Tibetan may possibly occur in:

g-rañ-ñag-hbo-gyañ . . . , 263.

*Tsam*, making a limit, 'only so much', &c., may perhaps be seen in:

gñi-brom-hnu-ge-hsor-htsam-bzod  
 'supports only a finger (weight)'

see p. 342.

By far the most common Particle is *ge*, very rarely (ll. 5, 8) *hge*, which is found all over the text, both in its favourite *caesura* position, as in:

hnañ-hchos-re-ge-hldañ-myi-ñeg, 159

and the two following verses, and also in other situations, e.g. in:

. . . hnañ-hrañ-ge-rwyin ||, 33  
 . . . hyos-htag-ge-hjoñ ||, 34  
 . . . hkye-ge-hmu ||, 39  
 hre-ge-rgyo-dze . . . , 48

ru-ge-ḥkrom-dze . . . 70

ḥjim-li-li-re-pa-la-la-ge-tho-rgyam-ge-ḥwad-re-smyi-ḥdze-ge-  
ḥkab ||, 109-10

ḥthañ-phu-ḥkam-ge-rīe-ḥbye-ḥkweḥe-ge-ḥthañ-ḥgam-ḥrīeḥe,  
130-1

ḥlo-ge-blah-ḥldo-ge-na-rīe-ne, 154-5.

ḥlab-ta-gboḥu-ste-ge-ḥthogs-re-ḥlab-ge-plaṇna, 181-2.

A word occurring in these ways, and with this frequency, must be a very general formal element. The first passage quoted, where in the *caesura* position it follows *re*, which itself so often, at the end of a subordinate clause, occupies that position, suggests that it was merely a Particle of emphasis; while the next examples indicate that it served, like the Tibetan *ni* in some cases, merely to mark off the Subject or Object from the Predicate. Perhaps we may combine the two situations in the statement that *ge* can mark off any item of a sentence from its Predicate and also in a similar way mark off a whole subordinate clause from its main clause, becoming in the latter case almost an equivalent to *re* and *ste* or *dze*, the former two of which, however, it can follow, and the latter it can precede. Very possibly it conferred a slight emphasis, like the Greek *γε*.

But why may not *ge* be a sign of Plurality, possibly = Chinese (in Tibetan script) *ke*, *keḥi*, 'all'? To this question it does not seem possible to give an immediate answer. But we may note that the *ge* can occur not only before the Postposition *dze*, as above, but also before the *ta*-formative, e.g. in:

g-roñ-ḥyed-ge-ta, 71

. . . ḥlde-ge-ḥtaḥ-ḥldon, 370, 371, 372.

The Particles *o*, *hi*, *ni*, *na*, *doñ*, have been discussed in connexion with the morphology of the sentence (pp. 175-9).

The two negatives *ma* and *myi* probably agree in their employment with the Tibetan *ma* and *mi/myi*, concerning which it is usually said that *ma* is used (a) in prohibitions, (b) with past tenses, (c) with the present tenses of certain verbs signifying 'is', while *mi* is used with Present and Future tenses. But naturally there are refinements; and in general statements even with present tenses *ma* is apt to intrude.

The Nam text has *ma* prohibitive in *ma-gzo*, l. 165 (see p. 199). Inconsistency in general statements is seen in *gtsaṇ-myi-ḥrgan*, 'grain does not mature', &c., ll. 159-60, as compared with *ḥldi-ma-ḥrtah* and *mo-ma-ḥthor*, 'the horse does not leap', &c., ll. 63, 71, 144.

## APPENDIX

Table showing phonetic restrictions upon the application of Prefixes in Tibetan (T), Tibetan manuscripts from Central Asia (T'), Nam (N), Hsi-hsia (H), and Žaň-žuh (Ž).

	g-	d-	b-	m-	h-	r-	l-	s-
k	N	TH	TH	T'	T'N	TNHŽ	TNŽ	TNŽ
kh	..	H	..	TH	TN	HŽ	Ž	T'NŽ
g	..	TNH	TH	T	TNH	TNHŽ	TN	TŽ
ñ	..	TH	H	TN	N	TNHŽ	T	T
c	TNH	..	T	T'	T'N	Ž	T	N
ch	T'N	..	T'	T	TN	Ž	..	..
j	H	..	H	T	TN	TNHŽ	T	..
ñ	TNH	..	T'	T	N	TNŽ	..	TNŽ
t	TNH	..	T	T'	T'N	TNHŽ	TNŽ	TNHŽ
th	T'	..	T'	T	TNH	Ž	..	Ž
d	TNHŽ	N	TH	T	TNH	TNHŽ	TNHŽ	TŽ
n	TNH	..	T'	T	N	TNHŽ	..	TŽ
p	..	T	N	..	T'N	NŽ	TNŽ	TNŽ
ph	N	T'	N	T'	TN	Ž	..	Ž
b	N	THŽ	N	..	TNH	TNŽ	TŽ	TNŽ
m	NH	THŽ	..	..	N	THNŽ	..	TNŽ
ts	TNH	..	T	T'	T'NH	TNHŽ	..	TNŽ
tsh	T'	H	T'H	T	TN	T'	..	Ž
dz	NH	..	H	T	TNH	TNHŽ	..	..
z	N	T(?)N(?)	..	..	N	T(?)N	..	..
č	TH	..	TNH	..	..	N	..	..
z	TNH	..	TN	..	N	H	..	..
y	TNH	..	..	..	N	..	..	..
r	NH	..	T'H	..	N	..	..	..
l	T'N	..	T'H	..	N	..	..	..
ś	TNH	..	TN	..	N	N	..	N
s	T'HNŽ	..	T'NH	..	N	N	..	..
h	..	..	..	..	..	Ž	T(?)H(?)Ž	..

1. It is not necessary here to consider the original form, presumably syllabic, or the original employment, of any of the Prefixes, matters which have been discussed by Conrady in his celebrated work *Eine indochinesische Causativ-Denominativ-Bildung* and by the late Dr. Wolfenden in his original and interesting *Outlines of Tibeto-Burman Linguistic Morphology*. We can refer only to their actual employment as apparent in the four earliest sources named above, where none of the Prefixes is ever syllabic.

2. *r*-, *l*-, *s*-, are here reckoned as Prefixes, and in all the four languages they are somewhat abundantly represented. For this reason they are likely to be the original common patrimony; and this inference is confirmed by two circumstances: (a) they always



immediately precede the root and are often preceded by one member of the remaining group, *g*-, *d*-, *b*-, *m*-, *h*-; (b) by the Tibetan grammarians they are not regarded as Prefixes, but treated as part of the root, not functional at all; and this treatment was, no doubt, as early as the alphabet itself, since in the script the *r*-, *l*-, *s*-, are superfixed to the following consonant in a compound *akṣara*, whereas those of the other group are prefixed as separate items. The Tibetans did not know that the *s*- of *spo*, the *r*- of *rduñ*, the *l*- of *lhen* were originally Prefixes: they speak only of the five, *g*-, *d*-, *b*-, *m*-, *h*-, ascribing to them functions, which they proceed to define.

3. The *Žaṅ-žun* manuscripts have no *b*-, *m*-, *h*-, and of *g*- they have only two occurrences (*gdan*, *gsad*), of *b*- likewise only two (*dbem*, *dmo*), all which occurrences, being found in a medical text, may well be borrowings. It is therefore probable that in *Žaṅ-žun*, and in any other original Tibeto-Burman languages of the western regions of 'Tibet', the whole group *g*-, *d*-, *b*-, *m*-, *h*- was lacking. This supports the suggestion of a difference of date between the two groups; but it does not follow that the members of the later group discharged the same functions as had originally been discharged by those of the earlier: the contrary is suggested by the case of the secondary (syllabic) Prefixes in Hsi-fan.

In the use of *r*-, *l*-, *s*-, *Žaṅ-žun* has the following combinations not allowed in Tibetan:

*rkh*, *rc*, *rch*, *rth*, *rp*, *rph*, *rh*, *lkh*  
*skh*, *sth*, *sph*

of which *rkh* recurs in Hsi-hsia, *rp* in Nam.

4. Taking together the other three languages, we find that *m*- is practically confined to Tibetan, the single occurrence (*mñar*) in Nam being probably Tibetan, and the *mkhi* (no meaning) and *mkhhe/mkhwe*, 'play', 'sport' (Nevsky, No. 73) of Hsi-hsia in Tibetan transcription being problematical.

In the Tibetan verbal system *m*- is credited with a function, not temporal, or modal, but roughly definable as indicative of non-activity or state. Only a single instance is given (*mñags*);<sup>1</sup> but from literature we might adduce some other cases of *m*- in the verb-paradigm. It may be noted that in Tibetan *m*-, when prefixed to nasals *ñ*, *ṇ*, *n*, is often a substitute for *b*-, which is sometimes preserved in T'NH.

Functional Prefixes should be primarily indifferent to phonetical inconvenience. But in Tibetan the earliest grammarians, while stating functions for the Prefixes *g*-, *d*-, *b*-, *m*-, *h*-, have also announced phonetical restrictions upon the use of those Prefixes, which restric-

<sup>1</sup> See *Les Ślokas grammaticaux de Thonmi Sambhoṭa*, par Jacques Bacot, p. 60.

tions have been accepted in the common orthography. This inconsistency has been noted by Conrady (pp. 19, 28 sqq.) and Wolfenden (pp. 12, 18, 40), both of whom have questioned the originality of the restrictions, the former also remarking (p. 46) that phonetical incompatibility in the occurrence of two Prefixes, such that one can precede those consonants which the other cannot, is a sign of identity of function. It is, of course, obvious that such collocations as *gk-*, *gph-*, *gb-*, *bp-*, *bph-*, *bb-*, though in Nam they all actually occur, must ultimately have been found intolerable and may have been avoided even at a sacrifice of a consistent discrimination of the functions. The resultant system, especially as seen in the four-stem Transitive verb, is expounded in the native, and all the modern, grammars.

According to the system, while *g-*, *d-*, *b-*, all alike imply that the verbal action is one which has an agent, *g-* and *d-* are used to form Future tenses (i.e. they have a Prospective value) and *b-* forms Perfects (i.e. Preterites or Aorists):

Thus from *dul* we have:

Present *hdul*, Preterite *btul*, Future *gdul*, Imperative *thul*.

But, when the root has a guttural initial, *g-* is excluded by the phonetic rule, and *d* is substituted, resulting in:

Present *hgul*, Preterite *bkal*, Future *dgal*, Imperative *khol*;

and when the initial is a labial, both *b* and *g* are excluded, and the outcome is as in:

Present *hbul*, Preterite *phul*, Future *dbul*, Imperative *phul*,

the Preterite having the aspirate *ph* in place of the inconvenient combination *bp-*. There are, of course, various other schemes corresponding to other forms of the root.

Forms of roots with initial *tenuis aspirata* replacing their initial *media* are, no doubt, very ancient, irrespective of Conrady's theory of their origin (from *s* and *media*): and the simplest explanation of the divergence in the Preterite of verbs with labial initial is to suppose that in all the three above cases the Preterite had originally the aspirate together with the *b-* Prefix, thus:

\**bthal*, \**bkhal*, \**bphul*

and that *bth*, *bkh*, became *bt*, *bk*, while *bph*, as was natural, simply lost its *b*. The change of *bth* > *bt*, *bkh* > *bk*, may have been merely phonetical. If it had been convenient to substitute for the *b* of \**bphul*, as for the *g* of \**gdul*, a *d*, the Preterite would perhaps have become \**dpul* in place of *phul*.

The thus posited combinations *bth-*, *gth-*, &c., might have disappeared prior to the introduction of writing in Tibet. But in fact they are to be found abundantly in the written documents and other manuscripts of the seventh to ninth century A.D. As the T entries



in the table show, the aspirate rule does not exist so far as these writings are concerned, although the occurrence of the *tenuis* discloses the fact that the transition *bth-*, *gth-*, &c., to *bt-*, *gt-*, was already effected; whether the matter is one of dialectical divergence or of period need not be considered. But it should be noted that in respect also of the Prefixes *m-* and *h-* the spelling of the documents and manuscripts is similarly disregarding of the aspirate rule. Nor is this all: from the table it may be seen, as noted above, that in the case of the Prefixes of the old group, *r-*, *l-*, *s-*, the *Žaṅ-žun* spelling has no regard to the aspirate rule, which in the Tibetan grammar applies to these also; and in the Tibetan documents and in Hsi-hsia and Nam there is the same freedom. Whether the Tibetan changes of aspirate to *tenuis* in the combinations in question (*bth-*, *gth-*, *rth-*, *lth-*, *sth-*, &c.) was phonetical or, in whole or part, otherwise, depends upon etymologies and need not be considered here: nor need we consider the *media* retained in the Futures *gdul*, &c.; that characteristic of the Future may have antedated the use of the *g-*, *b-*, *d-* group of Prefixes, since in cases where the aspirate is taken as belonging to the root, e.g. in:

Present *hthub*, Preterite *btubs*, Future *gtub*, Imperative *hthub*  
we see that *gth-* becomes *gt-*, just as *bth-* becomes *bt-*.

But, secondly, the possibility that from roots with labial initial an inconvenient Preterite such as *bphul* could have been made workable by substitution of *d-* for *b-*, just as it was substituted in the Future for *g-* in *ggum*, &c., and in *bgul*, &c., was likewise realized in practice. For this *d-*, as a substitute for *b-* in the Preterite of labials, is exemplified in the documents by *dblanis* (*√blan*) = Nam *gblan* and *dphrogs* (*√hphrog*), of which the latter is not allowed by the phonetical rules. We even find *drña*, *drgyal*, written in place of *rña*, *rkyal*.

It appears therefore that in the verbal paradigm *d-* is a supplementary or substitute Prefix, due to phonetical convenience. Where it appears as an alternative (*dgod*/*rgod*, &c.) in the Present and is retained throughout the paradigm, the case is not necessarily otherwise, since it is recognized that such verb-stems, like those with *g-*, *b-*, *m-*, may be secondary generalizations. The *d-* need not be of purely phonetical origin or evoked from nowhere, if outside the verbal system it can be shown to be in some cases original. But we cannot rely upon instances such as *dgu*, '9'; and we must at least realize that in the eastern part of 'Tibet' the *d-* neither exists at present nor appears ever to have existed. Even in Khams it is regularly represented by a guttural (*gh*, *Linguistic Survey of India*, III. i, p. 137)<sup>1</sup> while in 'Tangut' (*rgiu*, '9', &c.) and 'Amdoan' (*rka* = *dkah*, &c.) *r-* appears. There seems to be no trace of the *d-* in the Rgyal-roñ,

<sup>1</sup> That the *d-* was from the first non-existent in Khams was considered possible by Jaeschke (Berlin Academy *Monatsbericht*, 1867, p. 165).



where the dominant Prefix is *sh* (*ś*), or in any 'Ch'iang' dialect, and in 'Eastern Tibetan' it is absent, like the other Prefixes. It should not, indeed, be overlooked that in Tibetan transcriptions of Hsi-hsia there are not a few words with *d-* prefixed to *k* or *kh* or *g* or *b* or *m*, also two instances of *dñ-* and one of *dtsh-*. But in the present position of Hsi-hsia philology, when the meanings of many of the words in question are unknown, the spellings capricious, and when the value of the Prefixes in the Tibetan transcriptions is disputed, nothing can be ventured in regard to this matter. It will be seen that, except in the case of *dkh-* (aspirate!) and *dtsh-* (for *gtsh-* ?), the spelling observes the Tibetan phonetical restrictions, a circumstance all the more suspicious as in *dmu*, 'fire', we have the Tibetan *dm-*, while *gmuh*, with the expected *gm-* (occurring also in Nam), is also recorded.

The Prefixes *d-* and *m-* may thus be regarded as foreign to three of the four ancient languages and confined to Tibetan—it is immaterial if in other (southern) Tibeto-Burman areas equivalents of them can be traced. Concerning *h-*, which is abundantly represented in Tibetan and Hsi-hsia and extraordinarily so in Nam, it may be sufficient to refer to the statement *supra* (p. 76), where it is shown that in the form of a nasal element this Prefix persists widely in the modern pronunciation of the eastern Tibet and the Tibeto-Chinese borderland. Conrady (p. 20) and Wolfenden (pp. 31-3) have suggested for it original functional values: or was it merely a phonetic feature? In any case it must have been extremely ancient.

5. There are some further particulars in which the Tibetan phonetical restrictions are unoriginal:

(a) Tibetan *gz-*, *gz-*, *bz-*, *bz-*, are derived from *gj-*, *gdz-*, *bj-*, *bdz-*, as is clear from the verb-paradigms such as:

*hjog/gzag/bzag*, *hɛzin/gzuñ/bzuñ*

and from other cases. In Hsi-hsia (Tibetan transcription) we actually find *gj-*, *gdz-*, *bj-*, *bdz-*, in Nam *gdz-*: even in Tibetan we have *gjen* written for *gcen*, *chen*.

(b) Tibetan *gw-*, *gr-*, *gl-*, *bl-* were in some instances formed from roots with initial *w*, *r*, *l*, analogous to Tibetan *g-y-*: an instance is *glan/blan* from *√len*. The combinations *g-w-*, *g-r-*, occur in Nam and in Hsi-hsia, and the latter has even *g-l-* and *b-l-*.

(c) The form *nphro* occurring in a carefully written Tibetan text with the clearly intended sense of an abstract noun of action, 'a going forward', shows that the functional value of even *m-* could prevail against the phonetical objection to its being prefixed to a labial.

6. As to the temporal function of *g-*, *d-*, *b-*, in the Tibetan verb paradigm doubt has been expressed by both Conrady (pp. 19, 28 sqq.)

and Wolfenden (pp. 49, 53). But such doubt must be regarded as applying to the original signification of those Prefixes, and not to their earliest attested usage; for not only are the Prefixes freely used to form Preterite (Aorist) and Future (Prospective) tenses, wherever phonetically legitimate, from verbs with initials of all classes, and from verbs with compound initials—producing forms such as *brk-*, *bsk-*, *blk-*, *bst-*, *brd-*, *bsp-* and even *gst-*, *grt-*, *glt-*,—in Hsi-hsia even *grz-*,—but we can produce ancient texts where *g/b* (or *d*) forms of a single verb are used antithetically to mark a temporal contrast. This proves that a Tense value of the Prefixes was actual; but not that it was original—even the Indo-European Aorist and Perfect were not originally Tenses—and another element in the signification of *g-*, *d-*, *b-*, and also of *m-*, is, as we have seen, defined by the Tibetan grammarians.

7. In regard to *r-*, *l-*, *s-*, which for the etymologist, though not for the Tibetan grammarians, are Prefixes, the only question in connexion with the four languages is whether the Prefixes have in them become merely lexical or retain traces of a living function. In Tibetan the *r-* and *l-* have not hitherto been credited with a historically living function; but, as regards *s-*, the large number of forms such as *stu*, *sdu*, *spo*, &c., with Transitive sense and paired with Intransitives such as *hthu*, *hdu*, *hpho*, &c., has long been recognized as proving a Transitive function of the *s-*; and that function must have been active down to a time not long anterior to the historical period. Since *r-* and *s-* do not appear to have been phonetically 'incompatible' or mutually supplementary, their original functions were presumably different.

## V. THE LANGUAGE: ETYMOLOGY

To describe the grammatical system of a language without knowing the meanings of the words may well seem to be a hazardous adventure. But the converse is equally true; and, as has been mentioned, the formal features, being of a general nature, are more likely to reveal themselves upon a first survey than the meanings of individual words. In the present case, moreover, we have the advantage that the language by its phonology declares itself to be not only a Tibeto-Burman dialect, but also one at approximately the same stage of development as the earliest known Tibetan. Hence there is a plausibility in the identification of *prima facie* similar features both of grammatical structure and of word-forms. A number of such 'self-evident' etymologies have been cited and used in the preceding discussions. But selected particulars may seem open to doubt until confirmed by a wider etymological knowledge of the language. To a certain extent a phonological ratio between two kindred languages may be established through syntactical equivalences elicited by a general survey: thus the postpositions *na*, *la*, *te*, the verb-suffix *-s*, and particles such as *ni*, *yañ*, common to Tibetan and Nam, throw some light upon the developments of vowels and consonants in the latter, and so serve to control further etymologizing. But without independent ascertainment of meanings a comparison of forms is in a measure conjectural: and this is notably the case in regard to monosyllabic languages, where so commonly the monosyllables have each several significations.

Before discussing the further ways of investigating and verifying meanings it will be convenient to mention some principles which may lend useful guidance:

- (1) Correspondence of Nam expressions to Tibetan has enhanced probability when:
  - (a) the expressions are known to have been more or less contemporary, which practically means that the Tibetan ones belong to the earliest records of the language;
  - (b) the expressions are attested in the same area of 'Tibet' and have therefore a chance of being 'regional'. And this factor applies also to usages of modern dialects which are not evidenced in old Tibetan;



- (c) the time-factor in (a) and the regional factor in (b) are combined, thereby increasing their force.
- (2) Probability of equivalence increases somewhat with the complexity of the forms compared. Thus, it is far more likely that a Nam word *rdzogs* should be equivalent to a Tibetan word *rdzogs* than would be the case between *rog* and *rog*. In Tibeto-Burman, however, this argument is weakened by the frequency of homophones: thus, there were in Tibetan at least five different words *rgyañ*. The general probability applies in particular to:
- (a) phrases or compounds: thus, there is a greater likelihood of connexion between Nam *hldañ-krañ*, proved by repetition to be a standing phrase, and Tibetan *drañ-mkhañ* from the same region and similarly established as a phrase, than there would have been between the members of the two compounds individually;
- (b) words and phrases which by virtue of some relation of antithesis, &c., are in pairs or groups; thus, if a Nam word is identified with a Tibetan word meaning 'long', the probability of the conjecture is increased if there are on both sides related forms which can unite in the meaning 'short'. In the case of Nam this consideration (b) is rendered important by the antithetic style of the verses, which corresponds to what has been remarked elsewhere in the Tibetan area.<sup>1</sup> For example in the passage (II. 124-7):

hldañ-ḥkrañ-ḥsad-na-hldañ-ḥkrañ-ḥśaḥ  
 hldañ-krañ-ḥwe-dze-hldañ-slaḥ-ḥkeḥe  
 hldañ-krañ-ḥko-dze-stor-hldañ-ḥphyar  
 hldañ-krañ-spo-dze-stor-ḥgu-ḥbo ||  
 hldañ-krañ-ḥnam-dze-stor-ḥdgu-ḥdor |||

it is immediately evident that there is a relation of antithesis (of fact or logic) between the successive predicates *ḥsad*, *ḥwe*, *ḥko*, *spo*, *ḥnam*; and this is a factor which will assist or control the determination of their meanings.

<sup>1</sup> A. H. Francke, *Der Frühlingsmythus der Kesarage* (Mémoires de la Société Finno-Ougrienne xv, Helsingfors, 1900), p. vi, *Buddhistische Volkslieder aus Ladakh* (Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin xxx), pp. 118, 121, *Ladakhi Songs*, i, Leh, 1899, p. 2. See also Rockhill, *Diary*, p. 168-9.

- (3) Etymologies which have been established as certain furnish rules for judgement in similar cases: thus, if we know, as we may, that the Nam antithesis *hbri(bri)/hbrah(brah)* is identical with the Tibetan antithesis *hbri(bri)/bra*, then we anticipate that in other Nam words initial *br* will have retained its *r* (which would not be the case in Hsi-hsia, Hsifan in general, Lo-lo, Mo-so, or modern Central Tibetan) and that final *i* and *a* will have remained intact.
- (4) Phonological divergence in particular cases ceases to be a cause of difficulty, if we can show regional evidence for the change which it is proposed to allow. Thus, the Nam word *rgyeb* may be identical, as we have reason to suppose, with Tibetan *rgyab*, 'back', 'put back', &c., because in the Koko-nor region the changes *-ab > -eb*, *-ag > -eg*, are evidenced in early times. We here neglect the consideration that the *e*-form may be original, since even in Tibetan itself many *a*-forms are related to *e*-verbs (e.g. *khab*, *kag*, to *hkhebs*, *hgegs*).

Where such substitutions, e.g. of *r* as a Prefix for *s*, *d*, and sometimes *m* and *b*,<sup>1</sup> are characteristic of the Nam language in general, it is unnecessary to consider them except as indications of regional tendencies. But where in the Nam itself we have to account for something unexpected, it may be evidential to cite such phenomena of local and contemporary Tibetan, more especially when they occur in identical words; for instance, the Tibetan manuscripts have the, perhaps original, form *hdre*, 'lead', 'draw', instead of the normal *hdren*; they have *r*-less forms, *hdzoñ*, *gyud*, of *rdzoñ*, 'castle', *rgyud*, 'race'; occasional substitution of *i* for *e* (*stigs*, *sis*, *cis*); confusion (*bran* for *brān*, *dgum* for *dgun*), loss (*dgu* for *dguñ*), or mistaken addition (*rgum* for *dgu*) of final *m*, *n*, *ñ*; confusion (by no means unexampled in ordinary Tibetan) of *ś* and *s* (*bsen* for *bśen*), *dr-* and *tr-*, *lt-* and *ld-*, and so forth. *Lh* also is of doubtful origin in Tibetan. It would be superfluous here to cite many of these numerous peculiarities, which are being summarized elsewhere: they may be adduced singly where applicable.

- (5) Orthographical fluctuation in the Nam text has been discussed *supra* (pp. 117 sqq.), where an endeavour has been made to show that it is not unlimited. As between *tenuis*

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 347 sqq.

and *tenuis aspirata* it is extremely frequent: *hkh*, *hch*, *hth*, *hph*, *htsh*, can *always* be written *hk*, *hc*, *ht*, *hp*, *hts*, while the converse, and also confusion of *tenuis* and *media*, are rarer.

In this matter of orthography, where the facts are established from the Nam text itself, it is not necessary, but interesting, to mention that the Tibetan manuscripts exhibit substantially the same amount and varieties of fluctuation.

# I. ANTITHESIS AND CONTEXT

OF the above considerations the one most immediately applicable is that of antithesis, whereof we may now proceed to adduce some instances:

1. *Hbra*; *hbri*; *hyañ*; *mor*; *htham*; *mug*; *hrah*; *gsaṅ*; *hre*.

Attention has been previously (*JRAS.* 1939, p. 197) called to the fact that the Berlin fragment commences with four sentences as follows:

mor-ma-de-klo . . .  
 yañ-ma-ji-de . . .  
 bri-ma-zor-de . . .  
 hbra-ma-gar-de . . .

and two others (successive) begin:

mug-tse-khyig-re-te . . .  
 htham-tse-re-te . . .

while in our manuscript we have successive verses beginning (ll. 225-8):

mor-hgu-hrdzor . . .  
 hyañ-hrah-hsaṅ-re . . .  
 mug-hgu-rdzor . . .  
 htham-rah-gsaṅ-re . . .  
 hbri-hgu-rdzor . . .  
 brah-hrah-gsaṅ-re . . .

The former shows a general correspondence or antithesis among the four items *mor*, *yañ*, *bri*, *hbra*, and then a like relation between *mug* and *htham*: the latter passage shows a correspondence between *mor*, *mug*, *hbri*, and a correspondence between *hyañ*, *htham*, and *brah*, combined with an antithesis between the two groups.

In Tibetan *hbri* means 'diminish', 'grow less', while *bra* is 'have or be in great plenty', whence come *bra-bo*, 'buckwheat', and—since most Tibetan nouns in -s are really Aorist forms of



verb-roots—*hbras*, 'rice', *hbras-bu*, 'fruit'. Accordingly we see why in Nam *hbri* and *hbra* can be contrasted; and at the same time we understand why a place in the Koko-nor region may have been named *Bra-ma-thaṅ*,<sup>1</sup> 'Plain of Plenty'. It follows also that the three words *hyaṅ*, *htham*, *braḥ* denote things approved, while *mor*, *mug*, *hbri* are things disliked. The three former are followed severally by the phrase *hraḥ-gsaṅ(hsaṅ)-re*, the latter by *hgu-rdzor(hrdzor)*.

Provisionally we do not know the meanings of *hyaṅ* and *htham* or of the phrase *hraḥ-gsaṅ-re*, though the last may suggest Tib. *ra-gsaṅ*, 'place purified (or secret)'. The antithesis between *hyaṅ* and *mor* is recurrent, being found also in ll. 9-10, 40-1, 286-7, 388, of which the last, the most convenient for citation, is,

*mor-tsaḥ-khrom-re || hyaṅ-tsa-hcer ||*

In Tibetan *g-yaṅ* signifies 'happiness', 'good luck', 'blessing', 'prosperity'; but for its opposite, *mor*, we can adduce nothing nearer than *dmod/rmod*, 'blame', 'reproach', 'curse'.<sup>2</sup> Tibetan *mug* is 'gloom', and the related *rmugs*, 'fog', 'stupid', 'sluggish', which occurs in Amdoan as *rmūkha* (Prejevalsky, ii, p. 137), would well suit the expression *mug-bu*, 'stupid children' (?), in the Berlin fragment (l. 12). *Htham* will probably be connected with Tib. *htham* 'unite', *hthams*, 'clasp in affection', whence come the words *thams-cad*, *tham-zin*, 'all', 'whole'; for this meaning prevails in the Tibetan manuscripts. Thus *htham-hraḥ* is the paradisaical 'place, or state, of union' contrasted with the dissensions of the Evil Age. In the Berlin Fragment (l. 18) *htham-gnam-tsa-ge* means 'the undivided celestial folk'.

It may be observed that in ll. 132-3,

*hbri-hldi-hthaṅ-re-hre-hldi-hyaḥ*,

*hbri* occurs in antithesis to *hre*, which will be apt, if *hre* is equivalent to Tibetan *re*, 'hope'. On *Hbra* as a local and tribal name see pp. 307-8, 319-20.

2. *Hbri*; *hpu*; *hpo*; *hpho*; *hdzoḥu*, *hjoḥu*; *hjo*.

In another group of passages *hbri* is antithetic to *hpu*:

*hldyaṅ-hpu-hbri-re*, 150, 161, 218, 343.

*hbri-hšehe-hpu[-]r[e]*, 163.

*bri-gše-hpuhi-re*, 329.

These must all belong together, especially in view of the adjacency

<sup>1</sup> Mentioned in the Tibetan MS. *Chronicle*.

<sup>2</sup> But the Rgyal-roṅ language (Jyā-ruṅ) has *mōr*, 'night', and *mōr*, 'old'.

of ll. 161 and 163. A predominant meaning of *pu* in Tibeto-Burman is 'man', 'male' (Tib. *po/pho*), and, if *hbri/bri* can mean 'female', we obtain the reasonable renderings:

- 'the *hldyañ* males being (weak) females',
- 'the wise (*hsehe*, *gse*) females being males'.

But Tibetan *hbri* does denote a female, namely the yak-cow, and it appears in the name *Hbri-chu*, 'Yak-cow river', of the Yang-tse-chiang in its Tibetan course. In the Nam passages either the word denotes females in general or the reference is to females of the yak-species. The combination of meanings in Nam *hbri/bri* confirms the identity of the word with the Tibetan forms.

Apart from explicit antithesis, *hpu* = 'male' is clear also in:

*hpu-hbroñ-rkom-ge*, 157, 'the male yak-bull being killed'.

One other meaning of *hpu*, namely 'bird' (= Tib. *bya*, i.e. *bwya*,<sup>1</sup> Hsi-hsia (Laufer, No. 32) *wo-yao*, Lepcha *fo*, and *pu*, *wu*, &c., in a considerable number of Tibeto-Burman dialects) has been mentioned elsewhere (*JRAS.* 1939, pp. 215-16): it is to be seen in:

*ši-hchos-re-ge-hpu-myi-lidin* ||, 160

'Born in winter, a bird does not fly'.

But Tibetan *phu*, 'elder brother' (= Hsi-hsia *phu/pho/phoh*), *bu*, 'child', *phu*, 'upper country', *phu* (*hbud*), 'blow the fire', not to mention Hsi-hsia *wu*, 'father', &c., and the possibilities connected with *bu*, warn us to expect other significations of Nam *hpu*, which it is advisable to reserve for a separate consideration.

A form *hpo/hpho*, 'male', 'heroic', which in Tibetan is usual and gave rise to the masculine suffix *po*, seems clear in:

*hpo-hldah-stor-[re]-hrah-h-ton-gsohu* || *dze-rñe-ge-hgo* || 358

'the heroic ones being lost, over the station-abandoning survivors the evil are head'.

The same must be recognized in:

*hpo-hldi-nan-re-hyah-hñehi-hñahd*, 115-16

'males being here within, fear (Tib. *ya-na* p. 191) evaporates' (because, as indicated in the following line, it is too late, the evil being already done: *hñahd* = *hñad*, p. 321)

*hpho-hldir-hsag-ge-so-hna-hstor*, 117

'males being here collected, the *so-hna* is lost'

<sup>1</sup> Since, however, *bya*, *byehü*, has been given (*supra*, pp. 131-2) as a Nam word, it is possibly to be distinguished from *pu*, one of the two as meaning 'fowl'; 'bird' and 'fowl' are often discriminated in Hsi-fan, &c. The distinction of the two forms in Nam may have been originally dialectical.



and hence also in:

rie-hpo-hldo-ge, 177, 'enemies brave'

rie-hpo-hñe-ge, 361, 'enemies brave, evil'

while in *ryo-po*, l. 181, '*ryo-man*', the word approaches the later Tibetan use as a suffix. Whether in *hpo(po)-rbom*, l. 317, the sense of 'male', 'hero', is present, or there is merely a miswriting of the commoner *hbo-bon* is not certain. In *hpu-hpos*, l. 140, the usual *hpu(hphu)-hbos*, 'big man', is obviously intended: on *hbos* see *infra* (pp. 230-1).

Still another word plainly meaning 'male', namely *hdzohu/hjohu*, is contrasted with *hbri* in:

hbri-re-hrdyam-re-hkhah-hldah-hñahghi ||

hdzohu-ro-hldi-re-hjohu(hdzohu) || hwa-hkah

hdzehu-rje-hbro-re-hdzohu-hto-hrun, 137-8.

'All the females being *hrdyam*, the speakers should have the say (Tib. *ñag*, "voice", "speech"):

This being a place for males, males have to act and speak (?):

When a weak (Tib. *gze-re*) chief flees, one must be a man,'

and this is reinforced by:

hdzohu-hkru-hyog-re . . . hbri-hdzohu-kyim-re, 324-5.

Clearly this *hdzohu*, *hjohu* has nothing to do with *rdzo* = Tib. *mdzo*, 'the cross between a yak-bull and a cow', which, moreover, seems always to be spelled with *r*-. But it has also to be distinguished from a *hjo/jo*, meaning 'chieftain', and from another *hjo/hdzo/hdzoho*, as well as from a *gzo*, all which must be discussed *infra* (pp. 274-5, 334-5).

These groups of words illustrate rather noticeably the multiple meanings which in monosyllabic languages are so commonly found attached to single forms. But they also illustrate the opposite feature, namely plurality of synonyms of common terms. What is the difference between *hpu*, *hpo(hpho)*, *hdzo*, all meaning 'male'? Moreover, we shall encounter (p. 238) another word, *tsu*, having the same sense.

There seems to be no doubt as to the meanings. For *hpu* external equivalents have been cited, while *po/pho*, is well known in Tibetan. *Hdzo* is no less sure: it corresponds to Hsi-hsia *bdzo* (Nevsky, No. 42 = Laufer, No. 45 *tsu-ni*, i.e. *ni-tsu*), Go-lok *tcho-mo*, Mānyak *chhoḥ*, Mu-nia *ts'o*, and many Lo-lo and Mo-so forms assembled by Laufer. The *tsu* transcribed by Laufer from Chinese may, if not intended for *dzo*, be a dialectical variant, corresponding to the *tsu* of the Nam text.



It may be suggested that strictly *dzo* denotes 'man', i.e. male human being, while the wider antithesis 'male/female' is represented, as in Tibetan, by *pho/mo*. *Phu* in Tibetan properly means 'upper' in a local sense and so is used with the meaning 'elder', as antithetic to *nu*, 'younger': it is perhaps identical in origin with *pho*, which form is perhaps to be seen in Tib. *la-po*, 'high pass (or peak)', Nam *la-po* (*infra*, p. 269), and certainly in *pho-bo*, = *phu-bo*, 'elder brother'.

*Hpu* = *bu*, 'son', 'child', is supported by antithesis to *hpha*, 'father', in l. 183, and by connexion with mother in l. 184. It is also possible, as an alternative to 'man' in:

*gsu-prom-hño*[-][r[e]-]tsah-*hpu-hdrom*, 64-5

'the friends to give them welcome (*gsu-prom*) were children and underlings (Tib. *drum/druñ*)'; but 'underling persons' may be meant.

3. *hño*, *hñoño*; °*sta*, °*sto*; °*hkhog*, °*hkhob*; °*hdañ*, *wa-hdañ*; *rñe*, *hrñe*; *gśaṅ*, *hśaṅ*; *hśag*; *hwyir*; *hdzar*; *hdza*; *htrog*; *hram*; *mo-laṅ*; *byu(r)*; *hrub*; *skyaṅ*.

*ño*, and *rñe* are antithetic in ll. 85-6:

*hño-sto-ge-hśag-dze-rñe-hwe-ge-hwyir* ||

*hño-sta-glom-dze-krañ-nur-nur*

*rñe-sta-glañ-dze-hne-rñe-bi-rñe-bi*

and this is a standing antithesis, as is shown by:

*hño-stor-htoñ-re-hrñe-hldañ-hkhyed*, 119

*hño-stor-hkhyed-re-hrñe-hldañ-hkhrañ* } 127-8

*so-hnañ-hstor-dze-hño-stor-hprom* ||

*hthañ-hrgam-hkad-re-rñe-re-hño* ||, 133

(cf. *hrgyañ-rñe-re-hñoño* ||, 320)

*hño-stor-hthor-bśi-ta-ston*  
*rñe-hldañ-hkhar-hmye-htaḥ-rgyen* } 196-7

... *hñoño-hjam-re-hldañ* } 273-4

... *rñe-hdzam-re-hldañ* }

*stañ-hro-hra-dze-hrñeḥ-hño-ge-hpom* ||, 347

*hrñe-hño-hdzar-dze-hldeḥ-ge-htaḥ-hldon* ||, 372.

The same antithesis can be traced in ll. 56, 143-4.

But *hño* is also antithetic to *gśaṅ* in:

*gśaṅ-ra-gśaṅ-na-gśaṅ-taḥ-hrteḥu* || } 264-5

*hño-ra-hñon-kya-hñon-ta-gblañ* }

*gśaṅ-ra-gśaṅ-ge-gśaṅ-htag-htos* } 278-80

*hño-raḥ-hño-kya-hño-htag-htona* || }

*gśaṅ-hraḥ-htoñ-kya-hñoño-hjam-re-hldañ*, 273

and this is quite decisive. For *gsaṅ*, *ḥsaṅ* cannot mean anything but 'enmity', 'hate', as will be shown *infra* (p. 223).

In Tibetan *no* means 'face', and it has many compounds and also derivative senses, e.g. 'person', 'public', &c. But the form of the suffix *sto* points, as has been explained *supra* (p. 185), to a word ending in *s*; and we have the likewise common word *nos*, 'side', so that *nos-(s)to* would mean 'those on one's side': cf. Tibetan *nos-rgyud*, 'personally', *nos-zin*, 'selfish', *nos-loṅ*, 'self-interested'. *Rñe* is attested regionally<sup>1</sup> in the sense of 'fiend', and we see the appropriateness of the expression (ll. 119, 127) *rñe-ḥldaṅ*, 'fiend (enemy)-rise', since in Tibetan *ldaṅ*, *laṅ* is the regular term for the 'rising', appearing, of a fiend. This gives us:

*rñe-re-ḥno*,<sup>2</sup> 133 (ḥnoḥo, 320) = 'enemies are friends'.

*ḥnoḥo-hjam* . . . *rñe-ḥdzam* (= *hjam*) = 'friends mild . . . enemies [become] mild',

and since *ḥśag* can be = Tib. *śags* 'talk', and *ḥwyir* = Tib. *ḥbyer*, 'escape',

*ḥno-sto-ge-ḥśag-dze-rñe-ḥwe-ge-ḥwyir* ||, 85 = 'while friends talk,<sup>3</sup> those who do enmity escape'.

The passage:

*ḥrñe-ḥno-ḥdzar-dze*, 372,

where *ḥdzar* can phonologically be = Tib. *hjar*, 'stick together' (see Ś. C. Das's *Dictionary* and *infra*, p. 248)—so that the sense will be:

'when foes and friends cohere':

brings in further expressions for 'friend' and 'enemy', with confirmation in regard to *ḥdzar*. For in l. 376 we have

*ḥdza-ḥtrog-ḥram-ḥdzar*,

which conveys the same sense: *ḥram*, which might correspond to Tibetan *ran*, 'right', 'proper' (though another explanation is probable), certainly recurs in the Nam text with the signification 'agreeable' or the like, and *ḥdza* is the inevitable Nam equivalent of Tib. *mdzaḥ*, 'amicable', 'affection', 'friendship': while *ḥtrog*, whether connected with Tib. *ḥdrog*, 'wince', 'shudder' (*dr* and *tr* being in the manuscript practically interchangeable) or a form of the celebrated Central Asian word *drug*, can independently be shown (in ll. 146, 326, 338) to mean 'enmity' or 'enemy'.

<sup>1</sup> In the Tibetan MSS.

<sup>2</sup> In the Berlin fragment (l. 22) we find the phrase *no-re-rñe*.

<sup>3</sup> Apparently antithetic to *ḥno-sto-ge-rdo-re*, l. 84, 'when friends dare' (Tib. *do*, as on p. 296).

Nothing, of course, prevents the recognition of *hño* in the sense of 'face': and this sense is apparent in the expressions *hño-hkhog* (ll. 251, 341), which may be = Tib. *ño-lkog*, 'openly and secretly', and *hño-hkhob* = Tib. *ño-khob*, 'conceal face'; it is also conspicuous in the line:

*hrta-wa-hdañ-dze-hño-hdañ-prom*, 258

'the horses upon [their companions'] necks made a face-rest (*hño-hdañ*)';

for this action of horses in company is mentioned in one of the Tibetan texts, and *wa-hdañ* may very possibly mean 'neck', being equivalent to Hsi-hsia *o(wo, ño)-diñ* (Laufer, No. 106) = Tib. *o-don, ho-don*, 'windpipe'.

With the original signification of Tib. *ños*, 'side', 'direction', we have:

*mo-lañ-byu[r]-re-hldi-hdah-ma-ge-hño-bro-hrub-re-myag-gre-skyañ*, 108-9

'the wretched lone females who are here, rushing in flight in (all) directions, need protection from the vile (?) bears'

(*mo-lañ* = Tib. *mo-rañ*, 'lone female'; *byu[r]* = Tib. *byur*, 'wretched'; *bro* = Tib. *hbro(s)*, 'flee', *ño-bro* = Tib. *ños-śor*, 'flee into space (?)', 'disappear'; *hrub* = Tib. *rub*, 'rush in a body'; *skyañ* = Tib. *skyoñ, bskyoñs, bskyañ*, 'protect',—the last three recurrent in the Nam text).

The 'lone females' in the case are mares, and the danger to them from bears is illustrated by the incident related in Filchner, *Das Rätsel des Matschü*, pp. 85, 92.

Also the phrase *hri-hño*, l. 299, will mean simply 'mountain side'.

4. *ne; ñe, ñes, rñe; gsañ, hsañ; hsañ-ma*.

The occurrences of this group are somewhat akin to, and intermingled with, those of *ño/rñe*. For we find the above-cited:

*rñe-sta-glañ-dze-hne-rñeñi-rñeñi*, 86

and also

*hlo-ge-blah-hldo-ge-na-rñe-ne*, 154

*hrñe-gsañ-hgre-dze-ñe-hkyeb-hkyeb*, 16-17

*hsah-yer-hldañ-dze-hrñe-hldañ-ne*, 141

*hce-hmu-gdag-re-rñe (= rñe)-ne-hñoñu*, 206

and we further find *rñe* associated with *htrog* in:

*trog hjo-rñe-dze*, 201.



But the association within the group is constant: together we find *ne* and *ñe/rñe* in:

- rñe-ñne-ñrmag-dze*, 146
- rñe-ne-g-ri-dze*, 301
- ñce-ñmu-gdag-re-rñe-ne-ñrehi*, 200 (cf. l. 206, *supra*)
- trog-ñjo-rñe-dze-pyi-rjes-ne-ñcer*, 201-2
- sñañ-ñe[-]ne-ñldir*, 328;

and there are parallel expressions:

- sñiñ-ñe*, 149 = *sñañ-ñe*, 229
- sñañ-ne*, 66, 160.

It is apparent that between *ñe* and *rñe* there is no real difference, *rñe* having merely a Prefixed *r*, as in *rmyi*, 'man', and other cases: there may have been originally a difference to the extent that *rñe* may have been deverbal (see pp. 300-1).

In Tibetan *ñes* is the ordinary expression for 'evil', 'misfortune', 'offence', 'crime'; and it also exists as a verb with corresponding senses. Probably it is an Aorist form of a *ñe* contained in *ñen*, 'danger', 'enemy', 'pressure', 'drudgery', *ñer*, 'affliction', &c. In the Nam text the form *ñes* is in fact always a Predicate and may be Aoristic in:

- ñkhar-ñgyi-ñes*, 192
- ñke-ñkañ-ñes-re*, 152-3, 158.

That the most usual form, *rñe*, means 'evil', generally 'offence', is almost too clear to need demonstration. The simplest proof is the recurrent expression *rñe-ñlad*, 'requital of evil', in ll. 230-9: it is associated with occurrences of *gse-ñlad*, 'requital of injury', in ll. 240-4.

From this it follows that the antithetic word *ne* means 'good', so that:

- sñañ (sñiñ)-ñe* = 'evil-hearted'
- sñañ-ne* = 'good-hearted'
- sñañ-ñe[-]ne-ñldir* = 'in this case of evil-hearted and good-hearted'

and *ñce-ñmu-gdag-re-rñe-ne-ñrehi*, l. 200, means:

'having taken on the great cold (sc. death), evil are good'.

The association with *rñe*, 'fiend', 'enemy', in ll. 86, 155, &c., is likewise highly apposite, e.g. in:

- ñlo-ge-ñlañ-ñldo-ge-na-rñe-ne*, 154-5
- 'in the companies on high (sc. in heaven) fiends (enemies) are good (sc. no longer enemies)'.

In Tibetan *ne* does not exist with this signification. But the word may be identical with Thöchü *nāi*, Gyärüng *ka-snē*, which have many cognates in Tibeto-Burman (*Linguistic Survey of India*, i. ii, 'Comparative Vocabularies', pp. 196-7). In view of the Ch'iang sentiment mentioned *supra* (p. 30), it seems possible that the word is ultimately identical with Tib. *ne/nehu*, Nam *nehu*, 'young'.

Here we may mention the proof that *gšan/hšan*, signifies, as noted above (p. 220), 'enmity', 'hate'. This results from the expression *hšan-hlad*, which in ll. 225-7 recurs as practically synonymous with *rñe-hlad* and *gse-hlad*, wherewith it is associated. This *gšan/hšan* is found as *šan* in the Tibetan manuscripts, in the phrase *šan-hthab*, 'fight as foes' (*supra*, p. 180). It is perhaps identical with the *hšan-ma*, 'filth', which occurs in ll. 15, 51, and also in the Berlin fragment (l. 5); this also exists in Tibetan, as *gšan-ba*, *bšan-ba*, 'ordure', &c. It may be suspected, further, that a Tibetan expression for revenge, viz. *sa-lan*, was originally not 'flesh' (*sa*)-requit, but an equivalent of the Nam *hšan-hlad*.

The other occurrences of *hšan/gšan*, and especially those cited *supra* (p. 219), accord with the signification 'enmity', 'hate'.

5. *klu*, *hklu*; *mehi-klu*; *śes*, *hśes*; *°hbeg*; *śe*, *hśe*, *gśe*; *hpaḥ*; *sroñ*.

*Klu* and *śes* are associated antithetically in:

*śes-hkeg-hrko-hge-hklu-hprah-hyuh* ||, 332

*klu-hṭah-rgyohon-re-hśes-ta-hrgyon* ||, 336

*hko-rño-klu-re-rñe-hñe-hśes*, 342-3.

In the Nam language, as we have learned from the contemporary testimony of Tibetan translators of the same region (see *supra*, p. 131), the word *kru* signified 'blind'; and in our text the actual name *Mye-kru*, wherein the word was given that meaning, is certainly reproduced in the form *mehi(hmehi)-klu*. Moreover, the same signification results from the antithesis in the line:

*klu-hrto-ḥṭsa-ge-hśes-hbeg-mehi* ||, 24-5

'blind rocks, Hśes-hbeg their eye'.

In Tibetan *śes* is 'know', 'knowledge', 'intelligence', 'wisdom'; and this, rather than *bśes*, 'friendly', 'friend', 'relative' (which, however, should represent the same root), is obviously what is required as antithetic to 'blind' (physical or mental). Moreover, in Hsi-hsia 'wise' is *sie* (Chinese transcription; Laufer, No. 165; in Tibetan writing *gse/gseh/ze*, 'know', 'recognize', *gseh*, 'wisdom', Nevsky, Nos. 10, 215), the *s* being perhaps due to confusion with

*se/gseḥ*, 'pure', 'clear' (Nevsky, No. 48) = Tib. *sel/gsal*, 'purify', 'clear'; in Mo-so, 'know' is *sse* (J. Bacot, *Les Mo-so*, p. 50). The Tibetan *śes* is probably, like *ñes*, &c., an Aorist form, of a prior *śe*.

In the Nam text *śes* has occurrences (e.g. in ll. 36, 39, 44, 344-5, 379) independent of the antithesis to *klu*, but quite suitable for the signification 'wise'; and of these an interesting one is *śes-rtsig-moñ*, l. 379, where the epithet is attached to the 'Moñ carpenter', mentioned *supra* (p. 150). But we must note also the simpler form *śe/hśe/gśe*, already seen (p. 217) in the phrase *bri-gśe*, 'wise female', and elsewhere attached to *rdzo* (ll. 49, 369), *hlgyaṅ*, 'the wild ass' (l. 307), *hse* (l. 299), or contrasted with *hpah* (= Tib. *dpah*, 'hero', 'brave') in ll. 36, 258. The practical equivalence of *śes* and *hśe/gśe*, is specially apparent in ll. 342-3, where *srōñ-ñe-gśe-re* (= *srōñ-hñe-hśe-r[e]*, l. 339), 'straightly knowing', is antithetic to *rñe-hñe-hśes*, 'evilly know'.

In regard to the name of the divinity (p. 138) *Hśes-hbeg* it will be observed that the first monosyllable of his name is clearly indicated as = *śes*, 'wise', by the relation to *klu* in the above-quoted ll. 24-5, and probably also in l. 5, *klu-ge-hwaṅ* . . . *hśes-beg-hyaṅ*.

6. *nor*, *hñor*; *hdzaṅ*; *hśeḥe*.

In Tibetan *nor* means 'err', 'error', and *mdzaṅs* 'wise', and the latter is often in the Tibetan manuscripts spelled *hdzaṅs*. It is a fact, though of no significance here, that *nor* commonly means also 'wealth', 'property' (esp. 'cattle'); and *hdzaṅs* is stated to mean:

- (a) 'avaricious in the acquiring or hoarding of wealth' and  
(b) with *nor*, 'spent', 'consumed'.

*Hñor* and *hdzaṅ*, in the sense of 'foolish' and 'wise', are associated in:

g-raḥ-ḥsaḥ-hkheḥe || na || hñor-hdzaṅ-rgo-htoḥo ||

rgo-hraḥ-hñor-[re]-hdzaṅ-hyaḥ-htoḥo ||, 314-15

'In an enemy's winning the land (or In winning an enemy land) fool and wise man are the gate:

If the gate-ward is a fool, the wise is antagonized.'

po-rbom-hñor-[re]-hldog-g-yah-to, 317.

'If a big man, being a fool, is antagonized',

and the same meaning of *hñor* is apparent in l. 366, also in l. 163, where it is contrasted with *hśeḥe*, 'wise'; and it can be seen in l. 192. *Hdzaṅ*, 'wise', is recognized in ll. 142, 318, from contrast



with *mor*, 'evil', and in ll. 18, 42, 44, 285, through other indications: in l. 269 it is associated with *ne*, 'good'.

These facts do not preclude the recognition of *nor* = 'wealth', 'property', in l. 151, or, possibly, of *hḍaṇ*, 'spent', 'paid', in ll. 232-4.

7. *śid*, *hśid*; *hpag*, *rpag*, *hrpag*; *hśi*; *hkhur*; *hśi*, *śi*, *gśi*, *bśi*; *°brom*, *°hkri*, *°hpo*, *°hwa*, *°rgo*; *hśi-kyeg*.

*Śid* in Tibetan denotes a 'funeral ceremony', and *śid-sa* a 'burying-ground' and a 'fruitful field': the form *gśid* also is known. A connexion with *śi*, 'die', which has in Tibeto-Burman numerous cognates, is apparent.

But in one of 'the Tibetan manuscripts' *śid* occurs in the sense of 'high', *śid-rabs*, 'high race' (= Tib. *ya-rabs*), being contrasted with *hbraṇ-rabs*, 'race of commons', and the term is used also in a local sense. *Śi*, too, occurs in the Locative form *śir* with the same signification.

Tibetan *dpag* means 'measure', *dpags* 'depth', and the latter is to be recognized also in *dpag-bsam*, 'thought', 'imagination': the root appears, further, in *dpog/dpag/dpags*, 'to measure, fix'.

In the Nam text, ll. 230-1, *hśid* and *hrpag* are antithetic in application to *hwa-bḅer* (a 'fort'?):

*hwa-bḅer-hśid-re-hṛtaḥ-hraṇ-glyañ*  
*hwa-bḅer-hrpag-re-rñe-ḥlad-hbyam ||*

When we find, further, the repeated phrase *śid-g-ri* ll. 34, 62 (*hśid-hriḥi*), 'śid mountain', we can have no doubt that the meaning of *śid*, *hśid* is, as in Tibetan, 'high'; and we have no difficulty in recognizing the same in:

*hwam-hśid*, ll. 'high mansion'  
*hḍzoṇ-hyo-hśid*, 356, where *hḍzoṇ* = 'castle'

while l. 194 *hḍzoṇ-hyo-hśi* either has a miswriting for *hśid* or contains the shorter equivalent *hśi*. In *hkhu-tsa-śid-re*, l. 60, 'if the uncles are high', the height is social, as in Tib. *śid-rabs*, and in *hḥrad-sta-hśid-re*, l. 306, 'clawings are high', the sense is that animals with claws have a superiority. The combination *śid-rgyaṇ*, 'high vast', is very aptly applied in ll. 151, 155 to *hnom*, 'enjoyment', and 'hope (?)'

*Hrpag*, which would be the regular Nam equivalent of Tib. *dpag*, must in the passage quoted mean 'low' or 'brought low'. The same sense is clearly apposite where the epithet is attached to *hkhār* (Tib. *mkhar*, *hkhār*), 'city', 'citadel' (ll. 17, 128, 135, 192

(*hkar*): see *infra*, p. 242), to *hkañ-hcig*,<sup>1</sup> 'house ruined' (l. 208), to *hcañ*, 'city' (l. 210), and also to the occupants of a dwelling-place, *hñah-htsu* and *mo* (l. 193), *gso-nad* (l. 194), with whom we may associate the sky-people, *hraiñ-hlādāñ-hnam-hge*, who in l. 6 have their bodies 'bowed low (downwards)', *hrpag-hkhur-hskuñu* (Tib. *dgur/rgur/sgur* (manuscripts also *skur*), 'bent', 'crookback'), and also the 'great yak' in l. 223. *Bañ* in ll. 252-3 may be left aside pending a determination of its meaning; and there remain only *rñe-hlad*, 'requital of evil' (l. 239), and *gse-lad*, 'requital of harm', where the sense may be rather that of 'deep', or 'fixed'.

Since in *dpag/rpag*, the *d/r* is a Prefix, it is consistent to find a form *hpag*, with similar signification, attached to *hñah*, 'home' (ll. 326, 328), *khar* (?) l. 377, and in:

hrsehi-hpag-slog-dze, 384-5, 'the peaks being become low again'.

We shall not be surprised to find in the Nam text the alternative sense, 'die', 'perish', of Tib. *śi/śid*: and this will be made manifest in regard to *śid* with *hlduñu* (p. 322), *gldag* (p. 317), *so-na* (p. 293), and *rgoñ-wa* (p. 332); as concerns *śi*, *hśi*, *gśi*, we find, beside the ordinary use as a Predicate with or without an Auxiliary Verb (ll. 44, 47, 153, 344, 345), also the Preterite derivatives *bśi-ta*, 'dead' (l. 196), *bśi-re*, 'having died' (l. 198), and the phrases *gśi-brom* (l. 72), 'nipped by death', *hśi-hkri* (ll. 38, 81), 'death couch', *hśi-hpo* (l. 47), 'pass away in death' (Tib. *śi-hpho*), *hśi-hwa* (l. 123), 'power (?) of death', *śi-rgo* (l. 120), 'gate of death', *hśi-hrog* (l. 17)(?). In *hśi-kyeg-mye* (l. 102), applied to a defeated army, the meaning, 'death-congealed-fire', has an unmistakable side allusion to (*h*)*śi*, 'winter' (l. 160), for which evidence has been proffered in *JRAS.* 1939, p. 215, and *supra*, pp. 145-6; for in one of the Tibetan manuscripts the expression *dgun-ciñ-khyags* combines with the same Verb (*khyag*, 'frozen', 'ice') the Tibetan equivalent, *dgun*, of *hśi*, 'winter'.

8. *hyah*, *g-yah*, *g-yar*; *hmah*, *rmañ*, *rmad*, *smad*, *hmad*; *hñad*, *hñadñ*.

The antithesis 'upper and lower', in various applications and with various derivative forms (*ya*, *yar*, *yas*, *yan*, *ma*, *mar*, *mas*, *man*), pervades in part the Tibetan use of the stems *ya* and *ma*. A form of *ma* with Prefix *r* is to be expected in the east and north-east (see pp. 94-5, 166 and cf. pp. 351-2); and from *ma*, 'not', a

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *khañ* . . . *béigs* in *Tibetan Literary Texts*, &c., ii, p. 149. 9.



form *rma* is actually found in one of the Tibetan manuscripts. An *s*-form, *smad*, has in ordinary Tibetan the meanings 'lower', 'later', 'downwards', 'blame', 'contempt', 'to lower, abuse, degrade, dishonour'.

Correspondingly the Nam text contrasts *hyah* and *hmah*, *rma* in

*hmah-hlañ-hyah-dze*, 112, 'when low rises high'

*hyah-rmah-htsagna*, 257, 'high and low are combined'

*hyah-htañ-rma[-]r[e]*, 315, 318, 'when high authority becomes low'.

The last example enables us to recognize the meaning of *hyah* (*g-yah*)-*hthañ*, '[of] superior authority', in the instances (ll. 285-8) where it recurs without a contrasted *hmah*; and similarly in the phrase *hyah-hdad*, ll. 304, 306 (*hdañd*), in which we may detect an equivalent of Tibetan *dad*, 'devoted to' (as in *nor-dad*, 'devoted to wealth', *las-dad*, 'devoted to work'); the meaning is 'having a feeling of superiority', 'self-confident', and we can note in both instances the presence of the word *hpah* (*hphah*) = Tib. *dpah*, 'hero', 'brave'. In ll. 266-72 there is a series of parallel occurrences of *hyah/g-yah*, with either this sense or another to be mentioned *infra*; and the same is seen in ll. 72, *hyah-hrgehe* ('high success'), and 136, 294.

In the expression *hkhar-hrpag-g-yar-re*, ll. 128, 136, the word *g-yar* has, as is evident from the antithesis to *hrpag* ('when the low town becomes superior'), the same signification. It is the Locative or Adverbial form = Tib. *yar*, 'on high'.

The form *hmad/rmad/smad*, may occur in ll. 36, 37, 39 (*ses-hmad*, 'of low intelligence'?) and 202 (*hrah-hmad*); but in

*smyi-hni-hsige-smyi-rmad-ldañ*, 80

'When a . . . man perishes, an inferior man rises'

*hrje-smyi-rmad-ge-hmo-rkañ-lda*, 84 (cf. 37)

'chiefs who are inferior men, subject to a woman's commands'

it is reinforced by a contrast in the actual context.

Several more words *ya*, *g-yah*, exist in Tibetan, and with two of these, reflected in the Nam text, we may proceed to deal. *Hya*, probably = 'sheep' (l. 45), will be mentioned *infra* (p. 343).

9. *hyah*, *g-yah*; *hyah-htah*, *g-yah-ta*; *g-yah-tsa*.

Tibetan *ya* also means 'an equal', 'a match', and it is used with reference to things occurring in pairs, e.g. *kha-ya*, 'partner', *hthab-ya*, 'adversary', *ya-po*, 'rival', 'adversary', *ya-bral*, 'without



a partner', 'separate', *ya-med*, 'having no partner', 'single'. This meaning appears clearly in the Nam verse:

ldañ-pyer-hgag-re-htsah-hyah-hdo ||, 65

'those prevented from co-operation become rivals (or adversaries)'

and in the parallel verse in l. 67; also in the above (p. 224) explained verse:

rgo-hrah-hnor-[re-]hdzañ-hyah-htoho ||, 315.

Whether in ll. 266-72 *hyah*, *g-yah* has the sense of 'paired with' or that to be next discussed may be open to doubt. For *hyah-htaḥ* in ll. 222, 386, *g-yah-ta*, l. 156, the general notion of 'pair' is probable; but whether hostility or combination is indicated, is not clear. On *hyah-hña*, 'fear', see *supra*, p. 217.

The meaning of *g-yah* in:

g-we-hku-rño-re-g-yah-htsa-ne-ge-gstor-ta-hthon(hthogna),  
152

'action-desire (*hku*)-capable, good adversaries stopped flight' where *g-yah-tsa* is a quasi-plural of *g-yah*, seems to fit best under the signification 'adversary'.

#### 10. *hyah*, *g-yah*; *rgyeb*.

A third meaning of Tibetan *g-ya*, seen in *g-yar*, 'mouth', 'face and front' (perhaps originally a Locative form), *g-yar-tsha* = *no-tsha*, 'face-warmth', i.e. 'shame', 'bashfulness', *g-yar-lam*, 'front path or side', i.e. 'presence', is, as we see, 'fronting', perhaps the source of the second meaning (= 'confront'). This sense must be seen in the Nam *hyah/g-yah*, where it is antithetic to *rgyeb/hgyeb*, as in:

rgyeb-hphuḥi-hton-re-hyah-wa-hkañ, 190

hyah-hkruḥu-hbro-re-hrgyeb-hkruḥo ||, 315-16

hrgyeb-hkruḥu-hbro-re-g-yah-hpañ-hwag, 323-4

hyah-hklu(hkru)-hbro-re-hgyeb(hrgyeb)-hkru-hbro-re-hyah-htaḥ-hthañ na | : |, 221-2.

For *rgyeb*, whether with original *e* (replaced in Tibetan by an Ablaut *a*) or with secondary *e* as explained *supra* (p. 214), is certainly equivalent to Tib. *rgyab*, 'back' (of the body, &c.), 'rear' (cf. *rgyab*, 'throw', 'fling', &c.), but also 'to set back', 'repulse'. This appears clearly also in:

ldañ-rdze(rje)-hbro-re-hldañ-the-rgyeb ||, 138-9

'when a supporting chief flees (Tib. *hbros*), the supporting followers retreat'.

There exists a curious ambiguity as to the meaning of the expression *hkru-hbro*, which in ll. 221-2 ought to mean 'flees into a corner (Tib. *gru*)', while in the other two instances, supported also by l. 190, it seems rather to mean 'has a foul (Tib. *dkru*, 'dirt', 'filth') savour (Tib. *bro*)': see pp. 295-7. But this does not invalidate the assurance that in all the above cases *hyah/g-yah* = 'front' and *rgyeb* = 'rear'.

It may be noted that, by reason of the standing antithesis, the missing word in the passage:

*hbri-hldi-hthañ-re-hre-hldi-hyah*  
*hldi-hthañ-re-rgyeb-hldi-hthañ-ra*, 132-3

is, no doubt, a second *hyah*: a more extended case of similar loss of a repeated word is to be seen in ll. 147-8; see p. 299. It is no objection that the added *hyah* has the sense No. 3, while the preceding one has perhaps sense No. 1 (antithetic to *hbri*); for, as we have seen, the monosyllabic languages (as also most natural use of language) are indifferent to such awkwardness, and perhaps the Nam speakers, possibly with etymological right, lumped all the senses of *hyah/g-yah* roughly together.

11. *hnañ, nañ; hthañ; hgran.*

The common meaning of Tibetan *nañ* is 'in', 'inside', 'within': but there is also *nañ/nañs*, = 'dawn', 'morning', 'to-morrow', and we may add *nañs*, 'escaped' (*√gnoñ*), and, for the sake of possible comparison with Nam, *gnañ/gnañs*, 'grant', and *snañ*, 'light', 'appearance', 'notion', 'shine'.

In the text the passages (ll. 225, 236, 244, 246), where we read:

*hrah-hldi-hnañ-re*, 'this place being inside', or 'being in this place'

prove by their mere number that the word *hnañ* is = Tib. *nañ*, 'inside', &c. Hence it is practically certain that the meaning is the same in:

*hldi-hgañ-nañ-re*, 104, 'all these being inside' or 'being inside this house (Tib. *khañ*)'

*hpo-hldi-nañ-re*, 115, 'these heroes (or males) being within'  
*gdzu-hbyi-hnañ-re-hmañ-hri-hwas*, 308, 'the ass being within [it], the great mountain is non-existent' (similarly in 305, 311).

In l. 181 *nañ-gsañ* has been noted (p. 156) as possibly doubtful,

and *nañ-pa-hsam* in l. 352 may be left for the present undetermined; as well as *hnañ-hdro* in ll. 188-9 (see p. 285).

Antithesis to *hthañ* can be seen in:

*hrtah-nañ-hwa[-]r[e]-hthañ-hbro-hgran*, 354-5

'the horse being powerful (?) within, his adversary (Tib. *hgran*) was in flight to, or in, the *hthañ*'.

The identity of *hthañ* with Tib. *mthañ*, 'end', 'boundary', 'frontier', is unmistakable; and perhaps the same will be found to be the case in l. 362, where *hthañ-hrbyo* may prove to be a miswriting of *hbro*: the manuscript shows, in fact, a correction, probably of *hbyo* into *hbro*.

Another *tha* will be mentioned *infra* (p. 237).

12. *hbom*, *rbom*, *hrbom*; *hbo*, *bon*, *hbon*, *hbos*, *hpos*; *rbo*, *hrbo*; *gboñ*; *ma-man*, *hman*; *phañ*; *hrog*; *hkom*; *hji*.

In l. 238 of the text:

*gse-hbo-bon-re-hlad-mah-mañ*

'injury being *hbo-bon*, requital is *mah-mañ*'

we see an antithesis, repeated in ll. 243, 245, 246, 246-7, between two reduplications, *hbo-bon* and *mah-mañ*: and the first of the two can hardly be different in essence from *hbom-rbo* in:

*hso-hnañ-hyah-tse-gtah-hbom-rbo*

*hbom-rbo-phañ-dze-hldañ-hkrañ-hnar-re-hbom-rbo-hldañ ||*,  
111-12

*hso-hnañ-hyah-[ge-]-hbañ-hbom-rbo ||*, 270.

A form *rbom/hrbom* occurs twice in l. 317 as a predicate of *po*, 'man', 'hero'.

*Rbom* cannot be different from Tib. *sbom*, 'big', 'bulky', 'size', to which it phonologically corresponds; so that *po-rbom* means 'big man' and *hbom-rbo-phañ* means 'big lap or bosom' (Tib. *pañ/phañ*); cf. Tib. *sbo*, 'the upper part of the belly' and, perhaps, *boñ*, *boñs* (< *bons*), *buñs*, 'size', 'bulk'.

It follows from the first quotation that *ma-man* represents a *man*, 'great', and means 'vast' or 'larger'. This must be = Tib. *mañ*, 'much', 'many', 'great', 'be much', &c., which in fact is sometimes found written *man* (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 19. 8, 147: B1, 370. D). Indeed it is likely that *mañ*, like *boñ* and several other words, derives its *ñ* from the circumstance that originally it was *mañs* < *man-s*, a form existing in Tibetan, e.g. in *mañs-tshig*, 'plural number'.

*Hmañ* itself is common in the text, and it obviously means



'great' when applied to 'mountain'; *hman-hrihi*, ll. 302, 308 (*hri*), 308 (*g-ri*), followed by *hman-sta-mehi* . . . *hri-stah-mehi*, l. 311, 'great is not there . . . mountain is not there'. Not less clear is the meaning 'many' in:

*hbrad-re-hpah-yañ-hman-ge-hrgam-hjihi* ||, 305-6

'each clawing creature being brave, that many should form a community is unimportant (Tib. *hji*, "flea", "no matter", as in the Tib. manuscripts).'

Tibetan *sbom* is plainly connected with *sbo*, 'swell up', 'distend' (*lto-ba-sbos*, 'the belly is swollen'), and the above-mentioned *sbo*, 'the upper part of the belly': and this *sbo* is likewise an *s*-form of *hbo*, *hbos*, *pho*, *dbo*, 'to pour forth, swell up, rise, sprout (*sa-hbo-hdag*, "the ground is verdant", "the ground swells, heaves")'. Hence it is evident that in the Nam text in the phrase:

*g-rah-g-yo-rbo-ge*, 'the earthquake *rbo*'

the word *rbo* signifies 'swells up', 'heaves', and is in meaning, as in form, an exact equivalent of Tib. *dbo*.

This root *bo* furnishes also another term of great importance in the text, namely *bos/hbos* (once, l. 141, spelled *hpos*) = Tib. *hbos*, Aorist of *hbo*, also 'boil', 'tumour'. This is applied in ll. 290, 291, 293 to *g-ri*, *hrihi*, 'mountain' ('a big mountain'); but its usual connexions are with *smyi* ('big man'), e.g. ll. 42, 43, [378], and especially with *pu/hpuhu/hphu* ('male', 'man'), in ll. 41, 167, 266, 293, 330; and several times (ll. 164, 213, 287, 294, 298) *hbos* alone is used to denote the 'big', the 'master', who is the sole undisguisedly human being figuring in the text.

The Verb *hbo* in the Tibetan sense of 'pour forth', 'spill out' has already (p. 156) been recognized in the expression:

*hlab-ta-gbohu-ste*, 'talk bubbling forth', 181; cf. *g-rah-nag-hbo-gyañ*, p. 313 *infra*.

Probably also its meaning, 'sprout', accounts for *hbo*, 'forest', 'vegetation' (Hsi-hsia *mo*, Laufer, No. 85), which we shall find in

*hbo-hkom-hldyañ-dze*, 12, 'the parched (Tib. *skom*, *skam*, &c.), woods flying high'

*myag-ma-htsar-dze-hbo-hram-ge-hsodtsa*, 280-1

'on the not spoiled districts, or borders, the wood-groups were laid low'

(on *htsar* and *hsodtsa* see pp. 234, 301)

*hbo-hron-hrog-re*, 344, 'the wooded gorges being torrents' (Tib. *grog*).

On *hbo* in l. 126 see *infra*, p. 289. The meaning of *hldyan-htah-hbo-kyer*, l. 144, is not clear.

13. *dgu, dguhu; mu, hmu, hmuhi; hrog, lom; dgu, hgu; hrgu, hgu.*

It has already (*JRAS.* 1939, pp. 211-12) been stated that in the Tibetan manuscripts we have a word *dgu*, meaning 'hot'. This fact, surprising in view of the circumstance that the Tibetan for 'winter' is *dgun*, becomes almost beyond belief when we remark that its opposite, *mu*, will have to mean 'cold'. For in Hsi-hsia 'fire' is *dmu/gmuh* (Nevsky, No. 149), in Chinese transcription *mo* (Laufer, No. 36), while the Tibeto-Burman dialects in general are almost unanimous in denoting 'fire' by forms akin to this *mo* or to Tibetan *me* (Lolo *mu-tu*, &c., Mo-so *mi*, Rgya-roñ Hsi-fan *te-mi*, &c., d'Ollone, Go-lok dialects, 41, 42, *mo/mon*, &c.). In Nam itself the word for 'fire' is *me/sme/mye*. The fact, however, is beyond all dispute, since the word occurs in the many times repeated sentence 'To the fiend country of fire not hot (*mye-myi-dgu*), water not moist (*chu-myi-rlan*), I will carry you'. Moreover, the many Tibeto-Burman dialects of the Himālayas and elsewhere, which for 'hot' have words beginning with *ku-*, lend an aspect to the matter.

The antithesis declares itself prominently in the recurrent (ll. 225, 236, 244, 245) phrase:

*dgu(dguhu)-mu-hto-re*, 'hot be[com]ing cold'

where the implication is 'living becoming dead': and an analogous implication (cf. Tib. *gron/gran*, 'cold' and 'die') is to be seen in

*mu-hrog-htro(hdro)-re*, 197, 'cold being assisted by heat'

in reference perhaps to burning of the dead. Also in a verse already (p. 222) quoted 'the great cold', *hce-mu*, means, no doubt, death. But the antithesis is envisaged also in l. 309:

*dgu-hldo-htor-ge . . .*

*hmu-wa-rno-ge . . .*

Independently of antithesis *dgu-htor*, 'great heat', is seen in ll. 76, 77, and *dgu-hldo*, 'heat', in ll. 74, 77, 78, 139, 191; and in l. 114 there is connexion with 'fire' (*me*):

*dgu-hldo-htor-ge-su-me-hmehi*

'with great heat, who kindles fire?'

*mu*, likewise, is connected with fire in the phrase *me-hmuhi*, 'chills the fire', l. 183, and perhaps also in l. 268; in l. 39 *hkye-ge-hmu* (p. 320) the probable sense, indicated by antithesis to *hdar*,



'shiver', is 'the children are cold'. Another occurrence of *mu*, 'cold', is seen in l. 363, *mu-lom*, 'cold well'(?): in l. 9 it may signify 'sky' (Hsi-fan, &c., *mo, mon*). The cold is metaphorical, = 'fear', in l. 184: in ll. 104, 116, 352, in connexion with *hphu*, *pu-glo*, which contain the idea of 'blowing' (see pp. 284-5), it is again psychical, as is likewise sometimes the case with *me*, 'fire'.

The meaning 'all' seen in *stor-dgu*, l. 127, 'all losses or lost things' (see *infra*, p. 290), and perhaps also in l. 134, is helpful in two ways: firstly, it guarantees the Tibetan idiomatic use of 'nine' (*dgu*, *rgu*) for 'all', which is found even in the Tibetan manuscripts, and thus supplies the Nam word for '9'; secondly, the *stor-hgu* of the preceding l. 126 seems to be the same expression, which shows that in the Nam word for '9' the Prefix *d/r* might be lacking, as in so many Tibeto-Burman dialects and sometimes in Tibetan itself (*go*, '90').

The same alternation justifies a recognition of two forms, *rgu* and *hgu*, of the word for 'steal', 'thief' (Tib. *rku/lku*, 'steal', *rkun*, 'thief', in the Tibetan manuscripts also *rgun*, Lo-lo *khu*, &c., Mo-so *kō*): *rgu* is seen in *hrgu-ma-gzo*, l. 165, 'thieves should not eat' (see pp. 199, 335) and in:

rbyo-hce-rgye-dze-hrgu-hrgehi-sto ||, 57-8

'where poultry (error for *hbyor*, 'store'?) is very extensive, thieves rejoice' (on *hrgehi-sto* see p. 185 and n. 1)

and perhaps the same signification of *rgu/hrgu* in ll. 29, 30, 32; *hgu* in:

hnah-hpoñ-hgor-re-hgu-htor-htsu, 113

'when the house-dependents are idle, big thieves come'

and in l. 331 *hgu-mor* can be 'wicked thieves'.

On *hgu* as a suffix see p. 258.

14. *stoñ*, *htoñ*; °*hpoñ*; *myen*; *stsar*; *htsar*, *htshar*.

Line 247, *gse-stoñ-stsar-re-hlad-htoñ-myen* repeating an antithesis of *gse*, 'harm', and *hlad*, 'requit', requires an opposition between *stoñ-stsar* and *htoñ-myen*, wherein, according to the context, the latter should denote a larger quantity. *Stoñ-stsar* calls to mind Tib. *stoñ*, 'thousand', and the particle *rtsa*, whereby *stoñ* is usually linked to the following 'hundreds', &c., *rtsa* being perhaps = *rtswa*, 'root', though we may suspect that it was once *rtsar* or *stsar*, connected with *htshar/tshar*, 'be finished, spent', 'up to the limit', and *tshar*, 'occasion', 'instance' (*tshar-gñis*, 'twice', &c.). However it may be as regards Tibetan *rtsa*, there is no difficulty



in connecting with this *htshar* the Nam *stsar* and attributing to it the sense of 'as much as' or 'only', though it might likewise be a Locative form of *rtsa*.

The word *htsar*, instanced p. 231, recurs, as *htshar*, in

hkañ-heig-rpag-re-htshar-hde-hpyedhi, 208

'when a house is laid low in ruin, the parish's prosperity is breached',

cf. *khar* (*khañ* ?)-*hpag-cig-dze*, l. 377, *hldañ-hkhañ*, 'wooden house' (sc. tomb), l. 198, and *khañ-rul-šig*, 'break down a ruined house' (*Tibetan Literary Texts*, &c., ii, p. 149. 8). With the meaning 'parish' (Sanskrit *śīmā*), derived from that of 'boundary', the Tibetan *tshar* is frequent in the Central-Asian documents (ibid. i, p. 101, n. 5; ii, pp. 169 sqq.).

We are naturally reluctant to find in Nam *stoñ* the meaning 'thousand', since we should prefer *stom* or *tom*, as nearer to the original, widespread, Central-Asian *tom* (Mo-so *tü*, *to*, *tu*, Menia *ta-to*, Lo-lo *ta-to*, *ti-tu*, &c.); but that reluctance must yield before the fact that *stoñ-hpoñ* in l. 321 is very probably = Tib. *stoñ-dpon*, 'Thousand-[district]-officer', a prominent feature of Central-Asian administration (p. 33, n. 1). If *stoñ* was not the proper Nam form, it may have been due to borrowing from Tibetan (whence the *s*, absent in *htoñ*) or to the Tibetan scribe or transmitter.

Proof that *stoñ* in the Nam passage means 'thousand' is given by the antithetic *myen*, for which Tibetan affords no explanation. This will be Chinese *wan* (Classical *mān*, Ancient *m<sub>1</sub><sup>w</sup>on*, Japanese *ban/man*; see Karlgren, No. 1295), 'myriad', preserved in Mo-so as *mō* and in Lo-lo, perhaps, as [*ta*]-*niai*, &c. (*ni* < *my*). Accordingly the translation of l. 247 in the Nam text is:

'harms being as many as a thousand, requital is [to be] a thousand myriad.'

Elsewhere *htoñ* has a quite different signification (= Tib. *gtoñ*, 'give up', 'send', &c.); and *stoñ* in l. 51 seems to be = Tib. *stoñ*, 'empty'.

15. *gsom*; °*sñi*; *hñi*; *hsam*; *hśam*; *sśam*.

Nam *gsom* has a great chance of being = Tib. *gsum/sum*, 'three' (*so-gcig*, 'thirty-one', &c.); for in Tibeto-Burman the numeral 'three' is one of the most uniform, the dialects agreeing in something like *sum* (also *tum*), *som*, *so*, *sam* (cf. Hsi-hsia *gso*, *gsoh*, *gsoñ*, *gswoñ*, Nevsky, No. 269), Chinese *sam*, *san*. The scribe

himself seems to intimate this; for in l. 117 he wrote Tibetan *gsum*, which was afterwards corrected to *gsom*.

Nevertheless, the clearest of the occurrences of *gsom*, namely in *gsom-sñi* (l. 23) = Tib. *som-ñi*, 'doubt', presents a different sense; for in *som-ñi* ('thought-two') *som* belongs to the root *sem*, *sems*, *bsam*, *bsams*, Imperative *soms*, 'think', 'thought', 'mind', a root most widely spread in Tibeto-Burman (including Hsi-hsia *sin*, 'heart', = Tib. *sems*, Laufer No. 9, and Mo-so *šin(-djre)*, *šen(-djro)*, *sun(-dru)*, 'think') and shared with Chinese, *sin*, 'heart', 'thought', &c. (Classical *som*, Ancient, *sām*, Karlgren, No. 801). The same signification recurs in:

*gsom-wa-hyo(g-yo)*, 178-9, 'thought wavers'.

The meaning 'three', however, must be admitted in the expression *khar-gsom*, l. 117, 'three towns', where the scribe at first wrote *gsum*; for, though we cannot identify the towns, numerical phrases of the same type, 'The Four Garrisons' = Chinese Turkestan, 'The Six Cities' = Khotan, &c., were usual in Central Asia, and one of the Tibetan manuscripts has 'The Twelve Cities', 'The Eight *Snam*', &c. In *h̄tsa-gsom*, l. 21, also we may find 'the three roots or grasses or crops (Tib. *rtsa* or *rtswa* or *btsa*)', analogous to the above (p. 39) cited 'five cereals' of the Chinese descriptions; and in l. 10 *h̄lah-gsom* may be 'the three passes (Tib. *la*)'. In ll. 89 (*gsom-rgyag* 'form a thought', pp. 258-9), 198 (*h̄di-gsom*, 'this thought'), 206 (*tshu-gsom*, 'the thought of coming'), we have again *gsom*, 'think'.

But *gsom-sñi*, though not containing the numeral 'three', certainly reveals *sñi* as = 'two', Tibetan *gñis/ñis*, Hsi-hsia *gñi/gñih* (Nevsky, No. 75). This *sñi* does not otherwise occur in the Nam text, and it is possible that an *s*-less form is present in the expression *rgya-hñi (gñi)-ke*, concerning which see p. 272.

A cognate of *gsom*, 'think', is probably to be seen in *hsam* (Tib. *bsam*), ll. 185, 352, but not in *hsam*, l. 184, where *me-hsam*, 'prepared fire', antithetic to the above (p. 232) cited *me-hmuhi*, is probably for *hsam* (Tib. *śom*, *śsom*, *bsam*, *bsams*, 'prepare', 'arrange', &c). *Ssam*, l. 255, and *hsam*, l. 277, are problematical.

16. *hti*; *hgye*; *hkrom-hkrom*.

In ll. 12-13 and 154:

*gñim-hti-h̄ldyañ[-ge ? dze ?]-hgye-hkrom-hkrom*, 12-13

*hti-rgye-mye-dze-hgye-hkrom-hkrom ||*, 154

*hti* and *hgye* seem to be contrasted. If *hgye* = Tib. *hgye*, 'light',

given as a synonym of *hod*, and perhaps, by reason of its rarity, an actual loan from Nam, it will harmonize with *hkrom-hkrom*, a reduplicated expression which may correspond to Tib. *khrom-me*, 'sparkling', 'glittering': in fact, the harmony may be etymologically very complete, if *hgye*, on the one hand, is connected with *hgye*, *hgyed*, 'scatter', 'diffuse', &c. (e.g. rays of light), and *hkrom* with *hgrem*, *bkram*, *dgram*, *khroms*, 'spread', 'scatter', 'display', *khram*, 'lively', 'brisk', both roots being otherwise also prominent in the text.

This being so, *hti* might well mean 'darkness', which will accord with Tib. *gti-mug*, 'gloom', 'ignorance', 'stupidity', and further with *gñim*, in the first verse cited, which will be = Tib. *ñin*, 'day' (cf. *ñi/gñi*, 'sun'). The two verses may then be rendered as follows:

'day-darkness rising, the light flickered, flickered', 12-13

'where extensive darkness is not, the light flickers, flickers',  
154.

In l. 385:

hr̥ne-ḥrom-ge-hti-na-ḥr̥ne-ge-ḥrlomḥi | : |

'in the fiend-hollow darkness, let the fiends vaunt themselves  
will likewise fit.

Since Tibetan has a *sti*, *ḥthi*, meaning (a) 'take a rest', (b) 'honour', 'respect', and Hsi-hsia a *sti* meaning 'obey', 'possible' (Nevsky, No. 235), these also are conceivable in Nam; and the first may actually occur in:

myi-re-hti-ni-myi-[re-]ḥsí ||, 154

'when men severally stop (in flight), severally the men perish',  
a passage curiously adjacent, however, to l. 154, with *hti* = 'light'.  
Concerning *sku-ḥphu-hti*, l. 104, and *ḥgru-ma-hti*, l. 27, see pp. 285, 309.

17. *smyi*, *myi*; *tha*; *ḥnu*; *ḥsig*; *ḥrgyañ*.

The first two of these, where not identifiable with Tib. *mi/myi*, 'not', might very well be = Tib. *mi/myi*, 'man' (*homo*), more especially as this sometimes (Hsi-hsia *rme* (Nevsky, No. 39), Gyārūng *ti-rmi*, &c.; see p. 94) has a Prefix *r*. One instance of *myi* = 'man' (l. 154) has just been cited; but it may be doubted whether there are any more. In regard to *smyi* there can be no question that in *ḥtor-smyi-ḥbom-ge*, l. 73 ('great *smyi*, big'), *bo-smyi*, ll. 42, 44 ('big *smyi*', 'master')—see the discussion of *ḥbom* supra—*smyi* signifies 'man'; and the same is apparent in:



rje-smyi-rmad-ge, 37, 84, 'chiefs who are inferior men' (on *rmad* see *supra*, p. 227)

smyi-hni-hsīg[-g]e-smyi-rmad (smad?)-ldan, 87

'when a *hni* man perishes (Tib. *hjiḡ*, *bziḡ*, *gziḡ*, *siḡ*), an inferior man rises'.

But it is in ll. 241-2:

smyi-hnu-mye-re-tha-hnu-hrgyan-sto-smyi-hnu-hto ||

that we find the most useful confirmation, the meaning being:

'if man's power (Tib. *nus*, "able", "ability", "power") is not, *tha* power coming in haste (Tib. *rgyan*s) or being extended or extensive (*rgyan*), man has power.'

Here *tha* must mean 'god'; and this may be the origin of Hsi-hsia *tha*, 'Buddha' (Nevsky, No. 105), Hsi-hsia Buddhism being late. There is no temptation to derive *tha* = 'Buddha' from *tha/tha*, 'he', 'it' (Nevsky, Nos. 71, 225), or to regard it as a remnant of *tathā-gata*: it must correspond to Tibetan *lha*, 'god'. The problem of Tibetan *lh* has been mentioned *supra* (p. 214, cf. *infra*, p. 286). In 'Tangut' 'god' is *skha*, 'boot' (Tib. *lham*) is *kham*; and we learn from Dr. Tafel (*Meine Tibetreise*, ii, p. 32, n. 3) that:

'In the whole of North-Tibet, among the Banag-kaksum of the Koko-nor region as in Amdo, *Lhasa*, which notoriously is compounded of *Lha* = "god" and *sa* = "land", "place", is not pronounced as usual with *l* and a following *h*, but like English *th*, followed by an *h*.'

If this was in Amdo an ancient pronunciation of *lha*, we understand the name of the city *Tamo* ('Goddess')-*mên*, stated in the T'ang *Annals* (*JRAS.* 1880, pp. 463, 473<sup>1</sup>) to have been built by the Tibetans in the Koko-nor region. Visible from Hsi-ning, and situated some eight or nine miles south of Lushan (Rockhill, *The Land of the Lamas*, p. 94, n. 1), are the three peaks of the 'Lh'a-mo-ri', which surely must be connected with the pass 'called in Tibetan Ta-mo-ri' (Rockhill *Diary*, p. 108), which 'leads [from Lushan] into a valley at the mouth of which is . . . Shara-kuto'.<sup>2</sup> In ordinary Tibetan also the verb *ltuñ*, 'fall', has for Preterite *ltuñ*.

18. (1) *hnaḥ*, *gnaḥ*, *hna*, *na*; (2) *hnaḥ*, *hna*, *na*; (3) *hnaḥ*, *na*;

<sup>1</sup> Mentioned in connexion with Hung-chi (NW. of Ho-chou, with a bridge over the Hoang-ho), Bushell, p. 534 (72).

<sup>2</sup> Similarly Dr. Tafel mentions (ii, p. 298) a 'Lhamo gomba' (monastery) in the T'ao-chou region, always known as Thamo or Tamo, the natives pronouncing every *lh* as English *th* or *t*, and speaking of Lha-sa, for instance, as *T'asa*.

(1) *hñah*, *ñah*; (2) *hñah*; °*htsu*; °*mo*; *hmo*; *gso*, *hson*; °*nad*; *hsas*, *gsas*; *pa*; *hgam*; *khyañ*, *hkhyañ*; *khyos*; *hzah*.

It is clear in ll. 99, 101-2

rgyed-ma-glañ (102 hldañ)-ge-hñah (102 ñah)-htsog-hśah  
(102 hśas)

that *hñah* and *ñah* are confused; and confusion of *n* and *ñ* has been noted (p. 214) as occurring in Amdoan Tibetan. *Hñah* is certainly = Tib. *gnah*, 'place'; cf. l. 69 *hphag-la-gnah*, 'a place for the hog' &c., l. 391 *hñah-hdiñi-htshur*, 'come to this place', the Prefixes *g* and *h* alternating frequently, as we are already aware, in the text. *Hñah* does not occur, though on the analogy of Hsi-hsia *ne*, 'king', *neh/ñeh* = Tib. *rje*, and Gyārūng *ka-nēs*, Tākpa *nai*, Mānyak *nā(-bi)*, 'two', and various other instances in Hsi-fan and Tibeto-Burman, we should be fully prepared for confusion of *ñ*-also with *n*- and *ñ*-.<sup>1</sup>

In the case of *hñah-htsu/hñah-mo* such confusion is specially clear; for Hsi-fan (d'Ollone, Nos. 37 and 40, p. 79) *na-mo*, 'woman', is plainly = Tib. *ñā-ma*, 'housewife', 'mistress of a house'. That Nam *hñah-mo* is the same word is proved by the antithesis to *hñah-htsu* in:

*hñah-htsu-rpag-re-hñah-mo-hgam* ||

*hñah-mo-hrpag-[re]-gso-nad-hgam*

*gso-nad-rpag-re-hkah-hgañ-hjor*, 193-4

'If the *hñah-htsu* is brought low, the *hñah-mo* is the *hgam*;

if the *hñah-mo* is brought low, the *gso-nad* is the *hgam*;

if the *gso-nad* is brought low, (all talk is babble).'

For in this connexion *htsu* must be equivalent to Hsi-hsia *ni + tsu* (i.e. *dzu*), *bdzo*, concerning which see *supra* (p. 218). The same word (= *vir*) may perhaps be detected in the title (*chin*(= *khyim*?) - *tsu*), as given by the Chinese (Rockhill, *The Land of the Lamas*, p. 339), of the queen's consort in the 'Women's Kingdom'.

We may infer that confusion between *hñah* and *hñah* was not merely phonetic, but due in part to coincidence of the ideas of 'place' and 'home'. *Hñah/na*, which seems to be the more common, appears in:

*hna-hlam-glo-hran*, 68, 'the home path is joyful'

*na-hldom-hgor*, 41, 143, 350, 'if the house-servants are idle'

*hñah-hpoñ-hgor*, 113, 'if the house-poor (*na-boñ* of the Tibetan manuscripts) are idle'

<sup>1</sup> See *infra*, p. 360.

na-g-we-ħkor, 205, 'if there is idleness in home-making'

ħphu-ħklo-ħsad-dze-ħnaħ-me-ħmyi ||, 40, 'if the *ħphu-ħklo* (see *infra*, p. 284) is destroyed, house-fire there is not'.

In other instances (ll. 56, 96, 280 (*gnaħ*)), though only 'place' is said, the idea may be that of home: elsewhere (ll. 191, 391, *ħnaħ*; ll. 69, 70, 179, 367, *gnaħ*) 'place' suffices. *Ĥnaħ* is seen in:

ħnaħ-ħpag-ħldir, 326, 328, 'in this low place'

and together we find *ħnaħ* and *na* in:

ħnaħ-na-ħmañ-na-ħmañ-ħrgam-gre-na-ħram ||, 307

'though [their] home-places are many, the place they like is where many *gre* are in company'.

An entirely different *ħnaħ* = Hsi-hsia *dnaħ* (Nevsky, No. 159), 'empty', 'sky', occurs several times after *re*, 'is', forming an idiom with the meaning 'absence of', 'there is absence of', e.g. in:

mor-ħldañ-re-ħnaħ ||, 87, 'there is no rising of evil'

ħkyañ-ħldoñ-re-ħnaħ ||, 291, 'there are no run-away *ħkyañ*'

ħrño-ħcañ-ħram-dze-gše-ħrdzo (i.e. *ħrdzo-re*)-ħnaħ ||, 49

ħrño-ħprañ-ħram-dze-ħšeħe-rdzor (i.e. *rdzo-re*)-ħnaħ, 368-9  
'where the power (or purpose)-violent are united, wise *rdzo* are not there'.

Tibetan has, further, *na* (a Postposition), 'in', &c., *gnaħ(-ma)* 'old', *na*, 'meadow', and *na*, 'sickness'. Of these *na*, 'in', &c., as recurrent in the Nam text, has been considered *supra* (pp. 178 sqq.). *Gnaħ*, 'old', is at present problematic. *Na*, 'meadow', is perhaps to be recognized in *na-ħtsaħ-ste*, ll. 33-4: see p. 275, cf. pp. 278, 281). *Na*, 'sickness', is to be seen in:

na-rog-ħphar-ge-skye-ta-ram, 156-7

'the black (? Tib. *rog*) sickness passed, life is agreeable'

ħtsog-ħram-ħnaħ-tse, 120 (see *infra*, pp. 291-2)

ħsas-ħnaħ-ħdag-chi-phyer-chañ-ħson ||, 260-1

'children who had sickness were, with support-hold, tended'  
ħldyo-ħtor-ħmyi-na, 254 (see p. 328).

The *phyer-chañ* of the last passage will call for consideration later (pp. 283, 287). *Ĥson* will be = Tib. *gson/gso*, 'tend', 'nurse'. *Ĥsas*, which in the preceding verse has the same form, shows in:

gsas-paħi-ħdzo-ħdza, 262, 'children equal to braves (*pa* = *ħpaħ*, Tib. *dpaħ*) or to their fathers (*pha*, *ħphaħ*)'

the common *ħ/g* alternation. The word is known in Tibetan as designation of a class of Bon divinities, and the meaning 'children'



is established by the phrase *pha-mes-gsas*, 'father, grandfather, children', in another text: it is, no doubt, Preterite, Tib. *btsas*, of *btsa*, 'bring forth a child'<sup>1</sup> (cf. *btsa*, *btsas*, *rtsas*, 'harvest'): as regards the initial cf. *se/hse/gse* = Tib. *gtse*, *htshe*, and *se/hse/rse* = Tib. *rtse*.<sup>2</sup> The verbal sense is clear in:

*hsas-te-khyañ-je(dze)-hsas-hkhañ-ge-hrwehi ||*, 116

'when the matron has given birth, talk of the birth is at an end' (sc. it is too late, a sense in harmony with the context).

'Offspring' is the meaning in:

*hsas-hce-rgye-dze-brañ-hgam-hyim*, 59.

'with offspring very numerous one's own mouthful (Tib. *hgam/hkham*, "cram into the mouth", *bgam*, "gobble", *kham-gcig*, "morsel", *kham*, "appetite") is diminished.'

*Khyañ*, 'matron', is clearly recognizable in:

*khyos-hkhyañ-hyu-ge-mye-hpehi-hkhehi ||*, 212

'matrons united (cf. Tib. *yug*, *yug-po*, *yugs*) with their husbands (Tib. *khyo*) gain eye-sparkle (?)'

a sentiment echoed in the Tibetan manuscripts by 'a wife part-nered by her husband smiles at every speech'. The sentiment is different in:

*hmo[-]r[e]-bzah-re-hse-spye-khyañ ||*, 190

'woman or wife, a matron is a summer of harm'

and in l. 367 we hear of a *hsañ-khyañ*, 'hostile matron'. What is the precise signification of *khyañ* as distinguished from *hmo*, 'woman', 'female' (see *supra*, p. 221) and *bzah*, Tib. *bzah*, 'wife'? Here we may be helped by Laufer's (No. 153) Hsi-hsia *chōñ*, 'mother'. We can see that the sense of 'matron', 'mother', well suits the passages, especially l. 116 and also, with reference to what in Sanskrit is called *dohadā*, l. 190. The word *khyañ* is not known in Tibetan, which, however, in its *hkhyeñ*, *hkheñs*, 'be filled up', cf. *hgeñs*, *bkañ*, *dgañ*, *khoñ*, 'fill', *gañ*, 'fill', 'full', furnishes a good basis for an etymology.

We may now return to the *gso-nad* of ll. 193-4. It might seem possible that the *gso-nad*, who are left when the men and women of the place are laid low, are the 'living sick', Tib. *gson* 'live', 'life', + *nad* 'sickness'. The Tibetan has, in fact, the expression

<sup>1</sup> *Khyeñu* (or *bu*)-*btsas*, 'a child (or son) was born'. The form *tshas* occurs with the meaning 'woman in child-birth'.

<sup>2</sup> In Tibetan *rj*, *rts*, *rdz*, are often pronounced as simply *j*, *s*, *z*, (Jaeschke, Tib. Grammar, § 7).

*nad-gso*, 'sickness-tending'; but the order of the syllables in the compound could not be inverted, and the *gso* is the word which means 'feed', 'nourish', 'rear', 'cure', e.g. in *hdud-hgro-gso-ba*, 'rear an animal'. In the Nam phrase:

nor-gso-hkañ-prom-re, 151, 'having their fill of wealth and  
*gso* [as booty]'

we may understand *gso* as 'livestock', in which case *nad* will have nothing to do with 'sickness' and may be = Tib. *gnad*, 'essence', 'pith', in the sense of 'last remainder'. The other occurrence of *hnad* (l. 46) is, however, obscure.

The liberal choice of significations presented by the syllables *na* and *ña*, with their various written forms, would not be fully stated without a mention of *hnañ*, 'spring' in *hnañ-hchos-hre-ge*, l. 159 (see *JRAS.* 1939, p. 215, cf. *supra*, p. 145) and *ña* in *ña-hke*, perhaps = 'five' (cf. *hñi-ke*, p. 272). No equivalent of Tib. *ña*, 'I', has come to light.

19. *hdzoñ*, *hrdzoñ*; *hke*, *khe*, *hkhe*, *hkhehe*; *plan*, *hplan*, *phlan*; *hdrah*, *hdra*; *hyo-hsi*; *hgam*, *hrgam*; *can*; *hthan*; *gdah*; *hrgom*; *hdro*; *we*, *wehi*; *hñor*; *hwam*; *hlda-hko*; *hldihi*; *rma*; *hthar-mye*; *kyim*, *hkyim*, *gyim*.

The above-quoted passage, concerning 'house-man', 'house-wife', and cattle, is followed (ll. 194-6) by:

*hrdzoñ-hyo-hsi-dze-ste-gdzu-ge-cig*  
*hke-plan*(356 *hplan*, 357 *phlan*)-*hdrah-dze-hthar-mye-ge-lol*  
*hldihi-su-hldoñ* || *dze-hlda-hko-ge-hdzoñ*  
*rma-hsu-hdra-dze-hwam-wehi-ge-tsewu*.

After the discussion *supra* (pp. 150 sqq.) it may perhaps be assumed as certain that in the expression *moñ-hdzoñ(hjoñ)* the word *hdzoñ* = Tib. *rdzoñ*, 'castle', which is also found (p. 214) written in Amdo as *hdzoñ*. In the above lines both *hdzoñ*, the usual Nam form, and *hrdzoñ* occur.

Antithetic to *hrdzoñ*, in the following parallel verse is *hke*, with the addition *plan-hdrah*, whereof the element *plan* is known only<sup>1</sup> from a Central-Asian Tibetan document (*Zeitschrift für vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft*, I, pp. 281, 285), which speaks of 'a *plan* of a market town' (*khrom-gyi-plan*): it is suggested that *plan* is equivalent to *srañ*, 'street', and it may, in fact, be etymologically

<sup>1</sup> *Täkpä*, however, has *plāñ*, 'sun'.



connected therewith.<sup>1</sup> If *hke* is practically equivalent to *khrom*, the antithesis of the market town to the citadel is satisfactory. Such a word, moreover, will be acceptable as accounting for the syllable *ke*, *ge* in a number of place-names (*Hel-ke*, *Ran-ke*, *Sud-ke*, *Mer-ke*) from north-eastern Tibet or the adjacent regions.

*Hke* (l. 212, *hkhe*, ll. 251, 314, *hkhehe*) may be identified with the Tibetan word *khe*, 'profit' (*khe-nen*, 'profit and loss', *khe-pa*, in Amdo = *tshon-pa*, 'tradesman, dealer'), a word and notion which can be shown to have been prominent in the thoughts of Tibetan-using Central-Asians. Accordingly the *khe* of any city was its bazaar or business quarter, its 'Cheapside'.

The *hdra* of *plan-hdra* will then be the 'network' (Tib. *dra*) of 'streets'; for a metaphorical use of *dra* is known in Tibetan with reference to a strategical network and also to fortifications (*gron-gi-dra-ba*, 'fortification round a village'). The literal sense is seen in l. 260 *hsas-hdrah-hdag-chi*, 'children with nets' (for catching birds, &c., as in the Tibetan manuscripts).

The parallel expression *hyo-hsi*, attached to 'castle', can naturally contain the word *hsi*, 'high', noted above: and, in fact, the repetition of the verse in l. 356 has the alternative form *hsid*. Since *hyo* is proved to exist in the text as equivalent to Tibetan *g-yo*, 'be unsteady', 'agitated', *g-yo-byed*, 'move' or 'quake', also 'cheat', *yo*, 'crooked', 'sloping', 'distorted', 'deceitful', the *hyo-hsid*, 'high crooked', can hardly help being 'the high road zig-zag' (*rla-lam-sgya-sgyo*—probably connected with *g-yo/hyo*: the common Tibetan form being *gya-gyu*) many times mentioned in one of the Tibetan manuscripts together with the 'high fort' (*rlan-mkhar*) and the 'high mansion' (*rla-khyim*). It is the zigzag ascent into the citadel.

*Khe* as a Verb = 'gain', appears elsewhere in the text (see p. 289), and *hyo* also may recur in the same sense of 'crooked'.

It is now quite evident what is meant by 'the Low Town becoming high' (*hkhar-hrpag-g-yar-re*, ll. 128, 136, see *supra*, p. 227) and the 'fort being made low' (*hkar-rpag-re*, l. 192). The 'High Town', the *ntho-mkhar* of one of the Tibetan manuscripts, is the residence of the chiefs, while the Low Town (*dmaḥ-mkhar*, *ibid.*) is occupied by the commons, who will appear *infra* as *kru*,

<sup>1</sup> In Kan-su and NE. Tibet some unexpected phonetical relations are evidenced; thus, one of the Tibetan manuscripts has *plan* = *rlan*s, 'moist', and Mānyak has *phwiḥ*, Menia *fu*, = *sua*, 'tooth'.



'filth', sc. 'rabble', 'canaille'. In the text the elevation of the Low Town is clearly equated to the fall of the 'Moñ-castle':

hkhār-hrpag-g-yar-[re-]stor-moñ-hjoñ-re, 128,

and to the rise of the *hldag-nag*, the villain of the situation:<sup>1</sup>

hkhār-rpag-g-yar-re-hldag-[nag-]hgrom, 135-6.

It was through that event that importance came to the *hgam*. The fall of the Moñ-castle caused the flight of the horse (ll. 79-80), the original chief, who is therefore described as 'making room', i.e. abandoning his place:

hrah-wehi-rta-ge-stor-moñ-hdzoñ ||, 139-40

(cf. l. 114). The connexion of the same event with excessive heat (world-conflagration) is likewise mentioned:

dgu-hldo-htor-ge-stor-hmoñ-joñ, 78, 139 (*hdzoñ*),

and the horse's flight is related to the same in:

dgu-hldo-htor-re-hra-we-rtah, 191.

The *hgam* seems actually to have come into being upon that occasion, and the horse's retreat thereto was synonymous with the loss of the *cañ* (i.e. the *hrdzoñ*):

hrtah-hgam-hkom ('made') -re-stor-moñ-hjoñ

rtah-hgam-hphar ('gone') -[re-]cañ-stor-hdor-hyoñ ||, 118-19.

The *hgam* is several times (ll. 131-2, 133 (*hrgam*), 221) mentioned as *hthañ-hgam*, i.e. '*hgam* in the high plains (Tib. *thañ*)', on which see p. 5. This must be the *gam/gams*, 'posting-station', discussed *supra*, as occurring in some names of localities such as *Bde-gams*, and probably identical with *bam/bams/boms*, found in other names (Ba-bams, Khri-boms, &c.) and actually preserved in the original designation of Kum-bum, viz. *Hgo-boms*.<sup>2</sup> Essentially the horse's desertion of his place is his entry into the service of man (the *hbos*, 'big man', 'master', discussed *supra*, p. 231), which is a main feature in the text of one of the Tibetan manuscripts: and this fact helps us to realize the *fundamental*, but not obvious, unity of matter in the two compositions. What function the horse discharges in the Nam text will appear *infra* (p. 277).

<sup>1</sup> It is not quite certain that the *hldag-nag* = *hbroñ* is conceived as an individual and not as a class, the 'common people': the latter might be suggested by the expression *hbroñ-re-ge* (l. 250), which should mean 'all the *hbroñ*'. Possibly the text fluctuates between the notions of group and typical (here also allegorical) individual.

<sup>2</sup> On the alternation *g/b* see pp. 33, n. 5, 290.

It is only in this relation that a human being comes explicitly upon the scene.

In the text the word *hgam* occurs also, without reference to the particular *hthañ-hgam*, in the sense of 'home-community' or 'company', 'group'. This is seen in:

ldyañ-hjo-hjihi-re-meñi-ra-hgam ||, 78

'Where there is . . ., the eye's-horizon, or sentinel post (*meñi-ra*) is the *hgam*.'

rñam-skar-hkañ-re-gdañ-hnañ-hgam ||, 191

'Under threatening stars [any] available (*gdañ*) place is the *hgam*.'

(the latter perhaps repeated in the fragmentary line 396) and in the above-quoted (p. 238) passage *hñah-tsu*, &c. The form with Prefix *r*, *hrgam*/*rgam*, has, no doubt, a verbal signification = 'form a community', 'take into a community', as we can realize by means of Tib. *sgam*, to which it exactly corresponds. In ordinary Tibetan this *sgam* is not known, though the parallel form *sbam*, *sbams*, *sboms* means 'place together', 'collect together'; but one of the manuscripts has it in:

ñan-blo-rtul-gyis-hdzañs-rnon-po-la-myi-bsgam-ho

'By disciplining an inferior mind one does not rank with the sharp-witted.'

Of this verbal *rgam* one occurrence (l. 307) has been quoted *supra* (p. 231) in connexion with *mañ*, and it is one of a group found in ll. 304-7; it may also be seen in:

rgyed-hsañ-rgam-cañ-hldyo-hrje-hbro ||, 35-6

'A city (*cañ*?) with secret disunion (cf. ll. 16-17 *hrñe-gsañ*, 'secret enmity') taken in (*rgam*).'

and similarly in ll. 169, 219, 286, 316. The first of these, l. 169, has an interest as bringing in another *r/s* form and also as illustrating the style of the text. In:

hrgom-hkhru[-]r[e]-hto-na-hrpeñi-hrgam-re-hto

hdro-hbroñ-prom-ge-hkoñi-me-htul ||, 169, 170

'the *hkhru* being passed over (*hrgom*), the *hrpeñi* were taken into the community:

the yak being made to go (*hdro*), his speech-fire was suppressed.'

the order of the words should have been *hkhru-hrgom-re-hto* and correspondingly *hbroñ-hdro-prom-ge*, *hrgom* and *hdro* being the Predicates. In the first of the two cases the *hrgom* is placed in

front for the sake of antithesis to *hrgam* at the end of the verse: in the second the *hdro* is placed first for the sake of antithesis to *me*, 'fire'; and this, further, implies a pun on *hdro*, which also means 'heat', a pun which recurs in l. 352 (antithesis to *mu*, 'cold'). There are some further rhetorical points in the context.

*Hrgom* is an *r/s* form of *hgom* = Tib. *hgom*, 'tread', 'pass over', *gom-pa*, 'pace', 'step', whence comes *sgom*, 'practice' and hence 'meditate'.

The obvious identity of *cañ*, as noted above, with *rdzoñ*, *hdroñ*, is hardly less patent in:

hldañ-rgye-hdor-re-hwañ-ta-hnen

hcañ-rgye-rpag-re-hmo-ta-hpun ||, 209-11

'Having thrown away the big stick (or prop, support, *hldañ* ?), power is dangerous:

The big city laid low (talk or prayer or deliberation is vain ?).'

Fortunately, the explanation is simple: from occurrences in identical words it can be shown (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 28-9, 250) that both this *cañ* and also a form *cag* (an alternation *n/g* being established for Amdoan Tibetan by *stiñ* = *sdig*, *hthug* = *hthuñ*, &c., in the manuscripts) are merely the well-known Chinese word *ch'êng* (Ancient *čjäng*, Karlgren, No. 1204), 'fortification', 'city', an exact equivalent of *hdroñ*. Other examples of *cañ/hcañ/chañ* in the Nam text differ in signification.

The form *hwam* = *bam*, of which particulars have been given above, and which may, in fact, be etymologically related to *gam*, occurs in antithesis to *hdroñ* in the last two lines of the passage (ll. 194-6) quoted above (p. 241). For the meaning 'mansion' or the like is clear in

hñor-hlah-hwam-hsid-dze, 11

'On the high *hwams* in the *hñor*'

where *hñor* = 'farm' or 'estate'. *Hwam-wehi*, in which *we/wehi*, will have its very common signification 'do', 'make' (Hsi-hsia *we*, Tib. *hbyed*, p. 337 *infra*), means 'home-making' (or 'maker'). *tswehu*, perhaps = *htswe*, l. 6, is unfortunately not known; but see p. 269. In the preceding verse *hlda-hko-ge-hdroñ* can mean 'there' (Tib. *da-ko*, see p. 201) is their castle'. This leads to the recognition of an important antithesis in the first parts of the two lines:

hldiñi-su-hldoñ-dze . . ., 'to what (Tib. *su*) *hldiñi* [they] depart'

rma-hsu-hdra-dze . . ., 'in what-like (Tib. *hdra*) *rma*'



and the sense emerges:

'Whatever land they go to, there is their castle:'

'By whatever river, home-making (makers) [is play?]' see p. 269.

That *hldihi* means 'land' will be evidenced independently (pp. 329-30): *rma* is the name, local and general, of the Tibetan Hoang-ho (*Rma-chu*), and the meaning 'By whatever Hoang-ho' would be quite apt with people bordering on that great river; but we can learn from Dr. Laufer (No. 109) that the Hsi-hsia term for 'river' is *mašuo*, 'that is, the River = Tibetan *rma-chu*, the Yellow River (Huang-ho)'.

In the two previous lines that which has ceased to exist on the high zigzag road up to the castle is the *ste-gdzu-ge* the 'files of donkeys' (on which see *infra*, p. 353), and what wanders free (*lol*) in the (burned) bazaar is the *hthar-mye*, 'the fires let loose' (= *mye-thar* of one of the Tibetan manuscripts).

This would be a suitable place for considering some other terms relating to dwellings: for various reasons most of these may conveniently be postponed. But *gyim/kyim/hkyim* has an analogy to *hgam/hrgam*, which favours its treatment here. The form immediately calls to mind a Tibetan word for 'house', *khyim*, which has very numerous cognates throughout the whole Tibeto-Burman sphere (for particulars see the *Linguistic Survey of India*, I. ii, 'Comparative Vocabularies', pp. 102-3). The verification is at once evident in:

*hsod-te-rmag-dze-rmañ-ra-gyim*, 147-8

'For an army brought low the tomb-enclosure is home',

more especially as confusion of *media* and aspirate is not infrequent in the Tibetan manuscripts, and the alternation is also etymologically justified. Quite similar is:

*hrañ-hlđah-hnam-ge-klu-hto-hkyim*, 37

'the heaven-inhabitants proper [had to take] the blind [mountains] for home.'

But in the other occurrences:

*hrihi-hdom-hkyim-re*, 294, 297

*hche-rgyo-hkyim-re*, 323

*hbri-hdzohu-kyim-re*, 324

*hyu-htsah-kyim-re*, 345, 350 (*hkyim*), 351 (*hkyim*),

*kyim/hkyim* is a Predicate, and we might not see the force of it, had we not learned from the case of *hrgam* that *hkyim* here means

taken as members of the house', so that *hrihi-hdom-hkyim-re* means 'the mountain bears being included among the inhabitants', a meaning in full accord with the context.

This, however, is not the whole matter: for Tibetan has a word *hgyim*, 'circumference', which stands in normal relation to aspirated forms *hkhyim*, 'whirl' (as of water), *hkhyims*, 'be encircled with a halo', like the sun and moon: far from being secondary, the verbal idea of 'surrounding' is clearly the source of the notion of 'house', 'home', 'entourage': a situation highly characteristic of Tibeto-Burman speech, in which the roots so commonly denote not a material thing, but an idea of action or occurrence, a utility: see *infra*, p. 253.

20. *skyim*, *hskyim*; *se*, *hse*; *hgar*; *hdzar*; *thar*, *htar*, *hthar*; *pyaṅ*, *phyaṅ*; *hto*, *tho*; *hphah*-*hphah*; *gcog*; *hphag*; *hbehi*, *hbe*, *hbehe*; *hbyig*; *hbah*, *hbar*; *hro*; *htsag*; *hbu*; *hrug*, *por*, *hpor*; *nu-glaṅ*; *hkuḥu*; *nehu*; *wehi*, *hwehi*; *hkuḥu*; *hñed*; *htram*; *glaḥ*.

In ll. 69, 70:

*skyim-se-hdzar-dze-hbehi-la-hgar*  
*thar-pyaṅ-hjo-dze-hphag-la-gnaḥ*  
*gcog-hlde-hldu-dze-hbyig-la-gnaḥ*

the expression *hphag-la-gnaḥ*, which patently means 'a place for the hog' (Tib. *phag*, a word most widely represented in Tibeto-Burman languages), shows that the passage relates to the habitations of certain animals: and it calls to mind a passage in one of the Tibetan manuscripts, concerning the felicity of several species during the Age of Bliss: the sheep in the meadow, the horse in the moor, the goat and tiger (*cha*?) in the woods, the *mdzo* in the farm, the hog in the shelter (*skyibs*), &c. Even the language is in part similar: for the word *dgar*, 'gathered (encamped) apart', cf. *sgar*, 'camp', is clearly reflected in the Nam *hgar*.

Elsewhere sheep are casually mentioned as *skyibs-lug*, 'sheep of the *skyibs*',<sup>1</sup> which in the *Dictionary* is defined as 'a place giving shelter (either in a rock, under a tree, roof or cavern)', e.g. *brag-skyibs*, 'a sheltering place under an overhanging rock or a projecting roof', *bkah-skyibs*, 'a covered terrace or small portico before a house', *char-skyib*, 'shelter from rain' (= *char-khyim* of one of the Tibetan manuscripts).

<sup>1</sup> The phrase occurs also in a document cited in *Inventaire des manuscrits tibétains de Touen-houang conservés à la Bibliothèque Nationale*, by Mlle Lalou, no. 239 (3).



*Skyim-se* will certainly be 'house-roof' = Tib. *khañ-rtse*, 'house-top'; for this *se*, = *rtse*, is found in the Tibetan manuscripts applied to both a mountain top and to a house-roof, and the same is seen in the Nam text, the *se* of a mountain being mentioned in ll. 14, 238-9, and the *se* of a house in

hce-hse-rgye-re-hrkas-hthañ-hlde ||, 57

'If the roof is too large (high), a ladder is requisite.'

*Ĥdzar* clearly means 'stick together', 'cohere', being used of 'enemies and friends' (*hr̥ie-ño*, *ĥdza-ĥtrog*) in ll. 372, 376 (*supra*, p. 220), and being equivalent to Tib. *ĥjar*, which latter form also (scarcely distinguishable in script) appears in l. 220. Hence *skyim-se-ĥdzar* means 'junction of roofs of (adjoining) houses', making in fact a *skyibs*. Here, therefore, we are thinking of houses in a town or village, as is also the case in l. 18 (*ĥskyim-se*).<sup>1</sup>

With *skyim-se-ĥdzar* the *thar-pyañ* of the following verse is again associated in:

ĥtar-phyañ-ĥto-re-skyim-hse-ĥdzar ||, 374.

In this passage *ĥto* can be = *ĥtho*, 'high', *tho*, l. 132 (Tib. *mtho*), or *tho*, 'boundary', which occurs in l. 109;<sup>2</sup> and we need not conceal a suspicion that in l. 69 also *ĥjo* is a miswriting (visually easy) of *ĥtho*. The same *ĥto* = *ĥtho* is possible in l. 210, and practically certain in l. 296, where *g-ri-ĥto* is parallel to *hr̥iñi-ĥruhu*, l. 293.

It is, at any rate, clear that *thar(ĥtar)-pyañ(phyañ)* is something connected with a dwelling; and the same is apparent in:

ĥgweg-ĥwehe-ĥphah-ĥphah<sup>3</sup>-dze-ĥthar-phyañ-ge-ĥrub, 348-9

'The laughing spouses (? p. 343) rushed to the *ĥthar-phyañ*.'

*Phyañ* must denote something suspended or dangling (Tib. *dpyañ/hphyañ*; *dphyañ*, 'a hunter's nets', 'a lasso', *dpyañ-dar*, 'a silk scarf attached to temple pillars or to flag-poles'). *Ĥthar* is more likely to be = Tib. *mthar*, Locative of *mthañ*, 'end', than *ĥthar/thar*, 'get through', 'escape'. *Ĥthar-phyañ* might then be 'boundary [partitions of] suspended [felt]', such as may be seen in Tibet; but we might think of the oft-illustrated<sup>4</sup> roof-cords of

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the 'terraced roofs [in Lhabrang] which meet over narrow alleys' (d'Ollone, *In Forbidden China*, p. 284).

<sup>2</sup> On *ĥt* = *ĥth* or *th* see p. 120.

<sup>3</sup> *ĥphah-ĥphah*, 'laugh', otherwise unknown, is proved by the antithetic *h̥nu-h̥nu*, 'groan', of the preceding verse: it might perhaps be regarded as self-evident; but note the parallel *khā-khe* of Hōrpa. On *ĥgweg-ĥwehe*, see p. 343. *Ĥrub*, which occurs in ll. 108, 261 (*g-rub*) will be = Tib. *rub*, 'rush in a body', *rub-te*, 'altogether', W. Tibetan *grub*, 'all'.

<sup>4</sup> Rockhill, pp. 75-6 (description), *Diary*, p. 132 (illustration); Futterer,



the nomad tents, which before being tethered pass over the tops of rods planted in the ground outside and so produce a *quasi*-wall. Probably, however, we are not here concerned with tents, but with houses more or less adjoining and with partitions such as we have indicated;<sup>1</sup> and this is, in fact, involved in the juxtaposition of *htar-phyan* and *skym-hse-hdzar* in l. 374; but in either case we can see that the junctions of adjoining roofs of a projecting kind would afford the requisite *skyibs* for the animals. The *phag* in his free, paradisial, condition would have, no doubt, a 'rock-shelter', while in later times he would have a sort of sty on the boundary (*mithar*) of the compound.

The *gcog-hlde-hldu* will be the meadow, since we know by direct testimony (*supra*, p. 132) that in Nam *cog* = Tib. *span*, 'meadow': cf. *htañ(thañ)-hldu*, l. 14.

From all this it follows that the *hbehi*, whose place is the *skym-se-hdzar*, is the sheep (*skyibs-lug*), while the *hbyig* of the meadow (*gcog* = Tib. *span*) is the cow. But, in order to carry this through, we must steel ourselves in the face of some improbabilities. In Tibetan *ba* is the common word for the ox-species, and its Diminutive, *behu*, means 'calf'. In Hsi-hsia the word for 'sheep' is *ye* (Laufer, No. 68), and the form appears to have some support in other Tibeto-Burman languages (Mo-so *io*, *iu*, &c.):<sup>2</sup> in fact, we have already found this word in Nam *hya* (*supra*, p. 227; cf. p. 343).

But, as is well known, a plurality of names for animals, representing distinctions of sex, age, &c., is usual in many languages. Hsi-hsia has a word (in Chinese 'transcription') *mo*, meaning 'sheep' (if not 'goat', Laufer, No. 173), and this might be really *ba*, of which our *hbehi* could be a 'Diminutive': in the Tibeto-Burman dialects there seem to be numerous forms, *ma*, *mwa*, *nwa*, which may go back to *ba*, a natural designation of 'baa'-sheep.

As regards *hbyig*, we note that Tibetan has, by the side of the generic *ba* and of *glañ*, *ba-glañ*, 'bull', for 'cow' *ba-mo*, *ba-cu*, and a number of forms, *hjo* and cognates, with which we shall have to deal *infra* (pp. 326-8). For cognates of Nam *hbyig*, signifying 'cow', we may note in the Tibeto-Burman sphere a surprisingly large number of forms such as:

pi, pī, pit, pīt, bik, bī, bī, bik, pui, pūi, muk, mūk, puk  
(*Linguistic Survey of India*, I. ii, pp. 170-1)

i, pp. 281, 283, 336 (illustration); Filchner, *Om Mani Padme Hum*, pp. 145, 304 (illustrations).

<sup>1</sup> See the illustration in d'Ollone, *In Forbidden China* (Tibet), p. 216.

<sup>2</sup> For Hsi-fan cognates see *supra*, p. 94.

which may go back to an original *big* (or *twig*) and which accordingly relieve us of any scruple in regard to Nam *hbyig*.<sup>1</sup>

The word *hbyig* does not recur; but *hbehi* is found in the phrases:

hro-hbehi-hbah-ge, 110

htsag-hro-hbehi-hbar, 234

while the *hbehi-hbah/hbe-hbah* of ll. 234-5 show both that *hbehi* may be found as *hbe* and that the *hbar* of l. 234 is Locative of *hbah* (in fact *-r* = *re* is required by both sense and metrical practice). Hence it is practically certain that in:

hbehi-bah-hbu || hrug, 47

*hbehi* means 'sheep', and the same is likely in regard to *hbehe* (= *hbe*) in l. 46.

It can be shown that the phrase *hro-hbehi-hbah* signifies some oppressive occurrence: and, since *hro* may be = Hsi-hsia *ro*, 'wolf' (Laufer, No. 25), while *hbah* in Tibetan can mean 'seizure', 'distrain', 'carry off', it is highly likely that:

hro-hbehi-hbah-ge = 'wolves seizing, or oppressing, sheep'

htsag-hro-hbehi-hbar, 'when wolf-packs (*htsag* = "collected", *htshogs*, as elsewhere in the text) seize, or oppress, the sheep'.

In l. 47 (*supra*) *hbu-hrug* = Tib. *mgo* (= *dbu*, 'head') -*rug*, 'head bowed down'. The same *hbu*, 'head', in Hsi-hsia *wu* (Laufer, No. 103, where are given parallels in Mo-so, &c.), reappears in:

hdzam-hbron-hron-dze-hdam-to-hbu-hpor, 68

'in tame-yak gorges the tied (animals) have their heads released',

where *por/hpor*, applied to *nu-glan*, 'young oxen', in ll. 175, 359 (*phor*) and with *chi* and *hdro*, 'set free to go', in ll. 183, 353, is = Tib. *hbor*, 'let go' (in the Tibetan manuscripts *bor* and *por*;<sup>2</sup> cf. p. 319 *infra*).

There is no evidence that *hwehi* in any of its occurrences is identical with *hbehi*;

Usually it is the verb 'do' (*g-we*, see p. 337). In:

hkuhu-nehu-htshe-re-wehi-nehu-hrehe, 74

'if the fresh *hkuhu* (Tib. *khu*, 'liquid', 'sap', 'broth'?) harms (goes bad?), there is the fresh *wehi*'

<sup>1</sup> It is curious that Chinese had an old word 'b'yi (Karlgren, No. 713) = 'cow'.

<sup>2</sup> *por* also *Inventaire des Manuscrits tibétains* . . . by Mdlle Lalou, No. 67. 1.



it seems as if some liquid should be meant: and in:

hñed-ge-slug-dze-hwehi-hsi-hpo ||, 47-8

it perishes (*hsi-hpo*) in some connexion with the process of tanning (*hñed*). In case, then, it should mean 'cream', it would accord with the statement of Rockhill (p. 81) that the Koko-nor Tibetans, who are 'expert tanners', use cream for softening the skins: obviously the cream 'perishes' or vanishes.

A metaphorical use of the idea of tanning may be found in one of 'the Tibetan manuscripts', where a certain queen is described as pressing down the heads of the fiends and rendering them pliant (*rñen*, a form of Tib. *mñe*, *mñed*, 'tan', 'rub', *mñen*, 'pliable', 'soft', *mñen-mñel*, 'make soft by tanning'). So in the Nam text the Hbra kingdom or folk were not shaken by the world-cataclysm by reason of three characteristics, whereof one is:

hñed-htram-htsah-glah-tah, 31

'having a *glah* stiff (*htram* = Tib. *tram*, as p. 285 *infra*) to tan or knead.'

They were a 'tough subject'. This interpretation is notably confirmed by the word *glah*, for which elsewhere<sup>1</sup> we have to recognize the common meaning of Tib. *gla*, viz. 'wage'; for we have Hōrpa *gla*, Mānyak *grah* (Thōchū *rāpī* ?), meaning 'skin', perhaps also Tib. *gra*, 'awn', 'bristle', *gra-legs*, 'thick and glossy fur'.

21. *gdzu*, *hdzu*, *gzu*, *hzu*, *hju*, *hjuhu*; *hrañ-hche*; *hgtyañ*, *hlkyañ*; *hbyi*; *hkyud*; *hcah*, *ca*, *hcha*, *cha*; *hdrab*; *hbrad*; *stor*; *hdor*; *mehi* (*hmehi*)-*klu* (*hklu*)-*hcah* (*hcha*); *kya-wa-ne*, *hkyah-hwa-ñe*, *hkyah-wa-ñe*; *hdrab-hwa* (*hwah*)-*hrañ*; *hkyah*, *kya*; *hkhō*; *hpah*; *hdom* (*hgu*, *hguhu*); *hkoñu-mehe*; *rma*; *gre*; *hldyo*, *hldyohō*, *ldyo*; *hkyu-hldon*; *rgyen*; *sli*; *hti*; *hrwad*; *hbañ-prom*; *klag*; *hdzur*; *hwi-hwa*; *hram*.

An identity of *gdzu*, *gzu*, *hju*, *hdzu*, *hzu* easily understood by reason of the pervading equivalence of the Prefixes *g* and *h* in the Nam text and of the very frequent confusion of *dz* and *j* in Tibetan script and pronunciation, and (slightly) surprising only by reason of the intrusion of *z*, which, as explained *supra* (p. 168), is very rare in Nam, is proved by the following parallels:

ste-gdzu-ge-lol, 194 = ste-he-hju-ge-gcig, 356

hrañ-hche-hju-ge, 115 = rañ-hche-hzu, 117

hdzu-hdro-hphor, 183 = gzu-hdro-hphor, 353

<sup>1</sup> e.g. in the *glah-hlad*, 'return for wages', &c., ll. 232-7, and perhaps *gla-hdzo* = Tib. *gla-mi*, 'hireling', ll. 29, 62, 73.



hglyañ (i.e. hlkyañ)-hśe-ge-gzu-hbyi-hkyud, 307 = lkyañ-  
hzu-hrño-re-hña(hñañ)-hdro-mo, 188  
gdzu-hbyi-hñañ-re, 305, 308, 311.

In ll. 115, 117 the *hju*, *hzu* is called *hrañ-hche*, which must be = Tib. *rañ*, 'self' + *ges*, *ches*, 'dear', 'important', 'believe', and clearly means 'self-willed', more especially as l. 117 continues:

hrañ-hkah-khar-gsom, 'the three towns talking at will'.

In l. 307 the 'wise' *hglyañ* ('capable' *hlkyañ* in l. 188) are said to be of *gzu-hbyi* race (*hkyud* = Tib. *rgyud*, as in l. 220 and elsewhere: see pp. 214, 258); and this fact alone would be decisive, since the *hlkyañ* must be = *rkyañ*, the 'wild ass' of Tibet. The 'self-willed' character of the ass, *hju*, *hzu*, accounts probably for the word *gzu-lum*, 'lums', 'obstinate', 'rash', &c., in Tibetan, which does not seem to have preserved any other trace of the noun.

No more is needed to prove that *gdzu*, *hdzu*, *gzu*, *hzu*, *hju* are the original Nam forms of the word *zu* certified as Nam, and as meaning 'ass', by the Tibetan translator mentioned above (p. 132), in the name *cho-pyi-cog-zu*, 'Ass of the Meadow, Little Tiger', and occurring elsewhere as *zu-tsog-zu*, 'Ass, Meadow Ass'. But we can also see that *gdzu-hbyi*, *gzu-hbyi*, since *hbyi* will appear elsewhere = Hsi-hsia *dbhi/hbhi/hbiñ*, 'small' (Nevsky, No. 125; see *infra*, p. 265), is the genuine original form of *cho-pyi*, 'Little Tiger', so that *gdzu*, in *gdzu-hbyi*, properly means not 'ass' but 'tiger'.

We have here, it seems, the explanation of the whole matter. For the Nam text actually has *hjuhu* (l. 312) with the signification 'tiger', or, at least, some clawing beast; and this is, perhaps, the Chinese *hu* (Ancient, 'xuo, Karlgren, No. 87), or *ü* (Ancient *ngiu*, Karlgren, No. 1284), having that meaning.<sup>1</sup> The resemblance of the Chinese loan-word to the native Nam word, *zu*, *zu*, *ju*, or *dzu*, for 'ass', inspired the Nam people with the notion of a resemblance between the two creatures. And this resemblance is actually stated in the text:

hrañ-hche-hju-ge-hcah-htso-htsañ, 115

'self-willed asses are equal to *hcah* (ravenous beasts).'

The *kiang*, or Wild Ass, though of ass race, is 'wise'.

It is, however, possible that the word represented by the Tibetan writer's *cho* is not the word for 'tiger', *hjuhu*, but this same *hcah*, which also appears as *cha*, *hcha*: cf. *za/zo*, &c., p. 199. Line 71

<sup>1</sup> The *zu-brab* of one of the Tibetan Manuscripts, denoting some unlucky cast in divination, is perhaps a 'clawing tiger'.

speaks of 'glaring' *hcha*, and in ll. 235, 239, 240, 242, of the *ca* or *hchah* as requiring suppression in company with the yak; but ll. 202, 203 speak of its 'horns' (*hru*).

The word *hcah/cha*, which is really nothing but the Tibetan verb *hchah*, 'snap at', 'mangle', together with two other terms, namely *hdrab* and *hbrad*, used in the Nam designations of certain animals, invites attention to a feature of such nomenclature. As mentioned above, the Tibetan names of objects are often merely verb-roots expressing some action or occurrence, the connexion being a human interest or utility. Thus *hcah* can be a common designation of all animals which 'mawl', *hdrab* of all animals which 'snatch' (*hbrab*), and *hbrad* of those which 'scratch'. European language is not innocent of such anthropocentric expressions, careless of nature's species: thus under the English word 'game' a large variety of independently existing creatures is lumped together. Another Nam example of the same will present itself later (p. 256).

In ll. 161-3 three classes of creatures are grouped together as destined to be driven in flight (*stor-hdor-yon* = Tib. *stor*, 'be lost', 'go astray', cf. *hthor*, *btor*, *gtor*, 'be strewn, dispersed, &c.' + *dor* / *hdor*, 'throw out', 'cast out', 'forsake', + *yon*, on which see p. 199):

hldyañ-hpu-hbri-re-meñi-klu-hcah-yañ-stor-hdor-hyon  
kyu-ldoñ-rño-re-kyā-wa-ne-yañ-stor-hdor-hyon ||  
hldyo-hdom-nag-re-hdrab-hwa-hrañ-yañ-stor-hdor-hyon. ||

In ll. 339-40 and 343-4 the first two reappear:

hkyu-hldoñ-hrño[-]r[e]-hkyah-hwa-ñe[-]r[e]-hstor-hdeñi-  
hphyid ||, 339-40  
hldyañ-hpu-hbri-re-meñi-hklu-hcah  
sroñ-ñe-gse-re-ldañ-[hdeñi]-hpyid ||||, 343-4.

In ll. 214-15, 218, the *hkyā-wa-ñe*, similarly described as *kyu-hldoñ-hrño*, are said *htshu-to-hphan* ('had better come?'); and the *hmeñi-klu-hcah*, likewise described as *hldyañ-hpu-hbri-re*, have the great *hkho* for their *hkho* ('ruler?'). In l. 150 the latter are again stated to have fled (*stor-htah-htoni* ||).

In connexion with the last group of passages we find mention of the *hbrad*:

hbeñi-tyañ-rdehe-ge-hstsañ-hbrad-hrdaghi ||, 213-14  
'flocks' (*rde*, see p. 270) of sheep and *tyañ* repel (Tib. *rdeg*,  
"smite") the *hstsañ-hbrad* (for the sense, cf. the *ldyo-stor*  
... of l. 140, *infra*).



and these *hbrad* appear as 'braves' (*hpah*) in :

*hbrad-re-hpah-yañ-hmañ-ge-hrgam-hjihi* ||

*hbrad-re-hpah-ge-hbrad-sta-hsid-re-hyah-hdahd* ||, 305-6.

Here immediately follow the *hdom-hgu* and the *gdzu-hbyi*; and with the *hdom-hguhu* we find the *hjuhu-hbrad* in :

*hdom-hguhu-rma[-]r[e]-hri-stah-mehi*

*hjuhu-hbrad-rma[-]r[e]-g-ri-sta-mehi*, 312-13.

In ll. 171-3 the *hldyo-hdom-hnag* of l. 162 are said to have talked (*hkoñu-hphrom-hto*) and then apparently to have been deprived of the 'fire of speech' (*hkoñu-mehe*); and they are no longer identified with the *hdrab-hwah-hrañ*, who in ll. 172-3 severally (*hrañ*) talked :

*hdrab-hwah-hrañ-hrañ-re-hkoñu-phrom-hto*

and whose 'fire of speech' was then *hdrab*.<sup>1</sup>

To complete the story it has to be mentioned that :

*ldyo-stor-hthu-re-hdrab-stor-htoño* ||, 140

'the *ldyo* being assembled in flight, the *hdrab* flee'.

The *hjuhu-hbrad* of ll. 312-13 have already been identified as 'clawing tigers'; and in ll. 305-6 they are, we see, curtly mentioned as the *hbrad*, 'the claws', and their *hbrad-sta*, 'clawings', are noted. Their *rma*, which in ll. 312-13 render the mountains useless (*g-ri-sta-mehi*), are therefore the wounds (Tib. *rma*) which they inflict. The *hdom-hgu* associated with them in this are obviously the bears (Tib. *dom*, 'tawny bear'), the *gre* who in ll. 304-5 occur with the *hdom-hgu* as 'mountain-community-bears' (*hrihi-hrgam-gre*, Tib. *gre*, 'bear'). We can see then that the *hldyo-hdom-nag* associated in l. 162 with the *hdrab-wa-hrañ*, and distinguished from them in ll. 171-3, are another kind of bear, the black (Tib. *nag*) bear. Since, with unmistakable punning, the 'fire of speech' is stated in the case of the *hdrab-hwah-hrañ*, ll. 172-3, to have been 'snatched away' (*hdrab*), whereas in the case of the *hldyo-hdom-hnag* it was *hldyo*, it follows that the *hldyo* in the second case means some kind of 'taking' or 'deprivation'.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Tibetan *hbrad* exists as a by-form of *hbrad*, 'claw', 'be wrathful', while *hbrab* is 'snatch', 'beat', &c. Initial *gr*, *dr*, *br* are liable to confusion in even early Tibetan (*hgron/hdron*, *hgrul/hdrul*, *hgrim/hbrim*, *hdrid/hbrid*); and in the Nam there is perhaps some confusion of *hdrab* (cf. *brab*, *supra* p. 253) and *brad*.

<sup>2</sup> Concerning the great Tibetan bear, regarded as semi-human and intensely dreaded—being the 'abominable' (which should be 'carnivorous', *gcan-gzan*) 'snow-men' of Himālayan explorers—reference may be made to Prejevalsky, *Mongolia*, ii, 249-51, and Rockhill, *The Land of the Lamas*, pp.



The *hkya-hwa-ñe* are regularly, we see, described as *hkyu-hldoñ-hrño*, which can reasonably be understood as 'capable (*hrño*) of making off (Tib. *hdoñ*) with speed' (Tib. *dkyu*, *dkyus*, 'run a race', 'swift'). They will then be fugitive creatures; and this furnishes an explanation of their name. For *kya* in its other occurrences in the text is very probably = Tib. *skya*, 'crop', while *hwa* will very likely mean 'making' (cf. *hdrab-hwa*, 'snatch-making' and see *infra*, p. 337), and *ñe* has, as we have seen (p. 222), the signification 'injuring', 'bad'. Thus the *hkya-hwa-ñe* will be 'crop-making-injury' creatures, i.e. antelopes and other fugitive species which make war upon agriculture.

We come now to the *meñi-hklu-hcah*, described as *hldyañ-hpu-hbri*. The description, in which *hpu-hbri* may, as shown *supra* (p. 217), but need not, mean 'male and female', involves the very difficult word *hldyañ* and may therefore be left for a later consideration (pp. 331-3). But *meñi-hklu* we already know (p. 131) as the name (*Mye-kru*) of a legendary person, who, as well as one of his daughters, was devoured by the demon *Dgu-lcogs*, in another version *Go-ya-go*. That name is stated to mean 'Eye-blind', and in the Nam text *meñi* and *hklu* have been shown (p. 223, cf. p. 282) to have the corresponding significations. The person, whose daughter became the peacock ancestress of the Skyi people, was perhaps the legendary progenitor of their Nam kinsfolk. His name, 'Blind Birds' Head and King' (*supra*, p. 131), and the story of his daughter, suggest that he was originally a bird, namely an owl; and this suggestion is confirmed by the name of the fiend, *Go*, which may very well be = Tib. *go* (Mo-so *hio*), 'vulture'. The enemy of the owl, in Indian legend the crow, may in old Tibet have been the vulture. In the passage:

*hldyañ-hpu-hbri-re-hmeñi-klu-hcah-dze-htor-hkho-ge-hkhoñi* ||, 218,

following a description of the great yak as *hkho*, which word seems elsewhere to mean 'chief' or 'leader' (*infra*, p. 263), it seems likely that the meaning is that over (*dze*) the *hmeñi-klu-hcah*, 'the great *hkho* (= *hgo*, vultures) are *hkho* (chiefs)'. As regards the syllable *hcah* added to *hmeñi-klu*, it has previously (*JRAS.* 1939, p. 207) been suggested that it may be the pluralizing *tsa*, &c., found in other connexions (see p. 187). But, since that *hcah* has not 116-17, 150-1, &c. Rockhill tells us (pp. 171-2) that 'Bears are very numerous around the Yellow River, where they do not keep to the hill-sides, but are frequently met with on the plains'.

been found in the text as *tsa*, &c., it is now more likely that it is merely another instance of the *hcah* which means 'mangle', 'tear'.

The connexion of the *mehi-hklu-hcah* with the Nam country may explain why in ll. 343-4 it is said of him that:

srōñ-ñe-gśe-re-ldañ-hdehi-hpyid

'being straightly (or straightly and evilly, ñe) wise, he suffices as an ally (? *ldañ-hdehi-hpyid*),'

whereas in ll. 339-40 the fugitive *hkyah-hwa-ñe* 'suffices as flying (*hstor-hdehi-hphyid*)', i.e. all he wants (or all that we want) is that he should get away, from the crops.

The word *hldyo*, attached to the black bear in the recurrent phrase *hldyo-hdom-nag* and identical, or punningly identified, with a *hldyo* meaning 'take', 'deprive', or the like, cannot, one would suppose, have much to do with the *ldyo* of l. 140 (quoted *supra*):

'the *ldyo* being assembled in flight, the *hdrab* flee':

the *hldyo-hdom-nag* are themselves *hdrab* (l. 162). In fact, the text itself in ll. 383-4 distinguishes a *ldyo-roho*, 'ldyo-district', from a *hldyo-hro*, 'hldyo-district'. But what if *ldyo* = 'cattle'? We then get the sense:

'when the fleeing cattle close together, the wolves, &c., flee'

which is a well-certified occurrence, stated also in the ll. 213-14 *hbehi-tyañ* . . . quoted *supra* (p. 253). In another passage:

hdom-hgu-htsu-hu-hyañ-hmañ-hldyo-hrgam, 303-4

'though the bears come, cattle in numbers (*hman-hldyo*) form a community'.

But, if *ldyo* does not essentially mean 'cattle', but rather 'milk', secondarily 'all animals used for milking', we not only obtain a term analogous to the above *hdrab* and *hbrad*, but also understand the 'taking' and 'depriving': the 'fire of speech' was 'snatched away' (*hdrab*) from the *hdrab-hwah-hrañ*, but 'milked out' (*hldyo*) from the *hldyo-hdom-hnag*. That *ldyo*, in the form *ldyohu*, has, in fact, the meaning 'milk' may appear, it is hoped, later (pp. 326-8): the metaphorical application of the notion of 'milk-ing' can be seen again in:

hñu[-]r[e]-hñah-rgyen-na-hñu-hldo-hldyoho ||, 355

'absence of weeping (Tib. *ñu*, *ñur*) being put in order ("arranged" Tib. *yen* or "being attended to", "moving softly", Tib. *g-yen*), weeping was milked away',



where *hñu* and *hñah* are already known, as also the Abstract Suffix *hldo*; and *rgyeñ*, with the required sense of 'putting in order', recurs in the next following verse.

The above may help to explain what were the creatures, *sli* and *hrwad*, which in the two cases respectively 'milked' and 'snatched away' the fire of speech:

sli-hti-hrño[-]r[e]-hkoñu-meñe-hldyo |||, 171-2

hrwad-hbañ-prom-yañ-hkoñu-me-hdrab, 172-3

so that the *hldyo-hdom-hñag* and *hdrab-hwah-hrañ* have remained speechless. The *hrwad*, who is *hbañ-prom*, i.e. 'made powerful or master (Tib. *dbañ*)', can readily be identified with Tib. *rbad*, 'a large species of eagle', more especially since the next following verse reads:

klag-hrwad-hdzur-[re]-hwi-hweñi-htsag, 173

where *klag*, which appears also in Tib. *klag-cor*, 'clamour', 'noise', is the name (*glag*) of 'a bird resembling an eagle . . . : carries away kids and lambs. This bird is numerous in Mongolia, central Tibet, and Kham. Probably the lammergeyer.' *Rbad* itself means 'harsh-voiced' and is name of 'a large species of eagle'. Thus the verse means:

'while the screaming eagle, or lammergeyer, is away (Tib. *hdzur*, *zur*, &c., "turn aside", "a corner", &c.), the mice or rats (Tib. *byi-ba* + *hi*, on which see p. 191) collect.'

The mice or rats (*hwi-wa*) can be seen again in ll. 201, 273.

It is therefore fairly certain in advance that the *sli*, who 'milked' the fire of speech from the bears, are some animal species. They cannot be the Tibetan *sri*, 'a species of devil or vampire', because that word seems to occur in the text in the form *sri* and in a dissimilar context. In l. 46 they are imagined or dreamed of, perhaps in the dark, by the *hbeñe*, who may be sheep (p. 249). In the present passage they are *hti-hrño*, 'capable of, or acquainted with darkness or stopping (*hti*)': in ll. 288, 318, they are 'wise'; and in the former of these they have authority when the *hrleñi* are accordant or pleased (*hram*) in supervision, whereas in the latter they *ldyon* or *ldyob* (reading not quite certain) when the *hldēñi* are *hmo* ('bad' or 'stupid') or *hmo* in supervision. If they were marmots, they would be taking a just revenge upon the bears, which feed upon them, but there is no philological support for this; if they were tortoises, that might explain their power of resting (*hti*), and the name might be connected with Hsi-hsia *lin*



and the cognates adduced by Dr. Laufer (No. 133). But philological evidence is wanting: since, however, the field of search is circumscribed, it seems likely that a decisive etymology will one day be found (*srin*, *srin-bu*, 'worm', 'maggot', 'insect', 'vermin'?). The *Dictionary* knows *sri* as 'a kind of wild animal'.

22. *rta*, *hṛta*, *rtaḥ*, *hṛtaḥ*; *hbroñ*; *rgyag*, *hcag-rgyag*; *rdzo*; *hkyud*; *hkrug*; *-hgu*; *hldag/gldag-nag/gnag*; *hko-nag*; *hko*, *hkoḥo*, *hkoḥu*, *kho*, *hkhō*, *hkhōḥ*, *hkhōḥu*, *hgo*, *rgo*, *rgor*; *rño* (*hko°*, *hkhō°*, *hku°*); *hkus*; *hṭoñ*, *gtoñ* (*hgo°*, *hrah°*); *hkaḥ-hgo*; *rub*; *hrah*, *ra* (*skuḥu°*, *meḥu°*, *rgo°*); *hbar*; *rwer*; *hnam*; *hthun*; *hpañ*; *hphañ* (*g-ri°*, *hriḥi°*).

That *rta* and *hbroñ* are the horse and yak-bull respectively, the hero and villain of the composition, requires no proof: the names are identical with the Tibetan forms. The *rdzo*, who is the friend of the *hbroñ*:

*htañ-hrdzo-hño*[-]*r[e]*-*hṭor-hbroñ-hṭsors*, 219-20

*thañ-rdzo-hkyud-na-hbroñ-hḍru-hjar*, 220

must be the *mdzo*, the cross between the yak-bull and the cow. We see that he is placed in the *thañ*, or the upland plains, and is described as a *hkyud*, which word, in the form *hgyud*, recurs, in company with *hkrug* (= Tib. *hkhruḡ*, 'quarrel', 'quarrelsome', as in ll. 18, 371) in:

*hkrug-hrdzo-hgyud-dze-hrño-hyod-yod*, 16

and is equivalent to Tib. *rgyud*, 'race' (see *supra*, pp. 214, 252).

In ll. 225-8 the *rdzo* receives successively the depreciatory epithets (see p. 215) *mor-hgu*, *mug-hgu*, *hbri-hgu*, in which the syllable *hgu*, occurring also with *hdom*, 'bear', in the above-cited passages, ll. 303, 304, 312, is, of course, = the Tibetan 'Diminutive' Suffix seen in *khyi-gu*, 'puppy', &c. It is possible that in ll. 225-8 the term *rdzo* is being contemptuously applied to the *hbroñ*, who is there the real, or main, object of denunciation.

Have we in the text any equivalent of Tib. *g-yag/byag*, 'yak'? The most persuasive passage is that quoted on p. 139, where the yak, who is certainly meant, is not named unless the word *rgyag* is a Nam form of *g-yag/byag*, which on the analogy of *rbyo* = *bya*, 'bird', *rdza* = *mdzah*, 'friend', it might easily be. But in that case we should expect a recurrence of the word in the text, which has so much to do with the yak. The actual recurrences of the word *rgyag* are, in fact, not encouraging. For in l. 89 (p. 321) the phrase *gsom-rgyag-hsor* must mean 'the forming a thought

lapsed' with the Verb *rgyag*, idiomatic in Tibetan, meaning 'cast', 'strike', 'found', 'put', 'form', &c., a synonym of *hdebs*. Hence *don-rgyag* in the passage quoted on p. 139 will mean 'form or make a purpose'. Again, in:

*hcag-rgyag-hris* (=Tib. *bris/ris*)-*dze-hño-sto-ge-rdo-re-cis-tsha-hbyih*, 83-4

'when, with *hcag-rgyag*-diminished, friends dare, deserters (?) (*hci*, *gci*, 'go', 'come', Tib. *mchi*, *mchis*), are few.

*hcag-rgyag* seems to be an equivalent of Tib. *chag-rgyag*, 'doubt', sc. 'hesitation'. Accordingly in the preceding passage:

*hcah-rte-hyu-rgyag-dze-hldas*, 82-3

the meaning will not be 'went over to the yak', but:

'making (*rgyag*) alliance with the *hcah* party, deserted'

the *hcah* being the frequently mentioned ravenous animals and *rte* a miswriting, or alternative of *rde*, *hrde* (p. 270), cf. *rto* for *rdo*, 'stone'. Then in:

*smu-hdzu-rgyag-dze-hldan-rman-hrwehi* ||, 27

'under the stroke (*rgyag*) of brimstone (? = Tib. *mu-zi*), the tombs of wooden posts were destroyed'

and

*hde-hyim-sto-rgyag-rgu-hmyil-myl*, 29

'prosperity being made (*rgyag*) to diminish, thieves lurked, lurked' (?)

the same Verb *rgyag* may be recognized.

In a number of passages, ll. 129 (*gnag*), 130, 132, 134, 135, there is mention of a *hldag-nag*, in l. 136 *gldag-nag*. Line 130:

*hthan-rdzo-hño[-r[e]-hldag-nag-htshors*

in comparison with ll. 219-20 (quoted above) establishes his identity with the *hbron*: and everything else that is said of the *hldag-nag* confirms the identification; his rise was due to the rise of the 'Low Town' and the fall of the 'Mon-castle' (ll. 128-9, 135-6) and the horse's departure, just as was that of the *hbron*. Hence *hldag-nag* can have nothing to do with Tib. *ldag*, 'lick', or *nag* with Tib. *ñag*, 'voice' (which occurs elsewhere, ll. 104, 276, 278, in the text). It is = Tib. *ltag*, 'the back part of the neck', 'the upper or back part of anything', with confusion of *lt-* and *ld-*, as not uncommon in Tibetan and in this particular word, as well as in others, exemplified in one of the Tibetan manuscripts. Else-



where in the text (ll. 45, 52) the same word *hldag/gldag* occurs with the meaning 'load' (Tib. *ltan*, perhaps etymologically connected with *ltag*). Thus *hldag-nag* (Tib. *nag*, 'black', as in *hdom-nag*, 'black-bear') means 'black-back', a designation highly appropriate to the yak.

A similar explanation applies to the expression *hko-nag* in:

hpu-hbos-hyah-ge-hdro-hko-hnag, 266-7

'With the big man in front (at the head) go the *hko-nag*'.

For *hko-nag* will be the famous expression 'black-head', denoting the 'common people', especially (and perhaps originally) of China, and occurring in the form *mgo-nag* in a Tibetan text (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 279, = *JRAS.* 1931, p. 819).<sup>1</sup> *Hgo*, = *mgo*, also, occurs in the manuscripts.

It would be convenient if in the Nam text it were possible to disentangle the several equivalents of Tib. *mgo*, 'head'; *hgo*, 'origin', 'source', 'foremost'; *hgo*, 'stain', 'infect'; *sgo*, 'door', 'entrance', 'means'; *sgo/bsgo*, 'direct', 'command', 'stain with'; *dgo*, 'a species of antelope'; *bgo*, 'portion', 'share', 'division', 'retribution'; *bgo/gos*, 'clothe', 'clothing'; as well as *go*, 'place', 'space', 'way', 'rank', *go* 'understand', *go(-bo)*, 'vulture', *go (ko)*, a particle (on which see pp. 201, 245). The matter is likely to be increased in difficulty by confusion with any equivalents of Tib. *kho*, *-kho*, *ko*, *rko*, *sko*. But some progress has been made:

(a) *mgo*, 'head', has been recognized in *hko-nag*: see also (e).

(b) *go/ko*, the Particle, has been recognized (p. 201) in *hlda-hko*, l. 195, and is possible in *hbri-hko*, ll. 156, 202, 203, and the parallel *hwi-hkko*, l. 336.

(c) *hko* = *go*, 'place', 'room', is evident in:

hko-wehi-htuḥu, 100, 'assembled, making room'

by reason Tib. *go-byed*, 'making room'. See also (e).

(d) *hko* = *sgo*, 'gate', is apparent in:

rog-hji-rdañ-ge-hko-hton-modhi, 211-12.

It is, however, only a miswriting, since *hgo-gton* occurs in the next preceding line: see (e). The *hko* of *hko-htar*, ll. 68, 371, 373, 386, 390, may be the same as in *hko-hton*.

<sup>1</sup> Applied to Tibetan common people, it may be seen in a document quoted by Mdlle Lalou, *Inventaire*—, p. 6, No. 16, f. 34; also in the Lha-sa stone inscriptions (ed. Waddell, *JRAS.* 1910, p. 1276, A, l. 10, and p. 1277, B, l. 13). In the Rgyal-roñ it is still in use (see Tafel, ii, pp. 227, 229).



(e) *hgo* = *sgo*?, 'gate', is apparent, though *go*, 'place' is not impossible, in:

rgyed-htso-dro-*ho*, 'rgyed comes to the *htso*'  
 „ -*hgo*-*hdro*, „ „ „ „ gate' } 105-6  
 „ -*hkab*-*hdro*, „ „ „ „ house' }

*hdyan*-*hto*-*hton*-*ge*-*hgo*-*gton*-*mod*, 210-11

'the high wall (?) being surrendered, the gate or place is surrendered' (*hton/gton*, = Tib. 'send', 'admit', 'give up', *sgo-nas-gton-ba*, 'admit through the door')

*phye*-*hgo*-*hthu*-*re*-*hnam*-*hdzam*-*htar*, 145-6

'when there is a small (Tib. *thu*) open space, the tame-hearted makes his escape (Tib. *htar*).'

In the phrase *hgo-gton* the meaning of *gton* is guaranteed by the parallel *hrah-hton*, 'place surrendering', in ll. 146 (with 'army'), 273 (with 'enemy'), 358, *na-rom-hton*, 'leave vacant place', l. 100; while in ll. 119, 190, the sense of 'let go', 'emit', appears:

*hrah-hton*-*gsohu*-*dze*-*rñe*-*ge*-*hgo* ||, 358

'When place-abandoners survive, the bad (cowards?) are the means' (or, with *hgo* = 'head', 'with place-abandoning survivors the bad are leaders').

It is, however, conceivable that in these passages *hgo* is not actually = Tib. *sgo*, 'gate', but is *go*, 'place', used in some rather special sense, 'home', 'station', or the like. We may also regard as doubtful:

*rab*-*hgo*-*cig*-*dze*, 376, 'when the approach to the ford (*rab*) is destroyed (?)'.

The same sense, 'gate' or 'place', is apparent in ll. 46 (*hgo hpo*), 261 (*g-rub-hgo*), 369 (*hgo-hdzin*): *hkvañ-hgo*, l. 212, is obscure (reading uncertain).

In *hkah-hgo*, l. 105, though it occurs in the vicinity of a *hgo*, 'gate', the Tibetan *kha-bsgo*, 'advice', which suits the context, is in favour of Tib. *bsgo*.

*Hgo*, 'vulture', may with probability be recognized in:

*hsas*-*hdrah*-*hdag*-*chi*-*hgo*-*hsor*-*re*-*hyun*, 260

'children with (*hdag*, "possessed of") nets (Tib. *dra*) spent their time (*yun*) hunting (Tib. *bsor*, *byeñu-sor*, "hunt-birds") vultures'

because the sport of catching vultures by means of nets is known in Tibet (d'Orléans, *From Tonkin to India*, p. 228).

(f) *rgo* = Tib. *sgo*, the most normal equivalent, is certain in:

*g-raḥ-hsaḥ-hkheḥ* || *na* || *hñor-hdzañ-rgo-htoḥo* ||

*rgo-hraḥ-hñor-[re-]hdzañ-hyaḥ-htoḥo* ||, 314-15

'In winning an enemy land (or In an enemy's winning the land) fool and wise man are the gate.'

'If the gate-ward is a fool, the wise man is antagonized.'

For here the idiomatic use of *hraḥ, ra*, 'enclosed place', as in Tib. *sgo-ra-ba*, 'door-keeper', 'door-guard', is guaranteed by the *sgo-ra, sku-ra*, 'door-guard', 'own person', of the Tibetan manuscripts, while the Nam text has probably *skuḥu-ra* (l. 6) in the Tibetan sense and also *meḥi-ra*, ll. 78, 186, 369, 'eye-horizon', in the sense of 'sentinel'.

The same *rgo* is probable in:

*htsog-hram-hnaḥ-tse-htor-śi-rgo* |||, 120

'When *htsog-hram* sickens, it is a great gate of death'

*śe-rgo-hldom-dze-hpaḥ-hrgam-hnam* ||, 258-9

'When the wise have their doors shut, the community of heroes declines (Tib. *ñams*)'

and clearly also in the antithesis:

*rgor* (= Tib. *hgor*) ... *hbar* (= Tib. *bar*) ... *rwer*, 96-7

'at the beginning ... in the middle ... at the end (?)'.

(g) An entirely different *hko* must be seen in the recurrent expression *hko-rño* (ll. 53-6, 272, 342), *hkhō-rño* (ll. 189, 267). The second syllable, corresponding to Tib. *rño*, 'be able', supplied in early times a very common expression *rño-thog*, 'capable', 'competent', which we should be prepared to find reflected in *hko(hkho)-rño*. In that case the *hko(hkho)* might be connected with Tib. *hkhō/mkho*, 'think, or be, of use, necessary', *hkhos*, 'value', 'importance', 'necessity', 'usefulness'.

Outside the compound *hko(hkho)-rño* the word *rño* is found:

- (i) several times as a Subject, obviously meaning 'ability' or 'power' (ll. 16, 49, 368);
- (ii) several times by itself as a Predicate, meaning 'able' or 'wise' (ll. 179, 188, 360) ?;
- (iii) frequently as an Auxiliary with Verbs, *stor°*, l. 141; *hwa°*, 'make', 'do' ?, ll. 116, 269, 335; *ldoñ°*, *hldoñ°*, 'go', 'depart', ll. 161, 214, 369; *hkog°*, l. 189; *hyog°*, *g-yog°*, 'serve', 'help', ll. 156, 289, 322.

These facts would favour in *hko(hkho)-rño* a verbal meaning of the

*hko(hkko)*; and the Verb *hkho* in the sense of 'be of use' would be suitable.

It cannot, however, be said that that meaning of *hko(hkko)-rño* is everywhere satisfactory. In:

*rbyo-hko-rño-dze*, 53, 'under a capable *rbyo*' (cf. 56)

*hko-rño-ge-hco*, 55, 'the capable are leaders'

*hko-rño-hyah-ge*, 272, 'with the capable in the van'

that meaning might suffice. And in:

*hko-rño-hce-dze*, 53-4, 54-5,

we might understand *hko-rño* as a Noun, 'ability' ('of great ability'), or take the *hce* adverbially = 'greatly'. But in some of these cases we might prefer the signification 'leader' or 'master', e.g. in:

*stor-hkko-hrño-re*, 189, 'when the master is lost',

and in:

*hko-rño-klu-re*, 342, 'when the leader is blind',

the rendering 'capable' would be contradictory.

If this is so, we can still work with the Tibetan *hkho/mkho*, provided that we adopt the signification 'chief person or thing', which sense may have given rise to the expression *kho-na*, 'only', 'exactly', 'the very', occurring in the famous Buddhist term *de-kho-na*, 'essence', 'reality'. A *kho* signifying 'chief' is required in:

*hkhar-hrpag-g-yar-re-stor-moñ-hjoñ-re*

*re-hmoñ-hjoñ-re-hldag-gnag-hkko* ||, 128-9

'Low Town having become high, Moñ-castle lost,

In all (?) the Moñ-castle the black-back is chief.'

And this is confirmed by the repetition of the word in ll. 215-18:

*htor-hbroñ-hkko* . . . *htor-hkko-ge-hkko*

'The great Yak is chief . . . the great is chief'

since, as we have seen, the great Yak is identical with the 'black-back'.

Perhaps this sense of *hkho* accounts also for *hri-hkko*, ll. 291, 295, 'hill-top', more especially as in ll. 290-1, it is contrasted with *g-ri-hpañ*, 'hill-bosom' (side), recurring in ll. 302 (*hrihi-hpañ*), 308.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Tib. *ri-kha*, p. 132, *supra*.



*Hku-rño* in *g-we-hku-rño*, l. 152, has been interpreted above (p. 228) as a different expression, containing a Verb *hku*, 'desire': cf. *hkus*, l. 352.

(h) Still a further *hko*, for which Tibetan supplies no etymology, occurs in l. 101, where it is equivalent to the very common *hko*hu/*hkhohu*, 'speak', 'speech'. It has been suggested (*JRAS.* 1939, p. 206, n. 1) that this is Chinese *k'ou*, 'mouth', 'speech': and this is strongly supported by the phrase *htab-hkhohu-hkhohu*, ll. 292, 295 (p. 298), 'answer-speaking-speaking', i.e. conversing, in which *htab* will be = Chinese *ta* (Ancient *tap*, Karlgren, No. 954), which in Tibetan script occurs many times as *tab*.

(i) In case the phrase *hko*ho-*hko-bphyag*, l. 101, should signify 'saluted' (Tib. *phyag*, "salutation") with a view to speaking', the same *hko* would be possible in:

*hsehe-hko*ho (327, *hkhoho*)-*hgyan-re-hlab-hko-hgyan* ||, 325  
'harms as cause were the cause of telling (sc. the narrative)'

and the *hkhoh-htab*, l. 328, or *hkhoh-dab*, l. 329, which were 'restrained', or 'damned' (*hdam*), like the *hse-htab*, 'injurings', l. 326, might be 'causings' or 'causers'. This might bring in the well-known Chinese word *ko*, 'cause'; but perhaps we can work with Tib. *hgo*, 'beginning', *hgyan* being obscure.

(j) Doubtful is *hko* in 67 (*hko-se-hgro*), 123 (*hśi-hwa-hko*, 'only', 'verily'?), 125 (*hldañ-krañ-hko*, 'only'?), 390 (*hko-hto-swad*); also *hkhoh* in 209 (*hkhoh-hsañ*, 'chief'?), 241 (*hño-rgam-kho-re*), 295 (*hño-hkhoh-sog-ge*), 217 (*kho-sñe*). See *kho/hkhoh* in Vocabulary.

23. *hri*, *g-ri*, *hrihi*, *g-rihi*; *mehi*°, *hdon*°, *hrañ*°, *hswah*°, *g-ri*; *hri-hño*, °*hkhoh*, °*hpañ* (*hphañ*), °*hruhu*, °*hgru*; *hto*, *tho*; *spo*; *hsehe*; *sti*; *hti*; *hyor*; *g-yog*; *gras*, *hgras*, *hras*; *hrde*, *rdehe*; *hwad*; *hci*; *tho-rgyam*; *hkuñ*; *hbu-rweye* (*rbye*); *hśañ-ma*; *hmar-hbab*; *hroñ*; *hkañ*°, *hdam-hbroñ*°, *hbo*°, *hroñ*; *la*, *hlah*; *la-po*; *gdag*; *hdzu*; (2) *hroñ*, *g-roñ*; *hyed*; *hdze*, *htswe*, *tswehu*; *g-ri-la*; *htañ* = *hthañ*; *mu-hro*; *hna-hlam*; *glo-hrañ*; *rgyen*; *hrgyan*.

That *hri/g-ri*, = Tib. *ri*, 'mountain', is evident. It is natural that in a country of great mountain ranges the word should be frequently mentioned and distinctions should be made: thus, one of the Tibetan texts speaks of *gtshug* (*gtsug*)-*ri*, 'peaked mountains', *gyud* = *rgyud*, 'ridges', *ri-rin-po*, 'long or high mountains', of *dbye-che*, 'wide expanses', *hphrañ-rub*, (probably) 'precipice ledges', *ri-bzur-te-bzur*, 'mountains winding, winding', and so forth.

In the Nam text we have had *śid(hśid)-hrihi(g-ri)* 'high mountains' (ll. 34, 62), *hboś-hrihi(g-ri)*, 'big mountains' (ll. 290, 291, 293), *mañ-hri(hrihi, g-ri)* 'large mountains' (ll. 302, 308, 309): in l. 168 occurs *hbyi-hri*, which ought to mean 'small' (see p. 252) 'mountains', and probably does so mean. In:

*hdoñ-hri-hldyañ-ge-spo-hpod-pod*

*hrañ-hri-hldyañ-[ge-]hsehe-hwad-hwad*, 13-14

the *hdoñ-hri* are contrasted with the *hrañ-hri*, and the *spo*, which cannot be different from Tib. *spo*, 'summit of a mountain', with the *hsehe*, which likewise = Tib. *rtse*, 'top', 'peak', 'summit of a mountain', 'house-roof', &c. The *hrañ-hri* are evidently the 'self' (i.e. by themselves, solitary, single) mountains', since *hrañ* = 'self', Tib. *rañ*, pervades the text. The *hdoñ-hri* are probably not the 'trench, hole, pit, crater (Tib. *don*) mountains', but rather the 'face (Tib. *gdon/mdoñs*), i.e. contoured, mountains', since the Tibetans shared the universal tendency to see faces, heads, &c., in mountain ridges.

The *meñi-g-ri-htañ* contrasted with *śid-g-ri-htor* in:

*meñi-g-ri-htañ-dze-rtah-htsog-hram*, 35

is, no doubt, the 'border of the fire-mountain',<sup>1</sup> volcanoes being known in northern Tibet: and the fact that the horse's original capital is placed near a (heavenly?) fire-mountain may explain the references to 'great heat' (*dgu-htor*, *dgu-hldo*, ll. 78, 139, 191) in connexion with the fall of the 'Moñ-castle' and the earthquake.

As regards the parts of mountains, the *hri-hkho*; 'mountain-top' (Tib. *ri-kha*) and *hrihi(g-ri, &c.)-hpañ(hphañ)*, 'mountain's bosom or lap', have been mentioned *supra* (p. 263). The 'mountain's-horn' (*g-ri-hruhu*, l. 21, *hrihi-hruhu*, l. 293, Tib. *ru* 'horn') is an expression perhaps not found in Tibetan, though an 'Ox-horn' (*Glañ-ru*) mountain is known.

The passage (ll. 299-301):

*hse-hse-hldoñ-hcañ-g-ri-sti-hyor-re*

*hri-hño-hdzoñ-g-yog-re-rgyañ-ge-hrihi-sti-hyor-re ||*

*hri-hldoñ-hsañ-hyañ-hri-hgru-gras-re-hri-hei-hwadhi ||*

mentions the *g-ri(hrihi)-sti-hyor*, the *hri-hño*, and the *hri-hgru*. The *hyor* must be = Tib. *yor*, seen in *tho-yor*, 'pyramid of stones heaped up as a votive pile, a cairn' (*tho* meaning

<sup>1</sup> It could, however, be 'eye(sc. sentinel-post)-mountain', the *hatsah-hri* of ll. 290, 295, the *hswah-g-ri* of l. 296: see p. 278 and l. 186 *hldyañ-g-ri* ... *meñi-hrah*.



'boundary', cf. *mtshams-tho*),<sup>1</sup> i.e. the oft-illustrated *obo* (Tib. *lab-rtse*, for *la-rtse*?) of modern travellers.<sup>2</sup> It might seem to follow that *sti* is the top of a pass or the like; but the meaning 'rest', found in Tib. *sti/bsti/h̄thi* (*sti-baḥi-gnas*, 'resting-place') and in the *h̄ti* of the Nam text, is, no doubt, right, since such *obo* points are inevitable resting-places. In contrast we have the *h̄ri-h̄no-h̄dzoñ-g-yog*, i.e. 'the castle (*h̄dzoñ*) below (*g-yog*) on the mountain side or slope (*h̄no* = Tib. *nos*)', whose walls, perhaps (*h̄rgyañ* = Tib. *rgyañ*, 'wall'), or which, stretching (Tib. *rgyañ*), act as a rest-*obo*'. Then the *h̄ri-h̄gru*, 'mountain corners' (Tib. *gru*, 'corner', 'angle'), i.e. projecting points (cf. *gru-b̄zi*, 'square'), or else 'recesses', being alined (*gras* = *h̄gras*, l. 10, 'alined in battle', *h̄ras*, l. 344, Tib. *h̄gras*, 'difference between two parties', *gra*, 'proper order or arrangement', *dgra*, 'enemy'), 'keep watch' (*h̄wad*) upon those who come (*h̄ci* = Tib. *m̄chi*, 'come', 'go', = Hsi-hsia *gce*, *gceḥ*, Nevsky, No. 144, see pp. 269, 332) 'to or on the mountain'.

The watch (*h̄wad* = Tib. *h̄bad*, *h̄bod*) on the mountain heights is extended in l. 109 to the *tho-rgyam*, 'boundary slabs': in l. 6 it is, it seems, used metaphorically of fires (*mye-h̄yañ-h̄wad*); and in a line quoted *supra* (*h̄sche-h̄wad-h̄wad*) of the summits themselves; nor is it to be doubted that in *h̄wad-h̄ldañ-krañ* (l. 268), on which see *infra* (pp. 288-90), an ethical watchfulness is signified. All this is the less open to doubt as in one of the Tibetan texts, in a passage treating of a protective supervision of a country by certain divinities, the phrase *brag-h̄wod*, 'watching on the rocks', has actually taken, or preserved, the Nam *w* for *b*.

A further expression, important for other applications, is seen in the line:

dgu-h̄ldo-ḥtor-ge-h̄mañ-g-riḥi-h̄kuñ ||, 309

'With great heat, the large mountain is hollowed out or caves in' (Tib. *khun*, 'hole', 'pit', 'cavity', e.g. in *sna-khun*, 'nostril', *brag-khun*, 'cleft in a rock').

For the compound *brag-khun* has had in the Hsi-fan languages a considerable vitality. In the Rgya-roñ it is, quite regularly, *pra-khi*, 'cave';<sup>3</sup> and in the dialects collected by the Vicomte d'Ollone

<sup>1</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 274: 11, 361. 1, &c.

<sup>2</sup> See Prejevalsky, i, pp. 76, 283 (Yule); Rockhill, p. 126, *Diary*, pp. 92-3; d'Orléans, op. cit., p. 255; Futterer, i, pp. 354, 366, 390, 402, 421; d'Ollone, pp. 225-6; Tafel, ii, Pl. LIX; Filchner, *Om Mani Padme Hum*, frontispiece.

<sup>3</sup> *pra-kha*, 'precipice'.



it is *tchra-tcho* (No. 36), *tcha-kon* (No. 40), *haguen* (No. 41, Go-lok), *huëki* (No. 42, Go-lok), *tchra*, *tcha*, being stated to mean 'rock' (= Tib. *brag*). The word *hkuñ* is also used of a ruined 'Mon-building' (*hrtsig-moñ*) in l. 380, and then, l. 382, of friendship (*hḍzah-hlḍah*), or friends, become 'hollow'. This metaphor is applied, moreover (l. 124), to *hldañ-krañ*.

Also connected with mountains are the *hbu-rwye-hce-rgyañ* of the passage:

*g-yog-hṣañ-ma-hpul-dze-hmar-hbab-ge-hrloho ||*

*hbu-rwye-hce-rgyañ-dze-hldyo-htor-ge-hnus ||*, 15-16

a passage immediately following the verses concerning the *hdoñ-hri* and *hṛañ-hri*: in ll. 50-1 the passage, with the lines inverted and with *hrab* for *hrloho*, *rbye* for *rwye*, and *tor-hnus* for *htor-ge-hnus*, is repeated. *Rwye-hce*, *rbye-hce*, can at once be identified with the *dbye-che* of a Tibetan text, the additional *rgyañ* forming with *hce* a recurrent phrase = 'of great extent': the Tibetan *dbye* = 'plain', 'expanse', 'extent'. Then *hbu* will be = Tib. *phu*, 'the upper part (opposite of *mdah*) of a sloping valley', 'the higher ground', being the *phu-dañ-dañ*, 'up-vales rising, rising', of the Tibetan manuscript. The form *hbu* (elsewhere meaning 'head', and etymologically connected, no doubt, with *phu*), does not create a difficulty, seeing that in the Tibetan manuscripts we find a fair number of cases (*byi*, *dog*, *gañ*, &c.) of *media* in place of aspirate and some (*pho*, *phu*, &c.) of the converse.

With this *hbu* are contrasted the *g-yog* (Tib. *yog/hog*), 'below', of the accompanying verse; for this word is applied to a large valley, and, as we have seen (pp. 5-6), a portion of north-eastern Tibet was designated 'the Eight Yogs'. The fact that in the verse the *g-yog* are 'brimming with filth' (Tib. *gṣañ-ba/bṣañ-ba*: in the Berlin fragment *ṣañ-ma*), sc. mud, and that they have *hmar-hbab*, 'cascades', is due to the world-cataclysm. *Hrloho*, *hldyo-htor*, and *hnus* may be reserved: likewise the expressions *g-ri-hkruhu-hbro*, l. 313 = *hri-hkruhu-hbroho*, l. 294, *gyaṇ-g-ri-hjim*, ll. 313-14, *hṣṣah-hrihi*, ll. 290, 294 (*hri*) = *hṣcah-hyer-hri*, ll. 296-7.

In l. 296, *hṣwaḥ-g-ri-hto-na*, *hto* is probably = Tib. *mtso*, 'high' (see *supra*, p. 248), while *hṣwaḥ* has a relation to *hṣṣah/hṣcah*, to be discussed *infra* (pp. 276 sqq.).

*G-ri-ta*, in l. 157, is entirely different and means 'payment', 'price' = Tib. *ri-ba*.

The word *hron* so patently = Tib. *ron*, 'defile', 'gorge', on

which see pp. 5-6, that it is unnecessary to discuss the matter. But in:

hbañ-re-ḥko-ḥtar-dze-ḥna-ḥlam-glo-ḥrañ ||  
 ḥdzam-ḥbroñ-ḥroñ-dze-ḥdam-to-ḥbu-ḥpor, 67-8

we have two phrases, *hbañ-re-ḥko-ḥtar* and *ḥdzam-ḥbroñ-ḥroñ*, which both recur several times (ll. 371, 373, 384, 386, 388, 390), and in ll. 373-4:

ḥdzam-ḥbroñ-ḥroñ-re-ḥbañ-ḥko-ḥtar-dze-ḥkad-ḥroñ-re-rgyen are accompanied by a third phase, *ḥkad-ḥroñ-re-rgyen*, itself recurring in ll. 373, 375, 376, 377. It is natural to connect the phrase 'tame-yak gorge' with the story contained in the text; but this would be an error, as appears from the following facts: From Ś. C. Das's *Tibetan Dictionary* (s.v. *khun-tshag*) we learn that the Tibetans have phrases, *khun-tshag* and *ri-tshag*, denoting respectively 'yak of the valley' and 'hill-yak belonging to the higher elevations and hill-tops of Tibet'. A 'tame-yak gorge' is therefore a general term for a kind of valley, namely one opening out into spaces where the tame yak is employed. The statement 'each *ḥkad* gorge is uphill or steep' (*rgyen*, cf. Tib. *gyen-du*, 'uphill', *gyen-gzar-po*, 'steep ascent', &c.) connects with Tib. *gad*, 'rock', *gad-pa*, 'a precipitous cliff of conglomerate such as often walls in the mountain rivers', 'a wide crack in a conglomerate rock', *gad-skyibs*, 'a rock cavern', *gad-rgyal*, 'the walls of conglomerate rock through which mountain-torrents have cut their way', *gad-phug*, 'a cavern or cleft in a conglomerate rock'. A place near to Hgru-gu monastery in Amdo, by name *Ka-droñ* (i.e. *Kad-roñ*) is mentioned in the *Geografia Tibeta*, p. 54.

The expression 'each *ḥkad* gorge is uphill' (*rgyen* sometimes takes on the sense of 'difficult') shows that the Nam author prefers the lower valleys; and this accords with the statement *ḥna-ḥlam-glo-ḥrañ*, 'the home path (Tib. *lam*) is spirit-joyous (Tib. *rañ*)'. It may help in the interpretation of *hbañ-re-ḥko-ḥtar-dze*, when we shall have decided between the possible meanings of *hbañ*.

With *ḥroñ*, 'gorge', 'valley', quite unconnected is the *g-roñ* of:

ḥde-me-ḥtah-g-roñ-ḥyed-ge-ta, 71  
 'fires of prosperity, diffusing *g-roñ*.'

*Hyed*, elsewhere, ll. 53, 393, used of emitting fire (*me/sme*), in the second instance a metaphorical 'fire of hate' (*ḥsañ-sme*), here diffuses *g-roñ*, which may accordingly be = Tib. *groñ*, 'cold'; and



this will suit the context, since the 'fires' in question are failing. It is, however, conceivable that *g-roñ* here = Tib. *groñ*, 'die', 'death'; the fires are 'expiring'. Though in this passage 'cold' is more apposite, the signification 'death' is acceptable in:

śes-hmad-ḥdzwehe-re-ḥpañ-ḥroñ-ḥkes, 36  
'when the wisdom-low ḥdzwe, the brave gain death.'

But even here the meaning 'the brave are chilled' is supported by:

śes-hmad-ḥdzwe-dze-myag-mye-htañ ||, 39  
'when the wisdom-low ḥdzwe, the power of fire is rotted.'

The decision depends upon the unascertained signification of *ḥdzwe*, which, if = *ḥtswe*, is again antithetic to 'fire' in:

... mog (cloud)-ḥtswe-re-mye-ḥyañ-ḥwad ||, 6.

If this *ḥtswe* could be connected with Hsi-hsia *ḥdzu*, *tsu*, 'rain' (Nevsky, No. 92) and the cognates adduced by Laufer (No. 123), we should obtain the apposite sense:

'though clouds rain, the fire also watches'

which would also give point to the two passages with *ḥdzwe*. But the paronomasia would demand a second *ḥtswe/ḥdzwe*, which, if it meant 'play', 'sport', might be = Tib. *rtse/rtse*, and, since in eastern Tibet *tshe* and *tshi* are indistinguishable in pronunciation from *khye* and *khyi* (cf. p. 299 and Jaeschke Berlin Academy *Monatsbericht*, 1865, p. 443), might also be = Hsi-hsia *mkhhe/mkhwe*, 'play' (Nevsky, No. 73). The same signification would suit the *tswehu* of l. 196 (p. 245).

Clearly antithetic to *ḥroñ*, 'gorge', is the *ḥlah* of:

ḥbo-ḥroñ-ḥrog-re-ḥlah-ḥkyañ-ḥras-re-ḥśes-ḥśi-ḥdzuḥi ||,  
344-5

'the wooded gorge being a torrent (Tib. *grog*), the passes (*ḥlah*) also lined by the enemy (on *ḥras*, *ḥgras*, see p. 266), the wise evades<sup>1</sup> (?) death.'

This *ḥlah* is evidently = Tib. *la*, 'pass', and it is so spelled in the following line:

rgyeb-ḥchi-ḥro-re-gdag-yañ-la-por-ḥśes-ḥśi-ḥdzuḥi ||, 345.  
'if there is a place for going back, though the high pass is conspicuous (*gdags*) or occupied, the wise evades death.'

Here *la-po* = Tib. *la-po* (i.e. *°pho*), 'a pass over a lofty mountain; also a high peak'. On *gdags*, 'bright', as applied to mountains,

<sup>1</sup> 'Feigns'? *Ḥdzu* = *rdzu*, 'be disguised', occurs in a document (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 205: 38, A 2).



see p. 6: but here the word may be connected rather with *bdog*, 'possess', 'acquire', *bdag*, 'owner', 'possessor', which sense may be found in other occurrences (pp. 242, 357) of *gdag/hdag* in the Nam text. The same *hlah*, 'pass', is perhaps to be seen in:

*hlah-gsom-hram . . . lgyo-ho-ge-htan-mu-hro ||*, 10-11.

The reading is partly obscured in the manuscript, and the meaning of *lgyo-ho* is unknown.

The passage, ll. 301-14, is concerned, as has already appeared, with animal species occupying the mountains. It begins:

*hrtah-swa-g-we[-]r[e]-g-ri-hrde-hldah ||*, 301

'While the horse is doing *swa*, the mountain is possessed of *hrde*.'

This *hrde* is likely to be identical with *rdehe* of:

*hbehi-tyan-rdehe-ge*, 213

where *hbehi* is a word found elsewhere signifying 'sheep'. If *rdehe* = 'flock', 'troop', it will be, in sense as well as in form, = Tib. *sde*, 'class', 'community', 'race', 'tribe' (*sde-brgyad*, 'eight classes [of demons]', &c.), Hsi-hsia *gde*, *gdeh* (Nevsky, No. 45). The passage continues:

*rñe-ne-g-ri-dze-hldim-hphu-hmañ*, 301

where *hldim-hphu* (cf. line 310 *hldim-hmañ-hto*, 'hldim were many') is problematic, as are also the *hgah-hldon* (mist? avalanche?), who are associated with *hldim* (disappearances?):

*hgah-hldon-hrañ-re-hmañ-g-ri-hpañna*

*dgu-hldo-htor-ge-hmañ-g-rihi-hkuñ ||*

*hmu-wa-rño-ge-hgah-hldon-hkyud ||*

*hgah-hldon-hrañ-re-hldim-hmañ-hto ||*, 308-11

'The *hgah-hldon*' being free (? *hrañ*, by themselves) on the bosom (Tib. *phañ*, *pañ*) of the big mountain,

With great heat, the big mountain is hollowed out (Tib. *khuñ*, 'cave', &c.):

Able to cause cold is the *hgah-hldon* race.

When the *hgah-hldon* are free, there are many *hldim* (?)'

After the *hgah-hldon* come the *hkhū*:

*hrñe-hldah-hro[-]re-hmañ-hkhū-stañ ||*, 303

'there being hostile wolves (*hro*?), the great *hkhū* (? = Tib. *spyañ-ku* (and *khū*) 'wolf') are at the top.'

Then come the bears (*hdom* and *hgre(gre)*), the *gzu-hbyi*, 'little tigers' = asses, and the *hglyañ* (= *lkyañ*, the *kiang*), who are of

ass race (*gzu-hbyi-hkyud*). With reference to these hostile creatures severally it is stated (ll. 310-13) that, if they are on the mountain (*hri/g-ri/g-rihi*), the mountain is (practically) 'not there (*sta(stah)-mehi*)'.

24. *gñim*, *gñi*, *hñi*; *hñi*, *hñis*; *hñi-htor*, *htsa*; *sñi*; *rñi*; *mog*, *hmog*, *gmog*; *rgya-hñi-ke*, *hrgyah-hñi-hke* (*hkehe*); *hrgyah*, *hgyah*; *hkor*; *ke*, *hke*; *hjo*, *hjoħo*, *hdoħo*; *hlab*; *hla*, *lah*; *htag*; *htog*, *hthog*; *hchos*; *hdub*; *skar*; *mu*; *rmu*.

*Gñim*, probably meaning 'day' (Tib. *ñin*) and conjoined with *hti*, = 'darkness', has already (p. 236) been noted. And this renders it probable that in:

*rta-hso-hnaħ-yañ-gñi-hrdzum-doħo* ||, 80

*gñi* = Tib. *ñi-ma* (sometimes *gñi*°, 'the sun': 'the sun smiled', *hrdzum*); for the next verse states that 'when a good (?) man perishes, an inferior man rises' (*supra*, p. 227), and in ll. 81-2:

*hśañ-re-hśig-dze-hmog-re-hldoñ*,

'when all hostility perishes, every cloud (*hmog*)<sup>1</sup> departs.'

That *mog/hmog/gmog* means 'cloud' is indicated by antithesis to 'fire' (*mye*) in:

... *mog-htswe-re-mye-hyañ-hwad* ||, 6

'fire watches'; and that meaning is apposite in the other occurrences of the word (ll. 52, 54, 55): very possibly it is somehow connected with Tib. *rmugs*, 'fog', 'stupid', &c., 'Tangut' *rmūkha*, 'cloud', *mug*, '(mental) gloom' (*gti-mug*, *yid-mug*, &c.), *mun*, 'darkness'; and then also with *mog*, 'dark-colour', and further with *rmoñ*, 'be obscured', 'puzzled', *rmoñs*, 'deluded', 'delusion': as a translation of Sanskrit *megha*, 'cloud', it is probably to be seen in the name of the 'retreat *Ñam-Kan-mog*' (*mahā-megha*), in the Śa-cu region, mentioned in *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 365, 367; and perhaps Lo-lo *mow*, is the same word.

Accordingly in:

*hmog-ħce-rgyañ-rgya-hñi-ke-hkor-[re-]hśid*, 52-3

'Clouds of great extent perish (*hśid*)—when the *rgya-hñi-ke hkor*'

we suspect that *hñi* has to do with the sun, more especially as in l. 199 we find the spelling *rgyah-gñi-ke*. This expression, with

<sup>1</sup> Hence we may neglect the possibility that *gñi-rdzum* means 'had their eyes closed' (Tib. *hdozum* = *hdozum*, 'smile') in sleep (Tib. *gñid*)? In l. 263 (p. 283) *rdzum* is an epithet of 'fire'.

further variants, *hrgyah*, *hke*, *hkehe*, is to be seen also in ll. 291, 295, 319. The Verb *hkor* can evidently be = Tib. *hkhor*, 'go round', 'return', which, in fact, appears elsewhere in the text.

But the expression *rgya-hñi-ke*, being a whole, might have other explanations; and the syllable *hñi* might, for instance, be connected with Tib. *gñis*, *ñis*, 'two', which we have found in the form *sñi*. We might then see in the *ke* a suffix, akin perhaps to Tib. *ka* in *gñis-ka*, *gñi-ga*, 'the two', *gsum-ka*, 'the three', *lña-ka*, 'all five', &c., cf. p. 241. This would yield a quite natural compound, 'the two *rgyas*', and perhaps the same *ke* may be seen in *ña-hke*, 'the five' (?), l. 54: see p. 203. The numerous meanings of *rgya* in Tibetan ('seal', 'mark'; 'animal of the deer class'; 'net', 'trap'; 'extent', 'size', 'plain country'; 'Chinaman'; 'useful'; 'steelyard'; 'beard'), some of them requiring particular suffixes, cannot prevent our inclining to the meaning 'plain', 'extent', which in Tibetan is the most familiar and which suits the phrase *hrgyah-hdihi-htor-re*, 'travelling to this plain country', in l. 327, *hgyah-hnah-tsur*, l. 391. This idea of 'plane surface' takes in the Tibetan phrase *ñi-zlahi-rgya-dkar*, 'white planes of sun and moon', the sense of 'large orb', 'disk', which accordingly is given in the dictionaries. Instead, therefore, of denoting the sun in some connexion the word *rgya-hñi-ke* denotes the sun and moon.

Who (apparently some living creatures) are the *hñi-htor* of l. 187 is obscure: they are likely to be the *htor-hñi-htsa-ge*, over whom the Great Yak becomes lord in:

*htor-hñi-htsa-ge-htor-hbroñ-hkhoho*, 215-16

and probably not the *tor-sñi* of the *than* fields:

*hthan-le-tshaḥ-dze-tor-sñi-rgam*, 219.

*sñi/rñi* occurs in the Tibetan texts with the meaning 'net', 'trap', which is probably the meaning in l. 219, since l. 220 speaks of 'being caught in the toils' (*hdru-hjar*, see p. 369). Further, the Tibetan manuscripts refer to *Sñi* mountains in the Skyi country.

But a Verb *hñi*, probably connected with *ñi-ma*, 'sun', and meaning 'shine', may be seen in:

*hjo-me-hdub-re-hlab-ma-hñi*, 67

'When the *hjo* fire sinks,<sup>1</sup> the *hlab* does not shine'

<sup>1</sup> In the Tibetan Manuscript *bdub* seems to be Preterite of *hdub* (usually 'be fatigued') in this sense, which usually is expressed by *nub*.



which seems to be directly contradicted by:

*hjo-me-hdub-re-hlab* (possibly *hla*)-me-*hñis* ||, 70

'When the *hjo* fire sinks, the *hlab(hla)* fire is ablaze'

which contradiction may, however, be due to mistaken omission of the vowel-mark (*e*) over the *ma* of l. 67.

There is a strong temptation to find in the antithesis *hjo/hlab* a contrast between 'sun' and 'moon'. And, in fact, in the same general context we find a clear reference to the moon: in l. 73, repeated with a slight variation in ll. 75-6, we read:

*hwa-ste-hge-dze-hla* (l. 75 *lah*)-*hram-hte* ||

'with exhausted (*hwa-ste*, see p. 337) good fortune the moon (and not the sun) accords'

and the rendering is confirmed by a reference to fire in the same context:

*hde-me-htah-g-roñ-hyed-ge-ta-hwa-ste-htah* ||, 71-2

'the fires of prosperity, making cold emissions, are exhausted',

and because in l. 75 it is said that:

*hwa-ste-hgehe-dze-dgu-htor-hbyi*

'with exhausted good fortune the great heat [becomes] small'.

Thus for 'moon' we have *hla*, *lah*; and *la* is, in fact, the most widely attested Tibeto-Burman form with that signification. In Tibetan *zla-ba*, indeed, the *ba* may not be the common suffix, since there are in the various languages, as has been noted by Dr. Laufer (No. 12), forms such as Lo-lo *sla-ba*, *hlo-bo*, &c., which may not be loan-words from Tibetan. But nothing would justify a monosyllabic *hlab*, for *hla-ba*, in Nam or the related languages; and the *hlab* of the text could be explained only as a scriptural miswriting, not indeed unparalleled in the manuscript, of *b* in place of *h* in a form *hlah*. Even so, it would be difficult to discover either in Tibeto-Burman or in Chinese (*jih*, in old Tibetan script *žir*) an etymology for a *hjo*, *jo*, = 'sun'. We must therefore seek a different antithesis.

With the signification 'chieftain' (Tib. *jo/co/gtso*, &c.) *hjo* is evident in:

*myi-rgye-mye*[-]*r[e]-hchos-hyo-hjo*, 153-4

'if there is no great man, the initiator is the chief'

where *hchos*, which in ll. 158-9 also means 'beginning' (+*hyo*, 'manage', 'carry on', see p. 132), is the same word as *cho* of one of the Tibetan manuscripts, meaning both 'beginning' and 'chief-'

tain': it may be itself connected etymologically with *hjo*. The same *hjo*, 'chief', is seen in:

*hyañ-tsa-hjo-dze-hyañ-ge-hgroms*, 63-4

'under the good as chiefs the good flourish (*hkroms*)'

*trog-hjo-rñe-dze-pyi-rjes-ne-ñeer*, 201-2

'under an evil enemy chief a memorial looks terrible to the good'

*hphah-ma-rañ-ge-ñtsah-hjo-ñdzin*, 73-4

'substitutes (sc. children) for father and mother hold the chieftainship'.

Whether this is the meaning of *hjo* in ll. 372, 387, 389, we may for the present leave undetermined.

But an antithesis 'chieftain' (or 'leader')/'speaking' (*hlab*), though in some possible context it might be found to work, could not bear repetition as in:

*hbañ-hreñe-ñkheñe-hbañ-hre-hgeñe-na*

*jo-re-hgeñe-hlab-re-hge*, 251-2

'Every *hbañ* a gain, every *hbañ* a joy,

Every *jo* a joy, every *hlab* a joy'

*sta-bañ-rpag-re-hyah-me-bbyam-re*

*jo-me-hbyam-re-hlab-me-hbyam-na || ° ||*, 252-3.

'There, every *bañ* being made low, front (or face) fire mild (or abundant),

*jo*-fire mild, *hlab*-fire mild'.

*hjo(hdzo?)-chi-te-re-hlab-hñañ-hyah-ñtah-hldyañ-hro-hpeñ||*, 385-6.

'When *hjo* comes, *hlab*-words (or 'hearing, Tib. *ñan*?) correspond (?), is mark (or example) (?) of *hldyañ*-country'.

(The only authority for *ñañ* = 'words', beyond its appropriateness with *hlab*, being Hsi-hsia *niañ* (Laufer, No. 167)).

Another certain signification of *hjo/hdzo* is 'eat', corresponding to Tib. *za*, *zos*, *bzah*, *bzos*.<sup>1</sup> A Nam example of this in the form, perhaps Imperative, *gzo* will be quoted *infra* (pp. 334-5): the following may be added:

*rñe-hpo-hldo-ge-ñkeñu-prom-hjo*, 177

'the fiend (or enemy) braves ate the *ñkeñu*-making'

*hrñe-hpo-hñe-ge-ñkoñu-prom-hdzoño*, 361-2

'the wicked fiend (or enemy) braves ate the speaking'.

Here the forms *hjo* and *hdzoño*, occurring in two different state-

<sup>1</sup> On Nam *z/dz* see *infra*, pp. 334-5.

ments of the same incident, are clearly identical (cf. p. 335), the alternation *j/dz* being frequent in all Tibetan writing and scripturally easy. The rendering 'ate' is justified not only by the previously (pp. 254, 256) discussed references to 'milking out' and 'snatching' the fire (sc. power) of speech, but also by the use of the kindred form *h̄dzah* in:

*h̄bañ-h̄l̄dah-h̄ne-ge-h̄kehu-me-h̄dzah ||*, 170

'good authorities eat the fire of *h̄kehu*'

which occurs in the context of the references to the 'milking out' and 'snatching' the fire of speech. What *h̄kehu* is may be considered later.

These examples do, indeed, substantiate the expression *h̄lab-me*, 'fire of speech', and in antithesis thereto a 'fire of eating' (*h̄jo-me*) would be possible. But between 'eating' and 'speaking' the antithesis is not sufficiently natural for frequent recurrence, and in the passage ll. 385-6 it is quite unsatisfactory. What is really required as a contrast to the 'fire of speech' is the 'fire of action'; and this is available, if we understand *h̄jo/jo* as equivalent to Tibetan *bzo*, 'make', 'manufacture', 'work', 'craft', 'fashion'. It is possible that in the form *h̄jojo* this is to be found in:

*na-h̄tsah-ste (= h̄tsas-te)-dze-h̄ldyo-h̄thor-ge-h̄nus-dze-g-rañ-h̄yos-h̄tag-ge-h̄jojo ||*, 33-4

'On the harvested fields . . . the earthquake acted as a mill (Tib. *h̄thag*)'

mills for grinding or threshing corn, perhaps worked by a rope (Tib. *thag*, 'rope', *thag-bzo*, 'rope making'), having been known in Amdo in the eighth century A.D. (*Tib. Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 40).

If, then, we can understand the *h̄jo/jo* in *h̄jo/jo-me* as meaning 'action', 'work', we obtain an antithesis between 'fire of action' and 'fire of speech' which seems adequate in all the passages. The same contrast between action and speech may be seen in l. 137:

*h̄bri-re-h̄rdyam-re-h̄kkañ-h̄l̄dah-h̄ñahgh̄i*

*h̄dzohu-ro-h̄ldi-re-h̄joju || h̄wa-h̄kañ*

'When females are restrained (*h̄rdyam*, p. 350), talkers have voice:

This being a place for males, action is the talk.'

The word *h̄bañ/bañ*, recurring in some of the above passages, requires a more particular consideration, see provisionally p. 346. In the present connexion it seems appropriate to take note of one or two other terms related to the heavens.



*Skar*, 'star' = Tib. *skar-ma*, Hōrpa *sgrē*, Tākpa, *kar-ma*, Mānyak *kraḥ*, Mo-so *khō*, *ki*, *kū*, *kō*, and various forms in Lo-lo, does not seem to present difficulty. The sole occurrence of *skar*, (l. 191) *rñam-skar*, 'threatening, or alarming star', has been quoted, *supra* p. 244. The word *mun*, l. 33, is likewise a *ᾗπαξ εἰρημέρον*: though it would naturally be compared to Tib. *mun*, 'darkness', the passage is not sufficiently clear for a decision.

A *mu* = 'sky', as equivalent to the widely evidenced *mo/mon*, of Hsi-fan and Tibeto-Burman generally (see *supra*, pp. 88, 98-9, and for Hsi-hsia *mo*, Laufer, No. 34), would be acceptable in Nam. It seems not to exist in Tibetan: *mu-saṅs*, 'sky', may mean 'pure boundary' and contain the word *mu*, 'boundary', 'limit', 'margin', and *rmu-thag*, 'rmu-rope', 'a rope by which the ancient kings and queens of Tibet were reputed to ascend to heaven', contains a *rmu* which might have some other explanation. The Nam text has:

ḥmu-ḥrñu-skhrud-dze-mor-ḥtañ-[ḥgras] ||, 9-10

'On the *ḥmu*, put to flight (Tib. *skrud*) in pain, the evil power was arrayed'

and there is an antithesis to 'earth' (see *infra*, p. 329) which renders it probable that *mu* = 'sky'. Probably the same *ḥmu* recurs in l. 11, *ḥmu-ḥro*.

Nam *rmu*, again, has only two instances, in both of which, however, an equivalence to Tib. *mu*, 'boundary', 'limit', is probable: the instances are:

ḥsaḥ-chad-rmu-[-]r[e]-ḥkoku-prom-g-yeḥe

'the earth having its boundaries fixed (*chad*), speech was distributed (?)'

ḥbyi-ḥri-ḥgañ-ge-chi-ḥrmu-ḥphor || re, 167-8

'all the little hills having boundaries for their going released'.

Cf. l. 353:

gzu-ḥdro-ḥphor-[re]-ḥchi-ḥdo-ḥdyañ

'the ass, being released to go (*ḥdro-ḥphor*), started to depart'.

25. *swaḥ*, *ḥswaḥ*, *swa*; °*g-ri*, °*ḥram*, °*ḥrsaṅ*; *ḥsaḥ*, *gsaḥ*; °*ḥldaḥ*, °*ḥtsaḥ*; °*g-yer* (*hyer*); *ḥtsaḥ*, *ḥscaḥ*, *ḥyer*; °*ḥldaḥ*, °*ḥri* (*hriḥi*); *ḥtsaḥ-ḥtsaḥ*; *ḥtsa-pho*; *gtsaṅ*, *ḥtsaṅ*; *ḥnom*; *ḥrgu*; *gzo*; *rldeḥi*, *ḥldeḥi*, *ḥlde*, *ḥldeḥe*; *tho*; °*rgyam*; *ḥjim*, *ḥdzom*; *ḥrim-re-ḥldoḥu*.

The form *swaḥ/swa* is used in a number of clauses of the type:

ḥrtaḥ-swaḥ-g-we-[-]r[e], 164, 301 = *rtaḥ-ḥswaḥ-g-weḥe*, 298,

where the subject is the horse, and the verb is sometimes, as we see, *g-we*, 'make', 'do', while elsewhere it is *hkom/gkom* (ll. 175/222), *hldi[r]* (l. 174), *hphyegs/hpeg* (ll. 176, 360): *mor*, not a verb, but probably = 'bad', occurs in l. 173, and in l. 359 has perhaps been lost through the defect in the manuscript. There can be no doubt that in all these cases *swah/swa*, has the same meaning. It cannot be *sua*, the most usual Tibeto-Burman equivalent of Tib. *so*, 'tooth', which does, however, occur in the Nam text as *sua*: that would not accord with the verbs *g-we*, *hkom*, 'make', 'do', 'accomplish'. The same consideration excludes *ša/sua*, 'stag', *ša/sua*, 'blood', *rtswa*, 'grass', *tshwa*, 'salt'; *sbah/dbah/hbah/dbas/sbas*, 'magician'; *so*, 'earth', 'place' (in some connexions); and we can think only of *so/gso/gson*, 'live', 'nourish', &c., *sos(-ka)* 'heat', *so*, 'comfort'—all these being perhaps etymologically identical—and *so*, 'watch', 'spy', with which *so* in *so-mtshams*, 'boundary', i.e. 'watch-border', and in *so-kha*, 'frontier guard and toll-station', is similarly identical. In favour of the last is the fact that *so-kha* is actually recorded (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, p. 275, No. 9) in the form *sua*. This meaning harmonizes, further, with the Predicate *hram*, 'agreeing' or 'united (in)', l. 288, and with *mor*, 'bad (in)', and *hrsāñ*, 'stern', or 'violent', which in ll. 318–21, in the same context with *mor*, is applied to *swah*.

It is therefore to be understood that the horse, after his retreat to the *hgam*, was employed in the service of a man, viz. the *hbos* (*supra*, p. 231), as 'watch', 'guardian', 'police': and this is, indeed, certain, being stated also in another form. In:

hrtah-swah-g-we[-r[e]-hbos-hsah-hldah

hbos-hnom-hsah-gtsañ-hrgu-ma-gzo ||, 164–5

'The horse keeping guard, the master is (really) landowner':

'The crops of the land enjoyed by the master thieves do (or shall) not eat'.

*hsah* = Tib. *sa*, 'land'; *gtsañ* = Tib. *rtsañ*, 'crop', as in l. 159;<sup>1</sup> *hnom* = Tib. *nom*, 'enjoyments' ('In Amdo all articles, substances, properties (movables) are called *nom-pa*'), frequent in the phrase *gya-nom*, 'abundance', 'wealth and power'; *hrgu* = Tib. *rku/rkun* (in the Tibetan manuscripts also *rgun*), 'steal', 'thief', p. 233; *gzo* = Tib. *za*, *zos*, *bzos* (*zan-zos*), 'eat'.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. l. 378, *hsah-htsañ*?



Elsewhere the horse is said to be *hsah-g-yer*, 'awake (Tib., &c., *yer*, "not asleep", *g-yer-po*, "expert", "wise")<sup>1</sup> on the land':

rta-hsa-g-yer-dze, 330 = rta-hsah-g-yer-ge, 346

which expression is elsewhere (ll. 141, 267) used in evidently the same sense, but without reference to the horse. This imports also another term, since in l. 250 the expression is *hstsah-hyer*, not really different (*ts* and *c* being constantly confused in manuscripts) from the *hscah-hyer* of l. 250 (applied to the horse) and ll. 296-7: in l. 298:

rta-hswah-g-wehe-hbos-hstsah-hldah

the *hbos* is no longer *hsah-hldah*, 'landowner', but *hstsah-owner*'.

Unfortunately, *hstsah* also is ambiguous. Shall we understand that the *hbos* 'has his watch(man)' (Tib. *btsa*, *btsas*, 'watch', 'scrutinize', a verb well known in Central Asia)<sup>2</sup> or 'has his harvest' (Tib. *btsah-ma*, *rtsas-ma*, *btsas-ma*)? We clearly cannot understand 'his offspring' (Tib. *btsas*) or 'his wages' (Tib. *btsas*). It seems that the meaning 'watch' has strong support; for in ll. 290, 295, we have the *hstsah-hri* (*hrihi*), which must be equivalent to the *hswah-g-ri*, 'watch mountain' of l. 296 and the *hlsa-pho* of l. 291 (see *infra*, p. 279), and at the same time proves that the *hstsah-hyah-hthan* of l. 288 contains the same *hstsah*. Provisionally also it is probable that the same *hstsah* is to be seen in *hyu-hstsah-kyim* (*hkyim*), ll. 345, 350, 351. A doubt remains in regard to *hstsah-hbrad-hrdag*, ll. 213-14, where 'smite' (Tib. *rdeg*) 'harvest-snatchers' is more likely.

Who then are the *hrlehi*, whose *hswah-hram*, 'accord in watching', is mentioned in l. 288, and who can scarcely be other than the *hldehi* of ll. 318-21, whose *hswah*, 'watch', may be *hmr*, 'bad' (l. 318), or *hrsah*, 'stern', 'violent', ll. 319, 320, 321. These *hldehi* are, no doubt, the *hlde*, *hldehe* of:

hlde-ge-hgru-ma-rmah, 77, 'the *hlde* dreamed of *hgru-ma*'

hlde(hldehe)-ge-htah-hldon, 370, 371, 372, 'let *hlde* (prosperities?) return'.

A word *lde*, meaning (a) 'treasury', 'storehouse', (b) 'warm oneself', 'be warmed', appears in the dictionaries; and also *Lde*, 'a

<sup>1</sup> This *yer*, *g-yer*, perhaps preserved in Hōrpa *ta-ryen*, 'wake', is probably an extension of *ye*, 'alert', in *ye-myig*, 'alert-eye' and *ye-jea*, 'alert-knowledge'.

<sup>2</sup> *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 223-13, 251. B 1, &c. One of the Tibetan MSS. has this word with the *r*-Prefix, *rtsas*.



prefixed tribal title which some of the early kings of Tibet had assumed'. The late Professor A. H. Francke, who translates (*Antiquities of Indian Tibet*, ii, p. 80) 'the Eight *Lde* (beauties, *lde/rde/bde*) of the earth', expressed the opinion that *lde*, as found alternating with *bde*, in the names of late kings in western Tibet, was 'only a dialectical form of the word *Bde*, 'blessing, happiness'. While attached to the names of prehistoric rulers in Tibet, it was not neglected by their historical successors of the seventh to eighth centuries, Khri-lde Gtsug-brtan, Khri-sroñ Lde-btsan, &c., including Khri-lde Sroñ-btsan, = Sroñ-btsan Sgam-po, himself. It is, therefore, a very ancient designation, to be compared, perhaps, with *Śrī*, 'beauty', 'prosperity', in Indian names, and to analogous terms in other Oriental spheres: conceivably it is, in fact, connected with *lde*, 'be warm, warmed'. The same word may with probability be seen in Hsi-hsia *ldeh/ldih/ldi*, 'kingdom', 'futurity', 'power', 'ought' (Nevsky, Nos. 11, 133) = *li* (Laufer, No. 139), certified as meaning 'rich and of high rank' and occurring in an official title, *wei li*.<sup>1</sup>

Accordingly, the *hlde* who supervise may be the 'powers' generally. In l. 288 the *rlēhi* associated, with the *hyañ*, 'good', *mor*, 'bad', *hkru*, 'commons', *rta*, 'horse', and in antithesis to the *sli*, are likely to be mortal, if not actually human, beings: and in ll. 318-21 the same is probably the case with the *hldehi*, who are stated to have appointed a 'Thousand-[district-]commander' (*ston-hpoñ*, on which see p. 234), unless the expression is metaphorical. But it is also said (l. 319) that the *rgya-hñi-hke* are the '*hldehi* of stern watch' (*swah-rsañ*), and in l. 295 they are said to meet (*hdzom*) on every 'watch-height', *htsa-phor[e]* (cf. *la-po*, p. 269): in accordance with what has been elicited above this can only mean that the supervisors of all things are the sun and moon. In the passage, l. 319, mention is made of their circling all round (*hrim-re-hldoñu*); and the expression 'beneath the *hrgyah-hñi-hke*' (*hrgyah-hñi-hke-g-yog*) reminds us of the Tibetan *ñi-hog*, 'below the sun' or 'sun below', concerning which there is sometimes a doubt whether it means 'western countries' or 'countries' generally (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, i, p. 21, n. 2). The outcome seems to be that the *rlēhi/hldehi/hlde*, are the 'authorities', 'powers', or 'blessednesses', and sometimes comprise mundane, sometimes superior, powers.

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps the same *lde* may be seen in the *lie* of Menia *ya-lie*, 'good', *am-lie*, 'bad'.

The expression *tho-rgyam* in:

*tho-rgyam-ge-hwad-re*, 109, 'watching the boundaries'

must correspond to the repeated *mtshams-tho-phyag-rgya-can*, (or *rgya-can*), 'boundary with a hand-mark (or seal)', of Central-Asian Tibetan (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 129-40, 274, 361-5). But, since there is no special reason for identifying a *rgyam* with *rgya* (outside their equivalence in *rgyam(lgyam)-tshwa* = *rgya*<sup>o</sup>, 'a kind of rock salt'), it is prudent to see in *rgyam* a connexion with *g-yam*, 'slab of stone', 'roof-slate', and *gyam*, 'a shelter, recess in a rock', and to think of a stone slab as a boundary mark. Who are the *Hjim-li-li* and *Pa-la-la*, who are in l. 109 to keep the watch, is not apparent.<sup>1</sup> There may be some connexion with:

*gyaṅ-g-ri-hjim-ñno-hkhog-re-hphah* ||, 313-14.

A different *tho* applied in l. 132 to the 'black-back' and in l. 374 (*htho*) to *hpah-hwe*, 'brave deeds (doers)' is, no doubt = Tib. *mtso*, 'high': and the same has been suspected (p. 248) in regard to *hdyañ-hto*, l. 210, *g-ri-hto*, l. 296, *phyañ-hto*, l. 374.

In l. 42, where the horse is not in question:

*hsah-htsah-hdzañ-dze-hklom-ge-htul*, 'under wise *hsah-htsah* the *hklom*<sup>2</sup> are restrained'

it seems that *hsah-htsah*, repeated in l. 44 as *htsah-htsah*, must be understood as *hsah-htsah*, 'land-watching'. There is no difficulty in this; for—to overlook the confusion shown in the variation of the phrase—the *s* in *stsah*, like the *b* and *r* in the Tibetan equivalents, is a Prefix, and the *b* was originally, no doubt, attached only

<sup>1</sup> Since in l. 156 mention is made of collection of *hjim-ta* serviceable for wounds:

*rma-g-yog-rño-ge-hjim-ta-hthus*

and since Tib. *hjin* is 'a mineral substance rubbed on old sores' and *hjim* is 'mud', 'clay', it is likely that *hjim* here refers to the old and inveterate Ch'iang practice of collecting in the mountains herbs and mineral drugs, which are used and sold to the Chinese (see Rockhill, p. 132; Edgar, p. 65; Fergusson, p. 231 (photograph); Tafel, ii, pp. 248-9): a habit inherited by the Lamas (Huc and Gabet, ii, pp. 93-5). In Sanskrit also the Himālaya is traditionally the home of drugs. This may explain the phrase *g-ri-hjim*, 'mountain medicaments'.

*Hjim-li-li-pa-la-la* may conceivably mean 'drug-collectors professedly, really fighters', which would harmonize with the *ño-hkhog-re-hphah*, drug-collectors openly, secretly fighters of l. 314. The syllables *li-li*, perhaps suggesting something small or sly, appear in the Tibetan name (*phri-li-li*) of the lagomus and in *si-li-li* 'sound of rain'.

<sup>2</sup> Perhaps some kind of superhuman creatures, since one of the Tibetan manuscripts speaks of a '*klum* god' and a '*klum* fiend'.



to the Aoristic form *btsas*. There may well have been an original non-Aoristic form *htsha*, represented by the Nam *htsah* (perhaps also by Tib. *tsha-kha*, 'target'). Without mention of *hsah*, 'land', we have in l. 268:

htsah-hdzañ-hyah-ge-hwah-ne-hbrah ||

'With wise supervisors above good work (?) flourishes' (cf. p. 339).

*Hsah* = 'land', recurs in l. 314, and perhaps in l. 41. The form *gsah* is seen in l. 333 *gsah-rkah*, 'steep land', and in:

gsah-re-htsah-re-hrah-ge-hldohu-hjam-rño ||, 276-7

'[in] the places, both lands (estates) and crops (Tib. *btsa*, 'harvest'), were mild-minded groups (?)'.

Concerning *hldohu*, see pp. 322-3, and cf. *hwah-hrño-hjam*, p. 339.

26. *hme*, *me*, *sme*; *mye*; *meñi*, *hmeñi*; *rme*; *gseg*, *hseg*; *hgyi*; *hcañ*, *cañ*, *chañ*; *sme*, *rdzum*; *se-*, *gse-*, *hrño-*, *-cañ* (*hcañ*); *hpuiñi*, *hphuiñi*; *hphu-hklo*, *pu-glo* (*hlo*); *hdram*; *hmu*; *rgyeb*; *hdro*; *hkus*; *hmar-me*; *hkah*; *gte*.

It is unnecessary to prove that *me*, *hme* (in l. 171 *hmeñe*), already noted in so many instances, means 'fire' = Tib. *me*, &c., &c. But it may be added that it never appears to mean anything else, except in:

htsog-hram-hme-dze-htor-htas-hproms, 121-2

in which *hme* will be shown *infra* (p. 292) to signify 'is not', *Mye*, which in Tibetan orthography of the period would be the regular writing of *me*, is used in a number of clear instances (ll. 6, 39, 102, 195, 197 (*hme*), 357) to signify likewise 'fire'; and the only frequent examples to the contrary (ll. 129, 153, 241, 365, 366) are of the type *smi-hnu-mye-re*, l. 241, already quoted as meaning 'if man's power is not'. The negative *hme/mye* occurs only as a verb, equivalent to Tib. *med*, 'is not', 'is non-existent': it is not used in the sense of '-less', as is Tib. *med* in *stobs-med*, 'strengthless', and the like.

To the occurrences of *mye*, 'is not', we must add the instances (ll. 129, 153, 365, 366) where in accordance with what has been stated above (pp. 174 sqq.) *myer*, occupying the *caesura* position and functioning as a disyllable, has to be read as *mye-re*. There is no otherwise occurring *myer*.

The form *meñi/hmeñi*, on the other hand, normally means 'eye', e.g. in the designation *meñi(hmeñi)-klu-hcañ*, in *meñi-ra*,



*mehi-spa*, &c. The *i* in Hsi-hsia *mei*, 'eye', has been noted by Laufer (No. 53). In a number of cases, however, exemplified by:

dgu-ḥl-do-ḥtor-ge-su-me-ḥmehi

ḥrah-we-rtaḥ-ge-so-ḥnah-mehi ||, 114-15

'With great heat who kindles fire?

'The horse giving place, the *so-ḥnah* is non-existent'

we see that, in combination with the sentence terminating *hi*, *mehi* can represent either *me*, 'fire', or *me*, 'is not'. The latter recurs in ll. 156, 311, 312, 313; the former, which is, as we see, a casual experiment ('fires fire'), does not seem to recur; but it is well paralleled by *ḥmuhi* in *me-ḥmuhi*, 'cools fire' (l. 183).

It becomes therefore a question whether *mehi*, 'eye', does not similarly contain the enclitic *hi* discussed supra (pp. 190-2); and the answer seems to be that it does. Putting aside, as inconclusive, the cases (ll. 25, 185, 186) where the *mehi/ḥmehi*, is final in its clause, we find only compounds *mehi-ra(ḥrah)* ll. 78, 186, 369, °*g-ri*, l. 35, °*spa*, °*spehi*, ll. 151, 370, °*cha*, l. 352, °*ḥpa*, l. 272, °*klu-ḥcha* (*ḥcaḥ*), ll. 150, 161, 218, 343, and

*mehi-ḥgab-ḥl-do-ge*, 155, 'with eyes covered up'.

There does not seem to be reason for distinguishing these from other cases, such as *ḥrah-ḥwehi* (and *ḥwe-ḥrtah*), where we have supposed (pp. 190-2) the presence of an enclitic *hi*. What seems to be decisive here is the fact that there appears to be a certain instance of *mye* (i.e. *me*), 'eye', which form is in fact, that attributed in the Tibetan manuscripts (*supra*, p. 131) to the Nam language (*Mye-kru*). The instance is *mye-ḥpehi*, l. 212, which probably means 'eye-sparkle' or 'eye-ornament' (see p. 356) and to be not different from the *mehi-spa*, °*spehi*, of ll. 151, 370, and perhaps the *ḥmehi-ḥpah* of l. 272: in l. 211, *re-mye-ḥpah*, the meaning 'fire' is not impossible. It must, however, be admitted that an independent instance of *mehi* conversely meaning 'fire' is not apparent, unless *mehi-cha*, l. 352, should happen to be = Tib. *me-cha*, 'flint'.

*Sme* usually occurs in relation to *me*, 'fire'. In ll. 282, 283-4 we have:

ḥśeg-sme-ge-ḥrim-ḥdzom

which seems to mean 'meeting lines' (sc. circles) of burning fires (sc. torches?), with *sme* = 'fire' and *ḥśeg*. The word *ḥśeg*, again, raises difficulty. There is a phonological objection to its equivalence to Tib. *sreg*, 'burn', which meaning is most appropriate

here and in l. 159. In l. 181 we have acquiesced (p. 155-6) in an equation to Tib. *gsegs*, 'go', which in l. 330 might also suit *gseg/hseg*; but, unless the compound *gseg-sme* has some special sense, that will not serve in regard to *hseg-sme* here. This point must therefore be left obscure. Other occurrences of *sme* reinforce the notion of fire, thus:

dgu-hldo-htor-re-hra-we-rtah

rgyed-hrañ-sme-re-hkhar-hgyi-ñes ||, 191-2

'The heat being great, the horse gave place:

*Rgyed* being itself a fire, the town's power (?)<sup>1</sup> was destroyed'.

hrgyed-hsañ-sme-hyed-re, 393, 'emitting a hate-fire of *rgyed*'.

An occurrence in l. 342 is affected by a doubtful reading in the verse (*mye* probably for *rgyed*).

*Sme* differs, perhaps, from *me* by containing a verbal notion, 'a blaze'. This appears clearly in:

gsas-paḥi-hdzo-hdza-cañ-sme-hme-hkeḥi ||

g-raḥ-nag-hbo-gyañ-chañ-rdzum-me-g-weḥi ||, 262-3

'children as good as their fathers (or as braves) gained an all-blazing fire'

'... made an all-smiling fire'.

Here the expressions *cañ-sme*, *chañ-rdzum*, correspond to the Tibetan *cañ-rig*, *cañ-śes*, 'all wise', 'all knowing'. We might connect *cañ* with *cañs-po*, 'clever', *gcañ-po* 'clever'; and this is, no doubt, correct, but not directly. It is probable that *cañ* = *bcañ*, 'comprising', 'comprehensive' (*bcañ-rgya*, 'extensive comprehension' or 'comprehensive extent'), which is really the aorist of the Verb *hchañ*, *bcañ*, *bcañs*, 'hold'. The Verb appears in close vicinity in:

hsas-hnaḥ-hdag-chi-phyer-chañ-hson ||, 260-1

'children who had sickness were tended (*hson* = Tib. *gson*), being supported-held (*chañ*).

The signification 'clever' appears in cases where *cañ* is not the first member of its compound, in:

rgyed-hsañ-rgam-cañ, 36, 'disunity clever in secretly entering company' (p. 244)

and in l. 91 *śe-chañ*, 'clever in wisdom', l. 48 *gse-hcañ*, 'clever in harm', l. 49, *hrño-hcañ*, 'clever in power', though here the sense

<sup>1</sup> *hgyi* recurs in l. 346 with *hyu*, perhaps = Tib. *yul*, 'country', 'village'. Is it = Hsi-hsia *hgi*, 'strength' (Nevsky, no. 118)? or is it connected with Tib. *bggid* and so means 'business'? or = Chinese *i* (Jap. *gi*, Karlg., 204)?



of 'holding' would suffice. Very possibly the force of the word in *do-ldo-hdzo-chañ*, l. 76, *hpus-hphyi-myi-cañ*, l. 298, *hse-hse-hldoñ-hcañ*, l. 299, is similar. On *cañ*, 'city', ll. 118, 210, see *supra*, p. 245.

*Rme* is a quite different word. It is used only in the repeated (ll. 124, 232, 337, 340, 342) phrase *htor-htta-rme-ge*, always associated with something undesirable, as in:

*htor-htta-rme-ge-hso-hnañ-stor ||*, 231-2

'the great horse being *rme*, the *hso-hnañ* is lost'.

The restriction to the particular phrase excludes an understanding of *rme* as = *me*, 'is non-existent'; but *rme* would be a regular equivalent of Tib. *rme*, 'spot', 'blemish', physical or moral, which in one of the Tibetan manuscripts and elsewhere is spelled *dme* (*dmer-hgyur*, 'becomes spoiled', used of flesh corrupting);<sup>1</sup> and it may express the loss of prestige to the horse due to his desertion of his capital (unless it should be that, contrary to what we elsewhere understand, the horse had been killed by the yak, as in the Tibetan account, and had literally become carrion). We cannot take the Nam *sme* (*supra*) for a divergent form of this *rme*; yet, on the other hand, the Tibetan has a *sme* (in *sme-khab* = a particular under-garment, and elsewhere), equivalent to its *rme*, *dme*.

The word for 'fire' with *s-* Prefix seems to occur in a Tibetan document (*Tib. Literary Texts*, &c., ii, p. 397: A 4), but has not elsewhere been found, unless Mānyak *sa-meñ* is an instance.

In l. 40 we read:

*hphu-hklo-hsad-dze-hnañ-me-hmyi ||*

'if the *hphu-hklo* be destroyed, the place (or house?) has no fire'.

Here we must necessarily think of Tib. *hbud*, *phu*, *phus*, *dbu*, 'blow', *me-phu*, 'blow the fire', *hbud-hduñ*, 'trumpet', also 'bellows', more especially as that *phu* occurs in the Central-Asian Documents (vol. ii, p. 224). In fact, the *hphu-hklo* must signify 'bellows', modern Tibetan *sbud-pa*. An Amdoan form of this implement is described by Rockhill in his *Diary* (p. 11), and others are illustrated in a plate facing p. 96, and Filchner, *Das Rätsel* . . . , Pl. 44, while in regard to Tibet generally reference may be made to Ś. C. Das's *Dictionary*, s.v. *sbud-pa*. This being so, we can see that the ἀπαξ εἰρημένον *hklo* is simply the word *glo*, 'lungs', 'mind', which is found in the Nam text (ll. 68, 93, 157), and that *hphu-hklo* is literally 'blow-lungs': we can see, further, that the phrase

<sup>1</sup> In the Berlin fragment *rme-ma*, mentioned in (ll. 4-5) in company with *éañ-ma*, 'filth' (*supra*, p. 223), will contain the same *rme*.



*hrañ-pu-glo*, l. 116 = *rañ-pu-hlo*, l. 135, means 'himself his own bellows (sc. inspirer)'; possibly

*tsig-moñ-we-ge-htsañ-hpu-hloho*, 381

may mean

'the Moñ builders are the bellows'.

*Phu*, in the sense of 'blowing' must now be seen in:

*hño-re-hlo-ge-hkyi-hdzam-hphuhi*, 275-6

'in friendly troops the dogs mildly panted'

*rgyeb-hphuhi-htoñ-re-hyañ-wa-hkañ*, l. 190

'if the rear emits a breath, the front is full of *wa*' (cf. l. 282, *rgyeb-hphuhi-hphuhi*).

And with this and the notion of 'blowing' a fire well agrees the antithesis to *hmu*, 'cold', in:

*hdram-hmu-hdoñ-htor-sku-hphu-hti*, 103-4

'the stiff (*hdram*<sup>1</sup> = Tib. *tram*, p. 251) cold gone (come?), the body-blowing (breath) stops'

*rño-mu-rgyeb-re-hrañ-pu-glo-re*, 116-17

'capacity covered up or kept back by cold (lack of spirit), himself his own bellows'

(*rgyeb* = Tib. *hgebs*, *hkheb*, *hkyeb*; cf. *ñe-hkyeb-hkyeb*, l. 17, 'evil spreads over, spreads over'; or = *rgyeb*, as *supra*, p. 228?)

*hphu-hphu-mu[-]r[e]-hdzu-hdro-hkus*, 352 (cf. l. 274, p. 331)

'his blow, blow, being cold, the ass desired (Tib. *hkhu*) to go (probably with a paronomasia on *dro*, 'heat', 'longed for (*hkhu*) heat', which pun recurs in:

*hdro-hbroñ-prom-ge-hkoñ-me-htul*, 169, 170.

'the yak being made to go, his fire of speech was quelled')

and, again in connexion with the ass, in:

*lkyañ-hzu-hrño-re-h[na]ñ-hdro-mo*

*hso-hkog-rño || re-hnañ-hdro-hmo ||*

*stor-hkho-hrño-re-hnañ-hdro-thar*

*hmo[-]re-bzah-re-hse-spye-hkyañ ||*, 188-90

'The *rkyang* (ass) being capable, the female [horse] runs within (or 'has an inner heat'):

Capable of concealed *hso* (*copulari*), the female horse runs within . . .

When her ruler is lost, the inner heat escapes;

<sup>1</sup> In l. 31 (and possibly here?) the spelling is *htam*.

Woman or wife, a matron is a summer (*spyé*, pp. 145-6) of mischief'.

To the metaphorical applications of the notion 'fire' must, it seems, be added those presented in the passage

hmar-me-hkañ-ge-hrdzah-hgo-hpo ||

gte-me-hkañ-ge-dam-rma-hbroñ ||

gci-me-hsí-ge-hbeñi-bañ-hbu || hrug ||, 46-7

'When lamp (Tib. *mar-me*, 'oil-fire', 'lamp') fire is scarce (? = Tib. *dka* or *kha*), friends leave (*hpho*, 'pass away') the place (*hgo*);

'When navel-fire (sc. appetite, Tib. *lte*) is exhausted, the yak begs to be tied (hobbled for the night)';

'When travel-fire (energy) declines (*hsí*), sheep and oxen have bowed heads' (see p. 149)

27. *hldañ*, *ldañ*; °*rgye*, °*rmañ*, °*rdze*, °*hkañ*, °*hphyar* (*hphyer*, *phyer*, *pyer*), °*pyi* (*phyi*), °*hkrañ* (*krañ*); *ske*, *rke*; *hstañ*; *hduñ*; *hsad*; *hwe*; *hna*; *hrweñi*; *hko*; *spo*; *hnam*; *sla*; *hsah*; *dgu*, *hgu*.

In the sense of 'wood', 'stick', the word *hldañ*, evidenced in l. 159, has cognates widely spread in Tibetan and Tibeto-Burman.<sup>1</sup> Further occurrences in the Nam text may be recognized in:

rgoñ-hce-rgye-dze-hldañ-rgyu-htam ||, 59-60

'in a desert of great extent stick-material is a mere tale (? Tib. *gtam*)';

cf. the reference in one of the Tibetan manuscripts to the single stick standing up in the *thañ*-plain. The 'big-stick' of government (*hldañ-rgye*) has been noted (p. 245) in l. 209: and the *hldañ-rmañ*, 'wooden monument' of l. 27, = *hldañ-hkhañ*, 'wooden house' (cf. Tib. *śin-khañ*), may refer to the tomb with upstanding wooden posts described and illustrated in Sir Aurel Stein's *Innermost Asia* (i, pp. 264-7, Illustrations Nos. 168-9).

Initial *ld-* is not rare in Tibetan. It is found alternating with *l-* (*ldañ/lañ*, 'rise', *ldoñ/loñ*, 'blind'), *d-* (*ldum-po/dum-po*, 'piece', *ldab/hdab*, 'fold', *ldam/hdam*, 'mud', *ldig/dig*, 'stammer', &c.), *zl-* (*zlog/ldog/log*, 'turn away', *zlug/ldug/blug*, 'pour'), *lh-* (*ldad/lhad*, 'adulterate', *ldug/lhug*, 'pour', *ldon/lhon/glon*, 'give back'). Presumably the history is complex, some of the roots being originally *d-*roots, others *l-*roots, and variation of Prefixes also intervening, so that occasionally we find *m-* (*mdoñs*, 'blind'), *s-*

<sup>1</sup> For occurrences in dialects of Burmese see L. F. Taylor, *Journal of the Burma Research Society*, xi, pp. 89 sqq., Table II A, 'firewood'.

(*ldum-ra/sdum-ra*, 'garden'), or *g-* (*ldu-gu/gdu-gu*, 'ring'). *Lt-* has, beside the above-noted confusions with *ld-*, independent contacts with *lh-* (*ltuñ/lhuñ*, 'fall'). The antiquity of *ld-* in Tibetan has been illustrated in connexion with the word *lde* (pp. 278-9); and from outside regions of the north-east and east we have early examples in proper names, such as *Ldoñ*, *Mug-ldem*, *Žag-ldom*.

In the Nam text the word *hldi*, 'this', = Tib. *hdi*, is several times (ll. 107, 184, 198, 391 (?)) written in the Tibetan way; and, on the other hand, the Tibetan *hdi* occurs in the sole Tibetan sentence (l. 180) as *hldi*. Hence the Nam *ld-* may be credited with all the connexions of Tib. *d-*.

One meaning of Tib. *ldañ* is 'side', seen in *sgo-ldañ*, 'each side of the door', whence *ldañ-du* is found signifying 'near'; and we can see that this is connected with *lhan*, 'together', seen in *lhan-skyes*, 'born together' (as twins), *lhan-byed*, 'auxiliary', *ldañ(s)* owing its *n* to an *s* which originally followed. The word *lhan-byed*, in the form *lhan-dpye*, 'assistant', occurs in a Central-Asian document. A Nam equivalent, *ldañ-pyer*, *hldañ-hpyer* (*pyer*), is to be seen in:

*ldañ-pyer-hgag-re-htsañ-hyañ-hdo* ||, 65

'Those whose co-operation is refused become rivals (or adversaries)'

*hldañ-krañ-hko-dze-stor-hldañ-hpyar*, 125-6

'when . . ., co-operation is lost'

*hldañ-pyer-hbrañ[-]r[e]*, 254

'while co-operation is abundant'.

Of this compound, *hldañ-pyer*, the second element, with *e* for *a* on the lines explained *supra* (p. 214), is equivalent to Tib. *hpyar/phyar*, 'lift up', 'hoist', (also 'blame', 'affront', 'disgrace', cf. Latin *tollere*). Outside the compound it occurs in ll. 341-2 in the three forms *hpyar*, *pyar*, *hpyer*,<sup>1</sup> in ll. 254, 261 as *pyer*: in l. 239 it is contrasted (as in ll. 125-6, *supra*) with *hstor*, 'be lost'; and in l. 343 *ldañ* likewise is contrasted with the *stor* of ll. 339, 340. It is evident that in the compound *ldañ* means 'side', 'being at the side', and *hpyar*, 'support'.

*Ldañ* singly, with the sense of 'at the side', 'auxiliary' is seen in:

*ldañ-rdze(rje)-hbro-re-hldañ-the-rgyebs* ||, 138-9

'when an allied chief flees, the allied lieges retreat'.

It is probable that in ll. 79, 143, the expression *hldañ-pyi* (*pyi*)

<sup>1</sup> On *-ar/-er* see p. 353.



means 'outside support' (Tib. *phyi*). From the second of the two last-mentioned instances:

htor-se-stor-dze-hldaṅ-pyi-ske ||, 143

'when the great roof is lost, the outside support is slight (Tib. *rke*, "lean", *rked/sked*, "waist")<sup>1</sup>

we can see that the idea of 'support', 'auxiliary', is derived from that of 'stick', 'pole', 'prop', which in Tib. *sgo-lđaṅ*, 'door-side', i.e. 'door-post', is still apparent. The *lđaṅ* may denote, in fact, the sticks or poles, over which, in the case of the Amdoan tent, the roof-cords pass to the ground (*supra*, pp. 249-50).

We have not, however, reached the root of the matter, or the most common meaning of *hldaṅ* in the Nam text, until we realize that *hldaṅ* is another instance of object-denotation derived from quasi-abstract verbal notion. Like *hbo*, 'forest' or 'vegetation', properly 'swelling', 'growth', and *hgreṅ*, 'man', properly the 'upright standing', *hldaṅ*, 'stick', is a general notion of action, namely 'rising erect'. This is the signification of Tib. *lđaṅ/lđaṅs*, *laṅ/laṅs*, and correspondingly is the frequent signification of Nam *hldaṅ/lđaṅ*, as in:

htsog-ḥram-ḥdo-na-mor-hldaṅ-re-ḥṅaḥ ||, 86-7

'where there is *htsog-ḥram*, there is no rising of evil'

htsog-hldaṅ-ḥstaṅ, 94, '*htsog* rises to the top'

ḥmaḥ-hldaṅ-ḥyaḥ-dze, 112, 'when low rises high'

smyi-rmad-lđaṅ, 80, 'an inferior man rises'

stor-me-ḥkhyed-re-hldaṅ-me-ḥkhyed ||, 123-4

'if a lost fire sufficed, a rising fire suffices'

ḥsaḥ-yer-hldaṅ-dze-rṅe-hldaṅ-ne, 141

'when land-watch rises, hostility rising is good'.

The use of this Verb with *rṅe*, which properly means 'fiend', is frequent (ll. 119, 141, 144, 197), and it is the more apposite because in Tibetan, as already (p. 220) remarked, *lđaṅ/laṅ* is used of the 'rising' of a fiend (from underground).

The same Verb forms part of an expression which in the text has marked importance. One passage reads:

hldaṅ-ḥkraṅ-ḥsad-na-hldaṅ-ḥkraṅ-ḥśaḥ

hldaṅ-kraṅ-ḥwe-dze-hldaṅ-slaḥ-ḥkeḥe

hldaṅ-kraṅ-ḥko-dze-stor-hldaṅ-ḥphyar

hldaṅ-kraṅ-spo-dze-stor-ḥgu-ḥbo ||

hldaṅ-kraṅ-ḥnam-dze-stor-dgu-ḥdor |||, 124-7

<sup>1</sup> Unless we prefer 'the support turns its neck away', with *phyi-ske* parallel to Tib. *phyi-mig*, 'backward look'.

*Hldañ-hkrañ* is one of a few compound nouns which directly recall equivalents in Tibetan. The Tibetan phrase, in the form *drañ-mkhrañ*, is found, not indeed in the *Dictionary*, but two or three times in the contemporary manuscripts from north-eastern Tibet: it is composed of *drañ*, 'straight', 'honest', and *mkhrañ*, *hkhrañs*, 'hard', 'solid', and its meaning is 'honesty', 'uprightness'. Its non-occurrence in ordinary Tibetan combines with its provenance to suggest that it may be of Chinese origin, being one of a number of such phrases, concerning which see Franke, *Geschichte des Chinesischen Reiches*, ii, p. 5: and this may explain why the Nam expression, while similar to the Tibetan and rhyming therewith, corresponds to it linguistically only in part. The second member, *hokrañ*, is, no doubt, cognate to the Tibetan *mkhrañ/hkhrañs*; but the first member, instead of meaning 'straight' (Tib. *drañ*), means 'standing upright' = Tib. *ldañ*, unless indeed it envisages the particular denotation 'stick', 'pole', and so contains the metaphor 'stiff standing pole'.

The passage applies to *hldañ-hokrañ*, in successive clauses with corresponding apodoses, the five Predicates or Verbs *hsad*, *hwe*, *hko*, *spo*, *hnam*, which are therefore in a measure antithetic. Being already acquainted with a portion of the Predicates and other words, we may venture upon a rendering of the whole, as follows:

'Uprightness being slain (*hsad*), upright is cut up (*hsah*);

Uprightness being done (*hwe*), upright friends (Tib. *zla*) are won (*hkehe*);

Uprightness being by itself or enforced (? *hko*), assistance is lost;

Uprightness being changed (Tib. *spo*), all losses grow (*hbo*);

Uprightness declining (Tib. *ñams*), all losses are thrown away (*hdor*).'

Here *hsad*, 'slay', *hwe*, are words of frequent occurrence and quite certain etymology and meaning; *hnam* = Tib. *ñams* recurs in l. 259 and is supported also by another *hnam* (l. 145) = Tib. *ñams*, 'thought', 'mind', 'spirit' (on *ñ* > *n* see p. 360); *spo*, since Tib. *spo*, 'peak', is out of the question, can hardly help being = Tib. *spo*, *hpho*, 'change', 'be changed', 'pass away', cf. *hśi-hpo*, p. 226; *hko* is a form of diverse meanings, discussed *supra* (pp. 260-4). As regards the apodoses, *hsah* is applied in ll. 90, 99, as we shall see, to *htsog-hram* and *hnañ-htsog*, and can well be = Tib. *bśah*, used of the cutting up of a slain animal; *hke*, 'profit', 'gain', = Tib. *khe* (pp. 241-2), and *hdor*, 'throw away', = Tib. *hdor*, are



frequent in the text, while *hbo*, perhaps here doubtful, may be the *hbo* discussed *supra* (pp. 231-2); *sla* = Tib. *zla*, 'friend', calls for comment. The phrase *stor-dgu* is rendered 'all losses', literally 'nine losses', upon the supposition that this Tibetan idiom in the use of *dgu*, 'nine', found in our Tibetan manuscripts, was shared by the Nam; in the *stor-hgu* of the preceding verse there is no obvious alternative to the supposition of a writing of *dgu* as *hgu*, which may be defended on the two grounds, (a) that in l. 113 *hgu-htor-hitsu*: *na* must be = l. 76 *dgu-htor-tshun-re*, and (b) that in the Hsi-fan and Tibeto-Burman dialects the Prefix-less form *gu*, 'nine', is far more common than those with Prefixes (*d*, *r*). On this matter see p. 233. Hsi-hsia has *dgih/hgih*, '9' (Nevsky, No. 109).

The expression *hldañ-hkrañ* occurs also in ll. 91, 111-12 (with *hnar*, 'be strong', or 'be persistent', or 'attend to', see p. 361), 113 (with *hrwehi*, 'come to an end'?), 127, 157 (with *hwe*: *hkrañ* erroneously omitted), 268 (with *hwad*, 'be on the watch'). With the same essential signification *krañ* by itself is seen in:

*hño-sta-glom-dze-krañ-nur-nur*, 85

'when friends are greedy, or conceited, the upright, or uprightness, groans'.

It may be remarked that etymologically *hkrañ/krañ* = Tib. *mkhrañ/hkkhrañ*, can well be connected with Tib. *hgreñ*, 'stand', *sgreñ*, 'lift or rise up' (*sgreñ-sgreñ*, 'firm and well-fixed'), whence the expression *hgreñ-myi*, 'upright man', as opposed to prone (*dud*) beast.

28. *rgyed-ma*, *rgyed*; °*hdre*, °*hryo*, °*hrah*; *hgye*, *rgye*, *rgyes*; *nag*; *gceg*, *hceg*, *gcheg*; *hldoño*; *htsog*, *htsag*; *hnañ*-, *ñañ*-, °*htsog*; *ram*, *htsog-hram*; *hśah*, *hśas*; *phye*; *hnañ*; *myag*; *hme*; *hpo*; *hreg*; *plim-plam*; *hso(so)-hnañ* (*hna*, *na*); *hso-hldañ*; *hdroño*; *myiñ*; *hñad*, *hñahd*; *hrgah*, *hrgan*; *hthañ*; *tseg*; *rmo*.

That *rgyed-ma* means 'division', 'disunion', has been argued above (pp. 139-40 sqq.): it is formed by aid of the Suffix *ma*, from a Verb *hgye*, 'be divided', 'be dispersed', *hgyed*, 'scatter', 'disperse', both being used also with reference to rays of light; and *hgyed-ma* in Tibetan is a goddess of dissension. Ultimately the Verb is an alternative form of a *hbye*,<sup>1</sup> 'be opened', 'be divided', *hbyed*, 'open', 'disunite', &c., whence *dbye*, 'distinction', 'species', 'extent', *dbyen*, 'dissension', *dbyes*, 'magnitude', 'dimensions' = Nam *rgye*, *rgyes*, 'extent'.

<sup>1</sup> On the alternation *b/g* see pp. 33, n. 5, 243.



In the Nam text *hgye* is found (ll. 12, 154) meaning 'light', in l. 209 (*g-yehe*, °*hi*°, 166, 271) 'is divided'. *Rgye*, 'extent', may be seen in *hce-rgye* (ll. 57-60) = Tib. *dbye-che*, 'of great extent', and equivalent to *hce-rgyañ*, ll. 16, 50, 52, 55: in both the Nam phrases, however, *hce* may be the Noun, 'greatness', and *rgye*, *rgyañ*, the Adjectives; as an Adjective, *rgye* is applied to 'stick' (*hldañ*) and 'city' (*cañ*) in ll. 209-10, and probably to *hlo* in l. 383; to 'man' (*myi*) in l. 153; to 'darkness' (*hti*) in l. 154; in l. 280 to 'house' (*hkhah*); in l. 54 it (*rgyehe*) is perhaps a Verb. In l. 326 it is probably a miswriting for *rgyed* (cf. l. 338). Once, viz. in *hśaṅ-nag-rgyes-hkom*, l. 199, 'when enemy voice (Tib. *ñag*), or black (Tib. *nag*) enemy, has attained extension', we find the form *rgyes* (= Tib. *dbyes*), which may be either Noun or Verb.

*Rgyed* = *rgyed-ma* is rather frequent, occurring in ll. 105, 106, 112 (*rgyed-hldag-hñag*, 'the disunion black-back'), 192 (*rgyed-hrañ-sme-re*, 'disunion being itself a fire'); and in compounds, *rgyed-hdre* (ll. 87, 94, 248), 'disunion-inducing', *hrgyed-hyo* (l. 338), 'disunion-working', *rgyed-hrah* (ll. 87, 216, 237, 243, 246, 248, 341, 342 (?), 392), 'place of disunion', the Suffix *ma* is absent, as it would quite ordinarily be in Tibetan.

As antithetic to *hldañ-krañ*, 'uprightness', *rgyed* is seen in:

*rgyed-hldag-hñag-ge-hldañ-hkrañ-hrwehi* ||, 112-13  
'the disunion black-back put an end to uprightness'.

But more constant is the opposition to *htsog-hram* and allied expressions, as in:

*rgyed-ma-hldañ-ge-htsog-hram-hśah* ||, 90  
'when disunion arises, *htsog-hram* is cut up'  
*rgyed-ma-glañ-ge-hnañ-htsog-hśah* ||, 93  
'when disunion gains (?), *hnañ-htsog* is cut up'  
*rgyed-ma-hldañ-ge-ñah-htsog-hśas*, 101-2 (where *ñah* = *hnañ* of l. 93, and *hśas* is Aorist of *hśah*)

while in l. 94:

*rgyed-htre* (read °*hdre-hte*, as in ll. 87, 248) -*ge-htsog-htañ-ma* ||  
'the disunion-inducers permit not *htsog*'

and also in the two following verses, *htsog* suffices.

*Htsog-hram*, evidently one of the most important topics in the text, receives its most elaborate consideration in the passage:

*htsog-hram-phye-dze-hśaṅ-plim-plam*  
*htsog-hram-hnañ-tse-htor-śi-rgo* ||  
*htsog-hram-myag-dze-hrta-hwa-hldañ*

htsog-hram-hme-dze-htor-htas-hproms  
 htsog-hram-hpo-dze-htta-rkwa-hdzam  
 htsog-hram-hreg-dze-hldyañ-hyu-hgañ-dze-hśi-hwa-hko,  
 120-3.

Here the Predicates *phye*, 'divided', *myag* (Tib.) 'corrupted', *hme*, 'is not', *hpo*, 'changes' (Tib. *hpho*), which may be taken as known, inform us that the remaining two must also be of an ominous character in relation to *htsog-hram*. Of the previously ascertained meanings of *hnañ* only one satisfies this condition; if we equate it to Tib. *na*, 'be sick', on which see p. 239, we see that it leads on to the *śi*, 'die', of the apodosis. *Hreg* = Tib. *reg*, 'reach', 'touch', is not promising; but *regs*, *hbreg*, *bregs*, 'lop off', 'amputate', would serve, and in regard to a lost (or perhaps later added) initial *b* we can think of Tib. *ris*, 'figure', 'design', which is in intimate relation to *hbri*, *bris*, 'draw' (*ris-su-hbri-ba*, 'draw an outline'), and *ras-su-dros* (*dra-ba*), 'cut up into strips': cf. *bris*/*bris* (p. 259). Thus we arrive at a rendering as follows:

- 'Htsog-hram being divided, hate is *plim-plam* (let loose?);  
 " " sick, a great door (*rgo*) of death;  
 " " corrupted, horse's neck (a proverbial  
 expression);  
 " " non-existent (everything is tangled (?):  
 see p. 302);  
 " " changed, the horse's rule was mild;  
 " " broken, in all the *hldyañ-hyu* death's  
 power prevails (?).

Despite the obscurities not yet resolved, it will be seen that the signification of *htsog-hram* must be something like 'friendship'. And how can this fail to be the fact, when, as we are already aware, the enemy of *htsog-hram*, and of other combinations with *htsog*, is 'disunion', *rgyed-ma*?

The constant, and therefore essential, factor in the expressions, namely *htsog*, is manifestly identical with Tib. 'assemblage', 'group', 'accumulation' (*tshogs-kyi-gtso-bo* or *°bdag* = Sanskrit *gaṇa-pramukha*, *Gaṇeśa*, &c.), being the Verb *htshogs*, 'assemble', 'unite', whence also *btsags*, 'accumulated', *tshags-byed*, 'save', *tshags-lhod-po*, 'loose cohesion'. Nam *htsag* occurs in l. 45, *hya-htsag* ||, 'sheep are collected', l. 117 *hpho-hldir-htsag*, 'males here collected', l. 173 *hwi-hweñi-htsag*, 'rats or mice gather', l. 234 *htsag-hro*, 'collected wolves', l. 257 *hyah-rmah-htsag*, 'high and low united', also l. 282. Hence *hnañ-htsog* and *nañ-htsog*, *supra*,

p. 291, denote respectively 'local unity' and 'home unity'. The element *hram* in *htsog-hram* evidently means 'agreeable' in l. 157: *skye-ta-ram*, 'life is agreeable'

and the same is applicable to 'the moon' in ll. 73, 76, while in other cases (ll. 49, 184, 288, 368, 376) 'company' or 'in agreement' are more apposite. The word accords well with Tib. *ram* in *rog-sram*, 'assist', from *rog* = *grogs*, 'friend', 'companion', and perhaps in *ra-mdah*, i.e. *ram-da*, 'friend', 'helper', and *ram-bu*, 'a roundel song'. Thus the notion in *htsog-hram* is 'harmonious co-operation', a thing constantly threatened by *rgyed-ma*, 'disunion'.

It may be noted that in the Berlin fragment, l. 21, *na-ram-reg* is likely to be equivalent to the Nam *htsog-hram* (= *nah-htsog*)-*hreg*, l. 122.

Antithetic likewise to *rgyed-ma* is *hso-hnah*, another main topic of the text, in:

*rgyed-ma-hldaṅ-ge-hso-hnah-hrgah*, 107-8, 231  
'disunion arising, *hso-hnah* grows old'

and this is also closely allied to *htsog-hram*:

*htsog-hram-mye[-]r[e]-so-na-hsid* ||, 365-6

'if *htsog-hram* is non-existent, *so-na* perishes'. In Tibetan *so-nams* (cf. *so-tshis* (*tshigs*), 'house-keeping') means 'husbandry' or other 'business', being obviously = *gso/gson*, 'live', 'nurture', 'cure', + *snams*, *snom*, *bsnams*, 'seize', 'gain'. This *gso/so*, the Nam text has in *hso-hldaṅ*, l. 201, the 'living'; and *hso-hnah* = 'life-place', 'home'. But, like other words of local signification, the expression takes on a personal sense and means 'family', e.g. in:

*rta-hso-hnah-yaṅ-gñi-hrdzum-dohö* ||, 80

'for the horse's family also the day smiled' (p. 271)

(sc. when the horse fled, the family was relieved of a master).

*rta-hgam-hpar-re-hso-hnah-hthaṅ* ||, 289-90

'the horse having gone to the *hgam*, his family was the authority'.

*rta-hso-hnah-ge-na-rom-htoṅ*, 100

'the horse's family made room (for the visiting camel)'.

In fact, however, the relief of the family, which consisted of females (l. 108 *mo-laṅ*), was illusory, since there were 'males here collected' (l. 117), and:

*bro-hbehi-hbah-ge-hso-hnah-gcheg* || 110-11,

'With wolves oppressing the sheep, the family suffered a check.'



In l. 234 it is 'collected wolves', 'wolf-pack' (*h̥tsag-h̥ro*), and the family was practically in the grave (*rmañ-dze*, l. 235). Thus the 'rise of disunion' (ll. 107-8, 231), the flight (ll. 110, 114-15) and disrepute (ll. 231-2; *rme*, p. 284 *supra*) of the horse were ruinous to the family, and:

so-h̥nañ-h̥stor-dze-h̥ño-stor-h̥prom ||, 127-8

'family being lost, loss of friends results'.

Of the words closely attached to *rgyed* only *rmañ* (*rgyed-rmañ*, l. 149) remains for consideration (*infra*, pp. 300-1). With *h̥tsog-h̥ram* and *h̥tsog* we have had the expressions *h̥rta-h̥wa-h̥ldañ*, *h̥tor-h̥tas-h̥proms*, *h̥rta-rkwa-h̥dzam*, *h̥śaḥ*, *h̥śas*, *phye*, *h̥nañ*, *myag*, *h̥me*, *h̥po*, *h̥reg*, *mye*, *h̥ldañ*, of which the first three may be postponed, while the rest have been discussed. To be added are *h̥droho* l. 37 (= Tib. *h̥dro*, *h̥dron*, 'travel', 'depart', a Verb occurring elsewhere also in the text), *h̥ñad*, l. 90, *myiñ*, l. 97 (if a correct reading, equivalent, no doubt, to Tib. *miñ*, 'a [mere] name'): *h̥ñad*, which, as *h̥ñah̥d*, is predicated in l. 116 of 'fear', may have appositely the meaning 'evaporate' and be akin to Tib. *ñad*, 'vapour', 'odour'. With *h̥so-h̥nañ* have been found, ll. 108, 131, *h̥rgaḥ*, 'grow old', = Tib. *rga/rgan* (used respectively of 'speech', *h̥rgaḥ*, l. 169,<sup>1</sup> and 'corn', *h̥rgan*, l. 160); l. 356 *h̥śid*, 'perish'; l. 290, *h̥thañ*, 'be authority'; ll. 111, 234 *g̥cheg/g̥ceg*, 'suffer a check'; ll. 111, 270 *h̥yaḥ*, 'be in the ascendant'; l. 232, *stor*, 'be lost'. In l. 103 we find *ma-rañ*, 'be not pleased' = Tib. *rañ*, *rañs*; in l. 110 *h̥ldoḥo*, which is ambiguous—conceivably it is related to Tib. *bdo*, 'increase'. *G̥cheg/g̥ceg*, here antithetic to *h̥ldoḥo*, is = Tib. *h̥cheg*, *h̥chags*, *b̥śags*, *b̥śag*, *śag*, 'split', 'confess', 'be afraid', *g̥cog*, *bcag*, *chogs*, 'split', 'break', *cag/chag*, 'broken', &c.; the form with *ts* which furnishes *tshegs*, 'trouble', 'toil', 'difficulty', may occur in l. 93, *swa-tseg-tseg*, where, however, a different explanation is possible. In the Central-Asian documents we find the forms *tseg* (ii, p. 412: 117) and *tshegs* (ii, p. 236: 87, a 'check' in the military sense). The Nam text has *h̥ceg* in:

h̥broñ-re-ge-rmo-h̥kum-h̥ceg, 250

'all the yaks were, in fulfilment of the vow or prayer (? Tib. *smon* ?), "checked".'

29. *h̥khor*, *h̥kor*; *h̥yog*, *g-yog*, *h̥yogs*; *h̥kru*, *h̥kruḥu*, *h̥khru*, *h̥khruḥu*; *h̥kru-yog*, *h̥bro*, *h̥pro*; *h̥khru-rgyañ*; *h̥kyañ*; *rgyañ*, *h̥ldoñ*; *khri*; *h̥śi-h̥kri* (*h̥gri*); *h̥nañ(na)*-*h̥poñ*, *h̥ldom*; *h̥gor*; *kla*;

<sup>1</sup> But here probably rather = Tib. *dgañ*, 'joy', 'rejoice'.

*klaḡ; gśim; ḥpraḥ; ḥrgom; ḥrkaḥ; ḥrdoḥo; ḥrnab; ḥkyi; g-raḥ.*

Tibetan *ḥkhor*, of which the central signification is that of 'circle', 'circling', whence also 'coming round', 'returning', has also very commonly the meaning 'entourage', 'courtiers', 'attendants', e.g. in *ḥkhor-g-yog*, 'attendants and servants', *nañ-ḥkhor*, 'domestics'. The first of these meanings has been accepted (p. 272) in regard to *ḥkor* as applied in l. 53 to the *rgya-ḥñi-ke*, 'sun and moon'. In ll. 293, 294, 296 it is not clear whether the *ḥyañ-ḥkaḥ-rdza* and *ḥkyañ-ḥldoñ* 'form a circle' or 'turn back' (*ḥkhor* [-re]); and in l. 277 it is likewise uncertain whether the braves (*ḥpab*) 'return' or 'form groups or retinues' (*ḥkor-re*). But in l. 18, *ḥdzañ-ḥkhor-ḥkrug*, 'the retinue of wise persons was at strife', and in l. 98 the word *ḥkhor* clearly denotes a group of subordinates forming a retinue; and in:

*ḥkor-ḥtab-ḥkhen-yañ-sñañ-gyañ-gyañ*, 92

'though recognizing one of one's own people, the heart dallies, dallies'

the sense is approximately, or exactly, the same.

With *ḥkhor*, as in the above-cited Tibetan *ḥkhor-g-yog*, the Nam text associates *hyogs* in its:

*ḥdzañ-ḥkhor-ḥkrug-ḥkyañ-hyogs-ḥldog*, 18

where the *hyogs* or *ḥkyañ-hyogs* are *ḥldog*. In the sense of 'below', associated with *rgyah-gñi-ke* and with 'castle' (ll. 200, 299, 320), *g-yog* has already been cited (pp. 267, 279); also in the thence derived sense of 'valley' (ll. 15, 51). In *ḥkhwei-tsa-hyog-ḥdag*, l. 259, 'old men with staves or poles', an entirely different word, = Tib. *yog-po*, *yog-sñ*, may be seen. The notion of 'servant' (Tib. *g-yog*) is to be recognized in *rma-g-yog-rño*, l. 156, 'capable of rendering service to the wounded' (cf. Tib. *nad-g-yog*, 'service at sick-bed'). The *hyogs* or *ḥkyañ-hyogs* who in l. 18 are *ḥldog*, 'recalcitrant' (Tib. *ldog*, *log*), are accordingly 'servitors'.

The recurrent expression *ḥkru-yog*, ll. 289, 321 (*khru*<sup>c</sup>), 322-3 (*ḥkhruḥu*<sup>c</sup>), 324, contains a word which by reason of relative constancy of writing must be kept entirely apart from any *gru* or *ḥgru*. Even in ll. 187, 388, the rendering 'when the great *ḥkhru* became expanded' is to be preferred. The *ḥkru-hyog-rño*, l. 289 = *khru-hyog-rño*, l. 321 = *ḥkru-hyog*, l. 324, 'the *ḥkru* capable of service', must be the *kruḥu-ḥthe-ḥpraḥ*, 'humble (Tib. *phra*) *kruḥu* lies', of ll. 334-5, the *ḥkhruḥu-hyog-ḥsud*, 'dispersed' (? Tib.



*gsud*),<sup>1</sup> *hkruhu* 'servitors', of ll. 322-3, and the *rkom-hkru-hsud*, 'slain *hkru* dispersed', of l. 313. They must therefore be equivalent to the *kru-ra*, = *dmañs-rigs*, of the Tibetans, 'the vulgar, or the lowest class of people in the mystical [sc. *yoga*] language'. We cannot but surmise that they are properly 'the offscourings' (Tib. *hkhru*, *khru*, 'wash', 'cleanse'). Accordingly we can understand:

hyah-htañ-rma[-]r[e]-hyah-hkruhu-hbro-re-hrgyeb-hkruho ||,  
315-16

'when the higher authority becomes low, while the front  
*hkruhu-hbro*, the rear is *hkru* (filth)'.

As a Predicate in the last usage, *hkru*, *hkhru*, has several recurrences:

hrkom-hbroñ-hkru[-]r[e], 285, 'the slain yak being filth',

hkhru-re-hkyañ, 320, 'the *hkyañ* being filth'

hgu-mor-hkru[-]r[e], 331, 'the wicked thieves<sup>2</sup> (?) being filth'

while in:

hrgom-hkhru[-]r[e]-hto-na, 169, 'the canaille being passed  
over (*hrgom*, pp. 245, 323)'

khru-hrkañ-myi-hrdoño-hrnab-ma-hldañ, 165

'the canaille who do not submit to hardships (Tib. *dkaḥ-ba-dañ-sdo*) were not entitled to eat (Tib. *mnab*)'

the word is a Substantive.

These facts prohibit us from anywhere yielding to the temptation to render the frequent expression *hkru(hkruhu, kru)-hbro* (once *hpro*, l. 321) by 'flies into a corner (*gru*)', although *hbro* (*bro*), = Tib. *hbros/bros*, 'flee', has a number of occurrences (ll. 36, 138, 139, 241). *Hyah-hkruhu-hbro* (ll. 315-16, 318, 325) means 'the front (sc. the superior) tastes as filth' (Anglicè 'is in bad odour'),<sup>3</sup> *hrgyeb-hkru-hbro* (ll. 297, 323) 'the rear (sc. inferior) tastes as filth', and *hri(g-ri)-hkruhu-hbroho(hbro)* (ll. 294, 313), 'the mountain tastes as filth', sc. when infested by savage animals. The verse:

hyah-hklu(hkru)-hbro-re-hgyeb<sup>4</sup>-hkru-hbro-re-hyah-htañ-  
htañna | : |, 221-2

'The front tasting as filth, the rear tasting as filth, both are  
on a par'

<sup>1</sup> *Hsud* occurs only in the two passages. Tib. *sud* = 'cough', 'choke', and *gsud*, *bsud*, 'dyspepsia', 'be lost', 'dispersed', 'be crammed with food'. Perhaps *sud*, *bsud*, 'scratch', 'excoriate', also 'steal silently away', is intended: or cf. *bsun* (√*sun*), 'dissolute'?

<sup>2</sup> See p. 233.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Tib. *skyug-bro*, 'nausea', 'disgust', 'shameful', 'impure', from *skyug*, 'vomit'.

<sup>4</sup> *Sic*.



follows the statement *hbroñ-hkru-hbro-na* ||, l. 221, in regard to which the temptation is at first, by reason of the context, strong; and the *Tibetan Dictionary* of Ś. C. Das quotes from the Buddhist *Bstan-hgyur* a short sentence containing both *hbro*s from *bro*, 'taste', and *bro*s from *hbro*s, 'flee'. The same is possible in Nam; but *hkru-hbro* is confined, in fact, to the single meaning.

*Hkyañ*, mentioned above as possibly contained in the phrase *hkyañ-hyogs*, where, however, it might be = Tib. *kyañ*, 'even', 'also', and again in the statement 'the *hkyañ* being filth', appears in antithesis to *hbos*, 'big man', 'master', in:

*hpu-hpos-stor-dze-hkyañ-stor-rño* ||, 141  
'when the master man flees, the *hkyañ* can flee'.

In ll. 273-4:

*hwi-hwa-se-kyah-hkyañ-hdzam-re-hldan* ||  
'to the crops mice-injured (*se*) the *hkyañ* all tame returned'

the *hkyañ* are alined with the *hñoho-hjam-re*, 'friends all tame', of the previous verse, who returned to their enemy-abandoned (*gśaṅ-hrah-htoñ*) crops, and with the 'enemies' (*rñe*), *twañ* (?), 'dogs' (*hkyi*) and 'goats' (*g-raḥ*) 'all tame' or 'tamed', of the following verses. They are therefore not 'friends' or 'enemies' or 'animals'; and, being contrasted with masters, they must be some class of clients, while, being agricultural, they must be some sort of tenants: they are therefore agricultural serfs. This accounts for the antithesis to *na-hldom* in:

*na-hldom-hgor-kla-hkyañ-gstor[-hdor]*, 143  
'if the *na-hldom* are very idle (Tib. *hgor*, 'loiter', + *kla*, 'unlimited', as in ll. 205-6), the *hkyañ* are allowed to be lost'.

For the *na-hldom*, who in ll. 41-2, 350, are again mentioned as 'idle' (*hgor*), must be domestic servants or slaves, just as the 'idle' (*hgor*) *hnaḥ-hpoñ* of l. 113 must be the *na-boñ*, 'house or place poor' (*hphoṅs*, *phoṅs*), of one of the Tibetan manuscripts (see p. 238): on *hldom*, 'bound', see *infra*, pp. 318-9 sqq.

The *hkyañ* are again, as *hkyañ-hldoñ*, contrasted with the *hbos* in:

*mor-hkyañ-hldoñ-re-hbos-g-yaḥ-hthañ* ||, 286-7  
'the bad *hkyañ* being *hldoñ* (or the *hkyañ-hldoñ* being vile),  
the master is in the ascendant'  
*hkyañ-hldoñ-hkhor-[re-]hbos-hriḥi-hruḥu* ||, 293

'the *hkyan-hldon* returning (or in attendance), [to] the master (or master's)<sup>1</sup> mountain peak'

*hbos-g-ri-hpañ-dze-hkyan-hldon-re-hñah* ||, 290-1

'On the master's mountain-flank are no *hkyan-hldon*'

*hkyan-hldon-hkhor*-[re-]*hbos-hyah-htona*, 293-4

'the *hkyan-hldon* returning (or in attendance), the master is in the ascendant'.

Here *hldon* cannot mean 'face' ('*hkyan*-faced'), Tib. *gdon*/*mdons*, or 'blind', *ldon*/*lon*, or 'accompanying' = Tib. *sdon*: it must be 'runaway', = Tib. *hdon*, 'depart' (in Imperative, 'Begone'), as elsewhere; and the situation, as well as the meaning of *hkhor*, is determined by:

*rñe-htab-hkoñu-hkhoñu-ge-hkyan-hldon-hgyan-sto*

*hkyan-hldon-hkhor*-[re-]*hbos-hrihi-hruñu* ||

*htor-hpuñu-hbos-dze-hrim-ge-hgrus*, 292-3

'while the fiends were answering back (p. 264), the runaway *hkyan* stopped:

the runaway *hkyan* turning back to the master's mountain peak,

under the great master did service all around'.

In ll. 308-11 there is a rather similar passage concerning certain *hgah-hldon*.

Reference to *hkyan*, 'serfs', must be seen also in ll. 48-9, where a fight of *twañ* is contrasted with a fight of *hkyan*. But in l. 372, *hkrug-kyan-hldom-re*, 'strife also being subdued', and consequently in the above-cited *hkrug-hkyan-hyogs-hldog*, l. 18; further in *hkhor-kyan-rweñi*, l. 98, 'the retinue also is ruined', and in *hlah-hkyan-hras-re*, l. 344, 'the passes also being alined', it seems probable that *kyan*, *hkyan* = Tib. *kyan*, 'even', 'also'.

A quite different *hkyan* must be seen in:

*hkyan-rgyan-hsìg-dze-hsì-hkri-htshim*, 81

'when the *hkyan-rgyan* is destroyed, the high or death (*hsì*) couch (Tib. *khri*, 'chair', 'couch', 'bed') is a satisfaction'

*hkyan-hrgyan-hyah-ge-hmu-klag-gsim* ||, 268

'with the *hkyan-hrgyan* in front, a cold season (Tib. *glags*, 'occasion') is agreeable (Tib. *sim*, *tshim*, or *gsin* ?)'

Here the 'long or large (*rgyan*) *hkyan*' would be quite intelligible,

<sup>1</sup> In this and the following passages *hbos-hrihi(g-ri)* perhaps means 'big mountain', as suggested *supra*, p. 231. In that case the *hpu-hbos* and *hbos*, 'big man', in the immediate context and in ll. 294, 298, is verbally associated with the 'big mountain'.



if it were the *k'ang* of the Tibeto-Chinese border and of north China, a sort of *daïs*, about 2 feet high, floored with tiles or mud and heated by a flue underneath: on this the people sit and sleep (Huc and Gabet, i, p. 287; Rockhill, *The Land of the Lamas*, pp. 6-7, *Diary*, p. 35). It seems possible that the word *hkyan* actually represents the Chinese term *ts'uan*, 'stove', since in the Tibetan manuscripts we find *khyod* written for *tshod*<sup>1</sup> in *dgun-tshod*, 'winter-season' (cf. *ñin-tshod*, *mtshan-tshod*, *Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 201). The same expression recurs in:

na-ñldom-ñgor-[re-]hkyan-ñrgyan-ñdzud ||, 41-2

'if the house-servants are idle, the *hkyan-ñrgyan* is wasted or unsuccessful' (?)

but, though Tib. *ñdzud*, *zud*, *tshud*, 'enter', 'put in', is identical with *chud*, which has these senses and also the meaning suggested (*chud-gzon*, *zod*, 'be wasted', 'consumed'), the rendering must be considered conjectural. The phrase *hñi-hkri-hchim* (sic), 'high or death chair or bed', recurs in l. 38 (*ñgri*); but Tib. *hchim* means 'be, or get, full', and the remainder of the verse is not clear. *Khri* = 'support', a meaning found also in Tibetan, is seen in l. 52 (p. 317).

In l. 114 (*ñrah-rtah*)-*hkyan* is an error for the *hgyan* of l. 77.

30. *rmag*; *mag-ñno*; *hthun*; *htar*; *hman-byi*; *hdrag*; *hñod*; *tsa*; *puñ*; *gsar*; *ñar*; *hpañ*; *hñi*, *hñiñi*, *gñiñi*, *chi*, *hñi*; *hdañ*; *hsams*; *hpom*, *hphom*; *hdrañ*; *htog*, *hthog*; *hñi-kyeg*; *hyu-sad*; *hro-ta*; *tor*, *thor*, *hthor*; *tor-htas-proms*; *hñdas*; *hso-bos*; *hrñi*; *mo*; *myag*; *hñwa*; *lad*, *hñad*.

The passage:

. . . mag-ñnor-su-ge-stor-ta-hthogs ||  
 phye-ñgo-hthun-re-ñnam-hdzam-htar  
 ñrah-htoñ-rmag-dze-hdrag-htrog-htsa ||  
 rñe-ñne-hrmag-dze-hman-byi-hldoñ  
 [hldoñ]-hyu-sad-ge-hphom-te-hdrañ  
 [hdrañ]-ge-ñsad-na-ñrañ-rgyan-hñod  
 [hñod]-te-rmag-dze-rman-ra-gyim  
 spye-htor-hñwa-dze-myag-myi-tor  
 [tor]-htas-prom-dze-myage-me-htañ  
 rgyed-rmag-rñe-ge-stor-ta-hthogni  
 ñrah-ññiñ-ñe-ge-stor-ta-hthog-ni, 145-9

has suffered, as will be seen, from losses of repeated words, to the

<sup>1</sup> On *khy*- and *tsh*- see p. 269.

detriment of the metre.<sup>1</sup> The following discussion, however, does not greatly depend upon recognition of that circumstance. We may venture upon a rendering as follows:

'in . . . battle who stay flight ?

If there is a little (*hthuñ*) open space, the tame-hearted make off (*htar*):

Against a post-relinquishing army the enemy are bold (Tib. *hdrag*).

In an army of bad or good many weak ones (or big and little, *hmañ-byi*) flee;

Fleeing, with their country lost, they are dragged defeated;

Those dragged being annihilated, those of great self (*hrañ-rgyañ*) are laid low (*hsod*);

For an army laid low the tomb enclosure is home.

. . . . .

As to (*ni*) the evil army of disunion staying flight:

As to (*ni*) the evil-hearted enemy (*hrañ*) staying flight:

The equation of *rmag* to Tib. *dmag*, 'army', is not open to objection; and the same is appropriate in regard to the only other instance of *rmag*:

*puñ-te-gsar-ñar-hpañ-rmag-hcihi* ||, 204-5

'in mass with new strength a hero army goes'

where *puñ* = Tib. *phuñ*, 'heap', 'bundle', *hphuñs*, 'concourse', *dpuñ*, 'host', 'army'; *gsar* = Tib. *gsar*, 'new'; *ñar* = Tib. *ñar*, 'strength', 'vigour' (*infra*, p. 361); *hpañ* = Tib. *dpañ*, 'hero'; *hcihi* (cf. l. 350, *gcichi*, l. 346; *hci*, ll. 300, 345; *chi/hchi*, ll. 168, 183, 345, 353, 385) = Tib. *mchi*, 'go', 'come': most of which words occur elsewhere also in the Nam text.

A practical equivalence of *rmag* to *mag* (*-hñor*) no longer calls for defence: the *d/r* in *dmag/rmag* is a Prefix, and we have suggested that strictly it implies an intervening verbal idea, so that, if *mag* originally meant 'array', *dmag/rmag* may have meant 'arrayed'. That *mag-hño(r)* means 'battle' is suggested by Tib. *g-yul-ño*, 'battle' (*g-yul*, 'fight', + *ños*, 'side', or *ño*, 'face'): as a fact, the equivalence, and at the same time the *r*-Locative in *-hñor* = *-hño-dze*, is established by:

*sku-mag-hño-dze-me-na-hldis*

*hdañ-mag-hño-dze-me-na-hsams*, 58

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the cases of repeated words supplied underline, as noted *supra*, pp. 117, 229.



'the body in battle leaps in fire;

'the arrow (Tib. *mdaḥ*, cf. p. 343: on *hldaḥ* see p. 317) in battle[-time] is made ready (*hsams*) in fire'

*twañ-mag-ḥno*[-r[e]] . . . *ḥkyañ-mag-ḥno*[-r[e]], 48-9

'in a battle of *twañ* . . . in a battle of *ḥkyañ*'

*ḥdih-mag-ḥno*[-r[e]]-*ma-ḥpu-mu-re*, 184

'in this battle mother and children being cold (afraid?)'

Even outside the compound *mag-ḥno* the form *mag* is seen in:

*ḥsad-mag-ḥdeḥi-dze-ḥśi-kyeg-mye*, 102

'in those whose army<sup>1</sup> is defeated the fire (courage) is winter-clogged (*ḥśi-kyeg*, p. 226)'

where the *ḥsad*, *sad*, of the passage ll. 145-9 recurs.

Of the other expressions in the passage many (*phye*, *ḥgo*, *ḥnam* = Tib. *ñams*, 'mind', &c., *ḥrah-ḥtoñ*, *ḥtrog*, *rñe*, *ḥne*, *ḥmañ*, *byi*, *ḥldoñ*, *ḥsad*, *rgyañ*, *rmañ*, *gyim*, *myag*, *stor*, *ḥrah* (= Tib. *dgra*), *sñiñ*, have already been discussed: others, *ḥthuñ* = Tib. *thuñ*, 'small'; *ḥdrag* = Tib. *drag*, 'fierce', 'confident', &c.; *ḥphom* (l. 347 *ḥpom*) = Tib. *ḥpham/pham*, 'be defeated'; *ḥdrañ* (ll. 254-5 *ḥdrañ-re*, 'at every pull') = Tib. *ḥdren*, *drañs*, *drañ*, *trañ*, *droñs*, *droñ* (*drañ-dgu*, 'every pull', in one of the Tibetan manuscripts), 'pull', 'drag', 'draw', 'lead', &c., may here be lightly passed over. The phrase *stor-ta-ḥthog(s)*, ll. 145, 149, contains a form *ḥthog* (l. 235 *ḥtog*) = Tib. *thogs*, 'hold up', 'obstruct', connected, no doubt, with *ḥdogs*, *btags*, *gdags*, *thogs*, 'bind', 'attach'; cf. p. 156. *Ḥyu-sad* has been understood as = Tib. *yul-brlag*, 'country ruined', of an old text: on *ḥyu* = *yul* see p. 333. *Ḥśod*, which cannot be connected with Tib. *śad/gśad/gśod*, 'comb' (a horse), 'brush', 'stroke', or with *bśad/śod/bśod*, 'expound', 'state', may be = *śod*, 'low', 'bottom', concerning which see p. 6: in l. 198 *śodtsa* is used of 'corpses' (*ḥro-ta*), in l. 281 (p. 231) of 'forests' (*ḥbo-ḥram*). The form *śodtsa*, *ḥśodtsa*, is peculiar both in itself and by reason of the fact that in both passages it functions as a monosyllable. Possibly it was intended as equivalent to *ḥśods*, an *s*-Preterite of *ḥśod*, which, however, would be hard to parallel, there being no other recognized *s*-Preterites from Verbs with final *d*.<sup>2</sup> *Myage* (= *myag-ge-me-ḥtañ*) can mean, here and in l. 39,

<sup>1</sup> Or 'army fortune (*ḥde*)' or 'army heat (*ḥde*)', with a paronomasia.

<sup>2</sup> Such Preterites in *-ds* were, however, posited by the late Dr. Wolfenden (*Outlines of Tibeto-Burman Linguistic Morphology*, p. 58(1), and *JRAS*, 1937, p. 648) as the source of the *-s* in *d*-verbs; and an actual instance may be seen in the word *skyeds*, 'interest' (?), occurring in a document (Tib. *Literary Texts*, &c., ii, p. 190): cf. *ḥbrad-sta*, p. 359.

'the power (*htañ* = Tib. *thañ*, as elsewhere) of fire (perhaps here implying 'courage') is spoiled (Tib. *myag*)'.

In *tor-htas-prom* (l. 148) *htas* cannot well be = Tib. *hdas*, 'passed', which in l. 85 is *hldas*: also *tor* cannot here be the frequent *tor/htor*, 'great'. The phrase must be the same as in ll. 121-2, where we are told that 'if friendship is not, *htor-htas-hproms*': there, if we translate 'the tuft (Tib. *thor*, e.g. of hair) has become tangled', understanding *htas* as = Tib. *hthas*, 'not straightforward', 'hard', 'solid', *s* (originally Aoristic) form of *tha*, 'hard', 'compact',<sup>1</sup> 'bad', we obtain a satisfactory sense and at the same time a relation to the proverb *sdud-ka-ni-bal-nas-bchad* (also *glad-kyi-phud-nams*), 'the tie from the hair was burst', of one of the Tibetan manuscripts (cf. *thor-te*, 'the top point of the hair', &c., *gtsug-thor*, 'tor', *thor-gtsug*, 'turban', 'head-tuft', 'top-knot').<sup>2</sup> Then in the preceding verse we shall have:

*spye-htor-hdwa-dze-myag-myi-tor*

'when the summer (*spye*, as in ll. 159, 190) -sheaf goes wrong (*hdwa*), the man-sheaf (coherence of the troops) gives way (*myag*, 'corrupts').

The word *hdwa*, known to the Tibetan dictionaries only in *dwa-ba*, name of 'a plant yielding an acrid drug', occurs in the Tibetan manuscript in the phrase *dwa-bśes-myed*, 'a poor wretch (?) without friends' (cf. Chinese *to* < *d'uā*, 'ruin', Karlgren, nos. 1008-9), which may indicate the general sense in the Nam passage.

In:

*htor-htas-prom-hrom-nehu-hso-bos*, 257

'in the vacancy (*hrom* = Tib. *rum*) of the tuft which has become tangled a new *hso-bos*'

we have evidently in *hso-bos* a synonym for *thor*; the expression will mean 'top (*hso* = Tib. *gtso*, cf. *hse* = *gtse*)-swell' (*hbo*, *hbos*, *bos*, see p. 231). Tibetan *gtso* has also the anticipated forms *gco/co* (Nam *hco*, l. 55); and this appears in *co-to*, 'a tuft of hair on the head'.

It is unfortunate that in Tib. *thor*, 'anything gathered into a point', of which, as we see, the predominant sense is 'top-knot',

<sup>1</sup> In the Tibetan manuscripts we find *zin-ta* (= *tha*)-*bañi-rna* (for *rña*), 'fields with thick mowing'.

<sup>2</sup> Possibly the Nam people wore an elaborate top-knot, like the 'horn' of the modern Black (sc. Independent) Lo-los, who so much resemble them (figured in Fergusson, *op. cit.*, p. 301, and D'Ollone, *In Forbidden China*, p. 90). See next page.



'tuft', exists side by side with a *hthor*, 'scatter', 'sprinkle', 'disperse', belonging, no doubt, to the group *stor*, *gtor*, *hdor*, and perhaps the basis of *thor-bu*, 'single', 'separate', *thor-bu* and *°pa*, 'pimples', &c. Nevertheless the first *thor* must be recognized in Tib. *hthor-mtho*, 'lofty peak', and consequently in the Nam:

sid-g-ri-htor-dze, 34 } 'on the summit of a high mountain'.  
hsid-hrihi-hthor-dze, 62 }

But what is the signification of the quasi-proverbial phrase *mo-ma-thor(hthor)*, ll. 63, 71, 144, always corresponding to a *hldi-ma-hrtah(rtah)*, 'the horse does not leap (gallop)', in the following verse? The expression, which is linked by the word *thor* to the above *tor/hthor-hlas-prom/hproms*, is further associated therewith by the application to friendship in:

hño-stor-hsañs-dze-mo-ma-hthor, 143-4  
'when friends are gone (Tib. *soñ*, 'go') lost, the *mo* does or do not bunch'.

If the two phrases are equivalent, *mo* should mean 'hair': and this is in itself likely, because Hsi-hsia has *ma* (= Chinese *mau*, *mao*, Laufer, 92; Karlgren, 602), which exists not only in the Nepal dialects cited by Laufer, and apparently elsewhere also in Tibeto-Burman, but actually in Hsi-fan, Mānyak *mūi*. This also accords with:

hyañ-hso-hrñi-dze-mo-ma-hthor, 63  
'if the net or noose (Tib. *rñi/sñi*) is too large (Tib. *yañs*?), the hair does not bunch';

for the *rñi*, well-known in the sense of a trapper's net, will be the *sdud-ka*, 'tie', of the above Tibetan sentence, and the *dar-sna* and *°sni*, 'silk tie' of *Tibetan Literary Texts*, &c., ii, pp. 398, 440-1, and of *thor-cog-dar-sna*, 'silk string of the spiral hair-plait' (*thor-cog* and *°tshugs*, Ś. C. Das's *Dictionary*). But in l. 71 (p. 304) the meaning 'sheep' ('ewe'?) or 'goat', attested in Hsi-hsia (Laufer, no. 173) is clearly more apposite, especially in view of the expression *hñañ-hya-htsag*, ll. 44-5 (see p. 343).

It seems probable that one same Predicate *thor* should be recognized in:

rñe-lad-thor-dze-ca-yañ-htor, 235-6  
gse-hlad-htor-dze-hcah-hyañ-hbro-na ||, 240.  
gse-hlad-thor-dze-hcah-yañ-thor, 242.

In spite of the word *hbro*, 'flee', apparently alternative in l. 240 to



*ḥtor/thor*, and the possibility of applying the idea of 'scattering' to *rñe(gse)-lad*, 'requit of wrong (harm)', it does not seem reasonable to attribute to the Verb a meaning so opposed to the preceding, however justified in Tibetan. The meaning may be that the 'requit of evil (*rñe/gse-lad*)' is exacted 'in a lump' and that the *ca/hcah/hchaḥ* are taken in along with the other offenders.

The word *lad/hlad*, will be a *d*-form corresponding to Tib. *lan*, 'turn', 'return', 'requit', *lad-mo*, 'imitation', 'mimic', *slad* (*slan*), 'after', 'back', *slar*, 'back'.

31. *khrom*, *ḥkrom*, *ḥkhram*, *hgrom*, *hgroms*; *ḥcer*; *ḥpyi*; *ḥprah*; *cig-dze*; *ḥldam*.

*Khrom* is antithetic to *ḥcer* in:

mor-tsaḥ-khrom-re || ḥyañ-tsa-ḥcer ||, 388  
'when the evil *khrom*, the good *ḥcer*'

and the same antithesis takes the form of parallel in:

ru-ge-ḥkrom-dze-mo-ma-thor  
ḥcha-ge-ḥcer-dze-ḥldi-ma-rtaḥ ||, 70-1.

In Tibetan the Verb *bcer/gcer*, denotes a fixed stare or glare, and the Adverb *cer-re/ce-re* means 'with fixed stare'. In one of the Tibetan manuscripts it has been found applied to the stare of affright; but it might equally be used of a terrifying glare. In l. 202 of the Nam text *phyi-rjes-ne-ḥcer* seems to mean 'the good man is (in certain circumstances) afraid of a memorial'.

In the first passage quoted the good evidently stare with alarm at the evil, who *khrom*: in the second the horse refuses to leap at a ravenous animal (*ḥcha*) which glares.

The word *khrom* in the first passage must signify some kind of success; and, if we understand a 'spreading', the *ru-ge-ḥkrom* of the second passage can be adjusted as meaning 'with widespread horns (sheep do not flock together?)'. But a somewhat different notion is suggested by the phrase *ḥgye-ḥkrom-ḥkrom*, 'light flickers', discussed *supra*, p. 235-6, and there connected with the Tibetan *hgrem*, &c., 'spread', 'sprinkle', 'display', 'scatter'.

In view of certain traces of word-play in the Nam text it is not at all unlikely that in the verse:

'when the evil *khrom* ('spread' or 'glitter'), the good stare in fright'

both senses were envisaged.

The notion of 'prospering', 'flourishing', 'shining', can be seen also in:

hkhram<sup>1</sup>-re-hrdañ-yañ-hrkom-hpyi-hprah ||, 332-3

'though when prosperous (active, shining) wrathful (Tib. *sdañ*), when slain the *hpyi*<sup>2</sup> (or "(creatures) after death") are of no account (*hprah*, as elsewhere = Tib. *phra*, "small", or possibly Tib. *hphra*, "kick", "be kicked").'

hkhar-rpag-g-yar-re-hldag-[nag-]hgrom, 135-6

'When Low-town became high, the black-back flourished'

hrta-swa-gkom-re-htor-hbroñ-hgrom, 222-3

'while the horse was occupied with watching, the great yak flourished'

the last passage being followed by:

htor-hbroñ-hgrom-re . . . } 222-3  
htor-hbroñ-hrpag-re . . . }

where there is an explicit antithesis of *hgrom*, 'flourished', to *hrpag*, 'brought low'.

The same meaning must be recognized in:

hyañ-tsa-hjo-dze-hyañ-ge-hgroms

tor-pu-hgru-ge-hstor-moñ-hdzoñ-re-htsa-hdzo-hkrom, 63-4

'when the good are chiefs, the good flourish:

'... the Moñ-castle being lost, the men were scattered'

(the events indicated by the expressions 'the horse occupied in watching', 'Low-town become high', and 'Moñ-castle lost', being all one occurrence).

In:

hldyañ-hyu-hjo-cig-dze-htor-ge-hkroms, 387

hldyañ-hjo-hkrom-ni, 390

the sense of *hkroms*/*hkrom* is not clear.

The expression *cig-dze*, interpreted (p. 234) as *cig*, 'ruined' (= Tib. *hjiq/bzig/sig*) and recurring as *cig/gcig* in ll. 194, 208, 356, 377)+*dze*, may in l. 387 be the unanalysable term repeated in:

*cig-dze-htor*[-re]-hldam-re-hldan, 186-9, 192,

where some official title or designation might be apposite. If the case were so, we could think only of Turkī *cigši*, 'prefect', which appears in Chinese as *ts'e-che* (= *še*), in Central-Asian Tibetan Documents (ii, p. 49) as *tshi-si*, and, probably, in one of 'the

<sup>1</sup> Tib. *khram* is 'cunning', 'artful', 'lively', 'brisk', 'quick', as boys, kids, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Perhaps Tib. *dbyi*, *g-yi*, 'lynx'.

Tibetan manuscripts' as *si-si-druñ-po*, 'si-si official'. Possibly the line refers, as would be apposite in the context, to reports, &c., of such officials; but the phrase *hldam* (cf. Tib. *ldam-ldem*, 'dubious', &c. ?)-*re-hldan* is obscure.

In ll. 150, *hkyer-re-cig-dze*, 376, *rab-hgo-cig-dze*, the meaning 'ruined', 'overthrown', is clear.

32. *hgru*, *hgru-hldan-hmah/ma*; *hgru-ma*; *h̄tor(tor)-hpu* (*hpuhu*, *hphu*, *hbu*)-*hgru*.

Some of the most puzzling expressions in the text occur together in the lines:

*h̄sid-hrihi-h̄thor-dze-hgru-hldan-hmah*  
*h̄tor-hphu-hgru-dze-gla-h̄tso-h̄tsah*, 62

of which the first recurs (*h̄sid-g-ri-h̄tor-dze* . . .) in ll. 34-5, and the second in ll. 29-30 (*hpu*, *h̄dzo*). Having acquiesced (p. 303) in the rendering of *h̄sid-hrihi-h̄thor-dze* by 'on the top of a high hill', we come next to *hgru-hldan-hmah* (*ma*). This expression, repeated in:

*hgru-hldan-hmah-dze-h̄tsa-gsom-h̄khog*, 21  
*hgru-hldan-hmah-ge-h̄s̄es-h̄beg-h̄rah* ||, 22-3  
*hgru-hldan-ma-dze-h̄rgu-h̄to-h̄run* ||, 30

seems to denote some more than casual object. The element *hgru*, which, if = Tib. *gru*, should mean either (a) 'boat' or (b) 'angle', 'corner', 'edge' (*gru-b̄zi*, 'square', *gru-mo*, 'elbow', *gru-ma*, 'angle', 'corner', 'edge', *yul-gru*, 'locality' (country-corner)), may have the meaning (b) in:

*h̄ldu-h̄ro-hgru* ||, 19, 'the assembly-place (after the overthrow of the *b̄zer*, which was a building) a corner'  
*h̄ri-hgru-gras-re*, 300, 'the mountain corners (recesses ?) being alined'.

But a different sense is apparent in:

*hgru-h̄sram-h̄tam-ge-h̄s̄es-beg-h̄staḥ* ||, 24  
 'the *hgru* firmly (*h̄sram*) knit together are (were) *H̄s̄es-beg*'s station'

which, however, is closely connected with *hgru-hldan-hmah* by the statement (ll. 22-3):

*hgru-hldan-hmah-ge-h̄s̄es-h̄beg-h̄rah* ||  
 'H̄gru-h̄ldan-hmah was (were) *H̄s̄es-h̄beg*'s place'.

Here we might understand *hgru*, 'corner', in the sense of 'corner (sc. projecting or recess in) rocks'; and we have already (p. 223) seen that *H̄s̄es-h̄beg* was 'eye' and 'path' to the 'blind rocks'



(*klu-rto*). Inasmuch as *hldañ* is known as (a) 'stick', (b) 'rise', (c) 'side', and *hmañ* should be either (a) 'low' or (b) 'not' or (c) a Suffix, the expression *hgru-hldañ-hmañ* might mean (a) 'promontories rise (rising) low', (b) 'side promontories', (c) 'promontories without trees', (d) 'promontories with low trees', (e) 'promontory risings'. None of these, however, seems to furnish a suitable abode for *Hses-hbeg*; and, moreover, the statement in l. 21 that in *hgru-hldañ-hmañ* the three grasses were spoiled (*rtsa-gsom-hkhog*) seems to point to a country rather than to such features. If we understand *hgru-hldañ-hmañ* as a proper name, we not only account for its recurrence, but recognize in its second syllable a characteristic of the names of places, imaginary or real, mentioned in the kindred literature. The Tibetan manuscripts mention:

Rtsi-dañ, one of the 13 (mythological) countries,

Hbum-dañ, one of the 13 (mythological) towns,

Guñ-dañ, the (mythological) country of Guñ-tshun,

Rji-luñ-dañ-ba, the (mythological) country of the Rji (= *rdzi*, 'storm-wind'?) Phyar-phyur,

Pyi-gtañ-sum, a Hbrog country,

Pyi-ldañ, a certain locality,

Dbye (Bye)-ldañ-sum, a Hbrog country = Dbye-mo.

It seems likely that in all these names we have one and the same syllable *dañ*, *ldañ*, conventionally employed in the naming of imaginary places and preceded by a syllable which in some cases (*Guñ* and *Rji*) was used as name of the inhabitants, but in other cases (*Rtsi*, 'sap'?, *Pyi*, 'outer', *Dbye*, 'extent'?) denoted something else. Accordingly *Hgru-hldañ-hmañ* might be 'country of rocks or rock-recesses', if it should not rather be 'country of the Hgru'.

The last-mentioned possibility, which might involve the supposition that the text regards the Hgru people as the people of the *hgru*, 'rocks' or 'mountain recesses', would not be foreign to the manner of this literature and would be in harmony with the bulk of the old Tibetan personal nomenclature, which prefixes names of countries, places, tribes, &c., as surnames to the individual designations of persons. We should, however, be inclined to pass it over, as an unnecessary complication, but for two circumstances. The first of the two is the fact that a Hgru people is mentioned, along with the *Dbra*, *Ldoñ*, and *Lga*, as one of 'four tribes' (Š. C. Das's *Dictionary*). We may suspect that they figure in early Bon-po literature. Of the four the least legendary are the

Ldon, of whom some mention reaches historical times; the Lga attain a certain approximation to reality from the mention of a 'Lgar-ma ancestor the Lga tribe', which suggests that they may be the famous Mgar/Hgar. Here, however, the most significant are the *Dbra*, whose name is evidently connected with the word *hbra* discussed *supra* (pp. 215-6); for in ll. 30-2 a place *Hbra* or *Hbra-hldaḥ* (p. 319) is mentioned immediately after *Hgru-hldaḥ-ma*, as not shaken by the cataclysm which ruined the latter. This greatly enhances the probability that *Hgru-hldaḥ-ma* is a place-name. The *Hgru* might be connected with *Gru*, 'a district of Tibet lying to the east and north of Dbus' (central Tibet), and may have given a name to *Gru-gu*, a place near to Kad-roṅ, in Amdo (*Geografia Tibeta*, p. 54), and to *Gru-gu Rgya-ra*, 'a village in Khams' (Ś. C. Das's *Dictionary*). Upon this supposition the *Hgru* people would be the people of the *Hgru* (perhaps 'rock') country, and *Hgru-hldaḥ-hmaḥ* would be their (fictitious) town.

The second circumstance is the repeated mention of the *ḥtor-ḥpu(hbu, ḥphu)-ḥgru*, which might mean the 'great *Hgru* men', since *ḥtor-ḥpu(hbu, ḥphu)* has been found in the phrase *ḥtor-ḥpu-ḥbos*, meaning 'the great big man or master'. This also we should be glad to avoid; and perhaps the rendering 'great upland (*ḥbu* = Tib. *phu*, as in *ḥbu-rwye-ḥce*, 'wide uplands', ll. 15, 50) rocks or rock-recesses' may better fit the occurrences:

*ḥtor-ḥpu-ḥgru-dze*, 29 'in (not among) the *ḥtor-ḥpu-ḥgru*'  
*ḥtor-ḥbu-ḥgru-dze*, 33 'on (not among) the *ḥtor-ḥpu-ḥgru*'  
*ḥtor-ḥphu-ḥgru-dze*, 62 'on (not among) the *ḥtor-ḥpu-ḥgru*'  
*tor-ḥpu-ḥgru-ge-ḥstor-moṅ-ḥdzoṅ-re-ḥtsa-ḥdzo-ḥkrom*, 64  
 'the *tor-ḥpu-ḥgru* having lost the Moṅ-castle . . .'

It is perhaps possible to acquiesce in this view.

There is, however, certainly another *ḥgru*, namely the Verb seen in the phrase *ḥrim-ge-ḥgrus*, ll. 293, 297, applied to some beings who perhaps 'exerted themselves all round' (*ḥrim*) the 'big man' (*ḥpuhu-ḥbos*) or 'on the watch mountain' (*ḥscāḥ-ḥyer-ḥri*). *Ḥgrus* should be Preterite of Tib. *ḥgru*, 'take pains' (*ḥgrus*, 'zeal', 'diligence'). But it may be suspected that the whole phrase *ḥrim-ḥgrus* is an old, or dialectical, form of Tib. *rim-ḥgro*, 'ceremony', 'service', 'attendance upon', 'homage', with an *o/u* alternation to be discussed below (p. 369), and that Tib. *gros*, 'advice', 'counsel', 'heed' (*gros-pa*, *gros-mi*, 'counsellor', 'adviser'), is the same word.

At any rate *ḥgru-ma*, which is mentioned in the same context



as *h̥tor-h̥pu-h̥gru*, must mean 'council'. The first mention of *h̥gru-ma*:

*g-rah-g-yo-rbo-ge-h̥gru-ma-hti* ||, 27

'the earthquake swelling up, the *h̥gru-ma* stopped' cannot mean 'the rocks do not (*ma*) stand still', because a few lines later we read:

*h̥gru-h̥ma-h̥kom-re-h̥rwad-h̥moñ-h̥ldaḥ*, 32-3

'*h̥gru-ma* being made, harsh noise (*h̥rwad*, see p. 257) was confused (?)'

and in l. 77:

*h̥lde-ge-h̥gru-ma-rmañ*,

'the powers (authorities, nobles) dreamed, or conceived, of a *h̥gru-ma*'

and a few lines later:

*h̥ño-stor-prom-re-h̥gru-ma-stor* ||

*stor-hto-rta-yañ-stor-to-h̥run* | 3 |, 79-80

'the friends having taken flight, the *h̥gru-ma* fled; [that] fled, the horse also had to flee'.

The *h̥gru-ma* was, accordingly, a sort of assembly, on the lines of the regular Tibetan *hdun-ma* and the gatherings mentioned as occurring among the Ch'iang tribes and similarly among rude peoples everywhere. Whether the term was current or was invented by the text with reference to *H̥gru-h̥ldañ-h̥maḥ* or the Verb *h̥gru* may be left doubtful. Some playings with words have been noted *supra* (pp. 269, 285, 304); and they seem to have been frequent in the old Bon-po writings, which in their cosmologies, historical statements, &c., freely mixed realities with fantasies.

The occurrence of different meanings of *h̥gru* in adjacent contexts does not attain the level of such a collocation as *śī-śī-śī-tcūmñi-śīhi-śī* in a Chinese text written in Tibetan character: there the three first *śī*'s are, as is shown by the corresponding Chinese writing, all different words, differing also from *śīhi*. But in the Nam text assonances of like nature, if less concentrated, are to be reckoned with.

33. *yañ*, *hyañ*, *g-yañ*, *gyañ*, *h̥gyañ*, *h̥gyaṅs*, *rgyañ*.

That this should be a troublesome group of words was to be anticipated in view of the situation in Tibetan, where we find:

A: *yañ* = (1) 'though', 'even', 'also', 'again' (*Sandhi* variant of *kyañ*, *gyañ*), whence, in compounds, also



'further' or 'higher', e.g. *yañ-thog*, 'highest story', *yañ-dag*, 'very real', *yañ-ma*, 'grandmother', *yañ-slob*, 'pupil's pupil'.

- (2) 'light', e.g. in *yañ-lci*, 'light and heavy'.
- (3) in the Tibetan manuscripts, *yañ-ba*, 'conduit' or 'watercourse'.
- (4) in the Tibetan manuscripts 'evil' = *rgyañ*, antithetic of *byin-che*, 'blessing', 'bliss'.

B: *yañs*, 'wide', 'extensive'.

C: *g-yañ* = (1) 'luck', 'prosperity'.

- (2) 'sheep' and 'goat', perhaps originally only a stuffed one, as an auspicious object.
- (3) 'gulf', 'abyss'.

D: *gyañ* (1) for *kyañ*, 'although', &c. (in the Tibetan manuscripts).

- (2) 'clay stamped into moulds' for building, &c.

E: *hgyañ*, *hgyañs*, 'be delayed', 'tarry'.

F: *rgyañ* = (1) 'distance'.

- (2) 'stretched'.
- (3) 'wall'.
- (4) in the Tibetan manuscripts—'evil'.
- (5) in the Tibetan manuscripts = *rkyañ*, 'the wild ass'.

G: *rgyañs(-le)* = 'in haste'.

*bgyañs*, *brgyañs*, 'stretched', = *rkyañ*, *brkyañs*, *rgyoñ*, *rkyoñ*, 'stretch'.

It is fairly obvious that the forms with *r-*, except *rkyañ*, 'the wild ass' and *rgyañ*, 'evil', contain the general idea of stretching: whether in *bgyañs*, 'stretched', the *r-* has, or has not, been lost may be an open question. The *rgyañ*, 'evil', of the Tibetan manuscripts, is perhaps a perversion of *g-yañ*, 'luck', which is the more likely inasmuch as *yañ* occurs with the same sense.

Further, it is apparent that the *r-* forms are derivatives by means of the *r/s* Prefix, with an originally Active, Transitive, Causative, or Denominative function, from the Root seen in *hgyañ*, *hgyañs*, wherein, again, the idea of a 'stretch' is already present. But this *hgyañ*, also, is a derivative, as we can see, from *yañs*, 'wide', 'extensive'; and the *g* appears as a Prefix (the

Tibetan did not *often* confuse *gy* and *g-y* in *g-yañ*, 'gulf', 'abyss', in which possibly the original conception was that of 'yawning'. The *yañ*, 'conduit', which the Tibetan manuscripts use as equivalent to the usual *gur*, is also properly 'the long', as we can see from the reference to 'quaffing water of the long-mouthed (*kha-yañs*)', sc. of rivers and watercourses. We need not consider the other words, some of which seem to be connected with the *ya* of *ya/ma* 'upper/lower'.

We see that the *r*-Prefix at the time when it had a living function could be applied to forms from *y*-roots already equipped with the *g*-Prefix wherein that Prefix was no longer recognized as such. In fact the *s/r*-Prefix is never applied to initial *y* without the intervention of the *g*; so that Tibet has no words with initial *sy* or *ry*. We cannot connect this with the fact that in Amdo *rgy*- is commonly pronounced *ry*, this phenomenon being of too limited a range in space, and having no appearance of antiquity.

In the Nam text we can distinguish:

(a) *yañ* = 'also', 'even', 'though', ll. 79, 80, 92 (2), 119, 123, 127, 160, 161, 162 (2), 173, 180, 236, 242, 306, 332, 345: this is always in the *caesura* position, or in an equivalent position, except in ll. 236, 345 (in the latter corresponding to *hkyañ*, l. 344), where it is attached to a single word.

*hyañ* = 'also', 'even', 'although', ll. 6, 24, 241, 249 (?), 255, 256, 300, 304; this also is in the *caesura* position, except in ll. 6, 24, 241, 249, exceptions similar to those in the case of *yañ*.

*gyañ* = 'although', l. 263, in the *caesura* position.

*kyañ* = 'also', ll. 18, 98, 344, 372: attached to a single word.

(b) *hyañ* = 'good' or 'upper', which latter is perhaps the original sense (*√ya*), ll. 5, 10, 41, 66, 226, 287, 290, 316, 355, 383, 388: this, as Substantive or Adjective, is usually first in the verse (or clause) and the Subject of its sentence: only in l. 5 is it Predicate; often it is antithetic to *mor*. In ll. 63-4 *hyañ-so* (*hso*) is of uncertain meaning.

*g-yañ-ra*, l. 31, is likely to be identical ('good' or 'high' place) with the *hyañ-hrañ* of ll. 66, 226.

(c) *yañ*, 'conduit', 'watercourse', l. 355 (Chinese *yang*?).

(d) *hyañ*, 'conduit'?, ll. 178, 179, 367, 391 (*hldyañ-hyañ-hyo*).

(e) *hgyañ*, a Verb, perhaps always signifying 'tarry', ll. 7, 77, 200, 217, 292 (*sto*), 296, 392: always concluding its sentence: in l. 114 *hkyañ* is written in error.

*hgyaṅs*, Preterite of the same Verb, l. 241 (cf. also *hgyaṅ-sto*, l. 292, = *hgyaṅs-to*).

*gyaṅ-gyaṅ*, l. 92, may be the same Verb.

*hgyaṅ*, l. 153, is an error for *hgyan*, l. 158.

(f) *gyaṅ-g-ri*, l. 313, is not clear.

(g) *rgyaṅ*, 'extent', 'extensive', ll. 16, 52 (2), 55, 57, 147, 151, 152, 155: *hkyāṅ-rgyaṅ*, ll. 42, 81, 268.

*rgyaṅ*, perhaps 'far', 'completely', l. 89.

*rgyaṅ*, possibly '(long) wall', l. 300.

(h) *kyāṅ*, ? sense, l. 192.

(i) *hkyāṅ*, error for *hgyaṅ*, l. 114.

(j) *hkyāṅ-rgyaṅ*, 'stove-bed' (?), ll. 42, 81, 268.

(k) *hkyāṅ*, 'serf', ll. 49, 141, 143, 274, 287, 291, 292 (2), 293.

The predominance of the form *yaṅ*, 'also', &c., in comparison with the synonymous *hyaṅ*, and its rarity in other senses, suggests that the *h*, which is also practically never joined to the other enclitics, *ge*, *dze*, *na*, *ni*, carried a slight increase of emphasis, and was not merely graphic.

#### 34. *Ra*, *rah*, *hrah*, *hrah*, *g-rah*, *hgrah*.

For the most part there is no difficulty in equating these forms to Tib. *ra*, 'limited or enclosed space or sphere' or, according to its primary sense, 'enclosure', 'fence', 'circle': it is often used to form compounds, e.g. *khriṃs-ra*, 'yard before a court of justice', *lcaṅ-ra*, 'willow grove', *lug-ra*, 'sheepfold', *blon-ra*, 'prison'. It is only necessary to add the personal sense in *sku-ra*, 'body enclosure', 'oneself', *sgo-ra*, 'door-enclosure', 'janitors', of the Tibetan manuscripts.

In the Nam text we may distinguish:

1. *-r* or *-ra* as a Locative Suffix with Substantives (Tib. *-r*, *-ra*, *-ru*), scanned either as a syllable or as unsyllabic, even sometimes after *-g* or *-ñ*: see pp. 174, 178, where reference is made to the very numerous resulting confusions. The same use occurs after verb-forms in phrases, *hgaḥ-hldoṅra*<sup>1</sup>-*hñah*, l. 302, 'where are no fugitive *hgaḥ*', *hrgyo-hśeg-gśegra*, ll. 330, 331 (*hrbyo*° *gśer*), 'where *hrgyo* comes'.

The form *hrah*, ll. 216, 237, 243, 246, 248, always a dissyllable, is the Locative of *ra* itself.

2. *rah*, *hrah*, *g-rah*, usually mean 'place', e.g. in *g-rah-hyos*,

<sup>1</sup> Here perhaps intended for *re*: see p. 239.



'earthquake', ll. 8, 26, 27, 34, *rgyed* (*hrgyed*)-*hrah* (*hrrar*), 'place of disunion', ll. 216, 243, 341, &c. This meaning fits even *g-rah-gsog-hner*, ll. 7, 20: *hrah-hrtah*, ll. 77, 114, seems to mean 'the horse (-chief) of the place'. As terminal member of a compound, this *ra/rah/hra/hrah* is found, further, with *skah*-, 'saddle', l. 45, *hño*-, 'friend' (ll. 264, 279, &c.), *hce*-, 'great' (ll. 49, 50, 56), *stañ-hro*-, 'high country' (l. 347), *htham*-, 'union' (l. 227), *hphah-ma*-, 'father and mother' (ll. 73-4), *brah*-, 'increase', &c. (l. 228), *rmañ*-, 'tomb' (l. 148), *htsah*-, 'harvest' (l. 277), *hwah*-, 'action' or 'government' (l. 353), *hyañ/g-yañ*-, 'good' or 'upper' (ll. 31, 66, 226), *hrañ*-, 'own' (ll. 21, 166, 167), *gsah*-, 'land' (l. 277), *gsañ*-, 'enemy' (ll. 263, 273, &c.). The same appears as first member of the compounds *hrah-hton* (ll. 146, 273, 358), *hrah-we* (*wehi*, ll. 114, 139), 'give, or surrender, place'. The personal sense may be seen in *meñi-hrah*, ll. 78, 186, 369, *meñi-speñi-hrah*, l. 370, *rgo-hrah*, l. 315, *skuñu-ra* (?), l. 7.

3. *hrah/g-rah* seems equivalent to Tib. *dgra*, 'enemy', in:

*hrah-sñiñ-ñe-ge-stor-ta-hthog*, 149, 'the evil-hearted enemy stopped flight'

*g-rah-hsah-hkhehe-na*, 314, 'in winning an enemy land or in any enemy's winning the land';

perhaps also in:

*hrah-ldah-ge-hdzah* ||, 43, 'the enemies there are friends' (but see p. 334)

*hrah-hmad-hñe-nag*, 202, 'low, evil-voiced enemies' (?)

*g-rah-nag-hbo-gyañ*, 262-3, 'though enemy-voice swelled';  
cf. *hlab-ta-gboñu-ste* (pp. 158, 231) and *hsañ-nag-rgyes-hkom*, pp. 320, 360.

*hcha-hgrah-nu*, 239, 'strength of hostile ravenous beasts'

*hbroñ-hldah-hdzam-re-hrah-rte-hdubna*, 182 (354 °*hrah-hrtre-hdub*) 'the yak there being tamed, the enemy subsided'.

Here we might think of Tib. *dgra-sde*, 'enemy troop'; but elsewhere in the Nam text Tib. *sde* is represented by *rdehe*, l. 213, *hrde*, l. 301 (p. 270), while we find a *grtehe* in l. 181, apparently meaning 'fix', and in l. 265 *gsañ-ta-hrtehu*, 'stopped' (?) 'hostilities', where the same Verb may perhaps be seen. In l. 82, again, *hcah-rte* might be 'group of ravenous creatures' (p. 259), while in l. 260 we have taken (p. 343) *gdes* as Preterite of a *gde*, *hrde* (= Hsi-hsia *gdeh/hrde*, 'fix', 'make certain' (Nevsky, No. 25, but *gdeh*, No. 24,

'rite', 'form', 'pattern')). A Hsi-hsia *grdiḥ* (No. 34) is given as meaning 'cultivate', 'devote oneself', and a *grdeḥ* (No. 91) as 'shallow', 'vulgar', 'light', 'weak', and a *hrtri* (No. 201) as 'change'.

4. *g-rah* in:

hsu-re || hru-ge-g-rah-ḥdzam-nag ||, 275

'with horns attending, the *g-rah* gave mild (or friendly) voice', since the previous line speaks of 'dogs mildly panting', must be some animal; being horned, it is, no doubt, the goat = Tib. *ra*.

5. *ḡgrah* in *sta-ḥldyañ-ḥtye* (*ḥthye*)-*dze-ḥmo-ge-me-ḡgrah*, ll. 8, 20, 'the clouds (*ḥmog*) or heavens had fire *ḡgrah*', may be = Tib. *sgra* 'sound'. But ignorance of the meaning of *ḥtye* (*ḥthye*) precludes a decision.

The form *ro*, which in Tibetan frequently helps to constitute names of countries and districts, e.g. *Cog-ro*, *Myaṇ-ro*, *Spag-ro*, and which implies a larger area than does *ra*, occurs in 'this place (*ḥro*)', l. 333, and in compounds with *ḡgo*, 'gate' or 'head' (?) (ll. 212-13), *ḥchi*-, 'go' (l. 345), *stañ*-, 'upper' (l. 347), *ḥldu*- (l. 19), *ḥldyañ*- (l. 386), *ḥldyañ-paḥ*- (ll. 271-2), *ldyo*- (ll. 383-4), *ḥldyo*- (l. 384), *ḥldyoñ*- (l. 387), *ḥpaḥ-ḥldañ*- (l. 377), *ḥpro*- (l. 181), *spo*- (l. 381), *mu*- (l. 11).

35. *ḡkah*, *ḡkhaḥ*.

*Kha* in Tibetan is properly 'mouth', 'face', 'surface', but also 'speech', 'word': there is another *kha*, usually employed, with the meanings 'occasion', 'time', 'place', as the second member of a compound, e.g. in *ḡgro-khar*, 'at the time of going',<sup>1</sup> but also, in the same senses, with a preceding Genitive. There are further, *kha*, 'snow', and *kha*, 'bitter'. The first of all these is used as the prior number of a multitude of compounds, some with literal, others with metaphorical, meanings.

The signification 'mouth' is forthwith apparent in:

ḡyañ-ḡrah-ḡkah-ḥldom-ge-ru-glañ-ge-ḥthul-ḥi ||, 66-7

'mouth-tied in the proper, or upper, place, horned oxen are controlled';

cf. Tib. *kha-sdom*, 'to silence, gag'.

*ḡkah*, *ḡkhaḥ*, 'speech', is clear in:

ḡkah-gsañ, 214, gsañ-ḡkah, 204, ḡkhaḥ-gsañ, 329, 'secret speech'.

ḡkah-ḡrañ, 104, 'free to speak', ḡrañ-ḡkah, 117, 'free spoken'.

<sup>1</sup> This is perhaps exemplified in *rñe-ḥldañ-ḡkhar*, l. 197.

hkhah-hldah-hnahghi, 137, 'those entitled to speak should give voice'.

hwa-hkah, 137, 'doing and speaking' or 'talk of action'.

hsas-hkhah-ge, 116, 'talk about the child'.

hkhah-hldan-hnore-tsa-chah || hkanhi |||, 163, 'talk rising foolish is the whole story (*cha*)' (?)

hkah-hgan-hjor, 194, 'all talk is babble' (Tib. *ca-co*, 'babble', *co-re*, *cor-cor*, 'sound of effervescence, *klag-cor*, 'clamour', 'noise', *kha-bcol*, 'prattle', *col-chuñ*, 'childish prattle', *mu-cor*, 'rudeness in speech', 'nonsense').

the-then-hldi-bzir-hkah-hgan-hsur, 207, 'to this wise [Hsihsia *gzir* (Nevsky No. 281) "wise"] folk-control all the talk comes'.

rgyed-ma-hldan-ge-hkah-hcog-byin-ta, 104-5, 'when disunion rises, putting in a word (*kha-cug* (*tsug*) of the Tibetan manuscripts) is a blessing (*byin*, l. 57).

hkah-hgo, 105 = Tib. *kha-bsgo*, 'giving directions' (or possibly 'understanding (Tib. *go*) advice').

hkah-hkhab, 105, 106, 'concealing what is said'.

hkah-hpyah-hldan, 327, 'were repaid (Tib. *ldon*) with rebuke' (Tib. *hphyä*, 'censure', cf. *kha-phog*, 'rebuke', *hphyur-kha*, 'blame', &c.)<sup>1</sup> ?

It is not so certain in:

hkhah-hgro-ge-hkahi, 239, 'home-going is to be talked of', 'is the moment for home-going'?

riam-skar-hkah-re-gdah-hnah-hgam ||, 191, 'when there is talk of, or it is a moment of, threatening stars, (any) available place is home'.

hyañ-hkah-rdza, 287, 290, = hkhah-hrdza-hdze, 296, = hkah-hrdza, 296

where *hyañ* certainly = 'good' or 'superior' and *hrdza* appears from its other occurrence, l. 382, to be a derivative from *hdza*, 'friend' and to mean 'in friendly union'. The *hkah-rdza* are connected with *stsañ*, ll. 288, 290, and *hswah*, l. 296, both of which have been found (pp. 276-8) to denote 'watching' or 'supervision'. The sense might be 'united in counsel'; but Tibetan has an expression *kha-rje*, 'great lord', 'good luck', 'fortune', 'good', 'wealth', which, since the meanings do not follow from *kha* + *rje*, might be a

<sup>1</sup> Or possibly 'paid command-impost (*dpya*)' (metaphorical). In the Tibetan MS. Chronicle (British Museum portion, l. 18) appears the phrase *bkah-so*, 'special command-levy'.



perversion of a *kha-rdza*: the meaning 'great lord' might suit the Nam passages.

There remains the expression:

*hke-hkah*, 152, 153, *hkehe-hkah*, 158, *hkehu-hkah*, 364, *kehu-hkah*, 178 (-*dwañ* 364, *rwañ* 178: cf. Tib. *lab-dwañs*).

The word *hke*, &c., which appears also in the phrase *hke-prom*, l. 176, *kehu-prom*, ll. 176, 360, 361, *hkehu-prom*, ll. 177, 178, 360, 362, 366, *gehu-prom*, l. 362, should not be different from the *hke* in *hke-plañ-hdra*, ll. 195, 356, which has been found to mean 'gain', 'profit', and which, as a Verb, has been seen in ll. 36 (*hkes*, Preterite), 125 (*hkehe*), 251, 314 (*hkehe*), 212 (*hke(hi)*)—the other instances, ll. 15, 41 (*hke(hi)*) are not recalcitrant. The verse:

*hke-hkah-fies-re-ske-hbrus-hgyañni*, 152-3

*hkehe-hkah-fies-re-ske-hbro-hgyan*, 158

should therefore mean:

'if trade (or profit)-talk is faulty, the throat (Tib. *ske*),  
irritated or inflamed (Tib. *hbru*, *brus*, "probe", "irritate"),  
itches (Tib. *g-yan*)',

a sentiment in harmony with the context, which here enlarges upon bad beginnings. It will be seen that the *hbro* of l. 158, meaning 'be sick', confirms the interpretation of *hbrus* in l. 152.

It must be admitted, however, that we have not solved all the difficulties connected with *hke/hkehu*. In the passage (ll. 165 sqq., cf. ll. 358 sqq.) concerning the distribution of the exercise and the fire of speech (*hkoñu-prom*, °*me*) we suddenly come upon the statement:

*hbañ-hldañ-hne-ge-hkehu-me-hdzah ||*, 170

'good potentates eat the fire of *hkehu*'

and somewhat later:

*rñe-hpo-hldo-ge-hkehu-prom-hjo-na*, 177

*hrñe-hpo-hñe-ge-hkoñu-prom-hdzoño-na*, 361-2

'the fiend braves (or evil fiend braves) ate the exercise of *hkehu* or *hkoñu*'.

It is undeniable (see *infra*, p. 368) that a *hke*, *hkehu*, might exist as a form of *kha*, 'mouth', so that *hkehu-prom*, °*me*, would be synonymous with *hkoñu* ('speech')-*prom*, °*me*; and in the above quoted ll. 152-3, 158, we might then translate *hke(hkehe)-hkah*, 'mouth speech', which would yield a good antithesis to *ske*, 'throat'. But this would fail to do justice to the apparently purposive alternative of *hkoñu* and *hkehu* in ll. 165-80 and 358-65;

and we are, further, quite at a loss to interpret the pointed antithesis of *kehu* (*hkehu*)-*hkaḥ* and *ldyañ* (*hldyañ*)-*hkaḥ* in ll. 177-8 and 364-5.

### 36. Words with initial *ld*.

Since it has already (p. 286) been seen that Nam *ld*- may correspond to Tibetan *d*- and *ld*-, the *l* being, at any rate in some of the instances of *ld*, a Prefix often found alternating in Tibetan itself with other Prefixes attached to identical roots, and that it may correspond to Tibetan *l*- and *lh*-, which in Tibetan also sometimes alternate with *ld*-, we may here briefly deal with some recurrent words in the Nam text which manifest this feature. We may pass over:

(a) the Suffixes *hldah* (*ldah*, *hlda*, *lda*), *hldo*; (b) the Pronouns *hlda*, *hldi*; (c) the words *hldan*/*ldan*, *hldē*/*hldēhi*/*hldēhe*, *hldoñ*, 'depart', 'flee', = Tib. *hdoñ*, *hldah* (278) and *hdaḥ* (58, 59), 'arrow', = Tib. *mdah* = Hörpa *lda*. There remain:

(i) *hldag*/*gldag* = Tib. *ltag* (*hdzur*; *ska*; *hbaḥ*; *khri*; *khyag*). This word, discussed *supra* (pp. 259-60) as occurring in the compound *hldag*/*gldag*-*nag*, 'black-back', has the sense of 'load' (Tib. *ltan*) in:

*skaḥ*-*raḥ*-*hdzur*-*dze*-*hldag*-*hbaḥ*-*hldoñ* ||, 45

'if the saddle (Tib. *sga*, but cf. *ska-rags*, "girdle")-place is awry (Tib. *hdzur*, *bzur*, *gzur*, "step aside", "shy", *zur*, "corner" "aside"), the load goes rocking (? *dbaḥ*, "wave") or "into a hole" (*hbaḥ*)'

*gldag*-*hce*-*rgyan*-*na*-*hldag*-*khri*-*khyag*-*re*-*hśid* ||, 52

'if the load is very large, the load support (*khri*) bending (Tib. *hkhyyog*/*khyog*), it comes to grief'.

(ii) *hldan*, *hldon* = Tib. *lan*, *lon*, 'retaliate', 'reply', *ldon*, *glon*, 'pay back', 'return'.

*Hldan* occurs in the phrases *hldam* (*hdzam*°, *hjam*°)-*re*-*hldan* in:

*cig*-*dze*-*ḥtor*-*hldam*-*re*-*hldan* ||, 186-7, 187-8, 188-9

(meaning obscure, see pp. 305-6)

*gśan*-*hrah*-*ḥton*-*kya*-*hūoho*-*hjam*-*re*-*hldan*, 273, cf. 274, 275

'to enemy-abandoned crops friends returned mild';

also in:

*hrgyah*-*hdiḥi*-*ḥtron*-*re*-*hkaḥ*-*hpyah*-*hldan* ||, 327-8

'come to this plain (?), are repaid with verbal reproof' (Tib.

*hphya*, 'reprove', ? see *supra*, p. 315)

*Hldon* can be Imperative (Optative) of *hldan* in:

*hlde(hldehe)-ge-htaḥ-hldon*, 370, 371, 372

'let prosperities return'.

(iii) *hldab*, *hdab* = (1) Tib. *hdab*, 'wing', 'leaf'; (2) Tib. *hdebs*, *btat*, *hldab*, *hdab*, *gdab*, 'cast', 'put', 'sow', 'found':

(1) *hbo-hkom-ldyañ-dze-hldab-hde-hde* ||, 12

'On the dry (?) forests lifted high the foliage fluttered (?)'

(2) *mu-hrog-htro(hdro)-re-rmañ-hldab-g-we*, 197

'cold (sc. the dead) helped by heat (or 'when the black cold comes'?), tomb-foundation is made'

With this use of *hldab* cf. Tib. *gur-hdebs*, 'pitch a tent', *dgon-pa-hdebs*, 'found a monastery'.

The form *hdab* appears in:

*meḥi-hrah-hdab-na*, 369

'appointing, or stationing, sentinels'

on *meḥi-hrah* see pp. 218-2, 313.

(iv) *hldam*, *hldom*, *hltom*, *ldom*, *hdam*, *hdom*, *dam*, *hṛdam*, = Tib. *hdom*, *hdoms*, *gdams*, *dams*, *gdam*, 'exhort', 'demonstrate', 'select', *sdom*, *bsdoms*, *bsdams*, *bstams*, 'bind', 'fasten', 'stop', 'confirm', *sdom*, 'obligation', 'engagement', 'vow', *hdam*, 'choose', 'select', *gdam-ka*, 'choice', *gdams*, 'advise', &c., *dam*, 'bound', 'vow', 'promise', 'seal', 'firm', 'narrow', &c. Further cognates of this prolific root are to be seen in *tham-ga*, 'seal' (stamp), *thams*, 'hold', 'stick fast', the original and central idea having been that of 'bind', 'be made fast': (*ru-glañ*; *hthul*; *hdag*).

Instances of *hldam*, 'tamed', have been given under (ii). *Hldom*, 'bound', is seen in *na-hldom*, 'house slave', ll. 41, 143, 350, *gdim-chis-ldom* (l. 88 *hltom*)-*re*, 'under the sway of transience' (see *infra*, p. 320), ll. 94, 95, and in:

*še-rgo-hldom-dze*, 258-9, 'when the wise have their doors fastened'

*hkrug-kyañ-hldom-re*, 371-2, 'strife also being quelled'

*hpha-ma-sñañ-ne-ge-ru(bu)-lta-ge-sñañ-glañ-hgaḥi*

*hyañ-hrah-hkaḥ-hldom-ge-ru-glañ-ge-hthul-ḥi* ||, 66-7

'Affectionate father and mother, looking at a child, rejoice (? Tib. *dgaḥ*) with affection increased (*glañ*, "returned"?)'

'Mouth-bound (Tib. *kha-sdom*, "gag", "silence") in the right (*hyañ*) place, horned oxen (Tib. *glañ-ru*, "bullock's horn") are tamed (Tib. *hdul*, *btul*, *dul*, *thul*).'



The children are a 'tie'.

hrah-[hyos-]hldom, 9, 'the earth movement was stopped (?)'.

In ll. 298-9 *g-rihi-hldom* is perhaps only a variant of *hrihi-hdom* ('bear') of l. 297.

*Hdom*, 'decision', appears in:

hkhwi-htsa-hyog-hdag-ci-hrañ-hdom-gdes ||, 259-60

'the old, equipped (*hdag*) with staves (Tib. *yog-po*), fixed their decisions'.

*Hdam*, 'bound', occurs perhaps in:

hdzam-hbroñ-hroñ-dze-hdam-to-hbu-hpor, 68

'in tame-yak gorges tied [animals] have their heads (Tib. *dbu*, Hsi-hsia *wu*) released (Tib. *hbor*, "cast away", "let go", p. 250 *supra*).'

Cf. *hnu-glañ-hpor*, ll. 175, 359 (*phor*), 'the young oxen are released', *hdro-hphor*, ll. 180, 353, 'released to go' (p. 250 *supra*). In the sense of 'checked' *hdam* is applied in l. 326 to *hse-htah*, 'injuries', 'harms', and therefore also in ll. 328, 329, to *hkhoh-htah*, *hkhoh-hdah*. In ll. 346, 351, *hdam-sleg*, partly obscure, may contain *hdam* in the sense of Tib. *dam*, 'vow', 'promise', 'bond'; on *dam-rma-hbroñ*, see p. 286. *P[h]yu-phya-hdam*, l. 204, is obscure, and in *hpo-hdam-htor*, l. 393, the context is wanting.

In *hrñe-hrdam-hte*, l. 322, 'fiends (enemies) bound, or quelled', *hrdam* regularly corresponds to a Tibetan *s-* form, *sdam*.

On *hdom* = Tib. *dom*, 'bear', see p. 254.

(v) *hldar*, *hlar* = Tib. *ldar*, 'be weary, faint', or *hlar*, 'quake, tremble', 'shiver', *sdar-ma*, 'timid', 'trembling': (*hbrah-hldah*; *hyob*; *hkye*; *hyuhu*).

A *hldar* with this sense might be recognized in:

hbroñ-hldar-hdzam-re, 353, 'the yak being tame with trembling (or exhaustion)'

and that is not to be rejected. But in l. 182 the reading is:

hbroñ-hldah-hdzam-re, 'the yak there (*hldah* = Tib. *da*, as in l. 195) being tame'.

The divergence of the two passages might be attributed to the easy scriptural confusion of *r* and *h*.

In ll. 30-1, 31, 32, occurs the phrase:

hbrah(hbra)-hldar-ma-hyob

where an analogous doubt exists. Is the meaning '*Hbrah* (p. 308) was not fluttered (Tib. *g-yob*) with quaking', or 'in *Hbrah-hldah*

(*hldar* Locative of Suffix *hldah*) there was no quaking'? *Hdar*, 'tremble', 'shiver', appears in:

*rbyo-hphah-hdar-dze-hkye-ge-hmu* ||, 38-9

'when the father *rbyo* (see pp. 332-3) shivers, the offspring (*hkye* = Hsi-hsia *hgyi* (Nevsky, No. 282) = Tib. *skye*, *skyes*, "be born", "creature", *khye-bo*, *khyehu*, "child") are cold' *hriam-hdar-hyuhu*, 368, 'the district (Tib. *yul*? cf. p. 333) trembles with affright'. (But the parallel in l. 49 has *nar*.)

(vi) *hldas* = Tib. *hlah*, *hdas*, 'pass'.

*rbyo-ha-ge(hge)-hcah-rte-hyu-rgyag-dze-hldas*, 82-3  
'the *rbyo* . . . went over to the *hcah*' (p. 259).

(vii) *hldi*, *hldis*, *hldin* = Tib. *ldin*,<sup>1</sup> 'float', 'soar'.

*hldi-ma-hrtah*, 63, 71 (*rtah*), 144, 'the horse does not leap (gallop)'

*htor-hrtah-hldi[-r[e]*, 337, 'the great horse galloping'

*rtah-swa-hldi[-r[e]*, 174, 'the horse galloping on guard'

*sku-mag-no-dze-me-na-hldis*, 58, 'the body in battle leaps (? is laid spread)<sup>2</sup> in fire' (*hldis* Aorist)

*hsi-hchos-re-ge-hpu-myi-hldin* ||, 160, 'born in winter, the bird does not fly'.

(viii) *hldim*, *hldyim*, *gdim*, *ddyim*, *hdim*, *dim* = Tib. *hthim*, *thim*, *gtim*, *stim*, 'be lost, dissolved, absorbed', 'evaporate', 'vanish', 'steal away' (*chim*, *chis*, *tshim*, *tshis*, *hdzam-hdzim*).

*hsan-nag-rgyes-hkom-chim-hldim-ge-hphah-rmañ*, 199

'when enemy voice (Tib. *nag*: see *infra*, p. 360, and *supra*, p. 313), or black (Tib. *nag*) enemy, has attained extension (*rgyes*), come and gone (impermanent) are fathers' tombs'.

Tibetan *hchim* means 'be full', and with it is connected, no doubt, *tshim*, 'be satisfied': possibly the original notion was that of 'full manifestation'. Considering the resemblance of *m* and *s* in the script and the rarity of roots in *-s* (*mchis*, 'be there', is Aorist of *mchi*, 'come'), it seems likely, though *chis* might, like *gdim*, be Aorist or possibly Instrumental in *-s* (see *infra*, p. 359), that *chim* is the correct reading in:

*gdim-chis-ldom-re-htsog-hldan-hstañ* ||

*dim-tshis-ldom-re-tshog-hldan-hduñ* ||, 94-5

'Controlled by going and coming (impermanence), union rises high (Tib. *steñ*, *stan*):

<sup>1</sup> On final *n/n* see p. 362: in E. Colonial Tibetan the form is *din*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Tib. *hdiñ*, 'spread', *sdin*, 'level eminence', 'tableland'.

Controlled by going and coming, union rising falls (Tib. *ltuñ*) or is distressed (Tib. *gduñ*)'.

*hdim-htshis-hltom* (= *hldom*)-re-*htso*[g]-*hldañ-stañ*

*gdim-pyi-hse-ge-gsom-rgyag-hsor-don-htshog-me-hldyim-rgyañ*

*gdim-phyi-hse-ge-htshog-hram-hñad* ||, 88-90.

In this second passage:

*htshog-me-hldyim-rgyañ* = 'the fire of union disappears far'

*htshog-hram-hñad* = 'union evaporates (Tib. *ñad*, cf. p. 217)'.

Hence *gdim* (*ddyim*, ll. 95-6)-*phyi-hse-ge* must mean 'harm from outside (*phyi*), or subsequent (*phyi*) harm, being vanished (from thought = *gsom-rgyag-hsor*, cf. p. 258)'.

*gdim-hdzam-hdzim-re-hko-wehi-htuñu* ||, 100

'the *hdzam-hdzim* ("bustle"?; cf. Tib. *zan-ziñ*, "miscellaneous objects", "confused") having subsided, they assembled, making room'.

What is the meaning of *hldim* in:

*rñe-ne-g-ri-dze-hldim-hphu-hmañ*, 301

'evil and good on the mountain there are many *hldim-hphu*' echoed in l. 310 by *hldim-hmañ-hto* ||, 'there are many *hldim*'? They seem to be classes of creatures, real or imagined.

(ix) *hldu*, *hlduñu*, *hldun*, *htuñu*, *htu*, *htus*, = Tib. *hdu*, *hdus*, 'collect', 'unite', *hdun*, 'council', 'counsel', 'companion', *gdu*, 'mingle', *sdud*, *bstus*, *bsdus*, *sdus*, *bsdus*, 'collect', &c., *sdum*, 'agreement', *stun*, 'agree', *htu*, *thu*, *btus*, *btu*, *htun*, 'gather', 'pick': (*hswar*; *hdzom*; *hjim*).

*Hldu*, *hlduñu*:

*htañ-hldu-hldyañ-ge*, 14, 'the joined fields (risen) high'

*hldu-ro-hgru*, 19, 'the assembly-place a corner (or rock)'

*hswar-hldu-sto* (= *hldus-to*)-*dze*, 28, 'in a closing of fingers (Tib. *sor*)', sc. in an instant.

*hlduñu-ce-rgyañ-na*, 51, 'if accumulation (store) is of great extent'

*gcog-hlde-hldu-dze*, 69-70, 'on the joined warm (?) meadows'

*hsehe-hldu-hru-re-dze*, 238, 'on all the peaks where the *hse* ("fiends", or "tops") meet'.

*Hldun*:

*hrim-hdzom-htañ-hldun* ||, 284, 'the joining (Tib. *hdzom* "meet", "interlace") [torches] gathered'

*htor-hso-hti-ge-htañ-hldun*, 354, 'great *hso*-parties meet'.



*Htuḥu* (*hthuhū*), *hthū*, *hthus* (Aorist):

*ldyo-stor-hthū-re*, 140, 'when the *ldyo* in flight gather'

*hjim-ta-hthusni*, 156, 'salves (p. 280 n.) were gathered'.

With spelling *htuḥu* an instance has been given *supra* (p. 321).

(x) *hlduhu* = Tib. *gdu*, 'covet', 'hanker after', *gduñ*, 'desire', 'burn', 'torment': (*brehe*).

*bos-smyi-hldog-ge-śes-gśi-hlduhu* ||

*htsañ-htsañ-hdzañ-ge-śes-ḥśi-brehe*, 43-4

'when the master is a *hldog* man, the knowing man covets death:

'when the harvest (or land, *hsaḥ*)-overseer is wise, the knowing man fears death'.

*Brehe* may be a *d*-less form of Tib. *bred*, 'fear', 'be dejected or ashamed', and connected, moreover, with *hbre*, *bres*, 'screen off', 'envelope'. *Hbres*, l. 176, is probably the Preterite of the same.

On *hldog* see *infra* (p. 323): *htsañ-htsañ* has been discussed on pp. 280-1.

(xi) *hldug*: (*kyen*):

*the-kyen-hldug*, 103.

*The* = 'lieges', 'common people': in regard to *hldug*, Tib. *hldug/ldug/sdug* have too many and contradictory meanings to furnish ground for inference. *Kyen* may be = Tib. *skyen*, 'quick', 'rash', 'dexterous': elsewhere the 'lieges' are styled *hyan*, 'good' (l. 383), and *sñañ-ne*, 'good-hearted' (l. 160), but also *kruḥu*, 'canaille' (l. 334).

(xii) *hldo*, *do-ldo*, *hldoḥu* (*hrim-hldoḥu*):

Whether in *śeg-sme-hldo*, l. 375, *rñe-hpo-hldo*, l. 177, *hbri-slod-hldo*, l. 381, the *hldo* is a Suffix is uncertain: on the analogy of *hlo-ge-blah-hldoḥ*, l. 154, *meḥi-ḥgab-hldo*, l. 155, it should be so.

On l. 110 *hldoḥo* see *supra*, p. 294.

*Do-ldo-hdzo-chañ*, l. 76, = [*do*]-*hldo-hdzor-re*, l. 77, = *do-ldo-hdzo-hpeḥi*, l. 353, may contain in *do-ldo* an equivalent of Tib. *ldo-ldo*, 'for a short time' (sc. casually), perhaps derived from *ldo*, 'the side of anything', and meaning 'bit by bit'. But *hdzo/hdzor* is uncertain: possibly 'eat', as in pp. 334-5. *Hldoḥu* occurs only in *hldoḥu-hjam-rño*, l. 277, and *hrim-hldoḥu*, l. 300, *hrim-re-hldoḥu*, l. 319: it should not be = Tib. *lo*, 'circle', as suggested by the context, since in ll. 154, 275, that word, in the sense of 'troop', 'company', recurs as *hlo*. But it must have some kindred mean-

ing, since in l. 277 the reference is to groups of persons: it is perhaps = Tib. *ldo*, 'side', so that *hrim-hldoḥu* may mean 'on all sides round'.

(xiii) *hldog* = Tib. *log/ldog*, 'turn back, away', 'rebel', 'be recalcitrant', 'perverted', 'wrong': (*hrpeḥi*).

The appropriate sense is seen in:

*hdzañ-hkhor-hkrug-hkyañ-hyogs-hldog*, 18

'retinue of wise men at strife, servants recalcitrant'

*bos-smyi-hldog-dze*, l. 42, 'when the master is a perverse person'; so also in 43-4

*mor-gdag-hgom<sup>1</sup>-re-hdzañ-hldog-stor*, 141-2

'when the wicked acquire mastery, the wise flee away'

perhaps also in:

*hldah-hrgam-hstsag-hldog-hpo-hrbom-htoḥo ||*

*po-rbom-hnor-[re-]hldog-g-yaḥ-to-dze . . .*, 316-17

'when those in the community there are averse to unity (?), the chief is aggrandized':

'if, the aggrandized chief being foolish, the recalcitrant are in the ascendant . . .'

Not quite to be expected is the sentiment in:

*rpeḥi-hldah-hrgam-re-hldog-hyaḥ-hthañ*, 286

'if the exemplary (?) are taken into the community, the recalcitrant are in the ascendant'

because in l. 169 we read:

*hrgom-hkhru[-]r[e]-hto-na-hrpeḥi-hrgam-re-hto*

'the canaille (*hkhru*) being passed over (*hrgom*), the exemplary were taken into the community'.

concerning which see pp. 244, 296-7. *Rpeḥi* would well correspond to Tib. *dpe*, 'pattern', 'example'; cf. *rpag* = Tib. *dpag*. The word recurs, no doubt, in the mutilated passage:

*bos-[smyi-hld]o[g-dz]e-[rpe]ḥi-ge-hdzaḥ-na-speḥi-ge ||*  
*hthon ||*, 378-9.

(xiv) *hldor*, 357, is possibly = *hldo-re*, just as the rather frequent *hldir* is always = *hldi-re*.

<sup>1</sup> *Hgom*, which does not recur, will be = *hkom* (p. 200).

## II. SOME PHONOLOGICAL PARTICULARS

1. *ldy*, &c.

So far we have been dealing with forms which, though not Tibetan, can be compared with Tibetan without going outside the phonological relations which can be shown to hold within the vocabulary of Tibetan itself. But there is one initial group of consonants, occurring in a number of puzzling words, some of them very frequent, which is unexampled in Tibetan and which, until somehow explained, precludes an interpretation of the text as a whole. This is the group *ldy*, with which we may associate the few occurrences of *dy*, *ty*, *thy*. These cannot correspond directly to anything in Tibetan, because Tibetan, not tolerating *y* after dentals, has no *ldy*-, *dy*-, *ly*-, *ty*-, *thy*.

It might be suggested that *ldy*- is a development from *rgy*-(*lgy*-), or *rby*-(*lby*-), with an *l*- due, perhaps, to contact with China: and we might point to actual instances of such change, e.g. Mo-so *diager*, 'India', evidently a borrowing of Tib. *rgya-gar*, to the *rdyalsa* = Tib. *rgyal-sa*, 'seat of royalty', in the Rgyal-roñ song quoted by Dr. Tafel (*supra*, pp. 85-6), and to Dr. Tafel's other spellings with *rdy*-,<sup>1</sup> set down in the course of his travels in north-eastern and eastern Tibet. But such a suggestion is precluded by the frequency of *rgy*-, *rby*-, in the Nam itself.

Perhaps we may be helped by considering what was in early Tibeto-Burman languages the form of the word for '4'. The modern forms, collected in *Linguistic Survey of India*, volume i, Part II, 'Comparative Vocabulary', are far too numerous for citation; but the most common types may be indicated as follows:

- (a) forms with initial *l*- only, such as *lī*, *lē*: these are found all over the Tibeto-Burman area, in Himālayan dialects, Lolo-Mo-so, Nāgā dialects, languages of Burma, &c.;
- (b) forms with initial *p*- only, such as *pī*, *pū*, or *py*-, *by*-.: these are not much less common and widespread than those with *l*-;
- (c) forms with *p+l* or *b+l* or *f+l*, such as *pli*, *bli*, *vli*, *pali*, *pili*, *buli*, *fali*, *fili* (*mili*, &c.): these are similarly common and widespread;
- (d) forms with *p+r*, *b+r*, or *f+r*, such as (*ka*)-*prei*, *kam-brin*, *brè*, *brī*, *brui*, *firi* (*mari*, &c.): a less common variant of (c);
- (e) forms with *d*: *diā* (D'imāl, a Himālayan dialect), *ka-dī*

<sup>1</sup> [*r*]Dyallo, *r* Dyarong, &c. (see Index).



(Gyārūng, but *ka-plis-si*, '40', *ko-plī* (Rgya-roñ), '4'), *bi-dī*, *bi-d'i*, *pedi*, *pa-dāi*, *mu-dai*, &c. (Nāgā);

- (f) forms with a sibilant, such as Tibetan *bzi*, Śarpa *śi*, &c.: these are found only in the Tibetan group and are probably in all cases (including Thöchū *gza(-re)*, '4', *ghyi-so*, '40') borrowed from Tibetan;

- (g) forms with *ld*: *ldi* = '4', *ldih*, *lda*, *zlah*, *lha*, are attested in Tibetan script for Hsi-hsia (Nevsky, No. 93).

It will be observed that the *p+l(r)*, *b+l(r)* are found in the same regions as *p* and *l* separately and that the *l(r)* never precedes the *p(b)*. It seems to follow that the *p(b)+l* is an original combination and that the forms with *p* simply or *l* simply are degenerations of forms with *p(b)l*.

The forms with *d* are rare and scattered: it is to be noted that the Gyārūng, which for '4' has *ka-dī* (Rgya-roñ *ko-plī*), has at the same time for '40' the form with *pl* (*ka-plis-si*). In view of the Rgyal-roñ forms and, further, of Tākpa *bli* and numerous equivalents in Himālayan dialects, and moreover of Loutse and Kioutse *bli*, the form with *bl* may be said to dominate the whole eastern and southern border of Tibet, and it is perhaps represented also by the Lo-lo forms *śli*, &c., with *s* or *sh* for *b*, as in Rgya-roñ *ślu*, 'lungs', &c.

The only form approaching (and indeed by about four to five centuries surpassing) in antiquity the Hsi-hsia *ldi* are the Tibetan *bzi* and the Žaň-žuň *pī* (JRAS. 1933, p. 408).

Tibetan *ž* is constantly found in relation, as is natural, to *j* (c), e.g. in:

*žin*, *žes*, particles alternating with *cin* (*jīn*), *ces*.

*gžal*, *bžal*, *bžag*, *bžig*, *bžugs*, *žugs*, *žu*, *bžo*, *žo*, connected with the Verbs *hjal*, 'weigh', *hjog*, 'put', *hjig*, 'destroy', *hjug*, 'enter', *hju*, 'melt', *hjo*, 'milk'.

*gžah*, *gžoňs*, *gžom* = *hjah*, 'rainbow', *ljoňs*, 'valley', *hjom*, 'conquer'.

Since *j* is not found with the Prefixes *g*, *b*,<sup>1</sup> while *ž*, which does occur with these, is not found with *m*, *h*, *r*, *l*, all of them common with *j*, the alternation shows the influence of a preceding consonant. The breathed sibilant *š* follows the rule for its voiced correlate *ž*. Presumably *š* and *ž* differ from *c* and *j* simply as being

<sup>1</sup> Prejevalsky (trans. ii, p. 138) gives 'Tangut' *bje*h = Tib. *bzi* (apparently with English *j*).

spirants, i.e. by omission of stop-contact, which is natural, though not inevitable, after the contact required for *g* and *b*: it may be noted that Hsi-hsia in Tibetan script has both *gj* and *bj*, and Tibetan itself has *gc* and *bc*. Conceivably the effort of making the change from voice (*g*) to breath (*c*) fortifies the utterance in making the second contact (*c*).

The Tibetan sibilant in *bzi* is therefore non-original in Tibetan itself. If accordingly we write it *bji*, it cannot be derived from *bdi*, but may represent a form *bdyi*, since we see that *dy* does not survive in the language. Such a form may be akin to the Nāgā forms *bi-di*, *bi-d'i*, *pedi*, noted under (*e*); but it disregards the *l*, which, as is manifest under (*a*), (*c*), (*d*), and (*g*), is the sound most widely and numerously found in the Tibeto-Burman words for '4'. Therefore we must write *bldyi*, possibly derived from a very early original *ba-li* or *pa-li*, which became successively *ba-lyi*, *ba-l-lyi*, *bldyi*, where it was not preserved, as it may have been in Lepcha *fa-li* and similar forms. The forms *bli* or *bldyi* will account for all the types *li*, *pli*, *pre*, *pi*, as well as those with *d* (for *ld*), *bi-di*, &c., for those with *ld* (Hsi-hsia *ldi*), and for the Tibetan *bzi* = *bji* = *bldyi*.

It is accordingly among words with initial *z*, so rare in Nam (or *j*, in cases where there is no preceding *g*- or *b*-), that we should look for equivalents of the Nam initial *ldy*-, *dy*-. The commonest word, *hldyan*, which by reason of an antithesis to *hldyon* might seem to offer the best hold, occurs so variously as to suggest a complex derivation; and forms with *yi*, e.g. *ldyi* can always be orthographical or other alternatives of those with *i*, *ldi*. Hence we may take the words in the order of convenience merely.

1. *hldyo*, *ldyo*, *hldyoho*; *hldyo-hro* (*hbyohu*; *hnus*; *na-htsah-ste*; *htrog*; *hnus*).

The verse:

*ldyo-stor-hthu-re-hdrab-stor-htoho* ||, 140

has already (p. 254) been translated:

'when the *ldyo* in flight collect together, the *hdrab* (ravenous animals) flee'

a rendering apposite in its context. Further, it has been suggested (pp. 254, 256) that in the phrase *hkoñu-mehe-hldyo* ||, ll. 171-2, which clearly signifies a deprivation of the 'fire' (power) of speech, *hldyo*, introduced by a paronomasia, really means 'milked out', the context containing references to 'suppressing' (*htul*), 'eating',

(*hdzah*), and 'snatching away' (*hdrab*) the same 'fire'. The significations 'cow' and 'milk' are united in Tib. *hjo*, *bzos*, *bzo*, *gzo*, 'to milk', *hjo-ma*, 'milch-cow', *zo*, 'milk'. As previously suggested, the root, when used as a designation of animals, does not properly denote merely cows, but includes all 'milkers', i.e. animals used for milk-supply: and this is the sense of Tib. *bzon-ma*, 'cow, ewe, or she-goat, that is yielding milk; a gen. term for such cattle'.

A Verb *hldyoho* (*hldyo*) is seen also in:

hñu[-]r[e]-hñah-rgyeñ-na-hñu-hldo-hldyoho ||, 355  
'absence of all weeping being arranged (*rgyeñ*), weeping was milked away' (p. 256).

In the sense of 'milch-cattle' the word recurs in:

hdom-hgu-htshuñu-hyañ-hmañ-hldyo-hrgam, 303-4  
'though bears come, many milch-cattle are in company' (*ibid*).

The meaning 'milk' may be traced in the *ldyohu* of:

hśañ-hdzah-hldyim-hyañ-ldyohu-ma-hbyohu, 255  
'though garbage-eating was sweet [sc. to the cattle], the milk was not poured out (Tib. *byo*, *hbyo*) [sc. dripped or poured away?]

The above may teach why a part of the country is distinguished from other parts as *hldyo-hro*, 'ranch-country (?)', in:

hdam-hbroñ-hroñ-dze-hldyo-hro-hpehi ||, 384  
'in tame-yak gorges is an example (?) of "ranchland "'

and this, again, may explain the phrase:

hldyo-hdom-nag, 162, 171, 'the black bears of the ranch [-country]'.  
[country]'

The phrase *hldyo-htor-ge-hnus*, ll. 16, 34, 50 (*tor* for *htor-ge*): in:

hbu-rwye-hce-rgyañ-dze-hldyo-htor-ge-hnus ||, 15-16  
'on the wide expanded uplands, the great ranch[-cattle] suckled (Tib. *nu*, *nus*)'

we have, however, to discover a misfortune of the cataclysm time: it might, indeed, be dripping udders (Tib. *nu*) or premature calving. In ll. 33-4 it is on the *na-htsah-ste* = *na-htsas-te*, perhaps the 'harvested meadows (Tib. *na*, *btsas*: see p. 239)' that 'the ranch-cattle dripped or suckled'. By reason of uncertainty as to the meaning of *htrog* we cannot interpret:

htrog-htor-te-dze-hldyo-ge-nus, 40

(can *htrog* be = *hbrog*, 'high pastures' (see p. 5)? In the Tibetan



manuscripts we find *ye-hdrog* written for *ye-hbrog*), nor is *hldyo-hrje-hbro* in l. 36 clear.<sup>1</sup> But *htrog*, 'enemy', is possible.

If *hldyo* properly means 'milk', 'to milk', we should expect to find some trace of it not only, as we do find, in Tibetan, but elsewhere also in Tibeto-Burman. One Hsi-fan dialect (d'Ollone, No. 35) has for 'milk' *lio niu niu*, in which the two last syllables may be the Chinese for 'cow'. Conceivably there might be a primitive relation between *ldyo* and Chinese *zu* (Ancient *'nziu*, Karlgren, No. 48).

2. *hldya*, *hldyah*: (*stoñ*; *hkhog*; *hñor*; *yañ*, *hyan*; *sko*).

This word occurs in:

hldu-hu-ce-rgyañ-na-stoñ-hkhog-re-hldya-hkañ-hte-hñor, 51-2

'An accumulation (store, Tib. *hdu-khañ*?) of (too) great extent, with empty (unfilled) interior (Tib. *stoñ*, *khog*), has its goods (*hñor* = Tib. *nor*, as in l. 50) filled with *hldya*'.

Here the meaning 'water' would suit, since ordinarily the store-place would be a pit (*doñ*). In Hsi-fan we find Mānyak *dyāh*, 'water'; and this may also be Menia *djo* or *dju*i, Muli *djō*, Pa-U-Rong *dji*, Mo-so *dji* (Lo-lo, *ji*, *yi-dié*, *i dia*, *dia dia*?), also it may be Hsi-hsia *tsei*, *dsei*, *jei* (Laufer, No. 37). These, however, are merely a beginning: we must add the whole army of forms, such as *tī*, *dī*, *tūi*, *dūi*, *dwi*, found in the western Himālaya and all over the Tibeto-Burman world; among which forms the *tī* of Kanauri, &c., may be singled out, as found in a *Žaṇ-žui* manuscript of the ninth to tenth century A.D. (*JRAS.* 1933, p. 408). These may be referred to an original form *tya/dya* (cf. the forms *pā*, by the side of *pya* = Tib. *bya*, 'bird'), and possibly forms with *a*, such as *chā*, may have retained the original final vowel. The many forms with *u*, *tūi*, &c. (including Tib. *cu/chu* < \**tyu*), may point to a primary *toya*, parallel to *bweya*, 'bird' (cf. Tib. *phywa*, 'lot').

On the etymological side Nam *hldya* = 'water' may therefore

<sup>1</sup> In l. 254 the metre warns us to read:

hldyo-htor-hmyi-na || (instead of \*hmyi || na)

and the translation will be:

'the great herds were without sickness' (p. 239),

this being one of several particulars of a time of prosperity. Accordingly the recurrent *hldyo-htor-ge-hnu*s (ll. 16, 34, 40 (omit *htor*)), which has the contrary implication, must denote some illness of the herds, perhaps the same which is indicated by the *ldyohu-ma-hbyohu* of l. 255. This confirms the interpretation of *htrog-htor-te-dze*, which will be a variant of the *hbu-woye-hce-rgyañ-dze* of ll. 15-16.

be defensible. As further evidence of the actuality, we may quote:

hyañ-re-rgyeñ-na-yañ-*hldyañ-hldyañ*<sup>1</sup> ||, 355-6

'each conduit being in order, the conduits were water, water  
[sc. flowed continuously]'

for *hyañ*, here necessarily a substantive, occurs (as noted p. 311), in the Tibetan manuscripts with the signification here adopted and no other seems apposite. The only other instance of *hldyañ* occurs in the next line (following a reference to 'fires let loose', *thar-mye*), where there is a question of 'allotment of work' (*g-wehe-sko-hbab*, cf. Tib. *las-sko*): it may be noted that in a document from Central Asia (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, pp. 139-40), in connexion with a distribution of field-work, there is a reference to drying-up of the water (*chab-skam*).

If *hldyañ* means 'water', 'water-flow', it will not be an accident that Tib. *bzah*, i.e. *bjah* < \**bdyañ* or \**bldyañ* (cf. *bzi*, '4'), means 'moist', 'wet'.

3. *hldi*, *hldyi*, *hldyihi*, *hldihi*: (*hmu*; *hrñu*; *skhrud*; *hre*; *rgyo*; *hphu*; *hsig*; *hldyeg*; *hti*).

It has been suggested *supra* (p. 276) that in:

*hmu-hrñu-skhrud-dze-mor-htañ-[hgras]* ||

*hldi-hrkah-hldyañ-dze-hyañ-htañ-hgras*, 9-10

'On the *hmu*, fleeing in pain (Tib. *rñu*, *skrud*), the evil power was arrayed:

On the *hldi*, risen steep (Tib. *dkah*), the good power was arrayed'

*hmu* should be the 'sky' (Hsi-hsia *mu/mo* (Laufer, No. 34); Hsi-fan, &c., *mo/mon*), and *hldi* consequently 'earth'. The epithet *rkañ*, 'steep', is applied to *gsañ*, 'land', in l. 333 (*infra*, p. 338).

*Ldi* = 'earth', is, in fact, attested for Hsi-hsia (Nevsky, No. 189, Laufer, No. 40, *le/lo*). In the Nam text we find among the occurrences of *hldi* no further examples; all instances of *hldi*, *hldir* (= *hldi-re*), seeming to represent *hldi*, 'this', or *hldi*, 'fly'. But *hldihi* in:

*hldihi-su-hldoñ* || *dze-hlda-hko-ge-hdzoñ*, 195

'what *hldihi* one retires to, there is one's castle'

being antithetic to 'river' (*rma*) in the following line, should mean 'land'. On *hlda-hko* (*da-ko*) see *supra*, pp. 201, 245.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lo-lo *dia-dia*, above.



This *ldi* may be represented further by Mānyak *mali/mli* d'Ollone 38 *dia*, Muli (Njong) *dja*, Mélam *meli* ('country'), (Mo-so *mdié*, Lo-lo, *mi-dyi*, &c.?). In Tibetan there is a common word *gzi/gzis*, meaning 'ground', 'abode', 'estate', (*sa-gzi*, 'place', 'ground', 'locality', 'soil'), whence come common dialectical words for 'earth', Thōchū *zip* < *gzi-po*, Menia *za-pi*, d'Ollone 35 *sa-ze-diu* < *sa-gzi* ('Tangut' *sa-zu*), 41 and 42 *je-pu*: though it cannot correspond to Nam *hldi*, which would, no doubt, be *ldi* or *hdi*, it would, as we have seen, properly represent the inevitable alternative form, *hldyi*.

A *hldyi/hldyihi* is to be found, in fact, in the text. By way of conjecture only, since the instances probably represent different words, we may venture as follows:

In:

hre-ge-rgyo-dze-hphu-hsig-hldyihi ||, 48

where *rgyo* recalls nothing, in its several recurrences, but Tib. *rgyo*, 'copulari', while *hre* has beside its very frequent signification 'is', 'being' (Tib. *re*) and that of 'hope' (Tib. *re*), also not infrequently the sense of Tib. *re*, 'each' (whence Hsi-hsia *re*, 'all'), *res*, 'times', 'turn', &c., whence *re-hlad*, 'retribution' (ll. 245, 247). *Hphu* (*hpu*) can mean 'male', and *hsig* always has the sense of Tib. *hjig*, *bzig*, *gzig*, 'destroy', 'decay', 'perish'. In this context *hldyihi*, no doubt a Verb, might well mean 'be assuaged', 'appeased', in which case it would correspond to Tib. *zi*, which has those meanings.

In connexion with the earthquake we find in l. 26 the phrase *hldyeg-hldyi-hti-dze*, where *hti* may mean 'darkness' (Tib. *gti*), as in l. 12.<sup>1</sup> *Hldyeg* does not occur elsewhere; but, if *hldyi* should mean 'four', it could obviously denote only 'regions', 'quarters', and we should then have a good equivalent for the *li(ldi)-lei*, 'four quarters', frequently mentioned in a Buddhist Hsi-hsia text.<sup>2</sup> The Tibetan for 'quarter' in this application is usually *phyogs* (Hsi-fan *chuo*, &c., Menia *cho*); but there is also a word *gzogs*, which might be akin to such a *hldyeg*.

In l. 375 *rybi-hldyihi* is unfortunately obscure: see p. 350.

4. *hldyim*: (*hpuhi*, *hphuhi*).

In one occurrence, namely in the phrase *htshog-me-hldyim-rgyañ*, l. 89, *hldyim* clearly belongs to the Verb *gdim/dim/hdim*/

<sup>1</sup> On *hti* = 'stop' see pp. 174, 309.

<sup>2</sup> *Suvarṇa-prabhāsa* (in Wang Jinqru *Shishiah Studies*, ii, e.g. p. 16, lower coll. 5, 6).



*ddyim*, 'disappear' (p. 321 *supra*), occurring in the immediate context: hence it is a mere way of writing *hldim*. The same interpretation is applicable in:

*hldyim-hste-hpuhi-ge-rñe-hdzam-re-hldan*, 274

'their blowings ceased, the fiends (enemies) returned mild'

where *hpuhi* = *hphuhi*, said of dogs in the next but one line (p. 285), and of the ass in l. 354, and the *s* in *hste* points to a form *hldyims* (Aorist).

A different *hldyim* must be seen in the above quoted:

*hśaṅ-hdzah-hldyim-hyaṅ*, 255

which has been translated (p. 327) 'though garbage-eating was sweet'. The rendering implies an equivalence of *hldyim* to Tib. *zim*,<sup>1</sup> 'sweet', 'well-tasting', which phonetically may now be considered justified. In the Tibetan manuscripts we read 'A flesh-eater's sharp knife gives sweetness (*zim*) at every cut'. But in the absence of further confirmation the matter remains conjectural: as regards *hdzah* see p. 334.

5. *hldyaṅ*, *hldyoṅ*, *ldyaṅ*, *hdyāṅ*, *dyaṅ*; (<sup>o</sup>*hro*; <sup>o</sup>*hto*; *rgoṅ*; *rgyer*)

In the case of the two remaining words, of which the former is exceedingly troublesome, we have at least the support of an antithesis between them. In ll. 384-7, at the close of a discrimination of certain parts of the terrain, we read:

*hjo(hdzo)-chi-te-re-hlab-hñāṅ-hyaḥ-htaḥ* || *hldyaṅ-hro-hpehi* ||  
*hdzam-hbroṅ-hroṅ* || *hbaṅ-hko-htar-cig-dze-hldyoṅ-hro-*  
*hpehi* ||

Here, in company with phrases which have previously been found difficult, we find the *hldyaṅ-hro*, '*hldyaṅ* country', exemplified (*hpehi*) in a certain way, the *hldyoṅ-hro*, '*hldyoṅ*-country', in another way, which brings in the 'tame-yak gorge', already seen to imply the lower levels. Concerning the word *hro(ro)* in place-names see *supra*, p. 314. *Hldyoṅ* probably has no other occurrence, *ldyoṅ* in l. 318 being a doubtful reading.

There are some indications connecting *hldyaṅ* with height:

*hldyaṅ-g-ri-gdod-re-mehi-hraḥ-gtaṅ*, 186

'[where] a *hldyaṅ* mountain is prominent (Tib. *dod*), an eye-post should be set'

*hldyaṅ-hgoḥo-hdzin-re-mehi-hraḥ-hdab na*, 369

'a *hldyaṅ* place or gate (*hgoḥo*) being held, an eye-post is put' although *hldyaṅ* might be not attribute of *g-ri* and *hgoḥo*, but

<sup>1</sup> For *zim*? Cf. *hjib*, *ḡzib*, 'relish'.

subject to the Verbs *gdod* (the phrase *g-ri-gdod* would then, however, be difficult) and *hđzin*. In the verse, repeated in ll. 9, 19:

sta-re-hmo (l. 9 hmo-hno)-ge-sta-hri-hđyañ

'where were (had been) the heavens (clouds?), there the mountains *hđyañ*'

the signification 'high' or 'rose' becomes a certainty; and it is confirmed by the *hđdi-hrkah-hđyañ-dze*, 'on the earth steep high or rising', of l. 10, and then further by the repetition of the word as a Predicate in the antithetic verses of ll. 12-14.

An antithesis *hđyañ/hđyoñ*, 'high'/'low', can find its reflection in Tibetan *bžen*, *bžens*, *bžan*, 'raise', 'erect', in comparison with *žon*, 'lower', *žon-žon*, 'deepened', 'excavated', 'hollow', *gžons*, *ljons*, 'valley', (*lj* not becoming *lž*), with which must be connected *šan-šons*, 'high and low', *gšon*, *bšon*, 'deep valley', 'ravine'. *Bžens* is used, for instance, to denote the raised partitions dividing fields; an analogous meaning will well suit:

hđyañ-hto-hton-ge-hgo-gtoñ-mod, 210-11

'when the high (Tib. *mtho*) partition, or the partition boundary (Tib. *tho*), is surrendered, the gate or place is surrendered'.

The sense of 'rising' (from a seat, &c.), which Tib. *bžen* conveys, may perhaps be recognized in:

hđzu-hdro-hphor-[re]-hchi-hdo-dyainna, 183, 353 (*gzu*, *hđyañ*)

'the ass, set free to depart, started or rose (*dyañ*) to go (*hchi*)'

rgoñ-wa-mye-[r[e]-rbyo-rgyer-hđyañ ||, 365

'if there are no eggs (Tib. *sgoñ*, *sgoñ-na*, Mo-so *gō*, &c.), the *rbyo* rises abandoning (Tib. *hgyer*) it'

and the same is presumably the case in the *hnu-glañ-ldyañ* following in l. 366, and can also be harmonized with the *rñe-hkhyam-hđyañ* of ll. 229, 236.

The reference to eggs in l. 365, however, yields a more definite conception in *hđyañ*, that of 'flying', which would bring it into connexion, either as a synonym or as a linguistic or stylistic equivalent of *hđdñ*, 'fly', which we have seen in l. 160 *hpu-myi-hđdñ*, 'the bird does not fly' (pp. 145-6, 320). In that case *rbyo* should be a synonym of *hpu*, 'bird', and this will suit

rbyo-g-yer-hnor-[re]-rgoñ-wa-šid ||, 366

'if the bird is foolish in his alertness [sc. unwatchful] (cf. *stsah-hyer*, *swa-hmor*, &c., pp. 276-8, and on *hnor*, 'foolish', pp. 224-5) the eggs perish'



and the further connexion of the *rbyo* with eggs in the proverb:

rbyo-sñān-ge-sñān-na-rgoñ-ru-ge-hru ||, 102-3 (cf. l. 82)

'if the heart of a *rbyo* is a heart, the horns (sc. ends) of an egg are horns'

the Tibetans speaking of the ends of an egg as 'horns'. The strangeness of the *r*-Prefix to *bya*, 'bird', is almost a conclusive proof of the correctness of the interpretations; for, as shown *supra* (p. 94), several Hsi-fan languages have the *r*-Prefix in this word (e.g. Munia *rja*, 'bird', *rja-gu*, 'egg' = Tib. *bya*, *bya-ngoñ*), and others also represent the final -o, perhaps a 'Diminutive' form = *byehy*. The difference between *hpu* and *rbyo* may be that between 'bird' and 'fowl', which occurs also elsewhere.

According to this the *rbyo-po* transmitter of the Nam text, whom we have conjectured (p. 156) to be some kind of Bon priest, will be a 'bird (or cock)-man', which is not improbable, because the sorcerer's cock is well known in the Hsi-fan area (see *From Tonkin to India*, by Prince Henri d'Orléans, pp. 200, 263). *Rbyo*, however, must have a second sense in order to account for the references in ll. 53, 56, 57, and an antithesis to *hphoñ*, 'poor' (?) in 53, and to *rgu*, 'thief', in l. 57 suggests that it may mean 'rich', 'riches', so that in this word again, we have a parable.

The signification 'fly' suits also the passage (ll. 12-15), where in the cataclysm the woods, mountains, fields, &c., soar (*hldyañ*) through the sky. Moreover, it seems to afford a key to the phrase *hldyañ-hpu-hbri-re* several times attached to the *Mehi-hklu-hcah*, whom we have supposed to have been originally an owl (pp. 134, 255). It will mean either 'flying-bird (*pu*)-destroying' or 'flying males and females (*hbri*) or 'flying bird-males being weak females': see p. 217).

The word *hldyañ* remains, however, the most puzzling in the whole text, and perhaps has several different senses. The obscure expression *hldyañ-hkah* has been mentioned *supra* (p. 317). In regard to *hldyañ-hyu* (ll. 122, 369, 372, 387) we can only mention the possibility that it means 'high country' (cf. the Tibetan *yul-mtho* = Tibet) and that it is virtually a Proper Name, being a designation of the land of the Ch'iang tribes, and that this is the explanation of the racial term, in Tibetan *Hjañ*, appearing in the name of the Tang-hsiang country and in the dynastic name, *Lyang* of the T'ang-chang kingdom therein.



## 2. Z

Nam *z* = Tib. *z* has been recognized in *hzaḥ*, 'wife' (p. 240), *hzu*, *gzu*, 'ass' (p. 251-2), *bzod*, 'bear' (p. 166). But the great rarity of *z* in Nam words and the fact that in Tibetan it is not very common and frequently alternates with *dz* (e.g. in *hḍzin/zin*, *gzuñs*, *hḍzur/zur*, *hḍzar/bzar/gzar*, *hḍzag/gzags/zags/gzag/zag*) suggests that some equivalents of Nam words with *dz* may be found in Tibetan forms with *z*. We may here overlook the probability that Tibetan *z* was originally derived from *dz* under the same conditions as *ž* from *j*, i.e. when preceded by *g* or *b* (*supra*, pp. 325-6).

Tibetan *dz* is also frequently confused with *j*, to such an extent indeed that Sanskrit *j* is normally in the texts represented by *dz* (as are *c* and *ch* by *ts* and *tsh*). The substitution, very easy in the script, is perhaps not merely orthographical: being very widespread and not recent, it may point to an indiscriminated 'phoneme' or to dialectical variation. It cannot have been derived from Kashmir, the very country where the signs for *ts*, *tsh*, *dz*, were invented for the purpose of the discrimination.

1. *gdzu*, *hḍzu*, *gzu*, *hzu*, *hju*, 'ass'.

This has been discussed *supra* (pp. 251-2, Tib. *gzu-lum*).

2. *hḍzaḥ*, *hjaḥ*, *gzo*, *hḍzo*, *hjo* = Tib. *za*, *bzaḥ*, *bzas*, *zos*, *bzos*, 'eat', 'food', *zan*, *gzan*, 'food', 'eat': (*hkhen*).

*bos-smyi-hḍdog-dze-hraḥ-lḍaḥ-ge-hḍzaḥ* ||, 42-3

'under a master who is a perverse person, the people of the place are eaten [sc. by him] (or possibly "enemies there are friends", p. 313)'

*hbañ-hḍlaḥ-hne-ge-hkeḥu-me-hḍzaḥ* ||, 171

'good authorities eat the fire of profit (p. 316)'

(In l. 172 we find 'milk out the fire of speech'). Cf. *hḍaṇ-hḍzaḥ-hḍdyim-hyañ*, l. 255, 'though garbage-feeding is sweet' (*supra*, p. 327, 331).

The form *hjaḥ* appears in:

*hjaḥ-htaḥ-hkhen-yañ-swa-tseg-tseg* ||, 92-3

'though familiar with (Tib. *mkhyen*), or quick at (Tib. *skyen*), eating, the teeth (Tib. *so*) are checked, checked'.

On *tseg* see *supra*, p. 294. But the sense here might be 'chatter' (onomatopoeic): cf. Tib. *tseg-tseg-byed*, 'rustle' (like dry leaves, &c.).

*gzo* in:

h̄bos-h̄nom-h̄saḥ-gtsaḥ-h̄rgu-ma-gzo ||, 164-5

'crops of land enjoyed by the master thieves do (shall?)  
see p. 199) not eat'.

On *hrgu* see p. 233.

The meaning 'eat' is suggested, by the above-cited *h̄keḥu-me-h̄dzah*, for *h̄jo*, *h̄dzo*, in:

r̄ne-h̄po-h̄ldo-ge-h̄keḥu-prom-h̄jo-na, 177

h̄r̄ne-h̄po-h̄ñe-ge-h̄koḥu-prom-h̄dzoh̄ ||, 361-2

'enemy (fiend) braves eat the profit (speech, p. 316)-making'.

3. *h̄joh̄o* = Tib. *bzo*, 'manufacture', 'trade', 'craft', 'make', *bzo*,  
*zo*, 'figure', 'fashion', 'art', *thag-bzo*, 'rope-making'.

g-rah̄-h̄yos-h̄tag-ge-h̄joh̄o ||, 34

'the earthquake acted as a mill' (*supra*, p. 275).

4. *h̄dze* = Tib. *ze*, *zeḥu*, 'hump', 'cushion', *gzed*, 'carry', *mjed*,  
'convey', 'bear', perhaps related to *h̄dzed*, 'hold out' and *bzod*,  
'endure', 'forgive': (*hyaṅ*; *spyi*; *h̄kab*).

hyaṅ-so-h̄dze-tse-h̄ldi-ma-h̄rtah̄ ||, 63

'when the load is too big (Tib. *yaṅs*?), the horse does not fly  
(gallop)'

spyi-h̄dze-ge-h̄kab |||, 110

'the chief (Tib. *spyi-bo*) burden [sc. responsibility] is the  
family (Tib. *khab*)'.

5. *h̄dzeḥu* = Tib. *gze-re*, 'weak', 'reduced', *bze*, *bze-re*, 'pain'  
(endurance?), *zed*, 'damaged', 'injured'?

h̄dzeḥu-r̄je-h̄bro-re-h̄dzoh̄u-h̄to-h̄run, 138

'when a weak chief flees, one must be a man (*h̄dzoh̄u*,  
pp. 218).

6. *h̄dzon* = Tib. *zon*, *gzon* 'take care', 'keep watch over', e.g. the  
tongue or feet (cf. *dgra-zon*, 'military guard-post') (*sto*, *the-the*).  
*sto-the-the-re-stor-h̄tah̄-h̄dzon*, 336-7

'the rope being pulled, pulled (Tib. *the-re-then*, "pull straight",  
*h̄then*, "pull (a rope, &c.)"), running away is guarded  
against'.

7. *sla* = Tib. *zla*, 'friend'.

h̄ldaṅ-h̄kraṅ-h̄we-dze-h̄ldaṅ-slaḥ-h̄keḥe, 125

'doing uprightness, one gains upright (or helping) friends'  
(see p. 289)

8. *slo*, *slos* = Tib. *zlo*, 'summon', 'call', *zlos*, 'a charm', *zla-ba*, *bzla-ba*, *bzlas*?<sup>1</sup> (*hsus*, *gsus*).

*rta-hgam-hphar-re-hsus-slo-glo*, 93

*rta-hgam-hphar-[re-]gsus-slo-stah*, 99

'the horse being gone to the *hgam*, intending to call (or expecting) a party to receive him. . . (those called (or who came forth) to receive him)'.

*Hsus/gsus*, Aorist of *bsu*, 'advance to meet a visitor', a common usage in Tibet and Central Asia. It will be noted that *slo-stah* = *slos-ta*, as in analogous cases.

9. *slug*, l. 47, is uncertain,<sup>2</sup> as also is *hdam-sleg*, ll. 346, 351. *slug*, l. 359 = *slog*, ll. 174, 384 = Tib. *zlog*, *bzlog*, 'turn back', 'repel', 'divert', *bzlog*, 'contrary', *slog*, 'turn', 'invert', 'return' (*g-yul-bzlog*, 'repel in battle', 'a victorious battle').

*hnu-glañ-slog*, 174, 359 (*slug*), 'turned back the young oxen'.  
*hrsehi-hpag-slog-dze-hrne-hrom-ge-hti-na-hrne-ge-hrlomhi*[:], 384-5

'the peaks (*hrsehi* also l. 208, = *se*, *hse*, Tib. *rtse*) having sunk down, in the darkness of the fiends' gloomy (cavity) the fiends hanker (or are conceited, *hrlom* = Tib. *rlom*)'.

### 3. W

The *w*, which in the Tibetan alphabet has existed from the first, has not been in very frequent use. Words commencing with it are few, the best known being *wa*, 'fox'; and, although, as a subscript letter, the sign is allowed to follow as many as sixteen of the other consonants, the words exhibiting that feature are not very numerous, some of them, e.g. *śwa/śa*, 'stag', *śwa/śa*, 'blood', showing alternative forms, and others being rather out-of-the-way terms. But some are fairly familiar, e.g. *zwa*, 'cap', *grwa*, 'school', *phywa*, 'lot', *rtswa*, *zwa*, 'nettle', 'grass', *khwa*, 'raven', *lwa*, 'blanket'—many of these,<sup>3</sup> again, being often written without the *w*.

Nam, like Hsi-hsia, presents a relatively large percentage of *w*'s, both initial (if we disregard the Prefix *h*) and subscript. It has, moreover, forms (*g-wah*, *g-we*, &c.) with Prefix *g*- written

<sup>1</sup> But perhaps *slo* may rather be = Hsi-hsia *sloḥ* = 'come forth' (Nevsky, no. 103).

<sup>2</sup> But being connected with *hñed* (see p. 251) it may be related to Tib. *ldug/blug/zlug/bzlug*, 'pour', 'cast metal', &c.

<sup>3</sup> e.g. *śa*, *phyā*, *ri-dags* in the Tibetan Manuscripts.



separately, parallel to forms (*g-ri*, &c.) from *r*- roots and *y*- roots (*g-yah*, &c.): see p. 168. When *h* is prefixed (*hgwah* = *g-wah* = *hwa*), the subscript form is used: properly the *h* should not be prefixed to *g*, with which it commonly alternates; there do not seem to be parallel cases with *y*- and *r*-.

A. INITIAL *w*- in Nam, descended from *b*-, may be seen in:

1. *we*, *hwe*, *hwehe*, *wehi*, *hwehi*, *g-we*, *g-wehe*, *g-wehi* = Tib. *byed*, 'do', 'make' = Hsi-hsia *we*.

In the Tibetan *byed* the *y* may have been originally a phonetic accretion, as in *mye*, 'fire', &c., in the old orthography: this is suggested by the form *bas*, assumed by the Aorist *byas*, when used in the sense of 'done with', 'enough of that'.

It is not necessary to exemplify this word, which in cases like *hldañ-hkrañ-hwe*, 'doing uprightness', *hrah-hwehi-hrtah*, 'room-making horse', has been frequently mentioned. On the *hi* in *hwehi*, as being syntactical, see pp. 190-2.

2. *hwas*, *hwa(s)-ste* = Tib. *bas*, 'done for', 'done with', *wa*, *hwa*, *hwañ*, *g-wah*, *hgwā*; °*bzer*, °*hrño*; *rkwa* (*g-roñ*; *hkañ*; *gla*; *rko*; *glog*).

In:

gdzu-ḥbyi-ḥnañ-re-ḥmañ-ḥri-hwas ||, 308

'if "little tiger" (the ass) is in it, the great mountain is done for'

the phrase *hmañ-ḥri-hwas* is proved to have the meaning here given by *hmañ-sta-meñi*, 'greatness is not there' of l. 311, followed by:

gdzu-ḥbyi-ḥnañ-re-ḥri-staḥ-meñi

'if "little tiger" is in it, the mountain is not there'

and further repetitions of *ḥri(g-riñi*, &c.)-*sta-meñi*. Hence it is clear that *hwas* = Tib. *bas*.

The same *hwas*, slightly disguised, is seen in the *hwa-ste*(= *hwas-te*) of:

ḥde-me-ḥtaḥ-g-roñ-ḥyed-ge-ta-hwa-ste-ḥtaḥ ||, 71-2

'fires of prosperity, with cooling (Tib. *grañ* ?), or dying (Tib. *groñ* ?),<sup>1</sup> emissions, are done for'

an interpretation confirmed by:

ḥwa-ste-ḥge-dze-ḥla-ḥram-ḥte ||, 73

'with exhausted good fortune the moon consorts'

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 269, 273.

repeated (with *lah* for *hla*) in ll. 75-6, where it is preceded by:

hwa-ste-hgehe-dze-dgu-htor-hbyi  
'in exhausted good fortune the great heat diminishes'.

This being so, it is probable that the frequently recurring *wa/hwa/hwah* is the old Present stem of the same Verb; and, since these seem to incline to the signification of *forcible* action, it is also possible that Tib. *hbañ*, 'seizure', 'distrain (liability to)' *hbañ-gan* (*gan*), 'contractual obligation', is of the same origin: but see p. 346. A more ordinary notion of 'doing', 'making', may be seen in:

gsom-wa-hyo, 178-9, 'thought-making fluctuates'  
hmu-wa-rño, 309, 'able to make cold'  
hwad-hwah-rño, 335, 'able to keep watch'  
hkya-wa(hwa)-ñe(hñe), 162, 215, 339, 'harming work upon crops'  
hdrab-hwa-hrañ, 162, 172, 'delighting in making snatchings'.

A more definite note of action is seen in:

hbri-re-hrdyam-re-hkkañ-hldañ-hñaghi  
hdzoñu-ro-hldi-re-hjoñu || hwa-hkañ, 137  
'all females being restrained (?), let the speakers give voice';  
'this being a place for males (p. 218), it is for males to act and speak'

where *hwa-hkañ* perhaps corresponds to such phrases in Tibetan as *hgro-kha*, 'time of going' (p. 314).

Agricultural 'work' is indicated in:

gsañ-rkañ-gla[-]r[e]-hwah-hrog-hldoñ  
hwah-hrog-rño-ge-hkeg-rko-hwad, 333-4  
'If difficult or steep (*rkañ*, see p. 329) land is hired, helpers in the work desert;  
With capable helpers in the work the *hkeg* (checked?) hoe (*rko*) is alert'

in which passage the use of *gla*, 'wages', as a Verb 'hire', is paralleled by a Central-Asian document (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 273. A. 3). The mixed expression *hwah-glañ-hrsañ-hgam*, ll. 228-9 will also contain the notion of 'wage of work'; while *hwah-hrañ*, l. 353, may be merely 'place (or room) for action'. Similarly in:

po-rbom-hnor-[re]-hldog-g-yah-to-dze-hwa-ne-hphe, 317

'If the big man is a fool, then, becoming recalcitrant, good work (*hgwa-nehu*, l. 41) is weak (?)'<sup>1</sup>

h̥tsaḥ-hdzaḥ-hyaḥ-ge-hwaḥ-ne-hbraḥ ||

smyi-glog-g-yah-ge || h̥waḥ-hrio-hjam-hma, 268-9

'With a wise supervisor in front, good work flourishes':

'With a lightning man in front, the work-capable are pleased (agreeable?)' cf. *hldoḥu-hjam-r̥no*, p. 322,

to which sentiment an interesting analogy may be seen in a passage of one of the Tibetan manuscripts:

'Work done by a believer in work: is like lightning (*glog*) even at night'.

But agriculture reappears in:

h̥waḥ-hldaḥra-h̥tsaḥra-na-h̥wa-rgya-h̥rko-h̥rkabs, 270-1

'Work in woodland or cornland (?),<sup>2</sup> work plain hoe . . .'

Possibly the notion of 'forcible action' or 'constraint' is to be recognized in:

h̥s̥i-h̥wa-h̥ko, 123, 'death-action (= death) is *h̥ko* (supreme? sole?)'.

As *h̥waḥ*, *g-waḥ*, *h̥wa*, *hgwaḥ*, the word with this signification appears repeatedly in the long passage (ll. 223 sqq.) beginning:

h̥tor-h̥broḥ-h̥rpag-re-h̥waḥ-h̥r̥saḥ-h̥lam̥hi

g-waḥ-h̥r̥saḥ-h̥nar-[re-]h̥rkwa-h̥dzam-h̥troḥhi

'The great yak to be brought low, a journey of hostile action:

Hostile action accomplished, mild command to be led in'.

Here the word *h̥r̥saḥ*, which has occurred with *h̥swa*, 'surveillance' (l. 321), and in ll. 225, 226 with *lad*, as equivalent to *h̥saḥ-h̥lad*, ll. 226-7, should mean 'hostility' or 'hate'. *H̥rkwa*, since in l. 122 we read *h̥rta-r̥kwa-h̥dzam*, 'the horse's rule (?) was mild', must have a sense akin to that of 'rule', 'command': see *infra*, pp. 343-4.

Another instance of the same sense may be seen in:

h̥waḥ-[h̥]t[i]b-b̥zer ||, 18-19, 'violence brings down (Tib. *rtib*,

"break or pull down" *rdib*, "crumble" (of a house, &c.),

*ltib*, "fall through") the fort'

where, however, the preceding word *h̥bar* is not clear. With *h̥waḥ* the word *b̥zer*, not given in the Tibetan dictionaries, but frequent

<sup>1</sup> *H̥phe*, perhaps identical with the *ph̥eḥ* of the Berlin fragment (l. 3), is of uncertain meaning, though clearly antithetical to *h̥braḥ*. Can it be a form of *h̥phen* (cf. *h̥dre/h̥dren*, &c.), 'throw away', and so with *h̥phaḥ/phaḥ*, 'loss', *ph̥oḥs/h̥ph̥oḥs*, 'poor', &c.?

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *gsaḥ-re-h̥tsaḥ-re*, 'lands and crops', p. 281.



in seventh-to-ninth century personal names and occurring in the Tibetan manuscript *Chronicle* as designation of some war-structure which was 'built' (*dgra-bzer-brtsigs*), is conjoined again in the expression *hwa-bzer*, l. 231, of the Nam text: since it is first *hśid*, 'high', and then *hrpag*, 'brought low', it is evidently here, also, a building, like *hkhar*, *hbam*, *hkañ*, and other objects to which these terms are applied. Thus it seems certain that *hwa-bzer* means 'bzer of power or government or control'. The rarity of *z* in Nam suggests that it is a loan-word from Tibetan, which itself may have acquired it by borrowing. In l. 177 we *hkoñu-prom-bzer*.

The above include all the occurrences of *wa*, *hwañ*, *hgwañ*, &c., except *hwi-wa* (*hwa*), ll. 201, 273, to be noted *infra* (p. 341), *hyah-wa-hkañ*, l. 190, which all belong elsewhere.

The employment of *wa* with Verbs, as in *gsom-wa*, 'thought-making', *śi-hwa*, 'death-making (or power)', *hwad-hwañ-rño*, 'able to keep watch', and at the same time with Nouns or Adjectives (*hkya*, *hmu*) may throw light upon the origin of the Tibetan Verb- and Noun-suffix *ba* (*pa*).

3. *hwam*, 'mansion', 'dwelling' = Tib. *bam/bams/boms*; (see pp. 225, 243).

4. *hwag* = Tib. *hbag*, 'be defiled':

*hrgyeb-hkruñu-hbro-re-g-yah-hpañ-hwag*, 323-4

'when the rear has a filth-taste (malodour?), the lap in front is defiled'.

5. *hwad* = Tib. *hbad*, 'watch', 'be alert, earnest', *hbod*, 'call', 'call to', 'invite'.

*mye-hyañ-hwad*, 6, 'fire also is awake'

*hsehe-hwad-hwad*, 14, 'the peaks nodded, nodded' (?)

*tho-rgyam-ge-hwad*, 109, 'watching [at] the boundary-slabs'

*rgyed-hdre-hte-ge-hcog-hdo-dze-hwad*, 87-8, 'the disunion-inducers keep watch on union'

*hri-hci-hwadhi*, 300-1, 'watch those coming to (or moving on) the mountain'

*hwad-hldañ-krañ*, 268, 'uprightness keeps watch',

*hkeg-rko-hwad*, 334, 'the stopped hoe wakes up'?

*hwad-hwañ-rño*, 335, 'able to keep watch'.

*Hbod* may have a related sense in:

*hmor-hso-hbod-ge*, 313.

The text contains no instance of *wo* or *wu*, while *hbo* is frequent,

and *hbu* and *hbog* also occur: hence before *o* and *u* the change of *b* to *w* may not have taken place in Nam itself.

6. *hwar* = Tib. *hbar*, 'burn': (*hdag*).

*bro-ta-sodtsa-re-hwar-ta-rgyen*(n)i, 198

'the corpses being laid low (?), burning is difficult'.

In l. 28, where an earthquake is in question, *hwar* probably will have the same sense, though an apparent imperfection in the text renders it uncertain whether *hdag-hpo**ho*, which *might* be = Tib. *mdag*, 'embers', is really the subject of the Verb. For other reasons *hrai-war-hpai-re*, l. 101, *hrai-hwar-rders-hdi-na*, l. 107, *cha-ru-hwars* (perhaps Aorist) *-ge*, l. 203, must likewise be left obscure.

7. *hwi-hwa* (*wa*) = Tib. *byi-ba*, 'mouse', 'rat':

*klag-hrwad-hdzur-[re-]hwi-hwehi-htsag*, 173

'if the harsh-voiced lammergeyer (or eagle) is away, the mice or rats gather' (p. 257)

*hso-hldah-hgor-re-hwi-wa-rmañ*, 201,

'if the living delay, mice or rats are the tomb'

*hwi-hwa-se-kyah-hkyah-hdzam-re-hldan* ||, 273-4

'to their mice-injured crops the serfs returned tame'

(cf. the *gsañ-hrah-htoñ-kyā*, 'enemy-abandoned crops' of the preceding verse).

8. *hwyir* = Tib. *hbyer*, 'escape': (*hsag*):

*hño-sto-ge-hsag-dze-rñe-hwe-ge-hwyir* ||, 85

'while friends talk (Tib. *sags*), enmity-doers escape'.

9. *hwen* = Tib. *dben*, 'solitary' (?):

*hlab-ta-hwen*, 159, 'speaking is empty ( )'.

A Hsi-hsia *wen* is given as meaning 'bad' (Laufer, No. 17).

10. *hwañ* = Tib. *dbañ*, 'power', &c. (or Chinese *wang*?)

*hldañ-rgye-hdor-re-hwañ-ta-hnen*, 209-10

'After throwing away the big stick (? strong support, *hldañ* ?), ruling is a risk'

*ram* (nam ?)-*ge-hwañ* || *re-klu-ge-hwañ* ||, 5

'... being in authority, the blind were in authority'.

11. *weihi/hweih*, 'cream' (p. 251)?

In regard to alternation of *w*(*hw*) and *b*(*hb*) see p. 346.

B. POST-CONSONANTAL *w*: Here a distinction should be made according as the consonant seems, from the point of view of

actual Nam or Tibetan morphology, to be (a) not a Prefix, or (b) a Prefix. The Prefix having been felt as a separable element, the following sound might, or might not, have been exempted from being influenced by it.

(a) the consonant not a Prefix.

1. *swa* = Tib. *so/śwa*, 'watch', 'guard', &c.:

See *supra*, pp. 276-7.

2. *swa/ḥswa/ḥswaḥ/śwaḥ* = Tib. *so*, 'tooth':

See p. 334.

3. *ḥswar/ḥsor* = Tib. *sor*, 'finger' (*ḥtsam*; *bzod*).

*ḥswar-ḥldu-sto* (= *ḥldu-sto*)-*dze*, 26, 'in a closing of the fingers [sc. a moment]'.

The form *ḥsor* in:

*gāi-brom-ḥnu-ge-ḥsor-ḥtsam-bzod*, 72

'those whose strength is cut away by death support [only] as much as a finger'

may be a Tibetanism, since the *ḥtsam* (Tib. *tsam*) and *bzod* also are ἀπαξ εἰρημένα: *brom* = Tib. *ḥgrum*, 'pinch or nip off', see pp. 366-7.

4. *sweḥe* = Tib. *sbe*, 'wrestle'?; but we should expect *rbe*.

*g-waḥ-ḥram-myer-re-ḥldag-nag-sweḥe*, 129-30

'united action (power?) being non-existent, the black-back contended (raised contention?)'

Tib. *sbed*, 'hide', is perhaps less apposite.

5. *thwañ* = Tib. *than*, 'value', 'measure' (*dwañ*, *rwañ*).

The most certain instance, since *ḥbañ-thwañ* must be = Tib. *dbañ-than*, 'might', 'luck', 'destiny', is:

*ḥbar-ḥbañ-thwañ-byiñ* ||, 97, 'in the middle (= secondly) authority declines' (echoed in *ḥbar-thwañ*, l. 98).

Also in:

*gnaḥ-ma-dwañ-dze-ḥkhab-rgye-ge-ḥthwañ* ||, 280

'over places not brilliant (? *dwañs* = *dwañ* ll. 364-5, *rwañ* l. 178) the great houses have authority'.

6. *twañ* = Tib. *thon*, 'ram'? (*mñar*; *neḥe*).

*twañ-mag-ḥnor*, 48, 'in a fight of rams'

*g-rub-ḥgoḥo-ḥdag-ci-twañ-mñar-ḥsogna* ||, 261-2

'those who had their doors rushed (*ḥrub*, pp. 221, 343) divided the rams under control (*mñar* Locative of *mñah*?)'



twan-ḥdzam-nehe, 276, 'the rams tamely—' (The next two verses refer to the dogs and goats: *nehe* is conceivably onomatopoeic, meaning 'bleat').

7. *hgweg-hwehe* = Tib. *sgeg-byed*, 'charmer' [sc. 'wife'] or *hgeg-bye*, 'husband'?

*hgweg-hwehe-hphah-hphah-dze-hthar-phyan-ge-hrub* ||, 348-9

On *hphah-hphah*, 'laugh', see p. 248, n. 3.

8. *hkhwi-htsa* = 'elder', 'old'? = Hsi-hsia *dwi*, *dwiḥ*, *wi* (Nevsky, No. 134), Jyā-ruñ *kā-woi*, Menia *khwa-khwa*? (*gdes*).

*hkhwi-htsa-hyog-hdag-ci-hrañ-hdom-gdes* ||, 259-60

'elders with staves (Tib. *yog-po*) fixed (Hsi-hsia *gdeh/hdeh*, &c., "fix", "determine", Nevsky, No. 25) their decisions'.

(The previous verse speaks of the 'wise' (*še*) and 'brave' (*hpah*), and the two following verses of 'children' (*hsas*).)

9. *rwa/hrwa* = Tib. *rwa*, 'horn', cf. *ru*, 'horn' (*hkar*; *hya*; *hpog*; *hdaḥ*; *sbyim*).

*hriñ-rwa-hkar-re-hñañ-hya-htsag* ||, 44-5

'the long-horn [sc. ram] being penned, the female sheep come together'

Here *hkar*, as in ll. 151, 204, is connected with Tib. *skar/sgar/dgar*, &c., 'pen cattle, &c.', 'set apart', 'make an encampment': *hya*, 'sheep', see *supra*, p. 94: *hñañ* = Chinese *niang*, 'woman'.

*sbyim-hce-rgye-dze-hrwa-hdaḥ-hpog* ||, 59

'on a *sbyim* (? "target", Tib. *hgyim*, "circumference") which is large the horn [sc. bow, Tib. *rwa-gzu*] plants the arrow'

(*Hdaḥ* = Tib. *mdaḥ*, 'arrow', as in l. 58, pp. 300-1: *hpog* = Tib. *hphog* (in manuscript also *pog*), 'hit' (with an arrow, &c.).)

10. *hrkwa/rkwa* = Tib. *bkaḥ*, 'command' (*rkaḥ*).

*hrta-rkwa-ḥdzam*, 122, 'the horse's rule was mild', (cf. Tib. *bkaḥ-drin*, 'kind', 'kindness')

*g-waḥ-hrñañ-hnar*[-*r*][*e*]-*hrkwa-ḥdzam-htronḥi*, 224

'hostile force having been accomplished, mild rule is to be brought in'.

This case raises a question of some difficulty; for in l. 84:

*hrje-smyi-rmad-ge-hmo-rkaḥ-lda-dze*

'under chiefs who are inferior men, subject to a woman's commands'

we have *rkaḥ* equivalent to Tib. *bkaḥ*. Can *rkwa* represent the same? In favour of a *rkwa* = Tib. *bkaḥ* we may call attention to the several examples of the pre-consonantal Prefixes *b*, *d*, and *m* being represented in modern Amdoan by post-consonantal *u*: such are *hual* = *dpal*, *hue* = *dpe*, *kuar-tsal* = *bkaḥ-ḥtsal*, *chuam* = *byams*, *kuak* = *bkag*, *kuam* = *mkhan*, *huon* = *dpon* (Rockhill, *The Land of the Lamas*, pp. 363-6). Again, it may be doubted whether there are in the Nam text any other examples of the *r*-Prefix corresponding to the *b*-Prefix in Tibetan, unless *rkom*/*hrkom*, ll. 157, 285, &c., is such (it might possibly be for *dkum*, cf. *dgum*).

The difficulty is, however, unsubstantial. The word *bkaḥ* declares itself by its form to be a Deverbal Derivative, presumably from a Verb *ḥkhaḥ*, connected with *kha*, 'mouth', 'speech', &c. Accordingly, it may have taken in Nam the *r*-Prefix; in Tibetan it is, in fact, found with this Prefix in the Aorist form *brkas*. Hence it is quite possible that the Nam may have had both a *rkaḥ* and a *brkaḥ*; and the latter, if it became *rkwa*, may have survived by the side of the former, possibly with a slightly different sense, 'rule' instead of 'command'.

11. *hrwaṇ* = Tib. *braṇ*, 'dwelling-place' (*ḥkaṇ-ḥkaṇ*):

*ḥñor-ḥlaḥ-ḥwam-ḥsid-dze-hrwaṇ-ḥkaṇ-ḥkaṇ* ||, 11

'on the estates, in the high mansions or settlements, the dwelling-places were in confusion (?)'

*Ḥkaṇ-ḥkaṇ* (onomatopoeic?) recurs in l. 184.

The etymology of Tib. *braṇ* being unknown, the equation is uncertain (from *brwaṇ*?). That Nam *hrw* should be descended from mere *br* does not seem possible in view of the many instances of *br* = Tib. *br*. On *rwaṇ*/*dwaṇ* see p. 342.

The remaining words *kwa-kwa*, l. 363, *ḥkwaṇ* (? reading), l. 212, *ḥkweḥe*, l. 131, *ḥdwa*, l. 148, *ḥwaṇ*, ll. 361, 362, *tsweḥu*, l. 196, *ḥtswe*, l. 6, *dzwe*, l. 367, *ḥdzwe*, ll. 36, 39, *swaṇ* (= Tib. *son*?), ll. 337, 340, 341, *swad*, ll. 203, 390, are of unascertained meaning. See, however, the Vocabulary.

Concerning *tsweḥu*, *ḥtswe*, *ḥdzwe*, see p. 269. *Kwa-ka* occurs in Mānyak with the meaning 'night', *khwa-khwa* in Menia = 'old'. As a mere possibility it may be mentioned that *ḥwaṇ*, which in the text is associated with *sṇa*, a known variant of Tib. *gṇa*, 'surety', 'witness', may itself be = Tib. *dpaṇ*, which has the same significations.

(b) The consonant a Prefix:

1. *rwye* (l. 50 *rbye*)<sup>1</sup> = Tib. *dbye* (a) 'extent', (β) 'divided':

(a) See p. 267.

(β) *rta-htsog-hram-ge-htaḥ-rwe-htaḥ* ||, 90-1  
'the horse's friendships are divided, broken'.

On *htaḥ* in *rwye-htaḥ* see p. 267.

2. *hrwad* = Tib. *rbad* (a) 'harsh voice', (b) 'a kind of eagle':

Concerning:

*hrwad-hbañ-prom-yañ-hkoḥu-me-hdrab-na* ||

*klag-hrwad-hdzur-[re-]hwi-hwehi-htsag*, 172-3, see p. 257.

*hgru-ma-hkom-re-hrwad-hmoñ-hldaḥ*, 32-3

Here a doubt as to reading (*hman*?) creates some uncertainty: otherwise the meaning would be 'harsh voices or the harsh-voiced clamour multiplied' or 'was confused' (p. 309).

3. *rwe*, *rwer*, *hrwehi*: (*rgor*; *hbar*; *hmo-cha*).

That this word means substantially 'end' is clear in:

*rgor-hyos-hbom-byiñ-hbar-hbañ-thwañ-byiñ* ||

*rwer-hmo-hchaḥ-byiñ-htsog-hram-myiñ*

*rgor-hyos-hbar-thwañ-hkhor-kyañ-rwehi-re-hmo-cha-byi-na-phyi-hse-myi*, 96-8

'At the door (*rgor*) — sinks; in the middle (*hbar*, Tib. *bar*) luck or authority sinks;

At the end (*rwer*) the women's part (*hchaḥ/cha*) sinks: friendship is a name:

At the door —, in the middle power, retinue also being ended (*rwehi*),

The women's part sinking, injury from outside is not (the cause: it is disunion)'.

It appears therefore that *rwe*, in itself meaning 'end', gives rise to a Verb meaning 'puts an end to'. The etymology is not apparent; but the same signification may be seen in:

*hldañ-krañ-hrwehi* ||, 113, 'uprightness is at an end'

*hldañ-rmañ-hrwehi* ||, 27, 'the wooden tombs were destroyed'

and possibly in *hrañ-hrah-hrwehi*, ll. 21-2; in *hrwehi-gtsu-ge-hrnas*, l. 214, the last word is of uncertain reading (= *brñas*, 'despised'?).

<sup>1</sup> *Hbye* in l. 223, perhaps also in l. 131, seems to mean 'is divided' (Intransitive Verb = Tib. *hbye*).



4. *g-we*, *g-wehi*, *g-wehe*:

These, being formed by aid of the living Prefix *g* to the Verb *we* (p. 337), require no discussion.

On *g-wah* = *hwañ*, see p. 339.

5. *rwyn* in:

*hnañ-hrañ-ge-rwyn* ||, 33

is of uncertain meaning: perhaps connected with *hbyin*, *hbyin*, 'sink', 'grow faint'.

A question as to the limits of fluctuation between *w* and *b* after Prefixes is raised by the certain case of *rwye/rbye*.

No notice need be taken of inconsistencies as between different words: in a language using Prefixes the conditions of occurrence of the same initial consonant in two different roots may be entirely different: it is therefore not at all disconcerting to find that in Nam *hwar* = Tib. *hbar* always has *w*, while *hbar* = Tib. *bar* has *b*. In the spelling of particular words the Nam text seems to be noticeably consistent in this respect: besides the above-mentioned *rwye/rbye* the only cases calling for examination are those of *hbañ* and *hbañ*.

*Hbañ*: in the phrase *hro-hbehi-hbañ*, 'wolf oppressing sheep', the word *hbañ*, which can hardly fail to be = Tib. *hbañ*, 'distrain', has everywhere *b*. This fact casts doubt upon the suggested (p. 338) connexion between that word and the Verb *we*, 'do', along with *hwa*, 'action', 'power'.

*Hbañ*: This, which is, beyond doubt, the regular equivalent in the Nam text of Tib. *dbañ*, 'power', has beside it a form *hwañ* with analogous signification: perhaps its meaning is restricted to that of 'rule', 'government', and it has been suggested *supra*, p. 341, that it is really = Chinese *wang*.<sup>1</sup>

Post-consonantal *w*, as both present and absent in *rkwa/rkañ*, has been discussed *supra* (pp. 343-4), where the possibility of a special explanation has been considered. But, furthermore, the *thwañ* found (p. 342) to be equivalent to Tib. *than*, 'value', 'measure', can hardly be different from the *hthañ* of *hldi-hthañ*, ll. 132, 133, 'of this measure', or the repeated *hyañ (g-yañ)-hthañ*, ll. 286-8, 'in the ascendant', 'superior', from the corresponding *hthañ* of ll. 289, 290, or the *hyañ-hthañ* of ll. 315, 318. It does not seem possible to bring in Tib. *than*, (1) 'clear', 'serene', (2) 'tail', (3) 'enduring',

<sup>1</sup> The word *hbañ/bañ* may have other senses also, one of which may be (e.g. in ll. 67, 249-51, 373, 386, 390) that of Tib. *hbañs*, 'a subject'.

'strong', 'tight'. It is, therefore, likely that *thwan* is the original form of which the *w*, lost in Tibetan, was *occasionally* preserved in Nam.

*Hthan*, 'plain', 'steppe', = Tib. *than*, is never, in its frequent occurrences, spelled with the *w*.

#### 4. r-Prefix; r-final

##### *r*-Prefix:

A complete distinction between Prefix and not-Prefix is not feasible. For, on the one hand, it is impossible to say what groups of initial consonants were existent or frequent in early periods of Tibeto-Burman, and, on the other hand, forms originally containing Prefixes may attain in course of time the value of roots, and with different Prefixes different secondary roots could develop from one original; and each such development may have had a different date and local range. The least unreliable indications of a Prefix still felt to be such are (a) variation, including that between presence and absence, of Prefix, and (b) analogy of similar cases. Of course, where the variation is in accordance with a grammatical system or the Prefix discharges a function, there is no doubt: thus, when *blan(s)* and *glan* alternate in a certain way, we may be sure that their connexion with the original *len* is not yet extinct.

In comparing Nam words having apparent Prefixes with Tibetan equivalents we have to reckon with variation on both sides: as regards Tibetan, even the dictionary attests an amount and range of variation of which the common orthography affords no conception: the double Prefix *br-* often, for example, alternates with *bs-*; and in the old manuscripts from Central Asia there are many more abnormalities, both orthographical and morphological. Hence we can never say that a Nam form containing a particular Prefix was not with that Prefix existent in Tibetan: we can say only that it has not been found. Subject to this proviso, the factual correspondence and divergences in respect of the *r*-Prefix may be classified as follows:

*r-* = Tib. *r-*:

*rko/hrko* = Tib. *rko*, 'dig', &c.

*hrgah, hrgan* = Tib. *rga, rgan*, 'old', 'grow old'.

*rgu/hrgu* = Tib. *rku* (*rkun, lku, rgu*, &c.), 'steal', 'thief'.

*hrgod* = Tib. *rgod*, 'wild'.

*rgya/rgyah/hrgyah* = Tib. *rgya*, 'plane surface'.

*rgyag* = Tib. *rgyag*, 'form', 'found', 'put', &c.

*rgyañ/hrgyaṅs* = Tib. *rgyañ*, 'extent', 'extensive', 'far', 'hasten'.

*hrgyu* = Tib. *rgyu*, 'material'.

*rgyeb/hrgyeb*, *rgyeb*s = Tib. *rgyab*, 'back', 'throw back', &c.

*rgyo/hrgyo/rgyohō/rgyon/rgyohōn* = Tib. *rgyo/rgyon*, 'copulari'.

*rñam/hrñam* = Tib. *rñam*, 'threat', 'alarm'.

*hrñu* = Tib. *rñu*, 'pain'.

*rñe/hrñe/hrñeḥe* = Tib. *rñe*, 'fiend', 'enemy'.

*rño/hrño/hrñohō* = Tib. *rño*, 'able', 'power'.

*rje/hrje/rdze* = Tib. *rje*, 'chief', 'king'.

*rjes* = Tib. *rjes*, 'trace', 'aftermark'.

*rta(h)*, *hrtah* = Tib. *rta*, 'horse'.

*rto/hrto* = Tib. *rdo*, 'stone'.

*hrdag* = Tib. *rdeg*, *rdeg*s, 'smite', 'thrust'.

*rma* = Tib. *rma*, 'wound'.

*rma* = Tib. *rma*, 'ask' (l. 47 ?).

*rmañ* = Tib. *rmañ*, (a) 'tomb', (b) 'dream', 'imagine'.

*hrmoḥo* ('shake' ? l. 18), *rmon* ('dream', 'imagine' ? l. 349) =

Tib. *rmañ*, 'dream', 'imagine', *rmoñ*, 'be dazed, dizzy' ?

*rtsig/hrtsig* = Tib. *rtsig*, 'carpenter'.

*rdzogs* = Tib. *rdzogs*, 'completed'.

*hrdzoñ(hdzoñ)* = Tib. *rdzoñ(hdzoñ)*, 'castle'.

*hrwad* = Tib. *rbad*, 'harsh-voiced', 'eagle'.

*hrlom/glom* = Tib. *rlom*, 'conceit', 'covet'.

*rse/hrse*, *se* = Tib. *rtse/se*, 'summit', 'roof'.

*r* = Tib. *r* or *d* :

*rgad* (l. 113) = Tib. *gad/dgod/rgod*, 'laugh' (?)

*r* = Tib. *r* or *s* :

*rkaḥ/hrkwa* = Tib. *bkaḥ*, *brkas*, *bskas*, 'command'.

*rgo* = Tib. *rgo/brgo/sgo*, 'door', 'gate'.

*rñi/sñi* = Tib. *rñi/sñi*, 'snare', 'noose'.

*rke* = Tib. *rke/ske*, 'lean'.

*r* = Tib. *s* (cf. 'Tangut' (*rta*)-*rga*, 'saddle', *rkhñ*, 'heart', =

*sñiñ*, Amdo *rduk* = *sdug*, &c.) :

*hrkas* = Tib. *skas*, 'ladder', 'staircase'.

*rgam* = Tib. *sgam*, 'deep'.

*rgam/hrgam* = Tib. *sgam*, 'take into company'.

*rgoñ/hrgoñ* = Tib. *sgoñ-wa*, 'egg'.

*hrgom* = Tib. *bsgoms*, 'passed over'.



*rdan*/*hrdan* = Tib. *sdañ*, 'anger', 'enmity'.

*hrdam* = Tib. *sdam*, 'bind', 'subdue'.

*rde*/*hrde*/*rdehe* = Tib. *sde*, 'class', 'troop'.

*rdo*/*hrdo* = Tib. *sdo*, 'venture'.

*hrpod* (l. 250) = Tib. *spod*, 'vow'?

*rbo*/*hrbo*, *rbom*/*hrbom* = Tib. *sbo*, *sbom*, 'swell', 'grow big'.

*rmo* (l. 250) = Tib. *smon*, 'aspiration', 'vow'?

*r* = Tib. *s* or *d*:

*rpehi*/*hrpehi* (p. 323) = Tib. *dpe*, 'example', *spe* (p. 356, *hpehi*).

*rmaḥ*, *hmaḥ* = Tib. *ma*, *sma*, *dmaḥ*, 'low'.

*rmaḍ* (but ? *smaḍ*), *hmaḍ* = Tib. *smaḍ*, (*dmaḍ*), 'low', 'make low', &c.

*r* = Tib. *s* or *d* or *r*:

*rme* = Tib. *rme*/*dme*/*sme*, 'mark', 'blemish', 'spot'.

*r* = Tib. *d* (cf. 'Tangut' *rgiu*, '9', Amdo *rka* = *dkah*, *rnyō* = *dños*, &c., Nam *rwañ*, *dwañ*, p. 344).

*rkah*/*hrkah* = Tib. *dkah*, 'steep', 'difficult'.

*hrgah* = Tib. *dgaḥ*, 'delight'.

*hrge*/*hrgehe*, *hrgehi*-*sto* (cf. *hge*, *hgehe*) = Tib. *dge*, *dges*, 'happiness', &c., 'happy', &c.

*rgoñ* = Tib. *dgon*, 'wilderness'.

*rbye*/*rweye* (cf. *rgye*, *rgyes*) = Tib. *dbye*, *dbyes*, 'extension', 'extent'.

*rpag*/*hrpag* (cf. *hpag*) 'bring low' = Tib. *dpag*, *dpags*, 'measure', 'depth'.

*rmag*/*hrmag* = Tib. *dmag*, 'army'.

*r* = Tib. *d*, *b*, or *g* (cf. 'Tangut' *rnüt* = *gñid*, Amdo *rsum* = *gsum*, *rdā* = *bzla*, &c.):

*rkah*/*hrkah* = Tib. *bkaḥ*, 'word', 'command'.

*rkom*/*hrkom* = Tib. *bkum*, 'kill', *dgum*, 'die'.

Probably here the real Tib. equivalents are *brkaḥ* and *brkum*.

*r* = Tib. *m*:

*rnab* = Tib. *mnab*, *mnabs*, 'food'.

*rdza*, *hrdzaḥ* (also *hdza*, *hdzaḥ*) = Tib. *mdzaḥ*, 'friend', 'be friendly'.

*rdzo* = Tib. *mdzo*.

*r* = Tib. *h* or *O*:

*rgyam* = Tib. *gyam* (? *rgyam* (*hgyam*)-*tshwa*), 'recess in a rock'.

*hrgyeg* = Tib. *hgegs*, 'stop', 'obstruct'.

*rgyen* = Tib. *yen*, 'put in order' (*g-yen*, 'move softly to and fro').

*rgyed/hrgyed* = Tib. *hgyed*, 'distribute', 'emit', 'divide'.

*rgyen* = Tib. *gyen*, 'uphill'.

*rgyer* = Tib. *hgyer*, 'forsake'.

*rñe/hrñe/rñye* (*ñe/hñe/ñes*) = Tib. *ñe*, *ñes*, 'be evil', 'evil'.

*rbyo* = Tib. *bya*, 'bird' (pp. 332-3).

*rmu/hrmu* = Tib. *mu*, 'boundary'.

*rdzar/hdzar* = Tib. *hjar*, 'cohere', 'meet': or = *rdza-re*?

*rdzum/hrdzum* = Tib. *hdzum*, 'smile', 'close eye'.

*hrdzur(hdzur)* = Tib. *hdzur*, 'go, or be, aside'.

A special case is:

*rle, hlde/hldehe* = Tib. *lde*, *hde*, *bde*, 'fortune', &c.

Of doubtful meaning and etymology are:

*hrjihi* (l. 213).

*hrñi* (l. 298), *rñi* (l. 389) = Tib. *rñid*, 'fade', *rñis*, 'worn out'?

*rtre, hrtehu, grtehe* (pp. 156, 313).

*rders* (l. 107); cf. Tib. *bdar*, *rdar*, 'adjust', 'grind', 'sharpen', 'polish', 'examine closely'.

*hrdyañ* (l. 202).

*hrdyam* (l. 137) = Tib. *hjoms/gzom*, 'subdue'?

*rpu* (*htsog-rpu* = Tib. *tsog-pu*, 'sitting', 'crouching'?) or is *htsog-rpu-se-chañ*, l. 91 = 'united sons of a family' (Tib. *spu/spun*), strong in wisdom?

*rbyi* (l. 375) = *byi*, *hbyi*, *hbyihi* (Tib. *dbyi*, 'wipe out'?)

*rwyin* (l. 33: see p. 346).

*spu-rbu* (l. 39), if it is = Tib. *spur-bu*, name of a certain deer (in a manuscript), is merely an orthographic variation.

*hrloho*, 'swirl' (l. 15)? cf. Tib. *mig-rlo* 'eyeing obliquely'.

It does not seem possible to consider any of the above from the point of view of 'sound change'. As has already been explained, the Prefixes were originally functional; even when the functions were become obsolescent, they remained to the linguistic sense separable elements. The *r*- and *s*-Prefixes are, no doubt, very old. But in the earliest known Tibetan the *s* was still partly functional, as is shown by the frequency of Verbs of the type of *spo*, Transitive, by the side of the type *hpho*, Intransitive. Nor can it be said that even *r* had entirely ceased to be functional: such a form as *brnañs* by the side of *bsnan*, as Aorist of the Verb *mnon/non/snon*, manifests an awareness of an alternation of *r* and *s* in a certain function.

Hence, when we find, and it is not very rarely, alternative forms where no consideration of function can be alleged, e.g. *rñi/sñi*, 'snare', *rñil/sñil*, 'ear of corn', *rke/ske*, 'thin', *rked/sked*, 'waist', *ryyan/sgyan*, 'ornament', *rme/sme*, 'spot', there is no ground for phonetical derivation of one form from the other. Both the *r* and the *s* belonged to the category of Prefixes available in the particular cases, and the choice was dictated by some fashion or tendency which need not have had invariably local limits. A striking instance is the Amdo form of the word for 'horse', which both in Nam and in Tibetan is *rta*, no doubt an original Tibeto-Burman form: by Prejevalsky, whose source was exclusively oral, the Amdo form is given as *sta*.<sup>1</sup> Accordingly, in a country where the *r*-Prefix is notably prevalent and encroaching and where Tibetan *st* is most usually represented by *rt*, the *r* has been replaced by *s* in one of its oldest instances.

Consequently, when we find that Nam has no *sg*, *sd*, *sb* (except *sbyim*), and responds with *rg*, *rd*, *rb*, to Tibetan words beginning with *sg*, *sd*, *sb*, it does not certainly follow that there has been a change of *s* > *r*. The case may be one of alternative or of substitution. A proof of this may be seen in the fact that the Tibetan manuscripts have *rman* = *sman*, 'medicine', and *brgo* = *sgo*, 'door'.

The same reasoning applies to *r* corresponding to Tibetan *d*, *b*, or *m*, all practically non-existent (*b* found only in a certain function) in Nam (pp. 166, 196). In the Tibetan manuscripts *r* is found replacing *d* in *rgum* = *dgu*, *m* in *rñen* = *mñen*, and *b* replacing *r* in *btsal* = *rtsal*. Modern Amdoan has *r* for *d* in *rka* = *dkah*, *rñö* = *dños*, *ryan* = *dbyañs*; for *b* in *rshyot* = *bskyod*, *rdä* = *bzla*; for *g* in *rtsaṅ* = *gtsaṅ*, *rsum* = *gsum*, *rdzuk* = *gzugs*; beside the above-noted *rt* = *st*, and, further, *rg* = *sg* in *rgom* = *sgom*, *rga* = *sga*, *rgo* = *sgo*; *rk* = *sk* in *rku* = *sku*, *rkad* = *skad*; *rn* = *sn* in *rna* = *sna*; *rn* = *sn* in *rnar* = *snar*; *rm* = *sm* in *rmä* = *smras*; *rt* = *lt* in *rta* = *lta*.

Absence of the *r*-Prefix of ordinary Tibetan is seen in the *gyud* (Nam *gyud/kyud*), *ḥdzoṅ* (Nam *ḥdzoṅ/hjoṅ/rdzoṅ*), of the Tibetan manuscripts. Nor can we be at all certain that the normal Tibetan form is the more original.

In cases where the Nam has *r*-Prefix lacking in ordinary Tibetan we may sometimes be able to cite a parallel without being able to furnish an explanation. Thus *rmu*, 'boundary' = Tib.

<sup>1</sup> So in Ladak (Jaeschke, *Tib. Grammar*, § 7).



*mu*, has beside it *rma* = *ma*, 'not', of the Tibetan manuscripts, and *ti-rmi*, 'man', *ti-rming*, 'name' (Tib. *miñ*, *myiñ*) of modern Gyārūng: the form *smyi* may be compared to Hōrpa *smen*, 'name'. *Rñe*, 'evil' = Tib. *ñes*, is paralleled by the *rñu* = Tib. *nu*, 'breast', of the Tibetan manuscripts: cf. also the case of *rbyo* (p. 333).

The forms *hrśaṅ*, 'hostile', and *rzaṅ*, ll. 54, 56, which must have some kindred meaning, are in themselves remarkable. The former is clearly connected with *hśaṅ* = Tib. *śaṅ*, 'hate', and in Tibetan might have been *bśaṅ*: in principle it is not different from *rkaḥ*, *rkom*, *rpag*, *rmag*. *Rzaṅ*, which does not recall anything in Nam, where the *z* is practically non-existent, is curiously paralleled in one of the Tibetan manuscripts by a form *rzen*, *rñen* = Tib. *mñen*, 'make pliant'. This is not a scriptural accident, by reason of the parallels noted (p. 106) in certain Hsi-fan dialects (d'Ollone, p. 73): it looks as if in some circumstances *ñ* became *j*, whence *z*. The particular word, *rzaṅ*, might accordingly be = Tib. *gñan*, 'cruel', 'severe', 'wild'; but the final *ñ* is then a difficulty. Further curiosities in connexion with *ñ* are Tangut *rkhiāñ*, 'Argal sheep' = Tib. *gñan*/*rñan*, and Tangut *rkhiñ*, 'heart' = Tib. *sñiñ*.

The instances of Nam *r* Prefixed to Verbs which in Tibetan are without it, e.g. *rgyed*, *rdzum*, *rdzur*, provoke the inquiry whether in Nam the *r*- may have retained some definite functional value. The question is most natural where the text exhibits forms with and without the *r*: such are *hgam*/*hrgam* (*rgam*), *rgyeb*/*hgyeb*, *hrñi*(*rñi*)/*hñi* (*ñi*), *hrñe*(*rñe*)/*hñe* (*ñe*), *grteḥ*(*hrteḥ*u, *rte*)/*gde*, *hrpeḥi* (*rpeḥi*)/*hpeḥi*, *hrbo*(*rbo*)/*hbo*(*gboḥu*), *hmag*(*rmag*)/*mag*, *hrdzoñ*/*hdzoñ*, *hrdza*(*rdza*)/*hdza*, *hrdzur*/*hdzur*, one or two others (p. 350) being doubtful.

It is, no doubt, premature to enter into this question. In some cases (*rgyeb*/*hgyeb*, *hrdzoñ*/*hdzoñ*, *rmag*/*mag* the latter only in *mag-no*) the alternation seems merely casual; in others the difference, if any existed, has been obscured (*hrñi*/*hñi*, *hrñe*/*hñe*, *hrbo*/*hbo*), or the connexion of the two forms is unproved. But in *hgam*/*hrgam*(*rgam*) the difference = 'community'/'form a community', is not only clear in the Nam text, but corresponds to the Tibetan *gam*/*sgam*; *hdza*/*rdza* also are not improbably = 'friend'/'make friends'; and *hpag*/*hrpag* may be partly distinguished as 'low'/'lay low'; *hdzur*/*hrdzur* perhaps as 'be aside'/'leave aside'. Hence it is possible that one function of the *r*-Prefix was that of forming Denominative Verbs, and that such a function was in Nam not yet extinct.

*L-* in *hlkyañ/hglyañ* = Tib. *rkyañ*, 'wild ass', is not at all surprising on the Tibeto-Chinese border; cf. Central-Asian *lku*, *blkun* = *rku*, *rkun*, 'steal', 'thief'.

*R final*:

In the *JRAS.* 1939, p. 215 and note, reference has been made to the possibility of a loss of final *r* in Nam *spyē* = Tib. *dbyar*, 'summer'. Final *ar/er* is unmistakable in the *phyar(pyar)/phyer(pyer)* of the text, varying in such a way that an Ablaut relationship between the *e/a* is highly improbable; and it has been pointed out *supra* (pp. 33-4) that a place in the Koko-nor region mentioned in the eighth century A.D. as *Dbyar-mo-thañ* is known later as *G-yar-mo-thañ*, *Yar-mo-thañ*, *G-yer-mo-thañ*. These cases seem evidence of occasional change of final *ar* to *er*, which change is, also with loss of the *-r*, in fact frequent in some modern E.-Tibetan dialects (*supra*, p. 78). On the other hand, a change of final *-er* to *-ir*, seen in Nam *hwyir* = Tib. *hbyer*, 'escape', is paralleled by Hsi-hsia *nir*, 'relative', if equivalent, as suggested by Laufer (No. 122, p. 104), to Tib. *gñer*: the few other known Hsi-hsia words with final *r* (Nevsky, Nos. 55, 163, 231, 273, 279, 281) are of indeterminate etymology.

A parallel to *spyē/dbyar* might perhaps be found in the Nam word *ste* in:

ste<sup>hi</sup>-htam-hmog-dze, 54, 'over the — clouds'

h<sup>rd</sup>zoñ-hyo-h<sup>śi</sup>-dze-ste-gdzu-ge-cig, 194, 356

'On the castle's high zig-zag (ascent) the — asses ceased'.

Here, if *ste* were = Tib. *sde*, 'class', 'group', &c., the sense of *ste<sup>hi</sup>-htam(htham)* would be 'gathered in a mass', and that of *ste-gdzu* would be 'asses in troops'. Apposite as this would be, it is open to the serious objection that Tibetan *sde* is required as the equivalent of a different Nam word, namely, *hrde/rdehe*, which it fits, while in form supported by *rdañ* = Tib. *sdan*, 'anger', and *rdo* = Tib. *sdo*, 'venture'. If, on the other hand, we bring in Tib. *star*, 'file on a string', 'fasten', the 'asses in file' will be perhaps more appropriate than 'asses in troops', and the clouds 'in close succession' may not be seriously different from clouds 'gathered in a mass'. Moreover, the *ste* will furnish a good antithesis to the *hthar-mye*, 'fires let loose' of the following line. It is, however, rather unfortunate that *hthar* also is an *-ar* word, and it seems preferable to take *ste* as a form of *sten/rten* (cf. *hdre*, *hdro* = *hdren*, *hbron*), 'hold on to', 'adhere to', more especially as the corresponding



Intransitive *hthe/hthen*, whence *the*, 'adherent', 'subject', is used in the sense of 'halting' (see Ś. C. Das's *Dictionary*).

### 5. L-Prefix; l final

Instances of *l* prefixed to roots with initial *d*, *dy* have been considered; other cases are rare. If we omit mis-writings, viz. *hltan*, l. 93 (for *hldan*), *hltah*, l. 203 (for *hldah*, see ll. 202-3), *hltom*, l. 88 (for *hldom*, see ll. 94, 95), there remain:

*hlkyañ*, 188 (written *hglyañ*, l. 308) = Tib. *rkyan*, *kiang* or 'wild ass'.

*lgyoñ*, 11—meaning obscure.

*hlto*, 251, perhaps a mis-writing of *hldo*, but possibly = Tib. *ltos(lta)*, 'look'.

*lpyoñ*, 22 = Tib. *hphyo*, 'be agitated', &c.

Final *l* in place of *r* is seen in:

*stel*, 181 = Tib. *ster* (cf. *dbyal* = *dbyar*, in the Tibetan manuscripts),

but *l* = Tib. *l* in:

*htul/hthul* = Tib. *hdul*, *gdul*, *btul*, *thul*

*hpul/hphul* = Tib. *phul*

*hmyil*, perhaps = Tib. *myul/ñul*, 'rove as spy', &c.

*Lol*, l. 195 (*hlon*, l. 357), might be = Tib. *rol*, 'play'.

The significance of so short a list is diminished by the fact that no other word in the text seems to invite comparison with a Tibetan word in *l*, except *hyu*, which in a number of occurrences (ll. 49, 123, 147, 305, 345-6, 350-1, 368-9, 372, 387) is possibly = Tib. *yul*, 'country', 'district', 'village'.

### 6. S initial; s final

Before a vowel *s*, whether initial or preceded by a Prefix, corresponds regularly to Tibetan *s*; e.g.

*sa/hsañ/gsañ* = Tib. *sa*, 'earth'.

*so/gso/gsoñ* = Tib. *so*, 'live'.

*su* = Tib. *su*, 'who'.

*gsar* = Tib. *gsar*, 'new'.

*gsom* = Tib. *som*, 'think', and = *gsum*, *sum*, '3'.

*bsog*, 182, *hsog*, 295, *hsag*, 389 = Tib. *sog*, *gsog*, *bsag*, *bsog*, 'accumulate'.



The equivalence extends to cases where Nam *wa* = Tib. *-o*; e.g.

*swa*, 'tooth' = Tib. *so*.

*swah/swa/hswah* = Tib. *so*, 'watch', 'guard'.

*hswar* = Tib. *sor*, 'finger'.

Exceptionally *s* corresponds to Tib. *ś* (cf. *bsos/bśos*, *bsen/bśen*, in the Tibetan manuscripts) and vice versa:

*hsams*, 58 = Tib. *śom*, *gśom*, *bśoms*, *bśams*, 'make ready'.

*śon* 156 = Tib. *son/śon*, 'arrive' (?).

S = Tib. *ts*, *tsh* in:

*se/hse/rse/hrse* = Tib. *rtse*, 'top', 'peak' (in the Tibetan manuscripts *se*).

*se/hse/gse/gsehe/gtse* = Tib. *gtse*, *htshe*, 'injure'.

*hsas/gsas* = Tib. *btsas*, 'born', 'offspring', also *gsas*.

In general, however, the *ts*, *tsh*, survive as such. Where initial *s* is followed by a consonant, it is not feasible to distinguish generally between *s*-Prefix and *s* belonging to the root. Under the heads of (a) presence and (b) absence of *s* we may take note of factual equivalents to Tibetan as follows:

# 1. Before *k*, *kh*:

(a) *ska* = Tib. *sga*, 'saddle'.

*skar* = Tib. *skar*, 'star'.

*sku/skuhu* = Tib. *sku*, 'body'.

*ske* = Tib. *ske*, 'neck'.

*ske* = Tib. *ske*, 'select', 'appoint'.

*skyañ* = Tib. *skyoñ*, *bskyañ*, 'protect', (?).

*skyar* = Tib. *skyor*, 'hold up' (?).

*skye* = Tib. *skye*, 'be born', 'live'.

*skhrud* (cf. *skho* in the Tibetan manuscripts) = Tib. *skrud*, 'retreat in fear'.

(b) *kya* = Tib. *skya*, 'crop' (cf. Hsi-hsia *khyā* = Tib. *skya*, 'magpie', Laufer, p. 104 (32)).

*kyen* = Tib. *skyen*, 'swift' (? or *mkhyen*, 'know' ?).

*skyim(hkyim/kyim/hkyim/gyim)* has no *s* in Tib. *khyim*, 'house', *hgyim*, 'circumference'.

# 2. Before *t*:

(a) *sta/stah/hstah* = Tib. *sta*, a suffix.

*stañ/hstañ* = Tib. *stan*, 'above'.

*sti/hti* = Tib. *sti*, *bsti*, *thi*, 'rest', 'stop'.

*stiñ* = Tib. *stiñ*, 'rebuke', or *sdig*, 'sin' (?).

*ste/hste* = Tib. *ste*, a suffix.

*ste/stehe* = Tib. *sten/rten*, 'adhere to', &c. (p. 353) ?.

*stel* = Tib. *ster*, 'grant'.

*sto* = Tib. *sto*, 'rope' (?).

*sto* = Tib. *sto*, a suffix.

*ston* = Tib. *ston*, 'empty' (?).

*ston* = Tib. *ston*, '1,000'.

*ston* = Tib. *ston*, 'show' (?).

*stom/hstom* = Tib. *ston*, 'harvest'.

*stor/hstor/gstor* = Tib. *stor*, 'flee', 'be lost'.

### 3. Before *p* and *b*:

(a) *spu-rbu* = Tib. *spu-rbu*, a kind of bird or P.N. of a certain deer (?).

*spo* = Tib. *spo*, 'peak'.

*spo* = Tib. *spo*, 'change'.

*spyi* = Tib. *spyi*, 'head', 'chief'.

*spye* = Tib. *dbyar*, 'summer', seems to be a by-form.

*Spa/spehi* in *mehi-spa*, l. 151 = *mehi-spehi*, l. 370, seems to be the same word (cf. p. 191), with the meaning 'sparkle' or 'ornament', which also suits *spe* in l. 86. Nevertheless, *spehi* in l. 379 seems equivalent to Tib. *dpe*, 'example'.

(b) *hpahi*, ll. 211, 384, *hpehi*, ll. 211, 386, 387, are plainly identical, and they appear to have the two meanings of *spa* and *spehi*. Cf. also *spehi/hpehi*, p. 282.

*Sbyim* = Tib. *hgyim*, 'circumference'? Cf. *hbyim*, ll. 266, 363 ?

### 4. Before *ts*:

(a) *hstsag(htsag, htsog)* = Tib. *btsags*, 'collected' (*tshogs/htshogs*).

(b) *htsañ/gtsañ* = Tib. *stsañ, gtsañ*, 'corn'.

*Stsah/hstsah*, 'watch', and *tsar*, show in Tibetan (*btsah, tshar*) no *s* form, but once *r* (*rtsas*).

### 5. Before *n*:

(b) Possibly *nor* = Tib. *nor* (in manuscript *snor*), 'farm'.

### 6. Before *ñ*:

(a) *sñañ/sñiñ* = Tib. *sñiñ*, 'heart'.

*sña* = Tib. *sña/gña*, 'witness' ?

*sñi* = Tib. *gñis*, '2'.

*sñi/rñi* = Tib. *sñi/rñi*, 'noose', 'tie'.

*Sñe* (l. 217) is obscure.

7. Before *m*:

(a) *smuḥu-ḥku* = Tib. *smi-gu/smyu-gu*, 'reed'.

*Sme*, 'blaze', *smyi*, 'man', have normally in Tibetan no *s*; but concerning *sme* see pp. 282-3. *Smu*, l. 27, is quite obscure; but see p. 259.

8. Before *r*:

(a) *sram/ḥsram* = Tib. *sran*, 'hard'.

*sri* = Tib. *sri*, 'demoness'.

*ḥsre* = Tib. *sre*, 'soot', &c.

*sroñ* = Tib. *sroñ*, 'straight'.

9. Before *l*:

On *sl < zl* in *slah*, *slo*, *slog*, see *supra*, pp. 335-6.

*Slod* is perhaps = a Tib. *zlod* = *lhod/glod/lod*, 'to loose'.

*Sli*, *ḥsli*, *sleg*, *slug* (p. 336 n. 2) are obscure.

10. Before *ś*:

*śśam*, a highly exceptional form, occurring in:

*śśam-stom-ḥdag-dze-ḥsar-stomḥi*, 255

'when the last (?) harvest has come to hand (? *ḥdag* = Tib.

*bdog*, *bdag*), a new harvest'.

If *śśam* is to be credited with the conjectured meaning, it may be related to Tib. *śam/gśam*, 'lower', 'later'. *Ḥśam*, l. 277, is apparently different.

The cases where Tibetan *s* before consonants corresponds to Nam *r* before consonants, a frequent phenomenon in 'Tangut', have been noted under 'r-Prefix'.

*s* final, after consonants as well as after vowels, is almost confined to verb-forms, to which it imparts an Aoristic or Preterite sense. In Tibetan also, where the *s* is used, moreover, to form Imperatives, many nominal forms with final *s*, both after vowels and after consonants, are plainly deverbal. Hence it is not certain that the Nam, where it lacks a final *s* present in Tibetan, has lost it. But the fact that its *s* is restricted to cases where it is functional indicates that in other circumstances a final *s* would have been lost; and such loss is sometimes suggested by particular factors, e.g. by the *ñ* (for *n*) in the Imperative form *ḥtron*, as in Tib. *droñs/droñ*, from *ḥdren*, and therefore also in *ḥlob* (Tib. *lobs*), Imperative of *ḥlab*.

After vowels the following Aorists or Preterites can be recognized:

*gras*, *hgras*, *ḥras*, *ḥtas* (= *ḥthas*), *ḥldas*, *ḥwas*, *ḥśas*, *ḥsas*  
(*gsas*)



hñis, hldis, hris,  
 hkus, hgrus, hthus, hnus, hbrus, gsus, hsus  
 hkes, ñes, gdes, hbres, rgyes  
 g-yos, hyos, chos.

After consonants we have:

hthogs, hphyegs, rdzogs  
 hgyaṅs, hsaṅs  
 rkabs, rgyebs  
 hkroms, hgroms, hproms, hsams  
 hwars, rders (?), htsors, htshors.

In nearly all cases these are found (see pp. 170, 197-8) as Predicates at the end of verses, sentences, or clauses; and in many instances non-Aoristic forms, without the *-s*, occur. The verbal and Aoristic function is not, of course, impaired when the word is followed by one of the auxiliary verbs *re*, 'be', *hkom*, *prom*, *hyo*, 'do' or 'effect', as in:

spye-chos-re, 'being begun in summer',  
 rgyes-hkom, 'effect extension',  
 htas-prom, 'made hard or tangled',  
 hchos-hyo, 'make beginning';

or with a governing or accompanying verb or even noun, as in:

gsus-slo, 'call for escort',  
 hbrus-hgyan, 'itch with inflammation',  
 hyos-hlam, 'movement path',  
 htas-kro, 'tangled hate';

or with a verbal or nominal suffix, as in:

hsas-te, 'being born',  
 chos-ta, 'beginnings' or 'things begun'.

In some cases the *-s* is disguised by being transferred in writing, as frequently in Tibetan, to a following suffix, *ta*, *te*, *to*, making *sta*, *ste*, *sto*, as in:

htsaḥ-ste (= htasaḥs-te), hwa-ste, gboḥu-ste (= gbos-te)  
 hgyaṅ-sto, hrgyaṅ-sto, hrgeḥi-sto (= hrgeḥes-to), hñah-sto,  
 (= hñahs-to), hldu-sto, hldyim-sto, htasaḥ-sto (= htasaḥs-to),  
 hyim-sto.

In ll. 278-9, *htag-htos*, the *-s* is attached to the Participle in *-to*, used as a main verb.

The possibility that the form *hsodtsa* is an attempt to attach the Aoristic *s* even to a root ending in *d* has been suggested *supra*

(p. 301). Perhaps this, and not merely a feeling for euphony, accounts for the *s* in *hbrad-sta*, l. 306. In *g-ri(hri, &c.)-sta-meñi*, *hman-sta-meñi*, ll. 311-13, the *sta*, which follows a nominal word, seems to be different, = *sta*, 'there'.

We are now left with *śes* (Aorist of *śe*), 'wise'; *hbos* (Aorist of *hbo*, 'swell'), 'the big man' or 'master'; *gsas/hsas* (Aorist of *btsah*, 'give birth'), 'offspring', 'children'; *hrkas* (Tib. *skas/skras*), 'ladder', 'staircase'; *rjes* (Tib. *rjes*), 'aftermark'; *hño(s)* (evidenced by *hño-sta/hño-sto*), 'friend', 'partisan' (Tib. *ños*, 'side'); *hyogs* (one occurrence, usually *hyog/g-yog*) apparently = Tib. *g-yog*, 'serve', 'servant'; and:

*hño-sto-ge-rdo-re-cis-tsha-hbyih*, 84, 'when friends venture . . .

*gdim-chis(tshis ?)-ldom-re*, 94, 95, 'under the sway of disappearance and coming (transience)'

*khyos-hkhyañ-hyu-ge*, 212, 'wives united with husbands'

*hgar-hpu-hches-hño-hkhob-prom*, 322, 'the chief blacksmith having made a face-covering (blinkers)'

*hpus-hphyah-myi-cañ*, 298 (obscure).

In most of the above-cited single words the *-s* may have been preserved by a consciousness of its functional, deverbal, character; and this applies even to *hrkas* and *rjes*, where the Tibetan also has the *-s*. For *hrkas*, perhaps connected with Tib. *dkah*, 'steep', occurs only in the phrase *hrkas-hthañ*, l. 57, which may be 'putting (Tib. *gtañ*) a ladder or staircase', unless Tib. *skas-gdañ-bu* (= *skas, skas-ka, skas-tshañ, skras, skras-ka*) contains a *gdañ* = *gtañ*, 'stick', and Nam *hthañ* is the same; in the phrase the *-s* might have been retained. *Rjes* is a derivative from *rjed/brje/brjed*, 'change', 'exchange', 'forget', 'remind'; but the phrase in which it occurs,

*pyi-rjes-ne-hcer*, 201-2, 'the good is afraid of a (funeral) memorial',

might contain an Instrumental-Ablative after a verb of 'fearing', if such a Case existed in Nam. A consideration of this last possibility depends upon the words *cis*, *chis*, *khyos*, *hches*, *hpus*, in the five passages quoted. *Cis* (p. 259) and *hpus*, however, are obscure and therefore must be put aside; *chis*, even if it is not a mis-writing of the *chim*, *hchim*, *htshim* of ll. 38, 81, 199, can be Aorist of *chi*, 'go' (Tib. *mchis*), and not Instrumental in *-s*; and *hches*, though certainly connected with the *hche*, 'great', which elsewhere occurs, may still be = Tib. *ches* (not *che*) in its regular deverbal-adverbial

use. There remains, therefore, only *khyos* = Tib. *khyo*, 'husband', which is of uncertain derivation and may itself be deverbal, like *skyes*, 'man'. Accordingly we find nothing to invalidate the negative conclusion (*supra*, p. 193) concerning the non-existence of a Nam Instrumental-Agential Case, which, had it existed, should have found some expression after words ending in consonants.

## 7. Nasals, initial and final

A. Initial *m* is usually unaffected in old Tibetan; but a change of *my-* to *ny-(ñ-)*, regular in modern Tibetan and very widely evidenced in Hsi-fan and other languages of the Tibeto-Chinese areas, is to be seen in *myul/ñul*, 'slink', 'rove', 'spy', *smyu-gu/sñug-gu*, 'pen', and in *mye-cho/ñe-tsho* of the Tibetan manuscripts. The change has not been found in Nam.

Initial *ñ* is not often replaced; for instance, the Tibeto-Burman equivalents of Tib. *ña*, 'I', and *ña*, '5', commonly retain the guttural (Hodgson writes *gn*). The Nam text confuses *ñah* and *hñah* (*supra*, pp. 238-9), and in *mag-no*, 'battle', the *no* (disimilation after *g*?) is perhaps the same word as in Tib. *g-yul-ño*, 'battle'. The cases of *ña* for *na* (assimilation?), ll. 57, 199, 201, 206, 207 after *-ñ* in *hbyñ*, *rmañ*, are interesting, because the like is exemplified in the Tibetan manuscripts.

*ñ-* is the most unstable, being usually in Tibeto-Burman languages represented by *n*: thus for Tib. *gñen*, 'relative', the Hsihsia *nir* (Laufer, No. 122); for *sñin*, 'heart', *gñe/gne/ne* (Nevsky, No. 100; Laufer, No. 105, *niñ*); for *rje*, 'king', *ñeh/ne/neh* (Nevsky, No. 40); for *mñam*, 'equal', *ñe/ni/nih* (Nevsky, No. 217). The word for '2', Tib. *gñis*, is Gyārūng *ka-nēs*, Rgya-roñ (Pati) *ko-nes*, Tākpa *nai*, Mānyak *nā-bi*, 'Tangut' *ni*; cf. 'Tangut' *nina*, 'sun' (= Tib. *ñin*). The Nam text varies *ñe* with *ne* in *hkyā-wa-ñe*. The documents from Central Asia have *nuñ-chad* for *ñuñ-chad*.

*n-* is not usually altered: in Thōchū *nyik*, Hōrpa *nya-nya*, Golok 41 *nierk*, Muli *nya*, Pa-u-Rong *nyi*, all = Tib. *nag*, 'black', some confusion may have co-operated. The Central-Asian documents have *nan-cher* for *nan-cher*.

The above facts may tend to remove any *a priori* objections to the following abnormal equations between Nam and Tibetan initial nasals:

*nag* = Tib. *ñag*, 'voice' in *hḍzam-nag* (ll. 276, 278), 'mild voice', *hḥaṇ-nag* (l. 199) and *g-raḥ-nag* (l. 262), 'enemy voice', *hñag-ḥtshab* (l. 102), 'voice-deputy', Tib. *ñagt-shab*.



*nam* = Tib. *ñams*, 'mind', 'spirit', in *hnam-hdzam-htar*, ll. 145-6, 'the faint-heart escapes'; cf. Tib. *ñam* (and *ñams*)-*chuñ*, 'feeble'.

*nam* = Tib. *ñams*, 'damaged', 'spoiled', 'degenerate', in *hldañ-krañ-hnam-dze*, l. 126, 'when uprightness degenerates', *hpañ-hrgam-hnam*, l. 259, 'the community of braves declines'; probably also in *hnam-hte-hśah*, l. 83, 'having declined, was destroyed' (cf. ll. 124-5, *hsad* . . . *hśah*).

*nar* = Tib. *nar*, 'strength', 'vigour', in:

*hyah-hrgehe-ge-sram-pa-nar*, 72

'those whose fortune is in the ascendant have firm hero-vigour';

cf. l. 204,

*puñ-te-gsar-nar-hpañ-rmag-hcihi* ||

'in a body with new vigour a hero-army goes',

where *nar* is written. *Nar/snar/bsnar*, 'lengthen', 'long and thin', 'continuous', is less apt. In l. 112, *hldañ-hkrañ-hnar-re*, the following may be preferable:

*nar/hner* = Tib. *gñer/gñar*, 'tend', 'provide for', 'procure', in

*g-waḥ-hrśaṇ-hnar[-re]*, 224, 'procure fierce force'

*glaḥ-hlad-hnar[-re]*, 233, 'procure return for wages' (p. 251)

*gse-hlad-hnar[-re]*, 243, 'procure requital of injury'.

Here would belong also *hcha-hgrah-nu-nar-dze*, l. 239, and the above-mentioned *hldañ-hkrañ-hnar-re*. An equivalent of Tib. *mñar*, 'sweet', does not seem likely here.

*Hner* occurs only in

*g-raḥ-gśog-hner[-re]-śes-hbeg-hśog* ||, 7, 20

'To provide wings for—Śes-hbeg was the wings';

*nen* = Tib. *ñen*, 'danger' in

*hldañ-rgye-hdor-re-hwañ-ta-hnen*, 209-10

'If the big stick (or 'strong support', *hldañ*) is thrown away, ruling is dangerous';

*ñor* = Tib. *nor*, 'wealth', 'property', 'cattle', in the Tibetan manuscripts *snor*, apparently 'farm' or 'estate'. This may be recognized in

*hñor-hlah-hwam-hśid-dze*, 11, 'in the high mansions on the farms or estates'.

The same *hñor*, 'wealth', may be seen in ll. 50, 52 (p. 328).

*Nor* = 'wealth' occurs in l. 151; elsewhere *nor*, where not = *no-re*, is = Tib. *nor* 'fool'.

In one or two places we find an abnormal initial *ñy*, a combination otherwise unknown.<sup>1</sup> In l. 206, *rñye-ne-hñohu*, the *rñye* is evidently a confusion of *rñe* and *rñe*, cf. *rñe-re-hño*, l. 133, *rñe-ne-hrehi*, l. 200. In ll. 362-3, where the readings are partly doubtful and we have in succession *hñyoh* (*hñyeche* ?), *hñe*, *hñyeche*, perhaps the same word *ñe* was intended. In l. 28 *hgrañ-hñyir-hñyir* ||, if *hgrañ* = Tib. *grañ*, 'cold', which is not unlikely, then *hñyir-hñyir* is probably = Tib. *ñil-ñil*, 'trickle down', with *-r* = *-l*, the converse of *-l* = *-r* in *stel*; cf. p. 354.

B. Nasals final: *M* in *stom*, 'harvest', ll. 14, 255, 281 = Tib. *ston*, and *gñim*, 'day', l. 12 = Tib. *ñin/gñin*, is probably original, Tibetan having in several instances (e.g. *stoñ*, 'thousand') *-n* or *-ñ* in place of original *-m*.<sup>2</sup>

Confusion of final *ñ* and *n* is in Tibetan rather common, having perhaps its main root in the cases, such as *drañ* from *hdren*, *bzuñ* from *hdzin*, where *ñ* is for *ñs* < *ns*. To this type belongs the Nam Imperative *htroñ* (ll. 224, 233, pp. 199, 357) = Tib. *droñ/droñs*, from *hdren*, 'lead'; and perhaps therefore *rgoñ* = Tib. *dgon*, 'wilderness', cf. Tib. *dgon/dgoñs/rgoñs*, 'evening' and *son/soñ*, p. 355. *Stoñ-hpoñ*, l. 321 = Tib. *stoñ-dpon*, 'thousand-commander', is perhaps a loan-word.

The loss, or non-accretion, of *n* in *hdre/htre*, 'draw', 'lead', is not peculiar to Nam, being found in the Tibetan manuscripts (p. 214) and perhaps also in the common Tibetan word *hdre*, 'demon'. *Hdro*, 'go', 'travel' = Tib. *htron*, will be similar.

## 8. Other root consonants, initial and final

### A. *Tenuis* and aspirate:

In the discussion of Orthography (pp. 116 sqq.) we have noted very numerous examples of variation between *tenuis* and aspirate. In most instances the *tenuis* is preceded by *h*; but the great general preponderance in the number of words with that Prefix, and the fact that there are clear occurrences in its absence, render that circumstance insignificant.

The regular alternations of *tenuis* and aspirate in Tibetan verbal paradigms and the omnipresent phenomenon of such

<sup>1</sup> Except in Khams, where Jaeschke notes (Berlin Academy *Monatsbericht*, 1865, p. 443) *ñyen* for *ñen*.

<sup>2</sup> So also Chinese. On confusions in 'the Tibetan manuscripts' see p. 214.

alternation in the root-groups generally render it extremely difficult to affirm in a particular case that a Nam *tenuis* replaces an aspirate or vice versa: for example, *hkhur*, 'with back bent down', is not a phonetic equivalent of Tib. *dgur/rgur/sgur*, but an independent derivative of the root (perhaps *gur*) and possibly connected with *hkhur*, 'carry', and *khur*, 'load'. Within the limits of Tibetan such cases are not infrequent; for instance, we find *pañ* and *phañ* both meaning 'lap'.

Some probable or certain cases are the following:<sup>1</sup>

(a) *Tenuis* written for aspirate (common in the Tibetan manuscripts and documents):

*hkañ* (also *hkhah*) = Tib. *kha*, 'mouth', 'speech'.

*hkañ* (also *hkhah*) = Tib. *khañ*, 'house'.

*hkab* (also *hkhah*) = Tib. *khab/khyab*, 'home', 'family'.

*hkar* (also *khar/hkhar*) = Tib. *khar/mkhar*, 'city', 'citadel'.

*hkuñ* = Tib. *khuñ*, 'hollowed out', 'cave'.

*hke* (also *hkhe*) = Tib. *khe*, 'profit'.

*hkor* (also *hkhor*) = Tib. *khor/hkhor (skor)*, 'surround', 'go round', &c.

*hkyi* = Tib. *khyi*, 'dog'.

*kyu*, *hkyu* = Tib. *hkhyu/dkyu*, 'swift', 'race'.

*hkye* = Tib. *khye*, *khyeñu*, 'child' (possibly, however, for *skye*).

*hkri* (also *khri*, *hgri*) = Tib. *khri*, 'seat', 'support'.

*hçi/hçiñ/gçi/gçiñ* = Tib. *mchi*, 'go'.

*ce* (also *hce*, *hche*) = Tib. *che*, 'great'.

*htañ* (*thañ*, *hthañ*) = Tib. *thañ*, 'plain'.

*htañ* (*hthañ*, *thwañ*) = Tib. *thañ*, 'power', &c.

*htam* (*htham*) = Tib. *htham*, 'united'.

*htar* (*thar*, *hthar*) = Tib. *thar*, 'released'.

*htas* = Tib. *hthas*, 'hard', 'tangled'.

*htul* (*hthul*) = Tib. *thul*, 'tame'.

*hto* (*htho*) = Tib. *thto*, 'high'.

*htor* (*tor*, *hthor*, *thor*) = Tib. *thor*, 'tuft', &c.

*hpañ* (*phañ*, *hphañ*) = Tib. *pañ*, 'lap'.

*hpu* (*hphu*) = Tib. *phu*, 'blow'.

*hpul* (*hphul*) = Tib. *phul*, 'raised to the top'.

*hpog* (*hphog*) = Tib. *hphog*, 'hit'.

*hpom* (*hphom*) = Tib. *hpham*, 'be defeated'.

<sup>1</sup> In some of the following instances (pp. 363-5) the spelling in the manuscript fluctuates (*supra*, pp. 120-1).



*pyaṅ*(*phyaṅ*) = Tib. *hphyāṅ*, *dpyāṅ*, 'dangle'.

*pyar*(*pyer*, *phyer*, *hphyer*) = Tib. *hphyar*, 'lift'.

*pyi*(*phyi*) = Tib. *phyi*, 'outside', 'later'.

*hpraḥ*(*hphraḥ*) = Tib. *hphra*, 'kick' (?).

*hpro*, ll. 181 (p. 156), 245-6 = Tib. *hphro*, 'proceed'.

*tsaṅ* = Tib. *tshaṅ*, 'complete'.

*htsu*, *tsur* (*htshu*, *htshur*) = Tib. *tshu*, *tshur*, 'hither', 'come hither'.

*htsors*(*tshor*, *htshors*) = Tib. *htshor*, 'chase'.

- (b) Aspirate written for *tenuis* (common in the Tibetan manuscripts and documents):

*skhrud* = Tib. *skrud*, 'put to flight'.

*chi* (also *ci*) = Tib. *ci*, 'who', 'which'.

*gcheg* (also *hceg*, *gceg*) = Tib. *tseg*/*tsheg*, 'trouble', 'hitch'.

*tha* (usually *ta*) = Tib. *ta*, a suffix.

*hphu* (also *hpu*) = Tib. *pu*, 'man', 'elder'.

*tsha*/*tshaḥ* = *tsa*, a suffix.

*tsham* (also *htsam*) = Tib. *tsam*, 'only'.

- B. *Media* and *tenuis* (or aspirate):

- (a) *Tenuis* for *media* (common in the Tibetan manuscripts):

*hkaṅ* (also *hgaṅ*) = Tib. *gaṅ*/*dgaṅ*, 'full', 'complete'.

*hkar* (also *hgar*) = Tib. *dgar*/*sgar*/*skar*, 'separate', 'pen'.

*hko* (also *hgo*) = Tib. *go*/*mgo*/*sgo*, 'place', 'head', 'gate'.

*hku*(*smuḥu*.) = Tib. *gu*(*smyu*), 'reed'.

*hkor* (also *hgor*) = Tib. *hgor*, 'tarry'.

*hkyud* (also *hgyud*) = Tib. *rgyud*, 'race'.

*ska* = Tib. *sga*, 'saddle'.

*hklo* (also *glo*, *hlo*) = Tib. *glo*, 'lungs'.

*htor* (usually *hdor*) = Tib. *hdor*, 'cast away'.

*htre* (usually *hdre*) = Tib. *hdren*, 'draw'.

*htroṅ* = Tib. *hdreṅ*, *dron*, *traṅ*, 'draw'.

*rte* = Tib. *sde*, 'flock', 'troop', &c. (p. 259) = *rde* (p. 270).

*rto* = Tib. *rdo*, 'stone'.

*hltāṅ* (usually *hldaṅ*) = Tib. *ldaṅ*, 'rise'.

*hltom* (usually *hldom*) = Tib. *ldom*, 'bind', 'subdue'.

*por*/*hpor* (also *phor*) = Tib. *hbor*, 'let go' (manuscripts *por*).

*hpro* l. 321 (usually *hbro*) = Tib. *hbro*, 'taste'.

*hpos* (usually *hbos*) = Tib. *hbo*, 'swell'.

- (b) *Media* for *tenuis* (or aspirate) (not rare in the Tibetan manuscripts):

*gehu-prom* = *kehu* (*hkehu*)<sup>o</sup>.  
*hgri* (also *hkri*) = *khri* 'seat'.  
*hdaḥ* (*hkho*<sup>o</sup>) = *htaḥ* (*hkhoḥ*)<sup>o</sup>.  
*hbu* (*htor*<sup>o</sup>) = *hpu* and *hphu* (*htor*<sup>o</sup>).  
*hdzo-hdza* (and *htsaḥ*) = *htso-htsaḥ*.

The fluctuations of which the above are the most presentable examples might be recognized, especially those between *tenuis* and aspirate, in a good number of further instances which on the ground of some scruple, generally a possibility of grammatical alternation, are omitted. Hence a statistical interpretation is not feasible; nevertheless, a relative infrequency of the changes *tenuis* > aspirate and *tenuis* > *media*, as compared with their converses, is apparent; and it is natural to conclude that in the actual pronunciation there was a tendency to loss of aspiration on the part of aspirates and to loss of voice on the part of *media*. But it is not possible to adjust the facts into any of the usual phonological explanations. To a considerable extent there is a normal orthography, which accords with the etymology. If we assume that in the writing *hkaḥ* for *hkhaḥ* the scribe followed his ear, when he did not remember the orthographic form, we may conclude either that in actual speech the *k* was aspirated or that the aspirate had lost its aspiration. But then how did he come to write as *tha* in *stor-tha-hthog*, l. 149, the suffix *ta*, with which he was perfectly familiar and which he gives in the *stor-ta-hthog* of the same line? Since a complete indifference in regard to *t/th* cannot be alleged, we are baffled, unless a writing from dictation, affected by casual pronunciations, should afford a clue.<sup>1</sup>

Fortunately, however, we may disburden the Nam language of responsibility for the fluctuations. For in the Tibetan manuscripts, i.e. in a language which had been very copiously employed in writing, we find fluctuations of like character and amount, and not seldom affecting the same words.<sup>2</sup> It may therefore be suspected, since the manuscripts were all, no doubt, written in Śa-cu, where they were found, that the actual scribes were not people of Tibet, but Central-Asians, imperfectly acquainted with the language, Tibetan or Nam, and liable to mishearing of words orally imparted to them. But, if that is the case, we must infer also that, as is not unlikely, private letters were often dictated to

<sup>1</sup> See p. 117.

<sup>2</sup> Concerning parallel caprice in Central-Asian texts in other languages see p. 117 n. 5.

scribes. For in a letter (*Tibetan Literary Texts and Documents*, ii, p. 238), of 4 lines only, from a Tibetan military officer we find:

- (a) *tenuis* for aspirate in *mtoñ* = *mthoñ*, *tos* = *thos*, *tsal* = *htshal*,
- (b) aspirate for *tenuis* in *thañ* = *ta*, *phar* = *par* (thrice),
- (c) *tenuis* for *media* in *mtsad* = *mdzad* (twice), *rtsaṅ* = *rdzaṅ*, *par* = *bar* (twice),
- (d) *media* for *tenuis* in *gdaṅ* = *gtaṅ*, *gyaṅ* = *kyāṅ*,

and these occur in conjunction with correct writings, such as *thugs*, *bde*, *bdag*, *khyams*, *kha*, *phyi*, *dag*, *rgyags*, &c.

The normal Tibetan does not often confuse *tenuis* and aspirate, except where alternation is regular in the verbal paradigms and in root-forms. As regards Amdo, there is no serious evidence of a change of the type *t/th*; and, though the converse would account for 'Tangut' *tso*, 'lake' *tok*, 'lightning' *tūn*, 'drink' *tsiar*, 'rain' *ka*, 'mouth' *Thōchū pi*, 'hog' *kih*, 'house' *kwā*, 'thou' *kwān*, 'he' (Tib. *mtsho*, *thog*, *htshuñ*, *char*, *kha*, *phag*, *khyim*, *khyod*, *khoṅ*), no clear conclusion follows from the meagre vocabularies at present available, even if we overlooked their modern date and were sure of their accuracy and interpretation. The case is similar in regard to *tenuis/media*. As concerns the ancient irregularities in the Tibetan and Nam writings, it seems necessary to acquiesce for the present in attributing the responsibility to the scribes.

### C. The groups *c*, *ch*, *j/ts*, *tsh*, *dz*.

Confusion between these two groups, scripturally easy and in all old Tibetan writings quite frequent, is exemplified by:

- hcog* = *htsog*, 'collect'.
- hscañ* = *htsañ*, 'watch' (Tib. *btse*).
- chis* = *tshis*.
- hjañ* = *hdzañ*, 'eat' (Tib. *za*).
- hjam* = *hdzam*, 'mild' (Tib. *hjam*).
- hjar* = *hdzar*, 'adhere' (Tib. *hjar*).
- hju* = *hdzu*, *gzu*, &c., 'tiger', 'ass'.
- hjo* = *hdzo*, 'eat' (Tib. *zo*).
- joñ*, *hjoñ* = *hdzoñ*, *rdzoñ*, 'castle' (Tib. *rdzoñ*, *hdzoñ*).
- rje* = *rdze*, 'king' (Tib. *rje*, and manuscripts *rdze*).

Further serious matters in connexion with initial consonants hardly arise. If *brom/hbrom*, ll. 72 (pp. 226, 342), 297 = Tib. *hgrum*, 'pinch or nip off', and *htrog*, l. 40 = Tib. *hbrog* (see p. 327), they



belong to a class of cases where in Tibetan itself, especially before *y*, *r*, *l*, we find an alternation of *b* and *g*, sometimes (before *r*) of *d* also. The Tibetan manuscripts have *hbrum* for *hgram*, 'border', *blo* for *glo*, and elsewhere we find *hdrul/hgrul*, *hgrim/hbrim*, *hgye/hbye*, &c.

#### D. Final consonants

Except the above noted, sporadic, instances of *-l* for *-r* (*stel*) and *n̄* for *n*, and the possible loss of final *-s*, there seems to be practically nothing that calls for notice. There are no apparent instances of *-b* for *-g*, as in the *lhab*, *pyab* = *lhag*, *phyag*, of the Tibetan manuscripts. If *stiñ* in ll. 330-1, 335-6 were = Tib. *sdig*, 'sin' (but probably it is *stiñ*, 'rebuke'), it would correspond to the *stiñ* of one of the Tibetan manuscripts, which present other instances also of confusion of final *g*, *gs*, with *n̄*, *ñs*.

### 9. Vowels, medial and final

#### A. Medial

Apart from the normal ablauts, *e/a*, *o/a*, *e/o/a*, exhibited by Tibetan roots, there is little in respect of medial vowels that calls for note.

*a* for *i* in *sñan̄* (also *sñiñ*) = Tib. *sñiñ*, 'heart', is found also in the Tibetan manuscripts. Possibly it is due to confusion with *sñan*, 'pleasant'; but it is exactly paralleled by 'Tangut' *šan̄* = Tib. *śiñ*, 'wood', 'tree', &c.: see p. 108.

*i* for *e* in *hwyir* = Tib. *hbyer* is paralleled by *stigs* = *stegs*, *cis* = *ces*, &c., of the Tibetan manuscripts.

*i* for *u* in *myil* = Tib. *myul*, 'creep privily', may be compared with *gzi* = *gzū*, 'bow', *mu* = *mi*, 'man', in the manuscripts, which have also *u* for *i* in *mu*, 'man', cf. the place-names *Mi-ñag/Menia/Mu-nia* and *Mi/Me/Mu-li*.

*e* for *a* in *rgyeb* = Tib. *rgyab*, *phyer/phyar* = Tib. *phyar*, and perhaps therefore in *spye* = Tib. *dbyar*, *ste* = Tib. *star*, and the name (*Hses-hbeg* (cf. the *Rbag/Rbeg*) of the manuscripts), has been mentioned *supra* (p. 134), as perhaps dialectical; cf. *tseb*, *bleg*, *śen*, for *tshab*, *blag*, *śan*, in the Tibetan manuscript *Chronicle*.

*o* for *a* before *-m*, *-ms*, in *hpom/hphom*, 'be defeated', seems to have been regional, since it appears in several place-names ending in *-tsoms* = *mtshams*, and *-boms/-goms* = *-bams/-gams*, belonging to NE. Tibet.

*o* for *u* is seen in *gsum* = Tib. *gsum*, 'three', *rkom* = Tib. *bkum*, 'slain', *hkom/gkom* = Tib. *hkhums*, *hgums*, *bkum*, 'execute (a task)', *rom* = Tib. *rum*, 'darkness', 'dark hollow', *hklo* = Tib. *klum* (p. 280), *drom* = Tib. *drum/druñ* (p. 219), *lom* (p. 233) = Tib. *lums*, 'bath', Hsi-hsia *lom*, 'well' (Laufer, no. 114)? The word *slog/slug* occurs in the two forms (ll. 174, 359): the *slug* of l. 47 is evidently a different word. *Hkah-hcog* = *kha-tsug*, of the Tibetan manuscripts, and *trog/htrog*, 'enemy' (= Tib. *hdrug*s, 'agitate'?) may be further examples of the same.

### B. Final

The duplications of final vowels, resulting in *-aħa*, *-iħi*, *-uħu*, *-eħe*, *-oħo*, have been noticed in the chapter 'Grammar' (pp. 169); also the combinations with *ħi*, resulting in *-aħi*, *-uħi*, *-eħi*, *-oħi*. There remain *-eħu* and *-oħu*, together with some other cases of *-u*. *-eħu*, which in Tibetan is commonly used (a) to represent Chinese *-ao*, in its old pronunciation, and (b) in so-called diminutives, such as *beħu*, 'calf', from *ba*, 'ox', appears also in some apparently non-diminutive words, e.g. *khyeħu*, 'child', *dreħu*, 'mule', *leħu*, 'chapter', *neħu*, 'green meadow' (*neħu-thañ*, °*gsiñ*): in the last group of cases it usually has a by-form (e.g. *khye*, *dre*, *le*, *ne*) with *e* only, a good example being the name of the famous king Khri-sroñ Ldeħu (or Lde)-brtsan. The derivation of *beħu* from *ba-bo*, in itself highly questionable, is rendered more so by the relation to *-e*. The forms seem to have been favoured in Amdo, the Tibetan manuscripts and documents having *khyeħu*, *gleħu*, *sgyeħu*, *cheħu* (also °*ħi*), *dreħu*, *mdeħu* (= *mdaħ*, 'arrow'), *ldeħu*, *beħu*, *byeħu* (= *bya*, 'bird'), *neħu*, *sneħu*, *tsheħu*, *zeħu*, *leħu* (= *la*, 'pass'). The forms in *-eħu* were, therefore, ancient and widespread, and their derivation and meaning is problematical.

In the Nam examples the relation to *-e* is permeating. We have:

*hkeħu*(*keħu*, *geħu*)-*prom* = *hke-prom*

*gleħu* = Tib. *gleħu/gle*, 'edges (?) of ploughlands'

*ħrteħu* = *grteħe/gde*, 'fix' (?)

*neħu* = Tib. *neħe*, 'young', 'fresh'

*tsweħu* = *ħtswe/ħdzwe/ħdzweħe*

*ħdzeħu* = Tib. *gze-re*, 'weak'.

The Nam, therefore, confirms the antiquity of the forms; but it does not enlighten us concerning their etymology.

On the possibility that some cases of *-eħi* = *-e* are derived from *-eħe* see *supra*, p. 192: on *-a/-eħi* (cf. *-a/-eħu*) pp. 191-2.

-ohu occurs in:

*hkohu* (°*prom*, °*me*) = *hkhohu* = *hkohi* (°*me*) = *hkhoho*.

*hnohu* (l. 206) = *h<sup>h</sup>no*.

*hjohu* (l. 137) = *hjo*, 'chief', or *hdzo*, 'man'.

*htohu* (l. 7) = *hto*?

*hldohu* = *ldo*, *hldoh*.

*ldyohu* = *ldyo*.

*nohu* (l. 41).

*gbohu* = *hbo*.

*hbyohu* = *hbyo*.

*hdzohu* = *hdzo*, 'man', or *hdzo*, 'act'.

*gsohu* = *gso*, 'live'.

Of these equations some are not beyond doubt; but the certain ones, *hkohu*, *hnohu*, *ldyohu*, *hjohu* (alternating with *hdzohu*), *gbohu*, *gsohu*, suffice to prove that the -ohu is indistinguishable in meaning from -o: it may, therefore, represent an occasional pronunciation of the normal variant -oho. Are there any other indications of a final -o inclining towards the pronunciation -u?

A certain instance is to be seen in the varied forms, both occurring more than once, of the name *Mye-kru*, °*kro*, in one of the Tibetan manuscripts: and in ordinary Tibetan there are instances, such as *phu/pho*, 'elder brother'. In the Nam text the variation between *hbrus*, and *hbro* in the repeated verse lines 152-3, 158 furnishes a good parallel: and the *hdru* (cf. Tib. *dru-bu*, °*gu*, *gru-gu*, 'a clew or skein of thread') of *hdru-hjar*, 'caught in the toils' (cf. p. 272), may be = *dro*, 'net', of one of the Tibetan manuscripts. The possibility that the Nam expression *hrim-hgru* corresponds to Tib. *rim-hgro* (*supra*, p. 308) is also apposite in this connexion. In Hsi-hsia -u = Tib. -o and -o = Tib. -u have been noted by Dr. Laufer (p. 101). The Nam word *mu*, when it seems to mean 'sky', corresponds to what in Hsi-hsia is *mo* and in Hsi-fan and Tibeto-Burman generally is usually *mo* or *mon*. In Hsi-fan *ū < o* is frequent or normal, e.g. in Rgya-roñ *slu* = Tib. *glo*, 'lungs'.

The -*wa* = Tib. -o in *swa* (also Tib. *swa*), 'watch', and *swa*, 'tooth', and similarly in *swar* = Tib. *sor*, 'finger', *wa-hdan/hwa-hdan* = Hsi-hsia 'o-diñ, Tib. 'o-ldoñ/*ho-doñ*, 'neck', 'windpipe', is perhaps original, although in later times we find Gyärüñ *wāki*, Tākpa *wa*, derived, no doubt, from Tib. *hog*, 'below', and in Yün-nan Tibetan -*wa* for -o is frequent.



The above discussions may serve to exemplify the methods and materials available for ascertaining the meanings and etymological relations of Nam words. In the case of a previously unknown language, where every word sheds obscurity upon its neighbours, a definite knowledge of some word-meanings is an early requisite. A monosyllabic language, abounding, like the Tibetan, in homophones and in unconnected meanings of other sorts, is especially elusive; and, in consequence of the play of consonantal Prefixes, the systematic variations of initial consonants, and ancient vowel-Ablauts, the seizable part of an individual monosyllable is reduced to very little. The popular Tibetan of the eighth- to ninth-century 'documents' and of the more or less contemporary texts of what we have cited as 'the Tibetan manuscripts' has, moreover, a Protean range of orthographic variation and frequent caprice in its employment. Only by observing the system of the morphological variations and becoming aware of habits shown in the orthographical fluctuations can we attain a conviction as to what is, or is not, possible in a particular case.

As students of even ordinary Tibetan, and certainly of old popular Tibetan, are aware, a fairly definite apprehension of word- or root-meanings is insufficient for the purpose of reaching, as we do in such languages as Greek, Latin, or Sanskrit, the meaning of the phrase or sentence: the syntactical indications are too lax and too few. It is by a sort of conjecture that the total meaning is conceived, and the verification is through familiarity with usage and comparison of parallels. The mentality of the Ch'iang peoples, whose history is known only from notices in Chinese *Annals* and biographies and from whom there has hitherto been a total lack of literary record, would be merely conjectural but for the existence of the fragmentary pieces to which we have been referring as 'the Tibetan manuscripts'. These, emanating from the same milieu, more or less, as the Nam text and partly concerned in a general way with the same subjects, do to some extent prepare us for comprehending the notions and interests involved in the text. Occasionally they furnish convincing evidence in detail: for instance, in the Nam expression *smyi-glog* we might, after making sure of *smyi* as = Tib. *myi/mi*, 'man', hesitate to recognize *glog* as = Tib. *glog*, 'lightning', and seek some other etymology and meaning, if we did not find in one of the manuscripts a proverb which explicitly compares a man of prompt activity to lightning, thus assuring the translation 'a lightning man'. The manuscripts

are, therefore, an essential part of the materials for the work of interpretation.

A fair number of the recurrent words and phrases in the text have been under consideration; and further meanings and etymologies, either consequent or comparable or not calling for longer examination, will be found in the Vocabulary. If a good proportion of all these ventures shall prove to have been successful, some serious inroads will have been made into the initial obscurity of the language and text. Apart from external *points d'appui*, which afford unmanipulated testimony, the most satisfactory verification should be found in continuous translation: in such languages as Nam or Tibetan a verse or a sentence might in some cases by aid of ingenuity be made to yield a reasonable sense, etymologically impeccable, but quite different from the original intent: the possibility of such illusion recedes *pari passu* with the increase in the extent of the passage in question. At present an attempt at a complete translation would be marred by numerous gaps and queries due to lack of comprehension, not to mention the fragmentariness of the text itself; and there might be a temptation to hazard renderings not based upon proof or mature conviction. The somewhat numerous versions of short passages or verses, taken along with the Abstract given *supra* (pp. 159 sqq.), may afford some conception of the matter and the modes of expression.

It could not have been intended to draw up any list of 'sound changes', or a *lautlehre* of the Nam language. An indispensable preliminary is the ascertainment of the meanings of the words, which, as factual matters, are established by use of all available sources of evidence. But it may be doubted whether an eventual *lautlehre* of Nam will ever be very extensive. The text is written in Tibetan script, which, as devised by Indian pandits of the seventh century A.D. for the representation of the Tibetan language, pronounced to them by a royal envoy dispatched for the purpose, is likely to have represented a contemporary pronunciation with a more than ordinary accuracy. In the use of that alphabet the Tibetan and Central-Asian scribes had had a vast experience, including some practice in writing foreign languages. The Lha-sa inscriptions and the more carefully written Central-Asian manuscripts are not remarkable for irregularities of spelling as distinguished from what later became archaisms of vocabulary or script. The common 'documents', with their multitude of different unlearned writers, present peculiarities both dialectical



and individual; and for some reason some of 'the Tibetan manuscripts' are replete with abnormalities and inconsistencies, especially, it seems, in regard to distinction of *tenuis* and *tenuis aspirata* and, to a less extent, in regard to distinction of *tenuis* and *media*, while the vowels are more constant—the Sandhi of Particles is often abnormal. In this matter the Nam text is on the same general level as 'the Tibetan manuscripts', and it probably exhibits no irregularity which cannot be exactly paralleled in the latter. If we regularize the orthography and ascribe the fluctuations to some rather general differences between what was orthodox and what, in the case of oral tradition of popular compositions, was actually heard, we shall find that, except in respect of the actual use of Prefixes, which were more restricted in number than in Tibetan, and in respect of the absence of initial vowels (whether with *h* or ') and the practical non-occurrence of *z*, *z*, and *h*, the Nam phonology was notably similar, as was the word-morphology in general, to the Tibetan. Few of the phonetic deviations from Tibetan (in our present view almost entirely due to degeneration) which Dr. Laufer assembled on pp. 98–105 of his essay on Hsi-hsia can be paralleled in Nam. Accordingly the phonology of Nam may be treated to a great extent by mere reference to Tibetan.

It is possible that an excessive appearance of resemblance to Tibetan results from the predominance of the latter among the aids to investigation, the other known Tibeto-Burman languages being all inferior by many centuries in date and most of them recorded only in modern times, so that their forms may be degenerate in the same degree as the modern Lha-sa Tibetan. The resemblance of Nam to the early Tibetan is not such that even, perhaps, a single verse in the text would yield its meaning to a Tibetanist or Tibetan person either forthwith or through normal use of a Tibetan dictionary. The Grammar is simpler (though the verse parts of 'the Tibetan manuscripts' make some approximation), and the words are identifiable only when regard has been paid to principles of word-morphology in Tibetan and the alternatives which they involve. Nevertheless the resemblance turns out to be somewhat striking. In monosyllabic languages, indeed, correspondence of root-words, not obliterated, as so frequently in other forms of speech, by additions of suffixes, may be, when phonetic changes have been discounted, rather a general characteristic. As is apparent upon consultation of the Comparative Vocabu-



laries in the *Linguistic Survey* volume, the original monosyllables are to a large extent recognizable in the corresponding terms, sometimes modified by mere phonetic change, sometimes incorporated in new monosyllables, sometimes fitted out with new, syllabic, prefixes, suffixes, and other exponents. But the Nam forms are appreciably on the same phonetic level as the Tibetan: they have more or less corresponding interchanges of initial consonants and Ablauts of vowels. It cannot be supposed that the other languages of the family, taken at the same level of date, would have revealed a like degree of affinity. Even in 'Tibet' the differences between the languages of the family are not a mere matter of chronology. This can be proved by inspection of the only other language of the group having records coeval with the Nam and the early Tibetan. This is the *Žaṅ-žuṅ* language of the *Mānasa-sarovar-Kailāsa* region, whereof some short specimens have been published in the *JRAS.* 1933, pp. 405-10. Very possibly it may turn out that the root-forms of *Žaṅ-žuṅ* are in a large measure shared by the Tibetan and the Nam. But the grammar and the actual words are, on the surface, entirely different, and the identification of the common elements will demand a study as intent as in the case of Nam.

The resemblance between Tibetan and Nam may call for a revision of our preliminary impression that in the early times of historical Tibet a great gap, geographical and linguistic, separated the Tibetan and Ch'iang peoples. We may have to group them together as Eastern instead of separating them as Southern and North-Eastern: the western Tibetan dialects, *Ladāki*, &c., are, no doubt, all derivative, consequent upon the conquests of *Sron-btsan Sgam-po* and his successors. In this connexion it is interesting to note that the purest existing form of Tibetan proper, namely the 'Tangut' of the *Koko-nor* region, as exemplified in *Prejevalsky's* vocabulary, is likewise colonial, being spoken in an originally Ch'iang area: allowance being made for a few phonological peculiarities, this dialect does not appear to differ seriously from the book language.

## NOTE TO TEXT

The passages printed as prose betray frequently, but not at all points, a metrical intention, with verse varying (as elsewhere), irregular or miswritten. The punctuation being unreliable or inadequate, the beginnings of sentences after | (not after ||) are here indicated by an added mark ('). On extra-metrical *-o*, *na*, *ní*, *hi*, also *doñ*, at end of lines and on monosyllables with *-r* = *-re*, *-r-re*, or *-ra* see pp. 126-8, 173-81.

# TEXT

[1] . . . r(n ?) . . . [2] . . . rkah(?) . . . [3] . . . (8 akšaras) [1 hra .  
1 hlda . . .] hšes | beg . hr . . hrañ . [hlda] . .

[4] . . (14 akšaras) - [gñe . . gž(?)og] . . (10 akšaras)

[5] [r]am<sup>1</sup> | ge | hwañ || re | klu | ge | hwañ ||

hrañ | hlda | hnam | hge | hšes | beg | hyañ |

5

[6] mog<sup>2</sup> | htswe | re | mye | hyañ | hwad ||

hrañ | hlda | hnam | ge | hrpag | hkhur | hskuñu ||

[7] [skuñu ?] | na<sup>3</sup> | hšes | hbeg | [hldoño ?] | dze | hrño | htoñu |

re | hgyañ ||

g-rañ | gšog | hner<sup>4</sup> | šes | [8] hbeg | hšog ||

sta | hldyañ | htye | dze | hmo | ge | me | hgrah |

10

hrañ | hlda<sup>5</sup> | hnam | hge<sup>6</sup> | hrañ<sup>7</sup> [9] hyos.] | hldom |

sta | re | hmo | hno | ge | sta | hri | hldyañ ||

hmu | hrñu | skhrud<sup>8</sup> | dze | mor | htañ | [10] [hgras] ||

hldi | hrkah | hldyañ | dze | hyañ | htañ | hgras<sup>9</sup> ||

hlah | gsom | hram | [11]<sup>10</sup> [h ?] lgyoho | ge | htañ | hmu | hro ||<sup>11</sup> 15

hñor | hlah | hwam | hšid | dze | hrwañ | hkañ | [12] hkañ ||

hbo | hkom | ldyañ | dze | hldab | hde | hde ||

gñim | hti | hldyañ<sup>12</sup> | hgye | hkrom | [13] hkrom |

hkra | hrag | hldyañ | ge | hšrehi | hkyeb | hkyeb |

hdoñ | hri | hldyañ | ge | [14] spo<sup>13</sup> | hpod | pod<sup>14</sup> |

20

hrañ | hri | hldyañ<sup>15</sup> | hsehe | hwad | hwad |

htañ | hldu | hldyañ | ge | hstom | [15] hkom | hkehi ||

g-yog | hšañ | ma | hpul | dze | hmar | hbab | ge | hrñ<sup>16</sup>oño ||

hbu | rwe | [16] hce | rgyañ | dze | hldyo | htor | ge | hnus ||

hkrug | hrdzo | hgyud | dze | hrño | hyod | yod<sup>17</sup> 25

<sup>18</sup>hrñe | [17] gsañ | hgre | dze | ñe<sup>19</sup> | hkyeb | hkyeb |

hkhah<sup>20</sup> | hrpag | hñor | hlañ | hší | hrog | hpah | to | [18]

h-<sup>21</sup>hskyim | se<sup>22</sup> | hrmoño ||

hdzañ | hkhör | hkrug | hkyañ | hyogs | hldog | hbar<sup>23</sup> |

hwañ | [19] [h]t[i]b . bžer ||

hdar | hti | hwer<sup>24</sup> | hldu | hro |<sup>25</sup> hgru ||

<sup>1</sup> dam ?

<sup>2</sup> hšog ?

<sup>3</sup> ra ?

<sup>4</sup> Understand hner | re ? (metre!). Cf. l. 20.

<sup>5</sup> m here crossed out.

<sup>6</sup> dze (?) here crossed out. <sup>7</sup> h below line.

<sup>8</sup> skhud ? (a correction).

<sup>9</sup> hbo | here crossed out.

<sup>10</sup> .g here crossed out.

<sup>11</sup> hrñ | ?

<sup>12</sup> Insert ge or dze ? (metre).

<sup>13</sup> lpo ?

<sup>14</sup> pod added below line.

<sup>15</sup> ge here omitted ? (metre).

<sup>16</sup> l inked over: correction from hrño ?

<sup>17</sup> yod added below line.

<sup>18</sup> rdz here crossed out.

<sup>19</sup> ñe added below line.

<sup>20</sup> h a correction of r (crossed out ?).

<sup>21</sup> ra ?

<sup>22</sup> Corrected to skhre ? (erasure and blur).

<sup>23</sup> = hbañ-re ?

<sup>24</sup> Read hwo-re ? (metre).

<sup>25</sup> bžer | here crossed out.



- sta | re | hmo | ge | sta | hri | hldyañ [20]  
 stañ | hldyañ | hthye<sup>1</sup> | dze | hmo | ge | me | hgrah |  
 g-rah | gśog | hner<sup>2</sup> | hśes | hbeg | hśog [21]  
 hgru | hldañ | hmañ | dze | htsā | gsom | hkhog |  
 5 ga | bzañ<sup>3</sup> | g-ri | hruhu | hrañ | hrah | [22] [h]rwehi |  
 smuñ | hku | hyob | ge | hmar | myi | lpyoñ ||  
 hgru | hldañ | hmañ | ge | hśes | [23] hbeg | hrah ||  
 htsah | gsom | hkog | ge | hśes | hbeg | hrah |  
 na | gsom | sñi | [24] hyañ ||  
 10 hgru | hsrām | htam | ge | hśes | beg | hstañ ||  
 klu | hrto | htsa | ge | hśes [25] hbeg | mehi ||  
 klu | rto | htsah | ge | hrah | hyos | hlam ||  
 śes | hbeg | hrbo | dze | [26] hldyeg | hldyi | hti | dze | hrah |  
 g-yos | ge | hsar ||  
 g-rah | hyos | ge | hsar | [27] g-rah | g-yo | rbo | ge | hglu<sup>4</sup> |  
 ma | hti ||<sup>5</sup>  
 15 smu | hdzu | rgyag | dze | hldañ | rmañ | hrwehi ||  
 [28] hdag | dze | hgrañ | hñyir | hñyir<sup>6</sup> ||  
 hswar | hldu | sto | dze | g-yo | hpud | hto | hdag<sup>7</sup> | hpōñ |  
 [29] hwar | hwar ||  
 hde | hyim | sto | rgyag | rgu | hmyil | myil<sup>8</sup> |  
 20 htor | hpu | hgru | dze | gla | hdzo [30] htsah ||  
 hgru | hldañ | ma | dze | hrgu | hto | hrun ||<sup>9</sup>  
 gśañ | re | htad | to | dze | hbrañ | hldar [31] | ma<sup>10</sup> | hyob |  
 hñed | <sup>11</sup>htram<sup>12</sup> | htsah | glañ | tañ | hbra | <sup>13</sup>hldar | ma | hyob ||  
 g-yañ | ra | [32] hrnab | hldañ | htah | hbra | hldar | ma | hyob |  
 25 hrgu | hto | hrun ||  
 hgru | hma | hkom | re | hrwad | [33] hmoñ | hldañ |  
 htor | hbu [ ] | hgru | dze | hse | hte | hmun |  
 hnañ | hrañ | ge | rwyin ||  
 na | htsah | [34] ste | dze | hldyo | htor | ge | hnus | dze |  
 30 g-rah | hyos | htāg | ge | hjoñ ||  
 śid | g-ri | htor | [35] dze | hgru | hldañ | hmañ ||  
 mehi | g-ri | htah | dze | <sup>14</sup>rtah | htsog | hram |

<sup>1</sup> hrbye? Cf. l. 8.<sup>2</sup> Read hner-re? Cf. l. 7.<sup>3</sup> gbzañ? gañ? zañ? (corrected from °m).<sup>4</sup> hgru?<sup>5</sup> hgru | h here crossed out.<sup>6</sup> hñyir added below line.<sup>7</sup> It may be suspected that of the words g-yo-hpud-hto-hdag the first two belong to the previous line of verse, and should precede hdag there.<sup>8</sup> myil added below line.<sup>9</sup> Punctuation here completed by reviser.<sup>10</sup> sa?<sup>11</sup> Underline correction from hyedo<sup>12</sup> htras?<sup>13</sup> Punctuation here due to reviser.<sup>14</sup> Punctuation here confirmed by reviser.

rgyed | [36] hsañ | rgam | cañ | hldyo | hrje | hbro ||  
 šes | hmad | hdzwehe | re | hpah | hroñ || hkes  
 [37] hrañ | hldaḥ | hnam | ge | klu | hto | hkyim |  
 rje | smyi | rmad | ge | htsog | hram | hdroho | [38]  
 hśi | hgri | hchim<sup>1</sup> | ge<sup>2</sup> || hldyañ | hrdzañ | hdzañ || 5  
 rbyo | hpah | hdar | [39] dze | hkye | ge | hmu ||  
 šes | hmad | hdzwe | dze | myag | mye | htañ ||<sup>3</sup>  
 rgoñ | spu | rbu | dze | hgyaid<sup>4</sup> | ge<sup>5</sup> | hbañ [40]  
 hp̄hu | hklo | hśad | dze | hnaḥ<sup>6</sup> | me | hmyi ||  
 htrog | htor | te | dze | hldyo | ge | hnus | 10  
 mor | hp̄hu | [41] h̄bos | dze | hñud<sup>7</sup> | nohu | hp̄hul ||  
 hyañ | rmyi<sup>8</sup> | hsaḥ | dze | hgwa | nehu | hkehi ||  
 na | hldom [42] hgor<sup>9</sup> | hkyañ | hrgyañ | hdzud ||  
 hsaḥ | htsaḥ | hdzañ | dze | hklom | ge | htul |  
 bos | smyi | [43] hldog | dze | hrah | ldaḥ | ge | hdzaḥ || 15  
 gdaḥ<sup>10</sup> | hdih<sup>11</sup> | gtar | pra | hrehe | hldyañ ||  
 bos | [44] smyi | hldog | ge | šes | gśi | hlduḥu ||  
 htsaḥ | htsaḥ | hdzañ | ge | šes | hśi | brehe |  
 hriñ | [45] rwa | hkar | re | hñañ | hya<sup>12</sup> | htsag ||  
 skaḥ | rah | hdzur | dze | hldag | hbaḥ | hldoñ || 20  
 re | ma | [46] hnad | ge | hbehe | h̄sli | rmañ ||  
 hmar | me | hukah<sup>13</sup> | ge | hrdzaḥ | hgo<sup>14</sup> | hpo ||  
 gte | me | hkaḥ | ge<sup>15</sup> | dam | [47] rma | hbroñ ||  
 gci | me | hśi | ge | hbehi | baḥ | hbu || hrug ||  
 hñed | ge | slug | dze | hwehi | hśi | [48] hpo || 25  
 hre | ge | rgyo | dze | hp̄hu | h̄seg | hldyihi ||  
 twañ | mag | h̄nor<sup>16</sup> | gse | h̄c<sup>17</sup>añ | hldyañ | dze | [49] rñam | nar |  
 hyuḥu |  
 hkyañ | mag | h̄nor<sup>18</sup> | hr̄no | h̄cañ | hram | dze | ḡse | hrdzro |  
 h̄naḥ<sup>19</sup> ||<sup>20</sup>  
 h̄ce | ra<sup>21</sup> [50] tsha | ge | h̄ce | hra | h̄byi | na | tsham | h̄rog | h̄nor |

<sup>1</sup> = h̄tshim, l. 81.

<sup>2</sup> h̄tsog | hram | h̄do here crossed out. The punctuation || after ge is probably due to confusion.

<sup>3</sup> Punctuation reinforced by reviser.

<sup>4</sup> h̄gyed? Correction from h̄gyaid.

<sup>5</sup> Corrected below line to h̄ge.

<sup>6</sup> h̄naḥ below line, a correction of myag.

<sup>7</sup> ñu a correction of ja.

<sup>8</sup> pyi? rpyi? myi?

<sup>9</sup> Read h̄gor-re? (metre).

<sup>10</sup> g added below line.

<sup>11</sup> h̄ida written? See scansion.

<sup>12</sup> ya? The h̄ a correction of la.

<sup>13</sup> Sic.

<sup>14</sup> h̄ko?

<sup>15</sup> ge added below line.

<sup>16</sup> For h̄no-re? Cf. l. 58.

<sup>17</sup> c a correction (of rts or c, clumsily written?)

<sup>18</sup> For h̄no-re?

<sup>19</sup> Corrected from h̄nar or h̄naḥ.

<sup>20</sup> Punctuation reinforced by reviser.

<sup>21</sup> || h̄ce | ra inked over.

- <sup>1</sup>hbu | rbye | hce | rgyaṅ | na | hldyo | tor | [51] hnus |  
 g-yog | hśaṅ | ma | hpul | dze | hmar | hbaḥ | ge | hrah ||  
 hlduḥ | ce | rgyaṅ | na<sup>2</sup> | stoṅ | hkhog | re | hldya [52] hkaṅ | hte |  
 hñor | 'gldag | hce | rgyaṅ | na | hldag | khri | khyag | re | hśid ||  
 5 hmog | hce | rgyaṅ | [53] rgya | hñi | ke | hkor | hśid || rbyo | hko |  
 rño | dze | hphoṅ | ge | thrah || na | hce | ge | me | hyed | 'hko | [54]  
 rño | hce | dze | rb<sup>3</sup>ab | ña | hke | hkog || steḥi | htaṃ | hmog | dze |  
 rzaṅ | hba | ge | rgyeḥ | na | 'hko | rño | hce | [55] dze | hmoge | hco |  
 'gmog | hce | rgyaṅ | dze | hko | rño | ge | hco | 'gmog | hce | hsa | dze |  
 10 hbaḥ | hrag | [56] hkyer || hñah | hce | hrah | hbyiṅ | ña | hrbyo |  
 hko | rño || rñe | hño<sup>4</sup>h | rzaṅ | dze | na | ge | me |<sup>5</sup>ña | [57]<sup>6</sup> hbyiṅ |  
 'rgyaṅ | hce | ma<sup>7</sup> | hbyiṅ ||  
 hce | hse<sup>8</sup> | rgye | re | hrkas | hthaṅ | hlde ||  
 rbyo | hce | rgye | [58] dze [ ] | hrgu | hrgeḥi | sto ||  
 15 <sup>9</sup>sku | mag | hno | dze | me | na | hldis |  
 hdaḥ | mag | hno | dze | me | na | hśams [59] |  
 sbyim | hce | rgye | dze | hrwa | hdaḥ | hpog ||  
 hśas | hce | rgye | dze | hraṅ | hgām | hyim |  
 rgoṅ [60] hce | rgye | dze | hldaṅ | hrgyu | htaṃ ||  
 20 hkhu | tsa | śid | dze | hpha | hñur | hñur ||  
 gphaḥ | tsa | glom | dze | hkhu | [61] hñur | hñur ||<sup>10</sup> [62]  
 ~ || : | hśid | hriḥi | hthor<sup>11</sup> | dze | hgru | hldaṅ | hmaḥ |  
 htor | hphu | hgru | dze | gla | htso | htsaḥ |  
 ha | [63] yaṅ<sup>12</sup> | hso | hrñi | dze | mo | ma | hthor |  
 25 hyaṅ | so | hdze | tse | hldi | ma | hrtah ||  
 hyaṅ | tsa | hjo | dze | [64] hyaṅ | ge | hgroms |  
 tor | hpu | hgru | ge | hstor | moṅ | hdoṅ | re | htsa | hdo | hkrom |  
 gsu | [65] prom | hñor | htsaḥ | hpu<sup>13</sup> | hdrom ||  
 ldaṅ | pyer | hgag | re | htsaḥ | hyaḥ | hdo ||  
 30 hpha | ma | sñāṅ | [66] | ne | ge | bu | lta<sup>14</sup> | ge | sñāṅ | glaṅ | hgaḥi |  
 hyaṅ | hrah | hkaḥ | hldom | ge | ru |<sup>15</sup> glaṅ | ge | [67] hthul | hi ||

<sup>1</sup> With these two verses cf. ll. 15-16.      <sup>2</sup> ce | rgyaṅ | na added below line.

<sup>3</sup> rñ a correction (of rb?). Read ba?

<sup>4</sup> ce here crossed out: the h accidentally left in.

<sup>5</sup> b here crossed out.

<sup>6</sup> ñ here crossed out.

<sup>7</sup> Some sign here crossed out.

<sup>8</sup> Read hse | hce?

<sup>9</sup> This and the following verse seem to interrupt the series of expressions: an insertion?

<sup>10</sup> A short line. Before the next line there is a blank of about the width of a line.

<sup>11</sup> Correction of hphor?

<sup>12</sup> Read hyaṅ: h(a) | yaṅ is merely the result of a line-ending.

<sup>13</sup> Correction of gñi (crossed out). Hñor = hño-re.

<sup>14</sup> ru | lta (a correction of glaṅ) crossed out?      <sup>15</sup> s here crossed out.



hko | se | hgro | re | htsa | hyah | hdo ||  
 hjo | me | hdub | re | hlab | ma<sup>1</sup> | hñi |  
 hbañ<sup>2</sup> | [68] re | hko | htar | dze ||<sup>3</sup> hna | hlam | glo | hrañ ||<sup>4</sup>  
 hdzam | hbroñ | hroñ | dze | hdam | to | hbu | hpor<sup>5</sup> |  
 [69] skyim | se | hdzar | dze | hbehi | la | hgar<sup>6</sup> | 5  
 thar | pyañ | hjo | dze | hpah | la | gnah ||  
 gcog | [70] hlde | hldu | dze | h<sup>7</sup>byig | la | gnah ||  
 hjo | me | hdub | re | hlab<sup>8</sup> | me | hñis ||  
 ru | ge | hkrom | dze | [71] hmo | ma<sup>9</sup> | thor |  
 hcha | ge | hcer | dze | hldi | ma | rtañ || 10  
 hde | me | htañ | g-roñ | hyed | ge | ta<sup>10</sup> | hwa [72] ste | htañ ||<sup>11</sup>  
 gśi | brom | hnu | ge | hsor | htsam | bzod |  
 hyah | hrgehe | ge | sram | pa | nar [73]  
 hwa | ste | hge | dze | hla | hram | hte ||  
 htor | smyi | hbom | ge | gla | htso<sup>12</sup> | htsah | 15  
 hpah | [74] ma | rah | ge | htsah | hjo | hdzin |  
 hkuhu | nehu | htshe | re | wehi | nehu | hrehe |  
 dgu | hldo | htor | [75] dze | hsoh<sup>13</sup> | hsoh<sup>14</sup> | htshu |  
 hwa | ste | hgehe | dze | dgu | htor | hbyi<sup>15</sup> |  
 hwa | ste | hge | dze | lah | [76] hram | hte | chan | dgu | htor | 20  
 htshu ||  
 do | ldo | hdzo | chan | dgu | htor | htshun | re | [77] hrah |  
 hrtah | hgyañna |  
 dgu | hldo | htor | dze | hldo | hdzor | re | hlde | ge | hgru<sup>16</sup> | ma |  
 rmañ | [78] na |  
 ldyañ | hjo | hjihi | re | mehi | ra | hgam ||  
 dgu | hldo | htor | ge | stor | hmoñ | joñ [79]  
 hldañ | phyi | ske | re || hño | stor | prom | re | hgru<sup>17</sup> | ma | 25  
 hstor ||  
 stor | hto | rta | yañ | stor | to | [80] hrun | ° |  
 rta | hso | hnah | yañ | gñi | hrdzum | doho ||  
 smyi | hni | hśige | smyi | rmad | ldañ<sup>18</sup> | [81]  
 hkyañ | rgyañ | hśig | dze | hśi | hkri | htshim ||<sup>19</sup>  
 hśaṅ | re | hśig | dze | hmog<sup>20</sup> | re | [82] hldoñ | 30

<sup>1</sup> Read me, as in l. 70?<sup>2</sup> ñ below line.<sup>3</sup> Punctuation reinforced by reviser.<sup>4</sup> Punctuation reinforced by reviser.<sup>5</sup> hphor? <sup>6</sup> r inked over.<sup>7</sup> h added below line.<sup>8</sup> b smudged or crossed out.<sup>9</sup> Something here crossed out.<sup>10</sup> h added below line. <sup>11</sup> ta added below line. <sup>12</sup> Punctuation reinforced by reviser.<sup>13</sup> heo?<sup>14</sup> h added below line.<sup>15</sup> h below line: hbyi correction of hgya?<sup>16</sup> hglu?<sup>17</sup> hglu?<sup>18</sup> Correction from ldañ. <sup>19</sup> hchim? Cf. l. 38. <sup>20</sup> h added below line.

- rtah<sup>1</sup> | htsog | hram | dze | hrgoñ | hru | ge | hru | re | rbyo | ha | ge<sup>2</sup> |  
 hcah | rte | hyu | [83] rgyag | dze | hldas | htso | hpu || hkam | stan |  
 rgyag | dze | hnam | hte | hśah | hcah | rgyag | [84] hris | dze | hño |  
 sto | ge | rdo | re | cis | tsha | hbyih | hrje | smyi | rmad | ge | hmo |  
 5 rkah | lda | [85] dze | hño | sto | ge | hśag<sup>3</sup> | dze | rie | hwe | ge |  
 hwyir ||  
 hño | sta | glom | dze | krañ | nur | nur | [86]  
 rie | sta | glañ | dze | hne | riehi | riehi |  
 gśaṅ | sñāṅ | do | na | rgyaṅ | na | spe |  
 10 htsog | hram | hdo | na | [87] mor | hldaṅ | re | hñah ||  
 hldi | rgyed | hrar | heog | hram | hdo ||  
 rgyed | hdre<sup>4</sup> | hte | ge | [88] heog | hdo | dze | hwad |  
 hdim | htshis | hltom | re | htso | hldaṅ | stan |  
 gdim | pyi | [89] hse | ge | gsom | rgyag | hśor | doñ | htshog |  
 15 me | hldyim | rgyaṅ |  
<sup>5</sup>gdim | phyi | hse | ge | [90] htshog | hram | hñad ||  
 rgyed | ma | hldaṅ | ge | htsog | hram | hśah ||  
 rta | htsog | hram | [91] ge | htaḥ | rwe | htaḥ ||  
 rta | sko | prom | re | hrtah | hldaṅ | hkrañ ||  
 20 htsog | rpu | śe | chaṅ | [92] pyi | hse | hthoñ ||  
 hkor | htaḥ | hkhen | yaṅ | sñāṅ | gyaṅ | gyaṅ<sup>6</sup> |  
 hjaḥ | htaḥ | hkhen | yaṅ | [93] swa | tseg | tseg ||  
 rgyed | ma | hldaṅ | ge ||  
 rta | hgam | hphar | re | hśus | slo | glo |  
 25 rta | htso | hna<sup>7</sup> | [94] ge | htsog | hram | hduñ |  
 rgyed | htre<sup>8</sup> | ge | htsog | htaṅ | ma ||  
 gdim | chis<sup>9</sup> | ldom | [95] re | htsog | hldaṅ | hstaṅ ||  
 dim | tshis | ldom | re | tshog | hldaṅ | hduñ ||  
<sup>10</sup>ddyim | phyi || <sup>11</sup>[96] hse | ge | htsog | htaṅ | ma | te | na | ge |  
 30 hbyiñ | kya | htaṅ | ta | htor | rgor<sup>12</sup> | hyos | [97] hbom<sup>13</sup> | byiñ |  
 hbar | hbañ | thwañ | byiñ || rwer | hmo | hcah | byiñ | htsog |  
 hram | myiñ | [98] rgor | hyos | hbar | thwañ | hkhor | kyañ |  
 rwehi | re |  
 hmo | cha | byi | na | phyi<sup>14</sup> | hse | myi | [99]

<sup>1</sup> Correction below line from hta.<sup>2</sup> Read hge in place of ha | ge.<sup>3</sup> s here crossed out.<sup>4</sup> htre ?<sup>5</sup> d here crossed out.<sup>6</sup> The second gyaṅ added below the line.<sup>7</sup> m here crossed out.<sup>8</sup> htre ? (correction from hrtā). Read hdro-hte-ge (metre).<sup>9</sup> tshis ?<sup>10</sup> Some commencement here crossed out.<sup>11</sup> Erroneous punctuation (end of line).<sup>12</sup> Correction, underline, from rgyor.<sup>13</sup> hthom ?<sup>14</sup> hphyi ? Correction from cha.

rgyed | ma | glañ | ge | hñah<sup>1</sup> | htsog | hśah ||  
 rta | hgam | hphar<sup>2</sup> | gsus | slo | stah | [100]  
 gdim | hdzam | hdzim<sup>3</sup> | re | hko | wehi | htuhū ||  
 rta | hso | hñah | ge | na | rom | htoñ | [101] re | hlan | hjañ |  
 hkoñ | hko | bphyag<sup>4</sup> | hkhog | hñan | war | hpañ | re | 5  
 rgyed | ma | [102] hldañ |<sup>5</sup> ge<sup>6</sup> | ñah | htsog | hśas |  
 hśad | mag | hdehi | dze | hśi | kyeg | mye |  
 rbyo | sñan<sup>7</sup> | ge | [103]<sup>8</sup> sñan | na | rgoñ | ru | ge | hru ||  
 the | kyen | hldug | ha | rta<sup>9</sup> | hso | hna | ma | rañ | hñdram | [104]  
 hmu | hdoñ | htor | sku | hphu | hti | hldi | hgan | nañ | re | hñag | 10  
 htshab | hkañ | hñan | 'rgyed | [105] ma | hldañ | ge |<sup>10</sup> hkañ | hcog |  
 byin | ta<sup>10</sup> | 'rgyed | htso | dro | ho | hkañ | hgo | byin | ta | 'rgyed |  
 hgo | hdro | hkañ | hkhāb | byin | [106] ta | 'rgyed | hkañ | hdro |  
 hkañ | khab<sup>11</sup> | byin | tañ | 'rgyed | hkhāb | hdro | hkho | hphyag<sup>12</sup> |  
 hkhohu | re | [107] hñan | hwar | rders | hdi | na | na | hrom | hñob | 15  
 'hlan | hjañ | hkhog | 'rgyed | ma | [108] hldañ | ge | hso | hñah |  
 hrgah | 'mo | lan<sup>13</sup> | byu | re | hldi | hdañ | ma | ge | hño | bro | hñub |  
 [109] re | myag | gre | skyañ | hñim | li | li | re | pa | la | la | ge | tho |  
 rgyam | ge | hñad | re | [110] spyi | hñze | ge | hkañ ||  
 rta | hgam | hphar | re | hso | hñah | hldoho || 20  
 hro | hbehi | hbañ | ge | [111] hso | hñah | gcheg ||  
 hso | hñah | hyah | tse | gtañ | hbom | rbo ||  
 hbom | rbo<sup>14</sup> | phañ | dze | hldañ | [112] hñrañ | hñar | re |  
 hbom | rbo | hldañ ||  
 hñah | hldañ | hyah | dze | rgyed | hñdag | hñag | [113] ge |  
 hldañ | krañ | hrwehi ||  
 hñah | hpoñ | hgor | re | hgu | htor | htso : na | 25  
 gtse | ne | rgad | [114] re | hñah | rtañ | hkyañ | na |  
 dgu | hldo | htor | ge | su | me | hmehi |  
 hñah | we | rtañ | ge | so | [115] hñah | mehi ||  
 hñan | hche | hju<sup>15</sup> | ge | hcañ | htso | htśah |  
 hpo | hldi | nañ | re | hyah | hñehi | [116] hñahd | 30  
 hśas | te | khyañ | je<sup>16</sup> | hśas | hkhah | ge ||<sup>17</sup> hrwehi ||<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sic (for hñah ? cf. l. 102).<sup>2</sup> al here crossed out: read hphar-re ? (cf. l. 110).<sup>3</sup> hñim|hñim ? hñzam|hñzam ?<sup>4</sup> Punctuation reinforced.<sup>5</sup> Correction from cha.<sup>6</sup> Read hñta in place of ha | rta.<sup>7</sup> Corrected from hkhāb.<sup>8</sup> Or hñā ? (a correction).<sup>9</sup> Sic (= hñu, l. 117).<sup>10</sup> Erroneous punctuation.<sup>4</sup> hpro here crossed out.<sup>6</sup> hna here crossed out.<sup>8</sup> hcañ here crossed out.<sup>10</sup> hkañ . . . ta added below line.<sup>12</sup> Cf. l. 101.<sup>14</sup> rbo added below line.<sup>16</sup> Read dzo.<sup>18</sup> Punctuation reinforced.



- rño<sup>1</sup> | mu | rgyeb | re | hrañ | pu | glo | [117] re |  
 ran | hche | hzu<sup>2</sup> | hrañ | hkañ | khar | gsom |<sup>3</sup>  
 hpho | hldir | htsag | ge | so | hna | hstor [118]  
 hrtah | hgam | hkom | re | stor | moñ | hjoñ |<sup>4</sup>  
 5 rtañ | hgam | hphar | cañ | stor | htor | [119] hyoñ ||  
 hrtā | htsog | hram | yañ |  
 hño | stor | ha<sup>5</sup> | htoñ | re | hrñe | hldañ | hkhyed | [120]  
 htsog | hram | phye | dze | hśaṅ | plim | plam<sup>6</sup> |  
 htsog | hram | hnañ | tse | htor | śi | rgo<sup>7</sup> || [121]  
 10 htsog | hram | myag | dze | hrtā | hwa | hldañ |  
 htsog | hram | hme | dze | htor | htas | [122] hproms |  
 htsog | hram | hpo | dze | hrtā | rkwa | hdzam |  
 htsog | hram | hreg | dze | hldyañ<sup>8</sup> | [123] hyu | hgañ | dze |  
 hśi | hwa | hko |  
 15 hrtā | htsog | hram | yañ |  
 stor | me | hkhyed | re | hldañ | [124] me | hkhyed ||  
 htor | h<sup>9</sup>rta | rme | ge | hldañ | krañ | hkuñ || na |  
 hldañ | hkrañ | hśad | na | hldañ [125] hkrañ | hśah |  
 hldañ | krañ | hwe | dze | hldañ | ślah | hkehe |  
 20 hldañ | krañ | hko | dze | stor | [126] hldañ | hphyar |  
 hldañ | krañ | spo | dze | stor | hgu | hbo ||  
 hldañ | krañ | hnam | dze | stor | [127] dgu | htor<sup>10</sup> ||  
 hrtah | hldañ | krañ || yañ |  
 hño | stor | hkhyed | re | hrñe | hldañ | hkhrāñ |  
 25 so | [128] hnañ | hstor | dze | hño | stor | hprom ||  
 hkhar | hrpag | g-yar<sup>11</sup> | stor | moñ | hjoñ | re || [129]  
 re | hmoñ | hjoñ | re | hldag | gnag | hkhōho ||  
 g-wah | hram | myer | re | hldag | nag | [130] swehe |  
 h<sup>12</sup>thañ | rdzo | hñor<sup>13</sup> | hldag | nag | htshors ||  
 30 hthañ | phu | hkam | ge | rñe | [131] hbye | hkwehe | ge |  
<sup>14</sup>hthañ | hgam | hrñehe |  
 hthañ | le | htas | ge | hthañ | [132] hgam | hkre |<sup>15</sup>  
 hthañ | rdzo | hñor<sup>16</sup> | hldag | nag | tho ||

<sup>1</sup> rño over h (a blur): possibly hño or hjo was intended.

<sup>2</sup> Sic (= hju, l. 115).

<sup>3</sup> A correction (of gsum?).

<sup>4</sup> Punctuation reinforced.

<sup>5</sup> Sic: omit ha.

<sup>6</sup> plim-plam? Corrected below line from phyim | pyam.

<sup>7</sup> rgi?

<sup>8</sup> A correction (of hltāñ?).

<sup>9</sup> I here crossed out.

<sup>10</sup> do a correction?

<sup>11</sup> = g-yar-re or g-ya-re? Cf. l. 136.

<sup>12</sup> w here crossed out.

<sup>13</sup> = hño-re?

<sup>14</sup> hldag | nag here crossed out.

<sup>15</sup> he | here crossed out.

<sup>16</sup> = hño-re?

hbri | hldi | hthañ | re | hre | hldi | [133] hyah |  
<sup>1</sup>hldi | hthañ | re | rgyeb | hldi | hthañ | ra |<sup>2</sup>  
 hthañ | hrgam | hkad | re | rie | re | hño || [134]  
 dgu | sko | hldon | re | hkhog | hnoñ | hdzom hi |  
 re | hmon | hyog | re | hldag | nag | htsors<sup>3</sup> [135] 5  
 hrañ | pu | hlo | ge | gsehe | hldi | hthon | re | hldag | nag |  
 hkrag ||  
 hkhar |<sup>4</sup>rpag<sup>5</sup> || [136] | g-yar | re | hldag<sup>6</sup> | hgrom |  
 gldag | nag | g-yah | dze | rgyad | kyer | rbo | dze |  
 gtse | hkom | re | tsan | [137] ||  
 hbri | re | hrdayam | re | hkhañ | hldañ | hñahghi || 10  
 hdzohu | ro | hldi | re | hjoñ<sup>7</sup> || hwa | hkah<sup>8</sup> [138]  
 hdzehu | rje | hbro | re | hdzohu | ht<sup>9</sup>o | hrun |  
 stor | rje | hbro | re | stor | hto | hrun |  
 ldañ | rdze [139] hbro | re | hldañ | the | rgyebs ||  
 dgu | ldo | htor | ge | stor | mon | h<sup>10</sup>dzon | 15  
 hrañ | wehi | rta | ge | [140] stor | mon | hdz<sup>11</sup>on ||  
 ldyo | stor | hthu | re | hdrab | stor | htoho ||  
 hñi | stor | spehi |  
 hpu | [141] hpos | stor | dze | hkyan | stor | rño<sup>12</sup> ||  
 hsañ | yer | hldañ | dze | hrñe | hldañ | ne | 20  
 mor | [142] gdag | hgom | re | hdzan | hldog | stor |  
 mor | gdag | hphar | re | stor | hdor | g-yoho | [143]  
 na | hldom | hgor |<sup>13</sup>kla | hkyan<sup>14</sup> | gstor |  
 htor | se | stor | dze | hldañ | pyi | ske ||  
 hño | stor [144] hsañs | dze | mo | ma | hthor | 25  
 hrñe | hldañ | hñas<sup>15</sup> | dze | hldi | ma<sup>16</sup> | hrtah ||<sup>17</sup>  
 hldyan | htañ | hbo<sup>18</sup> | [145] kyer | mag | hnor | su | ge | stor | ta |  
 hthogs ||  
 phye | hgo | hthuñ | re | hnam | hdzam | [146] htar |

<sup>1</sup> Insert hyah (a regular antithesis to rgyeb)?

<sup>2</sup> ni here crossed out: replaced by the ra (below line).

<sup>3</sup> s below line. <sup>4</sup> l here crossed out (h intended?).

<sup>5</sup> re here crossed out.

<sup>6</sup> Insert nag?

<sup>7</sup> hum? Or is the dot over hu meant to indicate an error? Punctuation erroneous.

<sup>8</sup> h below line.

<sup>9</sup> rto (a first correction of to?) here crossed out. The to was then written.

<sup>10</sup> te here crossed out.

<sup>11</sup> dz written after te (crossed out).

<sup>12</sup> Correction (of rñu?).

<sup>13</sup> h here crossed out.

<sup>14</sup> Insert here hrgyan, as in l. 42.

<sup>15</sup> Read hsañs?

<sup>16</sup> ma: added below line.

<sup>17</sup> Punctuation reinforced.

<sup>18</sup> Some fragment of an akṣara here crossed out.

- hrah | hton | rmag | dze | hdrag | htrog | htsa ||  
<sup>1</sup>rñe | hne | hrmag | dze | hmañ [147] byi | hldon | hyu | sad | ge |  
 hphom | te | hdrañ | ge | hśad | na<sup>2</sup> | hrañ | rgyaṅ | hśod | te | rmag<sup>3</sup>  
 [148] dze | rmañ | ra | gyim | spyē | htor | hḍwa | dze | myag | myi<sup>4</sup>  
 5 tor | htsa | prom | dze | myage | [149] me | htañ |  
 rgyed | rmag | rñe | ge | stor | tha | hthogni |  
 hrah | sñiñ | ñe | ge | stor | ta | hthog | ni | [150]  
 hldyañ | hpū | hbri | re | mehi | klu | hcha | ge | stor | htah | htoni ||  
 hkyer | re | cig | dze | [151] hphañ | hphog | ge | hkarni || nor | gso |  
 10 hkañ | prom | re | śid | rgyaṅ | hnom | re | mehi | spa [152] rgyaṅ |  
 ge | stor | ta | htoni || g-we | hku | rño | re | g-yah | htsa | ne | ge |  
 gstor | ta | hthon |  
 hke | [153] hkañ | ñes | re | ske | hbrus | hgyaṅ ni |  
 myi | re | hti | ni | myi<sup>5</sup> | hśi ||  
 15 myi | rgye | myer<sup>6</sup> | hchos | [154] hyo | hjo<sup>7</sup> |  
 hti | rgye | mye | dze | hgye | hkrom | hkrom ||  
 hlo | ge | blaḥ | hldoh | ge | na | [155] rñe | ne |  
 mehi | hgab | hldo | ge | rke | hldaḥ | hrdañ |  
 śid | rgyaṅ | hre | ge | hwam | hnom | [156] śon |  
 20 rma | g-yog | rño | ge | hjim | ta | hthusni |  
 rmañ | bri | hko | ge | g-yah | ta | mehi |  
 na | rog | [157] hphar | ge | skye | ta | ram |  
 hpū | hbroñ | rkom | ge | glo | ta | rdzogs ||  
<sup>8</sup>hldañ | hwe | ge | g-ri | [158] ta | gron ||  
 25 hkehe | hkañ | ñes | re | ske<sup>9</sup> | hbro | hgyan ||  
 chos | ta | ñan | re | hde | ta | rgyen | [159] hlab | ta | hwen ||  
 hnaḥ | hchos | hre | ge | hldañ | myi | śeg |  
 spyē | chos | hre | ge | gtsaṅ [160] myi | hrgan |  
 śi | hchos | re | ge | hpū | myi | hldin ||  
 30 sñañ | ne | thehe | yañ | stor | dor | yon || [161]  
 hldyañ | hpū | hbri<sup>10</sup> | re | mehi | klu | hcaḥ | yañ | stor | hḍor |  
 hyon |  
 kyu | ldon | rño | re | [162] kya | wa | ne | yañ | stor | hḍor |  
 hyon ||

<sup>1</sup> The passage rñe-htaṅ (l. 149) was probably in verse: it may have been affected by omissions of duplicate, or quasi-duplicate, words. See pp. 299 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> na added below line.

<sup>3</sup> g added below line.

<sup>4</sup> śh (for st ?) here crossed out.

<sup>5</sup> Insert re ?

<sup>6</sup> Read mye-re or myer-re ?

<sup>7</sup> hrño ?

<sup>8</sup> A syllable missing here or after hldaṅ ? Krañ ?

<sup>9</sup> Underline correction from ste: cf. l. 153.

<sup>10</sup> yañ here crossed out.



hldyo | hdom | nag | re | hdrab | hwa | hrañ | yañ | [163] stor |  
 h̄dor | hyon ||  
 hbri | h̄sehe | h̄pur | h̄se | sri | hbodrag<sup>1</sup> |  
 h̄khañ | h̄ldañ | h̄nore<sup>2</sup> | tsa [164] chah<sup>3</sup> || h̄kañhi |||  
 h̄rtah | swah | g-wer<sup>4</sup> || h̄bos | h̄sah | h̄ldah | ha<sup>5</sup> |  
 h̄bos | [165] h̄nom | h̄sah<sup>6</sup> | gtsañ | h̄rgu | ma | gzo || 5  
 khru | h̄rkah | myi | h̄rdoño | h̄rnab | ma | h̄ldah |  
 h̄sah | chad | [166] rmur<sup>7</sup> | h̄koñu | prom | g-yehe ||  
 h̄sah | yob | h̄kom | re | hrañ | h̄rah | h̄tsuñu ||  
 rtah | h̄scah<sup>8</sup> | [167] g-yer | dze | stor | h̄to | h̄ruhi | ge | hrañ |  
 h̄rah | h̄dehi ||  
 h̄tor | h̄ph̄u | h̄bos | ge | h̄byi | [168] h̄ri | h̄gañ | ge | 10  
 chi | h̄rmu | h̄phor || re | h̄koñu | b̄prom | h̄to |  
 h̄tor | sñiñ | h̄kañ | ge | [169] h̄koñu | h̄prom || h̄rgah || dze |  
 h̄rgom | h̄khrur<sup>9</sup> | h̄to | na | h̄rpehi | h̄rgam | re | h̄to |  
 h̄dro | [170] h̄broñ | prom | ge | h̄koñi | me | h̄tul ||  
 h̄bañ | h̄ldah | h̄ne | ge | h̄keñu | me | h̄dzah || [171] 15  
 h̄ldyo | h̄dom | h̄nag | re | h̄koñu | h̄phrom | h̄to | na |  
 sli | h̄ti | h̄rñor<sup>10</sup> | h̄koñu | mehe | [172] h̄ldyo |||  
 h̄drab | h̄wah | hrañ | hrañ | re | h̄koñu | phrom | h̄to | na |  
 h̄rwad | h̄bañ | prom | [173] yañ | h̄koñu | me | h̄drab | na |  
 klag | h̄rwad | h̄dzur<sup>11</sup> | h̄wi | h̄wehi | h̄tsag | 20  
 rta | swah<sup>12</sup> | mor<sup>13</sup> | [174] h̄koñu | prom | h̄to | na |  
 tor | dro | h̄ño | ge | h̄nu | glañ | slog |  
 rtañi | swa | h̄ldir<sup>14</sup> | <sup>15</sup>nu<sup>16</sup> | [175] glañ | <sup>17</sup>h̄ldoñ<sup>18</sup> ||  
 rta | swa | <sup>19</sup>h̄kom | re | h̄nu | glañ | h̄por | na | mu | h̄ldi | h̄mo |  
 [176] na |  
 h̄rtah | swa | h̄phyegs | na | keñu | prom | h̄bres || doñ | 25  
 nu | glañ | h̄rgyañ | ge | h̄ke | prom<sup>20</sup> | glañ | [177] na ||

<sup>1</sup> rag ? : h̄ added below line: h̄boñg may have been intended ?

<sup>2</sup> Or read h̄ner (correction of h̄nor) ?

<sup>3</sup> h̄tah here crossed out, the double punctuation unintentionally left.

<sup>4</sup> Read g-we-re ?

<sup>5</sup> pu here crossed out: the h̄ unintentionally left.

<sup>6</sup> Correction of apparent h̄mah.

<sup>7</sup> Read r̄mu-re ? r̄mur is not found elsewhere.

<sup>8</sup> h̄tsah ?

<sup>9</sup> Read h̄khr̄u-re ? h̄khr̄ur is not found elsewhere.

<sup>10</sup> Read h̄rño-re ? h̄rñor and r̄ñor occur only in this way: cf. ll. 289, 322, 339.

<sup>11</sup> Read h̄dzur-re ?

<sup>12</sup> h̄ below line.

<sup>13</sup> Read mor-re

<sup>14</sup> h̄ added below line.

<sup>15</sup> Corrected from h̄nu.

<sup>16</sup> Read h̄ldir-re or h̄ldi-re ?

<sup>17</sup> h̄to here crossed out.

<sup>18</sup> ñ an addition.

<sup>19</sup> h̄ldir here crossed out.

<sup>20</sup> prom an addition, below line.

- htor | hdro | hño | ge | rñe | hpo | hldo | ge | hkehu | prom | hjo |  
 na |  
 hkoñu | prom<sup>1</sup> | bžer | na | kehu | [178] hkañ | rwañ || na |  
<sup>2</sup>hldyañ | hyañ | hyo | na | ldyañ | hkañ | rwañ |  
 ste | hkehu | prom | dze | gsom [179] wa | hyo ||  
 5 hnu | glañ | rño | dze | gsom | wa | g-yo ||  
 hldyañ | yañ | hyo | na | gnañ | goñ | myag | [180]  
 ste | hkoñu | bprom | yañ | ldyañ<sup>3</sup> | glab | hdo ||  
 de | nas | rabs | bgyis | gsañ | hldi | hlab | [181]  
 rbyo | po | nañ | gsañ | hśeg | hlab | dze | rbyo<sup>4</sup> | hpro | hro | grtehe |  
 10 hta | stel | re | hlab | ta | gboñu [182] ste | ge | hthogs | re | hlab |  
 ge | plañ | na |  
 hbroñ | hldañ | hdam | re | hrañ | rte<sup>5</sup> | hdubna [183]  
 hdu<sup>6</sup> | hdro | hphor<sup>7</sup> | hchi | hdo | dyañ | na |  
 bsog | thom | thom | dze | hpu | ge | me | hmuhi | [184]  
 15 hram | hkañ | hkañ | dze | hphage | me | hsam |  
 hdihi | mag | hnor<sup>8</sup> | ma<sup>9</sup> | hpu | mu | re | [185] ma | hpah |  
 hsam ||  
 htañ | hśud | hdon | rgyag | dze | htor | hdo | hchuñ |  
 hta | śud | mehi | [186] dze | hrtah | hjam | ge | hmehi |||  
 hldyañ | g-ri | gdod<sup>10</sup> | re | mehi | hrañ | gtañ |  
 20 eig | dze | htor<sup>11</sup> | [187] hldam | re | hldan ||<sup>12</sup>  
 htor | hkhru | rgyañ | re | hrtā | hpā | hphar |  
 hñi | htor | hldam<sup>13</sup> | [188] re | hldan |  
 ha | <sup>14</sup>lkyañ | hzu | hrño | re | hña<sup>15</sup> | hdro | mo |  
 eig | dze | tor | hldam | re [189] hldan ||  
 25 hśo | hkog | rño ||<sup>16</sup> re | hñañ | hdro | hmo ||  
 stor | hkho | hrño | re | hñañ | hdro | [190] thar |  
 hmor<sup>17</sup> | hzañ | re | hse | spyē | khyañ ||  
 rgyeb | hphui | htoñ | re | hyah | wa | hkañ | [191]  
 rñam<sup>18</sup> | skar | hkañ | re | gdañ | hnañ | hgam ||  
 30 dgū | hldo | htor | re | hra | we | rtañ | [192]  
 rgyed | hrañ | sme | re | hkhar | hgyi | ñes ||

<sup>1</sup> prom added below line.<sup>2</sup> ldyañ added below line.<sup>3</sup> In l. 354 the manuscript has hrtre.<sup>4</sup> Read hpho-re or hphor-re? Cf. l. 353.<sup>5</sup> Correction of myi?<sup>6</sup> d a correction (of r?).<sup>7</sup> Corrected from || or || reinforced?<sup>8</sup> kyañ here crossed out: read hlkyañ?<sup>9</sup> Punctuation erroneous.<sup>10</sup> Read hmo-re or hmor-re? Cf. l. 192.<sup>11</sup> h added below line.<sup>12</sup> rbyo added below line.<sup>13</sup> In ll. 352-3 hdu and gzu.<sup>14</sup> Read hno-re?<sup>15</sup> Read hto-re?<sup>16</sup> re here crossed out.<sup>17</sup> Read hñañ?<sup>18</sup> jam?

- cig | dze | htor | hldam | re | mor | re | hkar | rpag | re<sup>1</sup> |  
 kyañni | [193]  
 hñah | htsu | rpag | re | hñah | mo | hgam ||  
 hñah | mo | hr<sup>2</sup>pag | <sup>3</sup>gso | nad | hgam |  
 [194] gso | nad | rpag | re | hkañ | hgañ | hjor | 5  
 hrdzoñ | hyo | hñi | dze | ste | gdzu | ge | cig<sup>4</sup> | lol |  
 [195] hke | plañ | hdrañ | dze | hthar | mye | ge | lol |  
 hldiñi | su | hldoñ | <sup>5</sup>dze | hlda | hko | ge | hldzoñ | [196]  
 rma | hsu | hdra | dze | hwam | weñi | ge | tswedu |  
 hño | stor | hthor<sup>6</sup> | bñi | ta | ston | 10  
 rñe | [197] hldañ | hkharr<sup>7</sup> | hmye | htañ | rgyen |  
 mu | hrog | htro | re | rmañ | hldab | g-we |  
 stor | thoñ | [198] bñi | re | hldañ | hkharr | g-we |  
 hro | ta | šodce<sup>8</sup> | re | hwar | ta | rgyeni<sup>9</sup> |  
 hdi | gsom | šud | [199] re | rmañ | ña | g-weñi || 15  
 hñañ | nag | rgyes | hkom | chim | hldim | ge | hpah | rmañ | <sup>1</sup>rgyañ<sup>10</sup> |  
 gñi | ke | ge | [200] g-yog | hldah | gse | ge | speñi | hdañ | hgyañ |  
<sup>1</sup>hce | hmu | gdag | re | rñe | ne | hreñi | na | [201] rmañ | ña | g-we | he ||  
 hso | hldah | hgor | re | hwi | wa | rmañ |  
 trog | hjo | rñe | dze | pyi | rjes | [202] ne<sup>11</sup> | hcer | 20  
 rmañ | bri | ko | ge | hcha<sup>12</sup> | hru | hrdyañ |  
 hrañ | hmad | hñe | nag | ge | hko | [203] hldah | hse | hswad |  
 cha | hru | hwars | ge | hbri | hko | <sup>13</sup>hltah |  
 šor<sup>14</sup> | hlda | [204] hkar | re | pyu | phya | hdam |  
 hche | hmu | <sup>15</sup>gdag | re | gsañ | hkañ | hreñi | 25  
 puñ | te | gsar | ñar | [205] hpah | rmag | hciñi ||  
 gse | re | hrañ | klar | hldzoñ | skyar | hreñi ||  
 na | g-we | hkor | [206] kla | gsañ | rmañ | re | rmañ | ña | g-we ||  
 hce | hmu | gdag | re | rñe | ne<sup>16</sup> | hñoñu |  
 tshu | gsom<sup>17</sup> | [207] šud | re | rmañ | ña | g-we | re | g-we | 30  
 the | then | hldi | bñir | hkañ | hgañ | htsur | [208]  
<sup>18</sup>hkañ | hceig | rpag | re | htshar | hde | hpyedñi |  
 rseñi | hrgod | hphyed | re | hphyu | [209] hldyañ | hgyeñi ||
- <sup>1</sup> rpag | re added below line: to be inserted here?  
<sup>2</sup> Something here crossed out.  
<sup>3</sup> cig added below line, probably to replace lol: cf. l. 356.  
<sup>4</sup> Punctuation erroneous? <sup>5</sup> Read hñor-re or hthor-re?  
<sup>6</sup> Read hkharr-re or hkharr? <sup>7</sup> šodtsa? <sup>8</sup> = rgyen-ni.  
<sup>9</sup> rgyañ added below line. <sup>10</sup> rmañ here crossed out.  
<sup>11</sup> cha added below line. <sup>12</sup> hdam here crossed out.  
<sup>13</sup> A correction (of ror?). <sup>14</sup> g added below line.  
<sup>15</sup> rñe | ne (rñe?) inserted below line. <sup>16</sup> m below line.  
<sup>17</sup> h here crossed out.



- hkhō | hsañ | hgor<sup>1</sup> | hnom | ta | hprom | na |  
 hldañ | rgye | hdor | re | [210] hwañ | ta | hnen |  
 hcañ | rgye | rpag | re | hmo | ta | hpun ||  
 hdyañ | hto | htoñ | ge | hgo | [211] gtoñ | mod |  
 5 re | mye | hpahi | re | myi | hpehi | hkhīhi<sup>2</sup> |  
 rog | hji | rdañ | ge | [212] hko | htoñ | modhi |  
 khyos | hkhyañ | hyu | ge | mye | hpehi | hkhēhi ||  
 hkvañ<sup>3</sup> | hgo | [213] hro | ge | hbos | hdom | hrjihi ||  
 hbehi | tyañ | rdehe | ge | <sup>4</sup>hstsah | hbrad | [214] hrdaghi ||  
 10 hkañ | gsañ | hrañ | re | hrwehi | gtsu | ge | hrnas<sup>5</sup> |  
 kyu | hldoñ | hrño | [215] re | hkya | wa | ñe | re | htshu | to |  
 hphan || ||  
 htor | hñi | htas | ge | htor | hbroñ | [216] hkhōho ||  
 hldi | hrgyed | hrah | htor | hbroñ | hkhōho ||  
 hldi | hrgyed | hrar<sup>6</sup> | tor | [217] hbroñ | <sup>7</sup>hgyañ |  
 15 htor | hbroñ | hkhō<sup>8</sup> | dze | htor | hkhō | dze || kho<sup>9</sup> | sñe | ge |  
 [218] hldyañ | hpu | hbri | re | hmehi | klu | hcañ | <sup>10</sup>dze | htor |  
 hkhō | ge | hkhōhi ||  
 htañ | [219] hrdzo | hñor<sup>11</sup> | htor | hbroñ | htsors |  
 hthañ<sup>12</sup> | le | tshañ | dze | tor | sñi | rgam | [220]  
 20 hthañ | le | tsa | ge | thor | hbroñ | tshor | na |  
 thañ | rdzo | hkyud | na | hbroñ | hdru | hjar |  
 [221] hthañ | hgam | hrdzur | re | hbroñ | hkru | hbro | na ||  
 hyah | hklū<sup>13</sup> | hbro | re | hgyeb | [222] hkru | hbro | re | hyah |  
 htañ | hthañ na | : |  
 25 hrta | swa | gkom | re | htor | hbroñ | [223] hgrom ||  
 htor | hbroñ | hgrom | re | hton | hkoñ | hbye<sup>14</sup> ||  
 htor | hbroñ | hrpag | re | [224] hwañ | hrñañ | hlamhi |  
 g-wah | hrñañ | hnar | <sup>15</sup>hrkwa | hdzam | htronhi | [225]  
 dgu | hmu | htor<sup>16</sup> | hsañ | hld | hbyamna |  
 30 hrah | hldi<sup>17</sup> | hnañ | re | hrñañ | lad | hlamhi |  
 mor | [226] hgu | hrdzor<sup>18</sup> | hrñañ | lad | hlamhi ||  
 hyañ | hrah | hsañ | re | hsañ | hld | hlamhi | [227]

<sup>1</sup> Read hgo-re or hgor-re ?<sup>2</sup> Sic (for hkhēhi, as in l. 212?).<sup>3</sup> hkyañ ? Correction, below line, of hwañ.<sup>4</sup> mye here crossed out.<sup>5</sup> hnas ? Correction of hkornas.<sup>6</sup> Read hrar-re ?<sup>7</sup> hko here crossed out.<sup>8</sup> go here crossed out.<sup>9</sup> Or khwo ? (a correction).<sup>10</sup> Punctuation erroneous.<sup>11</sup> Read hño-re.<sup>12</sup> Correction, below line, of hphañ.<sup>13</sup> Probably hkru.<sup>14</sup> hpye ? hpyhe ?<sup>15</sup> Read hnar-re ? Cf. l. 233.<sup>16</sup> Read hto-re ? Cf. ll. 236, 244.<sup>17</sup> hldi added below line.<sup>18</sup> Read hrdzo-re ?

mug | hgu | rdzor<sup>1</sup> | hsañ | hład | hlamhi |  
 htham | rah | gsañ | re | hsañ | hład | [228] hlamhi ||  
 hbri | hgu | rdzor<sup>2</sup> | hwa | hrśaṇ | hlamhi |  
 braḥ | hraḥ | gsañ | re | hwaḥ<sup>3</sup> | glaḥ<sup>4</sup> | [229] hrśaṇ | hgam |  
 lamhi |  
 sñañ | ñe | hldir<sup>5</sup> | hgwaḥ | hrśaṇ | hlamhi | 5  
 rñe | hkhyam | hldyañ | dze | [230]<sup>6</sup> rñe | ge | hład | hi ||  
 hwa | bžer | hśid | re | hrtah | hurañ<sup>7</sup> | glyañ |  
 hwa | bžer | [231] hrpag | re | rñe | hład | hbyamna ||  
 rgyed | ma | hldañ | ge | hso | hnaḥ | hrgaḥ ||  
 htor | [232] hrtā | rme | ge | hso | hnaḥ | stor || 10  
 hdzañ | hglah | hnag | dze | rñe | hład | ge | hlam |  
 gaḥ<sup>8</sup> | [233] glaḥ | hład | hnar<sup>9</sup> | hkhab | h<sup>10</sup>gro | htroñ ||  
 hdzañ | gla | hnag | dze | hchir | htsaḥ<sup>11</sup> | sto | [234]  
 htsag | hro | hbeḥi | hbar | hso | hnaḥ | gceg |  
 hdzañ | hglah<sup>12</sup> | nag | ge | hbeḥi | hbah | [235] htog | 15  
 hbe | hbah | hñah | sto | hso | hnaḥ | rmañ | dze | htoho |  
 rñe | lad | thor | dze | ca | [236] yañ | htor |  
 dguḥu | hmu | to | re | hraḥ | hldi | nañ | re | h | glaḥ<sup>13</sup> | hład |  
 hlamna<sup>14</sup> || [237]  
 hldi | rgyed | hrar |<sup>15</sup> hglā | hład | hbyamna ||  
 rñe | hkhyam | hldyañ | re |<sup>16</sup> rñe | ge | hład | hi | [238] 20  
 gse | hbo<sup>17</sup> | bon | re | hład | maḥ | maḥna<sup>18</sup> |  
 hseḥe | hldu | hru | re | dze | hphag | hbah | [239] ge | hyor ||  
 hcha | hgraḥ | nu | nar<sup>19</sup> | dze |<sup>20</sup> hkhab | hgro | ge | hkaḥi ||  
<sup>21</sup>rñe | hład | [240]<sup>22</sup> rpag | re | gse | hlda | hład | hlamhi |  
 gse | hład | htor | dze | hcaḥ | [241] hyañ | hbro | na || 25  
 hño | rgam | kho | re | smyi | hnū<sup>23</sup> | hgyañs |  
 smyi | hnū | mye | re | tha | hnū | [242] hrgyañ | sto | smyi |  
 hnū | hto ||  
 gse | hład | thor | dze | hcaḥ | yañ | thor |

<sup>1</sup> Read rdzo-re ?<sup>2</sup> Read rdzo-re ?<sup>3</sup> h added below line.<sup>4</sup> h added below line.<sup>5</sup> Read hldi-re ?<sup>6</sup> s here crossed out.<sup>7</sup> Read hrañ.<sup>8</sup> gaḥ perhaps a faulty anticipation of glaḥ.<sup>9</sup> Read hnar-re ? Cf. l. 224.<sup>10</sup> b here crossed out.<sup>11</sup> A correction (of htshar).<sup>12</sup> h added below line.<sup>13</sup> Read hglah (for h | glaḥ).<sup>14</sup> n below line.<sup>15</sup> rgya here crossed out. Read hraḥ-re ?<sup>16</sup> Sic (for I).<sup>17</sup> Corrected from n.<sup>18</sup> na added below line.<sup>19</sup> nu | nar, below line, correction of hdzu | hdzaḥ.<sup>20</sup> Punctuation reinforced.<sup>21</sup> k here crossed out.<sup>22</sup> hlamhi here crossed out.<sup>23</sup> nu underline correction (of di).

- gse | h̄lad | [243] h̄nar<sup>1</sup> | h̄khab | gro | h̄troñhi ||  
 h̄ldi | h̄rgyed | h̄rar<sup>2</sup> | gse | h̄bo | h̄bon | h̄lad | ma | maḥna |  
 [244]  
 dguḥu | mu | h̄to | re | h̄rah | h̄ldi | h̄nañ | re | gse | h̄lad |  
 h̄byamna ||  
 gse | lad | [245] rpag | re | h̄pro | h̄bo | h̄bon ||<sup>3</sup> re | h̄lad | ma |  
 ma | h̄na |  
 5 dgu | h̄mu | h̄tor<sup>4</sup> | h̄pro | [246] h̄bo<sup>5</sup> | h̄bon<sup>6</sup> | h̄rah | h̄ldi |  
 h̄nañra | h̄lad | ma | maḥna |  
 h̄ldi | h̄rgyed | h̄rar<sup>7</sup> | h̄pro | h̄bo | [247] h̄bon | re | h̄lad | ma |  
 h̄man<sup>8</sup> ||  
 gse | stoñ | stsar | re | h̄lad | h̄toñ | myen |  
 h̄cam | [248] h̄jam<sup>9</sup> | h̄tam | h̄ldir<sup>10</sup> | gse | h̄tah | h̄dam | na ||  
 h̄ldi | rgyed | h̄<sup>11</sup>rar | rgyed | h̄tre | h̄te | [249] ge | gse | h̄so |  
 h̄kon || : : ||  
 10 h̄tsa<sup>12</sup> | re | h̄ldah | ge | h̄ra | h̄yañ | phyir<sup>13</sup> | <sup>14</sup>bañ | h̄rehe | [250]  
 hrpod | h̄bos | re<sup>15</sup> | h̄broñ | re | ge | rmo | h̄kum | h̄ceg |  
 h̄ltañ<sup>16</sup> | h̄tsah<sup>17</sup> | h̄yer | ge [251] h̄ño | h̄khog | h̄lto | ge |  
 h̄bañ | h̄rehe | h̄khehe | h̄bañ | h̄re | h̄gehe | na |  
 jo | re | h̄<sup>18</sup>gehe | [252] re | h̄lab | re | h̄ge |  
 15 sta | re | mo | ge | sta | g-ri | h̄bañ |  
 sta | bañ | rpag | re | h̄yah<sup>19</sup> | [253] me | bbyam | re |  
 jo | me | h̄byam | re | h̄lab | me | h̄byam | na || : : ||  
 h̄bañ | h̄ldoñ | hrpag [254] re | h̄ldañ | phyer | h̄brahr<sup>20</sup> |  
 h̄ldyo | h̄tor | h̄myi || na |  
 20 h̄yog | h̄prah | h̄dag | dze | h̄drañ | [255] re | h̄phrah |  
 ssam | stom | h̄dag | dze | h̄sar | stomhi |  
 h̄sañ | h̄dzah | h̄ldyim | h̄yañ<sup>21</sup> | [256] ldyoḥu | ma | h̄byoḥu |  
 rgam | h̄gah | h̄kañ | h̄yañ | h̄rag | ma | h̄bog ||  
 h̄tas | kro | h̄ldoñ [257] re | h̄yah | rmañ | h̄tsagna |  
 25 h̄tor | h̄tas | prom | h̄rom | neḥu | h̄so | bos |

<sup>1</sup> Read h̄nar-re ?<sup>2</sup> = h̄rah-re ? Cf. l. 246.<sup>3</sup> Sic: erroneous punctuation.<sup>4</sup> Read h̄to-re ? : cf. ll. 225, 236, 244.<sup>5</sup> h̄ here crossed out and replaced by |.<sup>6</sup> Insert re ?<sup>7</sup> rah̄r ? : h̄ added below line. Cf. ll. 243, 248.<sup>8</sup> Sic (for maḥna).<sup>9</sup> h̄jam marked for omission.<sup>10</sup> Read h̄ldi-re ?<sup>11</sup> h̄ a corrector's addition: read h̄rah-re ? Cf. ll. 243, 246.<sup>12</sup> A correction of h̄tsa or h̄tsa.<sup>13</sup> Correction from phyer.<sup>14</sup> m here crossed out.<sup>15</sup> re a correction of a badly written r.<sup>16</sup> rta added here below line (and then crossed out ?).<sup>17</sup> ts of h̄tsah̄ inked over or added.<sup>18</sup> h̄ inked over.<sup>19</sup> mye here crossed out.<sup>20</sup> Read h̄brah-re ?<sup>21</sup> Underline correction of h̄yam: a yañ also is here crossed out.



hño | [258] stor | dze | h̥wam | nehu | h̥kah<sup>1</sup>mna ||  
 hrta | wa | h̥dañ | dze | hño | h̥dañ | prom |  
 še | rgo | [259] h̥ldom | dze | h̥pah | h̥rgam | h̥nam ||  
 h̥khwi | h̥tsa | h̥yog | h̥dag | ci | h̥rañ | [260] h̥drom<sup>2</sup> | gdes || 5  
 h̥sas | h̥drah | h̥dag | chi | h̥go | h̥sor | re | h̥yun |  
 h̥sas | [261] h̥nah | h̥dag | chi | phyer | chañ | h̥son ||  
 g-rub | h̥goho | h̥dag | ci | twañ | m̥nar | [262] h̥sogna ||  
 gsas | pah̥i | h̥dzo | h̥dza | cañ | sme | h̥me | h̥kehi ||  
 g-rah̥ | nag | [263] h̥bo | gyañ | chañ |<sup>3</sup> rdzum | me | g-wehi ||  
 g̥sañ | ra | g̥sañ | kya | [264] g̥sañ | h̥dzam | re | h̥ldan | 10  
 hño | ra | hño | kya | hño | h̥dzam | re | h̥ldan |  
 g̥sañ | [265] ra | g̥sañna<sup>4</sup> | ge | g̥sañ | tah̥ | hrtehu ||  
 hño | ra | h̥non<sup>5</sup> | kya | h̥non | ta | gblañ | [266]  
<sup>6</sup>trog | h̥tor | h̥te | dze | h̥byim | ge | g-yaha<sup>7</sup> |  
 h̥pu | h̥bos | h̥yah | ge | h̥dro | [267] h̥ko | h̥nag | 15  
 h̥sah̥ | h̥yer | h̥yah | ge | h̥kog | h̥kho | rño ||  
 h̥pra | h̥re | <sup>8</sup>hyah̥ | (ge) [268] h̥wad<sup>9</sup> | h̥ldañ | krañ ||  
 h̥kyañ | h̥rgyañ | h̥yah | ge | h̥mu | klag | g̥sim ||<sup>10</sup>  
 h̥tsah̥ | [269] h̥dzañ | h̥yah | ge | h̥wah̥ | ne | h̥brah̥ ||  
 smyi | glog | g-yah̥ | ge |<sup>11</sup> h̥wah̥ | h̥rño | h̥jam | h̥ma | 20  
 [270] h̥so | h̥nah | h̥yah | ge | h̥bah̥ | h̥bom | rbo ||  
 h̥wah̥ | h̥ldañra | h̥tsañra | na | h̥wa | [271] rgya | h̥rko | h̥rkabs |  
 h̥tor | h̥rtah̥ | g-yah̥ | ge | h̥ldyañ | ma | g-yehi ||  
 h̥ldyañ | pah̥ | [272] h̥ro | re | h̥mehi | h̥pah̥ | h̥yah̥ ||  
 h̥ko | h̥rño | h̥<sup>12</sup>yah̥ | ge | rgya | rko | rkabs [273] 25  
 g̥sañ | h̥rah̥ | h̥ton̥ | kya | h̥noho<sup>13</sup> | h̥jam | re | h̥ldan |  
 h̥wi | h̥wa | se | kyah̥ | [274] h̥kyañ | h̥dzam | re | h̥ldan ||  
 h̥ldyim | h̥ste | h̥puhi | ge | rñe | h̥dzam | re | h̥ldan | [275]  
 h̥ldañha<sup>14</sup> | gsom | h̥phah̥ha<sup>15</sup> | ge | twañ | h̥dzam | nehe̥ ||  
 h̥ño | re | h̥lo | ge | h̥kyi | [276] h̥dzam | h̥phuhi | 30  
 h̥su | re ||<sup>16</sup> h̥ru | ge | g-rah̥ | h̥dzam | nag ||  
 gsah̥ | re | [277] h̥tsah̥ | re | h̥rah̥ | ge | h̥ldohu | h̥jam | rño ||  
 h̥kor | re | h̥pah̥ | ge | h̥sām | [278] h̥dzam | nag ||  
 rta | h̥wa | h̥ldañ | ra | h̥ldah̥ | h̥tag | h̥tos |  
 g̥sañ | ra | [279] g̥sañ | ge<sup>17</sup> | g̥sañ | h̥tag | h̥tos | 35

<sup>1</sup> h added below line.<sup>2</sup> h̥dom? A correction (of h̥grom?).<sup>3</sup> sme | g-wehi here crossed out.<sup>4</sup> n added below line.<sup>5</sup> For hño | na?<sup>6</sup> h̥ or s(?) here crossed out.<sup>7</sup> g-yarka? Perhaps g-yah̥ was intended.<sup>8</sup> l here crossed out.<sup>9</sup> h̥rwad?<sup>10</sup> Punctuation reinforced.<sup>11</sup> Sic.<sup>12</sup> w here crossed out.<sup>13</sup> ho crossed out?<sup>14</sup> h̥ added below line.<sup>15</sup> Sic.<sup>16</sup> Sic.<sup>17</sup> Sic (for kya?).

- hño | rah | hño | kya<sup>1</sup> | hño | htag | [280] hton(a) ||  
 gnah | ma | dwañ | dze | hkhah | rgye | ge | hthwañ ||  
 myag | ma<sup>2</sup> | htsar | dze | hbo | [281] hram | ge | hśod | tsa |  
 hldyañ | ma | gnah | dze | stom | hkañ | ge | hnan |  
 5 [282] htsag<sup>3</sup> na | na | hldyañ | rgyeb<sup>4</sup> | hpui | hpui ||  
 hśeg | sme | ge | hrim | hdzom [283] hpañ | tsa | ge |  
 hgañ | hrag | re | hgañ | rag | hdañ | ta | hbogni<sup>5</sup> |  
 śeg | [284] sme | ge | hrim | hdzom | re | hrim | hdzom | htab |  
 hldun || tsu | re | [285] hldañ | htag | hto(na) ||  
 10 hskom<sup>6</sup> | hbroñ | hkrur<sup>7</sup> | hdañ | h<sup>8</sup>yañ ||<sup>9</sup> [286] hthañ ||  
<sup>10</sup>rpehi | hldañ | hrgam | re | hldog | hyañ | hthañ ||  
 mor | [287] hkyañ | hldoñ | re | hbos<sup>11</sup> | g-yañ | hthañ<sup>12</sup> ||  
 hyañ | hkañ | rdzar<sup>13</sup> | [288] htsa<sup>14</sup> | hyañ | ht(h)añ |  
 hrlehi | hswañ | hram | re | <sup>15</sup>hslī | hdañ | hthañ<sup>16</sup> [289]  
 15 hkru | hyog | rñor<sup>17</sup> | hgar | hpu | hthañ ||  
 rta | hgam | hpar | re | [290] hso | hnañ | hthañ ||  
 hyañ | <sup>18</sup>hkañ<sup>19</sup> | rdzar<sup>20</sup> | h<sup>21</sup>stsah | hrihi | hpañ ||  
 hbos | g-ri | [291] hpañ | <sup>22</sup>dze | hkyañ | hldoñ | re | hñah ||  
 hbos | hrihi | hkhohō | dze | hrgyañ | hñi | hkehe |  
 20 htsah | por<sup>23</sup> | [292] dze | hrñe | hkhah | ge | hrgyeg || dze |  
 htab | hkhohu | hkhohu | ge | hkyañ | hldoñ | hgyañ | sto |  
 hkyañ | [293] hldoñ | hkhoh<sup>24</sup> | hbos | hrihi | hrūhu ||  
 htor | hpūhu | hbos | dze | hrim | ge | hgrus |  
 hkyañ | [294] hldoñ | hkhoh<sup>25</sup> | hbos | hyañ | hto | na |  
 25 hrihi | hdom | hkyim | re | hri | hkruhu | hbroho ||  
 [295] htsah | hri | hkho | dze<sup>26</sup> || hrgyañ | hñi | hkañ<sup>27</sup> |  
 htsa | phor | dze | hño | hkho | hsog | ge | hdzom | dze |  
 htab | [296] hkhohu | hkhohu | ge | hkhah<sup>28</sup> | hrdza | hdze | hgyañ |  
 na |  
 30 hkañ | hrdza | hkhoh | hswañ | g-ri | hto | na |

<sup>1</sup> Correction (of kyañ).<sup>2</sup> g below line: htsa | gna intended?<sup>3</sup> hbogni?, the n an insertion.<sup>4</sup> Read hkru-re?<sup>5</sup> Punctuation erroneous (end of line).<sup>6</sup> Correction from hldog.<sup>7</sup> Read rdza-re? Cf. ll. 290, 296.<sup>8</sup> Some sign crossed out before sli.<sup>9</sup> Read rño-re; cf. ll. 171, 322, 339.<sup>10</sup> h below line.<sup>11</sup> ts (or c) here crossed out.<sup>12</sup> Read po-re; cf. l. 295.<sup>13</sup> Read hkhoh-re?<sup>14</sup> For hkeñ? Cf. l. 53.<sup>15</sup> m an insertion.<sup>16</sup> b inked over.<sup>17</sup> Corrected, below line, from hklom.<sup>18</sup> w here crossed out.<sup>19</sup> sp here crossed out.<sup>20</sup> h, h and th crossed out or corrected?<sup>21</sup> Correction from hrad.<sup>22</sup> ñ below line.<sup>23</sup> h here crossed out.<sup>24</sup> Read rdza-re? Cf. l. 287.<sup>25</sup> r (?) here crossed out.<sup>26</sup> Read hkhoh-re?<sup>27</sup> dze crossed out?<sup>28</sup> Sic.

hscab | [297] hyer | hri | dze | hrim | ge | hgrus ||  
 hrihi | hdom | hkyim | re | hrgyeb | hkru | hbro |  
 rñe | hbrom | hri | [298] dze | hrñi | hbos | stsah<sup>1</sup> ||  
 rtah | hswah | g-wehe | hbos | hstsah | hldah ||  
 hpus<sup>2</sup> | hphyah | myi | cañ | g-rihi | [299] hldom | hkam | 5  
 hse | hse | hldon | hcan | g-ri | sti | hyor | re |  
 hri | hño | hdzon | g-yog | re | [300] rgyan | ge | hrihi | sti |  
 hyor | re ||  
 hrim | hldohu | hsañ | hyañ | hri | hgru | gras | re | hri | hci  
 [301] hwad<sup>3</sup>hi ||  
 hrtah | swa | g-wer<sup>4</sup> | g-ri | hrde | hldah ||  
 rñe | ne | g-ri | dze | hldim | hphu | hman | [302] 10  
 hman | hrihi | hphañ | dze | hgah<sup>5</sup> | hldonra | hñah<sup>6</sup> | na |  
 hrgyeg | hñi<sup>5</sup> | hrñoho<sup>9</sup> | ge | hgah | [303] hldon | hkyud ||  
 hrñe | hldah | hror<sup>11</sup> || hman | hkhu | stan ||  
 hdom | hgu | htsuhu [304] hyañ | hman | hldyo | hrgam |  
 hdom | hgu | htsu | ge | hyah | hddad | hphah | na | 15  
 hman | rgam | [305] hgre | na | hrihi | hrgam | gre | he ||  
 gdzu | hbyi | hnan | re | hman | nan | hyu ||  
 hbrad | re | hpah | [306] yañ | hman | ge | hrgam | hjihi ||  
 hbrad | re | hpah | ge | hbrad | sta | hñid | re | hyah | hdañd |  
 [307] hñah | na | hman | na | hman | hrgam | gre | na | hram || 20  
 h<sup>12</sup>glyan | hse | ge | gzu | hbyi | hkyud | [308]  
 gdzu | hbyi | hnan | re | hman | hri | hwas ||  
 hgā | hldon | hrañ | re | hman | g-ri | hpañ | [309] na  
 dgu | hldo | htor | ge | hman | g-rihi | hkuñ ||  
 hmu | wa | rño | ge | hgah | [310] | hldon | hkyud || 25  
 hgah | hldon | hrañ | re | hldim | hman | hto ||  
 rñe | hldah | hror<sup>13</sup> | [311] hman | sta | mehi ||  
 gdzu | hbyi | hnan | re | hri | stah | mehi |  
 hgah | hldon | hrañ | <sup>14</sup>[312] g-rihi | sta | mehi |  
 hdom | hguhu | rmar<sup>15</sup> | hri | stah | mehi | 30  
 hjuhu | hbrad | rmar<sup>16</sup> | g-ri | sta | [313] mehi |  
 na | g-ri | hkruhu | hbro ||  
 hmor | hso | hbod<sup>17</sup> | ge | hrkom | hkru | hsud | na |

<sup>1</sup> stsah added below line.<sup>2</sup> hphus ?<sup>3</sup> d added below line.<sup>4</sup> Read g-we-re.<sup>5</sup> rgya here crossed out.<sup>6</sup> h below line.<sup>7</sup> h below line (a correction of r).<sup>8</sup> ñ a correction of m.<sup>9</sup> Correction from hñohu.<sup>10</sup> ra | hñah || here crossed out, leaving ||.<sup>11</sup> Read hro-re: cf. l. 310.<sup>12</sup> j or rñ here crossed out.<sup>13</sup> Read hro-re: cf. l. 303.<sup>14</sup> Insert re: cf. l. 308.<sup>15</sup> Read rma-re ?<sup>16</sup> Read rma-re ?<sup>17</sup> Underline corrected from hbos.



- gyañ | [314] g-ri | hjim | hño | hkhog | re | hphah ||  
 g-rah | hsañ | hkhebe || na || hñor | hdzañ | rgo | [315] htoho ||  
 rgo | hrah | hñor | hdzañ | hyah | htoho || hyah | htañ | rmar |  
 hyah | [316] hkruhu | hbro | re | hrgyeb | hkruho<sup>1</sup> || hyañ | hldyañ |  
 5 hkyer | ge | hldāñ | hrgam | hstsag | [317] hldog | hpo | hrbom |  
 htoho || po | rbom | hñor | hldog | g-yah | to | dze | hwa | ne | hphe |  
 [318] hyah | htañ | rmar | hyah | hkruhu | hbro || hldehi | hswah |  
 hmor | hñli | hdzañ | ldyoñ<sup>2</sup> | [319] rgya | hñi | hke | hldehi | swah |  
 rñāñ || hrgyah | hñi | hke | hrim | re | hldoñ | hrgyah | [320] hñi |  
 10 hke | g-yog | re | hrgyañ | rñe | re | hñoñ || hkhu | re | hkyañ |  
 hldehi | swah | rñāñ | ha<sup>3</sup> | [321] stoñ | hpoñ | hprom | ge | hldehi |  
 hswa | hrñāñ | re | hrgyeb<sup>4</sup> | kruhu | hpro || khru | hyog | [322]  
 rñor<sup>5</sup> | hgar | hpu | hches | hño | hkhob | hprom | re | hrñe | rdam |  
 hte<sup>6</sup> | he | ge | hkhu | [323] hyog | hñud | re | hche | rgyo | hkyim | re |  
 15 hrgyeb | hkruhu | hbro | re | g-yah | [324] hpañ | hwag |  
 hdzoñ | hkru | hyog | re | hdzoñ | hkhad | htoñ |  
 hñri | hdzoñ | kyim | [325] re | hyah | hkruhu | hbro ||  
 hse<sup>7</sup>he | hkoñ | hgyan || re | hlab | hko | hgyan || [326]  
 hñah | hpag | hldir<sup>8</sup> | hse | htañ | hdam ||  
 20 htrog | hdre | hte | re | hrgye<sup>9</sup> | hyo | hñāñ<sup>10</sup> na | [327] ge | gse |  
 hko | hgyan ||  
 hsehe | hko | ho | hgyan | ge<sup>11</sup> | hrgyah | hdiñ | htron | re |  
 hkañ<sup>12</sup> | [328] hpyah | hldan ||  
 hñene sñāñ | hldir | hkhoh<sup>13</sup> | htañ<sup>14</sup> | hdamna |  
 hñah | hpag | ldir<sup>15</sup> | [329] bri | gse | hpuñ | re |  
 hkhah | gsañ | hñāñ | re | hkhoh | hdañ | hdamna ||  
 25 htrog | hpuñ | [330] hños | dze | hrgyo | hñeg | gñegra<sup>16</sup> | ge |  
 rgyo | hto | stin ||  
 rta | hñā | g-yer | dze | rbyo<sup>17</sup> | [331] gñeg | gñer | ge | rgyo | hto |  
<sup>18</sup>stin ||  
 hgu | hmor | hkrur<sup>19</sup> | hkróm | hbroñ | hprañ | [332]  
 ses | hkeg | hrko | hge | hklū | hprañ | hyuhu ||  
 hkhram | re | hrdañ | yañ | hkróm | [333] hpyi | hprañ ||

<sup>1</sup> ho a correction (of huho).<sup>2</sup> bo ? or a correction of bo ?<sup>3</sup> ha added below line.<sup>4</sup> b a correction (of ñ ?).<sup>5</sup> Read rño-re: cf. l. 289.<sup>6</sup> hñe ?<sup>7</sup> hi here crossed out.<sup>8</sup> Read hldi-re or hldir-re: cf. ll. 325, 337.<sup>9</sup> Sic for rgyed: cf. l. 338.<sup>10</sup> ñ added below line.<sup>11</sup> hkañ here written below line.<sup>12</sup> h below line.<sup>13</sup> h added below line.<sup>14</sup> hkañ above this and below ge cf. l. 327.<sup>15</sup> Read ldi-re or ldir-re ? Cf. l. 326.<sup>16</sup> Sic (for gñer: see l. 331).<sup>17</sup> For rgyo ?<sup>18</sup> rt here crossed out.<sup>19</sup> Read hkrur-re ?

hldi | hro | hgoñ | re | hkeg | hrko<sup>1</sup> | hrko | hyuhu ||  
 gsah | rkañ | [334] glar<sup>2</sup> | hwah | hrog | hldoñ |  
 hwah | hrog | rño | ge | hkeg | rko | hwad |  
<sup>3</sup>kruhu | [335] htthe | hprah | dze | h<sup>4</sup>rog | ge | hro |  
 hwad | hwah | rño | ge | rgyoho | hto | stiñ | [336] 5  
 rmañ | hwi | hkho | ge | rgyoho | hto | st<sup>5</sup>iñ  
 klu | htah | rgyohon | re | hśes | ta | hrgyon ||  
 sto | the | the | re | [337] stor | htah | hdzon |  
 htor | hrtah | hldir<sup>6</sup> | hstor | ma | swañ ||  
 tor | hrtah | <sup>7</sup>rme [338] ge | stor | hdzo | hdzeñi | 10  
 htrog | hdreñe | hte | re | hrgyed | hyo | hrañ | ge | hstor | hdzo |  
 [339] hdzeñi |  
 sroñ | hñe | hśer<sup>8</sup> | stor | hdeñi | hpyid |  
 hkyu | hldoñ | hrñor<sup>9</sup> | hkyah | hwa | [340] ñer<sup>10</sup> | hstor | hdeñi |  
 hpyid ||  
 htor | hrtah | rme | ge | hstor | ma | hsañ | phyer | ma | hswañ |  
 [341] rñe | hprom | hldir<sup>11</sup> | hphyar | ma | hswañ | 15  
 rgyed | hrah | htor<sup>12</sup> | pyar | ma | swañ |  
 htor | htah | [342] rme | ge | phyer | htso | htseñi ||  
 klu | hldo | sme | re | mye<sup>13</sup> | hrah | htah | ge |  
 hko | rño | klu | re | [343]<sup>14</sup> | rñe | hñe | hśes |  
 hldyañ | hpu | hbri | re | meñi | hklu | hcañ | 20  
 sroñ | ñe | gśe | re | ldañ<sup>1</sup> | [344] [hdeñi]<sup>15</sup> | hpyid || ||  
 hbo | hron | hrog | re | hlah | hkyañ | hras | re | hśes | gśi |  
 [345] [hdzuñi] ||  
 rgyeb | hchi | hro<sup>16</sup> | re | gdag | yañ | la | por<sup>17</sup> | hśes | hśi | hdzuñi ||  
 hyu | htstah | kyim | [346] re | hdam | sleg | glom || 25  
 rta | hsañh<sup>18</sup> | g-yer | ge | hdam | sleg | gciñi ||  
 hyu | hgyi | ka | [347] dze | hrim | gleñu | ge | hśig ||  
 stañ | hro | hra | dze | hrñeñe | hño | ge | hpom ||  
 glyañ | ru | [348] hñu | hñur | dze | hrim | gleñu | ge | hci |  
 hgw<sup>19</sup>eg | hweñe | hphah | hphah | dze | htthar | phyañ | [349] ge |  
 hrub || 30  
 sri | ge | gsen | hse | ge | hchan | hjim | htsoñ | ge | rmon ||

<sup>1</sup> g here crossed out.    <sup>2</sup> Read gla-re?    <sup>3</sup> kluñu? stu here crossed out.

<sup>4</sup> Something here crossed out.    <sup>5</sup> t inked over.

<sup>6</sup> Read hldi-re: cf. ll. 326, 328.

<sup>7</sup> hldir here crossed out.

<sup>8</sup> Read hśe-re, as in l. 343.

<sup>9</sup> Read hrño-re.

<sup>10</sup> Read ño-re.

<sup>11</sup> Read hldi-re?

<sup>12</sup> Read hto-re?

<sup>13</sup> Or rgye for rgyed?

<sup>14</sup> rgye, error for the following rño, here crossed out.

<sup>15</sup> g here crossed out.

<sup>17</sup> la | por added below line: cf. l. 349.

<sup>18</sup> For htstah? The first h(ā) (for ts?) added below line.

<sup>19</sup> w inked over.

- <sup>1</sup>por | ge | [350]<sup>2</sup>hyu | hstsah | hkyim | re | hcihi | htoho | ge |  
 hnan ||  
 na | hldom<sup>3</sup> | hgor [351] hsehe | hti | ge | hnan ||  
 hyu | hstsah | hkyim | re | hdam | sleg | gtsob | don |  
 glyan | ru | [352] gtsob | re | mehi | cha | hrne || ||  
 5 hphu | hphu<sup>4</sup> | mur<sup>5</sup> | hdzu | hdro | hkus |  
 nan | pa | hsam | re | [353] hwah | hrah | hbyamna |  
 gzu | hdro | hphor<sup>6</sup> | hchi | hdo | hdyan |  
 hbron | hldar | hdzam | re | do | ldo | hdzo | hpehi<sup>7</sup> | [354]  
 hrah | hrtre | hdub<sup>8</sup> |  
 htor | hso | hti | ge | htab | hldun | hbanina |  
 10 hrtah | nan | hwar<sup>9</sup> | [355] hthah | hbro | hgran |  
 hnur | hnah | rgyen | na | hnu | hldo | hldyoho ||  
 hyan | re | rgyen | na | yan [356] hldyah | hldyah ||  
 hdzon | hyo | hsid | dze | ste | he | hdzu | ge | gcig |  
 hke | hplān | hdra | dze | [357] thar | mye | ge | hlon ||  
 15 g-wehe | hldyah | hldor | g-wehe | sko | hbab | dze |  
 hram | yan | phlan | hnar<sup>10</sup> [358] || ||  
 hpo | hldah | stor<sup>11</sup> | hrah | hton | gsohu || dze<sup>12</sup> | rne | ge | hgo ||  
 na | hgo | na | hgon |  
 rta | swa | [359] . . . hkoḥu | hprom | htoho |  
 20 htor | hdro | hño | ge | hnu | glaṅ | slug | na |  
 nu | glaṅ | phor<sup>13</sup> | [360] . . . mo<sup>14</sup> | hna |  
 hrtah | swah | hpeg<sup>15</sup> | na | hkeḥu | hprom | to || na |  
 hnu | glaṅ | rño | ge | keḥu [361] pr[o]m | glaṅ | na | keḥu |  
 prom | pwaṅ<sup>16</sup> |  
 htor | hdro | hño | ge | hrne | hpo | hñe | ge | hkoḥu | prom |  
 [362] hdzoḥo || na | geḥu | prom | pwaṅ |  
 25 hkeḥu | prom | sñar | hthah | hrbyo<sup>17</sup> | htoho |  
 hdza | ma | hñyoṅ<sup>18</sup> | re | [363] hke | ma | hñyoṅ<sup>19</sup> | hmu | lom |  
 ge | hbyim |

<sup>1</sup> hlah here crossed out: cf. l. 345. Perhaps por-ge also was intended to be crossed out.

<sup>2</sup> hgon here crossed out.

<sup>3</sup> Correction (of hldoh): hgom here crossed out.

<sup>4</sup> The second [h]phu crossed out?

<sup>5</sup> Read mu-re?

<sup>6</sup> Read hpho-re or hphor-re? Cf. l. 183.

<sup>7</sup> do . . . hpehi in margin (to be inserted here?).

<sup>8</sup> hñub?

<sup>9</sup> Read hwar-re or hwa-re?

<sup>10</sup> hñad? (inked over).

<sup>11</sup> Read stor-re or sto-re?

<sup>12</sup> rgye here crossed out.

<sup>13</sup> Read phor-re or pho-re?

<sup>14</sup> mu here crossed out.

<sup>15</sup> Read hphyegs? Cf. l. 176.

<sup>16</sup> ñ correction from g.

<sup>17</sup> hbyo? (inked over). Sñar = sña-re?

<sup>18</sup> hñyoḥe? hñyoṅe?

<sup>19</sup> hñyeṅe? hñyeḥe?



hkoḥu ||<sup>1</sup> hbañ | kwa | kwa<sup>2</sup> | ge | re | hnañ |  
 ḥdza | ma | [364] hñe | na | rta | ge | ḥtom | ḥphañ |  
 ḥke | ma | hñyehe<sup>3</sup> dze | ḥtor | ge | ḥdzo | ḥtseñ |  
 ḥkeḥu | ḥkañ | dwañ [365] na | ḥldyañ | ḥkañ | dwañ ||  
 rgoñ | wa | myer<sup>4</sup> | rbyo | rgyer | ḥldyañ ||<sup>5</sup> 5  
 ḥtsog | ḥram | myer<sup>6</sup> | so | na | [366] ḥśid ||  
 rbyo | g-yeṛ | ḥnor<sup>7</sup> | rgoñ | wa | śid ||  
 ḥkeḥu | prom | myer<sup>8</sup> | ḥnu | glañ | ḥdyañ ||  
 ḥldyañ | [367] ḥyañ<sup>9</sup> | ḥyo | doñ | gnañ<sup>10</sup> | ḥgoñ | myag ||  
 ḥśaṇ | ḥhyañ | dzwe | ḥyañ | ḥyo | doñ ||<sup>11</sup> ḥyañ<sup>12</sup> | goñ | [368] 10  
 myag ||  
 gseḥe | cañ | ḥldyañ | dze | ḥrñam | ḥdar | ḥyuhū ||  
 ḥrño | ḥprañ | ḥram | dze | [369] ḥśeḥe | rdzor | ḥñah |  
 ḥldyañ | ḥgohō | ḥdzin<sup>13</sup> | re | meḥi | ḥrah | ḥdab na ||<sup>14</sup>  
 ḥldyañ | yuhū [370] ḥrño<sup>15</sup> | dze | ḥlde | ge | ḥtañ | ḥldon |  
 meḥi | speḥi | ḥrah | je | ḥldeḥe | ge | ḥtañ | ḥldon | [371] 15  
 ḥdzam | ḥbroñ | ḥroñ | re<sup>16</sup> hbañ | ḥko | ḥtar | dze |<sup>17</sup> ḥlde | ge |  
 ḥtañ | ḥldon ||  
 ḥkrug | [372] kyañ | ḥldom | re | ḥrñe | ḥño | ḥdzar | dze |  
 ḥldeḥe | ge | ḥtañ | ḥldon ||  
 ḥldyañ | hyu | ḥjo<sup>18</sup> | [373] [dze] | ḥkad | ḥroñ | re | ḥrgyen |  
 ḥdzam | ḥbroñ | ḥroñ<sup>19</sup> | re | hbañ | ḥko | ḥtar | dze | ḥkad |  
 [374] [ḥ]roñ | re | rgyen |  
 ḥtar | phyañ | ḥto | re | skyim | ḥse | ḥdzar ||<sup>20</sup>  
 ḥpah | ḥwe | ḥtho | hyañ | pa- [375] . . ḥdzer<sup>20</sup> | ḥphyo | ḥli |  
 g<sup>21</sup>-we |  
 śeg | sme | ḥldo | rbyi | ḥldyiḥi | ḥkad | ḥror<sup>22</sup> | rgyen |  
 [376] . . . . rab | ḥgo | cig | dze | ḥkad | ḥroñ | re | rgyen ||  
 ḥdza | ḥtrog | ḥram | ḥdzar | [377] . . ḥpag | cig | dze | ḥkad |  
 ḥroñ | re | rgyen ||  
 ḥpah | ḥldañ | ḥro | dze | ḥse | ge | [378] ḥtul | re | ḥse | ge |  
 ḥlobḥi ||  
 ḥsañ | ḥtsañ | dzeñ<sup>23</sup> | rkom | ḥthul | na | rkom | ge | ḥron || 25

<sup>1</sup> Punctuation doubled by reviser.<sup>2</sup> h here crossed out.<sup>3</sup> he crossed out? Or inserted?<sup>4</sup> Read mye-re or myer-re?<sup>5</sup> Punctuation a correction.<sup>6</sup> Read mye-re or myer-re?<sup>7</sup> Read ḥnor-re?<sup>8</sup> Read mye-re or myer-re?<sup>9</sup> h added below line?<sup>10</sup> h added below line.<sup>11</sup> Omit ḥyo-doñ ||? (metre).<sup>12</sup> h added below line.<sup>13</sup> ḥjin?<sup>14</sup> Or ḥdañ corrected to ḥdan?<sup>15</sup> ḥjo?<sup>16</sup> here crossed out or reinforced.<sup>17</sup> A bad h here crossed out.<sup>18</sup> ḥrño?<sup>19</sup> Something here crossed out.<sup>20</sup> ḥrñer? ḥdzar?<sup>21</sup> y here crossed out. <sup>22</sup> ḥror? (Error for ḥroñ | re?). <sup>23</sup> ñ below line.

- bos [379]—o[g] | dze[spe<sup>1</sup>]hi | ge | hda | na | spehi || ge |  
 hthon ||  
 ses | rtsig | moñ | ge | htsah | [380] . . . . . hrah | hwehi | hrtah |  
 ge | hrtsig | moñ | hkuñ | na |  
 rtsig | moñ | [381] hśad | na | tsig | moñ | we | ge | htsah | hpu<sup>2</sup> |  
 hloho |  
 hbri | slod | hldo | dze | spo | ro [382] re | hto ||  
 5 hda | hldah | hne | ge | tsa<sup>3</sup> | hrgye | hrdza | na |  
 hda | hldah | hkuñ | na | hda | ld [383] hśad | na | hda |  
 hldah | hwehi | ge | htsah | rgye | hlo<sup>4</sup> |  
 hyañ | hthe | ge | hśad | dze | ldyo [384] roho | hpahh<sup>5</sup>i |  
 hdam | hbroñ | hroñ | dze | hldyo | hro | hpehi ||  
 hrsehi<sup>6</sup> | hpag | slog [385] dze | hrñe<sup>7</sup> | hrom | ge | hti | na |  
 hrñe | ge | hrlomhi | : |  
 10 hdo<sup>8</sup> | chi | te | re | hlab | hñāñ<sup>9</sup> [386] hyah | htañ | hldyañ |  
 hro<sup>10</sup> | hpehi ||  
 hdam | hbroñ | hroñ || hbañ | hko | htar | [387] cig | dze |  
 hldyoñ | hro | hpehi ||<sup>11</sup>  
 hldyañ | hyu | hjo | cig | dze | htor<sup>12</sup> | ge | hkroms |  
 [388] mor | tsañ | khrom | re ||<sup>13</sup> hyañ | tsa | hcer ||  
 15 tor | kru | hrgyañ | re | hrtah | hpah | hphar [389]  
 htor | sñāñ | rñi | re | rta | hldag | hśag | hldyañ | hjo | hkromni |  
<sup>14</sup>hdam | hbroñ | hroñ | [390] re | hbañ | hko | htar | ge |  
 gdzu | hti | khyañ | hdag | ge | hko | hto | swad |  
 skyañ | hbe | [391] [hkyā]h | ge | hnañ | hdihi | htshur ||  
 20 hldyañ | hyañ | hjo | ge | hgyah | hnañ | tsur | [392]  
 hldyi | hi | rgyed | hrah | htor | hbroñ | hgyañ | doñ |  
 hroñ | ma | hño | re | htar<sup>15</sup> | ma | hgañ [393]  
 [hrgyed | hśāñ | sme | hyed | re | hbroñ | hk[ru]hu | hbro ||  
 hpo | hdam | htor | -re-e-re] [394] [ . . . . . rñ—m-dah . . . . .  
 htor<sup>16</sup>(?) hbroñ] [395] [ . . . . . hguñ | ge | gdañ | kum ?]  
 [396] [ . . . ge | gdañ | hgam] [397] [ . . . . . rñu(?)—g | glañ]  
 [398] [ . . . . . bañ | dze ?] . . .

<sup>1</sup> ?<sup>2</sup> Corrected from hpo.<sup>3</sup> tsa added below line.<sup>4</sup> Punctuation reinforced.<sup>5</sup> h below line. hi crossed out?<sup>6</sup> Correction of hsehi?<sup>7</sup> rdze here crossed out?<sup>8</sup> hjo?<sup>9</sup> htañ?<sup>10</sup> Punctuation due to reviser (correction of h?).<sup>11</sup> Punctuation reinforced.<sup>12</sup> Correction from htore?<sup>13</sup> Punctuation reinforced.<sup>14</sup> Punctuation reinforced.<sup>15</sup> htañ?<sup>16</sup> hldi?

# VOCABULARY

(ALPHABETICAL ORDER of head-words according to the Tibetan system, the root-consonants, and their Prefixes in sequence (for details see Note),<sup>1</sup> and the five vowels, *a, i, u, e, o*, being in the usual succession. NUMERALS other than page-numbers (*p., pp.*) refer to lines of the MS., as shown in the Text, page-numbers to this volume.)

## K

**ka** (*a Suffix*) (p. 182)? 346 hgyi<sup>o</sup>.  
**kum**, 395.

**ke** = hke I, *q.v.* 199 rgyah-gñi<sup>o</sup>.

**kehu** = hke II, hkehu, gehu, *q.v.* 176, 360-1 -prom; 177 -hkañ (p. 316).

**ko** = hko V, *q.v.* 202 rmañ-bri<sup>o</sup>.

**kwa-kwa** 363.

**kya** I, 96 -htañ-ta.

II = Tib. akya, *crop* (p. 355). See also **kyah**. 263 gsañ<sup>o</sup>; 264, 279 hño<sup>o</sup>; 265 hñon<sup>o</sup>; 273 gsañ-hrah-htañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 317).

— **-wa-ne** = hkyah-hwa-ñe, *q.v.* 162 (pp. 253, 338).

**kyañ** = Tib. kyañ, also, even (pp. 204, 311-12) or = hkyañ II. See also **gyañ**. 98; 192 -ni; 372 (pp. 318, 345).

**kyañni**, 192. See **kyañ**.

**kyah** = kya II, *crop*. 273 so<sup>o</sup> (pp. 297, 341).

**kyim** = hkyim, *home, taken home*, *q.v.* 324, 345 -re (pp. 218, 246).

**kyu** = hkyu, *speed, swift*, *q.v.* 161 -ldoñ; 214 -hldoñ (pp. 253, 255).

**kyeg** = Tib. khyag, hkhyaḡa, *freeze, be congealed, numbed*. 102 hñi<sup>o</sup> (pp. 226, 301).

**kyen** = Tib. skyen, *quick, dexterous*. 103 the<sup>o</sup> (p. 322).

**kyer** = Tib. kyer, *erect, or* = hkyer, *q.v.* 136 -rbo; 145 hbo<sup>o</sup>.

**krañ** = Tib. krañ-ñe, kroñ, *stand-*

*ing upright*; mkhrañ, hkhrañs, bkrañ, *robust, hard, solid* (pp. 288-90). See also **hldañ-krañ/hkrañ/hkhrañ**. 85 -aur-aur (p. 290).

**kru-hrgyañ** = hkhru<sup>o</sup>. 388 (p. 312).

**kruhu** = hkru, *q.v.* 321 -hpro = hbro; 334 -hthe.

**kro** = Tib. khro, hkhro, *anger*. 256 htas<sup>o</sup>.

**kla** = Tib. klas, *abundant, unlimited*. 143 hgor<sup>o</sup>; 206 hkor<sup>o</sup> (pp. 238, 297).

**klag** I = Tib. glag, lammergeyer. 173 -hrwad (pp. 257, 341, 345).

II = Tib. glags, *occasion, season*. 268 hmu<sup>o</sup> (p. 298).

**klar** = glar, *q.v.* 205 hrañ<sup>o</sup>.

**klu** = Tib. gloñ, ldoñ, loñ, *blind* (pp. 131, 138, 223). See also **mehi/hmeñi-klu**. 5 -ge; 342 -re (pp. 223, 341).

— **-htañ** (*a Suffix*, pp. 182-3). 336 (p. 223).

— **-hto** (*a Suffix*, pp. 184-5). 37 (p. 246).

— **-rto** 25 | *blind rock* (pp. 138, 223).

— **-hrto** 24 | 223).

— **-hldo** (*a Suffix*, pp. 186-7), *blindness*. 342.

**gkom**, *Prospective form of hkom* II, *q.v.* (pp. 137, n. 1, 200, 368). 222 swa<sup>o</sup> (p. 305).

**hkañ** I = Tib. gañ, *full, all*. See

<sup>1</sup> Note. The resultant order of consonants is as follows:—

K (g, h, r, hr, hl, s, hs-); KH (b, s-); G (d, h, r, hr, l-); N (m, h, r, hr-); C (g, h, s-); CH (g, h-); J (h, r, hr-); Ñ (g, h, r, hr, s-); T (g, h, r, hr, hl, s, hs-, gr, gs-); TH (h-); D (g, d, h, r, hr, l, gl, hl-); N (g, h, hr-); P (b, h, r, hr, l, s-); PH (g, b, h-); B (g, b, h, r, hr, s-); M (g, h, r, hr, s-); TS (g, h, r, hr, s, hs-); TSH (h-); DZ (g, h, r, hr-); W (g, h-); Z (g, b, gb, h-); H; Y (g, h-); R (g, h-); L (h-); Ś (g, b, h, hr, s-); S (g, b, h, r, hr-).



also **hgañ**. 52 *hldya*<sup>o</sup>; 151 *nor-gso*<sup>o</sup>; 168 *sñiñ*<sup>o</sup>; 164 *chañ*<sup>o</sup> (?); 190 *wa*<sup>o</sup> (?); 256 *hgañ*<sup>o</sup>; 281 *stom*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 147, 173, 228, 241, 285, 328).

II = *Tib. khañ, house. See also hkhāñ*. 208 *hcig* (p. 234).

**hkañ-hkañ**, *onomatopoeic*? 11 *hrwañ*<sup>o</sup>; 184 *hram*<sup>o</sup> (p. 344).

**hkad** I = *Tib. hkhod, hkhad, build, settle*. ? 133 *-re*.

II = *Tib. gad, rock, precipice*?

— **hron** 373, 375-7 (p. 268).

**hkañ** = *Tib. khab, house, family. See also hkhāb*. 106 *hdro*; 110 (p. 335).

**hkam** 83 *-stañ*; 130 *hthañ-phu*<sup>o</sup>; 299 *g-riñi-hldom*<sup>o</sup>.

**hkañ** I = *Tib. kha, mouth, speech, occasion, or Tib. kbañ, word, command. See also hkhāñ*. 117 *hrañ*<sup>o</sup>; 137 *hwa*<sup>o</sup>; 153 *hke*<sup>o</sup>; 158 *hkehe*<sup>o</sup>; 178 *kehu*<sup>o</sup>, *ldyañ*<sup>o</sup>; 191 *skar*<sup>o</sup>; 204 *gsañ*<sup>o</sup>; 364 *hkehu*<sup>o</sup>; 365 *hldyañ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 174, 179, 200, 218, 252, 275, 315-16, 338).

II = *Tib. dkañ, steep, difficult, scarce. See also rkāñ*. 46 *me*<sup>o</sup> (p. 286).

— **khāb/hkhāb**, *speech-concealing*. 105 *hkhāb*; 106 *khāb* (p. 315).

— **hgañ**, *all talk*. 194, 207 (p. 315).

— **hgo** = *Tib. kha-bsgo, advice, or bkāñ-bsgo, exhortation*. 105 (p. 315).

— **hcog** = *Tib. kha-cug, counsel*. 105 (p. 315).

— **hldom**, *mouth-bound* = *Tib. kha-sdom, gag; cf. bkāñ-hdoms, instruction*. 66 (p. 314).

— **hpyañ**, *rebuks* (*Tib. hphya*). 327-8 (p. 315).

— **hrañ**, *independent in speech; cf. hrañ-hkañ*. 104 (p. 314).

— **rdza/hrdza**, *accordant in speech. See also hkhāñ*<sup>o</sup>. 287, 290, 296 (p. 315).

— **gsañ**, *secret speech; cf. gsañ-hkañ*. 214 (p. 314).

**hkañ** I = *hkañ* I (?), *q.v.*, + *hi*. 239 (p. 315).

**hkañ** = *hke* I. 295 *hrgya-hñi*<sup>o</sup>.

**hkar** I = *Tib. bkar, skar, gar, dgar, sgar, separate off, pen, encampment* (pp. 247, 343). 45 *hriñ-rwa*<sup>o</sup>; 204 *šor-hlda*<sup>o</sup> (p. 343).

II, *for hkhār*? 192 *rpag* (p. 242).

**hkarni** = *hkar* I + *ni*; 204 (p. 343).

**hku** I, *a Suffix* = *hgu, Tib. gu* (p. 258). 22 *smuñu-hku* = *Tib. smi-gu, smyi-gu, smyig-ma, smyu-gu, smyug-ma, myu-gu, myug, reed*.

II = *Tib. hkhū, vie, contend, offend, &c. See also hkus*; 152 *ñoñ* (pp. 228, 264).

**hkuñ**, *be hollowed out, or, metaphorically, cave in* = *Tib. khuñ, hole, pit* (pp. 266-7). 124 *hldañ-krañ*<sup>o</sup>; 309 *g-riñi*<sup>o</sup>; 380 *hrtsig-moñ*<sup>o</sup>; 382 *hdcāñ-hldañ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 180, 266, 270).

**hkum**? = *hkom* II (*Tib. hkhums, &c.*), *q.v.* 250 *rmo*<sup>o</sup> (p. 294).

**hkuñu** = *Tib. khu, sap, broth*. 74 *ñeñu* (p. 250).

**hkus**, *Aorist of hku* II. 352 *hdro*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 264, 285).

**hke** I *a Suffix used with numerals* (?) (pp. 241, 272). *See also hkeñe, hkañe*. 54 *ña*<sup>o</sup>; 53, 199, 319, 320 *rgyañ-hñi*<sup>o</sup>, &c.

II = *Tib. khe, profit, get, khe-pa, trader, &c.* (pp. 241-2, 289, 316-17, 363, 364).

— **hkañ**, *trade-talk*. 52. *See also kehu*<sup>o</sup>, *hkehu*<sup>o</sup>, *hkeñe*<sup>o</sup>, *gehu*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 316-17).

— **prom**, *profit-making. See prom, hprom, &c., and also kehu*<sup>o</sup>, *hkehu*<sup>o</sup>, *gehu*<sup>o</sup>, 176.

— **plañ-hdrañ**, *bazar*. 195, 356; *hplañ-hdra* (pp. 241-2).

**hkeg** = *Tib. kag, keg, kag-ma, keg-ma, mischief, hindrance, injury, accident; dkag, constipation; bkag, bkog, obstruction, prohibition; skag, mischief, &c.; khag-po, difficult, &c.; khega, hkegs, obstruct, debar, &c.; gag, wadding, quinsy; gags, obstructed; gegs, stoppage*.

- &c.; dgag, hinder, &c.; bgag, hinder, &c.; bgegs, hindrance, &c.; hgag, hgags, obstruction; hgegs, hinder, &c. See also hgag, hrgyeg.  
**hkeg-hrko**, rko 332, 333, 334 (pp. 338, 340).  
**hkehi** = hke II (?) + hi. 15 hstom-hkom.  
**hkehu** = hke II, kehu, q.v.  
 — **-hkah** = hke II-hkah. 364.  
 — **-prom**. 177-8, 362, 366 (pp. 274, 316, 335).  
 — **-me**, profit-fire. 170 (pp. 274-5, 285, 316).  
**hkehe** I = hke I, q.v. 291 hrgyah-hñi.  
 II = hke II, q.v. 125 sla<sup>h</sup> (pp. 288-9, 335).  
 — (II) **-hkah** = hke (II)<sup>o</sup>. 158 (p. 316).  
**hkes**, Aorist form of hke II. 36 hpah-hróu<sup>o</sup> (p. 269).  
**hko** I a Particle = Tib. ko, go (with Pronouns) (p. 201, 245, 260). 195 hlda<sup>o</sup> (p. 245).  
 II = Tib. mgo, hgo, head, chief, initiative (pp. 260-1). See also hgo.  
 III = Tib. go, place, room. See also hgo.  
 IV = Tib. sgo, gate. See also hgo, rgo.  
 V ? = hkho III (Tib. hkho, be, or deem useful or necessary; dgos, necessary (pp. 262-3)) ? 125 hlda<sup>h</sup>-krañ<sup>o</sup>; 156 rmañ-bri<sup>o</sup>; 203 hbri<sup>o</sup> (pp. 287, 289).  
 — **-hgyan**, cause, fault ? See also hkoho. 325, 327 (p. 264).  
 — **-rño**, leader ? See also hkho<sup>o</sup> (pp. 262-3). 53-6, 272, 342.  
 — **-htar** (I?), head-released, cf. hbu-hpor ? 68, 371, 373, 386, 390 (pp. 268, 331).  
 — **-hto** 390 (p. 264).  
 — **-htoñ**, gate, or place, surrendering. See also hgo<sup>o</sup>. 212 (pp. 260-1).  
 — **-hltah/hldah**. Cf. hkho<sup>h</sup>-hta<sup>h</sup>, hkho<sup>h</sup>-hda<sup>h</sup> (p. 264). 202, 203.  
 — **-hnag** (II), black-head, com-

- mons = Tib. mgo-nag. 266-7 (p. 260).  
**hko-bphyag**. 101 hkoho<sup>o</sup>, signal a desire to speak ? See also hkho<sup>h</sup>-bphyag (p. 264).  
 — **-wehi**, room-making = Tib. go-byed. 100 (p. 260).  
 — **-se-hgro-re-htsa**, those who have (others) placed above them ? Or those who come to the top ? See se-hgro (pp. 186, 264).  
**hkog** I = Tib. hgog, bkog, khog, snatch, pull out, uproot. See also hkhog I. 23 htsah-gsom<sup>o</sup>; 54 rbab-na-hko<sup>o</sup> ?  
 II = Tib. lkog, secret; ño-lkog, open and secret. See also hkhog IV. 189 hso<sup>o</sup>; 267 -hkho-rño (p. 285).  
**hkoñ**, = Tib. goñ. 'upper' ? 223 hton<sup>o</sup>.  
**hkoni**, written for hkon (Chinese chūan, chapter) + ni. 249 hso<sup>o</sup> (p. 140).  
**hkob** = Tib. khab, khebs, hkhebs, hgebs, dgab, khob, cover. See also hkho<sup>h</sup>. 107 na-hrom<sup>o</sup>.  
**hkom** I = Tib. skam, skom, dry, thirst, &c. 12 hbo<sup>o</sup>; 15 stom<sup>o</sup> (pp. 231, 315).  
 II = Tib. hkhum, perform, or Auxiliary Verb (pp. 137 n.1, 200, 368). See also gkom, hgom. 32 hgru-ma<sup>o</sup>; 118 hgam<sup>o</sup>; 136 gtso<sup>o</sup>; 166 yob<sup>o</sup>; 175 swa<sup>o</sup> (pp. 142, 243, 309, 345).  
**hkohi** = hkohu, II q.v. -me, speech-fire. 170 (pp. 275, 285).  
**hkohu** I 363.  
 II speak (Chinese k'ou ?) (pp. 254, 256-7, 264). See also hkho<sup>h</sup>.  
 — **-prom**, phrom, &c., use speech. 166 phrom; 168 bprom; 169 hprom; 171 hphrom; 172 phrom; 174, 177, 180 bprom; 359 hprom; 361 prom (pp. 274, 276, 316, 335).  
 — **-me** speech-fire. See also hkohi<sup>o</sup>. 171 mehe; 173 (pp. 257, 345).  
**hkoho** = hkohu II, q.v. 101 -hko<sup>h</sup>-bphyag (p. 264).  
 — **-hgyan** = hko<sup>o</sup>, q.v. 325, 327 (p. 264).



**hkor** I = Tib. skor, hkhor, khor, go round, return, entourage (pp. 271-2, 295). See also **hkhor**. 53 [-re]; 277 -re (or is this **hkor** II?) (p. 271).

II = Tib. hgor, delay, rest, be idle. See also **hgor**. 205 -kla (p. 239).

— **-htaḥ** (a Suffix, pp. 182-3), one's own entourage. 92 (p. 239).

**hkwañ** (?) 212 -hgo.

**hkwehe** 131 hbye<sup>o</sup>.

**hkya-wa-ñe** = kya<sup>o</sup>/hkyah<sup>o</sup>, q.v. 215, 339 ñer (pp. 253, 338).

**hkyañ** I = Tib. kyañ, even, also, &c. See also **kyañ**, **gyañ**, **yañ**. 344 hlah<sup>o</sup> (?) (pp. 204, 311).

II *serf*? (pp. 148, 297-8, 312). 18 hkrug<sup>o</sup>; 141, 143, 274, 287 mor<sup>o</sup> (pp. 295, 297, 323).

III written for **hgyañ**. 114 -na.

— **-rgyañ/hrgyañ**, stove-bed? 42, 81, 268 (pp. 298-9).

— **-hldoñ**, runaway *serf*? 287, 291-3 (pp. 239, 297-8).

**hkyah-hwa-ñe**, a class of living creatures, crop-work-injure? (p. 255), possibly with political allusion. 339. See also **kya<sup>o</sup>/hkyah<sup>o</sup>**.

**hkyi** = Tib. khyi, dog. 275 (pp. 285, 287).

**hkyim**, taken home, included in company = Tib. khyim, home; hkhym, whirl; hkhymis, halo; hgyim, circumference. See also **kyim**, **skym**, **hskyim**. 37, 294, 297, 323, 350, 351 -re (pp. 246-7).

**hkyu** = Tib. dkyu, dkyus, run, race; hkhyyu, run away; hgyu, move quickly; brgyugs, race.

— **-hldoñ**, swift-fleeing. 339 (pp. 253, 255). See also **kyu<sup>o</sup>**.

**hkyud** = Tib. rgyud, string, line-age, &c.; brgyud, id.; khyud, mkhyud, hkhyyud, hold, embrace, &c. (pp. 252, 258). See also **hgyud**. 220 rdzo<sup>o</sup>; 307 gzu-hbyi<sup>o</sup>; 303 hgañ-hldoñ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 173, 252, 258, 270).

**hkye**, offspring, child = Tib. skye,

skyes, khye-bo, khyeḥu (pp. 320, 368). 39 -ge-hmu.

**hkyeb** = Tib. khyab, fill? 13 hsrchi<sup>oo</sup> hkyeb; 17 ñe<sup>o</sup> ohkyeb (p. 221).

**hkyer** = Tib. hkhyyer, carry away; chu-yis-hkhyyer, carried away by water. 56 hbañ-hrag<sup>o</sup>; 316 hyañ-hldyañ, or is this = kyer, erect, q.v.?

**hkra** = Tib. bkra, khra, criss-cross, variegated.

— **-hrag**, cross dyke? 13.

**hkrag** = Tib. skrag, fear. 135 hldag-nag<sup>o</sup>.

**hkrañ** = krañ, robust, &c., q.v. See also **hkhrañ**. 91, 112, 124 hldañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 180, 288, 291).

**hkri** = Tib. khri, seat, chair, bed. See also **khri**, **hgri**. 81 hsi<sup>o</sup> (pp. 298-9, 317).

**hkru** = Tib. kru-ra, the lowest class of the people; dkru, abomination, filth; hkhru, hkhruḥ, wash; khru, bkru, bkruḥ (pp. 148, 229, 295-7). See also **kru**, **kruḥu**, **hkhruḥu**, **hkhruho**, **hkhruḥ**, **khru**, **hkhru**, **hkhruḥu**, **hkhruḥ**. 313 -hsud.

— **-hbro**, taste as filth. See also **kruḥu**, **hkhruḥu**, **hkhlu** (pp. 295-7). 221, 222, 297 (p. 228, 296).

— **-hyog**, vile servants. See also **hkhruḥu**, **khru**. 289, 324 (p. 218).

— **-re**, being filth. See **hkhruḥ**, **hkhruḥ**.

**hkrug**, quarrel (Noun and Verb), revolt, be disturbed, agitated, quarrelsome = Tib. dkruḥ, dkruḥ, hkhruḥ, hkhruḥ (id.), cf. grug, break (pp. 144-5, 258).

— **-hrdzo**, troublesome mdzo. 16 (pp. 144, 258).

— **-hkyañ**, troublesome *serf*. 18 (or **hkrug** a Verb?); 371 (kyañ; or **hkrug** a Noun?) (pp. 145, 295, 318, 323).

**hkhruḥu** = hkhru, q.v.

— **-hbro**. See also **hkru<sup>o</sup>**. 313,



- 316, 318, 323, 325; 294 *hbroho* (pp. 228, 296).
- hkruhu-hyog*. See also *hkru*, *khru*. 322-3 *ohsud*.
- hkrūho*, final = *hkru* + *o*. 316 (p. 228).
- hkrur* = *hkru* + *re*. Cf. *hkhur*. 285, 331 (p. 206).
- hkre*, possibly = *Tib. hkhren*, *desire, envy (a Verb)*. 132 *hthañ-hgam*.
- hkrom* I = *Tib. hgrem, dkram, bkram, khroms, spread, scatter* (pp. 235-6, 304-5). 64 *hdzo*; 70 *ru-ge*; 389 *hldyañ-hjo* (pp. 157, 274, 303-5).
- II Cf. *Tib. khrom-me, glittering (from the root of I)*. See also *khrom, hgrom, hgroms*. 12 *hgye*; 154 *hgye* (pp. 235-6, 304-5).
- hkroms*, Aorist form of *hkrom* I. Cf. *hgroms*. 387 *htor-ge* (p. 305).
- hklū* I = *hkhru* I. 221 *-hbro* (pp. 228, 296).
- II = *klu, blind, q.v.* 332 (p. 223).
- hklo* = *Tib. blo, glo, lungs, &c.* See *glo*. 40 *hphu*, perhaps bellows = 135 *pu-hlo* (pp. 284-5).
- hklom*, perhaps = *Tib. klum, a species of divinity: or = glom, q.v.?* 42 *-ge-htul* (p. 280, n. 2).
- rkabs*, a Verb: see also *hrkabs*. 272 *rko*.
- rkah* I = *Tib. dkañ, steep, difficult*. 2 (?) ; 165 (or is this I?) ; 333 *gsah* (pp. 281, 396, 338).
- II = *Tib. bkah, word, command*. 84 *mo* (pp. 343-4). See also *hrkah*.
- rke-hldah*, perhaps = *Tib. rke, lean, meagre*. 155 *hordañ*.
- rko* = *Tib. rko, hoe, dig*. 272 *-rkabs*; 334 *hkego*, *ohwad* (pp. 338, 340). See also *hrko*.
- rkom* killed = *Tib. bkum, slain; gum, dead; hgum, dgum, die* (pp. 195, 368). 157 *hbroñ*; 378 (pp. 195, 217). See also *hrkom*.
- rkwa* = *Tib. bkah, command: anti-theetical to hwah, g-wah* (pp. 339, 343-4). See also *hrkwa*. 122 *-hdzam* (pp. 292, 343).
- hrkabs* = *rkabs, q.v.* 271 *hrko* (p. 339).
- hrkah* = *rkah* I, *q.v.* 10 *hldi*; 165 *-myi-hrdoho* (pp. 296, 329).
- hrkas* = *Tib. skas, ladder, staircase* (pp. 348, 359). 57 *-hthañ* (p. 248).
- hrko* = *rko, q.v.* 271 *-hrkabs*; 332 *hrkego*; 333 *hkego* *ohrko-hyuhu*.
- hrkom* = *rkom, q.v.* 285 *-hbroñ*; 313 *-hkrū-haud*; 331 *hkrur* *ohbroñ* (p. 296).
- hrkwa* = *rkwa, q.v.* 224 *-hdzam* (p. 343).
- hlykañ* = *Tib. rkyañ, kiang, wild ass*. 188 *-hzu* (pp. 252, 353-4). See also *hglyañ*.
- skah* = *Tib. sga, saddle; sga-lag, saddle-frame; aka-rags, girdle*. 45 *-rah* (p. 317).
- skar* = *Tib. skar, star, constellation* (p. 276). 191 *rām* (pp. 244, 315).
- sku* = *Tib. sku, body* (p. 355). 58, 164 *-hphu-hti* (pp. 194, 285, 300, 320). See also *skuñu, hskuñu*.
- skuñu* = *sku, q.v.* See also *hskuñu*.
- *-na* (ra?) (p. 312). Cf. *Tib. sku-ra*.
- ske* = *Tib. ske, throat, neck* (pp. 288 n., 316, 355). See also *pyi*, *phyi*. 153 *-hbrus*; 158 *-hbro* (p. 316).
- skeg*, P.N (p. 134)—not in text.
- sko* = *Tib. sko, select, appoint*. 91 *-prom*; 134 (?) ; 357 *g-wehe*; cf. *Tib. las-su-ako*?
- skyañ* ward off = *Tib. skyoñ, bskyañ, protect, defend* (p. 221). 109 *myag-gre*; 390 (p. 221).
- skyar* = *Tib. skyor, bskyar, prop up, or kyor, weak, unfortified, or dkyor (-hbyin), (capable of being) thrown down* ? 205 *hdoñ*.
- skyim* = *hkyim, q.v., but always in the sense of 'house'*. See also *hskyim*.
- *-se, house-roof*. 69, 374 *-hse* (pp. 248-9).

**skye** = Tib. *skye*, *be born, live, thrive*.

— **-ta** a Suffix (pp. 182-3), *life* (pp. 239, 293).

**hskuḥu** = *sku*, *skuḥu*, *q.v.* 6 **hkhur** (p. 226).

**hskyim-se** = *skyim*°. 18-*hirmoḥo*.

## Kh

**khab**, *conceal* = Tib. *kab*, *cover, shelter*; *khebs*, *hkhēbs*, *cover*; *gab*, *hgebs*, *bgab*, *khob*, *cover, conceal*. 106 **hkaḥ**°, *speech concealing* (p. 315). See also **hkhāb**, **hkhob**.

**khar** = Tib. *mkhar*, *castle, citadel*. See also **hkhār**. 117 **-gsom** (p. 252).

**kho**, a *chief*? = **hkhō**, **hkhōḥo** (p. 263). 217 **-sñe** = Tib. *gnē*, *court, or gnēn*?; 241 **-re** (pp. 263, 356).

**khyag** = *khyog*, **hkhyyog**, *bent, crooked* (*khyogs*, &c., *palanquin, sedan-chair*). 52 **khri**° (p. 317).

**khyān**, *matron* (p. 240). 116 **hsas-te**°; 190, 367 (?), 390 (pp. 240, 285). See also **hkhyyān**.

**khri** = **hkri**, *q.v.* 52 **hldag**° (p. 317).

**khru** = **hkru**, *q.v.* See also **hkhru**, **hkhruḥu**, **hkhrrur**. 165 **-hṛkaḥ-myi-hṛdhoḥ**; 321 **-hyog** (p. 296).

**khrom** = **hkrom** I or II (p. 304). 388 **mor-tsaḥ**°; cf. **hyañ-ge-hgroms** 64 (pp. 216, 304).

**hkhān** = **hkañ** II, *house*, *q.v.* 198 **hldañ**° (p. 234).

**hkhad** = Tib. **hkhad**, **hkhod**, *hgod*, *build, level, settle*, &c.? 324 **-hṭohi** = **-hṭo** (Suffix) + **hi**.

**hkhāb** I = **khab**, *q.v.* 105 **hkaḥ**° (p. 315).

II = **hkaḥ**, *q.v.* 280 **-rgye**.

— **-hgro**, *go home*. 233, 239, 243 **gro** (p. 315).

**hkhāb** (**hkhāhb**)-**hdro**, *come to house*. 106 (p. 261).

**hkhām** = Tib. **hgam**, **hkhām**, &c.

*cram into one's mouth, gobble, &c.* (p. 240). See also **hgam** II. 292 **hṛne**°.

**hkhāḥ** = **hkaḥ** I, *q.v.* 116 **hsas**°; 163 **-hldañ** (pp. 240, 315).

— **-hldaḥ** (Suffix, p. 183), *speaker*. 137 (p. 315).

— **-hṛdza** = **hkaḥ**°, *q.v.* 296 (p. 315).

— **-gsaḥ** = **hkaḥ**°. 329 (p. 314).

**hkhār** I = **khar**, *q.v.*

— **-hgyi**, *town's business* (?) (p. 283 n.). 192 (p. 283).

— **-rpag**, **hṛpag** (pp. 195, 225-6). 17 **hkhāḥ**?; 128 **hṛpag**; 135 **rpag** (pp. 227, 243, 263, 305).

II *for hkhā-re or hkhār-re*? 197 **hṛne-hldañ**°.

**hkhīhi** 211 = **hkhēhi**, *q.v.* 212.

**hkhū** I *maternal uncle* = Tib. *khu*, *'a-khu, uncle*.

— **-tsa** (Suffix, pp. 187-8) 60 (p. 145).

II *Some species of animal, perhaps a kind of wolf*. 303 (p. 270).

**hkhur** = Tib. *dgur*, *rgur*, *agur*, *skur*, *bent down, crookback* (p. 226). 6 **hṛpag**°.

**hkhēn** = Tib. *mkhyen*, *know*. 92 (2) (pp. 295, 334).

**hkhēhi**, *i.e.* **hkhē** = **hke** II, *gain, profit, + hi*. See also **hkhēhe**, **hkehi** (pp. 242, 282). 212 **mye-hpehi**° (p. 240).

**hkhēhe** = **hke** II, **hkhēhi**, *q.v.* 251, 314 **hsaḥ**° (pp. 224, 262, 274).

**hkhō** I *chief* (?) (pp. 262-3). See also **kho**. 217-18 **hṭor**° and **hṭor-hbroñ**°; 209 **-hṣaḥ** (pp. 255, 263).

II *top* (connected with I?) (p. 263). 295 **-hko** = Tib. *ri-kha*, *hill-top*. See also **hrihi**-**hkhōḥo**.

III *desire, want, have to* = **hko** V (pp. 262-3). 336 **hwio**°, *have to make*? Cf. 156 **rmañ-bri**° **hko**, *have to destroy*?; 295 **hño**°? or is this **hkhō** I?

— **-hdaḥ** 329 *meaning*? (p. 264). See also **hkhōḥ-hṭaḥ**, **hko-hṭaḥ**, **hldaḥ**.

**hkho-rño** = **hko-rño**, *q.v.* 189 **stor**;  
267 **hkog**° (pp. 263, 285).  
— **-hphyang** = **hko-bphyang**, *q.v.*  
106 (p. 264).  
**hkhog** I = **hkog** I, *q.v.* 21 **htañ-**  
**gsom**° (pp. 203, 306).  
II = *Tib.* **khog**, *interior*? 51  
**stoñ**° (p. 328).  
III *friend*? 101 **hlañ-hjañ** . . .°;  
107 **hlañ-hjañ**°; 134 **-hmoñ** (?).  
IV = **hkog** II *secret* (p. 221). 251  
**hño**°; 314 **hño**° (p. 280).  
**hkhob** = **hkhob** I and **hkhob**, *con-*  
*ceal*. 322 **hño**° (pp. 171, 359).  
*See also hkhob*.  
**hkhob-htah** = **hkhob-hdah**, *q.v.*  
328 (p. 264).  
**hkhobi** = **hkho** I + **bi** 218 (pp. 255,  
263).  
**hkhobu** = **hkhobu** II, *q.v.* 106 **-re**;  
292 **htab**°; 296 **htab**° (pp. 264,  
298).  
**hkhobo** = **hkho** I, 129, 216  
(pp. 263, 272).  
II = **hkho** II. 291 **hrihi**° (p. 263).  
**hkhob** = **hkor** I, *retinue, entourage*,  
*etc.* 18 **hdzañ**°; 98 (?) (p. 295).  
*Return* (?) (*read hkhob-re*?).  
293, 294, 296 (pp. 297-8).  
**hkhwi** *seven*? (p. 203).  
— **-htsa**, *old, elder*? (p. 343). 259  
(pp. 319, 343).  
**hkhyañ** = **khyañ** *matron*, *q.v.* 212  
(p. 240).  
**hkhyañ** = *Tib.* **hkhyañ**, *rove*,  
*wander*. 229 **rño**°; 237 **rño**°.  
**hkhyañ** = *Tib.* **hkhyañ**, *suffice*. 119;  
123 **me**°; 124 **me**°; 127 (p. 288).  
**hkhrañ** = **krañ**, *q.v.* and **hkhrañ**.  
127 **hdañ**° (pp. 288-9).  
**hkhram** = *Tib.* **hghrem**, **hghram**,  
**hghram**, **hghram**, *spread, or*  
*khram, artful, lively, brisk*. 332  
**-re** (p. 305 and n. 1).  
**hkhru**, *probably* = **hkhru**, *q.v.* 320  
**-re** (p. 296). *See also hkhru*.  
— **-rgyañ** 187 = **kru**° 388 (p. 312).  
**hkhruhu-hyo** = **hkhru**°, **hkhru**° 322.  
**hkhru** = **hkhru**-**re** 169 (pp. 157,  
244, 296, 323).  
**skhrud** = *Tib.* **skrud**, *put to flight*.  
9 **rño**° (p. 329).

## G

**gañ** 232, *probably erroneous; see*  
*critical note*.  
**ge** (possibly *erroneous* in 265, 279), *a*  
*particle* (pp. 173, 189-90, 204-  
5). *passim*.  
**gehu** = **kehu**, **hkehu**, **hke** II, *q.v.*  
(pp. 316, 368). 362 **-prom**.  
**go**, *not in text*, = **hgo**, *vulture*  
(p. 134).  
**goñ** = *Tib.* **goñ**, *upper, superior*.  
*See also hgoñ*. 179 **gnah**°  
**omyag**; 367 **hyahñ**° **omyag**.  
**gyañ** I = *Tib.* **yañ**, **kyañ**, **gyañ**,  
*also, even, though* (pp. 204,  
311). *See also kyañ*. 263  
(pp. 283, 313).  
II *precipice*? = *Tib.* **g-yañ**. 313  
**-g-ri** (p. 312).  
III **gyañ-gyañ** = *Tib.* **hgyañ**,  
*dally* (pp. 295, 312). 92 **sñañ**°  
(p. 295).  
**gyim** *home* = **kyim**, **hkyim**, *etc.*  
*q.v.* 148 **rmañ-ra**° (pp. 246-7).  
**gras**, *Tib.* **gra**, *arrangement; gras*,  
*order, rank, etc.*; **hgras**, *difference*  
*between two parties; dgra*,  
*enemy*. 300 **-re**. *See also*  
**hgras**, **hgras** (pp. 266, 269,  
306).  
**gre** = *Tib.* **gre**, *bear* (p. 254). *See*  
*also hgre*. 109 **myag**°; 305,  
307 **hrgam**° (pp. 231, 239).  
**gro** = *Tib.* **hgro**, *go*. *See also hgro*.  
243 **khob**°.  
**gron** = *Tib.* **gron**, *expend*. 158  
**-g-ri-ta**°.  
**gla** = *Tib.* **gla**, *wages* (p. 251). *See*  
*also glah, glar, hglā, hglah*.  
233 **hdzañ**° **hñag**.  
— **-htso/hdzo** = *Tib.* **gla-mi**, **hñe-**  
**ling** (p. 251 and n.).  
**glañ** I *increase, get* (?) = *Tib.* **len**,  
**blañ**, *or else glañ, requite, return*.  
66 **sñañ**°; 86 **rño-sta**°; 99  
**rgyed-ma**°; 176 **hke-prom**°;  
361 **kehu-prom**° (p. 318).  
II = *Tib.* **glañ**, *or* (p. 318). 66  
**ru**°; 174-6, 359, 360, 366 **hnu**°,  
**nu**°.  
III? 397.



**glab** = *Tib.* lab, *speak*. See also **hlab**, **hlobhi**. 180 -hdo, a *Suffix*, p. 186 (pp. 168, 197).

**glah** = *glā*, *wages*, *q.v.* See also **hgla**, **hglah**. 31 -tah (?); 228 hwah<sup>o</sup> (p. 251).

— **-hlad** *wage requital*. 233, 236 (pp. 251, 338). See also **hgla<sup>o</sup>**.

**glar** = *glā-re*. 334 (p. 338).

**glehu** = *Tib.* glehu, *gle*, *edge of plough-land* (p. 368). 347-8 hrim<sup>o</sup>.

**glo** = *Tib.* glo, *lungs*, *side*; blo, *mind*, *heart*. See also **hklo**, **hlo** II. 68 -hrañ; 93; 116 pu<sup>o</sup> (pp. 238, 268, 285, 336).

— **-ta** (a *Suffix*, pp. 182-3), *purpose*. 157 -rdzogs (p. 182).

**glog** = *Tib.* glog, *lightning*. 269 smyi<sup>o</sup> (p. 339).

**glom** = *Tib.* lom, *conceit*, *covet*. See also **hrlomhi**. 60 gpha-tsa<sup>o</sup>; 85 hño-sta<sup>o</sup>; 346 hdam-sleg<sup>o</sup> (pp. 145, 290).

**glyañ** probably a (*Tun-huang*) mispronunciation of *rgyañ*, *q.v.*: cf. **hglyañ** = *hikyañ*, *Tib.* rkyañ. 230 hrañ<sup>o</sup>; cf. 147 (p. 225).

— **-ru**, *long-horn* = *ox*. 347, 351.

**dgu** I *hot*, *heat* (pp. 232-3). See also **dguhu**. 225, 245 -hmu-hto; 75-6 -htor (pp. 232, 273, 338).

— **-hido** (a *Suffix*, pp. 186-7), *hotness*. 74, 77, 78, 114, 139, 191, 309 -htor (pp. 201, 232, 243, 266, 270, 282-3).

II = *Tib.* dgu, *nine*, *all*. See also **hgu** II (p. 203). 127 stor<sup>o</sup>; 134 -sko (pp. 233, 288, 290).

**dguhu-hmu-hto** = *dgu* I<sup>o</sup>. 236, 244 (p. 232).

**hgā-hldoñ** = *hgañ<sup>o</sup>*, *q.v.* 308 (p. 270).

**hgag** = *Tib.* kag, *keg*, *hinder*. See **hkeg**. 65 -re (p. 228).

**hgañ** = *hkañ* I, *full*, *all*, *q.v.* 104 (or *hkañ* II, *house* ?); 123 hyu<sup>o</sup>; 168 hri<sup>o</sup>; 194, 207 hkañ<sup>o</sup>; 392 (?) (pp. 147, 229, 238, 315).

**hgab-hido** (a *Suffix*, pp. 186-7), *hidden*, *covered*. See **khāb**. 155 mehi<sup>o</sup> (p. 282).

**hgām** I = *Tib.* gam, *gams*, *posting-station*, *settlement* (p. 243). See also **rgām**, **hrgām**. 78 mehi-ra<sup>o</sup>; 93 -phar; 110 -hphar; 118 -hkom; 131, 133, 221 hthañ<sup>o</sup>; 191 gdañ-na<sup>o</sup>; 193 hñah-mo<sup>o</sup>, gso-nad<sup>o</sup>; 229 -lam; 289 -hpar; 396 gdañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 238, 243-4, 293, 315, 336).

II = *Tib.* hgām, *hkhām*, *bgām*, *cram into mouth*, *gobble*; *kham*, *morsel*, &c. 59 hrañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 240).

**hgañ** I *place* (?). 256 rgām<sup>o</sup> (pp. 147, 173).

II = I? 283 -hrag/rag.

— **-hldoñ**, *some creature*, or *phenomenon*, *on mountains*. 302, 309-II (p. 270).

**hgañhi** = *hgañ* (*Tib.* dgañ, *joy*) + *hi*. 66 (p. 318).

**hgar** I = *hkar* I, *separate off*, *pen*, *q.v.* 69 hbeñi-la<sup>o</sup> (p. 247).

II -hpu = *Tib.* mgar, *smith*. 289, 322 (p. 359).

**hgu** I a *Suffix* (pp. 190, 258). 226 mor<sup>o</sup>; 227 mug<sup>o</sup>; 228 hbri<sup>o</sup>; 303 hdom<sup>o</sup>; 304 hdom<sup>o</sup> (pp. 256, 327).

II = *Tib.* dgu, *nine*, *all* (pp. 203, 233, 290). See also **dgu** II. 126 stor<sup>o</sup>.

III = *rgu*, *hrgu*, *thief*, *q.v.* 113 -htor; 331 -hmr (p. 233).

**hguñ**? 395.

**hguhu** = *hgu* I. 312 hdom<sup>o</sup> (p. 254).

**hge** I = *ge*. 5, 8 hnam<sup>o</sup>; 332 (pp. 223, 341).

II = *Tib.* dgo, *happiness*, *welfare*. See also **hgehe**, **hrghehe**. 73, 75 hwa-ste<sup>o</sup>; 252 hlab-re<sup>o</sup> (pp. 273-4, 337-8).

**hgehe** = *hge* II, *q.v.* 75 hwa-ste<sup>o</sup>; 251 hbañ-re<sup>o</sup>, jo-re<sup>o</sup> (pp. 273-4, 338).

**hgo** I = *hko* IV (*Tib.* ago, *gate*) or *hko* III (*Tib.* go, *place*). 46 -hpo; 105 -hdro; 145 phye<sup>o</sup>; 210 -gtoñ; 212 -htoñ (pp. 200, 260-1, 286, 332).

II = *Tib.* go, *vulture*. 260 -hsor (p. 261).

III *hkañ-hgo* = *Tib. kha-bso*, advice. 105 (pp. 261, 315).  
 IV ? 212 *hkwāñ*°; 358 *rñe-ge*°, na°? (p. 261).  
*hgoñ* = *goñ*, *q.v.* 333 *hro*°; 367 *gnah*°.  
*hgon* = *hgoñ*? 358 na°.  
*hgom* = *hkom* II, *q.v.* 142 *gdag*° (p. 323).  
*hgoho* = *hgo* I. 261 *g-rub*°; 369 *-hdzin* (pp. 261, 342).  
*hgor* = *hkor* II, *delay*, &c., *q.v.* 42, 143, 350 *na-hldom*°; 113 *hnañ-hpoñ*°; 201 *hso-hldañ*°; 209 *hkhoh-hsañ*° (pp. 233, 238, 297, 299, 341).  
*hgwa-nehu* = *hwa* I, *hwañ* I, -ne good work, *q.v.* 41 (pp. 338-40).  
*hgwañ-hrsañ* = *hwa/hwañ/g-wañ*° *q.v.* 229.  
*hgweg-hwehe* = *Tib. sgeg-byed*, charmer, or *hgeg-bye*, husband. 348 (pp. 248, 343).  
*hgyañ* I = *gyañ* III, *dally* (pp. 311-12). 7, 77, 200, 296.  
 II *confused with rgyañ*, spread, increase, hasten? 217, 392 *hthor-hbroñ*°.  
*hgyañs* *Aorist form of hgyañ*. 241 *anyi-hnu*°; 292 *hgyañ-sto* = *ñs-to* (pp. 237, 298).  
*hgyan* I = *Tib. g-yan*, *itch*. 153 (read *hgyanni*); 158 (p. 316).  
 II See *hko/hkoho-hgyan*.  
*hgyañ* = *rgya*, *rgyañ*, *hrgyañ*, plain, *q.v.* 391 *-hnañ-tsur*.  
*hgyi*, *business* (*Tib. bgyid*, *bgysis*, *byi*, *gyis*, *do*; or *Chin. i* < *gyi*, *Karlgren*, no. 204?). 192 *hkhār*° (p. 283 n.).  
 — *-ka* (a *Suffix*?) 346 *hyu*°.  
*hgyud* = *hkyud* lineage, &c., *q.v.* 16 *hrdzo*° (p. 258).  
*hgye* = *Tib. hgye*, light (*hgyed*, scatter). 12, 154 *-hkrom-hkrom* (pp. 235-6).  
*hgyed*, a species of bird? 39 *-ge-hbañ*.  
*hgyeb* = *rgyeb* I, *hrgyeb*, back, *q.v.* 221 *-hkru-hbro* (p. 296).  
*hgyehi* = *hgye+hi*. 209 *hphyu-hldyañ*°.

*hgrañ* = *Tib. grañ*, cold. 28 *-hñyir-hñyir* (p. 362).  
*hgran* = *Tib. hgran*, *dgran*, *adversary*, rival. 355 (p. 230).  
*hgrah* I = *Tib. dgra*, *enemy*; *hgras*, arrangement in parties, *alinea-tion* (whence also *bkra*, *khra*, *criss-cross*, *variegated*). See also *gras*, *hgras*, *hras*. 239 *hcha*° (pp. 313-14).  
 II, possibly = I, or = *Tib. sgra*, sound? 8 *me*°; 20 *me*°.  
*hgras* = *gras*, *hras*, aligned, *q.v.* 10 *htañ*° (p. 266).  
*hgri* = *hkri*, *khri*, support, chair, bed, *q.v.* 38 *hśio*° (pp. 299, 317).  
*hgri* I = *Tib. gru*, *gru-ma*, corner, angle; *gru-mo*, elbow; *yul-gru*, locality (pp. 266, 306), perhaps originally a recess in mountains. 19 *hldu-hro*° (?); 24 *-hsaram-gtam*; 300 *hri*° (pp. 138, 306, 321). Or rock? (p. 306).  
 II = *Tib. Hgru*, an ancient tribe of Tibet, perhaps the people of *Gru*, a district of Tibet lying to the east and north of *Dbus* (cf. *Gru-gu* *Rgya-ra* in *Khams*). Perhaps named from *hgri* I. See *hgri-hldañ-hmañ* and *hpu* (*hphu*, *hbu*) *-hgri* (pp. 307-9).  
 III = *Tib. hgru*, *hgrus*, *bestow* pains, diligence; *brtsan-hgrus*, industry, energy. See *hgri-ma*, *hgrus*.  
 — *-ma* (a *Suffix*, p. 182), council meeting (*hgri* III, or of *Hgru* people, *Hgru* II); cf. *Tib. hdun-ma*. See also *hrim-ge-hgrus*, *hldu-hro-hgri* (pp. 148, 308-9, 369). 27 *-hti*; 32 *-hkom*; 77 *-rmañ*; 79 *-hstor* (pp. 278, 309, 345).  
 — (II) *-hldañ-hmañ*, *P.N.* (of the city of the *Hgru* people?) (pp. 306-7). 21, 22, 30 *ma*; 35, 62 (p. 306).  
*hgrus* = *Tib. hgrus*, *Aorist of hgri* III (or possibly = *Tib. hgrus*) (pp. 308, 369). 293 *hrim-ge*°; 297 *hrim-ge*° (p. 298).



**hgre** = gro, bear, *q.v.* 17 gsañ; 305 rgam<sup>o</sup> (p. 221).

**hgro** = gro, come, go, *q.v.* 67 hko-se<sup>o</sup>; 233 hkhah<sup>o</sup>; 239 hkhah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 186, 315).

**hgrom** flourish? But see hkhrom, hkhroms, khrom (pp. 236, 305). 136 hldag[-nag]; 222-3 htor-hbroñ (pp. 243, 305).

**hgroms**, Aorist of hgrom. 64 hyañ-go<sup>o</sup> (pp. 274, 305).

**hgla**, wages = gla, *q.v.* 237 -hld.

**hglah** = gla, glah, hglah, *q.v.* 232 hdzan<sup>o</sup> ohnag; 234 hdzan<sup>o</sup> onag.

**hglu** (a possible reading: see critical note) = hgrou, 77, 79 (pp. 278, 309).

**hglyañ** 307 (p. 252), mispronunciation of hkyañ, *kiang*, *q.v.*: cf. glyañ.

**rgad** = Tib. rgad, rgod, laugh (p. 348). 113 gtse-ne<sup>o</sup>.

**rgam** I = Tib. sgam, deep (p. 147). 241 hño (?); 256 -hgañ (pp. 147, 173).

II = Tib. bsagam, admit into company or settlement (gam, gams). Cf. sbam, bams, boms. See also hrgam (pp. 196, 244, 352). 36 rgyed-hsan<sup>o</sup>; 241 hño (?); 304 hmañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 283).

**rgu** = Tib. rku, lku, rkun, rgun, steal, thief. See also hgu III, hrgu (pp. 233, 347). 29 -hmyil-myl (p. 259).

**rgo** = Tib. sgo, door, gate. See also hko IV, hgo I, rgor (pp. 262, 292, 348). 120 ši<sup>o</sup>; 258 -hldom; 314 -htoño (pp. 224, 291-2, 318).

— **-hrah**, gate-ward = Tib. sgo-ra-ba 315 (pp. 228, 292).

**rgoñ** I = Tib. dgon, wilderness, solitude (pp. 349, 362). 39 -spu-rbu; 59 -hce-rgye (p. 286).

II = Tib. sgoñ, sgoñ-ña, egg (pp. 332-3, 348). See also hrgoñ.

— **-wa**, egg (Tib. sgoñ-ña?). 365, 366 (p. 332).

— **-ru**, horn (*sc. end*) of an egg (p. 333). 103 (pp. 156, 333). See also hrgoñ.

**rgor**, Locative of rgo, door (p. 262). 96, 98 -hyos (pp. 262, 345).

**rgya** = Tib. rgya, plain, extent, country; rgya-dkar, large orb, disk. See also rgyah, hrgyah. 271 -hrko-hrkabs; 272 -rko-rkabs (p. 339).

— **-hñi-ke**, the two orbs (*sc. sun and moon*, Tib. ñi-zlañi-rgya-dkar) (pp. 271-2). See also rgyah<sup>o</sup>, hrgyah<sup>o</sup>. 53, 319 hke (pp. 271-2).

**rgyag** = Tib. rgyag, throw, cast, found, &c. (pp. 235, 348). 27 smu-hdzu<sup>o</sup>; 29 hyim-stoo<sup>o</sup>; 83 rte-hyu<sup>o</sup>, hkam-stañ<sup>o</sup>; 89 gsom<sup>o</sup>; 185 hdon<sup>o</sup> ? (pp. 139, 259, 320).

**rgyañ** = Tib. rgyañ, stretch, extent, extensive, wall, distance; rgya-ñ-te, arriving in haste. 51 hlduñ-ce<sup>o</sup>; 86 -na-spe; 89 hldyim<sup>o</sup>; 152 meñi-spa<sup>o</sup>; 300 wall ? (pp. 266, 291, 298, 300, 312, 321, 328). See also hce<sup>o</sup>, hkyañ<sup>o</sup>, hrgyañ-sto, šiđ<sup>o</sup>, hrah<sup>o</sup>.

**rgyad**, error for rgyed ? 136.

**rgyam** = Tib. rgyam, rock; gyam, slab of stone; gyam, recess in a rock (pp. 280, 349). 109 tho<sup>o</sup>; cf. Tib. tho-rdo (p. 280).

**rgyah-gñi-ke** = rgya-hñi-ke, *q.v.* 199.

**rgye** extent, extended, cf. Tib. dbye (pp. 196, 286, 291). See also rgyeñe, rgyes, hrgye. 57 (2), 59 (2), 60 hce<sup>o</sup>; 153 myi<sup>o</sup>; 154 hti<sup>o</sup>; 209 hldañ<sup>o</sup>; 210 hcañ<sup>o</sup>; 280 hkhah<sup>o</sup>; 383 -hlo (pp. 171-2, 245, 248, 273, 286, 341-3).

**rgyeñ** put in order ? (cf. Tib. yeñ-yeñ) (pp. 256, 327, 350). 355 hñur-hñah<sup>o</sup>, hyañ-re<sup>o</sup> (pp. 256, 327, 329).

**rgyed**, divide, cause division or dissension, Tib. hgye, hgyed, distribute, &c.; hgyed-ma, dissension (pp. 139-40, 196, 290-3, 350). See also hrgyed. 105 -htso-dro, -hgo-hdro; 106 -hkhah/-hkhah-hdro; 192 -hrah-sme<sup>o</sup> (pp. 261, 283).



**rgyed-hdre**, *division-inducing*. 87;  
94 htre; 248 htre (pp. 140, 291,  
340).  
— **-hldag-nag**, *division black-back*.  
112 (p. 291).  
— **-rmañ**, *division-army*. 149.  
— **-ma** (a Suffix, p. 182) *division*.  
90, 93, 99, 101, 104-5, 107, 231  
(pp. 291, 293, 315).  
— **-hrah**, *place of division*. 87  
hrah, *Locative*; 216, 248 hrah;  
341, 342 (?) 392 (p. 140).  
— **-hrah**. See **hrah**.  
— **-gsañ**, *secret division*. 35 (pp.  
244, 283).  
**rgyen** = Tib. *gyen*, *steep, uphill*,  
*difficult* (pp. 145-6, 268, 350).  
See also **hrgyen**. 158 hdo-ta°;  
197 hmye-htah°; 374-7 hkad-  
hroñ-re° (pp. 145, 268).  
**rgyeni** = *rgyen* + *ni*. 198 (p. 341).  
**rgyeb I** = Tib. *rgyab*, *back* (Noun,  
*Adverb, or Verb*) (pp. 196, 228-  
9, 348). See also **hgyeb**,  
**hrgyeb**, **rgyeb**s. 133 draw-  
back; 190 hphuñi-htoñ; 282  
hpuñi-hpuñi; 345 -hchi: *Ad-*  
*verb* (pp. 228-9, 269).  
II, for *hkyeb*, *fill*, *q.v.*, or = Tib.  
*khebs*, *hkhrebs*, *hgebs*, *cover*?  
116 mu° (p. 285).  
**rgyeb**s, *Aorist of rgyeb I*, *q.v.* 139  
'retreats' (p. 228).  
**rgyehe** = *rgye*, *q.v.* 54.  
**rgyer** = Tib. *hgyer*, *drop, abandon*.  
365 -hldyañ (pp. 332, 350).  
**rgyes**, *Aorist of rgye*, *q.v.* 199  
-hkom (p. 320).  
**rgyo** = Tib. *rgyo*, *copulate*. See  
also **rgyoho**, **rgyohon**, **hrgyo**,  
**hrgyon**, **rbyo**. 48, 323 hehe°;  
330 -hto; 331 -hto (pp. 178,  
348).  
**rgyoho** = *rgyo*, *q.v.* 335, 336 -hto-  
-stiñ (p. 367).  
**rgyohon** = *rgyo*, *rgyoho*, 336  
(p. 223).  
**hrgan** *ripen*, cf. Tib. *rgan old*. 160  
gtsañ-myi° (pp. 145-6).  
**hrgam** = *rgam* II, *q.v.* 133 hthañ°;  
169 hrpehi°; 259 hpañ°; 286  
rpehi-hldah°; 304 hldyo°; 305

-grehe; 306 hmañ-ge°; 307  
hman°; 316 -hatsag (pp. 231,  
239, 244, 256, 262, 323).  
**hrgu**, *steal, thief* = *rgu*, *q.v.* 30, 32  
-hto-hrun; 58, 165 -ma-gzo  
(pp. 199, 233, 277, 335).  
**hrgēhi** = *hrgehi*, *hge* II, *q.v.* 58  
-sto = *hrgehis-to* (pp. 233, 349).  
**hrgēhe** = *hrgehi*, *hge* II, *q.v.* 72  
hyah° (p. 361).  
**hrgōñ-hru** = *rgōñ-hru*, *q.v.*  
**hrgod**. See **rsehi**. 208.  
**hrgom**, *passed over*, cf. Tib. *hgom*,  
*tread, leap over, pass over*; *bgom*,  
*bgoms*, *gom*, *pace*; *goms*, *skilled*,  
*practised*, *whence sgom*, *hsgom*,  
*contemplate* (pp. 157, 244-5,  
348). 169 (pp. 157, 244, 296,  
323).  
**hrgya-hñi-hkahe** = *rgya-hñi-ke*,  
*q.v.* 295.  
**hrgyañ-sto** = *hrgyañs-to*, *being*  
*extended or hastening*: see  
**rgyañ**. 242 tha-hnu° (p. 237).  
**hrgyah** = *rgya plain*, &c., *q.v.*?  
327 -hdihi (p. 317).  
**hrgyah-hñi-hke (hkehe)** = *rgya-*  
*hñi-ke*, *q.v.* 291, 319.  
**hrgyu** = Tib. *rgyu*, *material* (pp.  
286, 348). 60 hldañ° (p. 286).  
**hrgye I**, *error for hrgyed*, *q.v.* 326  
-hyo.  
II = *rgye*, *q.v.* 382 -hrdza, *greatly*  
*friendly*: cf. *rgye-hlo*.  
**hrgyeg**, *stop, hinder*, cf. Tib. *hgegs*,  
*dgag*, *bkag*, *id.*, *skyeg*, *keg*, *kag*,  
*misfortune*. See also **hgag**,  
**hkeg** (p. 349). 292; 302 -hñiñ.  
**hrgyed** = *rgyed*, *q.v.* 393 -hñiñ-  
-sme.  
— **-hyo**. 326 hrgye; 338.  
— **-hrah**, **hrah**. 216 hrah, hrah;  
243 hrah; 246 hrah.  
**hrgyen** = *rgyen*, *q.v.* 373 hkad-  
-hroñ-re°.  
**hrgyeb** = *rgyeb I*, *back*, &c., *q.v.*  
— **-hkru** (**kruhu**, **hkruhu**)-**hbro**.  
297, 321 kruhu-hpro; 323  
hkruhu (pp. 228-9).  
— **-hkruho**. 316 (p. 296).  
**hrgyo** = *rgyo*, *q.v.* 330 -hšeg  
(p. 178).

**hrgyon** = rgyo, rgyoñon, *q.v.* 336 (p. 223).

**lgyoño** ? = Tib. g-yo, move, shake. *Cf.* g-yo, byos; 11 (pp. 270, 354).

# N

**na** I used sometimes in place of the Postposition na (pp. 179-81, 193-4), when following -ñ (p. 360). 56 hbyim<sup>o</sup>; 56 me<sup>o</sup> (?); 199, 201, 206, 207 rmañ<sup>o</sup> (?).

II = Tib. ña, five? (pp. 203, 241); 54 -hke (?).

III ? = ñah, home, *q.v.* 199, 201, 206-7 rmañ-ña, tomb-home? *cf.* hldañ-hkhañ. But see I. 102 -htsog.

**ñan** = Tib. ñan, bad, 158 chos-ta<sup>o</sup> (pp. 145-6).

**ñah**, home, *cf.* Tib. ña-ma, house-mistress, and, as regards the ñ, pp. 238, 360. See also hñah I, na II, hñah I.

**ñar** = Tib. ñar, strength, vigour (pp. 144, 300, 361). See also nar, hñar, hñar. 204 pa<sup>o</sup> = Tib. dpañ (pp. 300, 361).

**ñal** (not in text) (p. 133).

**ñur** = Tib. ñur, grunt, *cf.* ñu, ñud, weep, sob. See also hñur, hñu, hñu-hñur. 85 -ñur (p. 290).

**ñor**. See hñor.

**mñar** (Locative) = Tib. mñah, power, mastery. 261 (p. 342).

**hña**, error for hñañ: see critical note. 188 (p. 252).

**hñad** = Tib. ñad, vapour, fragrance, evaporate (pp. 294, 321). See also hñahd. 90 htshog-hram<sup>o</sup>.

**hñah** I = ñah, *q.v.* (pp. 238-9). 56 -hce; 307 -na; 326 -hpag; 328 -hpag (pp. 196, 239).

II = Hsi-hsia dñah, empty, sky = ña in mystical Buddhism (see S. C. Das' Dictionary)? Generally in the phrase re-hñah, there is absence (void) of (p. 239). 49 hrdzro<sup>o</sup>, for hrdzo-re<sup>o</sup>; 87 re<sup>o</sup>; 235 -sto = hñas-to; 291 re<sup>o</sup>; 369 rdzor<sup>o</sup>, for rdzo-re<sup>o</sup>; 363 re<sup>o</sup> (pp. 239, 288, 298).

**hñah** (I) -mo, house-wife | 193 (pp. — (I) -htsu, house-man | 196, 238).

**hñahghi** = hñag+hi. See nag I, hñag I. 137 (pp. 218, 275, 315, 338).

**hñahd** = hñad, *q.v.* 116 hyah-hñehi<sup>o</sup> (p. 217).

**hñar** = ñar, *q.v.* ? 357 phlañ<sup>o</sup>.

**hñas**, error for hsañs (see critical note)? 144 hrñe-hldañ<sup>o</sup>.

**hñu** = Tib. ñu, weep, sob: see ñur.

— **hñur** for hñur-hñur. 348.

— **hñdo** (Suffix, pp. 186-7), weeping. 355 (p. 256).

**hñud** = Tib. ñu, ñud, weep, sob. 41 -nohu.

**hñur** = ñur, *q.v.* 60 -hñur; 61 -hñur; 348 hñu<sup>o</sup>; 355 -hñah (pp. 145, 172, 256, 327).

**hñurañ**, erroneous reading (for hñrañ) in 230.

**hñe**, error (for hñye?). 364.

**hñehi**. 115. See hyah (pp. 191, 217).

**hño** I = Tib. ño, face, &c.; ño-lkog, openly and secretly (pp. 220-1). 251 -hkhog-lto; 258 -hdañ; 314 -hkhog; 322 -hkhob (pp. 171, 221, 280).

II friend, side = Tib. ños, side, state, person, direction (pp. 220-1, 266). See also hñon, hñoñu, hñoño, hñor I. 56 rñe<sup>o</sup>; 133 rñe-re<sup>o</sup>; 241 -rgam; 264-5, 279, 295 -hkhog; 299 hrñe<sup>o</sup>; 347 hrñeh<sup>o</sup>; 372 hrñe<sup>o</sup> (pp. 219-21).

— (II) **-sta** = -s-ta, friend. 85 (pp. 290, 341).

— (II) **-sto** = -s-to, friend. 84, 85.

— (II) **-stor**, friends fled or lost (pp. 219-20, 290). 79, 119, 127, 128, 143, 196, 257 (pp. 294, 303, 309).

— (I) **-bro**, flee into space. 108 (p. 221).

— II **-ra**, group (or place) of friends. 264, 265, 279.

**hñon** = hño II. 265 -kya.

— **-ta** (Suffix, pp. 182-3) friendship. 265.

**hñoñu** = hño II. 206.



**hñoŋo** = hño II. 273 -hjam; 320 rñe-re<sup>o</sup> (p. 317).  
**hñor** I for hño-re. 65 -htsah; 130, 132, 219 (pp. 157, 187, 219, 258, 259).  
 II = Tib. nor, *property, wealth, cattle, farm* (pp. 225, 245, 361-2). 11 -hlah; 50, 52. *See also* nor (pp. 245, 328, 344, 361).  
 — III? 17 hñor-hlañ.  
**hñyir-hñyir** = Tib. ñil-ñil, *trickle down*, 28 hgrañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 362).  
**hñyehe**, probably = hño, hñyoñ (*see critical notes to II*. 361-4) (p. 362). *See also* hño. 363, 364 hke-ma<sup>o</sup>.  
**hñyoñ** = hño, q.v. (p. 362). 362 -hdza-ma<sup>o</sup>; 363 hke-ma<sup>o</sup>.  
**rñab** (rñab), possibly = hrñab, q.v. 54 -ña-hke.  
**rñam** = Tib. rñam, *threaten, rage, dazzle, devastate*. *See also* hrñam. 49 -nar; 191 -skar (pp. 244, 315).  
**rñe** enemy = Tib. rñe, *fiend* (pp. 219-22). *See also* rñeñi, hrñe, hrñehe. 85 -hwe; 130 -hbye-hkwehe; 155 -ne; 177 -hpo; 196 -hldañ; 274 -hdzam; 320 hrgyañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 220-2, 316, 335, 341).  
 — -hldañ (Suffix, p. 183) *hostile*. 310 -hro.  
**rñeñi** = rñe + hi or rñehe, *is enemy*. 86 -rñeñi (p. 219).  
**rño** = Tib. rño, *ability, competence* (pp. 262-4, 339). *See also* rñor, hrño, hrñoŋo, hrñor. 53-6 hko-; 116 -mu-rgyeb; 189 hkho<sup>o</sup>; 267 hkho<sup>o</sup>; 272, 342 hko<sup>o</sup>; 141 stor<sup>o</sup>; 152 hku<sup>o</sup>; 156 g-yog<sup>o</sup>; 161 ldoñ<sup>o</sup>; 179 glañ<sup>o</sup>; 189 hkog<sup>o</sup>; 277, 309 wa<sup>o</sup>; 334 hwah-hrog<sup>o</sup>; 335 hwah<sup>o</sup>; 360 hnw glañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 228, 253, 263, 270, 281, 297, 338, 340).  
**rñor** = rño-re. 289 hyog<sup>o</sup>; 322 hyog<sup>o</sup>.  
**rñye**, for rñe, q.v. 206 -ne (pp. 221, 362).  
**hrñam** = rñam, q.v. 368 -hdar (p. 320).

**hrñu** = Tib. rñu, *pain*. 9 -skhrud (pp. 329, 348).  
**hrñe** = rñe, q.v. 16 -gsañ; 119, 127, 141, 144 -hldañ; 292 -hkham; 322 -hdam; 361 -hpo; 372 -hño; 385 -hrom (pp. 145, 220, 221, 274, 288, 316, 335).  
 — -hldañ = rñe<sup>o</sup>. 303 -hro (p. 270).  
**hrñehe** = hrñe, rñe, rñeñi. 131, 347 -hño.  
**hrño** = rño, q.v. 16 -hyod; 49 -hcañ; 188 -re; 189 hkho<sup>o</sup>; 214 hldoñ<sup>o</sup>; 269 hwah<sup>o</sup>; 368 -hprañ (pp. 239, 252, 253, 258, 263, 285, 339).  
**hrñoŋo** = hrño. 302 hñiñ<sup>o</sup>.  
**hrñor** = hrño-re. 171 hti<sup>o</sup>; 339 hldoñ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 257-8).

## C

ca = hcañ, q.v. 235 -yañ (pp. 303-4).  
**cañ I** = Tib. cañ in cañ-rig, cañ-śes, *all-knowing or very knowing* (pp. 283-4). *See also* chañ.  
**II** Suffixed, 'disposed to' (?) = Tib. -can, *possessing, &c.* (Probably identical with I and with Tib. gcañ, *clever*; bcañs, *comprehensive, &c.*; *see ibid.*) *See also* hcañ, chañ.  
**III** = Chinese ch'êng, *city*? 118 (p. 243).  
 — (I) -sme, *all-blazing*. 262 -me (p. 283).  
 — (II). 36 rgam<sup>o</sup>; 118 hphar<sup>o</sup>; 298 hphya-myi<sup>o</sup>; 368 gsehe<sup>o</sup> (pp. 244, 283, 359).  
**ci**, probably a Suffix or = Tib. ci in the sense of 'those who'. *See also* chi. 259, 261 hdag<sup>o</sup> (pp. 192, 202, 342).  
**cig** = Tib. hjig, gzig, bzig, bsigs, *destroy, do away with, perish* (p. 234). *See also* gcig, hcig, hsig. 150 hkyer-re<sup>o</sup>; 194 ste-gdzu-ge<sup>o</sup>; 376 rab-hgo<sup>o</sup>; 377 hpag<sup>o</sup>; 387 hko-htar<sup>o</sup> (?); 387 hjo<sup>o</sup> (?) (pp. 241, 305-6).  
 — -dze, *an official title*? (pp. 305-6).



- 186 -htor; 188 -tor; 192 -htor (pp. 305, 331).
- cis** ? 84 -tsha (pp. 259, 359). *Cf.* **gci**, **chi** II, **chis**?
- ce** = **hce**, *q.v.* 51 -rgyañ (pp. 321, 328).
- cog**, *not in text* (pp. 132, 368). *See* **gcog**.
- gci** = *Tib.* mchi, *go*. *See also* **gcihi**, **hci**, **hcihi**. 47 -me (p. 286).
- gcig** = *cig*, *q.v.* 356 ste-hdzu-ge<sup>o</sup>.
- gcihi** = *gci* ? 346 hdam-sleg<sup>o</sup>.
- gceg** = *Tib.* hceh, tseg, tshegs, *check*, &c. (p. 294). *See also* **hceg**, **tseg**, **gcheg**. 234 hso-hnah<sup>o</sup>.
- gcog** meadow (p. 249), or possibly = *Tib.* lcog, roof. 69 -hlde-hldu (pp. 247, 249, 321).
- hcag** = *Tib.* cag-ga, *care*; chag-rgyag, *doubt*.
- **rgyag**, *hesitation*. 83 (p. 259).
- hcañ** I = **cañ** II, *q.v.* 48 gse<sup>o</sup>; 49 hrñ<sup>o</sup>; 299 hldoñ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 239, 265).
- II = **cañ** III, *q.v.* 210 -rgye (p. 245).
- hcam**. 247 -hjam-htam.
- hcah** = *Tib.* hcah, hchas, *snap at*, *mangle* (pp. 252-3). 82 -rte (?); 115 -htso-htsah; 240 -hyañ (pp. 252-3, 259, 303, 320). *See also* **ca**-yañ, **mehi** (**hmehi**)-**klu**-**hcah**.
- hci** = *gei*. 300 hrñ<sup>o</sup>; 348 hrim-glehu-ge<sup>o</sup> (?) (pp. 265-6, 340).
- hcig** = *cig*, *q.v.* 208 hkañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 234).
- hcihi** = *gei*, *q.v.* 205 rmag<sup>o</sup>; 350 -htoh<sup>o</sup>, a *Suffix*, pp. 184-6 (pp. 300, 361).
- hce** = *Tib.* che, chen, geen, ched, ches, *great*. *See also* **hche**, **hches**. 53 na<sup>o</sup>; 54 hko-rñ<sup>o</sup>; 57 rgya<sup>o</sup>.
- **rgyañ**, of *great extent*. 16, 50, 52 (2), 55 (pp. 267, 291, 327).
- **rgye**, of *great extent*. 57 (2), 59 (2), 60 (pp. 286, 291).
- **hmu**, *great cold* = *death*. 200, 206 (pp. 222, 232).
- **ra** (hra, hrah), *great place*. 49, 50 hra; 56 hrah (p. 313).

- hceg** = *geeg*, *q.v.* 250 (p. 294).
- hcer** = *Tib.* geer, beer, glare, stare; ce-re, cer-re, with fixed stare (p. 304). 71 hcha-ge<sup>o</sup>; 203 ne<sup>o</sup>; 388 hya<sup>o</sup>-tsa<sup>o</sup> (pp. 216, 222, 274, 304, 359).
- hco** = *Tib.* jo, gtso, jo-co, rjo, gtso, cho, chief, lord. 55 (2) (p. 263).
- hcog** I. *See* **hkah**-**hcog**.
- II = *htsog*, *assemble*, &c., *q.v.*
- **-hdo** (a *Suffix*, pp. 186-7) = *htsog*, *union*. 88 (p. 340).
- **-hram-hdo** = *htsog*, *harmony*. 87.
- hscah** = *hstaah*, *q.v.* (p. 278). 166 -g-yer; 296 -hyer.

## Ch

- cha** I = *Tib.* cha, *part*, *tidings*, *affair*; khyim-cha, *household prospects*, &c. *See also* **hca**, **hcah**. 98 hmo<sup>o</sup> (p. 345).
- II. *See* **mehi**.
- **-hru** ? *See also* **hcha**-**hru**. 203 -hwars.
- chañ** I = **cañ** I, *q.v.* 263 -rdzum (p. 283).
- II = **cañ** II, **hcañ** I. 76 hdzo<sup>o</sup>; 91 se<sup>o</sup> (pp. 283-4).
- III = *Tib.* hchañ, bcañs, *hold*, *carry*. 261 phyer<sup>o</sup> (pp. 239, 283).
- chad** = *Tib.* hchad, chod, gcad, bcad, good, cut, fix, decide. 165 -rmu (p. 276).
- chah** = **cha** I, *story*, *matter* ? 164 -hkañhi (p. 315).
- chi** I = *ci*, *q.v.* 260, 261 hdag<sup>o</sup> (p. 239).
- II = *gei*, *go*, *q.v.* *See also* **hcihi**. 168 -hrmu; 385 -te, a *Suffix* (pp. 274, 276).
- chim** = *Tib.* hehim, htshim, *become full* (e.g. the moon), *satisfy*, &c. *See also* **hchim**, **htshim**, **chis**.
- **-hldim**, *waxing-waning*, *impermanant* ? 199 (pp. 320-1).
- chis**, *error for chim*, *q.v.* ? or = *Tib.* mehis, *come* ? 94 gdñm<sup>o</sup> (pp. 320-1, 359). *See also* **tshis**.
- cho** (*not in text*), *tiger* (p. 132).

- chos** = Tib. *hchos*, beo, beos, chos, make, arrange, originate, &c.; cho-rigs, lineage, &c. See also *hchos*. 159 -hre (p. 145).
- **-ta** (a Suffix, p. 182). 158 (pp. 145-6).
- gcheg** = *geeg*, *hceg*, q.v. 111 *hso* -*hna*<sup>o</sup> (p. 293).
- hcha** = *hcah*, q.v. See also *mehi* -*klu*<sup>o</sup>. 71 -*ge* -*hcer*; 239 -*hgrah* (?) (pp. 253, 304).
- **-hru** = *cha*<sup>o</sup>. 202 -*hrdyañ*.
- hchan** 349 -*hjim*.
- hchah** = *cha* I. 97 *hmo*<sup>o</sup> (p. 345).
- **-yañ** 242 = *ca*<sup>o</sup>, *hcah*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 303-4).
- hchi** = *gci*, *chi* II, *go*, q.v. 183 -*hdo*; 345 -*hro*; 353 -*hdo* (pp. 186, 269, 276, 332).
- hchim** = *htshim*, cf. *chim*. 38 *hai* -*hgri*<sup>o</sup> (p. 299).
- hchir** 233 -*htsañ* -*sto*.
- hchuñ** = Tib. *cuñ*, *geuñ*, *chuñ*, small. 185 *htor* -*hdo*<sup>o</sup> (p. 139).
- hche** = *hce*, q.v., or Tib. *gces*, dear, important, 115 *hrañ*<sup>o</sup>; 117 *rañ*<sup>o</sup> (p. 252).
- **-hmu**, great cold, death = *hce*<sup>o</sup>; 204 (p. 200).
- **-rgyo** copulation. 323 (p. 246).
- hches** = *hce*, q.v. (pp. 359-60). 322 *hgar* -*hpu*<sup>o</sup> (p. 359).
- hchos** = *chos*, q.v. 153 -*hyo*; 159 *hna*<sup>o</sup>; 160 *si*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 145, 172, 174, 217, 273, 320).

## J

- je**, error for *dze*. 116 (pp. 240, 315).
- jo** = Tib. *bzo*, work? See also *hjo*, *hjo*<sup>o</sup>. 251 -*re*; 253 -*me* (pp. 274-5).
- joñ** = *hjoñ*, *hdzoñ*, q.v. 78 *Hmoñ*<sup>o</sup> (p. 243).
- hjañ**, see *hlañ*. 101, 107.
- hjam** = Tib. *hjam*, gentle, mild, pleasant. See also *hdzam* (pp. 297, 339). 186 -*ge* -*hmeshi* -*htam*; 269 *hrho*<sup>o</sup>; 273 *hno*<sup>o</sup>; 274 -*rno* (pp. 281, 317).
- hjah** = *hdzah*, eat, q.v. 92 -*htah*, a Suffix, p. 182 (p. 334).

- hjar** = *hdzar*, stick, stick together, q.v. 220 *hdru*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 173, 366).
- hji** = Tib. *hji*, *lji*, flea, no matter? See also *hjihi*, *hrjihi* (p. 231). (Or, per contra = Tib. *lei*, *lji*, heavy?). 211 -*rdañ* (p. 260).
- hjim**, possibly drug and herb collectors, cf. Tib. *hjiñ*, *hjim* (p. 280, n. 1). 109 -*li* -*li*; 156 -*ta*, a Suffix, pp. 182-3; 314 *g* -*ri*<sup>o</sup>; 349 -*htsoñ* (pp. 280, 322).
- hjihi** = *hji*, q.v. 78 -*re*; 306 (pp. 244, 231).
- hju**, ass, cf. Tib. *gzu* -*lum*, obstinate (p. 252). See also *gdzu*, *hdzu*, *gzu*, *hzu*, *hjuhu*. 115 *hrañ* -*hehe*<sup>o</sup> (p. 252).
- hjuhu**, tiger = *hju*, q.v. 312 -*hbrad* (p. 254).
- hjo** I = Tib. *jo*, &c. See *hco*. 63 *hyañ* -*tsa*<sup>o</sup>; 78 *ldyañ*<sup>o</sup>; 154 *hchos* -*hyo*<sup>o</sup>; 201 *trog*<sup>o</sup>; 372 *hldyañ* -*hyu*<sup>o</sup>; 385 -*chi* -*te* (?); 387 *hldyañ* -*hyu*<sup>o</sup>; 389 *hldyañ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 273-4, 305, 331).
- **-hdzin**, govern. 74 (p. 274).
- II = *jo*, work, q.v. See also *hjo*<sup>o</sup>. 67, 70 -*me* -*hdub* (pp. 274, 335).
- III = Tib. *za*, *zo*, &c., eat. 177 (pp. 274, 335).
- IV error (for *hto*)? 69 *thar* -*pya*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 247-8).
- hjoñ** = *hdzoñ*, fort, q.v. See also *joñ*. 118 *Moñ*<sup>o</sup>; 129 *Moñ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 243, 263).
- hjo**<sup>o</sup> = *hdzo*, man, q.v. 137 -*hwa* -*hka*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 218, 338).
- hjo**<sup>o</sup> = *hjo* II, work. 34 (p. 275).
- hjo**<sup>o</sup> = Tib. *cor*, clamour, &c. 194 *hka*<sup>o</sup> -*hga*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 238, 315).
- rje** = Tib. *rje*, chieftain. 37 -*smyi* -*rmad*; 138 *hdzchu*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 218, 228, 237). See also *hrje*.
- rjes** = Tib. *rjes*, trace? 201 *pyi*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 222, 274, 359).
- hrjihi**, r-form of *hji*, *hjihi*, q.v. ? 213 *hbos* -*hdom*<sup>o</sup>.
- hrje** = *rje*, chieftain, q.v. ? 84 -*smyi* -*rmad* (p. 227). 36 *hldyo*<sup>o</sup> ? (p. 244).

## Ñ

**ñe** = *Tib. ñes, evil, &c.* (pp. 221-2).

*See also ñene, ñes, hñe, rñe,*

*rñehe, hrñe, hkyah-hwa-ñe,*

*17 -hkyeb-hkyeb; 149 sñiñ°;*

*229 sñañ°; 343 -hñes* (pp. 221-2,

*256, 313).*

**ñene** = *ñe-ne?* 328 sñañ°.

**ñer** (*hkyah-hwa°*) = *ñe-re.* 340

*(p. 253).*

**ñes**, *Aorist form of ñe* = *Tib. ñes.*

*153 -re; 158 -re; 192* (pp. 283,

*316).*

**gñi** = *Tib. ñi, gñi, sun. See also*

*hñi* (pp. 271-2). 80 -hrdzum;

*199 rgyah-gñi-ke* (pp. 186, 271,

*293).*

**gñim** = *Tib. ñin, gñin, day.* 12

*-hti* (pp. 235-6, 362).

**hñañ** I = *Chin. ñañ, female.* 45

*-hya* (p. 343).

II, *hear?* 385 -hyah-htaḥ (p. 331).

**hñi** I *shine, cf. Tib. ñi, gñi, sun*

*(pp. 272-3). See also hñis.* 67

*hlab-ma°* (p. 272).

II = *Tib. gñis, ñis, two* (pp. 234-

*5). See also sñi.* 140 -stor.

III? 187 -htor; 215 -htor?

*(p. 272).*

**hñis**, *Aorist form of hñi* I, *q.v.* 70

*hlab-me°* (pp. 173, 273, 358).

**hñe** = *ñe, q.v.* 209 -nag; 343 sroñ°;

*361 -hpo; 339 sroñ°* (pp. 256,

*274, 316).*

**hñed** = *Tib. mñe, mñed, &c., tan,*

*make pliable.* 31 -htam; 47

*-ge-slug* (p. 251).

**hño** = *Tib. ño, buy, trade.* 174, 177

*hdro°; 359, 361 dro°, hdro°.*

**rñi** = *Tib. rñid, brñis, gñid, fade,*

*grieve; rñis, worn out, faded; cf.*

*rñiñ, old, gñid, sleep. See also*

*hrñi.* 389 sñañ-rñi-re.

**rñe**, *r-form of ñe, evil. See also,*

*rñye, hrñe* (pp. 222, 350, 362).

*146 -hne-hrmag; 149 rmag°;*

*200 -ne; 201 hjo°; 229, 237*

*-hkyam; 301 -ne; 341 -hprom;*

*343 -hñe-ñes; 358 -ge-hgo* (pp.

*221-2, 261, 274, 313, 321).*

— **-hñad**, *requit of evil* (p. 223).

230, 231, 232, 235 lad; 237, 239

*(pp. 183, 303).*

**rñehe** = *rñe, q.v.* 297 -hbrom.

**hrñi** = *rñi, q.v.* 63 hyañ-hso°; 298

*hños-stsaḥ* (p. 303).

**hrñe** = *rñe?* 352 mehi-cha°.

**sñañ** I = *Tib. sñiñ, heart. See also*

*sñiñ.* 92 -gyañ; 102-3 (? *see*

*II); 389 -rñi* (pp. 156, 295,

*333-4).*

— **-ne**, *good heart (or II?).* 65

*hpha-ma°; 160 -theḥe; 328*

*ñene* (pp. 222, 318).

— **-ñe**, *evil-heart.* 229, 328 ñene

*(p. 222). See also sñiñ°.*

II = *Tib. sñan, agreeable, affec-*

*tionate.* 66 -glañ; 102-3 (? *see* I)

*(p. 318).*

— **-do** (*a Suffix, p. 186*), *affection.*

*86.*

**sñar**, *probably for sñā-re (metre),*

*and possibly sñā = Tib. sñā,*

*gñā, witness* (p. 356). 362

*hkehu-prom°.*

**sñi** I = *Tib. gñis, two. See also hñi*

*II* (pp. 203, 235, 356). 23 *gsom°.*

II = *Tib. rñi/sñi, snare, trap.*

*219* (p. 272).

**sñiñ** = *Tib. sñiñ, heart. See also*

*sñañ* I. 168 -hkañ (p. 147).

— **-ñe**, *evil-heart = sñañ°.* 149

*(p. 222).*

**sñe**, *conceivably = Tib. gñe, woo,*

*court* (p. 356). 217 *kho°.*

## T

**ta**, *a Suffix, appended chiefly to words*

*of Verbal, or at least Adjectival,*

*sense. See also taḥ, ḥta* I,

*htaḥ* I, *tha* I, *sta* I, *staḥ* I,

*(pp. 182-3, 187). See under*

*skye-, glo-, hñon-, chos-,*

*hjim, ḥtañ-, stor-, ḥdab-,*

*hde-, byin-, hmo-, ḥwañ-,*

*hwar-, g-yah-, ḥyed-ge-,*

*hro-, hrom-, g-ri-, hlab-,*

*béi-, hñes-, ḥso-ḥti-ge-.*

**taḥ** = *ta.* *See byin-, gśañ-,*

*glaḥ (?)*.

**te**, *a Suffix, appended normally, with*

*the sense of a Gerund, to Verbal*



- words. See also **hte**, **ste** I, **hste** I (pp. 136, 140, 188-90). See under **chi-**, **htañ-ma-**, **puñ-**, **hphom-**, **hśod-**, **hsas-**.
- to**, a Suffix, appended to Verbal or other words, with the sense of 'being' or 'becoming', and constituting a Verb Finite ('is'), an Infinitive or Participle. See also **tor** III, **hto** I, **htos**, **htoho**, **htohi**, **htohu**, **htor** I, **htoni**, **sto** I (pp. 184-6). See under **htad-**, **stor-**, **hdam-**, **hpā-**, **hprom-**, **hmu-**, **g-yah-**.
- tor** I great, perhaps derived in ancient times from an early form of Chinese **ta**. See also **htor** II. 50 **hldyo**; 219 **-sñi**; 174 **-dro-hño**; 64 **-hpu-hgru**; 216 **-hbroñ**; 219 **-sñi**; 337 **-hrtah**; 388 **-kru** (pp. 263, 272, 305, 308).
- II = **thor**, **htor**, *q.v.* 148 **-htas-prom** (p. 302).
- III written in place of **to-re**: cf. **htor** I. 188 **cig-dze** (p. 305).
- twañ** = **Tib.** **thoñ**, *ram* ? 48 **-mag-hño**; 261, 275 (pp. 342-3).
- tyañ** 213 **hbehi**° *ordehe* (p. 253).
- trog**, enemy ? (pp. 220-2). See also **htrog**. 201 **-hjo-rñe**; 266 **-htor** (pp. 221, 222, 274).
- gtañ** = **Tib.** **gtoñ**, **gtañ**, **btañ**, *send, let go, allow, &c.* See also **gtoñ**, **htoñ**, **thoñ**. 186 **mehi-ra** (p. 331).
- gtañ** = **Tib.** **gtañ**, *pledge, hostage*. See also **gtar**. 111 **-hgom-rbo** (p. 230).
- gtar**, written for **gtañ-re** ? 43.
- gtoñ** = **gtañ**, **htoñ**, *q.v.* 211 **hgo** (pp. 200, 261, 332).
- hta** I, a Suffix = **ta**, *q.v.* 181 **grtehe**° (pp. 156, 197).
- II = **Tib.** **da**, *now, &c.* ? See also **htañ**. 185 (p. 186).
- htag** = **Tib.** **thag**, *rope, hdogs, btags, gdags, tie, &c.* 34 **hyos**° (p. 275).
- **hto** (a Suffix, pp. 184-6). 278 **htos**; 279 **htos**, **hta**; 285.
- htañ** I = **gtañ**, *q.v.* 94 **htsog**°; 96 **htsog**°. See also **htañ** III.

- II = **Tib.** **thañ**, *measure, power*, 9 **mor**°; 10 **hyañ**°; 39 **mye**°; 149 **me**°; 315 **hyañ**°; 318 **hyañ**°. See also **htañ** II, **thwañ**, **hthwañ** (pp. 227, 276, 296, 301-2).
- III = **Tib.** **thañ**, *plateau, field*. See also **thañ**, **htañ** I. 14 **-hldu**; 218 **-hrdzo** (pp. 258, 321).
- IV ? 11 **-hmu-hro**; 96 **kya**° **ota** (pp. 270, 329).
- htad** = **Tib.** **gtod**, **gtad**, **btad**, *hand over, deliver, press, urge, gtad, steady, firm*, 30 **gsañ-re**°.
- htab** = Chinese **ta** (*A. tap*), *answer*. 293, 295 **-hkhohu** (pp. 264, 298).
- htam** I = **Tib.** **htham**, **hthams**, **thams**, *join, enlock, stick fast, thams-cad, all*. See also **htham**. 24 **hsam**°; 54 **steñi**° (pp. 138, 306, 353).
- II = **Tib.** **gtam**, *speech, story*, 60 **hldañ-rgyu**°; 248 **hjam**° (p. 286).
- htañ** I a Suffix = **ta**, *q.v.* See under **klu-**, **hkor-**, **hkhoh-**, **hjah-**, **htor-**, **stor-**, **hlde-**, **hldehi-**, **hldyañ-**, **me-**, **hmye-**, **hgzom-**, **hyañ-**, **hwa-ste-**, **rwye-**, **g-ri-**, **hram-ge-**, **gse-**, **hse-** (**hrtab-hldañ** ?).
- II = **hta** II ? 185 (p. 186).
- III error for **rta**, **hrtah** ? 341 **htor**°; cf. 124, 232, 337, 340.
- htar** I = **Tib.** **thar**, *be released, escape*. See also **thar** I, **htar** I, **hko-htar**. 146 **hnam-hdzam**° (pp. 261, 300).
- II = **Tib.** **mthar**, *at the end; mthah, extremity, border*. See also **thar** II, **htar** II. 374 **-phyañ-hto**; 392 **-ma** ? (pp. 248-9).
- htas** = **Tib.** **hthas**, *hard, solid, stiff; brta, brtas, rtas, expand, widen, be abundant*. 256 **-kro**.
- **prom**, *become tangled* ? 121, 148, 257 **htor**° (pp. 292, 302).
- hti** I = **Tib.** **gti-mug**, *gloom, cf. gtibs, thib, thibs, &c.*; **dark, dense**. 12 **gñim**°; 26 **hldyeg-hldyi**°; 154 **-rgye**; 385 **hrom-ge**° (pp. 174, 235-6).

- II = Tib. sti, stis, bsti, bstis, *stop, rest*. See also **sti**. 19 -hwer; 27 hgru-ma°; 104 sku-hphu°; 153 myi-ro°; 171 -hrño; 351 hsehe° (?); 354 hso°; 390 gdzu° (?). (pp. 174, 236, 257, 285, 309).
- htib** = Tib. rtib, btrtib, rtib, rtibs, *break down; ltib, rdib, collapse*. 19 -bzer (pp. 339-40).
- htuñu** = htñu, *assemble, q.v.* 100 (pp. 260, 321).
- htul** = Tib. hñul, btul, thul, gdul, dul, bñul, *etc., tame, discipline, conquer*. See also **htñul**. 42 hklom-ge°; 170 hkoñi-me°; 378 hse-ge° (pp. 244, 280, 285).
- hte** = te, *Gerund-suffix, q.v.* See under **hkañ**-, **htre**-, **trog**-, **htor**-, **htrog**-, **hdre** (and **hdrehe**)-, **hdre**-, **rdam**-, **hnam**-, **hram**-, **hse**-.
- hte-he** written for **htehe** = hte. 322.
- hto** I a Suffix and 'is'-Verb = to, *q.v.* See under **klu**-, **hko**-, **hkhru**-, **re**-, **dguñu**-, **mu**-, **hrgam**-, **re**-, **hrgu**-, **rgyo**-, **rgyoho**-, **stor**-, **hñu**-, **prom**-, **hprom**-, **hpud**-, **phrom**-, **hphrom**-, **hman**-, **htshu**-, **hdzohu**-, **hyah**-, **re**-, **g**-, **ri**-. See also **htoni**, **htoñ**, **htor**.
- II ? = Tib. mtho, *high, or tho, boundary* (pp. 248, 261, 332). 210 hdyañ°; 374 phyañ° (pp. 248, 280).
- htog** = htog, *stop, q.v.* 235 hbeñi-hbañ° (pp. 250, 301).
- htoñ** = gtañ, gtoñ, *q.v.* 100 narom°; 119 hño-stor°; 146 hrah°; 190 hphuñi°; 210 hdyañ-hto°; 212 hko°; 247 hñad°; 273 hrah°; 358 hrah° (pp. 217, 228, 261, 285, 332).
- hton** I = (Tib. mthon, 'high'), 223 (-hkoñ).
- II for **hto-na**. 280, 285 htagn°.
- htoni** = hto+ni. 150 stor-hñah°; 152 stor-ta°.
- htom** 364 -hphah.
- htoñi** = hto+ñi. 324 hkhad°.
- htoñu** = hto ? (p. 369). 7 hrño°.
- htoñ** = hto, *q.v.* See under **rgo**-,

**hñi**-, **stor**-, **hprom**-, **hrbom**-, **hrbyo**-, **rmañ-dze**-, **hyah**-,

**htor** I written in place of **hto-re** (see pp. 172-5 and critical notes). See also **tor**. 96 htah-ta° (?); 104 hdoñ° (?); 186 cig-dze°; 187 hñi° (?); 192 cig-dze°; 225, 245 dgu-hñu°; 341 rgyed-hrah°; 393 hdam° (?); 394 (?).

II = tor I great, *q.v.* Preceding hkhō 217, 218; hkhru-hrgyañ 187; hñi 215; sñiñ (sñañ) 168; 389; hñta (hñtah) 124, 231, 271, 340, 341 (htah); hñro-hñō 177, 359, 361; hñu (hñpuh, hñpu, hñbu) 29, 33, 62, 293, 329; hñroñ 215 (2), 216, 217, 219, 222, 223 (2), 392; smyi 73; hñi-rgo 120; hñō 354. Following, as Attribute or Predicate, dgu 75, 76 (2); hñu 113; dgu-hñdo 74; 77, 78, 114, 139, 191, 309; ca-yañ 236 (?); trog (htrog) 40, 266; htah-ta 96 (?); hdam 393 (?); hñdoñ 104 (?); hñdyo 16, 34, 254; se (143); gse-hñad 240 (?).

— **ge** the great 364, 387.

— **hñdo** (a Suffix, pp. 186-7) greatness. 185 (p. 139).

III = thor, hñhor, *bunch, top, etc., q.v.* See also **tor** II. 121 -htas-hproms; 148 spyo°; 236 ca-yañ° (?); 257 -htas-prom (pp. 292, 302).

**htos**, *Preterite form of hto* I (p. 198). 278, 279 htagn°.

**htye** (conceivably = Chinese t'ien, heaven, sky) (p. 324). See also **htñye**. 8 sta-hñdyañ°.

**htram** = Tib. tram, *hard, stiff*. See also **hdram**. 31 hñed° (p. 251).

**htre** = hdre, *q.v.* 94 rgyed°; 248 rgyed° (pp. 140, 291).

**htro** = Tib. hñro, *heat? or the frequent hñro* = Tib. hñron, *travel*. 197 mu-hñro° (pp. 232, 318). See also **hñro**.

**htrog**, *enemy?* (p. 220). See also **trog**. 40 -htor; 146 hñdrag°; 326 -hdre; 338 -hdrehe; 376 hñdza° (pp. 320, 327).



**htron**, *Imperative* (hdroñs) of *Tib.* htron, *travel*, or hdroñ, droñs, &c., *draw*, *lead*. See also **htronhi**. 233 hkhah-hgro° (p. 343).

**htronhi** = htron, *q.v.*, +hi. 224 hrkwa°; 243 hkhah-gro° (p. 343).

**htron** = *Tib.* htron, *travel*. 327 hrgyah-hdhi° (p. 317).

**rta** *horse* = *Tib.* rta. See also **rtah**, **rtahi**, **hrtah**, **hrtah** (pp. 139, 146, 258). With preceding hrah-wehi 139. With following sko-prom 91; hgam-hphar 93, 99, 110, 289; hldag-hsag 389; htsog-ram 90; hwa-hldan 278; yañ-stor 79; hsa-g-ye 330, 346; so (hso) -hrah 80, 93, 100, 103; swa 173, 175, 358.

— **ge** the (?) *horse*. 364.

**rtah** = rta, *q.v.* With preceding hrah 114, hrah(hra)-we 114, 191. With following hgam 118; htsog-hram 35, 82; hscab-g-ye 166; hswah 298.

**rtahi** = rta(rtah)+hi (?). 174 -swa-hldir (p. 320).

**rte** I? 82 heah° (pp. 259, 320).

II = hrtre, *q.v.* 182 hrah-rte-hdub (p. 313).

**rto** = *Tib.* rdo *stone* (?). See also **hrto**. 25 klu° (pp. 138, 223).

**grtehe** = Hsi-hsia gdeh, hrde, *fix*, &c. (cf. *Tib.* hthen, *stop*; rten, *hold*; bden, *true*?). See also **hrtehu**, **gdes**. 181 -hta (pp. 156, 197 and nn.).

**hrtah** = rta, rtah, *horse*, *q.v.* With preceding htor 124, 232. With following rkwah-hdzam 122; hpā-hphar 187; htsog-hram 119, 123; wa-hdan 258; hwa-hldan 121.

**hrtah** = rta, rtah, hrtah, *q.v.* With preceding tor, htor, 271, 337, 340; hldi-ma 63, 144; hrah 77; hrah-hwehi 380. With following hgam 118; nañ-hwar 354; hpah-hphar 388; hldan-hkrañ 91; hrah-glyan 230; swa (swah) 176, 301, 360.

**hrtehu** *fix*, *stop*; cf. Hsi-hsia hrde, gdeh? See also **grtehe** (pp. 156, 313-14). 265 gsañ-tah°.

**hrto** = rto *stone*, *q.v.* 24 klu° (pp. 138, 223).

**hrtre** = rte II. 354 hrah-hrtre-hdub.

**hltan** = hldan, ldan, *rise*, *q.v.* 93 rgyed-ma° (p. 291).

**hltah** I. See **hko-hltah**. 203 hbri-hko°.

II for hrtah? 250 -htsah-hyer (p. 278).

**hlto**, possibly = *Tib.* ltoa, *look* (or = hldo, a *Suffix*?) 251 hño-hkhog° (p. 354).

**hlto** = hldom, *subdue*, *q.v.* 88 hdim-htshis° (p. 321).

**sta**, **stah** I, a form of the *Suffix* ta, tah, *q.v.*, which has attracted a -s belonging to its (preceding) word: cf. *Tib.* -ste/-te (pp. 182-3, 185 n. 1) and sto *infra*. 85 hño°; 86 rñe°; 306 hbrad°; (pp. 220-1, 359).

II = *there*, also *Correlative*. See also **stah**, **hstah** (p. 201). A, at beginning of clause. 8 -hldyan; 9 -hri; 9, 19, 252 -ra; 252 -g-ri, -bañ (pp. 142, 274, 332). B, otherwise. 311 hmañ°, hri°; 312 g-rihi°, hri°, g-ri° (pp. 201, 254, 337).

**stan** = *Tib.* stan, steñ, *top*, *high*, *up*. See also **hstan**. 83 hkam° (?); 88 hldan°; 303, 347 -hro (pp. 270, 321).

**stah** I = sta I, *q.v.* 99 slo° (p. 336). II = sta II, *q.v.* 20 -hldyan; 312 hri° (p. 201).

**sti** = *Tib.* sti, bsti, thi, hthi, *rest*. 299 g-ri°; 300 hrihi° (pp. 265-6, 355). See also **hti** II.

**stiñ** = *Tib.* stiñ, bstiñ, bstiñs, hthiñ, *rebuke* (p. 367). 330, 331 rgyo-hto°; 335, 336 rgyo-hto° (p. 178).

**ste** I = te, hte, *q.v.*, with -s as in sta and sto. See also **hste** (pp. 136, 188-90). 34 htsah°; 72, 73, 75 (2) hwa°; 182 gbohu° (pp. 273, 275, 337, 338).



- II = Tib. *sten*, *hsten*, *range closely together*. See also **steñi**, **steñe** (pp. 353-4). 178 -*hkehu*-prom; 180 -*hkoñu*-bprom; 194 -*gdzu* (pp. 241-2, 251-2).
- steñi** = *ste* II *q.v.* 54 -*htam* (p. 353).
- steñe** = *ste* II *q.v.* 356 -*hdzu* (p. 353).
- stel** = Tib. *ster*, *grant*, &c. 181 *grtehe*-ta° (pp. 156, 354).
- sto** I = *to*, *hto* I, a *Suffix q.v.*, with *s-* as in *sta* and *ste* (pp. 185-6). 28 *hldu*°; 29 *hyim*°; 58 *hrgehi*°; 84, 85 *hño*°; 233 *htsañ*°; 235 *hñah*°; 242 *hrgyañ*°; 292 *hgyañ*° (pp. 219-20, 233, 259, 321, 341).
- II = Tib. *sto*, *rope*. 336 -*the*-*the* (pp. 185, 335).
- stoñ** I = Tib. *stoñ*, *empty*. 51 -*hkhog* (p. 328).
- II = Tib. *stoñ*, 1000 (pp. 203, 233-4). 247 *gse*°.
- **hpoñ** = Tib. *stoñ-dpon*, *commander of a Thousand-district*? 321 -*hprom* (pp. 233-4, 362).
- stom** = Tib. *ston*, *autumn (harvest)*. See also **hstom**. 255 -*hdag*; 281 -*hkañ* (pp. 203, 362).
- stor** = Tib. *stor*, *stray*, *flee*, *be lost*; cf. *hthor*, *gtor*, *btor*, *scatter*; *dor*, *hdor*, *cast away*. See also **dor**, **hdor**, **hstor** (pp. 171, 253). Applied to *hkyañ* 141, 143; *hkhoh*-*hño* 189; *hño* 79, 119, 127, 128, 143, 196, 258; *rje* 138; *hñi* ('2') 140; *hdehi* (?) 339; *ldyo* 140; *hldañ*-*hphyar* 125; *hpo*-*hldañ* 358 (*sto-re* ?); *hpos* 141; *me* (123); *hmoñ*-*hjoñ* (*hdzoñ*) 78, 118, 128, 139, 140; *hdañ* 142; *se* 143; *hao*-*hñah* 122, 232.
- **-ta** (*tha*) (a *Suffix*, pp. 182-3). 145, 149, 150, 152, 337 *htañ*.
- **-to** (*hto*, a *Suffix*, pp. 184-5). 79, 167, 138, 140 *htoñ*.
- **-rño**, *able to flee* (pp. 171, 297). 141 *hkyañ*°.
- **-thoñ**, *let or cause to flee*. 197.
- **-hdehi**-*hpyid*. 339 (p. 253).

- stor**-*hdor*, *let be lost* (p. 253). 118, 127, 142, 160, 161, 162, 163.
- **-hdzo**-*hdzeñi*. 338.
- **-hgu** (*digu*), *all things lost*. 126-7 (pp. 233, 288-90).
- **-hprom**, *make flight*. 128 *hño*° (pp. 171, 294).
- gstor** = *stor*, *hstor*, *q.v.* 143 *hkyañ*° (p. 297).
- **-ta** = *stor*-*ta*, *q.v.* 152 (p. 228).
- hstañ** = *stañ*, *top*, *high*, *up*, *q.v.* 95 *hldañ*° (p. 320).
- hste** = *ste* I *q.v.* 274 *hldym*° (p. 331).
- hstom** = *stom*, *autumn (harvest)*. 14 -*hkom*.
- hstor** = *stor*, *be lost*, &c., *q.v.* Applied to *hgru*-*ma* 79, *hdehi* (?) 340, *hmoñ*-*hdzoñ* 64, *so*-*hna* (*hñah*) 117, 128.
- **-htañ** = *stor*-*ta*, *q.v.* 337 (p. 335).
- **-hdehi**-*hpyid* 340 (p. 253).
- **-ma**-*swañ* (*hñah*) 337, 340 (p. 344).
- **-hdzo**-*hdzeñi* = *stor*°, *q.v.* 338.

## Th

- tha** I = *ta*, *hta*, a *Suffix*, *q.v.* 149 *stor*°.
- II = Hsi-hsia *tha*, *Buddha*, Tib. *lha*, *god*. 241 -*hnu* (p. 237).
- thañ** = *hthañ*, *htañ* III, *plateau*, &c. (pp. 246-7). See also **hthañ**. 220 -*rdzo* (pp. 173, 258).
- thar** I = *htar*, *be let loose*, *q.v.* See also **hthar** I. 190 *hdro*°; 357 -*mye* (pp. 241, 285).
- II = *htar* II, Tib. *mtar*, *at end*, *q.v.* See also **hthar** II. 69 -*pyañ* (p. 248).
- thiñ** (*not in text*) = Tib. *mtiñ*, *blue* (p. 131).
- the** I = Tib. *the*, *lies*, *commons*; *the*, *thes*, *belong to*. See also **hthe**, **theñe**. 103 -*kyen*; 139 *hldañ*° (pp. 228, 322).
- II = Tib. *then*, *hthen*, *draw*, *pull*, *control*. See also **then**. 336 *sto*° (p. 335).

**then**, *control* = the II, *q.v.* 207  
the<sup>o</sup> (p. 315).

**thehe** = the I, *lieses*, *q.v.* 160  
snañ-ne<sup>o</sup> (p. 222).

**tho** I = Tib. tho, *boundary*. See  
also **hto** II. 109 -rgyam  
(pp. 280, 340).

II = Tib. mtho, *high*. See also  
**hto** II, **htho**, **hjo** IV. 132  
hldag-nag<sup>o</sup>.

**thoñ** = gtañ, gtoñ, htoñ, *let go*, &c.,  
*q.v.* 197 stor<sup>o</sup>.

**thom-thom**, *cf.* Tib. hthom,  
hthoms, *be confused, dizzy*,  
*gripe*? 183 bsog<sup>o</sup>.

**thor** I = htor II, *great*, *q.v.* 220  
-hbroñ.

II = Tib. thor, *anything gathered*  
*to a single point*; thor-cog  
(gtsug, tshugs), gtsug-tor  
(thor), spyi-tor (gtor), *top-*  
*knot, turban*; hthor-mtho, *lofty*  
*peak*. See also **htor** III, **hthor**  
(pp. 149, 302-4). 71 hmo-ma<sup>o</sup>.

III = II? 235 rñe-lad<sup>o</sup>; 242 hehah-  
yañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 303).

**thol** (not in text) (p. 133).

**thwañ** = htañ II, Tib. thañ, *mea-*  
*sure, power*, *q.v.*; dbañ-thañ,  
*might, fate*. See also **hthwañ**  
(pp. 346-7). 97 bañ<sup>o</sup>; 98 -hkhor  
(pp. 342, 345).

**thrah**. 53 hphoñ-ge<sup>o</sup>.

**hthañ** I = thañ and htañ III,  
*plateau*, &c., *q.v.* 130 -rdzo;  
131 -hgam; 132 -rdzo; 133  
-hrgam; 221 -hgam (pp. 243,  
246-7, 259).

II = htañ II and thwañ, *measure*  
*power*, *q.v.* 132 hldi<sup>o</sup>; 133 (2)  
hldi<sup>o</sup>; 222 hyah-htah<sup>o</sup>; 286 (2)  
hyah<sup>o</sup>; 287 g-yah<sup>o</sup>; 288 hyah<sup>o</sup>;  
288 hdzah<sup>o</sup>; 289 hgar-hpu<sup>o</sup>;  
290 hso-hnah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 171, 216,  
228, 229, 293, 296, 323, 342).

— (I) -phu-hkam. 130 hthañ<sup>o</sup>.

— (I) -le-tsa (htsa, tshah). 131,  
219, 220 (p. 272).

III = gtañ, gtoñ, htañ I. 57  
hrkas<sup>o</sup> (p. 248).

**htham** = htam I, *q.v.* 227 -rah  
*place of union, or assemblage*.

**hthar** I = thar I, *be let loose*, *q.v.*  
195 -mye (p. 241).

II = thar II, *at end*, *q.v.* 348  
-phyañ (pp. 248, 343).

**hthu** = Tib. hdu, sdu, hthu, &c.,  
*gather, assemble*, &c. See also  
**htuhu**, **hldun** (pp. 321-2). 140  
ldyo-stor<sup>o</sup> (pp. 254, 256, 326).

**hthuñ** = Tib. thuñ, *small*. 145 hgo<sup>o</sup>  
(pp. 261, 300).

**htul** = htul, *conquer, tame*, &c.,  
*q.v.* 67 ru-glañ-ge<sup>o</sup>; 378 rkom<sup>o</sup>  
(p. 318).

**hthus**, *Aorist form of hthu*, *q.v.*  
156 hjim-ta<sup>o</sup> (pp. 280, 322).

**hthe** = the I, thehe, *lieses*, &c.,  
*q.v.* 335 kruñu<sup>o</sup>; 383 hyañ<sup>o</sup>  
(p. 322).

**htho** = tho II, *high*, *q.v.* 374 hpañ-  
hwe<sup>o</sup> (p. 280).

**hthog** = Tib. thogs, hdogs, btags,  
&c., *fasten, impede*; dog, nar-  
*row, danger*, &c. (p. 301). See  
also **hthogs**. 149 stor-ta<sup>o</sup>, stor-  
tha<sup>o</sup> (pp. 299-301, 313).

**hthogni** = hthog + ni, *q.v.* 149.

**hthogs**, *Aorist form of hthog*, *q.v.*  
145 stor-ta<sup>o</sup>; 182 hlab-ta<sup>o</sup>  
(pp. 156, 299-301).

**hthoñ** = Tib. mthoñ, *see*. 92 pyi-  
-hse; 135 gsehe-hldi<sup>o</sup> (p. 321).

**hthon** I, *error for htoni* (152) *or*  
*hthog-ni* (149)? *or* = hthon  
II? 152 gstor-ta<sup>o</sup> (p. 228).

II = Tib. hthon, *come forth*, &c.,  
hdon, *send forth*, &c.? 152  
gstor-ta<sup>o</sup> (?); 379 speñi-ge<sup>o</sup>  
(p. 228).

**hthor** = thor II, htor III, tor II,  
*gather to a point*, &c., *q.v.* 62  
hrihi<sup>o</sup>; 63 mo-ma<sup>o</sup>; 144 mo-ma<sup>o</sup>  
(pp. 302-3).

**hthwañ** = thwañ and htañ II, *q.v.*  
280 hkhah-rgye-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 342).

**hthye** = htye, *q.v.* 20 -hldyañ.

## D

**dam** = Tib. dam, *bound, tight, bond*,  
&c.; gdams, *advice*, &c.; hdam,  
*choose*; hdom, *exhort, select*;  
sdom, sdoms, bsdams, bsdoms,

- dec., bind, fasten, obligation, vow, etc. See also hdam, hdom II, rdom, ldom, hldom I.* 46 -rma (p. 286).
- dim** = Tib. *hthim, thim, gtim, stim, be lost, dissolve, evaporate, be absorbed in. See also gdim, ddyim, hldim, hldyim.* 95 -tshis (pp. 320-1, 359).
- do I** a Suffix (pp. 186-7). *See also hdo, ldo, hldo.* 86 sñāñ°.
- II, cf. Tib. *ldo, side; ldo-ldo, for a short time (occasionally ?).*
- **-ldo.** 76, 353 (p. 322).
- doho**, a Suffix = do I, q.v. 80 hrdzum° (pp. 271, 293).
- doñ** I = Tib. *hdoñ, depart, begone. See also hdoñ I, ldoñ, hldoñ.* 89 hñor°; 392 hgyañ° (p. 321); 367 hyañ-hyo°.
- II, extrametrical and accordingly different from I; very possibly therefore a Conjunction = Tib. *doñ, a variant of dañ, practically = whereupon* 176 hñres; 351 gtsob°.
- dor** = Tib. *hñdor, drive or throw away, always in the compound verb; stor-dor (hñdor), q.v.* 160 -yon. *See also hñdor* (p. 253).
- dwañ** = Tib. *dwañs, lustre, bright, clean, force of language.* 280 gñah-ma°; 364-5 hñah° (2) (p. 342). *See also rwañ.*
- dyañ**, perhaps not different from hldyañ, q.v. 183 hñhi-hdo° (pp. 172, 332). *See also hdyañ.*
- drag** = Tib. *drag, vehement, fierce, powerful, eminent. See also hdrag* (p. 300). 163 sñi-hbo° (p. 216).
- dro** = Tib. *hñron, travel, go. See hñro I* (p. 294).
- **-ño**, travelling trader. 174 tor°.
- See also hñro-hño.*
- droho** = dro, q.v. 105 hñso° (p. 261).
- gdag** I = Tib. *bdag, oven, acquire, bdag, master, self, perhaps kept distinct from gdogs, btags, etc., fasten, affix, and from gdags, bright, daylight. See also hñdag.* 142 -hñgom, -hñphar; 200, 204, 206 hñce-hñmu° (pp. 221-2).
- II = Tib. *gdags, sunlit ?* 345 -yañ-la-po (pp. 269-70).
- gdañ** = Tib. *gdah, be actual or possible. See also hñdah* II. 191 -hñah; 396 -kum (?), -hñam. ? 43 gdañ-hñih (pp. 244, 315).
- gdim** = dim, *vanish, etc., q.v.* 88 -pyi-hñe; 89 -phyi-hñe; 94 -chis or -tshis; 100 -hñzam-hñzim (pp. 320-1, 359).
- gdes**, Aorist form of *grtehe, q.v.* 269 hñdom (?)° (pp. 319, 343).
- gdod** = Tib. *dod, be prominent, emerge.* 186 g-ri° (p. 331).
- ddyim** (< bdyim ?) = dim, *gdim, q.v.* 95 -phyi-hñe.
- hñdag** = gdag I, *possess, acquire, q.v.* 254 hñrah° (?); 255 stom°; 259 hyog°; 260 hñrah°; 261 hñah°, hñgoh°; 390 khyañ° (pp. 192, 202, 239, 242, 261, 283, 342-3, 357).
- hñdañ** = hñdañ (?) 258 wa° (p. 221).
- hñdad** = Tib. *dad, devoted to* (p. 227). 304 hyah°; 306 hyah-hñdahñ (p. 254).
- hñdab** = Tib. *hñdebs, btah, gdah, put, etc. See also hñdab* II. 369 meñi-ra° (pp. 318, 331).
- hñdam** = dam, *bind, etc., q.v. See also rdam, hñdam.* 204 pyu-phyah°; 326 hñe-hñtah°; 328 hñkhoñ-hñtah°; 329 hñkho-hñdah°; 346, 351 -sleg (pp. 140, 319).
- **-to** (a Suffix, pp. 184-6). 68 (pp. 250, 319).
- hñdah** I = Tib. *mdah, arrow. See also hñdah.* 58, 59 -hñpog (pp. 300-1, 343).
- II = gdah, *be actual or possible, q.v.* 108 hñih°; 329 hñkho° (? see hñkho-hñtah) (p. 221).
- **-ta** (a Suffix, pp. 182-3). 283 hñgah-rah°.
- hñdar** = Tib. *hñdar, shiver, tremble, etc.* (pp. 319-20). *See also hñdar.* 19 -hñti-hñwe-re; 38, 368 hññam° (pp. 319-20).
- hñdi**, this (Tib. *hñdi*). *See also hñdih, hñdi, hñdih* (p. 201). 107, 198.



**hdim** = dim, gdim, &c., *vanish*,  
q.v. 88 -htshis (pp. 320-1).

**hdiḥ** = hdi, *this*, q.v. 43 gdaḥ°.

**hdihi** = hdi, *this*, q.v. 184 -mag-  
hñor; 327 hrgyaḥ°; 391 hñah°.

**hduñ** = Tib. gduñ, *be distressed*, or  
ltuñ, *fall*, 94, 95 (pp. 320-1).

**hdub** = Tib. dub, *be fatigued, sink*.  
67 me°; 70 me°; 182 hraḥ-rte°;  
354 hraḥ-hrte° (pp. 173, 272-3).

**hde I** = Tib. bde, *good fortune*; lde,  
*warm oneself?* See also **hdehi**,  
**hde I**, **hdehi**, **hdehe** (pp.  
278-9). 29 -hyim-sto; 208  
htshar° (pp. 234, 259).

— **-ta** (a Suffix, pp. 182-3). 158  
-rgyen (p. 145).

II = Tib. hded, *follow, drive*,  
*pursue?* 12 hldab-hde-hde,  
*possibly onomatopoeic*; 167 hrañ-  
hraḥ° (p. 318).

**hdehi** = hde I, q.v. 102 mag°; 339  
stor°; 340 hstor° (p. 301).

**hdo**, a Suffix (pp. 184-6) = do, ldo,  
hldo, to, hto, q.v. 65, 67 hyah°;  
86, 87 hram°; 88 hcog°; 180  
glab°; 183, 353 hchi°; 185 htor°  
(pp. 139, 186, 228, 276, 288,  
332, 340).

**hdoñ I** = doñ I, *depart*, q.v. 104  
hmu° (p. 285).

II = Tib. gdoñ, mdoñs, *face?*  
13 -hri (p. 265).

**hdon** = Tib. don, *purpose*. 185  
hsud° (pp. 139, 186).

**hdom I** = Tib. dom, *bear*. See also  
**hldom II**. 162, 171 hldyo°;  
294, 297 hñiḥi° (pp. 246-7, 254,  
327).

II = Tib. dom, hdom, &c., q.v.  
See **dam** and also **ldom**,  
**hldom I** (pp. 318-19). 213  
hbos°; 260 hrañ° (? lect.)  
(pp. 202, 319).

— (I) **-hgu** (a Suffix, pp. 190, 258).  
303, 304, 312 hguḥu (pp. 254,  
327).

**hdoḥo** = hdo. 37 hram°.

**hdor** = dor, in stor-dor (hdor),  
q.v. 118, 127, 142, 161, 162,  
163 stor°; 209 hldañ-rgye°  
(pp. 213, 245, 253, 289, 361).

**hdwa** = Tib. dwa, *wretched*. 148  
spye-htor° (p. 302).

**hdyañ** = ldyañ, hldyañ, *high, fly*,  
*depart*, q.v. 210 -hto; But see  
also **pyañ** (**phyañ**). 353 hehi-  
hdo° (pp. 200, 261, 276, 332).

**hdra I** = Tib. hdra, *like*; ci-hdra,  
*what-like?* &c. 196 hsu° (pp.  
245-6; but see also **hdrah**).

II = Tib. dra, *net*. See also  
**hdrah**. 356 hplañ° (pp. 241-2).

**hdrag** = drag, *fierce*, &c., q.v. 146  
-htrog (pp. 299-300).

**hdrañ** = Tib. hñren, drañ, droñ,  
&c., *lead, drag*. 147 hphom-te°;  
254 -re (pp. 300-2).

**hdrab** = Tib. hñrad, dbrad, hñrab,  
*snatch, scratch*. 140 -stor; 173  
me° (pp. 252 n., 254, 256,  
326).

— **-hwa-hrañ**, a class of *clawing*  
*creatures*. 162, 172 hñah (pp.  
254, 256).

**hdram** = hñram, *hard, stiff*, q.v.  
102 -hmu (p. 285).

**hdrah** = hdra II, *net*, q.v. 195  
plañ°; 260 -hdag (pp. 241-2).

**hdru** = Tib. dru-bu and °gu, *claw*,  
*skin*, or dro, *net*. 220 -hjar  
(pp. 173, 272, 369).

**hdre** = induce = Tib. hñren, *lead*,  
&c. (p. 262). See also **hdrehe**,  
**hñre**. 87 rgyed°; 326 htrog°  
(pp. 140, 340, 291).

**hdrehe** = hdre, q.v. 338 htrog°.

**hdro I** = dro, *travel, go*, q.v. 105  
hgo°; 106 hñab°, hñāb°; 169  
-hbroñ; 183 -hphor; 188-9  
hñā°, hñāñ° (?); 266 -hko-  
hñag; 352 -hkus; 353 -hphor  
(pp. 157, 260, 276, 285, 332).

— **-hño** = dro-ño, *travelling trader*.  
177, 359, 361.

II = hñro, *heat*, q.v.? See also  
**hdro I**. 188-9 hñā°, hñāñ°?  
(pp. 252, 285).

**hñrom**. 65 hpu° (pp. 157, 187, 219).

**rdañ** = Tib. sdañ, *hate, anger?* Cf.  
hñdañ. 211 rog-hñi° (p. 260).

**rdam** = Tib. sdam, bñdam &c.  
See **dam**. 322 hñne° (p. 319).

**rdehe** = Tib. sde, *class, company*,

- district. See also hrde.* 213  
 hbehi-tya<sup>o</sup> (pp. 253, 270, 353).  
**rders** = Tib. bdar, rdar, *examine closely, or sdar, timid?* 107  
 hwar<sup>o</sup> (p. 350).  
**rdo** = Tib. sdo, *venture. See also hrdoho.* 84 hno-sto-ge<sup>o</sup> (pp. 186, 259).  
**hrdaghi** = hrdag, Tib. rdeg, brdeg, *smite, +hi.* 214 htsah-hbrad<sup>o</sup> (p. 253).  
**hrdañ** = rdañ, *hate, anger, q.v.* 155  
 rke-hldañ<sup>o</sup>; 332 (p. 305).  
**hrde** = rdehe, *class, species, &c., q.v.*  
 — **-hldañ** (a Suffix, p. 183). 301  
 g-ri<sup>o</sup> (p. 270).  
**hrdoho** = rdo, *venture, q.v.* 165  
 hrkañ-myi<sup>o</sup> (p. 296).  
**hrdyañ**. 202 heha-hru<sup>o</sup>.  
**hrdyam** = Tib. gzom? (p. 350).  
 137 hbri-re<sup>o</sup> (pp. 218, 338).  
**lda**, a Suffix = ldañ, hlda, hldañ,  
*q.v.* 84 rkah<sup>o</sup> (p. 183, cf. hkañ-  
 -hldañ, p. 218).  
**ldañ**, *rise, stick, prop, support* =  
 Tib. lañ/ldañ. *See also hldañ*  
 (pp. 286-9). 80, 138 -rdze; 343  
 -hdehi (pp. 227, 228, 256, 287).  
 — **-pyer**, *supporting. See also*  
**hldañ-phyer**. 65 (pp. 186,  
 228, 287).  
**ldañ** = lda, hlda I, II, hldañ, *q.v.*  
 43 hrañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 313, 334).  
**ldir** = hldir I, *q.v.* 328 hnañ-hpag<sup>o</sup>  
 (pp. 196, 317).  
**lde** (not in text) (pp. 136, 147-8,  
 188-92). *See hilde, hldhehi,*  
**hldhehe**.  
**ldhehi** (not in text) (pp. 133, 136,  
 188-92). *See hldhehi, &c.*  
**ldehu** (not in text) (pp. 134, 368).  
*See lde, &c.*  
**ldo** = hldo, hldoh, hldoñ, hldoñ,  
*q.v.* 76 do<sup>o</sup>; 139 dgu<sup>o</sup>; 353 do<sup>o</sup>  
 (pp. 186, 322). *See also dgu* (I)  
**-hldo**.  
**ldoñ** = doñ I, hdoñ I, hldoñ, *depart,*  
*&c., q.v.* 161 kyu<sup>o</sup> (p. 253).  
*See also kyu<sup>o</sup>, hkyu<sup>o</sup>.*  
**ldom** = dam, hdom II, hldom I,  
*bind, &c., q.v.* 94, 95 gdin-  
 chis<sup>o</sup>, dim-tshis<sup>o</sup> (pp. 320-1).

- ldyañ** = hldyañ, *q.v.* (pp. 331-3).  
 78 hjo<sup>o</sup>; 178 -hkañ; 180 -glab  
 (pp. 179, 244).  
**ldyo** = hldyo, *q.v. See also ldyoñ.*  
 140 -stor; 383 -ro (pp. 256,  
 326-8, 331).  
**ldyoñ** (*reading?*) = ldyoñ + o.  
 ? = dyañ, hdyañ, or hldyoñ?  
 318 hsi-hdzañ<sup>o</sup>.  
**ldyoñ** = ldyo, hldyo, hldyoñ,  
*q.v.* 256 -ma-hbyoñ (p. 327).  
**gldag** = hldag, *back, load, q.v.* 52  
 -hce-rgyañ; 136 -nag (pp. 259-  
 60, 317).  
**hlda I**, a Suffix (p. 183). *See also*  
**lda, ldañ, hldañ.** *Possibly*  
*derived from hlda II.* 203 šor<sup>o</sup>;  
 240 gse<sup>o</sup>.  
 II = Tib. da, *there* (p. 201). 5  
 hrañ<sup>o</sup>; 8 hrañ<sup>o</sup>; 195 -hko  
 (pp. 201, 241).  
**hldag** = Tib. ltag, *back of neck;*  
*ltañ, load* (pp. 259-60, 317). 45  
 -hbañ-hldoñ; 52 -khri; 389  
 -hsag (p. 317).  
 — **-nag** (gnag), *black-back* = Yak.  
 112, 129 gnag<sup>o</sup> and nag<sup>o</sup>; 130,  
 132, 134, 135 (pp. 259-60, 291).  
*See also gldag.*  
**hldañ**, *rise, stick, prop, support* =  
 Tib. lañ, ldañ, *rise; gdañ, rdañ,*  
*sdañ, peg, rack, rail* (pp. 286-9).  
*See also ldañ.*  
 A. *rise (general), as Verb with*  
 hkañ- 163, rgyed-ma 90, 102,  
 105, 108, 231, rñe- 197, hrñe-  
 119, 141, 144, hmañ- 112, mor-  
 87, htsog- 88 (htso), 95, hsañ-  
 yer- 141. *In Compound Verb*  
*or nominal phrase hldañ-hphyar*  
 126, 254 (phyer), -hgyeñ 209,  
 -krañ (hkrañ) 91, 111, 112, 124  
 (3), 125 (2), 126 (2), 127 (2).  
*As attribute with -me* 123,  
 -hrgya 60 (?), -rmañ 27 (?),  
 -hkañ 198 (?), -slañ 125, -the  
 139. *See also hgru-hldañ-*  
**hmañ** and **hwa(hwañ)**  
**-hldañ.**  
 B. *As Noun* = *stick, post, &c.*  
 -rmañ 27 (?), -hrgyu 60 (?),  
 -hkañ 198 (?), -phyi-ske 79,

- 143 (pyi), -myi-seg 159 (pp. 145-6, 259, 286, 341, 345).
- hldañ-ra.** 270 *hwañ*<sup>o</sup>; 278 *hwa*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 178, 339).
- hldañh** written for *hldañ* or *hldañ*.
- hldan** = *Tib.* lan, lon, ldon, glan, glon, *retaliat*, *repay*, *return* (*Trans. and Intrans.*) (pp. 317-18). See also **hldon**. 187, 188, 189 *hldam-re*<sup>o</sup>; 193 *-re-mor-re*<sup>o</sup>; 264 (2) *hldam-re*<sup>o</sup>; 273 *hjam-re*<sup>o</sup>; 274 (2) *hldam-re*<sup>o</sup>; 328 *hpyah*<sup>o</sup>; 377 *hpañ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 297, 305, 317, 331).
- hldab I** = *Tib.* *hlab*, *leaf*, *wing*, &c. 12 *-hde-hde* (p. 318).
- II = *Tib.* *hdebs*, *btav*, *cast*, *put*, *found*, cf. *rdebs*, *sdebs*. See also **hldab**. 197 *rmañ*<sup>o</sup> (p. 318).
- hldam**, *tame*, &c. = *dam*, *hdam*, *hdom*, *ldom*, *q.v.* 187 (2), 188 *-re* (pp. 305, 317-18, 331).
- hldah I**, a *Suffix* (p. 183) = *lda*, *ldah*, *hlda*, *q.v.* Cf. *Tib.* *ldan*; or derived from II? Appended to *hko-* 202; *rke-* 155; *hkhah-* 137; *rñe-* 310; *hrñe-* 303; *hrde-* 301; *hrmah-* 32; *hrmah-ma-* 165; *hpo-* 358; *rpehi-* 286; *hbañ-* 170; *hbroñ-* 182; *hdom-rbo-* 112; *hman-* 33; *hstsa-re-* 249; *hstsa-* 298; *hldah-* 382, 383; *g-yog-* 200; *hsah-* 164.
- II = *hlda* II, *Tib.* *da*, *there* (p. 201). 6 *hrañ*<sup>o</sup>; 316 *-hrgam* (?); 182 *hbroñ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 313, 319, 323).
- III? = *Tib.* *mdah*, *arrow* = *hldah* I, *q.v.* 278, 285 *-htag-hto*.
- hldar** = *hlar*, *shiver*, *tremble*, *q.v.* 353 *-hldam-re*; 30, 31, 32 *hbrañ*<sup>o</sup>, or is *hldar* here *Locative* of *hlda* I, *hldah* I? (pp. 319-20).
- hldas** = *Tib.* *hldah*, *hldas*, *go beyond*, *pass*. 83 *-htso* (p. 320).
- hldi** I = *Tib.* *hdi*, *this*. See also **hdi**, **hdiñi**. 115 *hpo*<sup>o</sup>; 132 *hbri*<sup>o</sup>, *hre*<sup>o</sup>; 133 *hyah*<sup>o</sup>, *rgyeb*<sup>o</sup>; 135 *gsehe*<sup>o</sup>; 137 *ro*<sup>o</sup>; 175 *mu*<sup>o</sup>; 225, 236, 244, 246 *hrah*<sup>o</sup>; 207 *the-then*<sup>o</sup>; 87, 216, 237, 243, 246, 248 *-rgyed-hrar*; 104 *-hgañ*; 108 *-hdañ*.

- II = *Tib.* *ldin*, *float*, *soar*. See also **hldin**, **hldis**. 63, 71, 144 *-ma-hrtah* (p. 320).
- III = *Tib.* *gzi*, *land*, *estate*? 10 *-hrkah* (p. 329).
- hldin** = *hldi* II. 160 *hpu-myi*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 145-6, 217, 320).
- hldim** = *dim*, *gdim*, *ddyim*, *q.v.* 199 *chim*<sup>o</sup>; 301 *-hpnu*; 310 *-hmañ-hto* (pp. 320-1).
- hldiñi** = *hldi* III, *land*, *q.v.* 195 *-su-hldon* (pp. 201, 245, 329-30).
- hldir** I. *Locative* of *hldi*, *this*, *q.v.* 117 *-htsag*; 229 *sñañ-ñe*<sup>o</sup> (?); 248 *htam*<sup>o</sup>; 326 *hñah-hpag*<sup>o</sup>; 328 *sñañ-ñene*<sup>o</sup> (?); 337 *hrtah*<sup>o</sup> (?); 341 *rñe-hprom*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 217, 222).
- II = *hldi-re*, *from* *hldi* II, *q.v.* 174 *swa*<sup>o</sup>; 229, 328, 337, 341? See under I (p. 320).
- hldis**, *Aorist* of *hldi*, *q.v.* 58 *me-na*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 320, 358).
- hldu** = *Tib.* *hdu*, *hdus*, *sdu*, *sdus*, *hthu*, *hthus*, &c., *collect*, &c. (pp. 321-2). 14 *htañ*<sup>o</sup>; 19 *-hro*; 28 *-sto*; 70 *geog-hlde*<sup>o</sup>; 238 *hsehe*<sup>o</sup> (p. 247).
- hldug** = *Tib.* *hdug*, *sit*, *remain*? or *sdug*, *dear*, *comely*? or *stug*, *wretched*, *afflicted*? 103 *the-kyen*<sup>o</sup> (p. 322).
- hldun** = *Tib.* *hdun*, *assemble*. 284 *hrim-hdzom-htah*<sup>o</sup>; 354 *hso* *-hti-ge-htah*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 282, 321).
- hlduhu** = *Tib.* *gdu*, *covet*. 44 *gñi*<sup>o</sup>; 51 *-ce-rgyañ*; or is *this* *hlduhu* = *hldu*, *amass*? (pp. 322, 328).
- hlde** I = *Tib.* *hde*, *bde*, *lde*, *ldehu*, *happiness*, *high fortune*, &c.; perhaps also *lde*, *warm oneself*. See also **hlde** I, **hldehi**, **hldehe**, **hrlehi** (pp. 278-9). 77 *-ge*; 370, 371 *-ge-htah* (p. 309).
- II = *Tib.* *lde*, *warm oneself*? 70 *geog*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 247, 249, 321).
- III? = I, *be good* or *necessary*. 57 *hrkas-hthañ*<sup>o</sup> (p. 248).
- hldehi** = *hlde* I, *q.v.* 318, 319, 320, 321 *-hswah*, *-swah*, *-hsawa* (p. 318).



**hldehe** = hlde I, hldehi 370, 372  
-ge-htaḥ (pp. 278, 318).

**hldo** I, a Suffix = do I, hdo, ldo  
(pp. 186-7, 322-3). See also  
**hldoh**. 74, 77, 78, 114, 191,  
309 dgu°; 155 hgah°; 177 hpo°;  
342 klu°; 351 slod° (pp. 201, 222,  
232, 256, 274, 282-3, 316, 327).

II, perhaps error for do-ldo (l. 76).  
77 -hdzo[-r[e].

**hldog** = Tib. log/ldog, turn away,  
rebel, return (p. 323). 18  
hyogs°; 43, 44 smyi°; 142 -ator  
(p. 323); 286 -hyah; 317 -hpo;  
317 -g-yah° (pp. 224, 295, 323,  
334).

**hldon** = don I, hdon I, ldon, de-  
part, &c., q.v. 45 hbaḥ°; 82  
hmog-ro°; 134 sko°; 175 nu-  
glaḥ°; 195 hldiḥi-su°; 214  
kyu°; 253 hbaḥ°; 256 kro°;  
287, 291-4 hkyah°; 299 hse°;  
302, 303, 308, 310 (2), 311  
hgah°; 334 hrog°; 339 hkyu°  
(pp. 245, 270, 297, 298, 329,  
338).

**hldon**, probably Imperative of hldan,  
return, repay, &c., q.v. 370 (2).  
371 hlde-ge-htaḥ°; 370, 372  
hldehe-ge-htaḥ° (pp. 278, 318).

**hldom** I = dam, hdom II, ldom,  
bind, &c., q.v. 9 hrah-hyos°;  
41, 143, 350 na°; 66 hkaḥ°; 259  
rgo°; 372 hkrug-kyah° (pp. 145,  
297, 299, 318-19).

II = hdom I, bear? 299 g-riḥi°.

**hldoh**, a Suffix = do I, hdo, ldo,  
hldo I, q.v. 154 blah° (p. 222).

**hldohu** = Tib. lo, circle or troop?  
(pp. 322-3). See also **hlo**,  
**hloho**, **hrlho**. 277 -hjam-  
rño; 300 hrim°; 319 hrim-ro°  
(pp. 265, 281).

**hldoho**? (p. 294). 110 hso-hnah°.

**hldor**, probably for hldo I (Suffix) +  
re (metre). 357 hldyah° (p. 329).

**hldya**, water, flow = Tib. bžah,  
moist. See also **hldyah**. 51  
-hkaḥ-hte (pp. 328-9).

**hldyañ** = Tib. bžeñ, bžeñs, bžañ,  
raise, erect, rise up, opposed to

zoñ, lower, deepened; gžoñs,  
valley, and perhaps connected  
with ldiñ, fly, soar. In the Nam  
language meanings may pro-  
visionally be classified as follows:  
(pp. 331-3). See also **hdyah**,  
**ldyañ**.

A. rise fly, depart. 9, 13, 14, 19  
hri°; 10 hldi-hrkah°; 12 hti°;  
13 hrag°; 14 htañ-hldu°; 38  
-hdzañ; 43 pra-hrehe°; 48, 368  
gse-hcañ°, gsehe-cañ°; 150, 161,  
218, 243 hpu°, but see also under  
C; 209 hphyu°; 229, 237 rño-  
-hkyam°; 365 rgyer°; 282  
na° (?).

B. high or upper (cf. Tib. stod).  
8 -htye (?); 122, 369, 372, 387  
-hyu, -hyuhu; 178, 179, 366,  
391 -hyañ-hyo; 186 -g-ri; 386  
-hro.

C. As Proper Name of a Hldyañ =  
Tib. Hjañ, people of the high (sc.  
Tang-hsiang) country. 271 -ma,  
-pah; 365 -hkaḥ; 369 -hgo-  
hdzin. (Here should be con-  
sidered, as either denoted or  
hinted at, the occurrences with  
-hyu (hyuhu), -hyañ-hyo and  
-hro, cited under B, and those  
with -hpu under A).

D. doubtful. 316 hyañ°; 144  
-htaḥ.

**hldyah** = hldya, water, flow, q.v.  
356 -hldyah; 357 -hldo -r[e]  
(p. 329).

**hldyi**, conceivably = Tib. bži, four.  
26 hldyeg° (p. 330).

**hldyim** I = dim, gdim, &c., evapor-  
ate, &c., q.v. 89 me°; 274 -hste  
a Suffix, pp. 188-90 (pp. 321,  
331).

II = Tib. zim, sweet? 255 hdzaḥ°  
(pp. 327, 331).

**hldyihi** I, conceivably = Tib. ži, be  
allayed. 48 hphu-hseg°; 375  
seg-sme-hldo-rbyi° (p. 330).

II = hldi I, this. 392 -rgyed-hrah.  
**hldyeg**, conceivably 'quarter' (of  
space) = Tib. gžogs = phyogs.  
26 -hldyi (p. 330).

**hldyo** = Tib. hjo, bžos, bžo, gžo,

&c., cow, milk, to milk: used apparently in the senses of cattle, milk out (extract) and cattle country (also *hldyo-ro*, equivalent to *Tib. hbrog*) (pp. 256-7, 326-8). See also *ldyo, ldyoŋu, hldyoŋo*. 16, 34, 50, 254 -*htor*, -*tor*; 36 -*hrje*; 162, 171 -*hdom*; 172 *meŋe*<sup>o</sup>; 304 *hmañ*<sup>o</sup>; 384 -*hro* (pp. 256-7, 267, 275, 326-7).

**hldyoñ**, low country = *Tib. zoñ*, *gzoñs*, correlative to *hldyañ*, *q.v.* 387 -*ro* (pp. 331-2).

**hldyoŋo** = *ldyo, hldyo, q.v.* 355 *hñu-hldo*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 256, 327).

## N

**na** I, a Postposition = *Tib. na*, appended to A: Nouns, &c., with the signification 'in'; B: Subordinate clauses stating circumstances; C: Sentences, with signification as in B, but more general and vague ('this being so'), as a Particle of transition or even of termination (cf. *Sanskrit iti*) (pp. 179-81, 194). A 58 (2) *me*<sup>o</sup>; 107, 154 (p. 194). B 50, 51, 52, 54, 86, 98, 103, 124, 147, 169, &c. C 77, 78, 114, 171, 172, 173, 174, 176, 177, 178, 182, 183, 209, 220, 221, 222, 225, 231, 236, 237, 241, 244, 245, 248, 251, 253, 254, 257, 258, 262, 280, 285, 294, 296, 302, 304, 309, 313, 328, 353, 360, 361, 369, 382, and possibly other instances.

II = *Tib. gnas*, place (pp. 237-8). See also *hnañ, gnañ, and ñañ, hñah*. 41, 143, 350 -*hldom*; 53 -*hce*; 56, 96 -*ge*; 86 -*spe*; 100 -*rom*; 107 -*hrom*; 358 -*hgo*, -*hgon* (?); 365 *so*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 238, 297, 299).

III = *Tib. na*, sickness? 156 -*rog*; 254 *hmyi*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 239, 328). See also *hnañ* II.

IV = *Tib. na*, meadow? or merely = *na* II? 33 -*htsañ* (pp. 239, 275).

**nag** I = *Tib. ñag*, speech, voice (p. 360). See also *hnañ* I. 199 *hñañ*<sup>o</sup>; or *nag*, black?; 202 *hñe*<sup>o</sup> (?); 262 *g-rañ*<sup>o</sup> (?); 276, 278 *hñzam*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 283, 313, 314).

II = *Tib. nag*, gnag, black. See also *gnag, hnañ* II. 129, 130, 132, 134, 135, 136 *hñdag*<sup>o</sup>, *gñdag*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 242, 259-60, 342).

III = *Tib. rnags*, cash? See also *hnañ* III. 234 *hñlañ*<sup>o</sup>.

**nañ** I = *Tib. nañ*, within (pp. 229-30). See also *hnañ*. 104, 115, 236 -*re*; 305 -*hyu*; 352 -*pa*; 354 -*hwar* (pp. 217, 252, 285).

II = *Tib. nañ*, to-morrow? 181 -*gsañ* (pp. 156, 229-30).

**nad** = *Tib. nad*, disease. 193, 194 *gso*<sup>o</sup> (p. 238).

**nar**, probably = *Tib. ñar*, strength, grim, strong, rather than *nar*, snar, long. 49 *rñam*<sup>o</sup>; 72 *pa*<sup>o</sup>; 239 *hgrah-nu*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 313, 361). See also *hñar*.

**ni**, a Particle used, A, after a part antithetically emphasized in a sentence; B, at end of a sentence to mark similarly the end or beginning of a topic: in use B always extra-metrical. See pp. 177-8, where the occurrences are cited. See also *hñi*<sup>o</sup>.

**nu** I, strength, ability = *Tib. nus*. See also *hnu* I, *hñus* (p. 237). 239 *hgrah*<sup>o</sup> (p. 313).

II, probably = young, cf. *Tib. nu*, younger, opposite of *phu*. 359 -*glañ*. See also *hnu* II.

**ne**, good = *Gyārūng ka-snē*, &c. See also *hñe* (pp. 221-3). 66, 160 *ñañ*<sup>o</sup>; 113 *gtse*<sup>o</sup>; 141 *hrñe-hldañ*<sup>o</sup>; 152 *g-yah-htsa*<sup>o</sup>; 202 -*heer*; 206 *rñye*<sup>o</sup>; 269 *hwañ*<sup>o</sup>; 301 *rñe*<sup>o</sup>; 317 *hwa*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 221-2, 228, 270, 274, 318, 321, 338, 339, 359).

**neñu** = *nu* II, in sense of 'new', or = *ne*. 41 *hgwā*<sup>o</sup>; 74 *hkuñu*<sup>o</sup>, *weñi*<sup>o</sup>; 257 -*hso-bos*; 258 *hwañ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 250, 302).

**neñe**, perhaps onomatopoeic, 'bleat'. 275 *twañ-hñzam*<sup>o</sup> (p. 343).

**nohu.** 41 hñud<sup>o</sup>.

**nor** = Tib. *nor, property, &c.* (pp. 361-2). 151 -gso (pp. 224-5, 241). See also **hñor** II.

**gnag** = nag II, *black, q.v.* 129 hldag<sup>o</sup> (p. 263).

**gnah**, *place* = na II and hñah I, *q.v.* (pp. 237-9). 69, 70 la<sup>o</sup>; 179 -goñ; 280 -ma-dwañ; 281 hldyañ-ma<sup>o</sup>; 367 -hgoñ (pp. 193, 247, 342).

**hna** = na II, hñah I, *gnah, q.v.* 68 -hlam (p. 238).

**hnag** I = nag I, *speech, &c., q.v.* 104 -htshab, *speech-deputy* (p. 360).

II = nag II, *black, q.v.* 112 hldag<sup>o</sup>; 162, 171 hdom<sup>o</sup>; 267 hko<sup>o</sup> (pp. 253, 260, 263, 291, 327).

III = nag III, *cash, q.v.* 232, 233 hglah<sup>o</sup>.

**hñañ** = nañ, *within, q.v.* 188 hña; 189 (2) -hdro; 225, 244, 305, 308, 311 -re (pp. 231-2, 252, 285, 337).

— **-ra** = hñañ, *q.v.*, + re (p. 229).

**hñad.** 46 re-ma<sup>o</sup>.

**hñan** ? = Tib. *nan, pressure, urgency; gnön, press, suppress, or snön, bsñan, augment?* 281 stom-hkañ-ge<sup>o</sup>; 350 hciñi-htoho-ge<sup>o</sup>; 351 hñeñe-hti-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 186).

**hñam** I = Tib. *gnam, nam, sky.* 5, 6, 8, 37 hñañ-hldah (hlda<sup>o</sup>) (p. 246).

II = Tib. *ñams, damaged, weakened, destroyed.* 83 hñam-hte-hñah; 126 hldañ-krañ<sup>o</sup>; 259 hpah-lrgam<sup>o</sup> (pp. 262, 288-9, 361).

III = Tib. *ñams, thought, soul, spirit, courage.* 145 -hdam<sup>o</sup> (pp. 261, 299-300, 361).

**hñah** I = na II, *gnah, hna, place, q.v., or confused with ñah, home, q.v.* 33 -hñañ (?); 40 -me; 99 -htsog; 113 -hpoñ; 191 gldah<sup>o</sup>; 391 -hdiñi, hgyah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 233, 238-9, 244, 291-3, 284, 315, 346). See also **so(hso)-hñah** (hña, na).

II = na III, *sickness, q.v.* 261 -hdag; 120 htsog-hram<sup>o</sup> (pp. 239, 262, 283, 291-2).

III *spring (season)* = Mo-so ñi ? 159 -hchos (pp. 145-6).

**hñar** = nar, *strength, grim, &c., q.v. or possibly* = Tib. *gñer, provide, execute (?)* (p. 361). 112 hldañ-hkrañ<sup>o</sup>; 224 g-wah-hñsañ<sup>o</sup>; 233 glah-hlad<sup>o</sup>; 243 gse-hlad<sup>o</sup> (pp. 230, 343, 361).

**hñi** = ni ? or ne ? 80 smyi<sup>o</sup> (p. 227).

**hñu** I = nu I *strength, ability, &c. q.v.* 72 gñi-brom<sup>o</sup>; 241-2 smyi<sup>o</sup>, tha<sup>o</sup> (pp. 237, 342).

II = nu II, *q.v.* 174 (2), 175-6, 179, 359-60, 366 -glañ.

**hñus**, *Aorist of hñu* = Tib. *nu suckle (or drip?)*. 16, 34 hldyo-hñor-ge<sup>o</sup>; 40 hldyoge<sup>o</sup> (pp. 275, 327, 328, n. 1).

**hñe** = ne, *good, q.v.* 86 -rñeñi; 146 rñe<sup>o</sup>; 155 rñe<sup>o</sup>; 170 hñañ-hldah<sup>o</sup>; 382 hñza-hldah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 221-2, 275, 288, 316).

**hñen** = Tib. *ñen, dangerous.* 210 hwañ-ta<sup>o</sup> (p. 361).

**hñer** = Tib. *gñer, procure, seek for?* 7, 20 gñog<sup>o</sup> (p. 361).

**hño** = Tib. *ño in g-yul-ño, battle front (ño) ?* 58 (2) mag<sup>o</sup> (pp. 194, 300-1). See also **hñor** II.

**hñoñ**, *possibly* = Tib. *noñ, grieve, or gñoñ, be ashamed.* 134 hñhog<sup>o</sup>.

**hñom** = Tib. *nom, enjoyments, possessions, &c.; snom, grasp* (p. 277). 151 ñid-rgyañ<sup>o</sup>; 155 hñam<sup>o</sup>; 165 -hñah; 209 hñom-ta (p. 335).

**hñor** I = Tib. *nor, err, foolish.* 163 hñor[-rje]; 314, 315 -hldañ; 317 -hldog; 366 g-ye<sup>o</sup> (pp. 224-5, 228, 262, 323, 332, 338-9).

II, *for hño-re in mag-hñor*; 48-9, 145, 184 (pp. 194, 299-301).

**hñrab** = Tib. *mñab, mñabs, food; rñab, be hungry; brñab, covet.* 32 -hldah, a *Suffix*, p. 183 ? 165 -ma-hldah (p. 296).

**hñras** = Tib. *brñas, despised?* 214 hrweñi-gtsu-ge<sup>o</sup>. (p. 345).



## P

- pa** = Tib. *dpañ*, *brave, hero, &c.*  
*See also hpañ* I. 72 -nar; 109 -la-la; 352 nañ° (pp. 239, 280).
- pañ** = pa? 271 hldyañ°.
- pañi** = pa, or possibly *hpha*, *father*, + *hi*. 262 gsas° (pp. 239, 283).
- pu-glo (hlo)**, *bellows*. *See also hphuñ-hklo*. 116 hrañ°; 135 rañ° ohlo (pp. 284-5).
- puñ** = Tib. *phuñ*, *heap*; *dpuñ*, *host*, &c. 204 -te, a *Suffix*, pp. 188-90 (pp. 144, 300).
- po** = Tib. *pho*, *male, man* (pp. 217-19). *See also hpo* I, *hpho*. 181 rbyo° (pp. 155-6, 333).
- **-rbom** 317. *See hpo°*, *hbo°* (pp. 224, 323, 338-9).
- por** I, *perhaps* = *hpor*, *phor*, *hphor*, *release, q.v.* 349 -ge. *See critical note.*
- II, *written for po* (Tib. *spo*, *pho*, *top*) + *re*. *See also hphor*, *phor*, *spo* I. 291 htasah°; 345 la° (p. 269).
- pwañ**, *conceivably* = Tib. *dpañ*, *witness* (p. 344). 361 kehu-prom°; 362 gehu-prom°.
- pyañ** = Tib. *dpyañ*, *hphyañ*, *something suspended, e.g. partitions*. *See also phyañ*. 69 thar° (pp. 247-8).
- pyar** = Tib. *phyar*, *hphyar*, *lift, hoist, roof*. *See also pyer*, *phyer*, *hphyar* (p. 287). 341 -ma-swañ (p. 353).
- pyi** = Tib. *phyi*, *beyond, outside, subsequent*; *hphyi*, *be late*. *See also phyi*. 88, 92 -hse; 143 hldañ°; 201 -rjes (pp. 274, 288, 321, 359).
- pyu**. *Cf. hphyu?* 204 -phya-hdam.
- pyer** = *pyar, q.v.* 65 ldañ° (pp. 186, 228, 287, 353).
- pra**. *Cf. hpra*, *hprah*, *hphrah*. 43 -hrehe.
- prom**, *Auxiliary Verb* = *perform, carry out, &c.* (pp. 137, 199-200). *See also bprom*, *hprom*, *hproms*, *phrom*, *hphrom*.

*Appended to Verbs or Action-words*, *hkañ* 151, *kehu* (*hkehu*, *gehu*, *hke*) 176, 177, 178, 360, 361, 362, 366, *hkoñ* 166, 168, 169, 171, 172, 174, 177, 180, 359, 361, *sko* 91, *hkhob* 322, *hñom-ta* 209, *htas* 122, 148, 257, *stor* 79, 128, *hdro* 170, *gsu* 65; *also to rñe, evil*, 341; *hño-hdañ*, 258, *face-rest*; *stoñ-hpoñ*, *an office*, 321.

**plañ** = Tib. *plañ/srañ*, *street, straight, and so 'line'* (pp. 241-2). *See also hplañ*, *phlañ*. 182 -na; 195 -hdrañ (p. 155-6).

**plim-plam**, *let loose?* (p. 192). 120 hsañ° (pp. 291-2).

**bprom**, *Aorist of prom, q.v.* (p. 196). 168, 180 *hkoñ*°.

**hpā** (*read hpañ?*) = *pa, brave, &c.*? 187 hrtas°.

**hpag**, *low, cf. Tib. dpag, measure, depth* (pp. 195-6, 226, 349). *See also rpag*, *hpag*. 326, 328 hñah°; 384 hrseñi° (pp. 226, 239).

**hpañ** I = Tib. *hphen*, *hphañs*, &c., *throw*. 283 -tsa-ge.

II = Tib. *pañ*, *spañ*, *phañ*, *lap*. *See also phañ*, *hphañ*. 290 hñhi° (?) 291, 308 g-ri° (?) 324 g-yah° (pp. 228, 263, 270, 298, 340).

III = Tib. *phañs*, *dpañs*, *spañs*, *height?* 290, 291, 308 (?). *See under II.*

IV, *conceivably* = Tib. *dpañ*, *witness*. *See also pwañ*. 101 hrañ-war°.

**hpañ** I = *pa, brave, hero, q.v.* *See also pañi*. 36 -hroñ-hkes; 185 ma° (?) 205 -rmag; 259 -hrgam; 305, 306 hbrad-re°; 374 -hwe; 377 -hldan-hro; 388 hrtah° (pp. 231, 239, 254, 262, 269, 280, 300).

II. *See meñi°*, *hmeñi°*. 272 hmeñi°.

**hpañi**, *hpañhi*. *See hpeñi*. 211 mye°; 384 ldyo-roñ° (pp. 282, 327, 331).

**hpar** = *hphar, q.v.* 289 hgam° (p. 293).

**hpu** I = *man, male*. See also

**hpur**, **hphu** I, **hbu** II (pp. 216-17, 308). 29 *htor*<sup>o</sup> *ohgru*; 64 *tor*<sup>o</sup>; 65 *hño*[-*jr*[-*e*]-*htsañ*<sup>o</sup>; 150 *hdyañ*<sup>o</sup>(?); 157 *-hbroñ*; 161, 218, 343 *hdyañ*<sup>o</sup>; 140 *-hpos*; 266 *-hbos*; 289, 322 *hgar*<sup>o</sup>; 381 *-hloho* (? see **pu-glo**) (pp. 138, 157, 187, 216-17, 219, 260, 297, 305, 308, 359).

II = *bird*. 160 *-myi-hldin* (pp. 145-6, 172, 217).

III, for **hbu** = *Tib. bu, son, child*. 183 *-ge*; 184 *ma*<sup>o</sup> (p. 301).

IV. 83 *htso*<sup>o</sup> *ohkam*.

**hpud** = *Tib. phud, hphud, hbud, blow out, drive out?* *phud, an instant*. 28 *-hto*. See critical note.

**hpun**? cf. *Tib. sbun-gter, hollow, vain?* 210 *hmo-ta*<sup>o</sup> (p. 245).

**hpuhi** = *Tib. hphu, hbud, etc., blow* (pp. 284-5). See also **hphu** II, **hpuhi**. 274 *hdyim-ste*<sup>o</sup>; 282 *-hpuhi* (p. 331).

**hpur**, for **hpu** I, *q.v.*, + *re* (pp. 173-5). 163 *hbri-hšehe*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 216-17).

**hpul**, cf. *Tib. phul, handful; phul-tu, at a climax; phul-byuñ, perfected*. See also **hphul**. 15, 51 *hsañ-ma*<sup>o</sup> (p. 267).

**hpus**. 298 *-hphya* (p. 359).

**hpeg** = *hphyeys, q.v.* 360 *swa*<sup>o</sup>.

**hpehi**, apparently = *Tib. dpe, sample (exemplar), and confused with spa, ornament* (pp. 282, 349). 211 *myi*<sup>o</sup>; 353 *hdzo*<sup>o</sup>; 384, 386, 387 *hro*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 274, 331). See also **spehi**, **hrpehi**, **spa**, **spe**, **spehi**.

**hpo** I = *po, male, man, q.v.* See also **hpho**. 115 *-hldi*; 177 *-hldo, a Suffix*, pp. 186-7; 358 *-hldah, a Suffix*, p. 183; 361 *-hñe*; 393 *-hdam* (?) (pp. 217, 229, 274, 316, 335).

II = *Tib. spo, hpho, change, alter, migrate*. 46 *hgo*<sup>o</sup>; 48 *hñi*<sup>o</sup>; 122 *htsog-hram*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 226, 251, 286, 292).

III, perhaps = *Tib. pho, belly, in*

317 *hpo-hrbom*: cf. *po-rbom* (*hrbom*), *hbo-bon* (*hbon*), *hbom-rbo* (pp. 224, 323).

IV. See **hpo**.

**hpog** = *Tib. hphog, hit (with a missile)*. See also **hphog**. 59 *hdañ*<sup>o</sup> (p. 343).

**hpoñ** I = *Tib. phoñ, phoñs, hphoñs, poor, needy, etc.* 113 *hnañ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 233, 238, 297).

II, for *Tib. dpon, master, chief, in* 321 *stoñ*<sup>o</sup>? (p. 362).

**hpod**, perhaps = *tremble*. 14 *spo*<sup>o</sup> (p. 265).

**hpom** = *Tib. pham, hpham, be defeated*. See also **hphom** (p. 367). 347 *hrñe-he-hño-ge*<sup>o</sup> (p. 219).

**hpo**. 28 *-hwar-hwar* (p. 341).

**hpor** = *por* I, *release, q.v.* *Tib. hbor, cast, abandon*. See also **phor** II, **hphor**. 68 *hbu*<sup>o</sup>; 175 *hnu-glañ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 250, 268, 319).

**hpos** = *hbos, grown, big, q.v.* 141 *hpu*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 231, 297).

**hpyah** = *Tib. dpya, hphya, rebuke; dpya, tax (= phya, hphya?)*. 328 *hkañ*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 315, 317).

**hpyi**, perhaps = *Tib. dbyi, g-yi, lynx*. 333 *hrkom*<sup>o</sup> (p. 305).

**hpyid** = *Tib. phyid, hphyid, suffice or wipe away*. See also **hphyid**. 339 *stor-hdehi*<sup>o</sup>; 344 *ldañ-[hdehi]*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 253, 256).

**hpyed** = *Tib. hbyed, hbye, phye, dbye, be separated, divided, opened*. See also **hphyed**, **hbye**. 208 *htshar-hde*<sup>o</sup> (p. 234).

**hpra** = *Tib. pra, phra, prognostic?* Cf. *phra, minute?* See also **pra** and **hphrah**. 267 *-hre*.

**hprañ** = *Tib. hphrañ, narrow, ledge; sprañ, beggar*. 368 *hrño*<sup>o</sup> (p. 239).

**hprah** = *Tib. hphra, kick, or phra, small?* See also **pra**, **hphrah**. 254 *hyog*<sup>o</sup>(?); 331 *hrkom-hbroñ*<sup>o</sup>; 332 *hklur*<sup>o</sup>; 333 *hrkom-hpyi*<sup>o</sup>; 335 *hthe*<sup>o</sup> (p. 305).

**hpro** = *Tib. hphro, spro, expand, progress, rejoice*. 181 *-hro*; 245, 246 *-hbo-hbon* (p. 156).

**hprom** = prom, *Auxiliary Verb*,  
q.v. 128, 169, 209, 321, 322,  
341, 359, 360.

**hproms**, *Aorist of hprom*, prom,  
q.v. 122 htas° (pp. 281, 292).

**hplañ** = plañ, *street*, q.v. 356  
-hdrah (p. 241).

**rpag**, *low or made low*. See **hpag**  
and also **hrpag**. Perhaps some-  
times 'deep' or 'depth' (Tib. dpag)  
(pp. 225-6). 135 hkhar°; 192  
hkar°; 193 hñah-htsu°; 194  
gso-nad°; 208 hkañ-hcig°; 210  
hcañ-rgye°; 240 rñe-hlad°; 245  
gse-lad°; 252 bañ° (pp. 183,  
196, 234, 238, 243, 245, 274,  
305).

**rpu**. See p. 350, 91 htsog°.

**rpehi** = Tib. dpe, *sample*. See  
**hpehi**, **hrpehi**. 286 -hldah, a  
Suffix, p. 183 (p. 323).

**hrpag** = rpag, q.v. 17 hkhañ°; 128  
hkhar°; 193 hñah-mo°; 223  
hbroñ°; 231 hwa-bžer°; 253  
hbañ-hldoñ° (pp. 225-7, 242-3,  
263, 305, 339, 340).

— **-hkhur**, *down-bowed*. 6 (p. 226).

**hrpehi** = rpehi, q.v. 169 -hrgam  
(pp. 244, 323).

**hrpod** = Tib. spod, *vow, or phod*,  
*cope with, or hñod, bos, chal-*  
*lenge, fight* ? 250 -hbos (p. 349).

**lpyoñ** = Tib. hphyo, *be agitated*,  
*waver* ? (p. 354). 22 hmar-myi°.

**spa** = Tib. spa, *ornament*. See also  
**spehi**, **hpehi**. 151 mehi°  
(pp. 282, 356).

**spu-rbu** = Tib. spu-gu, *some small*  
*bird, or spur, hphur, fly* (p. 350).  
39 rgoñ°.

**spe** *fundamentally* = spa, **hpehi**,  
**spehi**, **hrpehi**, *ornament, exem-*  
*plar*, q.v. See also **spehi**  
(p. 356). 86 na°.

**spehi** = spe, q.v. (pp. 282, 356).  
140 hñi-stor°; 200 -hdzañ; 379  
-ge (p. 323).

**spo** I = Tib. spo, *height, summit*.  
14 -hpod-pod; 381 -ro (?)  
(p. 265).

II = Tib. spo, **hpho**, *change*,  
*migrate, pass away*. See also

**hpo** II (p. 356). 126 hldañ-  
-krañ°; 381 -ro (?) (pp. 288-9).

**spyi** = Tib. spyi, *general, top, chief*.  
110 -hdze (p. 335).

**spye**, *summer* = Tib. dbyar Mo-so  
jē ? (p. 353). 159 -chos; 148  
-htor; 190 hse° (pp. 145-6, 240,  
285-6, 302).

## Ph

**phañ** = hpañ II, *lap, &c.*, q.v. 111  
hbom-rbo° (p. 230).

**phu**, *conceivably* = hpu IV, q.v. 130  
-hkam.

**phor** I = pho + re. Cf. por II. 295  
htsa°.

II = por I, **hpor**, q.v. See also  
**hphor**. 359 nu-glañ° (p. 250).

**phya** = hphyah ? 204 pyu°.

**phyañ** = pyañ, *suspended, &c.*, q.v.  
348 htbar°; 374 htar° (pp. 248,  
343).

**phyi** = pyi, *outside, subsequent*, q.v.  
79 hldañ°; 89, 96, 98 -hse  
(pp. 288, 321).

**phyir**, *for phyr-re* ? = Tib. phyir,  
*outside, back, or phyr-re* ? =  
Tib. hphyi, *eradicate* ? 249 hra-  
hyañ°.

**phye** = Tib. hbyed, **phye**, &c.,  
*divided, opened*. See also **hpyed**,  
**hphyed**. 120 htsog-hram°; 145  
-hgo (pp. 291-2, 299-300).

**phyer** = pyar, **phyar**, *lift, hoist*,  
q.v. 254 ldañ°; 261 -chañ; 340  
-ma-swañ; 342 -htso-htsehi  
(pp. 239, 283, 287, 353).

**phrom** = prom, *Auxiliary Verb*,  
q.v. See also **hphrom**. 172  
hkoñ° (p. 254).

**phlañ** = plañ, **hplañ**, *street*, q.v. 357  
-nar.

**gphañ**, *father* = Tib. pha. See also  
**hpha**, **hphañ**. 60 -tsa (p.  
145).

**bphyag**, *Aorist of hphyag*, q.v. 101  
hkoñ-hko° (pp. 196, 264).

**hpha** = Tib. pha, *father*. See also  
**gphañ**, **hphañ**. 60 -ñur-ñur;  
65 -ma; 184 -ge (pp. 145, 172,  
318).



**hphag** I = *Tib. phag, pig.* 69 -la-gnah (pp. 193, 247).

II ? *cf. Tib. hphags, elevated, or phag, hidden part, interstice, or phag-rags, rampart ? so-phag, brick-work.* 238 -hbañ-ge.

**hphage.** See **hpha-ge.** 184.

**hphañ** = *hpañ* II and III, *q.v.* See also **phañ.** 302 *hrihi*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 178, 263).

**hphan** = *Tib. phan, benefit.* 215 *htshu-to*<sup>o</sup>.

**hphah** I = *hpha, father, q.v.* 38 *ryo*<sup>o</sup>; 73 -ma; 199 -rmañ (pp. 274, 320).

II = *pa, hpā, hpañ* I, *brave, q.v. ?* 151 -hphog; 304 *hyañ-hdañ*<sup>o</sup>; 314 *hkhog-ro*<sup>o</sup> (p. 280).

III ? 275 *hldañh(?)*-gsom<sup>o</sup>; 364 *htom*<sup>o</sup>.

— **-hphah,** *laugh.* 348 *hgweg-hwehe*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 248, 343).

**hphahha,** *miswriting (of hphah ?),* 275.

**hphar** = *Tib. phar, beyond; hphar, be elevated (go away).* See also **hpar.** 93, 99, 110, 118 *hgam*<sup>o</sup>; 142 *mor-gdag*<sup>o</sup>; 157 *na-ro*<sup>o</sup>; 187 *hrtā-hpāe*; 388 *hrtah-hpāh*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 239, 243, 336).

**hphu** I = *hpu* I, *man, male, q.v.* 62 *htor*<sup>o</sup>; 48 -hseg (?) (pp. 308, 330).

II = *Tib. phu, phus, hbud, dbu, blow (the fire, &c.).* See also **hpuhi, pu (hphuñ)-glo, hldim-hphu.** 104 *sku*<sup>o</sup>; 301 *hldim*<sup>o</sup>; 352 -hphu (pp. 157, 270, 285, 321).

— (I ?) **-hbos** = *hpu* (I), -hbos (*hpos*), *q.v.* 40, 167.

— (II) **-hkle,** *bellows* = *pu-glo, q.v.* 40 (pp. 239, 284).

**hphuhi** = *hphu* II + *hi.* 190 -htañ; 276 *hdam*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 228, 285).

**hpul** = *hpul, handful, at a climax, q.v.* 41 *hñud-nohu*<sup>o</sup>.

**hphe** = *Tib. hphen, throw away, or phe, weak ?* 317 *hwa-ne*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 338-9).

**hpho** = *po, hpo* I, *male, q.v.* 117 -hldir-htsag (p. 217).

**hphog** = *hpog (Tib. hphog), hit with a missile, q.v.* (p. 343). 151 *hphah*<sup>o</sup>.

**hphom** = *hpom (Tib. pham, hpham), be defeated, q.v.* 147 -te-hdrañ (pp. 299-300).

**hphor** = *phor* II, *por* I, *hpor* I, *release, &c., q.v.* 168 *chi-hrmu*<sup>o</sup>; 183, 353 *hdro*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 276, 319, 332).

**hphyag** = *Tib. phyag, hand; phyag-byed, salute, &c.* See also **bphyag.** 106 -hkhohu.

**hphyar** = *pyar, pyer, phyer, lift, hoist, q.v.* 126 *hldañ*<sup>o</sup>; 341 -ma-hswañ (pp. 287, 344).

**hphyid** = *hpyid, suffice, wipe away, q.v.* 340 *hstor-hdehi*<sup>o</sup> (p. 253).

**hphyu** = *pyu ?* 208 -hldyañ.

**hphyegs** = *hpeg, q.v.* 176 *swa*<sup>o</sup>.

**hphyed** = *hpyed, be separated, opened, &c., q.v.* See also **phye.** 208 *rsei-rgod*<sup>o</sup>.

**hphyo, cf. lpyoho ?** 375 -hli.

**hphrah** = *hprah (Tib = kick ?),* 255 *hdrañ-re*<sup>o</sup>.

**hphrom.** *Auxiliary Verb* = *prom, hprom, hproms, hprom, phrom, q.v.* 171 *hkoñu*<sup>o</sup>.

## B

**bañ** = *Tib. hbañs, a subject or servant ?* See also **hbañ** I. 249 -hrehe; 252 -rpag (pp. 274).

**bah** = *Tib. ba, cow ?* 47 *hbehi*<sup>o</sup> (p. 286).

**beg,** *only in the Proper Name Śes (Hses)-beg (hbeg), possibly related to the rbeg, rbag, rba-ga of Tsen-hgi-rbag, &c., p. 134.* See also **hbeg.** 24 *Śes*<sup>o</sup>; 5 *Hses*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 138, 224, 306-7).

**bon** = *hbon, in hbo-hbon, q.v.* 238 *hbo*<sup>o</sup> (p. 230).

**bos** I = *hbos, grown, big, q.v.* See also **hbo** I, **hbom, rbo, rbom, hrbom, hrbom.** 42, 43 -smyi; 378 -[smyi-hldog ?] (pp. 322-3, 334).

**byi** *small* = 'Nam-pa' *pyi* (p. 132) *Hai-hsia hbiñ, &c.* See also

- hbyi** (pp. 252, 265). 98 hmo-cha<sup>o</sup>; 147 hmañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 300).
- byin** = hbyin, *sink, &c.*, *q.v.* 97 hbm<sup>o</sup>, hmo-hchah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 342, 345).
- byin** = *Tib. sbyin, gift, charity; byin, a blessing, a good. See also hbyin.*
- **-ta** (taḥ, *a Suffix*, pp. 182-3). 105-6 (p. 315).
- byu-re**, for byur-re, *Tib. byur, ill luck, wretched, &c.* 108 mo-lañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 221).
- brah** = *Tib. bra, plenty; hbras, rice; hbras-bu, fruit; also Proper Name (Dbra) of an ancient, legendary, tribe. See also hbra, hbrah, hbrahr.* 228 hrah (pp. 215-16, 319-20).
- bri** I = *Tib. hbrī, bri, dbri, diminish, grow less; phri, hphri, dpri, diminish, reduce. See also hbri* I (pp. 215-16). 156 rmañ<sup>o</sup>; 202 rmañ<sup>o</sup>.
- II, *female, cf. Tib. hbri, yak-cow. See also hbri* II. 329 -gse (pp. 216-17).
- brehe** = *Tib. bred, be alarmed, dejected, ashamed. See also hbres.* 44 ses-hsi<sup>o</sup> (p. 322).
- bro** = *Tib. hbros, flee, escape. See also hbro* I. 108 hñ<sup>o</sup> (p. 221).
- brom** = *Tib. hgrum, pinch or nip off; grum-po, cripple?* (p. 366). 72 gsi<sup>o</sup> ohnu (p. 342). *See also hbrom.*
- bla** = *Tib. bla, upper, highest, superior.* 154 hldoh, *a Suffix*, pp. 186-7 (p. 222).
- gbohu**, from hbo I (*Tib. hbo, &c., overflow, swell, grow*), *q.v.* 181 hlab-ta<sup>o</sup> (pp. 156, 231, 313).
- gblañ**, from blañ = *Tib. len, blañ, get, receive (possibly confused with glañ I, q.v., from the same root).* 265 hñon-ta<sup>o</sup> (p. 219).
- bbyam**, *Aorist of hbyam (= Tib. hbyam, flow over, spread; byams, kindness), q.v.* 253 me<sup>o</sup> (p. 274).
- hba** = *Tib. dbah, rba, billows; dbah-rlabs-can-ma, hill torrent.*

*See also hbañ* I. 54 rizañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 352).

**hbañ** I = *bañ, subject, servant, q.v.* 67, 251 -re, -hre, -hrehe; 67, 371, 373, 386, 390 -hko-htar, *q.v.*; 253 -hldoh; 363 -kwa-kwa (?) (pp. 268, 274, 331, 346 n.).

II = *Tib. dbaḥ, power, authority.* 39 hgyaid (?) -ge<sup>o</sup>; 170 -hldah, *a Suffix*, p. 183; 172 -prom; 252 -g-ri<sup>o</sup> (?); 354 hldun<sup>o</sup> (?) (pp. 257, 275, 316, 321, 345, 346).

— (II) **-thwañ** = *Tib. dbaḥ-thaḥ, might, fortune, destiny.* 97 -byin (pp. 342, 347).

**hbab** = *Tib. bab, hbab, dbab, fall, descend, alight; hbab-chu, river, torrent.* 15 hmar<sup>o</sup>; 357 sko<sup>o</sup> (p. 267).

**hbañ** I = *hba, billows, &c., q.v. (also "rocking" in 45); derived from II?* 45 hldag<sup>o</sup>; 51 hmar<sup>o</sup>; 55 -hrag-hkyer (p. 317).

II = *Tib. hbañ, seizure, restraint (perhaps originally pressure, cf. hbañ-cha, less, sediment).* 110 hro-hbehi<sup>o</sup>; 234 htsag-hro-hbehi<sup>o</sup>; 235 hbe<sup>o</sup> (pp. 293-4).

III? 239 hphag<sup>o</sup>; 270 -hbm-rbo (p. 230).

**hbar** I = *Tib. bar, dbar, interval, between.* 97, 98 (pp. 262, 342, 345).

II for hbañ (II)+re. 18 hyogs-hldog<sup>o</sup>; 234 htsag-hro-hbehi<sup>o</sup> (pp. 250, 339).

**hbu** I = *Tib. dbu, head.* 47 -hrug; 68 -hpor (pp. 250, 268, 286, 319).

II = *hpu I, hphu I, man, q.v.* 33 htor<sup>o</sup> ohgru (p. 308).

III = *Tib. phu, high part of valley.* 15 -rwyo; 50 -rbye (p. 267).

**hbe**, *sheep* (p. 249). *See also hbehi, hbehe.* 235 -hbañ; 390 -hbañ? (pp. 293-4).

**hbeg** = *beg, q.v.* 7, 8, 20, 23, 25 hses<sup>o</sup>, ses<sup>o</sup> (pp. 138, 224, 306-7).

**hbehi** = *hbe, hbehe, q.v.* 47 -bah; 69 -la-hgar; 110 -hbah; 213 -tyañ; 234 -hbañ and -hbar (pp. 193, 247, 249, 250, 253, 286, 293).

**hbehe** = hbe, hbehi, *q.v.* 46 -hsii-rmañ (p. 257).

**hbo** I = Tib. bo, dbo, hbo, hbo, hbo, expand as a bubble, spill over, swell up, rise, grow; sbo, swell, distend; sbo, upper part of belly; pho, stomach; sbom, bulk (pp. 230-2). See also **gbohu**, **rbo**, **hrbo**, **hbon**, **hbom**, **hbos**, **rbom**, **hrbom**. 126 stor-hgu<sup>o</sup>; 163 sri<sup>o</sup> (?); 263 g-rañ-nag<sup>o</sup> (pp. 231, 283, 288-9, 313).

II forest, wood, a specialization of I. 12 -hkom; 280 -hram; 344 -hron (pp. 231, 318).

III? = II? 144 -kyer.

— **-bon** (**hbon**), big, reduplicated form of I. See also **po(hpo)-rbom**, **hbom-rbo**. 238, 243, 245, 246 (p. 230).

**hboğ** = Tib. hbag, hbags, dbag, sbag, sbogs, defile, be defiled, be submerged. 256 hrag-ma<sup>o</sup>; 283 rag-hdañ-ta<sup>o</sup> ni (pp. 147, 173). See also **hwag**.

**hbod** = Tib. hbad, watch, be alert, take care; hbod, call out, endeavour. See also **hwad**. 313 hmor-hso<sup>o</sup> (p. 340).

**hbon**. See **hbo-hbon**.

**hbom**, big, bigness. See **hbo**, **hbo-bon**; also **rbom**, **hrbom**. 73 smyi<sup>o</sup>; 97 -byiñ (pp. 236, 345).

— **-rbo** = hbo-hbon, *q.v.*, grow big. 111 (2), 112, 270 (pp. 230).

**hbos**, etymologically Aorist of hbo I, swell up, grow: usually signifying big man, with or without the term hpu, hphu, &c., man (p. 231). See also **bos**, **hpos**. 41 hphu<sup>o</sup>; 164 -hsaḥ-hldaḥ and -hnom-hsaḥ; 167 hphu<sup>o</sup>; 213 -hdom; 250 hrpod<sup>o</sup>; 266 hpu<sup>o</sup>; 287 -g-yah-hthañ; 290 -g-ri; 291 -hrihi; 293 -hrihi, hpuhu<sup>o</sup>; 330 hpuhu<sup>o</sup> (pp. 260, 277, 278, 297, 298).

**hbyam** = Tib. hbyam, byams, flow over, be widespread (abound); byams, kind. 225, 231, 237, 244 hlaḍ<sup>o</sup>; 253 hyah-me<sup>o</sup>, hlab-me<sup>o</sup>; 353 hwaḥ-hraḥ<sup>o</sup> (p. 274).

**hbyi**, small, become small = Hsi-hsia dbih, hbbi, hbiñ (pp. 132, 252); perhaps = Tib. hbyi, dbyi, wipe out. See also **rbyi**, **hbyih**. 50 hce-hra<sup>o</sup>; 75 dgu-htor<sup>o</sup>; 167 -hri; 305, 307, 308, 311 gdzu<sup>o</sup>/gzu<sup>o</sup> (pp. 252, 265, 273, 276, 337, 338).

**hbyig** = cow (pp. 249-50). 70 -la-gnah (pp. 193, 247).

**hbyiñ** = Tib. hbyiñ, sink, grow faint; byiñ, depth, &c. See also **byiñ**. 56 hce-hraḥ<sup>o</sup>; 57 me-ña<sup>o</sup>; 96 na-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 345).

**hbyin** = byin, blessing, &c., *q.v.* 57 rgyaḥ-hce<sup>o</sup> (p. 312).

**hbyim** ? connected with sbyim, *q.v.* 266 -ge-g-yah; 363 hmu-lom-ge<sup>o</sup>.

**hbyih** = hbyi, *q.v.* 84 cis-tsha<sup>o</sup> (p. 359).

**hbye**, perhaps connected with hpyed, hphyed, *q.v.* 131 rñe<sup>o</sup>; 223 hton-hkoñ<sup>o</sup>.

**hbyoḥu** = Tib. byo, hbyo, pour out ? 256 ldyoḥu-ma<sup>o</sup> (pp. 327, 331).

**hbra** = braḥ, *q.v.* See also **hbraḥ**, **hbrahr**.

— **-hlda(r)**, probably name of a place, real or mythical, 31, 32 (p. 319).

**hbrad** = Tib. hbrab, snatch (pp. 253-4). 213 htsaḥ<sup>o</sup>; 305 -re; 306 -re, -sta, a Suffix, pp. 182-3, 359; 312 hjuhu<sup>o</sup> (pp. 231, 253-4).

**hbrah** = hbra, braḥ, be plentiful, &c., *q.v.* 269 hwaḥ-ne<sup>o</sup> (p. 339). See also **hbrahr**.

— **-hlda(r)** = hbra<sup>o</sup>, *q.v.* 30 (pp. 319-20).

**hbrahr** for hbraḥ-re (p. 123). 254 hldaḥ-phyer<sup>o</sup> (p. 287).

**hbri** I = bri I, diminish, grow less (destroy?), loss? *q.v.* 132 -hldi-hthañ; 203 -hko; 228 -hgu, a Suffix, pp. 190, 258 (pp. 171, 215-16, 246, 253).

II = bri II, female, *q.v.* 137 -re; 150, 161, 218, 343 hpu<sup>o</sup> (? I); 163 -hsehe; 324 -hdzoḥu-kyim; 381



- slod-hldo (pp. 138, 216-18, 275, 338).
- hbrus** = *Tib.* hbru, brus, *probe, irritate, inflame.* 153 ske<sup>o</sup> (p. 316).
- hbres**, *Aorist of brehe, be alarmed, etc. q.v.* 176 kehu-prom<sup>o</sup>.
- hbro** I = bro, *flee, etc., q.v.* 36 hldyo-hrje<sup>o</sup>; 138 hdzehu-rje<sup>o</sup>; 139 ldan-rdze<sup>o</sup>; 241 hcah-hya<sup>o</sup>; 355 hthah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 218, 228, 230, 244, 287, 335).
- II = *Tib.* bro, taste, have a taste, be felt as. See also **hbroho**. 221, 229, 297, 313, 316, 318, 323, 325 hkru<sup>o</sup>, hkrulu<sup>o</sup>; 221 hklu<sup>o</sup> = hkru<sup>o</sup> (pp. 228-9, 296-7).
- hbroñ** = *Tib.* hbroñ, wild yak (pp. 139, 258-9). See also **hldag-nag**. 68, 371, 373, 384, 386, 389 hdzam<sup>o</sup>; 157 hpu<sup>o</sup>; 170 hdro<sup>o</sup> oprom; 182 -hldah; 215, 216, 217, 219, 220, 222, 392, 394 (?) htor<sup>o</sup>/tor<sup>o</sup>/thor<sup>o</sup>; 220 -hdru-hjar; 221, 393 -hkru-hbro; 250 -re-ge; 285, 331 hkrkom<sup>o</sup>; 353 -hldar-hdzam (pp. 244, 250, 258, 263, 268, 272, 285, 294, 296, 305, 313, 319, 331).
- hbrom** = brom, pinch, or nip, off, q.v. 297 riñhe<sup>o</sup>.
- hbroho** = hbro II, taste = be felt as, q.v. 294 hkrulu<sup>o</sup> (pp. 246-7).
- rbab** (lect.?), for rnab = hrnab, q.v. ? 54 -ña-hke.
- rbu**. See spu<sup>o</sup>. 39 (p. 350).
- rbo** = *Tib.* sbo, swell up, etc. See **hbo** I, **hrbo**, **hbom**, **rbom**, **hrbom**. 27 g-yo<sup>o</sup>; 136 kyer<sup>o</sup>; 111, 112, 270 hbom<sup>o</sup> (pp. 230-1, 309).
- rbom**, big, bigness, become big, etc. See **hbom**, **hrbom**. 317 hpo<sup>o</sup>. See also **hpo** III (pp. 224, 323, 338-9).
- rbyl**, perhaps = diminish: cf. byi, hbyi, small, q.v. 375 -hldyih (pp. 330, 350).
- rbye**, extent = *Tib.* dbye, from hbyed. See also **hpyed**,

- hpyed**, **hbye**, **rwye**. 53 -hce-rgyañ (pp. 290-2, 345).
- rbyo** I = fowl (pp. 332-3). 38 -hphah; 365 -rgyer; 366 -g-yer (pp. 320, 332).
- II = rbyo-po, a priest, sorcerer or bon-po man, perhaps literally a fowl-man? (pp. 155-6, 332-3). See also **hrbyo** I. 53 -hko-rño; 82 -ha-ge; 102 -sñah; 181 -po (pp. 263, 320, 332-3).
- III, miswriting of rgyo, q.v. 330 -gšeg (p. 178).
- hrbo** = rbo, swell up, etc., q.v. 25 Šes-hbeg<sup>o</sup>.
- hrbom** = rbom, bigness, become big, etc., q.v. 317 hpo<sup>o</sup> (p. 323).
- hrbyo** I = rbyo II, q.v. 56 -hko-rño (p. 263).
- II, miswriting of hbro, q.v. ? (Cf. 355) 362 -htoho, a Suffix, pp. 184-6.
- sbyim**, target, cf. *Tib.* hgyim? 59 -hce-rgye (p. 343).

## M

- ma**, a Nominal Suffix (pp. 181-2), seen in rgyed-ma 101, 105, 107, 231, hgru-ma 27, 32, 77, 79, hdañ-ma (?) 108.
- ma** = *Tib.* etc., ma, not (p. 205). 31, 32; 57, 63, 71, 94 (final after Verb htañ); 96 (between Verb htañ and Suffix te); 103. etc.
- ma**, mañ. See mañ.
- ma**, mother. 65 hpha<sup>o</sup>; 184 -hpu; 185 -hpañ (?) (pp. 301, 318).
- mag** = *Tib.* dmag, army. See also **rmag**, **hrmag**. 102 hšad<sup>o</sup> (p. 301).
- **hno**, battle, cf. *Tib.* g-yul-ño, battlefield. 48, 49, 58, 145, 184 (pp. 194, 299-301, 320).
- mañ** for man in reduplicated man-man. See also **hman**. 238 mañ-mañ; 243, 246 ma-mañ; 245 ma-ma-hña; 247 ma-hman (p. 230).
- mu**, cold, afraid (?). See also **hmu**, **hmuhi**. 116 -rgyeb; 184 -re; 175 -hldi (?); 197 -hrog-hro;

- 244 dguhu° (pp. 232-3, 285, 301, 318).
- mug** = Tib. mug, *gloom*; rmugs, *fog, stupid*, &c. 227 -hgu, a *Suffix*, pp. 190, 258 (pp. 215-16).
- mur**, written for mu, *q.v.*, + re. 252 hphu-hphu° (pp. 157, 285).
- me**, *fire* (literal and metaphorical) = Tib. me. See also **mye** I, **hmye**, **sme**, **mehe**, **hmehi** II (pp. 281-6), 8, 20 -hgrah; 40 hnah°; 45 re°, *lect. ma for me?*; 53 -hyed; 56 -ha; 58 -na; 67 hjo°, hlab°; 70 hjo°, hlab°; 71 hde°; 89 htshog°; 114 -hmehi; 123 stor°; 124 hldañ°; 149 -htañ; 170 hkehu°, hkoñ°; 173 hkoñ°; 253 hyah°, jo°, hlab° (pp. 172, 173, 194, 201, 232, 239, 244, 257, 268, 272, 273, 274, 275, 282, 284, 285, 286, 288, 300-1, 316, 320, 321, 337, 345).
- mehi** I, *eye* = Tib. mig, &c. See also **hmehi** I, **mye** III. 25 Hses-hbeg°; 78 -ra; 151 -spa; 155 -hgab; 185 sud°; 186, 369 -hrah; 370 -spehi-hrah; 35 -g-ri-htañ (?) (pp. 138, 139, 186-7, 223, 244, 265, 282, 318, 331).
- II = *ma, not*, +hi at end of sentence, 'is not'. 115 so-hnah°; 156 g-yah-ta°; 311 hman-sta°, hri-stah°; 312 g-rihi-sta°, hri-stah°; 313 g-ri-sta° (pp. 200, 201, 254, 282, 337).
- (I) **-klu-hcha/hcah**, a *Proper Name*. 150, 161, 343 hklū. See also **hmehi**° (pp. 138, 253, 255).
- mehe** = me. 171 hkoñ°.
- mo** I = Tib. mo, *feminine, woman*. See also **hmo** I (p. 182). 108 -lañ; 188 hnañ (hña)-hydro°; 193 hñah° (pp. 221, 238, 285). See also **hmo** II.
- II = *sky, or mo-ge for mog* (q.v.) +ge? 252 sta-re° (p. 201).
- III? = *hair?* 63, 144 -ma-hthor (p. 303). See also **hmo** III.
- mog** (? *lect.*) = gmog, hmog, *cloud?* 6 -htswe (pp. 269, 271).
- Moñ**, *Proper name of a people, the Mons*. See also **Hmoñ** (pp. 150-4). 379, 380, 381 hrtsig°, rtsig°, tsig° (p. 285).
- hdzoñ/hjoñ**, *Mon fort*. See also **Hmoñ**°. 64 hstor°; 118 stor°; 128 stor°; 139 stor°; 140 stor° (pp. 171, 187, 243, 305, 308).
- mod** = Tib. mod, *be verily* (p. 200). 211 hgo-gtoñ°; 212 hko-htoñ° (pp. 200, 260, 261, 332).
- modhi** = mod (q.v.) +hi. 212.
- mor**, *bad, evil* (pp. 215-16). See also **hmor** I. 9 -htañ; 40 -hphu-hbos; 87 -hdañ; 141 -gdag-hgom; 142 -gdag-hphar; 173 swah°; 225 -hgu, a *Suffix*, pp. 190, 258; 286 -hkyañ; 388 -tsah, a *Suffix*, pp. 187-8 (pp. 187, 239, 276, 297, 304, 323, 329, 340).
- myag** = Tib. myag, *chew*; myags, *putrid* (spoiled, vile). 39 -mye-htañ; 109 -gre; 148 -myi[-tor], myage-me-htañ; 179 gnah-goñ°; 280 -ma-htsar; 367 gnah-hgoñ°; 368 hyahñ-goñ° (pp. 221, 231, 269, 291-2, 302).
- myi** I = Tib. mi, *man* (pp. 236-7). 148 -tor; 153 -re, -hñi, -rgye; 211 -hpehi (pp. 174, 236, 273).
- II = Tib. mi, *not*. See also **hmyi**, **mye** II. 98 phyi-hse°; 159 -seg; 160 -hrgan, -hldin; 165 -hrdoho (pp. 145-6, 172, 200, 217, 296, 345).
- myiñ** = Tib. miñ, *name* (mere name). 97 htsgo-hram° (p. 345).
- myil** = Tib. myul/ñul, *rove as a spy* (pp. 354, 367). See also **hmyil**. 29 rgu-hmyil° (p. 259).
- mye** I = me, *fire*, *q.v.* See also **hmye**. 6 -hyañ-hwad; 39 -htañ; 102 hñi-kyeg°; 195 hthar°; 211 -hpahi; 357 thar° (pp. 241, 269, 271, 301, 340).
- II = Tib. med, *is not*. See also **myer**. 154 -dze; 241 -re (p. 237).
- III for **mehi** I, *eye*, *q.v.* 212 -hpehi (p. 240).
- myen** = Chinese wan (mān), *myriad*. 247 hñad-htoñ° (p. 234).

**myer**, written for *mye* II, is not, (q.v.), +re (pp. 174, 281). 129 -re; 153 *myi-rgye*<sup>o</sup>; 365 *rgoñ-wa*<sup>o</sup>; 366 *hkehu-prom*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 273, 293, 332, 342).

**gmog**, cloud, cf. Tib. *rmugs*, fog, stupid; *mug*, gloom; *mog*, dark colours; 304 *hldyo*, *rmūkha*, cloud. 55 *-hce-rgyañ*, *-hce-hsa* (pp. 263, 271, 353). See also **mog**, **hmog**.

**hman**, larger, many = Tib. *mañ*, man (pp. 230-1). 33 (?) *-hldah*, a Suffix, p. 183; 146 *-byi*; 301 *hldim-hphu*<sup>o</sup>; 302 *-hrihi*; 303 *-hkhū*; 304 *-hldyo*, *-rgam*; 305 *-nañ-hyu*; 306 *-ge-hrgam*; 307 *hñah-na*<sup>o</sup>, *-hrgam*; 308 *-hri*, *-g-ri*; 309 *-g-rihi*; 310 *hldim*<sup>o</sup>; 311 *-sto* (pp. 200, 229, 231, 239, 254, 256, 266, 270, 300, 309, 321, 327, 337, 345).

**hmad** = Tib. *smad*, low, lower, reprove. See also **rmad** (pp. 226-7). 36, 39 *-ses*<sup>o</sup>; 202 *hrah*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 269, 313).

**hman** in reduplicated form *ma-hman*, from man, many. 247. See **mañ**.

**hmah** = Tib. *ma*, *dmah*, low, anti-thetic to *ya*. See also **rmah**, **hgru** (II) *-hldañ-hmah* (pp. 226-7). 112 *-hldañ-hyah* (pp. 227, 288).

**hmar** I = Tib. *mar*, down, low. 15 *-hbab* (cf. Tib. *chu-hbab*, hill torrent); 22 *-myi-lpyoñ*; 51 *-hbab* (p. 267).

II = Tib. *mar*, butter, oil. 46 *-me*, lamp = Tib. *mar-me* (p. 286).

**hmu** I = *mu*, cold, q.v. See also **hmuhi** (pp. 232-3). 39 *hkye-ge*<sup>o</sup>; 104 *hdam*<sup>o</sup>; 200 *hce*<sup>o</sup>; 204 *hche*<sup>o</sup>; 206 *hce*<sup>o</sup>; 225, 236, 245 *dgu/dguhu-hto/to*; 268 *-klag*; 309 *-wa-rño*; 363 *-lom* (?) (pp. 200, 232-3, 266, 270, 285, 298, 320, 338).

II, sky, cf. Tib. *mu*, limit, boundary, horizon. 9 *-hriñu-skhrud* (p. 276).

**hmun** = Tib. *mun*, darkness? (p. 276). 33 *hse-hte*<sup>o</sup>.

**hmuhi** = *hmu* I, q.v. 183 *me*<sup>o</sup>, make cold (pp. 172, 232).

**hme** I = *me*, fire, q.v. See also **hmehi** II. 262 *cañ-sme*<sup>o</sup> (p. 283).

II *mehi* II, is not. 121 *hstog-hram*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 281, 292).

**hmehi** I = *mehi* I, eye, q.v. 185 *śud*<sup>o</sup>; 186 *hjam-ge*<sup>o</sup>; 272 *-hpañ* (p. 139).

II = *hme* I, fire, q.v. 114 *me*<sup>o</sup>, light fire (pp. 172, 201, 232, 282).

— (I) **-klu-hcañ** = *meñ*<sup>o</sup>, q.v. 218 (pp. 138, 255).

**hmo** I = *mo*, woman, q.v. 84 *-rkañ-lā*; 97 *-hcañ*; 98 *-cha*; 189 *hnañ-hdro*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 227, 285, 343, 345).

II = *mo* II, sky, q.v. (?) 8, 20 *-ge-me-hgrah*; 9 *-no-ge* (?) read *mon-ge* (?); 19 *-ge* (pp. 142, 201, 332).

III = *mo* III, hair? 71 *-ma-thor* (p. 303).

IV? 210 *-ta-hpun* (p. 245).

V? 175 *mu-hldi*<sup>o</sup>; 360.

**hmog** = *gmog*, cloud, q.v. 52 *-hce-rgyañ*; 54 *stehi-htam*<sup>o</sup>; 81 *-re-hldoñ* (pp. 271, 353).

**hmoqe**, written for *hmog-ge* or *hmo-ge*. 55 *-hce*.

**Hmoñ** I = *Moñ*, q.v. 78 *-joñ*; 129 *-hjoñ* (pp. 241, 263).

II. See **re-hmoñ**. 134.

III. (*hman*?) *-hldah* 33.

**hmor** I = *mor*, bad, evil, q.v. 313 *-hso*; 318 *hswah*<sup>o</sup>; 331 *hgu*<sup>o</sup> (p. 296).

II. written for *hmo* (I) +re. 190 *-bzañ-re* (p. 240).

**hmyi** = *myi* II, not, q.v. 40 *hnañ-me*<sup>o</sup>; 254 *hldyo-htor*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 239, 284, 328 n.).

**hmyil** = *myil*, q.v. 29 *-myil*.

**hmye** = *mye* I, fire, q.v. 197 *-htah*, a Suffix, pp. 122-3.

**rma** I = Tib. *rmas*, ask. 47 *dam*<sup>o</sup> (p. 286).

II = Tib. *rma*, wound. 156 *-g-yog-rño* (p. 295).

III, river = Hsi-hsia *mañuo*, Tib.



rma-chu. 196 -hsu-hdra (pp. 245-6).  
**rmag** = Tib. dmag, *army*. See also **mag**, **hrmag**. 146 hrah-htoñ<sup>o</sup>; 147 hśod-te<sup>o</sup>; 149 rgyed<sup>o</sup>; 205 hpah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 144, 246, 300, 361).  
**rmañ** I = *tomb-monument*, Tib. rmañ (p. 148). 27 hldañ<sup>o</sup>; 148 -ra-gyim; 156 -bri-hko; 197 -hldab; 199 -ña, hpah<sup>o</sup>; 201 -ña, hwi-wa<sup>o</sup>; 202 -bri-ko; 206 gsañ<sup>o</sup>, -ña; 207 -ña; 235 -dze; 336 -hwi-hkho (pp. 246, 259, 318, 320, 341, 345).  
 II = Tib. rmañ, *dream*, rmoñ, rmoñs, *delusion*, &c. 46 hsiñ<sup>o</sup>; 77 hgru-ma<sup>o</sup> (pp. 278, 309).  
**rmad** = Tib. smad, *low*. See also **hmag**, **rmah**, **hmad** (pp. 226-7). 80, 84 smyi<sup>o</sup> (pp. 237, 288, 343).  
**rmah** = hmag, rmad, *q.v.*, *low*. 257 hyah<sup>o</sup> (p. 227).  
**rmar** I, written for rmañ-re. 315, 318 hyah-htañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 227, 296).  
 II, written for rma (Tib. rma, *wound*, *to wound*) + re. 312 hdom-hguhu<sup>o</sup>, hjuhu-hbrad<sup>o</sup> (p. 254).  
**rmur**, written for rmu (= Tib. mu, *boundary*) + re (pp. 351-2). See also **hmu** II, **hrmu**. 166 hśah-chad<sup>o</sup> (p. 276).  
**rme** = Tib. dme/rme/sme, *blemish* (p. 349). 124, 232, 337, 340, 342 htor/tor-hrta/hrtañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 284).  
**rmo** = Tib. smon, *wish*, *aspire*, *pray*? See also **rmon**? 250 -hkum (p. 294).  
**rmon** = rmo? or *connected with* rmañ II, *dream*? 349 hjim-hśoñ-ge<sup>o</sup>.  
**rmyi** (? *lect.*) = smyi, *man*, *q.v.*? 41 hyañ<sup>o</sup>.  
**hrmag** = rmag, *army*, *q.v.* 146 rñe-ne<sup>o</sup> (pp. 222, 299-300).  
**hrmu** = rmu, *boundary*, *q.v.* 168 chi<sup>o</sup> (p. 276).  
**hrmoñ**. 18 hśkyim-se<sup>o</sup>.  
**smu-hdzu**, *conceivably* = Tib. mu-zi, *brimstone*, with -i/-u as in p. 367. 27 -rgyag (p. 259).

**smuñu-hku** = Tib. smyig-ma, smyug-ma, smyu-gu, *reed* (p. 357). 22 -hyob.  
**sme**, *fire*, *blaze*, me, mye I, hme I, hmeñi II, hmye, *q.v.* (pp. 282-3, 357). 192 rgyed-hrañ<sup>o</sup>; 262 cañ<sup>o</sup>; 282, 284, 375 hśeg<sup>o</sup>; 342 klu-hldo<sup>o</sup>—*error for rme*? 393 hrgyed-hśañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 282-3).  
**smyi** = Tib. mi, myi, *man* (pp. 236-7). See also **myi**, **rmyi**, 37 -rmad; 42, 44 -hldog; 73 -hbom; 80 -hmi; 84 -rmad; 241, 242 -hnu; 269 -glog (pp. 227, 237, 288, 322, 323, 334, 339, 343).

## Ts

**tsa**, a *Pluralizing or classifying Suffix*, often in the combination re-tsa, *signifying those who* (*whose*, &c.) (pp. 187-8). See also **tsah**, **htsa** I, **htsañ** I, **tsha**, **tshañ**. 60 hkuñ<sup>o</sup>, gphah<sup>o</sup>; 63 hyañ<sup>o</sup>; 163 hno-re<sup>o</sup>; 220 hthañ-le<sup>o</sup>; 283 hpañ<sup>o</sup>; 388 hyañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 145, 274, 304, 305, 315).  
**tsañ** = Tib. tshañ, *complete* (p. 364). 136 gtse-hkom-re<sup>o</sup>.  
**tsah** = tsa, *q.v.* 388 mor<sup>o</sup> (pp. 216, 304).  
**tsig** = rtsig, hrtsig, *carpenter*, *q.v.* 381 -moñ.  
**tsu** = Tib. tshu, tshur, *hither*, *come hither*. 284 -re (p. 364). See also **gtsu**, **htsu** I, **htsuñu**, **tsur**, **htsur**, **htshu**, **htshun**, **htshur**.  
**tsur** = tsu, httsu, httsur, *come*, &c., *q.v.* 391 hgyah-hnañ<sup>o</sup>.  
**tse**, written for dzo, *q.v.* 63 hjo<sup>o</sup>; 111 hyah<sup>o</sup>; 120 hnah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 230, 262, 274, 291-2, 305)<sup>o</sup>.  
**tseg** = geeg, gcheg, hceeg, *q.v.* (p. 294). 93 swa<sup>o</sup> tseg (p. 334).  
**tsweñu**. ? cf. htswa<sup>o</sup>? (pp. 269, 368). 196 hwam-weñi-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 241).  
**gtsañ** = Tib. tsañ, *corn*, *grain*. See also **htsañ**. 159 -myi-hrgan; 165 hśah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 145-6, 335).

**gtsu.** *Prospective form of tsu, q.v.* 214 hrwehi<sup>o</sup> (p. 345).

**gtse** = *Tib. gtso/htahe, cause mischief, injure* (pp. 140-1). 113 -ne; 136 -hkom. *See also gse, hse I, hsehi, hsehe II.*

**gtsob.** *Prospective form of htshab, q.v.* = *Tib. htshab, replace, be ruffled; tshab, deputy?* 351 hdam-sleg<sup>o</sup>; 352 glyan-ru<sup>o</sup>.

**htsa I** = *tsa q.v.* 24 klu-htro<sup>o</sup>; 67 hgro-re<sup>o</sup>; 64 htor-Moñ-hdzoñ-re<sup>o</sup>; 131 htšan-le<sup>o</sup>; 146 htrog<sup>o</sup>; 152 g-yah<sup>o</sup>; 215 htor-hñi<sup>o</sup>; 259 hkhwi<sup>o</sup> (pp. 138, 186-7, 202, 223, 272, 305, 308, 343).

II. 249 -re.

**htsā,** *probably intended for htshah III, q.v.* 21 -gsom (p. 306).

**htsag** = *Tib. tshogs, htshogs, btsags, collect, assemble. See also htsoq, tshog, htshog.* 45 hya<sup>o</sup>; 117 hpho-hdir<sup>o</sup>; 173 hwi-hwehi<sup>o</sup>; 234 -hro; 257 hyah-rmah<sup>o</sup>; 282 (?) (pp. 191, 127, 227, 257, 292, 341, 343).

**htsan** = *gtsan, corn, grain, q.v.* 270 -ra; 378 hsañ<sup>o</sup> (?) (pp. 178, 339).

**htsam** = *Tib. tsam, just so much. See also tsham.* 72 hso<sup>o</sup> (pp. 204, 342).

**htsah I** = *tsa, httsa I, q.v.* 25 klu-rto<sup>o</sup>; 31 hñed-httram<sup>o</sup>; 65 hgag-re<sup>o</sup>; 65 hño[-r[e]<sup>o</sup>; 74 rah-ge<sup>o</sup>; 342 mye-hrah<sup>o</sup>; 379 rtsig-Moñ-ge<sup>o</sup>; 381 we-ge<sup>o</sup>; 383 hwehi-ge<sup>o</sup> (pp. 138, 157, 186, 187, 219, 223, 228, 251, 274, 287, 319).

II = *Tib. btsa, btsas, watch* (p. 278). *See also httsah, httsah I* 42 hsañ<sup>o</sup>; 44 htsah<sup>o</sup>; 268 -hdzan; 291 -po[-r[e]<sup>o</sup> (pp. 280, 281, 322, 339).

III = *Tib. btsah-ma, btsas-ma, btsas, rtsas, ripening of corn, harvest, probably identical with btsa, btsas, give birth to a child; btsas-ston, birth festivity* (pp. 278, 281). 277 gsañ-re-httsah-re. *See also httsah II.*

IV. *See hdzo(htso)-httsah/*

**htsehi/hdzehi.** 30, 62, 73, 115 (p. 252).

**httsah-sto,** *written for httsahs-to. Aorist form of httsah (III?).* 33 na<sup>o</sup>; 233 hchir<sup>o</sup> (p. 275).

**htsar** = *Tib. tshar, htshar, limit, parish. See also httsar.* 280 myag-ma<sup>o</sup> (p. 231).

**htsu I** = *tsu, hither, come hither, q.v.* *See also httsuhu, httsur, httsu, httsur.* 113 hgu-htor<sup>o</sup>; 304 hdom-hgu<sup>o</sup> (p. 233).

II, *man* (pp. 218, 238). 193 hñah<sup>o</sup> (p. 238).

**httsuhu** = *htsu I, q.v.* 166 hñah-hrah<sup>o</sup>; 303 hdom-hgu<sup>o</sup> (pp. 142, 200, 256, 327).

**httsur** = *tsu, httsu I, q.v.* 207 hkañ-hñah<sup>o</sup> (p. 315).

**htseñ** 364. *See hdzo.*

**htsehi** 342. *See httsah IV.*

**htso I?** 83 hidas<sup>o</sup>; 105 -dro-ho (p. 261).

— *written in place of htsoq, q.v.* 88.

— (II) -hña *written for so/hso-hñah, q.v.* 93.

— (III) -httsah, *perhaps = Tib. cha-cho, matched. See also hdzo-httsah/hdza.* 62, 73 gla<sup>o</sup>; 115 hcañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 252).

— III -htsehi, *apparently = -httsah + hi* (pp. 191-2). 342 phyer<sup>o</sup>.

**htsoq** = *Tib. htshogs, btsags, &c. See httsag, tshog, httsahog, htso, hcoq II.* 91 -rpu; 94, 96 -htañ-ma; 95 -hldañ; 99 hñah<sup>o</sup>; 102 ñah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 292, 320-1).

— **hram,** *friendship, harmony.* 35, 37, 82, 86, 90, 94, 97, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 365 (pp. 262, 281, 288, 291-3, 345).

**htsoñ** = *Tib. tshoñ, htshoñ, stsoñs, trade, barter, sell.* 349 hjim<sup>o</sup>.

**httsors** = *Tib. gsor, bśor, hchor, hunt, chase; śor, hchor, flee. See also tshor, httsors.* 134 hldag-nag<sup>o</sup>; 219 hbroñ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 258-9).

**httswe?** = *tswehu, q.v.?* hdzwo? (pp. 269, 368). 6 mog<sup>o</sup>, ? lect. ? (p. 269).

**rtsig** = Tib. rtsig, *build, mason.*

*See also hrtsig, tsig* (p. 150).  
379, 380 -Moñ.

**hrtsig** = rtsig, *q.v.* 380 -Moñ.

**stsah** = htsah II, *watch, q.v.* (p. 278). *See also htsah* I. 298 hboŋ.

**stsar** = Tib. tshar, *occasion, instance, used with numerals.* 247 stoñ° (pp. 233-4).

**hstsah** I = stsah, htsah II, hscah, *watch, q.v.* 250 -hyer; 288 -hyah-hthañ; 290 -brihi; 295 -hri; 298 -hldah, *a Suffix*, p. 183; 345, 350, 351 hyu° (pp. 246, 278, 280).

II? = htsah, III, *harvest?* 213 -hbrad (p. 253).

## Tsh

**tsha** = tsa, *Pluralizing Suffix, q.v.* 50 hce-ra°; 84 cis° (?) (pp. 259, 359).

**tsham** = htsam, Tib. tsam, *just so much, q.v.* 50 -hrog (p. 361).

**tshah** = tsha, tsa, *q.v.* (p. 364). 219 hthañ-le° (p. 272).

**tshis**, *error for chim, q.v., or = Tib. mehis, come? See also htshis.* 95 dim° (pp. 320, 359).

**tshu** = tsu, htsu, gtsu, *come hither, &c., q.v.? See also htshu, htshun, htshur.* 206 -gsom.

**tshog** = htsog, *collect, assemble, q.v. See also htshog.* 95 -hldañ (pp. 320-1).

**tshor** = htsor(s), *hunt, chase. See also htshors.* 220 hbroñ°.

**htshab** = Tib. htshab, tshab, *replace, deputy. See gtsoh.* 104 hnag° (p. 360).

**htshar** = Tib. tshar, *limit, parish. See also htsar.* 208 -hde (p. 234).

**htshim** = Tib. tshim, *satisfaction; hchims, get full. See also chim, hchim.* 81 hsi-hkri° (p. 298).

**htshis** = tshis, *q.v.* 88 hdim° (p. 321).

**htshu** = thsu, tsu, htsu I, gtsu, *q.v.* 75 hsoh-hsoh°; 76 dgu-

-htor°; 215 -to, *a Suffix*, pp. 184-6.

**htshun** = htshu, &c., *q.v., also Tib. tshun.* 76 dgu-htor°.

**htshur** = htsur, *q.v.* 391 hnah-hdhi°.

**htshe** = Tib. gtse, htsho, *do harm. See also gtse.* 74 hkuhu-nehu° (p. 250).

**htshog** = htsog, *q.v.*

— **-hram.** 90 = htsog°, *friendship, &c.* (p. 321).

**htshors** = htsors, tshor, *hunt, &c., q.v.* 130 hldag-nag° (p. 259).

## Dz

**dze** I, *a Clause-terminating Postposition, signifying place, time, or circumstance* (pp. 193-4). 8, 10, 11, 15, 16, 17, 20 and *passim*.

II. *For cig-dze see cig.*

**dzeñ.** 378. (*Read dze-rñe?*).

**dzwe** = hdzwe, htswe, hdzwehe (p. 269)? 367 hsañ-khyañ° (p. 240).

**gdzu**, *ass. See also gzu, hdzu* I, hju, hzu (pp. 251-3). 194 ste°; 305, 308, 311 -hbyi; 390 -hti (pp. 229, 241, 251, 337, 353).

**hdza** I = Tib. mdzah, *friend, friendship. See also hdzah* I. 362 -ma-hnyoñ; 363 -ma-hñe; 376 -htrog (p. 220).

II. *See hdzo-hdza (htsa, hdzeñ).*

**hdzañ** I = Tib. mdzañs, hdzas, *wise* (pp. 224-5). 18 -hkhor; 42 hsañ-htsañ°; 44 htsah-htsañ°; 142 -hldog-stor; 200 spehi°; 269 htsah°; 285 -hyah-hthañ; 288, 318 hsi°; 314, 315 hnoñ° (pp. 224, 262, 280, 295, 322, 323, 339).

II? = Tib. bzañ, *fine, good (large).* 232-4 -hglah/glah/gla.

III? 38 hldyañ-hrdzañ°.

**hdzam** = Tib. hjam, *gentle, pleasant, mild. See also hjam* (pp. 297, 339). 68, 371, 373, 386, 389 -hbroñ; 353 hbroñ-hldar°; 122 rkwa°; 145 hnam°; 182 hbroñ-hldah°; 224 hrkwa°;



264 gsañ<sup>o</sup>; 264 hñ<sup>o</sup>; 274 hkyañ<sup>o</sup>, rñ<sup>o</sup>; 275 twañ<sup>o</sup>; 276 hkyi<sup>o</sup>; 276 g-rañ<sup>o</sup>; 278 -nag (pp. 250, 261, 268, 285, 313, 314, 319, 331, 341, 343, 361).

— **-hđzim** = Tib. zañ-ziañ, miscellaneous objects, confused (bustle)? (p. 192). 100 gdim<sup>o</sup> (p. 321).

**hđzah** I = hđza I, friend, &c., q.v. See also **hđrza**, **hđzaz**. 379 spehi-ge<sup>o</sup>; 382, 383 -hldah, a Suffix, p. 183; 43 hrañ-ldah-ge<sup>o</sup> (?) (pp. 157, 313, 323, 334).

II = Tib. za, eat. See also **hđjah**, **gzo**, **hđzoh**, **hđjo** III (p. 334). 170 hkehu-me<sup>o</sup>; 255 hsañ<sup>o</sup>; 43 (?) (pp. 316, 327, 331, 334).

**hđzar** = hjar, stick, stick together, q.v. (pp. 220, 248). See also **rdzar**. 69, 374 skyim-se(hse)<sup>o</sup>; 372 hrñe-hñ<sup>o</sup>; 376 hđza-htrogo<sup>o</sup> (pp. 145, 220, 248).

**hđzin** = Tib. hđzin, seize, hold. 74 hjo<sup>o</sup>; 369 hgoñ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 274, 331).

**hđzim**. See **hđzam**.

**hđzu** I = gdzu, ass, q.v. 183 -hdro-hphor; 352 -hdro-hkus (pp. 157, 285, 332).

II. See **smu-hđzu**.

**hđzud** = Tib. chud, be wasted, consumed (also hjud, hđzud, insert). 42 hkyañ-hrgyañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 299).

**hđzuhi** = hđzu, feign? (Tib. hđzu, rdzu, disguise oneself, pretend? Or hju, hđzu, catch at?) + hi. 344, 345 hses-hsi<sup>o</sup> (p. 269).

**hđzur** = Tib. hđzur, zur, go aside, a corner, side-note, &c. (p. 257). 45 skah-rañ<sup>o</sup>; 173 klag-hrwad<sup>o</sup> (?) (pp. 191, 257, 317, 343).

**hđze** = Tib. ze, zehu, cushion; gzed, carry, &c. 63 hyañ-so<sup>o</sup>; 110 spyi<sup>o</sup>; 296 (?) (p. 335).

**hđzeñi**. See **hđzo-hñtah**.

**hđzeñu** = Tib. gzo-re, weak, &c. (pp. 335, 368). 138 -rje (pp. 218, 335).

**hđzer** (? lect. ?). 375.

**hđzo** I = hjo, chief, or hđzohu, man? 385 -chi-te; 64 -re-hñsa<sup>o</sup> (pp. 305, 308).

II? 76, 353 do-ldo<sup>o</sup> (pp. 322-3).

**hđzo-hñtah** 29; -hđza 262; -hđzeñi 338 (2); -hñseh 364 = hñso-hñtah/hñsehi, q.v. (On the -ehi see pp. 191-2. Possibly = Tib. cha-cho, matched; only in gla-hñso-hñtah could the hñso (29 hđzo) appositely signify 'man'). (pp. 274, 283).

**hđzon** = Tib. rdzon, castle. See also **hđrdzon**, **hđjoñ**, **joñ** (pp. 150-1, 171, 241). 64, 139, 140 Moñ<sup>o</sup>; 194 -hyo-hsi; 195 hlda-hko-ge<sup>o</sup>; 205 -skyar-hrehi; 299 hri-hñ<sup>o</sup>; 356 -hyo-hsid (pp. 201, 241, 243, 265-6, 305, 308, 329).

**hđzon** = Tib. zon, gzon, keep watch; dgra-zon, guard-post. 337 stor-hñah<sup>o</sup> (p. 335).

**hđzom** = Tib. hđzom, meet (p. 279). 134 hkhog-hñ<sup>o</sup>; 282, 284 hrim<sup>o</sup>; 295 hñso-ge<sup>o</sup> (pp. 282, 321, 329).

**hđzohu**, male, man. 137 -ro; 138 -hto-hrun; 324 -hkru-hyog, -hkhad-hto (pp. 199, 218, 246, 275, 338).

**hđzoh** = hjo, gzo, &c., Tib. za, zo, &c., eat (p. 334). 362 hkoñu-prom<sup>o</sup> (pp. 274, 316, 335).

**hđzor**, perhaps for hđzo II, as in 353 (cf. 76). 77 (do?) -hldo<sup>o</sup>.

**hđzwe** = tseñu, hñse? (pp. 269, 368). 39 ses-hñmad<sup>o</sup> (p. 269).

**hđzweñe** = hđzwe, q.v. 36 ses-hñmad<sup>o</sup> (p. 269).

**rdzar**, written for rdza (= hđza I, friend, &c., q.v.), or hđzar, -re. See also **hđrza**, **hđzaz** (p. 352). 287, 290 hyañ-hkah<sup>o</sup> (pp. 315-16).

**rdzum** = Tib. hđzum, smile. See also **hđrdzum** (p. 350). 263 -me (pp. 271 n., 283).

**rdze** = Tib. rje, rdze, chieftain (p. 366). See also **rje**, **hrje**. 138 ldañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 228, 287).

**rdzo** = Tib. mdzo, the cross between the yak-bull and the cow (pp. 258, 349). 132 hñthañ<sup>o</sup>; 220 thañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 173, 258).

**rdzogs** = Tib. rdzogs, complete, fulfil (pp. 213, 348). 157 glo-ta°.

**rdzor** I written for rdzo (q.v.) -re. See also **hrdzor**. 227 mug-hgu°; 228 hbri-hgu° (pp. 215-16).

II, written for hdzo, man, or hjo, chief, +re. See also **hrdzro**. 369 hsehe° (p. 239).

**hrdza** = hdza I, friend. See also **rdzar**, **hrdzah** (pp. 315, 352). 296 hkhah°, hkah°; 382 hrgye°.

**hrdzañ**. 38 hldyañ° °hdzañ.

**hrdzah** = hrdza, friend, q.v. 46 -hgo-hpo (p. 286).

**hrdzum** = rdzum, q.v. 80 gñio° (pp. 186, 271, 293).

**hrdzur** = hdzur, go aside, &c., q.v. (pp. 350, 352). 221 hthañ-hgam°.

**hrdzo** = rdzo, q.v. 16 hkrug°; 219 htañ° (p. 144).

**hrdzoñ** = hdzon, castle, q.v. (pp. 150, 348). 194-hyo-hsi (p. 241).

**hrdzor** = rdzor I (= rdzo+re), q.v. 226 mor-hgu° (pp. 215-16).

**hrdzro**, written for hrdzo (= hdzo I, man, or hjo, chief)+re. 49 gse° (p. 239).

## W

**wa** I, make, do, or Auxiliary Verb.: cf. Tib. bas, done with, and see also **hwa**, **hwañ**, **hwas**, **g-wah**, **hgwa**, **hgwah** (pp. 337-40). 179 gsom°; 309 hmu° (pp. 182, 270, 338). See also **kya** (hkyā)-wa-ñe, rgoñ-wa, hwi-wa.

II = Tib. hbañ, sediment? 190 hyah° (pp. 228, 285).

**wa-hdañ** = Tib. o-ldon, ho-don, windpipe. 258 (p. 221). See also **hwa-hldañ**.

**war** (p. 341). See also **hwar**. 101 hrañ°.

**we** = Tib. byed, Hsi-hsia we, make, do (pp. 196, n. 2, 337). See also **wehi** I, **hwe**, **hwehi** I, **hwehe**, **hwer**, **g-we**, **g-wehi**, **g-wehe**, **g-wer**. 114 hrañ°; 191 hra°;

381 tsig-Moñ° (pp. 282, 283, 285).

**wehi** I = we, q.v. See also **hwehi**, **hwehe**. 100 hko°; 139 hrañ°; 196 hwan° (pp. 190, 243, 337).

II cream? See also **hwehi** II. 74 -nehu (pp. 250-1).

**g-wah** = wa, hwa, &c., q.v. (pp. 337-40). 129 -hram; 224 -hrsañ (pp. 342, 343, 361).

**g-we** = we, make, do, q.v. (pp. 196, n. 2, 346). 152 -hku-rno; 197 rmañ-hldab°; 198 hldañ-hkhañ°; 201 rmañ-ña°; 205 -hkor; 206, 207 rmañ-ña-g-we-re-g-we; 375 hphyo-hli° (pp. 228, 239).

**g-wehi** = g-we, q.v. (pp. 196, n. 2, 346). 199 rmañ-ña°; 263 mo° (p. 283).

**g-wehe** = g-we, q.v. (pp. 196, n. 2, 346). 201 rmañ-ña°; 298 hswah°; 357 -hliyah, -sko.

**g-wer**, written for g-we, make, &c., q.v., +re. See also **hwer** (pp. 196, n. 2, 346). 164 swah°; 301 swa° (pp. 270, 277).

**hwa** I = wa I, q.v. See also **hwañ**, **g-wah**. 121 hsi°; 137 -hkah; 162 hdrab°; 228 -hrsañ; 230 -bzer; 269 -hrno; 270 -rgya; 317 -ne; 339 hkyah° (pp. 218, 253-5, 275, 292, 315, 338, 339).

— **ste**, written for hwas, q.v., +te (a Suffix, pp. 188-90). 71, 73, 75 (pp. 273, 337-8).

II -hldañ = wa-hdañ, q.v. See also **hwañ-hldañ**. 121, 278 (pp. 178, 221).

III. See **hwi-hwa**, rat, mouse. 273 (pp. 297, 341).

**hwag** = Tib. hbag, be defiled. See also **hboq**. 324 g-yah-hpañ° (pp. 228, 340).

**hwan** = Tib. dbañ, power (pp. 341, 346 and n.). 5 ram (?) -ge°, klu-ge°; 210 -ta, a Suffix, pp. 182-3 (pp. 245, 341, 361).

**hwad** = Tib. hbad, watch, hbad, call out, endeavour. See also **hbod** (pp. 340-1). 6 mye-hyañ°; 14 hsehe-hwad-hwad;

- 88 *həog-hdo-dze*; 109 *tho-rgyam-ge*; 268 *-hldañ-krañ*; 301 *hri-hci-hwadhi*; 334 *hkeg-rko*; 335 *-hwañ-rho* (pp. 265-6, 269, 271, 338, 340).
- hwadhi** = *hwad*, *q.v.*, + *hi*. 301 (pp. 265, 340).
- hwam**, *residence or village* = *Tib.* barns, boms, sbam, collect (p. 243). 11 *-hśid*; 155 *-hnom-son*; 196 *-wehi*; 258 *-nehu* (pp. 241, 245, 340, 361).
- hwah** = *hwa* I, *q.v.* 18 *hbar* (?); 172 *hdrab*; 224 *-hrsañ*; 228 *-glah*; 269 *-ne*, *-hrho*; 270 *-hldañra*; 334 *-hrog*; 335 *hwad*; 353 *-hrah* (pp. 178, 254, 338, 339, 340).
- hwar** I = *Tib.* *hbar*, *burn, blaze, bloom* (p. 341). 29 *-hwar* (?); 198 *-ta*, a *Suffix*, pp. 182-3.
- II, *written for hwa* I, *do*, *dec.*, + *re*. 354 *nañ* (p. 230).
- III? 107 *hrañ*. See also *war* (p. 341).
- hwars**, *perhaps Aorist of hwar* I. 203 *cha-hru*.
- hwas**, *Aorist of hwa* I = *Tib.* *bas*, *done for, disposed of*. See also *hwa-ste* (for *hwas-te*). 308 *hmañ-hri* (p. 337).
- hwi** I 386 *rmañ*. Cf. *rmañ-bri*.
- (II) *-wa/hwa/hwehi* = *Tib.* *byi-ba*, *mouse, rat*. (On *-ehi* see p. 191). 173 *hwehi*; 201 *wa*; 273 *hwa* (pp. 257, 297, 341).
- hwe** = *we*, *wehi*, *do, make*, *dec.*, *q.v.* See also *hwehi* I, *hwehe*, *hwer*. 85 *rhe*; 125 *hldañ-krañ*; 157 *hldañ*; 374 *hpah* (pp. 220, 288, 289, 335, 341).
- hwen**, *vain* ? = *Tib.* *dben*, *solitary, secret*; *dben-gtam*, *secret talk*; *Hsi-hsia wen*, *bad* ? 159 *hlab-ta* (p. 341).
- hwehi** I = *hwe*, *we*, *do, make*, *dec.*, *q.v.* 380 *hrahi*; 383 *hdzah-hldañ*.
- II = *wehi* II? 47 *-hśi-hpo* (pp. 251, 341).
- III *hwi-hwehi*. See *hwi*. 173 (pp. 257, 341).

- hwehe** = *hwe* I, *dec.*, *q.v.* 348 *hgweg* (pp. 248, 343).
- hwer**, *written for hwe*, *q.v.*, + *re*. 19 *hti*.
- hwyr** = *Tib.* *hbyer*, *escape*. 85 *rhe-hwe-ge* (p. 220, 341).
- rw-**. See under *R*.

## Z

- bzir** = *Hsi-hsia* *gzir*, *wise* ? (pp. 167-8, 315). 207 *hdi* (p. 315).
- bzer** = *Tib.* *bzer*, *fort* (?) (pp. 167-8, 339-40). 19 *htib*; 177 *hkoñu-prom*; 230 *hwa* (pp. 225, 339).
- zrañ**, *fierce, violent* ? (pp. 167-8, 352). 54 *-hba*; 56 *rhe-hno*.

## Z

- gzu** = *gdzu*, *hdzu* I, *ass*, *q.v.* See also *hju*, *hzu* (pp. 168, n. 1, 251-2). 307 *-hbyi*; 353 *-hdro-hphor* (pp. 276, 332).
- gzo** = *Tib.* *zos*, *Imperative, dec.*, of *za*, *eat* (pp. 199, 334-5). 165 *hrgu-ma* (pp. 277, 335). See also *hjo*, *hdzoñ*.
- bzod** = *Tib.* *bzod*, *bear, endure* (p. 168). 72 *hsor-hsam* (p. 342).
- gbzañ** (?) = *Tib.* *bzañ*, *fine, large*; but see also *hdzañ* II. 21 *g-ri* (p. 168).
- hzah** = *Tib.* *bzah*, *woman, wife*. 190 *hmo[-]r[e]* (pp. 240, 285).
- hzu** = *gzu*, *dec.*, *ass*, *q.v.* (p. 168). 188 *hkyañ*; 117 *rañ-hche* (pp. 251-2, 285).

## H

(For *h* as Prefix see the Consonants in general.)

- ha** I *written for h* (with mistaken punctuation). 61 *-yañ* for *hyañ*; 82 *ryo-ha-ge*; 103 *-rta* for *hrta*; 236 *-glah* for *hglah*; 320 *-stoñ* for *hstoñ* ?
- II *miswriting for following h*. 119.



**hi.** *Sentence-ending Particle, probably exclamatory* (p. 177), following **A: Consonants** (with or without interpunct). *List*, p. 176. **B: Vowels.** *List, with discussion of doubtful cases*, pp. 176-7.

**hukah**, written for **hkah**. 46 (p. 286).  
**hurañ**, written for **hrañ**. 230.

## Y

**yañ** I = **Tib. yañ**, also, even, a Particle following the word, or sense, qualified and placed nearly always (exceptions, 345 **gdag-yañ**, 357 **hram-yañ**) at the end of its clause or/and before a caesura point in a verse. See also **hyañ** I (pp. 204, 311). 79, 80, 92, 119, 123, 160, 161, 162, 173, 180, 306, 332, 345, 357.

**II** = **Tib. yañ** (*Chin. yang?*), *runnel, watercourse* = **yur**. See also **hyañ** III (p. 311). 179 **hldyañ**° **chyö**; 355 **-hldyah-hldyah** (p. 329).

**III** = **I?** See **ca-yañ**, **hcañ-hyañ**, **hchah-yañ**.

**yuhu** = **Tib. yul**, village, district, country. See also **hyuhu** I, **hyu** III (pp. 320, 333). 369 **hldyañ**°.

**yer** = **Tib. yer**, **g-yer**, to be wide awake; **g-yer-po**, expert, wise. See also **hyer**, **g-yer**. 141 **hsah**° (p. 278).

**yod**, possibly connected with **Tib. g-yo**, be unsteady, **g-yob**, shake, &c. 16 **hrño-hyod**°. See also **hyod** (p. 258).

**yon**, Auxiliary Verb with probably Future sense, as in **Tib. hoñ**, **yoñ**. See also **g-yoñ**, **hyon**, **hyoñ** (p. 199). 160 **stor-dor**° (p. 253).

**yob** = **Tib. yab**, **g-yob**, be pendulous, shake; **g-yob**, fan, curtain. See also **hyob**. 166 **hsah**° (pp. 142, 200).

**g-yañ** = **Tib. gyañ(-ra)**, cattle-(yard)? or **g-yañ** = **hyañ** II, good, &c., *q.v.* 31 -**ra** (p. 311).

**g-yah** I = superior, *cf. Tib. ya*,

*antithetic to ma, lower* (pp. 226-7). See also **hyañ** I. 136 **gldag-nag**°; 152 **-htsa** (?); 271 **htor-hrtah**°; 287 **-hthañ** (pp. 228, 297).

**II** = **Tib. ya**, match, adversary, rival (pp. 227-8). 156 **-ta-mehi**; 317 **hldog**° **to**; 152 **-htsa** (?) (pp. 224, 323, 338-9). See also **hyañ** II.

**III front, cf. Tib. g-yar**, mouth, face, front (pp. 228-9). 323 **-hpañ** (p. 228).

**g-yar** = **Tib. yar**, Adverbial form of **g-yah** I (p. 227). 128 **hkhar-hrpag**°; 136 **hkhar-rpag**° (pp. 242-3, 263, 305).

**g-yaha**, written for **g-yah**, 266.

**g-yehi** ? = **hgyehi**, *q.v.* (be divided, **Tib. hgyed**?). See also **hyed**. 271 **hldyañ-ma**°.

**g-yehe** = **g-yehi** (be divided?). 166 **hkoñu-prom**° (p. 276).

**g-yer** = **yer**, *q.v.* See also **hyer**. 167 **hsah**°; 330 **hsa**°; 346 **hsah**°; 366 **-hnor** (pp. 278, 332).

**g-yo** = **Tib. g-yo**, move, waver. See also **g-yos**, **hyos** (pp. 141-2). 27 **g-rah**°; 28 **-hpud-to** (pp. 231, 309).

**g-yog** I = **Tib. hog**, **yog**, low, low ground, valley. See also **hyog** I (p. 266). 15, 51 **-hsañ-ma-hpul**; 200 **-hldañ** a Suffix, p. 183; 299 **hdzoñ**°; 320 **hrgyah-hñi-hke**° (pp. 265-6, 267, 279).

**g-yoñ** = **yon**, **hyoñ**, *q.v.* (p. 199). 142 **stor-hdor**°.

**g-yos** (?), Aorist of **g-yo**, *q.v.* 26 **hrah**° (p. 197 n.).

**hya**, sheep (p. 94). 45 **hñañ**° (p. 343).

**hyañ** I = **yañ** I, also, even, *q.v.* For list of occurrences see p. 311.

**II good** (antithetic to *mor*, bad) or superior (pp. 215-16, 311). 5 **hsas-beg**°; 10 **-htañ**; 41 **-rmyi**; 63 **-tsa**; 64 **-ge**; 66, 226 **-hrah**; 287, 290 **-hkah-rdza**; 383 **-htse**; 388 **-tsa** (pp. 187, 216, 274, 304, 305, 315, 318, 329).

III = yañ II, *runnel*, &c., *q.v.* (p. 311). 178 hldyañ<sup>o</sup> ohyo; 316 -hdyañ (?); 355 -re-rgyeñ-na-yañ-; 367 hldyañ-hyahñ-hyo, hyahñ-goñ; 391 hldyañ-hyañ-hyo (pp. 179, 329).

IV, hyañ-hso ? = *Tib. yañs, large*. 63 -hrñi, -hdze (pp. 303, 335).

V, hcah-hyañ, hchah-yañ. 241 -hbro; 242 -thor (pp. 303-4). See ca<sup>o</sup>, hcah<sup>o</sup>, hchah<sup>o</sup>.

hyah I = g-yah I, *superior*, *q.v.* 72 -hrgehe; 111 hso-hnah<sup>o</sup> (?); 112 hnah-hldañ<sup>o</sup>; 133 hre-hldi<sup>o</sup> (? hyah II); 257 -rnah; 285, 286, 288 -hthañ; 294 -hto, a *Suffix*, pp. 184-6; 315, 318 -htañ; 304 -hdad; 306 -hdahd; 374 htho<sup>o</sup> (?). See also hyah III (pp. 216, 227, 229, 230, 288, 296, 297, 298, 323, 361).

II = g-yah II, *match, adversary, rival*. 65, 67 -hdo, p. 186; 222, 386 -htañ, a *Suffix*, pp. 182-3; 315 -htoñ, pp. 184-6 (pp. 228, 229, 274, 287, 296, 323, 331).

III = g-yah III, *front, face*, &c. 190 -wa-hkañ; 221 -hkru-hbro; 252 -me; 325 -hkruhu-hbro; 266-70, 272 -ge—these to be placed under hyah I ? (pp. 228, 260, 274, 281, 285, 298, 339).

hyah-hñehi = *Tib. ya-ña, fear*. 115 -hñahd (pp. 191, 217).

hyim, *diminish*. 59 hrañ-hgam<sup>o</sup> (p. 240).

—sto, *written for hyims-to (a Suffix, pp. 184-6)*. 29 hde<sup>o</sup> (p. 259).

hyu I. 82 hcah-rte<sup>o</sup> (p. 320).

II. 212 khyu-hkhyañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 359).

III = yuhu, *village, district, country*, *q.v.* See also hyuhu (p. 333). 123, 372, 387 hldyañ<sup>o</sup>; 147 -sad; 305 nañ<sup>o</sup>; 345, 350, 351 -hstsah; 346 -hgyi-ka (pp. 246, 292, 305).

hyun = *Tib. yun, space of time*. 260 hgo-hsor-re<sup>o</sup> (p. 261).

hyuhu I = yuhu, *village, district*, &c.; hyu III, *q.v.* 49 rñam-nar<sup>o</sup>; 368 hrñam-hdar<sup>o</sup> (p. 320).

II = I ? 332 hku-hprah<sup>o</sup>; 333 hrko<sup>o</sup> (p. 223).

hyed = *Tib. hgye, hgyed, divide, scatter*, &c. See also hgye (pp. 235-6, 291). 53 me<sup>o</sup>; 71 g-roñ<sup>o</sup>; 393 sme<sup>o</sup> (pp. 273, 337).

hyer = yer, g-yer, *awake*, &c., *q.v.* 250 hstsah<sup>o</sup>; 267 hsañ<sup>o</sup>; 297 hscañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 278).

hyo I = *Tib. yo, g-yo, waver, shake, crooked*, &c. See also g-yo, g-yos, hyos (p. 242). 178, 179, 367, 391 hyañ<sup>o</sup>/yañ<sup>o</sup>/hyahñ<sup>o</sup>; 179 gsom-wa<sup>o</sup>; 194 -hñi; 356 -hñid (pp. 179, 235, 241-2, 338, 353).

II = *Tib. yo, set in motion, man-age (khab-yo)*. 154 hchos<sup>o</sup>; 326 hrgye(d)<sup>o</sup>; 338 hrgyed<sup>o</sup> (pp. 273, 291).

hyog I = *Tib. g-yog, servant, subordinate*. 134 re-hmoñ<sup>o</sup> (?); 254 -hprah-hdag (?); 289, 321, 323, 324 hkru<sup>o</sup>/kruhu<sup>o</sup>/hkhruhu<sup>o</sup> (pp. 295-6).

II = *Tib. yog-pa, pole, stick*. 259 -hdag (pp. 192, 202, 343).

hyogs = hyog I, *servant*, &c. *q.v.* 18 hkyañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 295).

hyod = yod, *q.v.* 16 -yod (p. 258).

hyon = yon, *q.v.* (p. 199). 161-3 stor-hdor<sup>o</sup> (p. 253).

hyob = yob, *be pendulous, shake*, *q.v.* 22 smuñu-hku<sup>o</sup>; 31-2 hbra-hldar-ma<sup>o</sup> (pp. 319-20).

hyoho = g-yoho, *q.v.* 119 stor-hdor<sup>o</sup> (pp. 199, 243).

hyor = *Tib. yor, g-yor, heap, a votive cairn (obo, lab-rtse) on a route*. 239 hphag-hbah-ge<sup>o</sup>; 299 g-ri-sti<sup>o</sup>; 300 hrñi-sti<sup>o</sup> (pp. 265-6).

hyos, *Aorist of g-yo, shake, quake*, *q.v.*, and g-yos (pp. 196-7). 25 hrañ<sup>o</sup>; 26, 34 g-rañ<sup>o</sup>; 96, 98 rgor<sup>o</sup> (pp. 138, 262, 335, 345).

## R

-r } with equivalence to re, incorpor-  
-ra } ated in the preceding mono-  
syllable; A: after Vowels, pp.

- 173-5; B: *after Consonants*, pp. 178-9 (pp. 312-13).
- ra** = Tib. *ra* (*enclosed or limited*) place. See also **rah**, **g-rah** I, **hra** I, **hṛā**, **hrah** I, **hrah** I, **hrar** (pp. 312-14). 7 *skuḥu-ra*?; 31 *g-yañ*; 49 *hce*; 78 *meḥi*; 148 *rmañ*; 263, 265, 278 *gśaṇ*; 264, 265 *hño* (pp. 244, 246).
- rag** = Tib. *rags*, *dyke*, *embankment*. See also **hrag** (p. 147). 283 *hgah*.
- rañ** I = Tib. *rañ*, *self*. See also **hṛaṇ** I.
- **-hche**, *self-willed* (cf. Tib. *rañ-hdod*). See also **hṛaṇ** (p. 252).
- II = Tib. *rañ*, *rañs*, *be pleased*? See also **hṛaṇ** II. 103 *ma* (p. 294).
- rab** = Tib. *rab*, *ford*? See also **hrab**. 376 *-hgo* (p. 261).
- ram**, *harmony*, *concordant*. See also **hram** (pp. 220, 277, 293). 5? *lect*; 157 *skye-ta* (pp. 239, 293).
- rah** = *ra*, *q.v.* See also **hrah**, **hrah** I. 45 *skah*; 74 *hphah-ma*; 227 *htham*; 279 *hño* (pp. 274, 317).
- ru** = Tib. *ru*, *horn*. See also **hru**, **hruḥu**. 70 *-ge-hkrom*; 103 *rgoñ*; 347, 351 *glyaṇ* (pp. 303-4, 333).
- **-glañ**, *horned ox*. 66 (p. 318).
- re** I = Tib. *re*, *red*, *is*, *being*, *mostly at end of a Subordinate Clause*, *but sometimes with Suffix* *te* or *to* (pp. 173-5, 200). See also **hre** I, **hreh** I, **sta-re**. 5, 6, 32, 36 and *passim*.
- **-hto** (*a Suffix*, pp. 184-6). 382.
- II = Tib. *re*, *each*, *every*; *res*, *times*, *requital* (*perhaps derived from* I) (p. 202). See also **hre** II, **hreh** I. 154 *myi*; 251 *jo*; 252 *hlab*; 250, 255, 276-7. (pp. 174, 236, 274).
- III = Tib. *re*, *hope*. See also **hre** III. 211 *-mye*.
- re-ma** (*for me*?) *-hnaḍ*? 45.
- re-hmoñ** 134 *-hyog-re*.
- ro** = Tib. *-ro* *country*, *district*, (*large*) *place*. See also **roho**, **hro** I (p. 314). 137 *hdzoḥu*; 381 *spo* (pp. 218, 275, 338).
- rog** I = Tib. *rogs*, *grogs*, *comrade*, *assistant*. See also **hrog**. 211 *-hji-rdañ* (?) (p. 260).
- II = Tib. *rog*, *black*? 156 *na* (p. 239).
- rom** = Tib. *rum*, *dark* (*space*)? See also **hrom** (p. 368). 100 *na* (p. 293).
- roho** = *ro*, *q.v.* 384 *ldyo* (p. 327).
- rwa** = Tib. *rwa*, *horn*. See also **hrwa**. 45 *hriñ* (p. 343).
- rwañ** = Tib. *dwañs*, *lustre*, *bright*, *force of language*. See also **dwañ**. 178 *hkah* (p. 179).
- rwehi**, *end*, *be ended*, *be destroyed*? See also **rwer**, **hrwehi**. 98 *hkhor-kyañ* (p. 345).
- rwer**. *Locative form of* *rwe(hi)*. 97 (pp. 262, 345).
- rwyin** = Tib. *hbyin*, *hbyin*, *sink*; *dbyin*, *space*? 33 *hnañ-hrañ-ge* (p. 346).
- rwe** = Tib. *dbye*, *divide*; *dbyes*, *expansion*, &c. See also **hbye**, **rbye**. 15 *hbu*; 91 *-htaḥ*, *a Suffix*, pp. 182-3 (pp. 267, 327, 345).
- g-rah** I = *ra*, *rah*, *hra*, *hrah*, *place*, *q.v.* 7, 20 *-gag-hner*; 26, 34 *-hyos*; 27 *-g-yo* (pp. 309, 312-13, 335, 361).
- II = Tib. *dgra*, *enemy*. 262 *-nag*; 314 *-hsah-hkhehe* (pp. 224, 262, 283, 313).
- III = Tib. *ra*, *goat*? 276 *-hdzam-nag* (p. 314).
- g-ri** I = Tib. *ri*, *mountain*. See also **g-rihi**, **hri**, **hrihi** (pp. 264-71). 21 *-hruḥu*; 34 *śid*; 35 *meḥi*; 186 *hldyañ*; 252 *-hbañ*; 290 *hbos*; 296 *hsaḥ* (?); 299 *-sti*; 301 *-hrde-hldaḥ*, *-dze*; 308 *-hpañ*; 312 *-sta-meḥi*; 313 *-hkruḥu-hbro*; 314 *-hjim* (pp. 201, 254, 265, 270, 280, 298, 303, 321, 331).
- II = Tib. *ri-ba*, *worth*, *price*. 157 *-ta*, *a Suffix*, pp. 182-3 (p. 267).
- g-rihi** = **g-ri** I, *q.v.* 298 *-hldom* 309 *-hkuñ*; 312 *-sta-meḥi* (pp. 201, 266, 270).



**g-rub** = Tib. grub, rub, *rush in a body*; rub-te, all. See also **hrub** (p. 221). 261 -hgobho (p. 342).

**g-roñ** = Tib. groñ/grañ, *cold, or groñ, groñs, die*. See also **hroñ** II. 71 -hyed (pp. 268-9, 273, 337).

**hra** I = ra, &c., *place, q.v.* See also **hrah**. 50 hce°; 347 stañ-hro°.

II! 249 -hyañ.

**hrag** = rag, *dyke, embankment, q.v.* 13 hkra°; 55 -hkyer; 256 -ma-hbog; 283 hgah° (pp. 147, 173).

**hrañ** I = rañ I, *self, q.v.* [3], 5, 6, 8, 37 -hlda/hldah; 59 -hgam; 21, 166, 167 -hrah; 33 hnañ°; 101, 107 -war/hwar; 104 hkañ° (?); 116, 135 -pu-glo/hlo; 117 -hkañ; 147 -hrgyañ; 192 rgyed°; 205 -klar; 259 -hdom?; 308, 310, 311 hgah-hldoñ° (pp. 142, 200, 202, 252, 270, 283, 314, 319, 343, 345-6).

II = rañ II, *be pleased, q.v.* 68 glo°; 214, 329 hkañ/hkhañ-gsañ°; 308, 310, 311 hgah-hldoñ° (?); 326, 338 hrgye/hrgyed-hyo° (pp. 268, 270, 314).

— (I) -hche, *self-willed* = rañ°, *q.v.* 115 (p. 252). See also **hdrab-hwa-hrañ** (II).

**hrab** = rab, *ford, q.v.* 51 hmar-hbah-ge°.

**hram** = ram, *agreeable, harmony, &c., q.v.* (p. 293). 10 hlah-gsom° (?); 35, 37, 82, 86, 87 hcego°; 90, 94, 97, 119, 120-3, 365 htsog°; 49 hrño-hcañ°; 73, 76 hla/lah°; 129 g-wah°; 288 hswah°; 368 hrño-hprañ°; 376 hdza-htrogo° (pp. 190, 220, 239, 262, 265, 270, 288, 291-3, 321, 342, 345).

II, *group, company (hardly different from I)*. 184 -hkañ-hkañ (?); 281 hbo°; 357 -yañ-phlañ (p. 231).

**hrah** I = ra, &c., *place, q.v.* 8, 25 -hyos; 21, 166, 167 hrañ°; 23 hses-hbeg°; 26 -g-yos; 56 hce°; 66, 226 hyañ°; 77 -hrtah; 114

-rtah, -we-rtah; 139 -wehi-rta; 146, 273, 358 -htoñ; 186, 369 mehi°; 216 hrgyed°; 225, 236, 244, 246 -hldi; 228 hrah°; 277 gsañ-re -htsañ -re°; 315 rgo°; 341, 392 rgyed°; 342 mye°? rgye[d]°?; 353 hwañ°; 370 mehi-spehi° (pp. 140-2, 228, 229, 243, 261, 262, 281, 282, 306, 313, 318, 319, 331).

II = g-rah II, *enemy, q.v.* 43 -ldah (?); 149 -sññ-ñe; 182 -rte (?); 202 -hmad; 354 -hrtre (pp. 222, 313, 334).

**hrai** = hrah + hi? 380.

**hrai**, *written for hrah, q.v.*, +re (pp. 173-4). 216, 243, 246, 248 hrgyed°; 237 rgyed° (p. 140).

**hras** = gras, hgras, *aligned, q.v.* (p. 266). 344 hlah-hkyañ° (p. 269).

**hri** = Tib. ri, *mountain*. See also **g-ri** I, **g-rihi**, **hrihi** (pp. 264-71). 13 hdoñ°; 14 hrañ°; 19 -hldyañ; 168 hbyio°; 294 -hkruhu-hbroho; 295 htsah°; 297 hscañ-hyer°; 297 rñeñe-hbrom°; 299 -hño; 300 -hgru; 300 -hei; 308 -hwas; 311, 312 -stañ-mehi (pp. 142, 200, 201, 229, 254, 265, 267, 270-1, 332, 337, 340).

**hriñ** = Tib. riñ, *long*. 44 -rwa (p. 343).

**hrim** = Tib. rim, *order, succession, degree*; rim-hgro, *ceremony, attendance* (p. 308). 282, 284 -hdzom; 293, 297 -ge-hgrus; 300 -hldoñ; 319 -re-hldoñ; 347, 348 -glehu (pp. 265, 282, 298, 308, 321).

**hrihi** = hri, *mountain, q.v.* 62 hñd°; 290 htsah°; 291 hbo°; 293 hbo°; 294, 297 -hdom; 300 -sti; 302 -hphañ; 305 -hrgam (pp. 171, 246, 267, 270-1, 297, 298, 303, 306).

**hri** = Tib. hri, *bris, diminish*? cf. ris from hri, *write*. 84 hceag-rgyag° (p. 259).

**hru** = ru, *horn, q.v.* See also **hruhu**. 82 hrgoñ-hru-ge°; 103 rgoñ-ru-

- ge<sup>o</sup>; 202, 203 hcha<sup>o</sup>/cha<sup>o</sup> (?); 238 hsehe-hldu<sup>o</sup>; 276 hsu-re<sup>o</sup> (pp. 156, 321, 333).
- hrug** = Tib. (mgo)-rug, (head) bowed down. 47 hbu<sup>o</sup> (pp. 250, 286).
- hrun** = Tib. ruñ, to be right, ought, have to, &c. See also **hruhi** (p. 199). 30, 32 hrugu-hto<sup>o</sup>; 80 stor-to<sup>o</sup>; 138 hdzohu-hto<sup>o</sup>, stor-hto<sup>o</sup> (p. 335).
- hrub** = g-rub, rush in a body, q.v. 108 hño-bro<sup>o</sup>; 349 hthar-phyañ-ge<sup>o</sup> (pp. 221, 248, 343).
- hruhi** = hrun, q.v., +hi (p. 199). 167 stor-hto<sup>o</sup>.
- hruhu** = ru, hru, horn, q.v. 21 g-ri<sup>o</sup>; 293 hrihi<sup>o</sup> (pp. 297, 298).
- hre** I = re I, is, being, q.v. 155 šid-rgyañ<sup>o</sup>?; 159 hñah-ñehos<sup>o</sup>, spye-chos<sup>o</sup> (p. 145).
- II = re II, each, every, times, q.v. 48 -ge-rgyo; 251 hbañ<sup>o</sup>; 267 hpra<sup>o</sup> (?) (p. 330).
- III = re III, hope, q.v. 132 -hldi; 155 šido? (pp. 171, 216, 229).
- hreg** = Tib. hreg, bregs, regs, cut off, amputate. 122 hram<sup>o</sup> (p. 293).
- hrehi** = re I, is, q.v., +hi. 200 rñe-ne<sup>o</sup>; 204 gsañ-hkañ<sup>o</sup>; 205 hdzoh-skyar<sup>o</sup> (pp. 200, 222).
- hrehe** = re II, each, &c., q.v. 43 pra<sup>o</sup>; 249 bañ<sup>o</sup>; 251 hbañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 274).
- hro** I = ro, country, place, &c., q.v. 11 hmu<sup>o</sup>; 19 hldu<sup>o</sup>; 181 hpro<sup>o</sup>; 213 hgo<sup>o</sup> (?); 272 hldyañ-pañ<sup>o</sup>; 333 -hgoñ; 345 rgyeb-ñehi<sup>o</sup>; 347 stañ<sup>o</sup>; 377 hpañ-hldan<sup>o</sup>; 384 hldyo<sup>o</sup>; 386 hldyañ<sup>o</sup>; 387 hldyoñ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 155-6, 269, 270, 274, 306, 331).
- II, wolf? 110 -hbehi-hbah; 234 htsag<sup>o</sup> hbehi-hbar; 335 hrog-ge<sup>o</sup> (?) (p. 293). See also **hror**.
- III = Tib. ro, corpse? 198 -ta, a Suffix, pp. 182-3 (p. 341).
- hrog** I = rog I, comrade, assistant, q.v. 50 -hñor; 197 mu<sup>o</sup>; 334 hwañ<sup>o</sup>; 335 -ge-hro (pp. 318, 338).
- II = Tib. grog, a deep ravine with torrent. 344 hbo-hroñ<sup>o</sup> (p. 231).
- hroñ** I = Tib. roñ, a deep gorge (p. 268). 68, 371, 373, 384, 386, 389 hdzam-hbroñ<sup>o</sup>; 344 hbo<sup>o</sup>; 373-7 hkad<sup>o</sup> (pp. 231, 250, 268, 269, 331).
- II = g-roñ II, Tib. groñ, groñs, die; cf. groñ, grañ, cold. 36 -hken (p. 269).
- hron**, Imperative form (p. 199), 'repose'? 378 rkom-ge<sup>o</sup>.
- hrom** (vacant) space = rom, q.v. 107 na<sup>o</sup>; 257 htor...<sup>o</sup>; 385 -ge-hti (pp. 302, 336).
- hror**, written for hro II, wolf, q.v., +re. 303, 310 rñe/hrñe-hldañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 270).
- hrwa**, bow = rwa, horn, q.v.; cf. Tib. rwa-gzu, bow. 59 -hdañ-hpog (p. 343).
- hrawa** = Tib. brañ, dwelling-place. 11 -hkañ-hkañ (p. 344).
- hrwad** I = Tib. rbad, harsh noise (pp. 257, 309). 32 -hman-hldañ (p. 345).
- II = Tib. rbad, screaming eagle. 172 -hbañ-prom; 173 klag<sup>o</sup> (pp. 257, 345).
- hrwehi**, end, be destroyed = rwehi, q.v. 22 hrañ-hrah<sup>o</sup>; 27 hldañ-rmañ<sup>o</sup>; 113 hldañ-krañ<sup>o</sup>; 214 -gtsu-ge (pp. 259, 291, 345).
- hrlehi**, authorities = hld I, hldchi, hldche, q.v. 288 -hswah-hram (pp. 278-9).
- hrlomhi** = hrlom = glom, conceit, covet, q.v., +hi. 385 hrñe-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 336).
- hrloho**, swirl? 15 hmar-hbah-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 350).

## L

- la** I, Postposition, to, for (Tib. la) (p. 193). 69 hbehi<sup>o</sup>, hphag<sup>o</sup>; 70 hbyig<sup>o</sup> (pp. 193, 247-50).
- II = Tib. la, a high pass. 345 -po-[r]e (p. 269).
- la-la**, a jingle, signifying something overt or large, antithetic to li-li, q.v. 109 pa<sup>o</sup> (p. 280 and n. 1).

**lañ** = Tib. rañ *in*; mo-rañ, *lone female* (p. 221); but see **mo** I. 108 mo<sup>o</sup> (p. 221).

**lad** = Tib. lan, glan, *reply, retribution*. See also **hlad** (pp. 303-4). 225, 226 hsañ<sup>o</sup>; 235 rñe<sup>o</sup>; 244 gse<sup>o</sup> (pp. 141, 303, 304).

**lamhi** = Tib. lam, road, path, journey, + hi. See also **hlam**. 229 hsañ-hgam<sup>o</sup>, hgwañ-hsañ<sup>o</sup>.

**lah** = hla, Tib. zla, moon, q.v. 75 -hram-hte (pp. 273, 337-8).

**li-li**, a jingle, signifying something *slly* or *small*, antithetic to la-la, q.v. (p. 280, n. 1). Cf. Tib. chi-li-li, si-li-li. 109 hjim<sup>o</sup>.

**le** = Tib. leb, flat? 219, 220 hthañ<sup>o</sup> (p. 272).

**lom**, well? (p. 233). 363 hmu<sup>o</sup>.

**lol** = Tib. rol, play? But see **hlon**. 194 ste-gdzu-ge<sup>o</sup>; 195 hthar-mye-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 241).

**hla** = lah, moon, q.v. 73 -hram-hte (pp. 273, 337-8).

**hlañ**? 17 hñor<sup>o</sup>.

— **hjañ**, camel? Cf. Hsi-hsia lañ-nōñ *in* Laufer, 'The Si-hia Language,' pp. 20, 23-4. 101, 107.

**hlad** = lad, *reply, retribution*, q.v. 225, 226, 227 hsañ<sup>o</sup>; 230, 237 rñe-ge<sup>o</sup>; 231, 232, 239 rñe<sup>o</sup>; 233, 236, 237 glañ<sup>o</sup>/hgla<sup>o</sup>; 238, 243, 245, 246, 247 -mañ-mañna, -ma-mañna, -ma-ma-hña, -ma-hman; 240 gse-hlda<sup>o</sup>; 240, 242 gse<sup>o</sup>; 247 -htoñ (pp. 141, 183, 230, 234, 303-4, 361).

**hlab** = Tib. lab, *speak*. See also **glab**, **hlobhi**. 67, 70 -me; 159, 181 -ta, a *Suffix*, pp. 182-3; 180 gsañ-hdi<sup>o</sup>; 181 gsañ-hseg<sup>o</sup>; 182 -ge-plañ-na; 252 -re; 253 -me; 325 -hko-hgyan; 385 -hñañ (pp. 145-6, 155-6, 173, 197, 199, 231, 264, 272-3, 274-5, 331, 341).

**hlam** = lam, road, journey, q.v. 25 hrañ-hyos<sup>o</sup>; 68 hña<sup>o</sup>; 232 rñe-hlad-ge<sup>o</sup> (pp. 138, 238).

**hlamna** = hlām + na. 236 glañ-hlad<sup>o</sup>.

**hlamhi** = hlām + hi. 224 hwañ-hsañ<sup>o</sup>; 225, 226 hsañ-lad/hlad<sup>o</sup>; 226, 227 hsañ-hlad<sup>o</sup>; 228 hwa-hsañ<sup>o</sup>; 229 hgwañ-hsañ<sup>o</sup>; 240 gse-hlda-hlad<sup>o</sup> (p. 183).

**hli**, wing? (p. 132). 375 hphyo<sup>o</sup>.

**hlo** I, group, company, perhaps = hldohu (Tib. lo), q.v. (pp. 322-3). 154 -ge-blah-hldo; 275 hño-re<sup>o</sup>; 383 rgye<sup>o</sup> (pp. 222, 285).

II. See **pu-glo** (hlo).

**hlon** = Tib. lon, arrive. But see **lol**. 357 thar-mye-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 241).

**hlobhi** = hlob, Imperative of hlab, q.v., + hi. 378 hse-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 199).

**hloho** = hlo I or hlo II, q.v. 381 hpu<sup>o</sup> (p. 157).

## Ś

**śi** I = Tib. śi, die. See also **gśi**, **bśi**, **hśi** I (p. 226). 120 -rgo (pp. 226, 291-2).

II, winter (p. 226) = *Mo-so śih*? 160 -hchos (pp. 145-6, 172, 217, 320).

**śid** I, high. See also **hśid** I (pp. 225-6). 34 -g-ri; 60 hkhū-tsa<sup>o</sup>; 151 -rgyañ-hnom (pp. 145, 172, 303).

II = śi, perish. See also **hśid** II = Tib. śid, funeral ceremony (p. 226). 366 rgoñ-wa<sup>o</sup> (p. 332).

**śud** = Tib. śud, bśud, rub, get scratched, galled. See also **hśud**, **hsud** (p. 296, n. 1). 185 -mehi; 198 hdi-gsom<sup>o</sup>; 207 tshu-gsom<sup>o</sup> (p. 139).

**śe**, wise, wisdom, cf. Hsi-hsia gse, gseh (pp. 223-4). See also **śes**, **gśe**, **hśe**, **hśehe**, **hśes**. 91 -chañ; 258 -rgo-hldom (pp. 262, 318).

**śeg** = Tib. sreg, bāreg, bsregs, burn (irregular ś < sr due to some confusion). See also **gśeg**, **hśeg**. 159 hldañ-myi<sup>o</sup>; 283 -sme; 375 -sme (pp. 145-6).

**śes**, wise, Aorist form of śe, q.v. See also **hśes** (pp. 223-4). 36, 39 -hmad; 44 -gśi-hldubū; 44



- hši-brehe; 332 -hkeg-hrko; 379  
-rtsig-Moñ (pp. 223, 269, 322).  
**śod**, *lay low, cf. Tib. śod, low ground.*  
*See also hśod* (p. 301). 198  
hro-ta-śodce/śodts (pp. 341,  
358-9).  
**śodce/śodts**. *See śod.*  
**śon** = Tib. son/soñ, *gone, come*  
(p. 355). 156 hwam-hnom.  
**śor** = Tib. śor, *flee, escape*; bśor,  
*chase*. 203 -hlda, a Suffix, p. 183.  
**gśaṇ**, *enmity, hate* = Tib. śaṇ. *See*  
*also hśaṇ I* (p. 223). 30 -re; 86  
(for gśaṇ?) -śaṇ -do; 263,  
264, 278 -ra; 263 -kya; 264  
-hđzam; 265 -na; 265 -taḥ, a  
Suffix, pp. 182-3; 273 -hrah-  
-htoñ; 279 -ge (?), -htag-htos  
(p. 317).  
**gśi**, *Prospective form of śi, die, q.v.*  
44 -hlduḥu; 72 -brom-hnu; 344  
-hđzuhi (p. 322).  
**gśim** = Tib. gśin, *agreeable, or sim,*  
*refresh, be well, happy*. 268  
hmu-klag (p. 298).  
**gśe** = śe, śes, hśe, *wise, wisdom,*  
*q.v.* (pp. 223-4). 49 -hrđzro,  
*q.v.*; 329 bri<sup>o</sup>; 343 sroñ-ñe<sup>o</sup>  
(pp. 239, 253, 256).  
**gśeg** = śeg, hśeg, *burn, q.v.* 330  
hrgyo-hśeg-gśegra; 331 rbyo  
(for rgyo)-gśeg-gśer (p. 178).  
**gśer**, *written for gśeg* (p. 178). 331  
*see gśeg*.  
**gśog** = Tib. śog, gśog, bśog, *wing.*  
*See also hśog I*. 7, 20 -hner  
(p. 361).  
**bśi**, *Aorist form of śi, die, q.v.*  
(p. 196). 196 -ta, a Suffix,  
pp. 182-3; 198 -re.  
**hśag** = Tib. śags, bśags, *talk, ex-*  
*pound*. 85 hño-sto-go<sup>o</sup> (pp.  
220, 341).  
**hśaṇ I** = gśaṇ, *enmity, hate, q.v.* 81  
-re-hśig; 120 -plim-plam; 199  
-nag; 209 hkh<sup>o</sup>; 225, 226, 227  
-hld; 300 hrim-hldoḥu<sup>o</sup>; 367  
-khyāñ (?); 393 -sme (pp. 192,  
265, 271, 283, 291-2, 320).  
**II** = Tib. bśaṇ, *ordure* (p. 223).  
15, 51 -ma-hpul; 255 -hđzah  
(pp. 267, 327).

- hśam** = Tib. śom, bśoms, bśam,  
bśams, *prepare, arrange, etc.*  
(p. 235). 277 hpaḥ-ge<sup>o</sup>. *See*  
*also bśam, hśams.*  
**hśaḥ** = Tib. bśaḥ, bśas, *slaughter,*  
*kill, cut up. See also bśas*  
(p. 289). 83 hnam-hte<sup>o</sup>; 90  
hśog-hram<sup>o</sup>; 99 hnah-hśog<sup>o</sup>;  
125 hldañ-hkrañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 180,  
288-9, 291).  
**hśas**, *Aorist form of hśaḥ, q.v.* 102  
ñah-hśog<sup>o</sup> (p. 291).  
**hśi I** = śi I, *die, q.v.* 17 -hrog (?);  
38 -hgri; 44 -brehe; 47 gei-me<sup>o</sup>;  
47 -hpo; 81 -hkri; 102 -kyeg (?);  
123 -hwa; 153 myi<sup>o</sup>; 345  
-hđzuhi (pp. 174, 226, 251, 286,  
292, 298, 322, 339).  
**II** = śi II, *winter*. 102 -kyeg (?)  
(*see under I*) (p. 301).  
**III** = śid I, hśid, *high* (p. 226).  
194 hrdzoñ-hyo<sup>o</sup>; *cf.* 356 -hśid  
(pp. 240-2).  
**hśig** = Tib. bśig, bśigs, hñig, *de-*  
*stroy*. 81 hkyāñ-rgyañ<sup>o</sup>, hśaṇ-  
-re<sup>o</sup>; 347 hrim-gleḥu-ge<sup>o</sup> (p.  
298).  
**hśiñ** 302 hrgye<sup>o</sup>.  
**hśid I** = śid I, *high* (pp. 225-6).  
11 hwam<sup>o</sup>; 62 -hrihi; 230 hwa-  
bzer<sup>o</sup>; 306 hbrad-sta<sup>o</sup>; 356  
hđzoñ-hyo<sup>o</sup> (pp. 171, 225, 242,  
245, 254, 303, 306, 344).  
**II** = śid II, *perish* (p. 226). 52  
khyag-re<sup>o</sup>; 53 hmog-ḥce . . .<sup>o</sup>;  
366 so-na<sup>o</sup> (pp. 271, 293, 317).  
**hśud** = śud, *q.v.* *See also hśud.*  
185 -hdon (p. 139).  
**hśe** = śe, gśe, *wise, q.v.* (pp. 223-4).  
299 -hśe; 307 hglyāñ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 252,  
265).  
**hśeg I** = śeg, gśeg, *burn, q.v.* 48  
hphu<sup>o</sup>; 282 -sme; 330 hrgyo<sup>o</sup>  
(p. 282).  
**II** = Tib. gśegs, bśegs, *go, come.*  
181 nañ-gsañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 155-6).  
**hśeḥ** = hśe, *wise, q.v.* 163 hbri<sup>o</sup>;  
351 -hti-go; 369 -rdzo[-r[e]  
(pp. 216-17, 224, 239).  
**hśer**, *written for hśe, wise, q.v., + re.*  
339 sroñ-hñe<sup>o</sup>.  
**hśes** = śes, *wise, q.v.* (pp. 223-4).

- 336 -ta, a *Suffix*, pp. 182-3;  
344, 345 -gái/hái-hdzuhí (pp. 223, 269).  
— **-beg/hbeg**, *Proper Name of a divinity* (pp. 138, 147 n., 224). 3, 5, 7, 20, 22-4.  
**hso**, perhaps = *Tib. bso, copulari* (p. 141). 189 -hkog; 249 -hkon; 354 -hti-ge (pp. 140, 285, 321).  
**hsog** I = *gsog, wing, q.v.* 8, 20  
*Ses/Hses-hbeg* (p. 361).  
II *separate (Tib. gsog, cleave)?* 262 twañ-mhar<sup>o</sup> (p. 342).  
**hsod** = *sod, lay low, q.v.* (p. 301). 147 -te-rmag; 281 hbo-hram-ge-hsod-tsa (pp. 231, 300, 358-9).  
— **-tsa**. See **hsod**; cf. *sodce*.  
**ršan**, *stern, or violent?* See also **hršan** (p. 277). 319, 320 swah<sup>o</sup>.  
**hršan/ršan**, *stern, violent?* cf. **hšan** (p. 277). 224 hwah<sup>o</sup>, g-wah<sup>o</sup>; 225, 226 -lad; 228 hwa<sup>o</sup>; 229 hwañ-glah<sup>o</sup>, hgwañ<sup>o</sup>; 319, 320 swah-ršan; 321 hswa<sup>o</sup> (pp. 339, 343, 361).  
**sšam**, possibly 'last' = *Tib. šam, lower, under, later* (pp. 235, 357). 255 -stom (p. 357).

## S

- sad** = *Tib. gsod, bsad, sod, kill, destroy. See also hsad*. 147 hyu<sup>o</sup> (pp. 299-300).  
**su** = *Tib. su, who (Interrogative, Relative, &c.)*. See also **hsu** I, (p. 201). 114 -me-hmeñi; 145 -ge-stor-ta; 195 hldiñi<sup>o</sup> (pp. 172, 201, 232, 241, 245, 282, 299-300).  
**se** I = *Tib. rtse, se, top, house-top*. See also **hse** II, **rseñi**, **hrseñi** (pp. 248-9, 348). 18 hskym<sup>o</sup>; 67 hko<sup>o</sup> (?); 69 skym<sup>o</sup>; 143 htor<sup>o</sup> (pp. 248-9, 288).  
[**se**]-**hgro**. Cf. *Tib. rtser-hgro, chief, principal*. 67 hko<sup>o</sup>.  
II = *gse, hse, injure, harm, q.v.* 273 hwi-hwa<sup>o</sup> (pp. 297, 341).  
**so** = *Tib. gson, live, life; so-nams,*

- husbandry. See also gso, gsohu, hso* I.  
— **-hnañ/na**, *life-place, home, family. See also hso<sup>o</sup>, htso<sup>o</sup>* (pp. 293-4). 114, 117, 127, 365 (pp. 217, 282, 293-4).  
**swa** I = *Tib. so, swa, tooth*. 93 -tseg-tseg (p. 334).  
II = *Tib. so, swa, look-out, guard, watch. See also swah, hswa, hswah* (pp. 355, 369). 174 -hldir; 175 -hkom; 176 -hphyegs; 222 -gkom; 301 -gwer; 358 (p. 270).  
**swañ**. See also **hswañ**, **hšan** III. 337 hstor-ma<sup>o</sup>; 340 pyar-ma<sup>o</sup>.  
**swad**. See also **hswad**. 390 hko-hto<sup>o</sup> (p. 264).  
**swah** = *swa* II, *look-out, guard, &c., q.v.* 164 -gwer; 319, 320 -ršan; 360 -hpeg (p. 277).  
**sweñe** = *Tib. sbe, wrestle?* 130 hldag-nag<sup>o</sup> (p. 342).  
**sram** = *Tib. sran, hard, enduring. See also hsram*. 72 -pa-nar (p. 361).  
**sri** = *Tib. sri, a kind of devil? a woman's temper?* (p. 357). 163 hse<sup>o</sup>; 349 -ge-gsen-hse.  
**sroñ** = *Tib. sroñ, sroñs, straight, straight-forward*. 339 -hñe; 343 -ñe (p. 256).  
**slañ** = *Tib. zla, friend, helper*. 125 hldañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 288-9, 335).  
**sli** name of some animal? See also **hsli**. 171 -hti-hrño[-r[e]] (pp. 257, 357).  
**slug** I = *Tib. zlug, bzlug, pour?* 47 hñed-ge<sup>o</sup> (p. 251).  
II 359 hnu-glañ<sup>o</sup> (pp. 336, 368). See **slog**.  
**sleg** (p. 357). 346, 351 hdam<sup>o</sup>.  
**slo** = *Tib. zlo, summon, call; bzlos, challenge; zlos, incantation, &c.* 93 hsu<sup>o</sup>; 99 -stañ = *slos-ta, with Suffix*, pp. 182-3 (p. 336).  
**slog** = *Tib. zlog, bzlog, turn back, repel; slog, turn, invert* (pp. 336, 368). 174 hnu-glañ<sup>o</sup>; 384 hrseñi-hpag<sup>o</sup> (pp. 226, 336).  
**slod** possibly = *Tib. lhod, lod, glod, loose, relax* (p. 357). 381 hbrñ<sup>o</sup>.

**slos** *Aorist form of slo, q.v.*

**gsaṅ** I = Tib. gsaṅ, saṅ, *secret* (p. 156). 17 rñe°; 86 (see gsaṅ); 204 -hkaṅ; 329 hkhah°; 181 -hseṅ (?); 206 -rmaṅ (?) (pp. 155-6, 186, 200, 221).

II ? = Tib. saṅ, saṅs, bsaṅ, *cleanse*. See also hsaṅ II. 227 htham-raḥ°; 228 braḥ-hraḥ° (pp. 215-16).

**gsaḥ** = Tib. sa, land. See also hsaḥ. 276 -re-htsaḥ-re; 333 -rkaḥ (pp. 281, 338).

**gsar** = Tib. gsar, *new*. See also hsar. 204 -nar (p. 361).

**gsas** = Tib. gsas, *offspring*; btsa, *give birth*; btsas, *born*. See also hsas (pp. 197, n. 2, 355). 262 -paḥi-hdzo-hdza (pp. 239, 283).

**gsu** = Tib. bsu, bsus, *meet, escort*. See also gsus, hsus, hsu II. 64 -prom (pp. 157, 187, 219).

**gsus** *Aorist form of gau, q.v.* See also hsus (p. 197 n. 2). 99 -slo (p. 336).

**gse** = Tib. gtse, htsaḥ, btses, *do mischief, injure*. See also gseḥe, hse I, hseḥi, hseḥe II (pp. 140-1, 183). 48 -hcaṅ; 200 g-yog-hldaḥ°; 205 -re; 238, 243 -hbo-bon/hbon; 240 -hlda-hlad, -hlad; 242, 244 -hlad; 247 -stoṅ-stsar; 248 -htaḥ, a *Suffix*, pp. 182-3; 249 -hso-hkon; 327 -hko-hgyan (pp. 230, 303).

**gsen**, possibly (v. context) = Tib. bsen-mo, a *female evil spirit*. 349 -hse.

**gseḥe** = gse, *injure*, &c., q.v. 135 -hldi-hthoṅ; 368 -caṅ.

**gso** = Tib. gson, *live*, cf. gso, *tend, cure*. See also gsoḥu, hso I, hson. 151 nor°; 193, 194 -nad (pp. 174, 238, 241).

**gsom** I = Tib. sema, *mind, spirit*; bsam, *thought*, &c.; som-ñi, *doubt*. See also hsam I (pp. 235, 338). 23 -añi; 89 -rgyag; 178, 179 -wa-hyo; 198 hdi°-sud; 206 tshu°-sud; 275 hldañḥ° (?) (pp. 235, 338).

II = Tib. gsam, *three* (?) 10

hlah° (?); 21 -htsā° (?) 23 htsaḥ° (?) (pp. 270, 306).

**gsoḥu** = gso, *live*, &c., q.v. 358 hraḥ-htoṅ° (p. 261).

**bsog** = Tib. sog, sogs, gsog, bsog, bsag, bsags, *collect, gather*, &c. See also hsag, hsog. 183 -thom-thom.

**hsa** = gsaḥ, *land*, q.v. See also hsaḥ. 55 gmog-hce°; 330 hsaḥ-g-yer (pp. 178, 278).

**hsag**, *gather together*. See bsog, hsog. 389 hldag°.

**hsaṅ** I = gsaṅ I, *secret*, q.v. 36 rgyed° (pp. 244, 283).

II ? = gsaṅ II, *cleanse*, q.v. 226 hyaṅ-hraḥ°.

III *written for hswaṅ*, q.v. 340 hstor-ma°.

**hsaṅs** = Tib. soṅ, *go*. 144 hño-stor° (p. 303).

**hsad** = sad, *kill, destroy*, q.v. 40 hphu-hklo°; 102 -mag-hdeḥi; 124 hldaṅ-kraṅ°; 147 hdraṅ -ge°; 381 rtsig-Moṅ°; 383 hda -lda°, hyaṅ-hthe-ge° (pp. 289, 301).

**hsam** I, *think*. See gsom (p. 235). 185 ma-hpaḥ°; 352 naṅ-pa°.

II = Tib. sam, bsom, bsoms, bsam, bsams, *prepare, arrange* (pp. 300-1, 355), cf. hsams. 184 me°.

**hsams**, *Aorist form of hsam II, q.v.* 58 me-na° (pp. 194, 300-1).

**hsaḥ** = gsaḥ, *land*, q.v. 41 hyaṅ-rmyi°; 42 -htsaḥ; 141 -yer; 164 -hldaḥ, a *Suffix*, p. 183; 165 -gtsaṅ, -chad; 166 -yob-hkom; 267 -hyer; 314 -hkheḥ; 346 hsaḥh-g-yer; 378 -htsaṅ (pp. 142, 224, 262, 277, 278, 280, 288, 313, 335).

**hsar** = gsar, *new*, q.v. 26 g-yos/hyos-ge°; 255 -atomḥi (p. 357).

**hsas** = gsas, *offspring*, q.v. (pp. 197, n. 2, 355). 59 -hce-rgye; 116 -te-khyaṅ, -hkhah; 260 -hdrah-hdag, -hnaḥ-hdag (pp. 192, 239, 240, 261, 315).

**hsu** I = su *who?* 196 rma° (p. 246).



- II = *gsu, meet, escort, q.v.* 276 -re (p. 314).
- hsud**, written for *hsud*? (p. 296, n. 1). 313 *hkru*<sup>o</sup>; 323 *hkhruhu-hyog*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 295-6).
- hsus**, Aorist form of *gsu, hsu* II, *q.v.* (p. 197 n. 2). 93 -slo (p. 336).
- hse** I = *gse, gsehe, injure, &c., q.v.* See also **hsehi, hsehe** II (pp. 140-1). 33 -hte; 57 *hce*<sup>o</sup>; 89, 92, 96 *pyi*<sup>o</sup>/*phyi*<sup>o</sup>; 163 -sri; 190 -spye; 299 *hse*<sup>o</sup>; 326 -htah, a Suffix, pp. 182-3; 349 *gsen*<sup>o</sup>; 377-8 -ge (pp. 240, 285, 321).
- II = *se I, top, house-top, q.v.* 374 *skym*<sup>o</sup> (p. 248).
- hsehi** = *hse* I, *q.v.* 325 -*hko*<sup>o</sup>-*hgyan*.
- hsehe** I = *se* I, *top, &c., q.v.* 14 -*hwad-hwad* (p. 265).
- II = *hse* I, *injure, &c., q.v.* 238 -*hldu-hru*; 327 -*hko*<sup>o</sup>-*hgyan* (pp. 264, 321).
- hso** I = *so, gso, live, &c., q.v.* 201 -*hldah*, a Suffix, p. 183.
- **hna/hnah**, *life-place, family, &c.* See also *so*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 293-4). 80, 100, 103, 108, 110, 111, 231, 232, 234, 235, 270, 290.
- II. See also *so*. 63 *hya*<sup>o</sup>; 313 *hmo*<sup>o</sup> (p. 303).
- (III) -**bos**, *hair-tuft, cf. Tib. co-to?* 257 *nehu*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 302-3).
- hsog** = *hsag, bsog, collect, &c., q.v.* 6? *so read*, -*htswe*; 295 *hno*-*hkho*<sup>o</sup> (p. 269, *mog*).
- hson** = *Tib. gso, gson, tend, nurse.* 261 *phyer-cha*<sup>o</sup> (pp. 239, 283).
- hsoh-hsoh** = *Tib. so-so, diverse, literally different places or bounds (so).* 75 -*htshu*.
- hsor** I = *Tib. sor, finger. See also hswar.* 72 -*htsam-bzod* (p. 342).
- II = *Tib. sor, escape, hunt, &c., q.v.* 89 *gsom-rgyag*<sup>o</sup>; 260 -*hgo* (p. 261).
- hswa** = *swa* II, *swah, look-out, guard, &c., q.v.* See also **hswah**. 321 -*hrsa*<sup>o</sup>.
- hswa** = *swa*<sup>o</sup>, *q.v.* See also **hsa** III. 340 *phyer-ma*<sup>o</sup>; 341 *hpyar-ma*<sup>o</sup>.
- hswad** = *swad, q.v.* 203 *hko*-*hldah-hse*<sup>o</sup>.
- hswah** = *swa* II, *swah, hswa, q.v.* 288 -*hram*; 296 -*g-ri*; 298 -*g-wehe*; 318 -*hmo* (p. 267).
- hswar** = *hsor* I, *Tib. sor, finger, q.v.* 28 -*hldu-sto* (pp. 321, 342, 355, 369).
- hsram** = *sram, hard, q.v.* 24 *hgru*<sup>o</sup> (p. 306).
- hsrehi**, cf. *Tib. sre-nag/mog, soot; sre, mix?* (p. 357). 13 -*hkyeb-hkyeb*.
- hsli** = *sli, q.v.* (pp. 257, 357). 46 *hbehe*<sup>o</sup> *orma*<sup>o</sup>; 288, 318 -*hdza*<sup>o</sup>.
- rshe** = *Tib. rtse, top, peak, &c.* See also *se* I, **hrshe** (p. 348). 208 -*hrgod*.
- hrshe** = *rshe*, *q.v.* (p. 348). 384 -*hpag* (pp. 226, 336).

## INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

(Languages, Persons (Authors' names\* in CAPITALS), Peoples, Places)

Abbreviations: *co.* = country; *di.* = district; *l.* = language; *m.* = mountain; *p.* = people, tribes, &c.; *q.v.* = 'which see'; *re.* = region; *ri.* = river; *s.* = 'see'; *s.a.* = 'see also'; *st.* = 'state'; *t.* = 'town', 'city', &c.; *w.* = word(s).

\* Titles of works in *italic*; those distinguished by an asterisk are meant where only the author's name is cited.

### A

- A-K, Pandit, explorations, 36 n. 1, 85, 89 n. 2. S. HENNESSEY.  
 Abor, p., 1, 154.  
 A-chai, I, a T'u-yü-hun king, 45 & n. 3, 57, 144 n. 3. II = Ḥa-ža, 45-6.  
 A-la-shan, m., 153.  
 Altyn-tāgh, m., 1, 6, 10, 44, 146.  
 Amaserigu, m., 59.  
 Amdo, re., 6, 8, 13, 25-7, 31-3, 36, 43, 45-7, 51, 57, 59, 64, 99, 268; s.a. Koko-nor re.; 1., 75-8, 88-99, 107, 238, 245, 272; w., 101, 106, 237, 277, 284, 344, 349, 351, 368, s.a. Tangut, Go-lok, Dzorgai, Kortsè.  
 Amne Bayan, m., 9.  
 Amne Rma-chen, m., 2 n., 4 n. 5, 5, 7, 9, 135.  
 Amnimachensbomra, m. = Amne Rma-chen, 4 n. 5.  
 AMUNDSEN, E., travels, 16 n. 3.

### B

- Ba, p. = Ḥbah, q.v., 67 n. 2.  
 Ba-bam, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83. S.a. Ba-wan, Lo-dgu, Lo-gu, Pa-wan, Pa-wang.  
 Ba-bams, st. = Ba-bam, 83.  
 BABER, E. Colborne, travels and researches, 16 n. & n. 1, 17, 33 n. 2, 51 n. 4, 64 n. 1, 65 & n. 2, 66 n. 1, 69 (Report), 73, 75, 80-2, 85, 87 n. 1, 92, 104 n. 1, 153 n. 1.  
 BACOT, Jacques, (1) \**Les Mo-so*; (2) *Les Slokas Grammaticaux de Thonmi Sambhoja*, 69, 143, 182 n. 2, 207, 224.  
 Ba-di, st. = Brag-stiñ, q.v., 83, 84 & n. 2.

- Bair-lang, p. = Pai-lan, q.v., 34, 61.  
 Baltistan, co., 14.  
 Ba-nag, p. = Panakha, q.v., 21.  
 Baron, di. (Tsaidam), 9.  
 Ba-tañ, st. = 'thañ, 83.  
 Ba-t'ang, t. = Ba-thañ, 6, 4 & n. 2, 11, 15, 19 n. 2, 67 & n. 2, 77-8; 1., 75-7.  
 Ba-thañ, st. (E. Tibet), 83.  
 Ba-ti, st. = Brag-stiñ, 83, 84 & n. 2.  
 Ba-wan, st. = Ba-bam, 83, 84 n. 2.  
 Bawrang, t. or di. = Pa-U-Rong, q.v. 73.  
 Bayankara, m., 1-3, 7-9, 20, 26 (name).  
 Bde, di.: (Amdo), 32, 35, 57. S.a. De, De-ga, Te.  
 Bde-gams, station in Bde, 32 n. 5, 35, 43, 243 (name).  
 Bde-sum-tahal ('wood'), 35.  
 Beg-tse, a divinity, 147 n. 1.  
 Be-ri, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 15 n. 5, 83. S.a. Be-rim, Be-rin, Ḥbe-rim, Pe-re.  
 Bhutan, co., 14, 151.  
 BICHUBIN, Iakinf, \**Istoriya Tibeta i Khukhunora*, 6 n. 2, 26 n. 1, 28 nn. 3-5, 30 n. 2, 31 n. 1, 33 n. 1, 38 n. 2, 45, 52 n. 4, 53 n. 2, 60 n., 144 n. 3.  
 Bla-brañ, monastery, 20 & n. 87, 27. S.a. Lhabrang.  
 Blo-bkra, p., 15. S.a. Lo-tawa.  
 Blo-bzañ Dpah-Idan Ye-šes, itiner-ary, 2 n. 3, 8 n. 2, 15.  
 'Blue Turquoise Lake' = Koko-nor, q.v., 34 n. 3.  
 Bod, co. = Tibet, 13.  
 Boka, mines of, 44.  
 Bokalik, m., 9, 44.  
 Bo-lo-tse, p., 154.  
 Bon-po, sect, 18 n. 2, 28, 155-6.

BONVALOT, G., \**Across Tibet*, 7, 146 n. 2.  
 Bouchier, William, travels, 44 n. 5.  
 BOWER, Hamilton, \**Diary of a Journey across Tibet*, 7.  
 Bowrong, di. = Pa-U-Rong, q.v.  
 BOYER, Abbé, *Kharoshthi Inscriptions edited by A. Boyer, E. J. Rapson and E. Senart*, 60 n. 3.  
 Brag-gyab, di. (E. Tibet), 84. S.a. Draya.  
 Brag-mgo, st. (Hor-pa), 15 n. 5, 83, 85, 89. S.a. Brag-mon, Cañ-gu, Cran-go, Dra-mon, Tāngo.  
 Brag-mon, st. = Brag-mgo, q.v., 83.  
 Brag-stiñ, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83-5. S.a. Ba-di, Ba-ti, Bra-sdi, Bura-kdi, Cra-tin, Dra-tiñ, Pati, Tra-ti.  
 Brahmaputra, ri, 3, 4 (valley & gorge), 14.  
 Bra-sdi, st. = Brag-stiñ, q.v., 83-5.  
 Bra-ma-thañ ('plateau'), 110, 216.  
 Brdzun-hgag, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83.  
 S.a. Ju-kan, Nññ-hgag, Ru-kan, Rtsung Kang, Rungkang, Ruñ-kañ, Sunggak, Sungkang, Zunga, Zunggak, Zuñ-kak, Zur-ga.  
 Bri-chu, ri. = Hbri-chu, q.v., 2 n. 2.  
 Brius, ri. = Hbri-chu, q.v., 2 n. 2.  
 Brooke, J.W., travels, 17, 36 n. 1.  
 Btsan-la, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83. S.a. Tsen-la, Tsen-la, Zanla.  
 Buhagol, ri. (Tsaidam), 34 n. 1.  
 Bu-ik-wan-kiēm, Ch'iang chief, 39. S.a. Wu-i-Yüan-chien.  
 Bulungir, ri. (Kan-su), 10.  
 Bum-liñ, a place in Amdo, 110.  
 Burakdi, st. = Brag-stiñ, q.v., 80 n. 2, 85.  
 Burkhan Buddha, m., 9.  
 Burmese, l., 168; w. 99, 109, 286 n. 1.  
 BUSHELL, S. W., \**The Early History of Tibet*, 6 n. 2, 12 nn. 5, 6, 14 n. 4, 15 n. 1, 18 n. 4, 148 n. 2, 153, & in notes elsewhere.  
 Bya-gloñ-gi-lgo-dañ-rje, a person (mythical), 131.  
 Byañ-chen-mo, a plateau, 1. S.a. Changchenmo.  
 Byañ-thañ, re., 1, 3, 9, 14, 15.  
 Byar, p., 17 n. 1, 33 n. 5, 34, 35 & n. 1. S.a. G-yar, Pai-lan.

Byar-lins-tshal ('wood'), 35, 110.  
 Bya-rma-byañ-Rma-li, a person (mythical), 131.  
 Byar-mo-thañ ('plateau'), 27, 35 & n. 1. S.a. Dbyar°, G-yar°, G-yer°, Bye°, G-yo°.  
 Byehu-rma-byehu-gi-Thiñ-tshun, a person (mythical), 131, 190.  
 Bye-mo-thañ = Byar°, q.v., 35 & n. 1.  
 Byim-po, p. 33 n. 5, 57. S.a. G-yim-po.  
 Bzags-te-Nar-hbyam, a person (mythical), 133, 190.

C

Cag-la, st. = Leag-la, q.v., 81, 83.  
 Camba Dsung = Kam-ba-rdzoñ, 67.  
 Cango, st. = Brag-mgo, q.v., 83.  
 Cangu, st. = " 83, 85.  
 CAREY, A. D. & — DALGLEISH, travels, 36 n. 1, 44.  
 Cer-cen, t., 23, 44.  
 Chab-mdo, t., 11. S.a. Chamdo.  
 Chakpa, robber tribes, 20 n. 7. S.a. Go-lok.  
 Cha-la, st. = Leag-la, q.v., 81.  
 Chamdo, t. = Chab-mdo, q.v., 6, 11.  
 Chang-an, -ngan, t. = Hsi-ngan-fu, q.v., 27, 44.  
 Changchenmo = Byañ°, q.v., 1.  
 Chango, st. = Brag-mgo, q.v., 16 n.  
 Chang-yih, t. = Kan-chou, q.v., 12.  
 Chan-tui, di. = Nñg-roñ, q.v., 16.  
 Charing-nor ('lake') = Skya-reñs-mtsho, q.v., 4, 20, 26 (name).  
 Charingol, ri. (Nan-shan), 10, 36 n. 1, 49.  
 Charklik, t. (Turkestan), 23, 44, 46.  
 CHAVANNES, E., *Documents sur les Tou-kiue occidentaux*, 41 n. 3.  
 Ch'eng-tu, t. (Ssü-ch'uan), 9, 52, 67.  
 Ch'i, ri. (China), 54 & n. 7.  
 Ch'iang, p., 15-16, 19, 21, 26, 28, 31-2, 34, 36 sqq., 36 n. 1, 39 sqq., 41-3, 49, 51-3, 55, 57-8, 152-3, 280 (drug-collecting), 309, 370, 373; l., 26, 61, 97, 100, 110, 116; w., 40, 137, 333. S.a. Hsi-ch'iang, Jo-ch'iang, Keang, Pai-lan, T'ang-chang, Tang-hsiang, Sum-pa.



Ch'iang-tao, t. or di. (Kan-sa), 41, 55, 56.  
 Chia Rung, re. = Rgyal-roñ, q.v., 67.  
 Ch'ien-fo-tung, t. (Sha-chou), 112, 117 n. 5, 129, 130.  
 Chi-lien, m. (Kan-su), 58.  
 Chimen-tāgh, m., 9.  
 Chin-ch'ing, t. (Kan-su), 37 n. 4, 43 & n. 6, 48-9. S.a. Kin-ch'ing, Kin-tā'ing.  
 Chin-ch'uan, ri., 7, 65, 81; l., 85-6. S.a. 'Gold River', Kin-tschuan.  
 Chinese, 112 (text), 116, 119, 130 (MSS.); l., 23 n. 2, 88; w., 2 & n., 33, 43, 64-5, 87 n. 4, 92-3, 125, 129, 132, 194, 234-5, 238, 245, 250 n. 1, 252, 264, 273, 283 n. 1, 289, 299, 303, 305, 309, 328, 343, 362 n. 2.  
 Ching, ri., 54.  
 Ch'ing-hai ('lake') = Koko-nor, q.v., 26, 34.  
 Chin-sha-chiang, ri. = Middle Yang-tse-chiang, 4.  
 Chi-shih (Skyi), m., 38 & n. 1. S.a. Tsi-shi.  
 Chiu-ch'uan, t. = Su-chou, q.v., 42.  
 Chiung, Ch'iang chief & p., 51 n. 1. S.a. Gong.  
 Cho-ga-chi, st. = Leog-rtse, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 Chok'ochi, st. = Leog-rtse, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 Cho-pyi-cog-zu, 'Little Tiger, Meadow-ass', 132.  
 Chos Chia, st. = Khro-skyab, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 Chosschia, st. = Khro-skyab, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 Chossüchiapu, st. = Khro-skyab, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 Chro-siop, st. = Khro-skyab, q.v., 82-3.  
 Ch'ü, ri. (China), 54 & n. 7.  
 Chung-tien, t. (Yün-nan), 73, 85.  
 Ch'un-sang, p., 128.  
 Chuwo, st. = Tre-o, q.v., 15 n. 5.  
 Cingiz Khan, Mongol emperor, 26.  
 Ciu-tzu, st. = Leog-rtse, q.v., 83.  
 CLAUSON, Sir G. L. M., 62.  
 Cog-ro, di., 58, 314. S.a. Tsog<sup>2</sup>, Tahog<sup>2</sup>.

Cog-tsi, st. = Leog-rtse, q.v., 83-4.  
 Cok-tsi, st. = Leog-rtse, q.v., 83-4.  
 Co-ne, di. & p., 27, 28 & n. 1.  
 CONRADY, A., *Eine Indo-Chinesische Causativ-Denominativ-Bildung*, 20, 88 & n. 1., 206, 208, 210. S.a. ROSTHORN.  
 COOPER, T. T., *Travels of a pioneer of commerce*, 14 n. 1., 149 n. 1.  
 CORDIER, H., *The Lo-los*, p. 143.  
 Cosgiyab, st. = Khro-skyab, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 Co-skiab, st. = Khro-skyab, q.v., 83.  
 Co-tse, st. = Leog-rtse, q.v., 83.  
 COWELL, E. B. & F. W. THOMAS, *Harṣa-carita* (trans.), 142 n. 2.  
 Crango, st. = Brag-mgo, q.v., 82-5.  
 Cra-tin, st. = Brag-stiñ, q.v., 82-3.  
 Cu-cui, st. (?), 84 n. 2.  
 Cu-wo, st. = Tre-o, q.v., 83.

## D

Dabasun-nor ('lake'), 26, 42 (name).  
 Daffā, l., 99, 154.  
 DALGLEISH, —, travels, 36 n. 1. S.a. CAREY.  
 Dam-ba, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83, 84 n. 2. S.a. Tam-ba, Tangpa.  
 Dango, st. = Brag-mgo, q.v., 85.  
 Dañ-la, m. = Tang-la, q.v., 2 n. 3.  
 Dan-tig, p. = Tan-tig, 60.  
 Dar-chen-do, t. = Ta-chien-lu, 1.  
 Dardistan, co., 151 (Mons).  
 DAS, Ś. C., *Tibetan Dictionary*, 2 n. 3, 4 nn. 4, 5, 8 n. 2, 33, 137, 140, 151, 284, 297, 303, 307-8, 354, and elsewhere in notes.  
 DAVIES, H. R.,\* *Yün-nan, the link between India and the Yangtse*, 67 n. 2, 69, 70, 73, 79, 81.  
 Dbra, p., 307-8. S.a. Hbra.  
 Dbyar, p., 32, 33 n. 5, 35 n. 1. S.a. Byar, Bye, G-yar, G-ye, Yar.  
 Dbyar-mo-thaū ('plateau'), 32-3, 353. S.a. Byar, &c.  
 Dbye-lđañ-sum, t. (mythical), 307.  
 Dbye-mo, t. (mythical), 307.  
 De, re. = Bde, q.v., 35, 37.  
 De-ga-G-yu-tshal ('wood'), 31.  
 De-ge, st. = Sde-dge, q.v., 83.  
 DE GROOT, J. J. M.,\* *Chinesische Urkunden zur Geschichte Asiens*: I,

*Die Hunnen der vorchristlichen Zeit*; II, *Die Westlande Chinas in der vorchristlichen Zeit*. 36 n. 1, 37 & nn. 2-3, 38, 40 & nn. 4-6, 44, 46, 53, 54, 55, 56, 135, 151, & elsewhere in notes pp. 36-59.

Derge, st. = Sde-dge, q.v., 15, 83-5.

Dergi, st. = Sde-dge, q.v., 83.

DESODINS, Abbé, (1) *Mots principaux des langues de certaines tribus* . . . (2) *Le Thibet d'après la correspondance des missionnaires*, 70, 81, 92 & nn. 1, 2.

Dge-si-tsha, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 1, 83, 89 & n. 2; w., 90, 92-3, 104. S.a. Gešits'a, Rge-si-tsa, &c. (pp. 83-4).

Dgu-leogs, a certain fiend, 130, 255.

Dgu-sul, a place in W. Kan-su, 134.

Di-chu, ri. = Hbri-chu, q.v., 2 n. 2.

D'imāl, l., 324.

Dje-gu, st. = Tre-o, q.v., 82, 83, 85.

Djia-kha, st. = Rgyal-kha, q.v., 83-4.

Djia-la, st. = Lcag-la, q.v., 83-4.

Djie-dam, st. = Jye-dam, q.v., 83, 85.

Dju-tæ, st. = Lcog-rtse, q.v., 82-3.

Djum-ba, st. = Hgron-bu, q.v., 82-3.

Dkañ-mdzos, t. = Kanzé, q.v., 11 n. 1, 16 n.

Dmar-khams, di. (E. Tibet), 19 n. 2, 67 n. 2.

Dok-pa, p. = Hbrog°, q.v., 5.

Dok-thol, re. = Hbrog°, 14.

Donkyr, t. = Tankar, q.v., 11.

Dra, di. (Skyi), 110.

Dra-mon, st. = Brag-mgo, q.v., 83.

Dra-tiñ, st. = Brag-stiñ, q.v., 83.

Draya, di. (E. Tibet) = Brag-gyab, q.v., 84.

Dre-chu, ri. = Hbri-chu, q.v., 2 n. 2.

Driñ-pa, st. = Hgron-bu, q.v., 83.

Dri-tu, st. = Tre-o, q.v., 83.

Drug, p. = Turk, 27, 31.

Drug-pa, p. = Hbrog, q.v., 5 n. 6.

Drukagi, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 84 n. 2, 85.

Drum-ba, st. = Hgron-bu, q.v., 83.

Dsim, a Ch'iang chief, 40, 52, 57, 135 = Jén, q.v.

Duampou = Hgron-bu ? 1., 72.

Dulangol, ri. (Koko-nor re.), 34 n. 1.

Dunczi, st., 60 n. S.a. Kuei-tê.

Dungkor, t. = Tankar, q.v., 11.

DUTREUIL DE RHINS, J. L., *La Haute Asie*, 2 n. 1, 3 n. 2. See GRECARD.

Dwags-po, di. (South Tibet), 15; 1., See Tākpa.

Dza-chu, ri., upper Me-kong, q.v., 3, 7.

Dža-k'iong, p. = Jo-ch'iang, q.v., 43-6, 43 n. 3.

Džok, ri. (Kan-su), 58.

Džong, p. = Jung, q.v.

Dzorgai, p. (Go-lok); 1., 72, 88; w., 90-1. S.a. Go-lok.

## E

Eastern Colonial Tibetan. S. Tibetan.

EDGAR, J. H., *\*The Marches of the Mantze*, 18 nn. 1, 3, 28 n. 2, 51 n. 4, 67, 82, 84, 148 n. 1, 280 n. 1.

'Eighteen Kingdoms' of the Rgyal-roñ, 17, 19.

'Eight Snam', 235.

'Eight Yogs', 267.

Etsingol, ri. (Gobi desert), 10, 27.

## F

Fan-min (Chinese), Tibetan borderers, 64.

Fan-tzû = Fan-min, 64-5. S.a. Hei Fan-tzû.

Fêng-yang, a Ch'iang tribe = Hong-jong, 41.

FERGUSSON, W. N., *\*Adventures, &c., on the Tibetan Steppes*, 7 n. 8, 17, 19 n. 8, 28 n. 2, 36 n. 1, 67 & n. 1, 68, 82, 84-7, 280 n. 1, 302 n. 2, & elsewhere cited in notes.

FILCHNER, W. (1) *Das Rätsel des Matschû*, (2) *Om Mani Padme Hum*, (3) *Kumbum*, (4) *Wissenschaftliche Ergebnisse der Expedition Filchner nach China und Tibet, 1903-1905*. III Band, *Karte der Chinesischen Provinz Kan-su*, 4 nn. 2, 4, 5, 7 & n. 4, 12 n. 2, 20, 21, 25, 146 n. 2, 221, 249, 266 n. 2, 284 & elsewhere in notes pp. 20-60.

FORSYTH, T. D., *Mission to Yarkund*, 33 n. 2.

'Four Garrisons' = Chinese Turkestan, 235.

FRANCKE, A. H. (1) *Antiquities of Indian Tibet*, (2) *History of Western Tibet*, (3) *Ladakhi Songs*, (4) *Frühlings und Wintermythus der Kessarsage*, (5) article in *Ostasiatische Zeitschrift*, *Buddhistische Volkslieder aus Ladakh*, 16 n. 2, 18 n. 2, 127, 140 n. 1, 144 n. 1, 151, 213 n. 1, 279.

FRANKE, O., *Geschichte des Chinesischen Reiches*, 36 n. 2, 38 n. 1, 52 nn. 1, 4, 58 n. 2, 68, 289.

FUSSÜ CH'ENG, t., 28 & n. 4, 33. S.a. Phylug-tsams.

FUTTERER, K., *\*Durch Asien*, 6, 9 n. 1, 10 n. 1, 11 nn. 2, 3, 9, 12 n. 5, 20, 38, 248 n. 4, 266 n. 2, & elsewhere in notes pp. 21-60.

## G

Gabet, Père, travels. S. Huc.

GA-CU, t. = Ho-chou, q.v., 11 & n. 7, 60.

GAISHECHIA, st. = Dge-si-tsha, q.v., 84 n. 2.

GAM-SHAN, m., 151.

GAN-'E, t. or di., 49 n. 1.

GARI, t. or di., 67.

GARNIER, F., *Voyage d'Exploration en Indo-Chine*, 75.

GASS, t. & di. (Tsaidam), 44.

GDAGS-KHRI, an early Tibetan king, 6.

GDIÑ-DRUG, a (mythical) di., 32 n. 1.

GOBÁIZA, st. = Dge-si-tsha, q.v., 84 n. 2.

Geografia Tibeta of MINTSHUL HUTHUKTU, q.v.

Ge-sar, legend of, 153, 213 n. 1.

GO-SIE, st. = Dge-si-tsha, q.v., 83-4.

GOŠITS'A, st. = Dge-si-tsha, q.v., 72; l., 89 & n. 2.

GIEN, early Ch'iang chief & tribe, 40-3, 49, 55. S.a. Yen.

GILES, L., articles in B.S.O.S. vi & vii, 33 n. 1, 45 n. 1.

GILL, W., *\*The River of Golden Sand*, 2 n. 2, 7, 17, 64 n. 1, 66-8, 70, 84, 89 n. 1.

GILMORE, D., *The Karens*, 144.

GI-ŠE-TSHA, st. = Dge-si-tsha, q.v., 83.

GIYARDO, Giyarlung, Giyarmu, Giyarsa, Giyartang, t. or di. (Rgyal-roñ), 17 n. 1.

GLON-MYIG-LOÑ, a mythical person = Ltoñ-teñi-Mys-kru, q.v., 131.

GNAM-KA-LOÑ-SUM, a mythical place, 32 n. 1.

GIEN-CHEN-THAÑ-LHA, m., 2-3, 2 n. 4. S.a. Nyin-chen-Tangla.

Gobi desert, 10, 27.

GO-JE, st. = Ho-gzi, q.v., 83.

'Gold River' = Chin-ch'uan, q.v., 16-17, 65, 81.

GO-LOK, p. 8, 17 n. 2, 20-2 (name), 24, 41, 51. S.a. Chakpa, Panakha; l., 88-99. S.a. Dzorgai, Kortsè; w., 92-4, 96, 101-7, 218, 232, 267, 360.

GONG, an early Ch'iang chief = Chiung, q.v., 52.

GOSSETSCHA, st. = Dge-si-tsha, q.v., 84 n. 2.

GO-YA-GO-PHU, a certain fiend, 134, 255.

GO-ZI, st. = Ho-gzi, q.v., 83.

GRENARD, F., *\*La Haute Asie*, 2 n. 1, 4 n. 4, 7, 24 n. 1. S.a. DUTREUIL DE RHINS.

GROPUR, t. or di. (Skyi), 110.

GRU, di. (Tibet), 308.

GRU-GU, a place (Amdo), 308.

GRU-GU-RGYA-RA, di. (Kham), 308.

GTOÑ-SUM-PA, p., 152.

GU-GE, re. (W. Tibet), 130.

GUIDUI, t. & di. = Kuei-té, q.v., 59 n. 3.

GUÑ-DAÑ, a mythical place, 307.

GUSRI KHAN, a Mongol Emperor, 26.

GYAMI (Rgya-mi), l. (Chinese), 72-3; w., 92-3.

G-YAR, p., 17 n. 1, 33 n. 5, 34-5, 35 n. 1.

G-YAR-MO-THAÑ ('plateau'), 33, 136, 353. S.a. Bye°, Byar°, Dbyar°.

G-YA°, G-YER°, Yar°.

GYÄRÜNG, re. = Rgyal-roñ, q.v.



17 n. 1, 64-5, 67, 81, 82-5; l., 19, 72-3, 80, 89, 98; w., 86-7, 90-1, 93-7, 100-9, 132, 223, 236, 352, 360, 369.

Gyārūngbo, a Gyārūng man, 64 (Rgyal-roñ-po).

G-ye-mo-thañ = G-yar°, q.v., 34.

G-yer-mo-thañ = G-yar°, q.v., 136, 353.

Gyim-po, p., 33 n. 5, 57, 134-5. S.a. Byim.

Gyim-lan, m., 151.

G-yu-mtsho, 'Turquoise Lake' = Koko-nor, q.v., 34 & n. 3.

## H

HAENISCH, E. S. HEDIN, *Southern Tibet*, vol. ix., 17 n. 1, 84 & n. 2, 89 n. 2.

Ha (Hwa)-hwa, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83.

Hajjar, di. (Tsaidam), 9, 23, 46.

Ha-le-Mon, p., Mons of A-la-shan? 152-3.

HALOUN, G., 45 n. 6, 48 n., 57 n. 1.

Hami, t. (Turkestan), 24.

Han, co. (Ssü-ch'uan), 51, 57.

Han, ri. (China), 37.

Han., p., 42 & n. 7, 43, 48. S.a. Hong-te.

Hanniu, l. (Rgyal-roñ), 72, 87, 89; w., 87, 90, 92-3, 95-6, 101, 105, 107.

Harsa, Indian Emperor, 14 & n. 3.

Hashaklik, t. (Turkestan), 46.

Ha-za, p., 45-6. S.a. Jo-ch'iang.

Hbah, p. & st. (Ba-thañ), 6 n. 6, 67 n. 2, 83.

Hbe-rim, st. (Hor-pa) = Be-ri, q.v., 83.

Hbra, a legendary p. (Tibet), 307-8, 319, 320. S.a. Dbra.

Hbri-chu, ri. (Yang-tse-chiang in Tibet), 2-4, 7-8, 11 (gorge), 25-6, 67 n. 2, 217. S.a. Bri-chu, Brius, Chin-sha-chiang, Di-chu, Dre-chu, Njeh, Polei-tchou, Yak-cow river, Murus-ussu.

Hbrog, upland pasturage, 5, 23.

Hbrog-pa, Hbrog (pastoral) people, 5.

Hbrom-khoñ, di. (Koko-nor), 32.

Hbum-dañ, a mythical place, 307.

HEDIN, Sven, travels, 36 n. 1,

*Southern Tibet*, 44 & n. 3, 82. S.a. HAENISCH.

Hei ('Black') Fan-tzū, p., 65. S.a. Fan-tzū.

Hel-ko, t., 242.

HENNESSEY, J. B. N., *Report on the Explorations of . . . Pandit A-K*, 36 n. 1, 89 n. 2.

HEERMANN, A., *Historical and Commercial Atlas of China*, 38, 40 n. 7, 44 n. 3.

Hgar, p. (Tibet), 308. S.a. Lga, Lgar, Mgar.

Hgo-boms, t. (= Kumbum?), 12 & n. 1, 199, 243.

Hgo-zi, st. = Ho-gzi, 83.

Hgreñ, p. (Amdo), 32, 57.

Hgreñ-ro, di. (Koko-nor), 32, 57.

Hgron-bu, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83. S.a. Djum-ba, Driñ-pa, Drum-ba, Duampou, Nan'-chen-ba, Muping, Sbrin-pa.

Hgru, a legendary p. (Tibet), 307-8.

Hgru-gu, id., 268, 308.

Hgru-ñdañ-hmah, a legendary t., 307-9.

Hjañ, p. & dynasty (Tang-hsiang), 27, 30-1, 333. S.a. Njong.

Hldyañ, p. & dynasty = Hjañ (?), 333.

Hoang-ho ('river'), 2 n., 37-8, 42-3, 49, 50, 67, 237 n. 1, 246 (bridge). S.a. Rma-chu, 'Yellow River', Huang-ho.

Ho-chou, t. (Kan-su), 11-12, 24, 27, 47, 50 n. 7, 68, 237 n. 1. S.a. Gac.

HODGSON, B. H., \**Sifán & Hórsók Vocabularies . . . (Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, vol. xxiii (1853, pp. 121-51))*, 6 n. 2, 17, 19, 20 & n. 7, 64-5, 70, 73, 75, 79, 80 & n. 2, 81, 85, 87, 89 n. 2, 92-3, 132, 158, 201 n. 1, 360.

HOERNLE, A.F.R., *JRAS.* 1911, p. 112.

Hog-gzi, st. = Ho-gzi, q.v., 84 n. 2.

Ho-kuan, di., 37 n. 4. S.a. Chin-ch'ing.

Ho-nan, re. (China), 54.

Hon-can-do, a place in Bde, 42-3. S.a. Hung-ch'eng.

- Hong, ri. = Ta-t'ung-ho, q.v., 38, 40, 42, 47 n. 3, 56 & n. 4. S.a. Huang.
- Hong-jong, a Ch'iang p., 41. S.a. Fêng-yang.
- Hong Te, a Ch'iang p., 56 & n. 4.
- Hoo, p. = Hu, q.v.
- Hor, re. (Byan-tha), 14.
- Hor in Hor-pa, q.v., 16 n., 65.
- Hor = Turk, 152.
- Hor-chyok = Hor-khog, q.v., 15 n. 5.
- Hor-khog, the five Hor-pa att., 15 & n. 5.
- Hor-ma, perhaps ancient name of the Hor-pa st., 16 n.
- Hor-pa, att., 65, 84-5; l., 65, 72-3, 80 n. 2, 89-99; w., 87, 89, 90-7, 100-1, 103-7, 109, 135, 248 n. 3, 251, 276, 278 n. 1, 317, 352, 360.
- 'Horse, White', Ch'iang tribe. S. 'White Horse'.
- Horsek'anga = Hor-khog, q.v., 15 n. 5.
- Horsök = Hor-pa and Sog (Mongol), q.v., 73. S. Hodgson.
- Hses-beg (hbeg), a divinity, 138, 142, 147 & n. 1, 155 n. 1, 223-4, 306-7.
- Hsi-ch'iang, 'Western Ch'iang', p., 25-6, 31, 36, 68.
- Hsien-ling, an ancient Ch'iang tribe or group, 41 & n. 7, 43. S.a. Siên-liên, Hsi-ning.
- Hsi-fan, p., 17, 25, 64-9, 77-8, 144; l., 19, 64, 73, 75-7, 88, 99, 100-5, 107-9, 119, 154, 168, 360, 369; w., 88, 102, 132, 203, 233, 238, 249 n. 2, 290, 328, 333, 352.
- Hsi-hai, 'Western Lake' = Koko-nor, 42.
- Hsih-chih, co. (Tang-hsiang), = Skyi, q.v., 37-8, 57.
- Hsi-hsia, l., 26-7, 61-3, 62 n. 1, 63 n. 1, 98-9, 103, 114, 127, 136, 168, 170, 206-11, 326, 372; w., 94, 98, 100, 131-2, 135, 158, 167, 168 n. 3, 194 n. 1, 201, 203, 217-18, 221, 223-4, 232, 234-6, 238-9, 240, 246, 249, 250, 252, 257-8, 266, 269, 270, 274, 276, 279, 282, 283 n. 1, 290, 303, 313-15, 320, 325-6, 328-9, 330, 336 & n. 1, 341, 343, 353, 355, 360, 369.
- Hsin-ch'êng, t. (Lan-chou re.), 12 n. 5.
- Hsin-chiang, re. 'New Dominion' = Kan-su & Turkestan, 11.
- Hsi-ngan-fu, t. (China), 27, 54.
- Hsi-ning, t. (Koko-nor), 10-13, 23-5, 36 & n. 1, 41, 47 n. 3, 68, 237. S.a. Zi-liù, & for various European spellings p., 11 n. 8.
- Hsiung-nu, p., 30, 33 n. 1, 56.
- Hsun-hwa, t. or di. (Amdo), 24.
- Hu, p. = 'Little Yüeh-chih, 46 n. 4, 47 n. 3, 48-9, 56. S.a. Hoo.
- Huan, ri. (China), 54.
- Huang, ri. = Ta-t'ung-ho, q.v., 12 n. 5.
- Huang-chung, di. (Amdo), 47-50.
- Huang-ho ('river') = Hoang-ho, 38, 40, 42, 49, 246.
- Huc, Abbé, *\*Souvenirs d'un Voyage dans La Tartarie, le Thibet et la Chine*, 2 n., 2 n. 2, 3, 8 & n. 1, 10 n. 1, 12 n. 5, 13 n. 4, 20 n. 6, 23 n. 1, 24, 36 n. 1, 52 & n. 2, 139 n. 1, 144 n. 2, 148 & n. 3, 280 n. 1, 299.
- Hung-ch'êng, t. (Amdo), 43 & n. 2.
- Hung-chi on the Rma-chu in Amdo, 53 n. 7 (bridge), 237 n. 1 (bridge).
- HUNTER, W. W., *The Non-Aryan Languages of India & High Asia*, 132.
- HUTH, G., *Hor-chos-byun* (trans.), 59.

## I

- I, p., 56, 152.
- Indus, ri., 4 (gorge).
- Itineraries (Lha-sa—China), 4, 5, 6 n. 2, 8 n. 2.
- IVANOV, A., 63 n. 1 (Hsi-hsia vocabulary).

## J

- JAESCHKE, H. A., *Tibetan Grammar*, & articles on Tibetan (Berlin Academy Monatschrift, 1867), 209 n. 1, 240 n. 2, 269, 351, 362 n. 1.
- Jag-la, st. = Leag-la, q.v., 83-4.

Jagpa, p. = Chakpa, 20 n. 7. S.a.  
Go-lok.  
Ja-la, st. = Leag-la, q.v., 83.  
Japanese, w., 34, 234.  
Jè, ri. (E. Tibet), 18 n. 4, = Jo.  
Jèn, an early Ch'iang chief, 40, 52,  
57, 135. S.a. Dsim.  
Jèn Si-ku, commentator on the  
*Former Han Annals* = Yen Shih-  
ku, 46.  
Jò, ri., 18 = Jè.  
Jo-Ch'iang, p., 43-6, 43 n. 3 =  
Dza-k'iong, Ni-kiang. S.a. Ha-za.  
JOHNSTON, R., \**From Peking to*  
*Mandalay*, 7 n. 8, 66 & n. 1, 67 n.  
2, 70, 73, 79, 81, 87 n. 2, 142 n. 1,  
145 n. 1.  
Jok-zai, st. = Leog-rtse, q.v., 84 n.  
2.  
Ju-kan, st. = Brdzum-hgag, q.v.,  
84 n. 2.  
Jün, di. (Tsaidam), 26 (name).  
Jung, p. = Džong, 54-6, 152.  
Jya-de, di. (E. Tibet), 1, 75, 187.  
Jya-kha, st. = Rgyal-kha, q.v.,  
82-3.  
Jyar, p. = Byar/G-yar, 17 n. 1.  
Jyā-ruñ, co. = Rgyal-roñ, q.v.,  
17 n. 5; 1, 72-3, 79 n. 1, 80, 89 &  
n. 2, 95; w., 87, 90, 92-4, 96, 103-  
5, 216 n. 2, 343. S.a. Gyārūng,  
Rgya-roñ.  
Jye-dam, di. (Chung-tien), 83-5.  
Jyekundo, t. & di. (Tibet), 4, 7, 11;  
1., 75.

## K

Ka-ba, di. (Liang-chou), 58 & n. 3.  
Ka-chin, 1., 154; w., 99.  
Ka-droñ (Kad-roñ), a place (Amdo),  
268, 308.  
Kailāsa, m. & di., 1, 14, 130, 373.  
Kam-ba-rdzoñ, t. (Thibet), 67.  
Kanauri, l. w., 92, 328.  
Kan-chou, t. & di. (Kan-su), 10 (ri.),  
12, 24-5, 36 n. 1, 48, 58 (ri.), 153.  
Kang-yen valley in 'Women's King-  
dom', 18.  
Kañ-sar, st. = Khañ-gsar, q.v., 83.  
Kan-su, re., 10-13, 24-5, 28, 32, 36,  
41, 45 n., 49 n., 58, 65, 242 n. 1;

p., 24-5, 45, 53, 65; 1. & w., 106  
(Tibetan), 242 n. 1.  
Kanzé, st. (Hor-pa), 11 n. 1, 16 n.,  
18, 75, 150; 1., 75. S.a. Dkañ-  
mdzes.  
Karakoram, m., 1.  
Karen, p., 144 (creation legend).  
KARLGHEN, B., \**Analytical Dic-  
tionary of Chinese*, 34, 56 n. 4,  
59 nn. 1, 3, 234-5, 245, 250 n. 1,  
264, 303, 328.  
Keang, p. = Ch'iang, q.v., 47 n. 3.  
Keshets, st. = Dge-si-tsa, q.v., 84 n.  
2.  
Khab-yo-byañi-Hdab-bkra, a myth-  
ical person, 131.  
Khams, re. (E. Tibet), 8, 13, 23,  
32-3, 78. S.a. Mdo-Khams; 1.,  
76, 78, 84-5, 107, 209, 362 n. 1.  
Khañ-gsar, st. (Hor-pa), 15 n. 5, 83.  
S.a. Kañ-sar, Kon-ser, Khun-sar,  
Kuñ-sar.  
Kharakhoto, t. (ruins), 27 & n. 4.  
Khar-tsan, t. & di. (Kan-su), 134.  
S.a. Mkhara.  
Khotan, st., 15, 44, 61, 116; 1., 116.  
Khri-boms, t., 243 (name).  
Khri-sor, lake = Koko-nor, 34.  
Khri-sroñ-Ldeñu-brtsan, Tibetan  
king, 368 (name).  
Khrom, t., 33.  
Khro-skyab, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83-4.  
S.a. Coskiab Cosgiyab, Chos  
Chia, Chosschia, Chossüchiapu,  
Chro-ñiop, Tro-jiyab, Tru-jiyab.  
Khun-sar, st. = Khañ-gsar, q.v.,  
83, 85.  
Kianggu, st. = Brag-mgo, q.v.,  
85 n. 1.  
Kiangsu, re. (China), 54.  
Kiating, t. (China), 17.  
Kin-ch'ing, t. & di. = Chin-ch'ing,  
q.v., 43 n. 6.  
Kin-ts'ing, id., 43 n. 6.  
Kin-tschuan, ri. = Chin-ch'uan, q.v.,  
1, 19.  
Kioutse, l. w., 74, 92, 99, 325.  
KLAPROTH, J., *Description du Tibet*,  
6 n. 2.  
Koko-nor, lake & re., 8-13, 25-6  
(name), 34 (name), 41, 58-9, 66,  
99, 251; p., 20-1, 23, 26-8, 43, 45,



- 56, 237, 251; l., 123-4, 237, 373.  
S.a. Amdo, Hsi-hai, Ching-hai,  
Turquoise Lake, Tangut, Tibetan.  
Kolo, p. = Go-lok, q.v., 20 n. 6.  
KONOW, Sten, *Two Medieval Documents from Tun-huang*, 127.  
Kon-ser, st. = Khañ-gsar, q.v., 82-5.  
Kortsè, p. (Go-lok), l., 72, 88; w., 90-1.  
Koshu Han, a Chinese official, 12 n. 5.  
KOZLOV, P. K., *Mongolei, Amdo und die tote Stadt Charachoto*, 20 n. 9, 27 n. 4, 59 n. 3.  
Kre-ciu (tschiu), di. or st. = Khroskyab? 83-4, 153; l., 19.  
Kredyan, p. & l., 154.  
Kuang-han, t. & di. (China), 40, 52 & n. 6, 53 n. 1, 56.  
Kublai Khan, a Mongol Emperor, 26.  
Kue-de, st. = Kuei-tè, q.v., 59 n. 3.  
Kuei-tè (tò), st. (Amdo), 5, 21, 59 & n. 3, 59 n. 3, 60. S.a. Gui-dui, Kue-de, Dunczi.  
Kuen-lun, m., 44.  
Kum, desert (Lob-nor), 146.  
Kumbum, monastery t. (Amdo), 8 n. 2, 12 & n. 2, 13, 23, 26, 59, 199, 243. S.a. Hgo-boms.  
K'ung-chou, di. (China), 31.  
Kung-sa (sar), st. = Khañ-gsar, q.v., 15 n. 5, 84 n. 2.  
Kuñ-sar, id., 83.  
Ku-tsung, p. (Tibetans of Yün-nan), 69; l., 72-4; w., 102.  
Kva-cu, t. = Kwa-chou (Kan-su), 32, 35.  
Kya-ring-nor, lake = Skya-reñs, q.v., 4 n. 4.
- L**
- La, pass (Tibet), 5.  
Ladak, co., 1, 14, 151 (Mons); l., 79; w., 102.  
Lahu, p., 144 (legend); w., 99.  
LALOU, Mille., *Inventaire des MSS. tibétains de Touen-houang*, 33 n. 3, 247, 250 n. 2, 260 n.  
Lan-chou, t. (Kan-su), 3, 5, 10, 12, 23, 42, 48.  
Lang-chen, t. (Amdo) = Lyon-jen, q.v., 36.  
Lao-chieh, a Ch'iang tribe = Lo-tschü (tsche), 41 & n. 3.  
LAUFER, B., *\*The Si-hia Language, a Study in Indo-Chinese Philology*, 17 n. 1, 63 n. 1, 64 n., 70, 89 n. 2, 98 n. 1, 107-8, 109 & n. 1, 131, 136, 158, 166, 182, 258, 269, 282, 353, 369, 372, & elsewhere in citations of Hsi-hsia w.  
Lba-si, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83. S.a. Wa-se, Wassi, Wassu.  
Leag-la, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 82-3. S.a. Leags-la, Cag-la, Cha-la, Ja-la, Djia-la, Jag-la, Ming-jing, Ta-chien-lu.  
Leags-la, st. = Leag-la, q.v., 83.  
Leog-rtse, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 81, 83. S.a. Leog-rtsi, Cog-tsi, Cok-tsi, Co-tse, Ciu-tzü, Chok'schi, Choga Chi, Jokzai, Djiu-tse (tzü).  
Ldañ-la, m. = Tang-la, q.v., 2 n. 3.  
Ldeñ-zahi-hbrin-te Sman-skyol, a legendary person, 134.  
Ldoñ, an early Tibetan tribe, 307-8.  
Ldoñ Me-ñag, p. (Mi-ñag, q.v.), 16 n. 3, 152.  
Ldoñ Sum-pa, p. (Sum-pa, q.v.), 18 n. 2. S.a. Gtoñ.  
Leñu, t. or st. (Rgyal-roñ), 86.  
Lem-cu, t. & di. = Liang-chou, q.v., 12.  
Len-tsa, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 14.  
Lepcha, w., 217, 326.  
Lévi, Sylvain, Tibetan invasion of India, 14 n. 3.  
Lga, Lgar-ma, a legendary Tibetan tribe, 307-8. S.a. Hgar, Mgar.  
Lhabrang monastery = Bla-brañ, q.v., 20 & n. 8, 27, 60 & n., 243 n. 1.  
Lha-mo-shan (ri), m., 54, 237.  
Lha-sa, t., 11 (routes), 13-4, 26, 60 n (routes), 237 (name); l., 33, 75 & n. 1, 78, 81, 84, 85, 86 n. 2, 104-5, 107, 117 n. 5, 372; w., 107.  
Liang-chou, t. & di. (Kan-su), 12, 25, 28, 47-8, 49 & n. 1, 58. S.a. Lem-cu, Wu-wei, Ka-ba.  
LÉTARD, A., *\*Notes sur les dialectes Lo-lo*, 70, 143.

Li-fan-fu, t. (Ssü-ch'uan), 66-7; l. (Man-Tzû), 70, 89 n. 1; w., 96.  
 Lig, dynasty (Zaü-zuü), 14 n. 1.  
 Li-gu, an early Ch'iang tribe, 40 & n. 4, 41, 52 & n. 5. S.a. Li-niu, 'Yak tribe'.  
 Lin-chou, di. (China), 28.  
*Linguistic Survey of India*, 98, 104, 209.  
 Li-niu, p. = Li-gu, q.v., 40 & n. 4.  
 Lin-t'ao, t. & di. (Kan-su), 41, 43, 53.  
 Lissou, p.; l., 72; w., 74, 92.  
 Lissu, id., 151; l., 72.  
 Li-su, id.; l., 72; w., 99, 102.  
 Li-t'ang (taü, thaü), t. & di. (Tibet), 6, 11, 83; l., 67 n. 2.  
 Littledales, St. G. R. and Mrs., travels, 3, 36 n. 1.  
 'Little Tiger', a certain legendary ass = Cho-pyi-cog-zu, q.v., 132.  
 Liung-ch'êng, t. = Lyon-jen, q.v., 35.  
 Lo, ri. (China), 54.  
 Lob-nor, re., 44-6, 146. S.a. Kum desert, Shan-shan.  
 Lo-dgu, Lo-gu, st. = Ba-bam, q.v., 83.  
 Lok-Tik, p., 58-9, 59 n. 1.  
 Lo-lo, p., 66, 69, 302 n. 2; l., 63-4, 72, 75, 99, 109, 324; w., 73-4, 92, 99, 101, 103-7, 218, 232-4, 271, 273, 276, 325, 328, 330.  
 Loü-sum, a mythical place, 32 n. 1.  
 Lonü Man, p., 153.  
 Lo-tava, p. = Blo-bkra, q.v., 15 n. 1.  
 Lo-tsu (tschu), tribe & ri., 41 & n. 3.  
 Loutse, p.; l., 72, 81, 92; w., 2 n, 74, 90-1, 93-5, 97, 99, 100, 102-4, 106-7, 325. S.a. Lu-tzû.  
 Lton-tehi-Mye-kru, a legendary person, 131, 133, 136-8, 143, 190 (name), 223, 255, 369 (name).  
 Lung, m. (Kan-su), 12, 54.  
 Lung-ch'uan valley (Amdo), 12 n. 5.  
 Lung-hsi, di. (Kan-su), 12, 37, 41, 43, 55 & n. 3.  
 Lu-tzû, p.; l., 72, 81, 92; w., 90-1, 94-5, 97-8, 101, 103-4, 106-7.  
 Lyang, dynasty (T'ang-chang), 30, 333. S.a. Hjaü.  
 Lyon-jen, t. (Amdo), 35. S.a. Lang-chen, Liung-ch'êng.

M

Man, p., 66-7, 152, 154.  
 Mänasa-sarovar, lake, 1, 8, 373.  
 Man-chia, p. = Min-chia, q.v., 65-6, 69.  
 Manchü, l., 84.  
 Mantze, p. = Man-tzû, q.v., 67.  
 Man-tzû, p. & l., 64-9, 154. S.a. Outer Man-tzû.  
 Manyak, co., 16, 64-5, 72, 75; l., 73, 75, 89; w., 87 & n. 4, 90-4, 101-5, 107-8, 218, 238, 242 n. 1, 251, 276, 284, 303, 328, 330, 344, 360.  
 S.a. Mi-nag, Menia, Mu-nia, Minia.  
 Mao, di. (Ssü-ch'uan), 53.  
 Mao-chou, t. (Ssü-ch'uan), 18, 29.  
 Marco Polo, 11 n. 8 (Sinju).  
 Mar-khams, di., S. Dmaro.  
 Mar-yul, co. = Ladak, 1.  
 MASPERO, G., 119 n. 1.  
 Mašu, st. = Ma-zi, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 Matse, st. = Ma-zi, q.v., 85 n. 1.  
 Mazar, st. = Ma-zi, q.v., 83.  
 Ma-ze (zer), st. = Ma-zi, q.v., 83, 85.  
 Ma-zi, st. (Hor-pa), 15 n. 5, 83. S.a.  
 Ma-zar, 'ze, 'zer, 'zzar, 'su, 'zu, 'zur.  
 Ma-zu (zur), st. = Ma-zi, q.v., 83, 15 n. 5.  
 Mazzar, st. = Ma-zi, q.v., 85 n. 1.  
 Mehiü-rgyal, a Ch'iang king, 135.  
 Mdo, lower part of valley, 6.  
 Mdo-gams, a place in Amdo, 32.  
 Mdo-Khams, re. = Amdo & Khams, 5, 8.  
 Mdo-li, st. (Rgyal-roü), 83.  
 Mdo-smad, re., perhaps embracing Amdo & Khams, q.v., 6, 8, 32, 137 n. 2.  
 MEARES, C. H., travels, 17.  
 Mehi-klu-hcäh, a class of beings, perhaps referring to the Nam people, 138.  
 Me-kong, Upper, ri., 3, 11, 79 = Dza-chu, q.v.  
 Mélam, l. (Tsa-roü), 81, 89; w., 91, 97, 101, 230.  
 Me-li, st. = Mi-li, q.v., 82-5.  
 Menia, p. = Mi-nag, q.v., 16 & nn. 1-3, 72; l., 16, 73, 75, 80, 89; w.,

- 74, 87 n. 4, 90-1, 93-6, 101-6, 108, 234, 242 n. 1, 279 n. 1, 328, 330, 339, 343-4.
- Mer-ke, t. (Rgyal-roñ), 242.
- Me-t'ang, a Ch'iang chief, 50.
- Me-tsang, a Ch'iang tribe, 21. S.a. Mi-sang.
- Mgar, a Tibetan clan, 308. S.a. Hgar, Lga(r).
- Mgo-log, p. = Go-lok, q.v., 20 n. 7.
- Miao-tseu, p., 144 (legends); w., 132.
- Miën-tsu, t. & di. = Min-chou, q.v., 54 & n. 9.
- Mi-li, st., 19, 73, 90, 83, 85; l., 89-99. S.a. Me-li, Mu-li, Sni-li.
- Min, ri. (Ssü-ch'uan), 9, 17, 53, 66.
- Mi-ñag, p., 16 & nn. 1-3, 18-19, 19 n. 2, 65, 67 n. 2, 80, 85, 99, 137 n. 2; l., 16, 89-99; w., 93. S.a. Mānyak, Menia, Minia, Mu-ña, Ldoñ Me-ñag.
- Min-chou, t. & di. (T'ao ri.), 3, 11, 43, 68. S.a. Miën-tsu.
- Ming-jeng (cheng, tscheng), 84 n. 2. S.a. Leag-la.
- Minia, l., 72. S.a. Mi-ñag.
- Min-kia (chia), p.; w., 98-9.
- Min-shan, m. (Ssü-ch'uan), 9, 41 n. 2.
- MINTSHUL HUTHUKTU, \**Geografia Tibeta*, q.v., 33, 59.
- Miri, l., 99, 154; w., 99 n. 1.
- Mi-sang, a Ch'iang tribe, 21, 28.
- Mishmi, p. & l., 99, 154; w., 99 n. 1.
- 'Mixed Wolves', a Ch'iang tribe = Tsang-lang, q.v., 40 n. 6, 41, 51, 53 & n.
- Mkhar-tsan, t. & di. (Kan-su), 32, 35. S.a. Khar-tsan.
- Mon (Moñ), p., 150 sqq., 243.
- MONREIG, Père, Tse-kou Tibetan, l., 70, 74, 79, 81.
- Mongol, p., 23 n. 1, 25-6, 34, 36, 65; l., 23 n. 2, 28; w., 2 n. 3, 26, 28, 33 n. 1, 88. S.a. Sökpä, Hörsök.
- Mongolia, co., Inner, 13; Upper, 13, 26, 31. S.a. Stod-sog, Sok-yeul.
- Mon-mo-thaü ('plateau'), 32 n. 2, 150.
- Mon Rta-dbañ (Iwan), Mon Spag-ro (Paro), Mon-yul, places near, or in, Bhutan, 151.
- MORGAN, E. D., S. Prejevalsky, 74.
- MORISSE, G., Hsi-hsia l., 62 n. 1.
- Mo-so, p., 72; l., 63-4, 69, 72, 76, 101, 324; w., 74, 92, 98-9, 102-7, 218, 224, 232-4, 249, 250, 255, 324, 328, 330, 332.
- Mosso = Mo-so, q.v.; l., 72.
- Muli, st. = Mi-li, q.v.
- Muli(Njong = Hjañ), l., 72, 81, 89; w., 74, 90-4, 97, 101-6, 135, 328, 330, 360.
- MÜLLER, F. W. K., Si-kiang, 44 & n. 3, 46 n. 3.
- Mu-ña, p. = Mi-ñag, q.v., 67 n. 2; l., 72-3, 80, 89; w., 74, 90-1, 94, 101-7, 333.
- Muping (p'ing), st. = Hgron-bu, q.v., 83, 84 n. 2; l., 89.
- Murus-ussu, ri. = Hbri-chu, q.v., 2 n. 2, 26 (name).
- Myaü, co. (Tibet), 142.
- Myaü-ro, co., 314 (name).
- Mye-kru, a legendary person. S. Ltoñ-tehü.
- Myi-rma-bu-Ldam-sad, a legendary person, 135.
- Myi-rma-bu Mehiñ-rgyal, a T'ang-chang king, 135.

## N

- Nägä, l., 99, 324; w., 99 n. 1, 325.
- Nag-chu, ri. = Ya-lung, q.v., 3, 7, 11, 15, 18-19.
- Nag-chu-ka, di. (Tibet), 13 & n. 4.
- Nag-cig, Gyim-po, a legendary person, 134-5.
- Nag-roñ, di. (on Nag-chu), 16 & n. 3. S.a. Nya-rong.
- Nam, co. & p., 130-3, 137 n. 2, 142-3, 146; l. & w., *passim* (S. Table of Contents). S.a. Nam-po, Nam-Tig, Nam-Ldoñ-prom.
- Nameji, l. (Hsi-fan), 72.
- Nam Kan-mog, a temple (Sa-cu re.), 271.
- Nam-Ldoñ-prom, a place (Amdo ?) 137 n. 2.
- Nam (Gnam)-mtaho = Tengri-nor, 2.
- Nam-Tig, p. & l. (Tig of Nam), 59, 61, 132, 155.
- Namtiga, a person, 60.



Nan-chao Man, p., 153.  
 Nan-chen, st. = Leag-la, q.v., 83-4.  
 Nan-hu, t. & di. (Kan-su), 10, 44.  
 Nan-shan, m., 1, 7, 10, 12, 24-5,  
 46-8, 58-61.  
 Na-Ptchu, di. = Nag-chu-ka, q.v.,  
 13 n. 4.  
 Nepal, co., 14; l., 303.  
 NEVSKY, N., \**A Brief Manual of the  
 Si-Hia Characters with Tibetan  
 Transcriptions*, 62 n. 1, 70, &  
*passim* in citations of Hsi-  
 hsia w.  
 Ngan ('An)-ku, di. (Kan-su), 41.  
 Ngo-lok, p. = Go-log, q.v., 20.  
 Ngo-ring, lake = Sño-rañs, q.v. 4 n. 4.  
 Ní-kiang, p. = Jo-ch'iang, q.v., 43-  
 6, 43 n. 3.  
 Nín-ga, Nín-hgag, st. = Brdzun-  
 hgag, q.v., 83-4.  
 Ning-hsia, t. (A-la-shan), 12, 24, 153.  
 Ning-yüan, t. (S. Ssü-ch'uan), 40 n.  
 4, 153.  
 N'jeh, ri. = Hbri-chu, q.v., 2 n. 2.  
 Njong, p. = Hjañ?; l. & w. S.  
 Muli(Njong).  
 Noring-nor ('lake') = Sño-rañs,  
 q.v., 4 n. 4.  
 Nö-log, p. = Go-log, q.v., 20.  
 Nü-kuo, st. = 'Women's kingdom',  
 q.v., 11, 18.  
 Nung, l.; w., 99.  
 Nya-rong, di. = Nag-roñ, q.v., 81-5.  
 Nyin-chen-tangla, m. = Gñan-chen-  
 Thañ-lha, q.v., 2-3.

# O

Odontala, a plain near the upper  
 Rma-chu = Skar-ma-thañ, q.v.,  
 26 (name).  
 Oksi, st. = Ho-gzi, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 OLLONG, Vicomte d', (1) *Les  
 Derniers Barbares* (Engl. trans.  
*In Forbidden China*), (2)\* *Langues  
 des peuples non-Chinois de la  
 Chine*, 4 n. 5, 7 n. 8, 9 n. 1, 12 n. 6,  
 20 n. 9, 21 & n. 3, 22 & n. 3, 28 n.  
 2, 41 n. 2, 65 & n. 3, 66, 70, 73-4,  
 132, 143, 146 n. 3, 148 n. 1, 187,  
 248 n. 1, 249 n. 1, 302 n. 2, 328,  
 352.

Orazio della Penna, 11 n. 8.  
 Oring-nor ('lake') = Sño-rañs, q.v.,  
 20, 26 (name).  
 ORLÉANS, Prince Henri d', \**From  
 Tonkin to India*, 7, 71, 73-4, 81,  
 143, 261, 266 n. 2, 333.  
 Outer Man-tzu, p., 67; l., 70, 89; w.,  
 90, 92, 96, 98, 103, 105, 108.  
 Ovis Ammoni (Hodgson), 3 n.

# P

Pai-lan, p. 15, 26, 29, 31, 35, 61.  
 S.a. Bair-lang, Byar, G-yar.  
 Pai-ma, 'White Horse' Ch'iang  
 tribe, 40 & n. 5, 41, 52 & n. 6, 53.  
 S.a. P'e (Pih)-ma.  
 Pamir, w., 33 n. 1.  
 Panag, Panak'a, p., 21, 26, 72. S.a.  
 Go-lok.  
 Pan-chen Blo-bzañ Dpal-ldan Ye-  
 ses, itinerary, 2 n. 3, 8 n. 2, 13.  
 PARKER, E. H., Hsiung-nu, &, 30,  
 33 n. 1, 49 n. 1.  
 Paro, t. = Spag-ro, q.v., 151 (name).  
 Pa-sti, st. = Brag-stiñ, q.v., 81, 83.  
 Pa-ti, id., 72, 83, 84 n. 2; l., 89; w.,  
 90, 94, 105.  
 Pa-u, st. = Ba-bam, q.v., 83.  
 Pa-U-Rong, di., 72-3; l., 73, 81, 89;  
 w., 74, 90-3, 97, 101-3, 105, 108,  
 135 n. 1, 328, 360.  
 FAUTHIER, J. P. G., Tibetan invasion  
 of India, 14 n. 3.  
 Pa-wan (wang), st. = Ba-bam, q.v.,  
 72, 83, 84 n. 2; l., 89.  
 Pe = Bod, p., 69, 72.  
 Pe (Bod of Sung-p'an), l., 70, 73-4;  
 w., 74.  
 'Peacock River' = Rma-chu, q.v.,  
 1 & n. 2, 4 n. 5.  
 Pei-ta-ho ('river'), (Nan-shan), 10.  
 Pei-t'ing, t. (Turkestan), 24, 153.  
 Peking, routes from Lha-sa, 11.  
 Pe Lissou, l., p. 72. S.a. Lissou.  
 PELLIER, P., 32, 45 & n. 2, 46 & n. 2.  
 Pe-lung, m. (Kan-su), 53.  
 P'e-ma, p. = Pai-ma, q.v.  
 Pe-re, st. = Be-ri, q.v., 83, 85.  
 Petsen, l., w., 99.  
 Peu (Bod) of Ta-chien-lu 72; l.,  
 73-4.

- Phug-dir (tir), a place (Amdo), 34.  
 Phyug-tsams, di. (Amdo), 32-4, 53.  
   S.a. Fussū-ch'eng.  
 Pih-te, di. (Ssū-ch'uan), 53 n. 1.  
 Pih-lang, p. = Pai-lan, q.v., 34 n. 6.  
 Pih-ma, p. = Pai-ma, q.v., 40 n. 5.  
 P'ing-fan, t. (Amdo), 10, 12 n. 5,  
   36 n. 1, 49.  
 P'ing-liang, t. (Shen-hai ?), 12.  
 Pö, l. = Pe, q.v., 69, 72.  
 Polei-tchou, ri. = Hbri-chu, q.v.,  
   2 n. 2.  
 Po-mo, st. = So-mo, q.v., 83.  
 PREJEVALSKY, N., \**Mongolia, the*  
*Tangut country* (trans. E. D.  
 Morgan), 1 n. 1, 2 n. 2, 3 n., 4 n. 5,  
 7, 44, 59 n. 3, 74, 80 n. 2, 139 n. 1,  
 175, 216, 351, & elsewhere in  
 notes.  
 PRINSEP, J., 14 n. 3.  
 Prū-mi, p. (Mi-li), 72; l., 81; w., 90,  
 94, 97, 101-6.  
 Pyen, l.; w., 99.  
 Pyi-gtañ-sum, Pyi-lñañ, t. (legend-  
 ary), 307.

## Q

- Quedae, t. & di. = Kuei-té, q.v.,  
 59 n. 3.  
 'Queen's Gorge' (? King's), 17 & n.  
 1. S. Rgyal-roñ.

## R

- Rab-brtan, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83. S.a.  
 Rap-ten, Rar-dan, Ra-ten.  
 Rāi, l.; w., 98.  
 Rañ-ke, t., 242 (name).  
 RAPSON, E. J., *Kharoṣṭhī Inscrip-*  
*tions* . . ., 60 n. 3.  
 Rap-ten, st. = Rab-brtan, q.v., 83.  
 Rar-dan, id., 83.  
 Ra-ten, id., 83.  
 Rbag-ga-rbag-śi, a mythical person,  
 134.  
 Rdyarong, co. = Rgyal-roñ, q.v.,  
 17 n. 1.  
 Rdzogs-chen, st. (Ñag-roñ), 15 n. 5.  
 S.a. Zo-chen, Zog-chen.  
 Rge-śi-tsa, st. = Dge-śi-tsha, q.v.,  
 83-4.  
 Rgya, co. = China, 13, 131, 152.

- Rgyal-kha, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 83. S.a.  
 Dja-kha, Jya-kha.  
 Rgyal(-mo)-roñ, co. (18 States),  
 17 & n. 1, 18-20, 51 n. 4, 65, 67-8,  
 85, 99, 100; l., 19, 20, 72, 73, 85-7,  
 89-99, 95, 98, 154, 260 n. 1; w.,  
 87 n., 90-1, 93, 100-1, 103, 105-7,  
 260 n. 1, 324 n. 1. S.a. Gyārūng,  
 Jyā-ruñ, Rgya-roñ.  
 Rgya-mo-thañ, 'China plain', 32 n.  
 2, 153.  
 Rgya-roñ, co. = Rgyal(-mo)-roñ,  
 q.v.; l., 72, 79 n. 1, 80, 89; w.,  
 86, 92-8, 100-8, 232, 266, 325,  
 360, 369.  
 RICHTHOFEN, F. von., *China*, 11  
 n. 9.  
 RIJNHART, Mrs., \**With the Tibetans*  
*in Tent & Field*, 15 n. 5, 30 n. 1.  
 RITTER, C., *Die Erdkunde*, 11 n. 9.  
 Rji-luñ-dañ-ba, t. or co. (legendary),  
 307.  
 Rma, surname, 1 n. 2.  
 Rma-chu, ri. = Hoang-ho in Tibet,  
 1 & n. 2 (name), 3, 9, 10, 20-2, 24,  
 26-8, 45 (altitude), 59, 61, 135,  
 246.  
 Rma-roñ = Rma-chu gorge, 9, 20,  
 29, 31, 57.  
 ROCKHILL, W. W., (1) \**The Land of*  
*the Lamas*, (2) *Diary of a Journey*  
*through Mongolia & Tibet*, (3)  
*Tibet: a sketch from Chinese*  
*sources*, 2 n., 2 & 3, 4 nn. 2-5,  
 5 nn. 3 & 6, 6 n. 2, 7, 8 nn. 1 & 2,  
 16-20, 21, 52, 59, 65, 71, 75-6,  
 81-5, 87, 149-51, 187, 237-8, 251,  
 299, 344, 373, & *passim* in notes  
 elsewhere.  
 Roñ (gorge) districts, 5-7.  
 ROSENBERG, F., *Sogdian MSS.*  
 (orthography), 117 n. 1.  
 ROSTHORN, A. von., \**Vokabular-*  
*fragmente Ost. Tibetischer Dia-*  
*lekte*, 17, 19, 20, 68, 71, 80, 82, 84,  
 87 & n. 4. S.a. Rgya-roñ.  
 Rtsi-dañ, a legendary place, 307.  
 Rtsung-kang, st. = Brdzun-hgag,  
 q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 Ru-dok, t. & di. (Tibet), 1.  
 Ru-kan, Rung-kang, Ruñ-kan, st.  
 = Brdzun-hgag, q.v., 83, 84 n. 2.

## S

- Śa-cu, t. = Sha-chou, q.v., 36 n. 1, 43, 61, 112, 129-30, 134, 155, 271.  
 S.a. Ch'ien-fo-tung, Nam-Kan-mog.  
 Sa-ga Gdiñ-drug, a mythical place, 32 n. 1.  
 Salar, p. (Amdo), 24 & n. 1.  
 Sa-ma, st. = So-mo, q.v., 83.  
 Sam-long, p. = Ts'an-lang, q.v., 40 n. 6, 41, 51, 53 & n. 1.  
 Sam-sa, a Go-lok tribe, 21, 41 & n. 2.  
 Sam-tsia, a Ch'iang tribe, 21, 41. S.a. Siēm-tsu.  
 SANDBERG, G., *Tibet & the Tibetans*, 5 nn. 3, 5, 8 n. 2.  
 SATIŚCANDRA VIDYĀBHŪṢAṆA, *Sor-sor-thar-pa*, edited by, 127.  
 Sbrin-pa, st. = Hgron-bu, q.v., 83-4.  
 Scilin (°lingh), t. = Hsi-ning, q.v., 11 n. 8.  
 Sde-dge, st. (E. Tibet), 15 n. 5, 83. S.a. De-ge, Der-ge, Der-gi, Sder-gi.  
 Sder-gi, id., 83.  
 Se-bag, a divinity, 147 n. 1.  
 Seen-tsze, a Ch'iang tribe, 41. S.a. Shan-chieh.  
 Se-Ha-za, p., 152.  
 Selin, t. = Hsi-ning, q.v., 11 n. 8.  
 SENART, É., *Kharoṣṭhī Inscriptions*, 60 n. 3.  
 Seutati, Peu (Bod p.) of, 72. S.a. Tzū-ta-ti.  
 Sgañ districts, 5, 6.  
 Sha-chou, t. (Kan-su), 10, 28, 45. S.a. Śa-cu.  
 Shan-chieh, a Ch'iang tribe = Seen-tsze, 41.  
 Shan-chou = Hsi-ning, q.v., 42 & n. 2.  
 Shan-hsi, re. (China), 54.  
 Shan-shan, co. (Lob-nor), 28, 44-5; 1, 116; w., 188.  
 Shan-tan, m. (Kan-chou), 48.  
 Shao-tang, a Ch'iang chief & dynasty, 41, 43, 47 n. 3, 48, 52. S.a. Sio-tong.  
 Sharakuto, t. (Amdo), 237.  
 Sharba, traders from Mer-ke (Ssū-ch'uan), 20 n. 2, 22-4.  
 Sha-t'o, a Turk tribe, 24, 153.  
 She-chu, Sche-tscho, ri., in Ch'iang co., 38.  
 Sheng-fan (Chinese) = Tibetan of Kan-su border, 65.  
 Shen-hsi, Ch'ang-an in, 27.  
 Shin-se, t. (Ch'iang), 11 & n. 2. S.a. Zin-cu.  
 Shi-shia = Hsi-hsia, q.v., 63 n. 1, 72.  
 Shuh, ancient division of Ssū-ch'uan, 12, 37, 51, 53, 57.  
 Siēm-tsu, a Ch'iang tribe = Samsa? 41.  
 Siēn, ri. = Ta-t'ung-ho? Hsi-ning-ho? 41 n. 7, 47 n. 3.  
 Siēn-liēn, Ch'iang tribes = Hsi-ning, 41 n. 7, 43.  
 Sien-pi, p., 28, 30. S.a. T'u-yū-hun.  
 Si-fan, p. & l. = Hsi-fan, q.v., 17, 72-3, 81-5.  
 Si-hai = Hsi-hai, Koko-nor, q.v., 37.  
 Si-hia, l. = Hsi-hsia, q.v., 62 n. 1, 73.  
 Sikki, co. = Hsih-chih, Skyi, q.v., 37, 57.  
 Siklim, for Sikkim? 67.  
 Simbu, l.; w., 98.  
 Sing-pho, l.; w., 98-9.  
 Sining = Hsi-ning, q.v.  
 Sinju = Hsi-ning, q.v., 11 n. 8.  
 Sio-tong = Shao-tang, q.v., 41.  
 Sirtin, di. (Tsaidam), 10, 23, 44.  
 'Six Cities' = Khotan co., 235.  
 Ska-ba, di. (Liang-chou), 58 & n. 3.  
 Skar-ba, a certain Yak, 139 (acc. to Huc & Gabet (II, p. 158) *Karba* is a Tsaidam term for a young yak).  
 Skar-ma-thañ, a plain near the Upper Rma-chu, 26. S.a. Odon-tala.  
 Skeg-zah-hbriñ-te Yar-mo-btsun, a mythical person, 184.  
 Skya-reñs-mtsho ('lake'), 4 n. 4. S.a. Charing-nor.  
 Skyi, co. (Tang-hsiang), 38, 42, 57, 61, 110, 135-6, 143, 255, 272; 1. 135-6. S.a. Hsih-chih.



Skyi-mthiñ (plateau) co. = Skyi,  
110, 133, 135.  
Smi-li, st. = Mi-li, q.v., 83, 85.  
Sñi, m., 272.  
Šho-rañs-mtsho ('lake'), 4 n. 4. S.a.  
O-ring-nor.  
Šod, low-lying lands, 6.  
Sogdian MSS., orthography, 117  
n. 5.  
Sökpa, Mongol, 1. 73.  
Sokyeul = Sog-yul, Mongolia, 64.  
S.a. Stod-Sog.  
Šo-ma-ra, a place in Skyi, 110.  
So-mo, st. (Rgyal-roñ), 17-9, 83,  
84 n. 2, 153. S.a. Po-mo, Sa-ma,  
So-muñ, Su-mu.  
Spag-ro, t. & di. (Bhutan), 151  
(Mon), 314.  
Spaṅ-gi-boñ-bu, 'Meadow ass', 132.  
S.a. Cho-pyi-cog-zu.  
Sribs, shadowed side of m., 6.  
Sribs-khri, an early Tibetan king, 6.  
Sroñ-btsan Sgam-po, Tibetan king,  
14-15, 26, 29.  
Ssü-ch'uan, re., 9, 12, 24-5, 33 n. 2,  
40 n. 4, 51-3, 56, 58, 65-6, 68,  
100, 153-4; p. 150. S.a. Shuh,  
Han.  
STEIN, Sir A., *Innermost Asia*, 62 n.  
1, 112, 286.  
Stod-phyogs, re. (Kailāsa), 1, 8, 14.  
Stod-sog, re. 'Upper Mongolia',  
(Amdo), 13, 26.  
STRÖTZNER, W., *In's unerforschte  
Tibet*, 7 n. 8, 82, 84 n. 2, 85 n. 1,  
89 n. 2.  
Su-ching, t. (Rgyal-roñ), 84 n. 2.  
Su-chou, t. (Kan-su), 10, 12, 25,  
42, 48-9, 58.  
Šud-ke, t., 242 (name).  
Su-ki, ri. = Tz'u-chih, q.v., 37-8, 40.  
Su-lo-ho, ri. (Kan-su), 10.  
Sum-pa, p., 18 & n. 2, 19, 148, 152.  
S.a. Ldon°, Nü-kuo.  
Su-mu, st. = So-mo, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
Sunggak, Sunggang, st. = Brdzun-  
hag, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
Sung-chou, old name of Sung-p'an,  
q.v., 12 n. 6, 26, 28-9.  
Sung-p'an, t. (N. Ssü-ch'uan), 9, 12,  
17-19, 22, 24, 26, 28, 66-8; 1. 73.  
Su-pi, p. = Sum-pa, q.v., 18 n. 2.

## T

Ta-chien-lu, t. & st., 1, 6-7, 11,  
17-18, 22, 66, 81; 1., 73, 75. S.a.  
Dar-chen-do, Lcag-la.  
TAFEL, A., \**Meine Tibetreise*, 1 n. 1,  
2 n., 3 n. 1, 4 nn. 1, 2, 4, 5 n. 6,  
5-9, 11 nn. 2, 4, 67, 71-2, 82-3,  
85-6, 154, 156, 324, & *passim* in  
notes elsewhere.  
Ta-hsia, ri. (Tang-hsiang co.), 11, 41.  
Taichinar, di. (Tsaidam), 9.  
Tākpa, di. & p. = Dwags-po (S.  
Tibet), 15; 1., 73; w., 100, 238,  
241 n. 1, 276, 325, 360, 369.  
Ta-li-fu, t. (Yün-nan), 98, 153.  
Tamba, st. = Dam-ba, q.v., 83.  
'Tame Yak' gorge, 268.  
Tamo = Lha-mo, 237 n. 2. S.a.  
Thamo.  
Ta-mo-mén, t. (Amdo) = Lha-mo°,  
237.  
Ta-mo-ri, a pass (Amdo), 237.  
T'ang-chang, p. & dynasty, 29-31,  
38.  
T'ang-chou, di., 30.  
Tango, st. = Brag-mgo, q.v., 85, 89.  
Tang-ho, ri. (Sha-chou re.), 10, 36 n.  
1, 44.  
Tang-hsiang, p. & co., 1 n. 2, 26,  
28-31, 38, 61. S.a. T'ang-chang.  
Tang-keou-eul (Chinese) t. = Tan-  
kar, q.v., 12.  
Tang-la, m. & pass, 2 & n. 6 (name),  
8, 11, 13-15.  
Tang-mi, p., 31. S.a. To-mi.  
Tangpa, st. = Dam-ba, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
Tangut, p. (Amdo), 26-7, 29 n. 4,  
36, 52 n. 4, 61-2, 74, 76-8, 80 n. 2,  
108, 175, 357; w., 75, 77-8, 102,  
105-8, 237, 271, 325 n. 1, 330,  
349, 352, 360, 368. S.a. Amdo,  
Tibetan.  
Tankar, t. (Amdo), 8 n. 2, 11-13,  
23-4, 146. S.a. Tongkor, Don-  
kyr, Dungkor, Tang-keou-eul.  
Tan-tig, p. (Amdo), 59, 60.  
T'ao, ri. (Tang-hsiang co.), 3, 9,  
11-12, 20-1, 25, 27, 28 & n. 1,  
41 n. 3, 43, 49, 55, 59, 65.  
T'ao-chou, t., 11 & n. 2, 28, 65, 68.  
80. S.a. Tehu-cu.

- Tashilhunpo, t., 13 & n. 3.  
 Ta-t'ung-ho, ri. (Nan-shan), 10,  
 12 & n. 5, 36 & n. 1, 40 & n. 3,  
 42-3, 47 n. 3, 48, 56-7. S.a.  
 Huang, Hong.  
 TAYLOR, L. F., 284 n. 1.  
 Teia-tam, di. = Chung-tien, Jye-  
 dam, 85.  
 Te, p., 49, 53 & n. 1, 51, 52 n. 1  
 ('Songs'), 56-7 (Wu-tu), 68.  
 Tehu-cu, t. = T'ao-chou, q.v., 11 n.  
 2.  
 Tek, p., S. Tik.  
 Tengri-nor ('lake') = Nam-mtsho, 2.  
 TERRIEN DE LACOUFÈRE, A., \**The  
 languages of China before the  
 Chinese*, 54, 71, 75, 89, 92, 96 n. 1,  
 116 n. 1.  
 Te-tao, r. & di. (T'ao ri.), 55-6.  
 Thamo-gompa, S. Tamo, 257 n. 2.  
 Than districts, 59.  
 Thōchū, t. & di. = T'ao-chou, q.v.,  
 64-5, 203; l., 73, 80 n. 2, 88; w.,  
 87 & n. 4, 90-8, 101-4, 106-9, 132,  
 223, 251, 325, 330, 366, 369.  
 Tho-gon, p. & dynasty = T'u-yū-  
 hun, q.v., 45.  
 THOMAS, F. W., *Tibetan Literary  
 Texts & Documents*, 1 n. 2, 14 n.  
 1, 27 n. 3, 32 n. 5, &c.  
 Thulung, l.; w., 98, 104.  
 Tibet, co., 1-36 and *passim*.  
 Tibetan, l., 23, 85-7, 87 n. 1, 93,  
 117, 123, 127-8, 187, 206-11, 213,  
 240; w., 2 & nn. 2-4, 3 n., 4 nn.  
 4-5, 5 & n. 3, 6, 8 & n. 2, 11 n. 1,  
 13, 20 & n. 7, 32 nn. 1-2, 33 & nn.  
 1 & 5, 64-5, 87-8, 92, 131-4,  
 136-7, 139-42, 146-8, 155-6,  
 158 & n. 2, 199-201, 213, & 'Nam  
 Vocabulary' *passim*.  
 Eastern, 78, 210. S.a. Khams.  
 Eastern Colonial, 78-9, 87,  
 100-2; w., 100-1, 103. S.a.  
 particular dialects.  
 Kan-su, 108.  
 Ladaki, S. Ladak.  
 Yün-nan, l., 73-4, 78-9, 92;  
 w., 87, 90-2, 94, 101-2, 369.  
 Tibeto-Burman, l., 158, 207, 238,  
 247, 324, 347; w., 27, 131-2, 223,  
 225, 232-5, 246-7, 249, 277, 286  
 & n. 1, 290, 303, 326, 328, 351,  
 360, 369.  
 Tig, p. = Tik, q.v. S.a. Nam-tig.  
 Tan-tig, Yañ-tig, Kuei-tō.  
 Tik (Tek), p., 54-9, 68; Red &  
 White, 54-5.  
 Ti(k)-tao, t. (T'ao-chou re.), 56.  
 Ting-ling, p., 35.  
 Ti-se, m. = Kailāsa, 8.  
 Ti-tao-chou, t. & di. (T'ao-chou re.),  
 11, 41.  
 Tokuz-dawān, m. (Cer-oen re.), 23,  
 44.  
 Tolan, t. (Liang-chou di.), 49 n. 1.  
 Tolehu, a place = Tolan?, 49 n. 1.  
 To-mi, p. (Byañ-thañ), 31. S.a.  
 Tang-mi.  
 Toñ-gsum-pa, p. = Gtoñ-sum-pa,  
 q.v., 152.  
 Tonkhor, t. = Tankar, q.v., 11.  
 'Too-leaou General', a Chinese com-  
 mander, 49 & n. 1.  
 To-pa, Tangut clan & dynasty, 29,  
 61.  
 Tosun-nor ('lake'), 26 (name).  
 Tre-o, st. (Hor-pa), 15 n. 5, 83, 85.  
 S.a. Cu-wo, Chuwo, Dze-go(gu),  
 Dri-tu, Gri-htu.  
 Tro-iyab, Tru-jab, st. = Khro-  
 skyab, q.v., 82-3.  
 Tsaidam, re., 9, 10, 13, 23, 26, 43-4,  
 46.  
 Tsan-la, st. = Btsan-la, q.v., 83.  
 Ts'an-lang, a Ch'iang p., 40 n. 6,  
 41, 51, 53 & n. 1. S.a. Sam-  
 long.  
 Tsa-ring-nor ('lake') = Skya-reñs-  
 mtsho, q.v., 4 n. 4.  
 Tsa-roñ (Tsarong), di. (Upper Me-  
 kong re.), 81; l., 76-7, 89-93; w.,  
 90-1, 93, 101. S.a. Loutse, Lu-  
 tzū, Mélam.  
 Tse-kou, t. & di. (Yün-nan), l. 73-4,  
 81, 84; w., 74, 93, 108. S.a. Tzū-  
 ku.  
 Tsen-hgi-Rbag-ga (zin), a mythical  
 person, 131, 134-6, 190 (name).  
 Tsen-la, st. = Btsan-la, q.v., 82-3.  
 Tshal-byi, a place (Tsaidam re.),  
 44 & n. 6.  
 Tshog-ro, di. = Cog°, Tsog°, 58.  
 Tsi, dynasty (Kuei-tō), 60 n.

- TSIBIKOV, G. Ts., *Buddhist Palomnik u sviatun Tibeta*, 12 n. 2, 20 n. 9.
- Tsi-shi, m., 38 & n. 1. S.a. Chi-shih.
- Tsog-ro, di. = Cog<sup>o</sup>, Tshog<sup>o</sup>, 58.
- Ts'o-ngara, lake = Sh'o-rañs-mtsho, q.v., 4 n. 4.
- Tsoñ-ka, Great & Little (Amdo), 12, 60.
- Tsoñ-kha-pa, a Tibetan divine, 12, 59-60.
- Tsoñ-la, m. (Amdo), 59.
- Ts'o-schdyara = Skya-reñs-mtsho, q.v., 4 n. 4.
- Tso-tu, a Ch'iang tribe, 53, 56, 58.
- Tsze-she, m., ri. ? = Sche-tsche, Su-ki, Tsi-shi, q.v., 37 n. 2, 38.
- T'u-fan (Chinese) = Kan-su Tibetans, 23 n. 2, 64, 68; l. 64.
- T'ukuhun, p. = T'u-yü-hun, q.v., 26.
- T'ung-ho ('river'), (Rgyal-roñ re.), 17, 65, 67 n. 2.
- Tung-i-chou, t. & di. (Kan-su), 53.
- Tun-huang, t. (Turkestan), 10, 13, 42-4, 58, 61, 112. S.a. Ch'ien-fo-tung, Sha-chou.
- Turfan, t. (Turkestan), 24.
- Turk, p. 24, 153 (Sha-t'o, q.v.), l. 24; w., 23 n. 2, 24, 33 n. 1, 88.
- 'Turquoise Lake' = Koko-nor, 34.
- 'Turquoise Valleys', 34. S.a. 'Yü Valleys, Great & Little'.
- 'Turquoise Wood', 31. S.a. G-yu-tshal.
- T'u-yü-hun, p. (Amdo), 15, 26, 28, 31, 33 n. 1, 36, 41 n. 3, 44-5, 51-2, 52 n. 4; l., 28, 116.
- 'Twelve Cities' (mythical), 235.
- Tz'u-chih, ri. = Su-ki, Tsze-she, q.v., 37-8, 50 & n. 8, 51.
- Tz'u-ku, t. & di. = Tse-kou, q.v., l., 81.
- Tz'u-ta-ti, di. (on T'ung ri.), 65. S.a. Seutati, l., 72-3.

## U, V

- 'Valley of the Winds' (Byañ-thañ re.), 44.
- VIAL, P., *Les Lolos*, 143.

## W

- WADDELL, L. A., *Ancient Historical Edicts at Lhasa*, 260 n.
- Wahong-shan, m. (Koko-nor re.), 9.
- WANG JINQU, Shishia Studies, 34 & n. 5, 58 n. 1, 62 n. 1, 127, 190 n. 1, 330 n. 2.
- Wang Mang, Chinese emperor, 47-8.
- Wa-se, Wassi, Wassu, st. = Lba-si, q.v., 83, 84 n. 2; l., 73, 89; w., 90-1, 94.
- Wei, ri. (Shen-hsi), 12, 27, 53-4, 57.
- Wei-chou, di. (Pai-lan co.), 31.
- Wén, an early Chinese ruler, 54.
- 'Western Lake' = Koko-nor, q.v., 47.
- 'White Horse', a Ch'iang p. = Pai-ma, q.v., 40 & n. 5, 41, 52 & n. 6, 53.
- Winds, S. 'Valley of the W.'
- Wo-jih, Wok-je(se), Wok-shih, st. = Ho-gzi, q.v., 83, 84 n. 2.
- WOLFENDEN, S. N., (1) \*Notes on the Jyürung Dialect of Eastern Tibet, (2) Outlines of Tibeto-Burman Linguistic Morphology, 17 n. 1, 19, 71, 80, 87 & nn. 3, 4, 88, 95, 98, 206, 208, 210-11, 301 n. 2.
- 'Wolves, Mixed', a Ch'iang p. = Ts'an-lang, q.v., 40 n. 6, 41, 51, 53 & n. 1.
- 'Women's Kingdom' = Sum-pa, Nü-kuo, q.v., 11, 18-19, 28-9, 53, 69, 85, 99, 137 n. 2, 153, 238.
- Wo-zi, st. = Ho-gzi, q.v., 84 n. 2.
- Wu, an early Ch'iang chief, 40.
- Wu-i-Yüan-chien, an early Ch'iang chief, 39, 40. S.a. Bu-ik-wan-kiem.
- Wu-tu, st. (Ch'iang) in S. Kan-su, 40, 51, 53 & n. 1, 56. S.a. Te.
- Wu-wei, t. = Liang-chou, q.v., 12, 49.
- WYLIE, A., \*Ethnography of the After Han Dynasty (trans. from the Hou Han-shu), 17 n. 2, 34 n. 2, 36 n. 1, 37 nn. 2, 4, 38, 43, 44, 135, 154, & elsewhere in notes pp. 39-58.



## Y

- Yab-nal-ldehi-thol-phrom, a mythical person, 133-5, 143, 190 (name).  
 Yab-sten-rgan-gyi-fier-ba, id. 133, 190 (name).  
 Ya-chou, t. (Ssü-ch'uan), 11, 18, 34, 52, 69, 153-4.  
 'Yak Tribe' (Ch'iang) = Li-niu, Li-gu, 40 & n. 4, 41, 52 & n. 5.  
 'Yak-cow river' = Hbri-chu, q.v.  
 Yâkhâ, l.; w., 98.  
 Ya-lung, ri. = Nag-chu, q.v., 3, 11, 15, 19, 20, 65, 81.  
 Yang-tse-chiang, ri., 2 = Hbri-chu, q.v.  
 Yang-t'ung, p. (Byan-thañ), 14-15, 26, 31.  
 Yañ-tig, p. (Amdo), 59.  
 Yar-luñ, t. & di. (S. Tibet), 14.  
 Yar-mo-thañ ('plateau') = Byar°, G-yar°, Dbyar°, q.v.  
 Yeh-hu, p. (Tibet), 29.  
 'Yellow River' = Rma-chu, q.v., 246.  
 Yen, an early Ch'iang chief & p. = Giên, 40-3, 49, 55.  
 Yen-mang, a Ch'iang p. (Ssü-ch'uan), 53, 56.  
 Yen Shih-ku (Jen-ši-ku), a commentator, 46.  
 Yog districts, 5-6.

- 'Yü Valleys, Great & Little', (Kokonor), 34, 43, 47 n. 3, 48, 50, 136. S.a. 'Turquoise Valleys'.  
 Yuan-ting, a Chinese envoy, 12 n. 5.  
 Yüeh-chih, Little, p., 46 & n. 4, 55.  
 Yüeh-sui, t. (Ssü-ch'uan), 40, 52.  
 Yü-ko nomads (E. Tibet), 84 n. 2.  
 YULE, H., 64 & n. 1, 65-6, 92.  
 Yung, ri. (Honan), 152.  
 Yün-nan, re., 64, 67 n. 2, 69, 73, 153-4; l., 78-9, 87, 90-9. S.a. Ku-tsung; w., 104.  
 Yü-t'ung, ri. 16-17; tribes, 81.

## Z

- Zan-la, st. = Btsan-la, q.v., 84 n. 2.  
 Zanskar, re. (Ladak), 151, 153.  
 Žañ-zuñ, st. (Kailāsa re.), 14 & n. 1, 152; l., 168, 206-11, 373; w., 328, 373.  
 Zar-phur, a place in Skyi, 110.  
 Zi-liñ, t. = Hsi-niñg, q.v., 11, 41 n. 7.  
 Zin-cu, t. = Shin-se, q.v., 11 n. 2.  
 Zo-chen, Zog-chen, st. = Rdzogs-chen, q.v., 15 & n. 5.  
 Žo-thañ, Ch'iang chief & p. = Shao-tang, q.v., 41.  
 Zun-ga, Zung-gak, Žuñ-kak, Zur-ga, st. = Brdzun-hgag, q.v., 83, 84 n. 2.

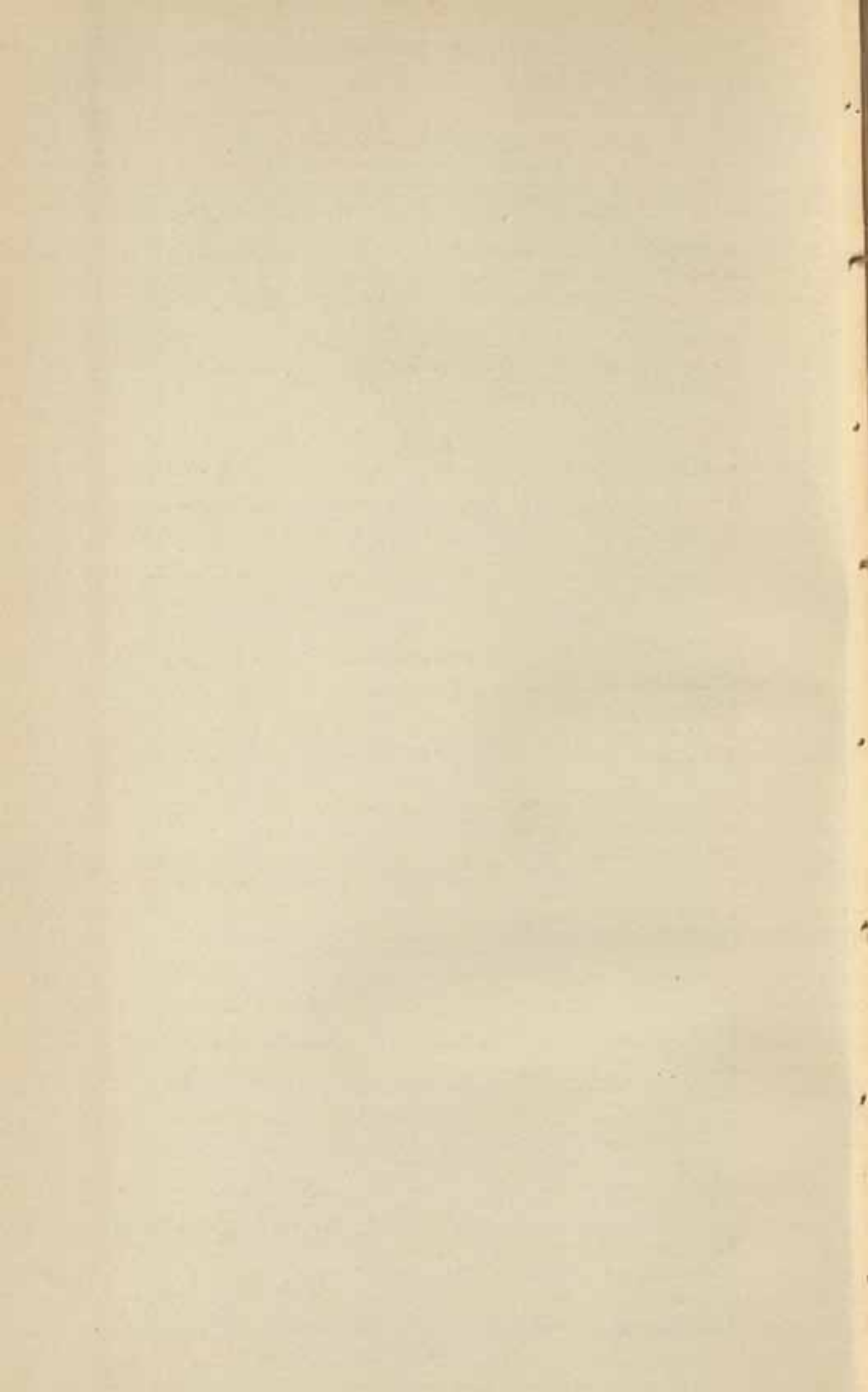
PRINTED IN  
GREAT BRITAIN  
AT THE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS  
OXFORD  
BY  
CHARLES BATEY  
PRINTER  
TO THE  
UNIVERSITY

5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45

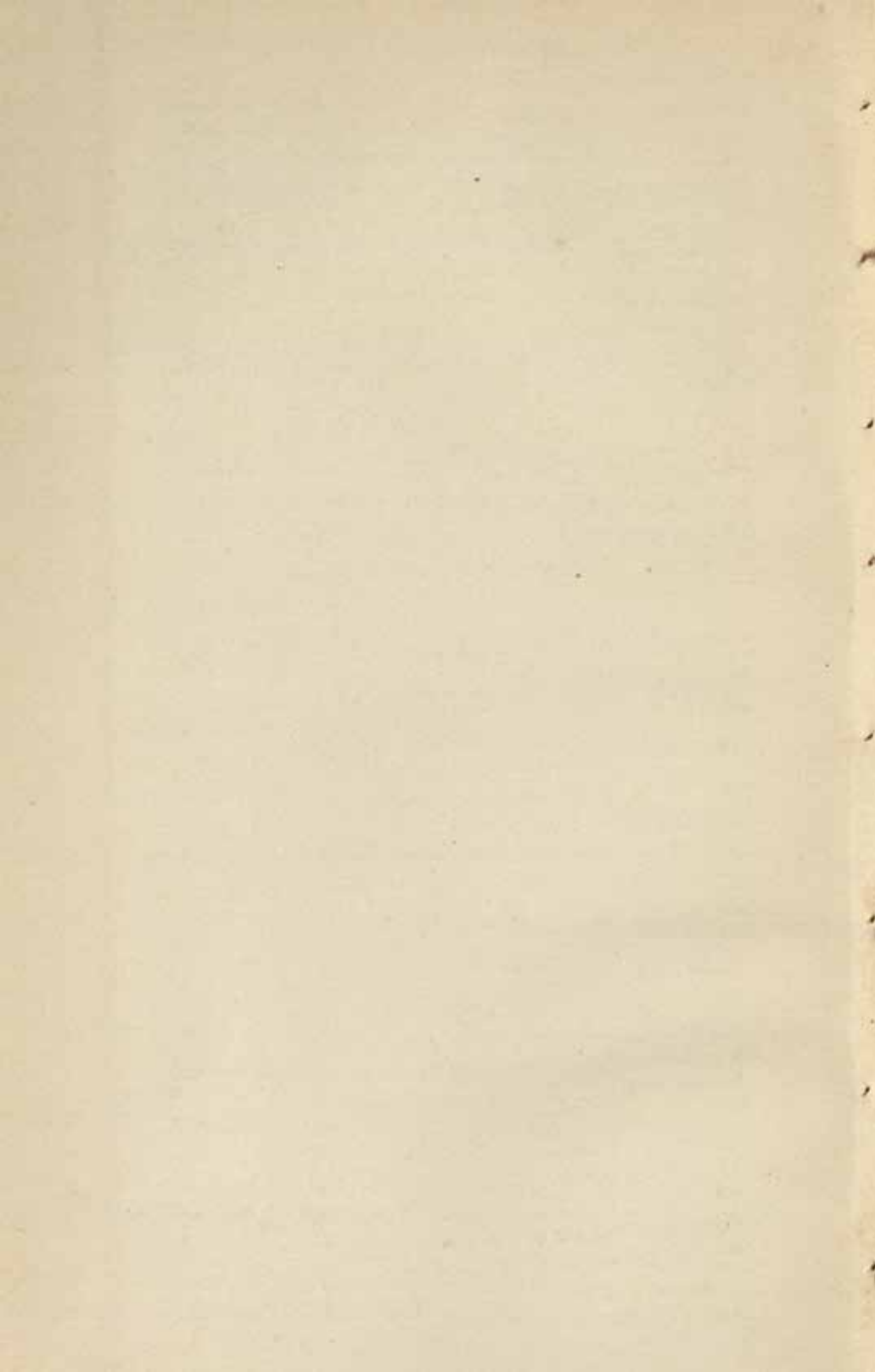
5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45

INDIA OFFICE LIBRARY MS. (STEIN COLLECTION) 4  
Scale approximately 1/2











85

85

90

90

95

95

100

100

105

105

110

110

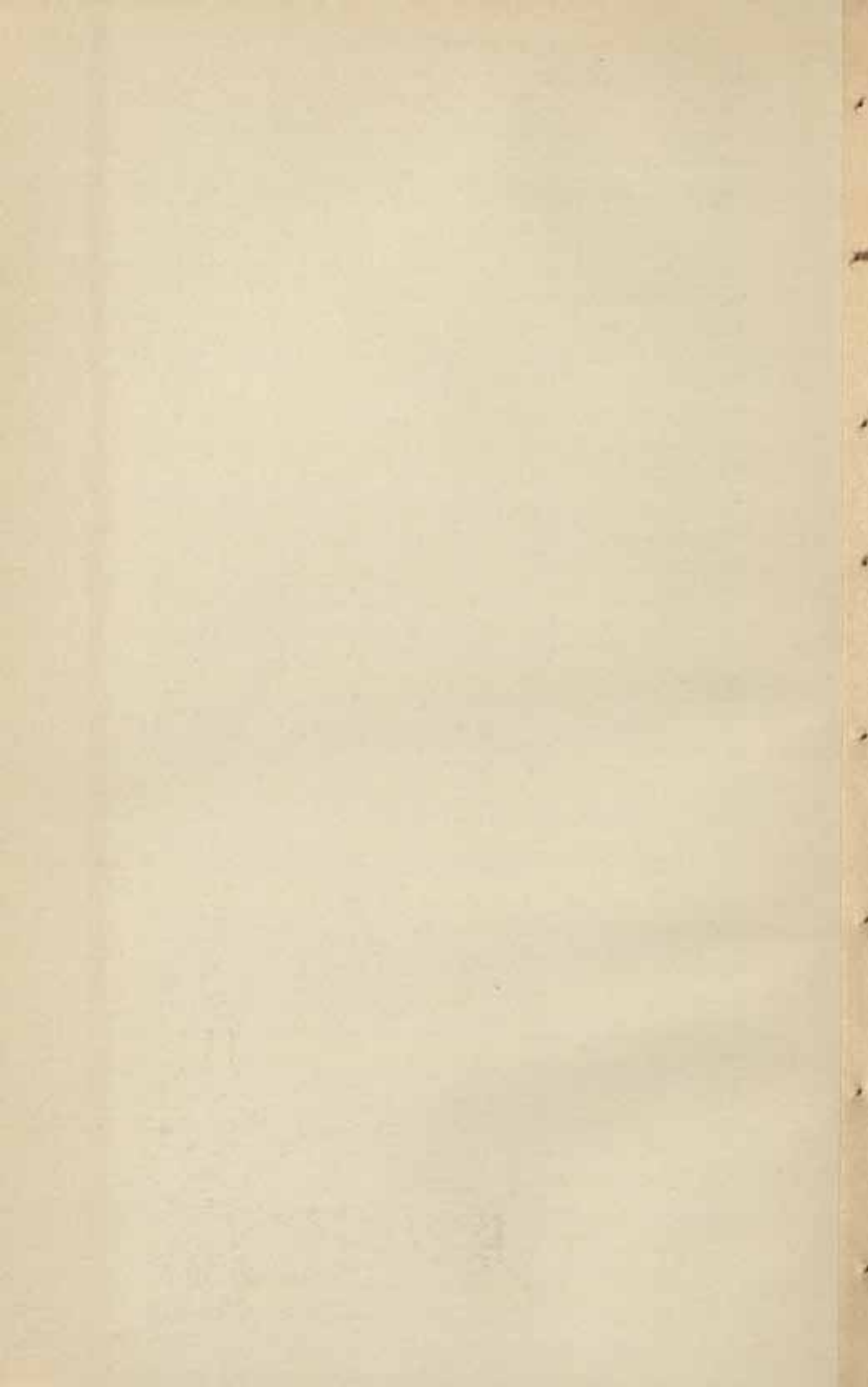
115

115

120

120

84  
 85  
 86  
 87  
 88  
 89  
 90  
 91  
 92  
 93  
 94  
 95  
 96  
 97  
 98  
 99  
 100  
 101  
 102  
 103  
 104  
 105  
 106  
 107  
 108  
 109  
 110  
 111  
 112  
 113  
 114  
 115  
 116  
 117  
 118  
 119  
 120  
 121  
 122  
 123  
 124



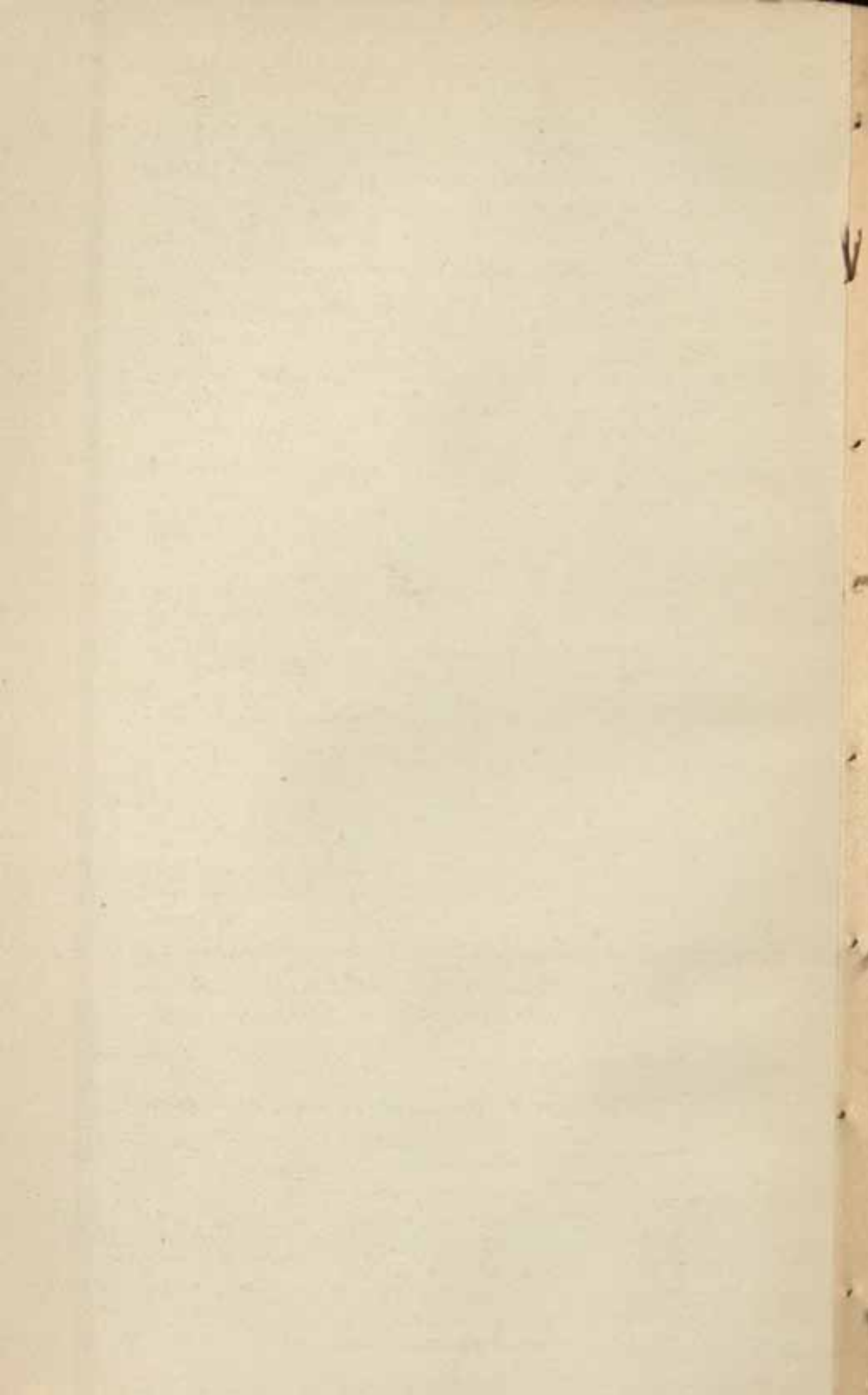






165  
170  
175  
180  
185  
190  
195  
200

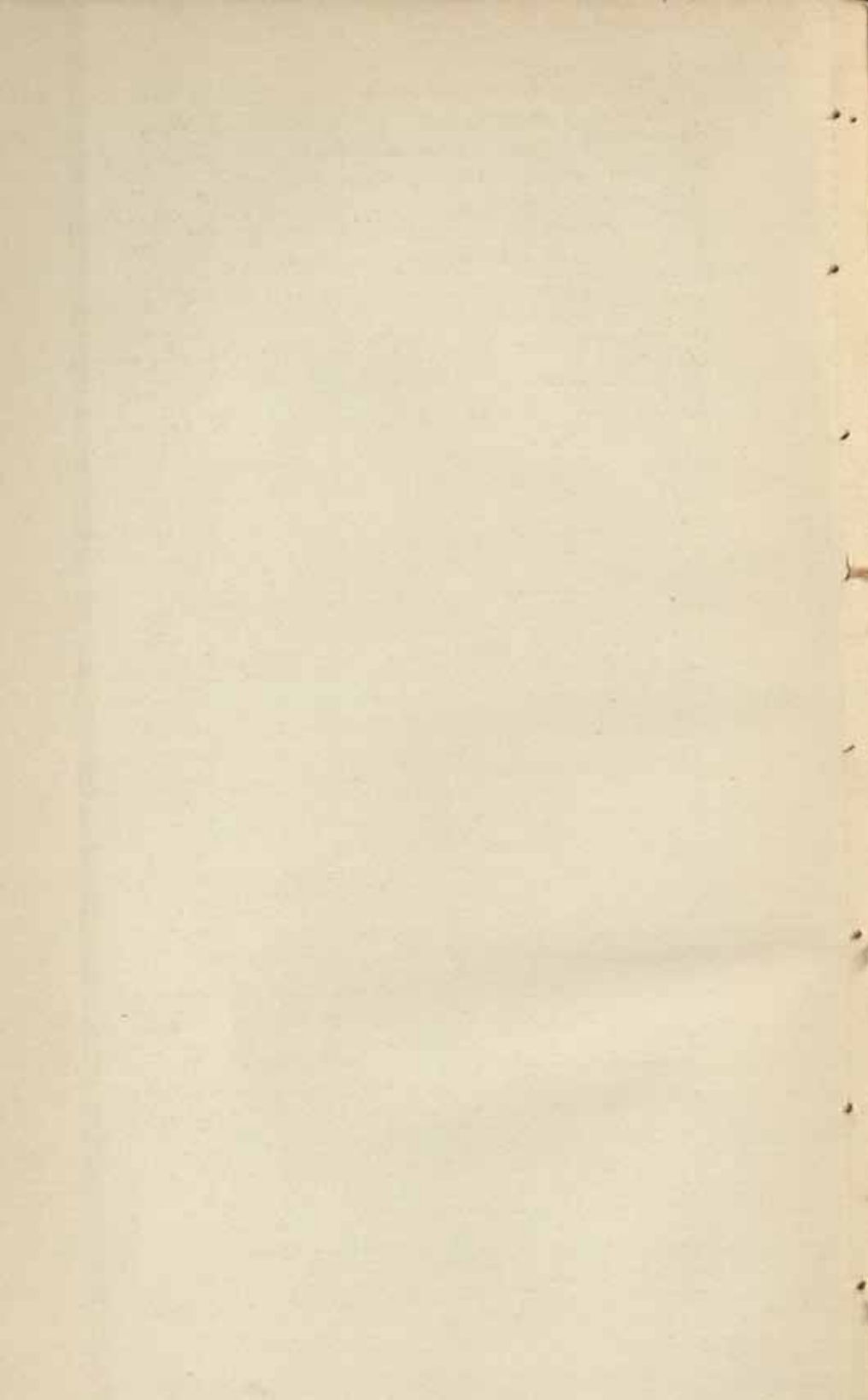
165  
170  
175  
180  
185  
190  
195  
200





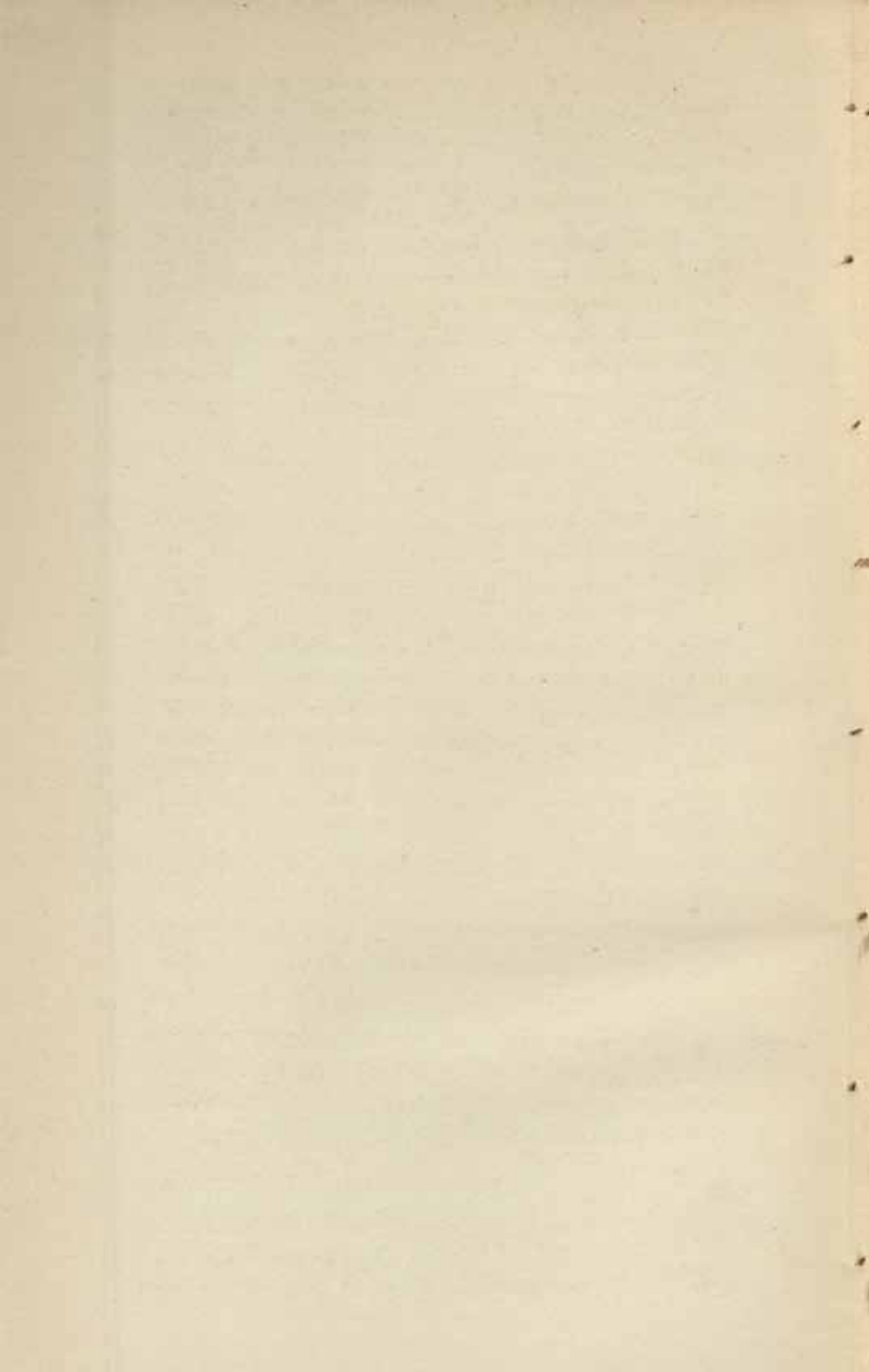
205 205  
 210 210  
 215 215  
 220 220  
 225 225  
 230 230  
 235 235  
 240 240  
 245 245

205 205  
 210 210  
 215 215  
 220 220  
 225 225  
 230 230  
 235 235  
 240 240  
 245 245



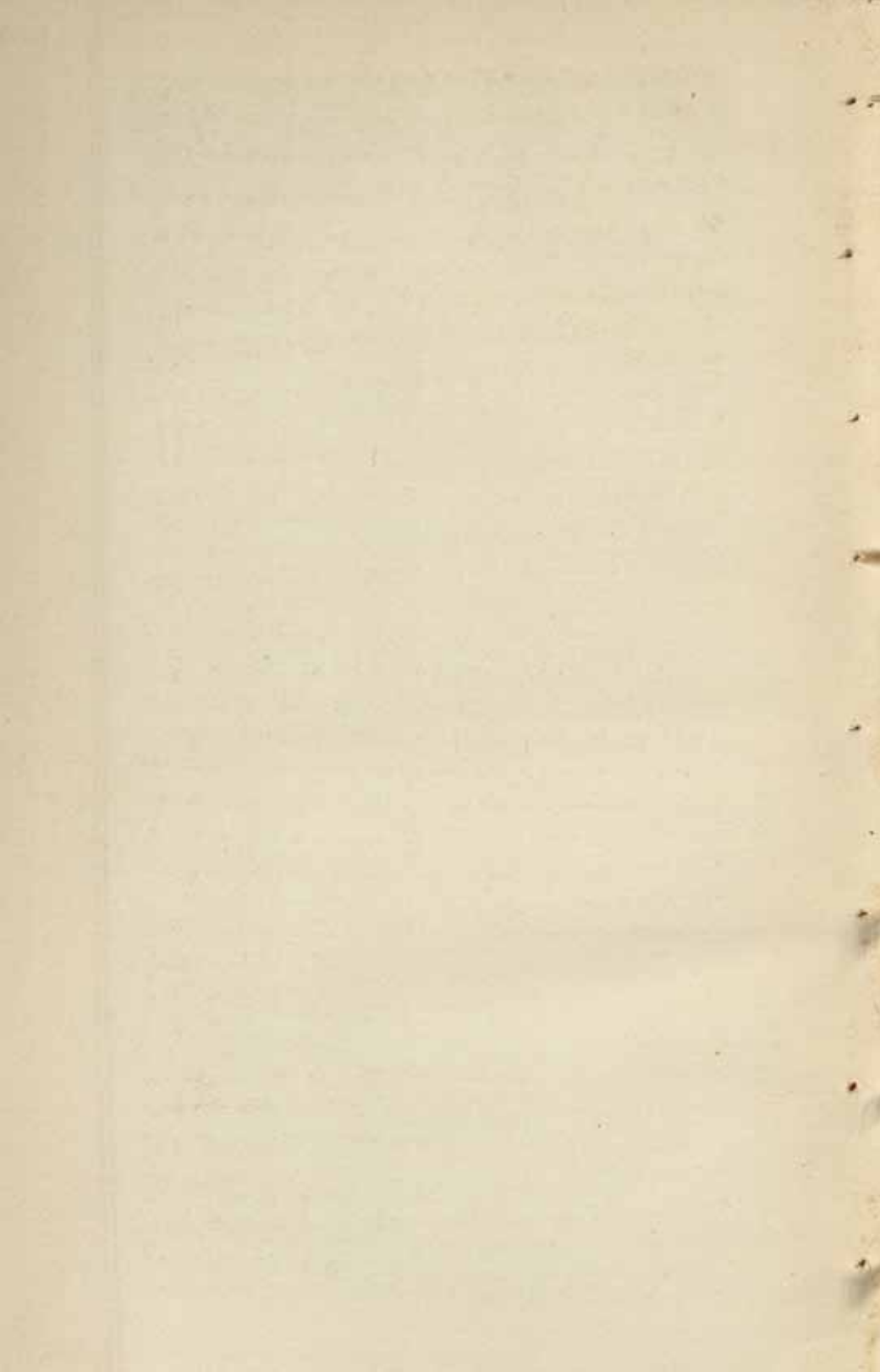






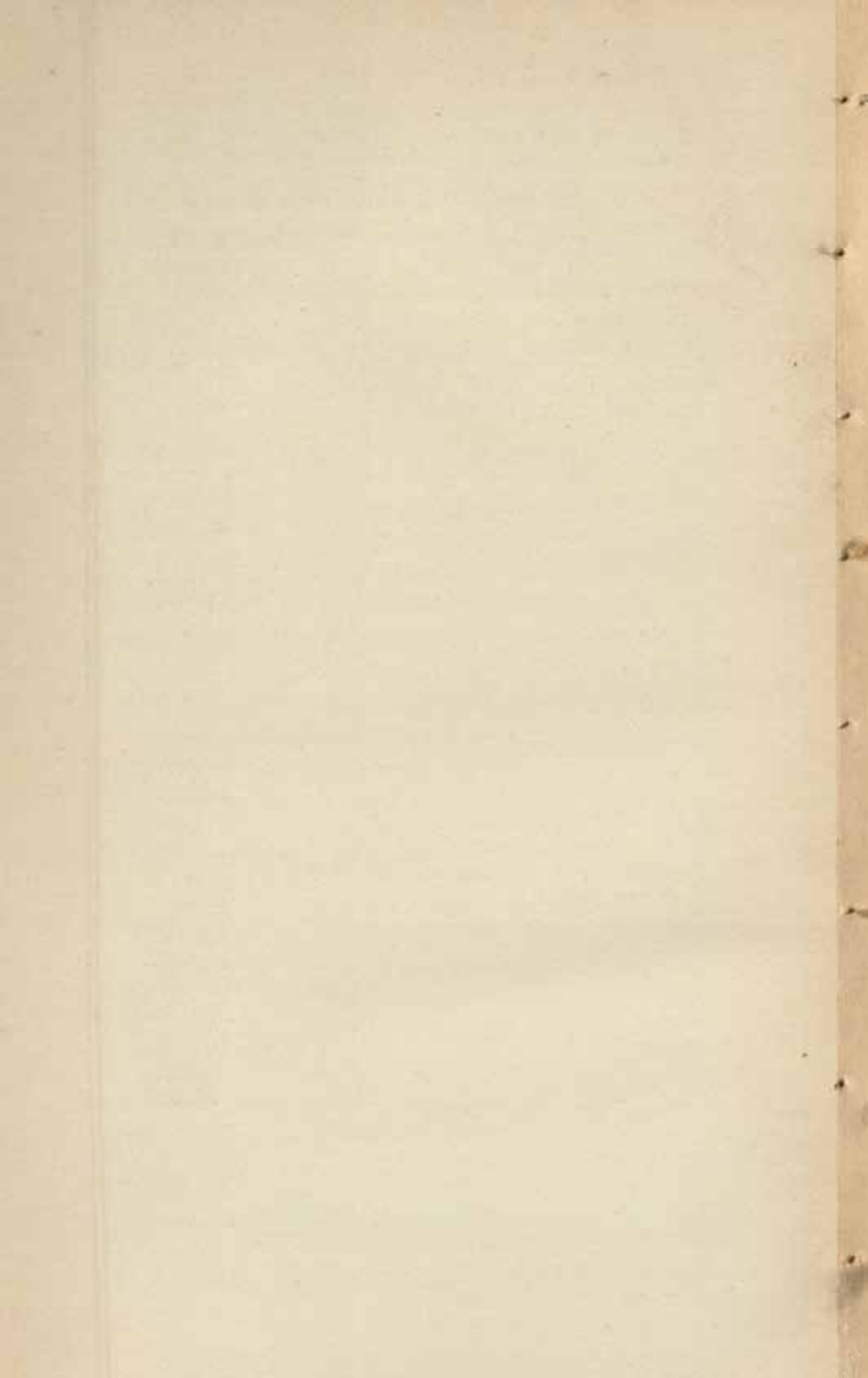
૨૯૫  
 ૩૦૦  
 ૩૦૫  
 ૩૧૦  
 ૩૧૫  
 ૩૨૦  
 ૩૨૫

૨૯૫  
 ૩૦૦  
 ૩૦૫  
 ૩૧૦  
 ૩૧૫  
 ૩૨૦  
 ૩૨૫



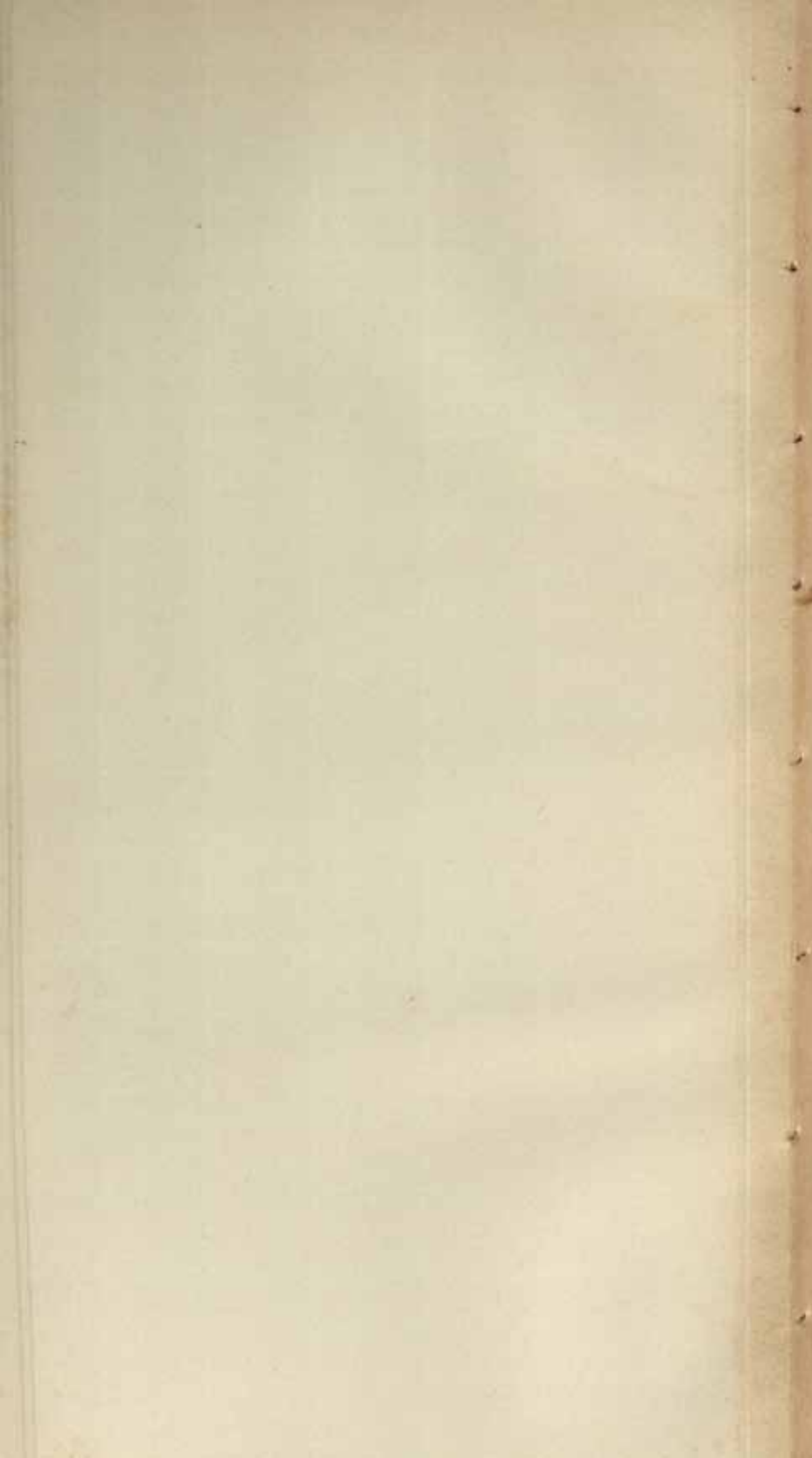






365 365  
 370 370  
 375 375  
 380 380  
 385 385  
 390 390  
 395 395





Sketch Map  
(Author's Copyright) of  
**GREAT TIBET**  
(WITH ADJACENT REGIONS)  
FOR ORIENTATION IN CONNEXION WITH  
The Nam Language

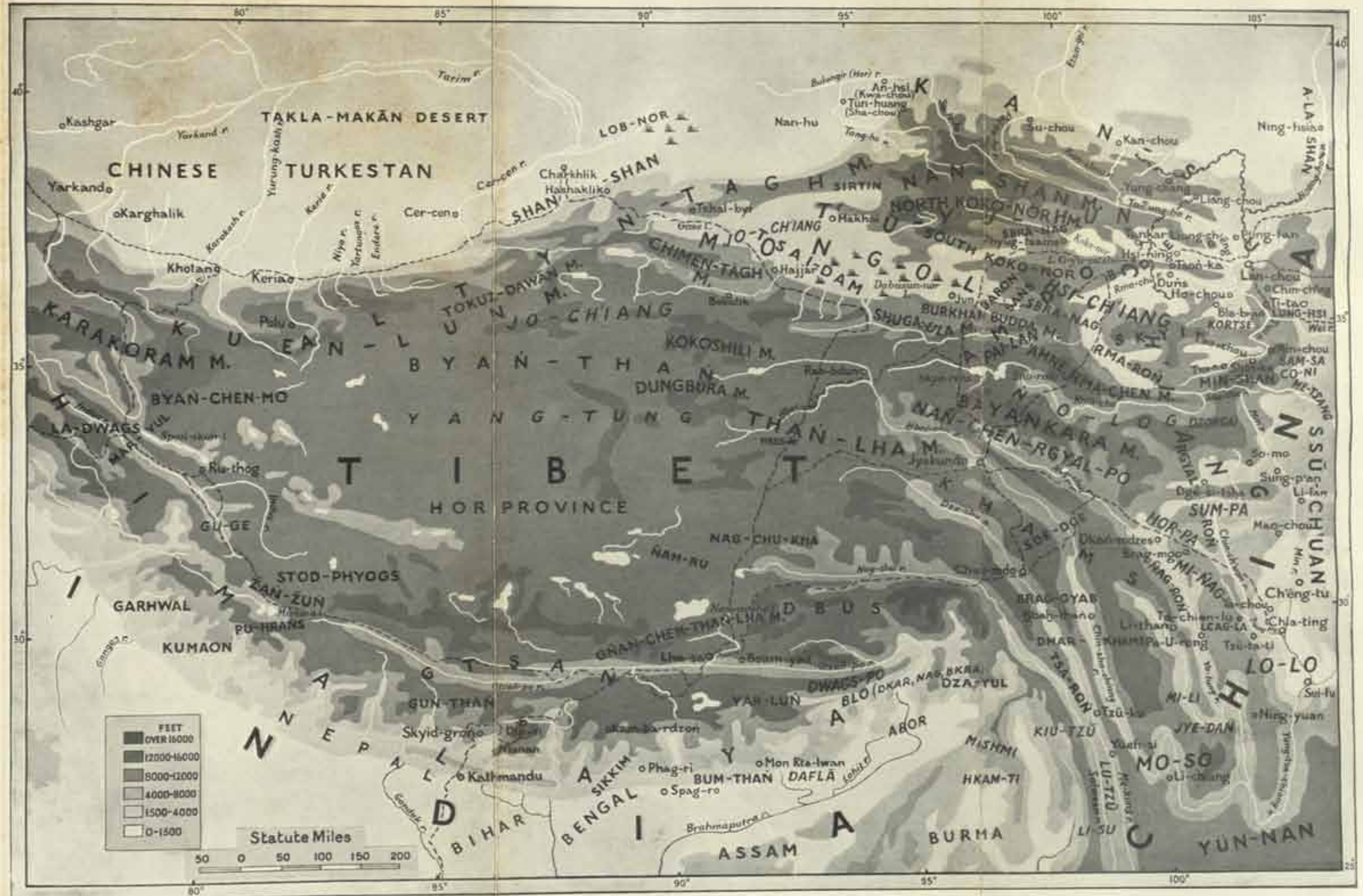
**KEY**

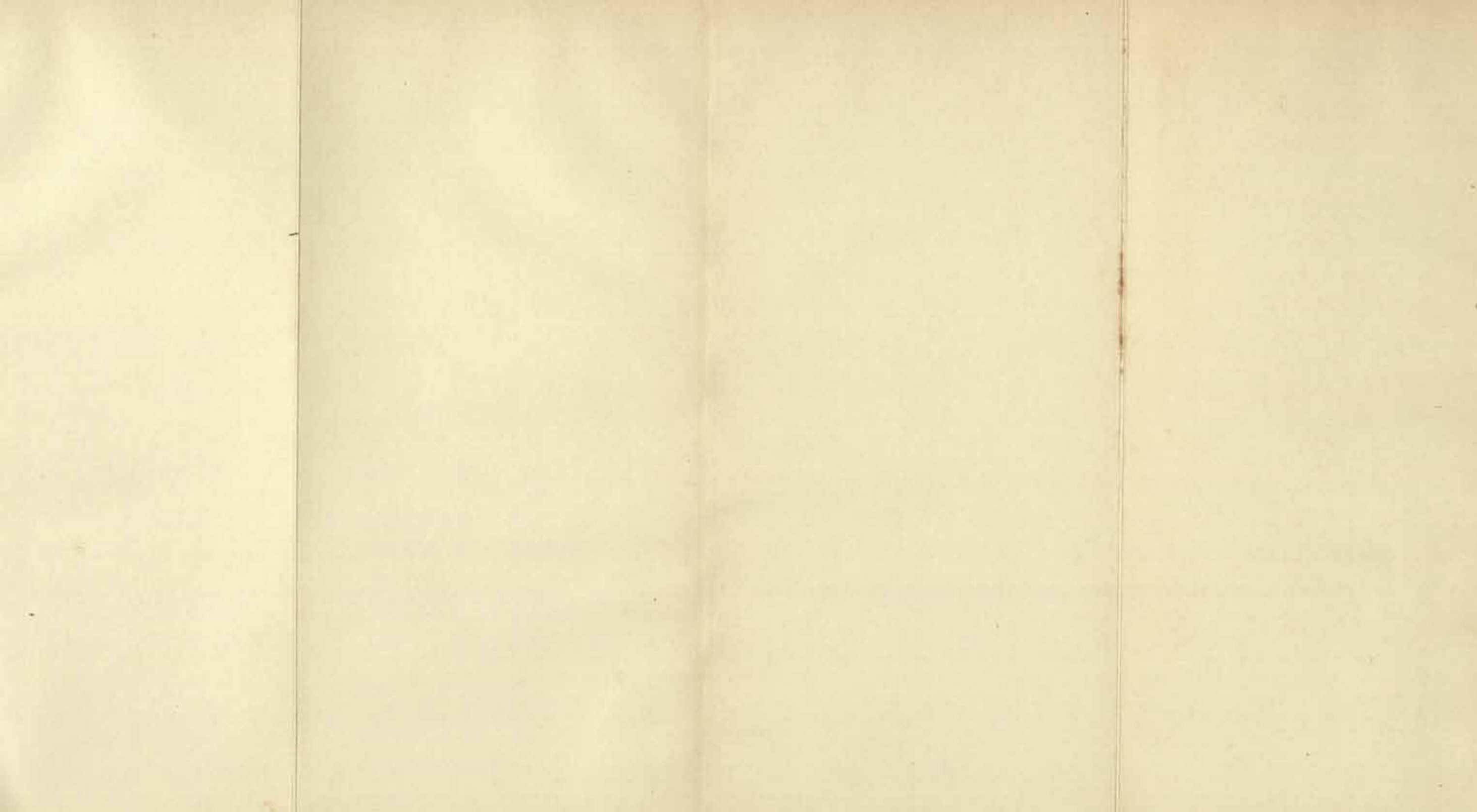
- Mountain Ranges as **KOKOSHILI M.**  
Districts as **KUMAON**  
Tribal or Linguistic areas as **MISHMI**  
Towns (often with minor state areas) as **Kathmandu**  
Rivers as *Brahmaputra r.*  
Lakes as *Skya-reñs l.*  
Main caravan routes as -----  
Chinese frontier wall as - - - - -

**SPELLINGS**

Tibetan and Chinese names in orthographic transcription, where ascertained, e.g. Bum-thañ (Bhutan), Dkañ-mdzes (Kanzé), Hbah-thañ (Batang), Hbri-chu (Dre-chu), Hsi-ning (Sining), No-log (Golok), Phag-ri (Phari), Sbra-nag (Panakha-sum), Sde-dge (Derge), Skyid-groñ (Kyirong), Thañ-lha (Tang-la): see 'Index of Proper Names.'

Other names as reported or usual.







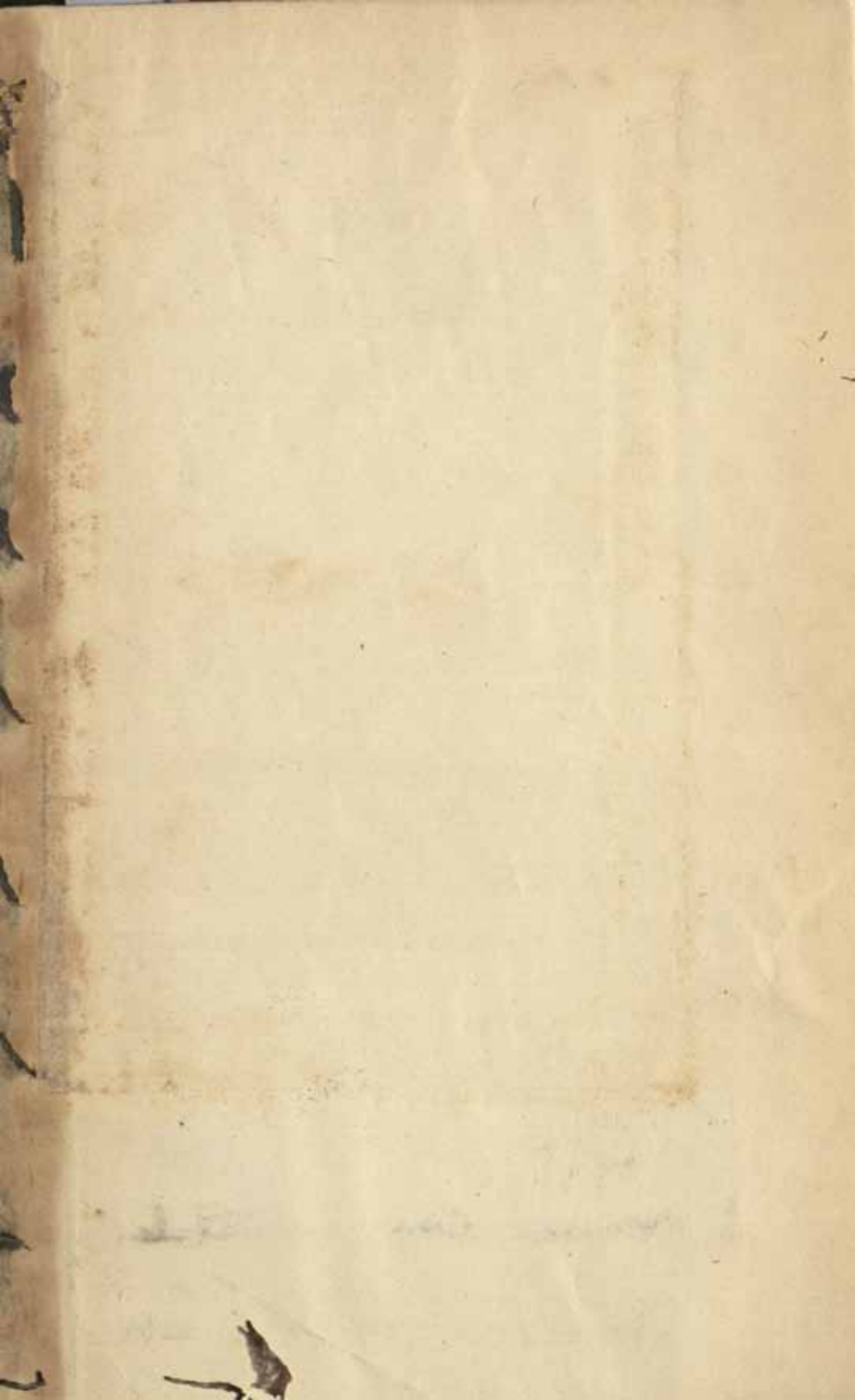


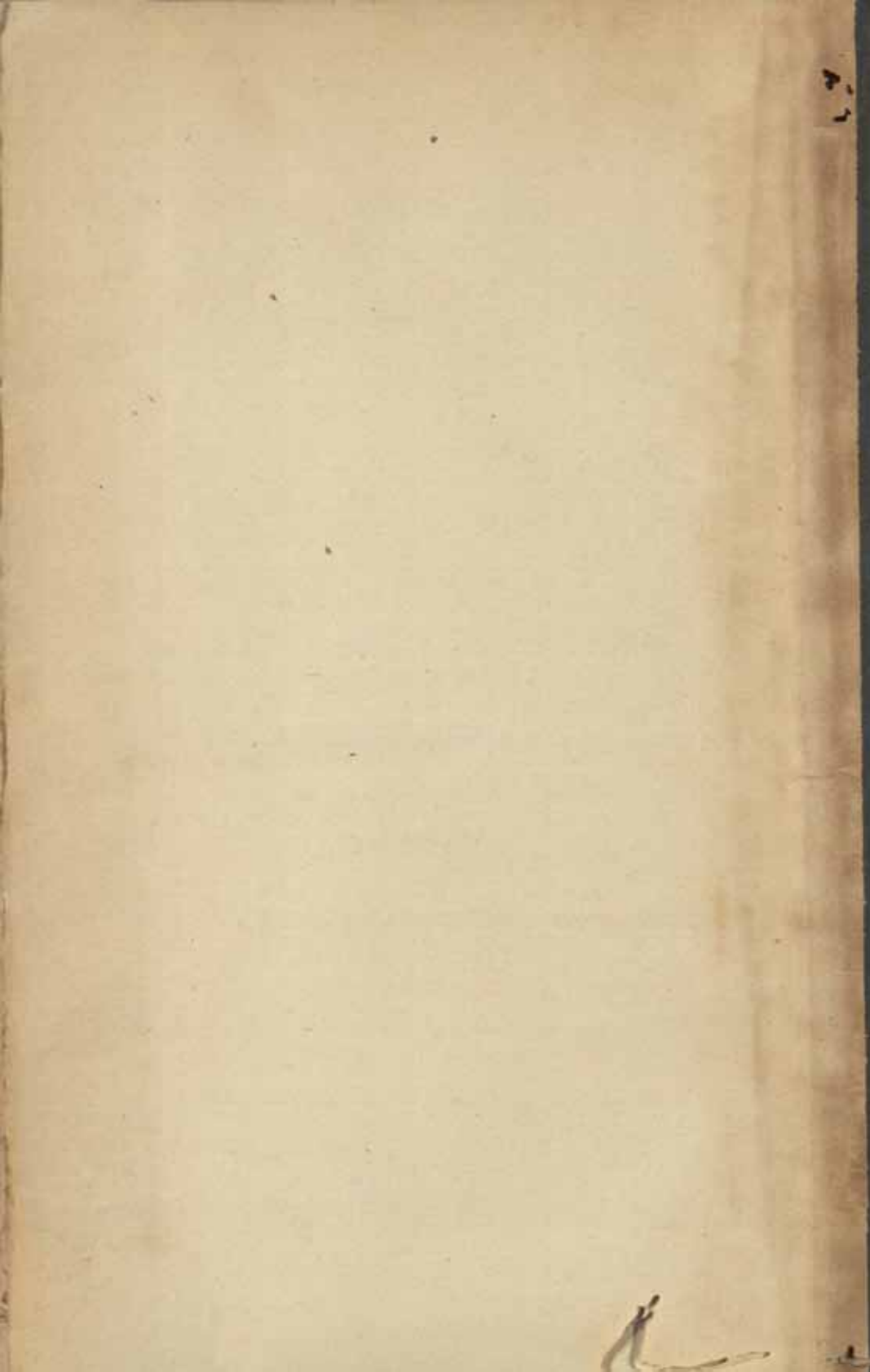
495.1.

Nam, Chinese Tibetan  
hangpang. <sup>Book</sup> ~~Text~~

Chinese Campagos - Book









CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY  
NEW DELHI

ISSUE RECORD.

Catalogue No. 495. ~~155~~/Tho

Author— Thomas F.W.

Title— NAM

Borrower No.

Date of Issue

Date of Return

*"A book that is shut is but a block"*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY  
GOVT. OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.